



# SQL Anywhere® Server Programming

February 2009

Version 11.0.1

## Copyright and trademarks

Copyright © 2009 iAnywhere Solutions, Inc. Portions copyright © 2009 Sybase, Inc. All rights reserved.

This documentation is provided AS IS, without warranty or liability of any kind (unless provided by a separate written agreement between you and iAnywhere).

You may use, print, reproduce, and distribute this documentation (in whole or in part) subject to the following conditions: 1) you must retain this and all other proprietary notices, on all copies of the documentation or portions thereof, 2) you may not modify the documentation, 3) you may not do anything to indicate that you or anyone other than iAnywhere is the author or source of the documentation.

iAnywhere®, Sybase®, and the marks listed at <http://www.sybase.com/detail?id=1011207> are trademarks of Sybase, Inc. or its subsidiaries. ® indicates registration in the United States of America.

All other company and product names mentioned may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.

---

---

# Contents

<b>About this book</b> .....	<b>xi</b>
<b>About the SQL Anywhere documentation</b> .....	<b>xii</b>
<b>Introduction to Programming with SQL Anywhere</b> .....	<b>1</b>
SQL Anywhere data access programming interfaces .....	3
SQL Anywhere .NET support .....	4
SQL Anywhere OLE DB and ADO support .....	5
SQL Anywhere ODBC support .....	6
SQL Anywhere JDBC support .....	7
SQL Anywhere embedded SQL .....	8
SQL Anywhere C language support .....	9
SQL Anywhere Perl DBI support .....	10
SQL Anywhere Python support .....	11
SQL Anywhere PHP support .....	12
SQL Anywhere Ruby support .....	13
SQL Anywhere web services support .....	14
Sybase Open Client support .....	15
SQL Anywhere Explorer .....	17
Introduction to the SQL Anywhere Explorer .....	18
Using the SQL Anywhere Explorer .....	19
Using SQL in applications .....	23
Executing SQL statements in applications .....	24
Preparing statements .....	26
Introduction to cursors .....	29
Working with cursors .....	32
Choosing cursor types .....	39
SQL Anywhere cursors .....	41
Describing result sets .....	58
Controlling transactions in applications .....	60
Three-tier computing and distributed transactions .....	65
Introduction to three-tier computing and distributed transactions .....	66
Three-tier computing architecture .....	67

Using distributed transactions .....	70
Using EAServer with SQL Anywhere .....	72
<b>Java in the database .....</b>	<b>75</b>
Java support in SQL Anywhere .....	77
Introduction to Java support .....	78
Java in the database Q & A .....	80
Java error handling .....	84
The runtime environment for Java in the database .....	85
Creating a Java class for use with SQL Anywhere .....	89
Choosing a Java VM .....	91
Install the sample Java class .....	93
Using the CLASSPATH variable .....	94
Accessing methods in the Java class .....	95
Accessing fields and methods of the Java object .....	96
Installing Java classes into a database .....	98
Special features of Java classes in the database .....	102
Starting and stopping the Java VM .....	106
<b>SQL Anywhere Data Access APIs .....</b>	<b>107</b>
SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider .....	109
SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider features .....	110
Running the sample projects .....	111
Using the .NET Data Provider in a Visual Studio project .....	112
Connecting to a database .....	114
Accessing and manipulating data .....	117
Using stored procedures .....	134
Transaction processing .....	136
Error handling and the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider .....	138
Deploying the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider .....	139
Tracing support .....	141
Tutorial: Using the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider .....	145
Introduction to the .NET Data Provider tutorial .....	146
Using the Simple code sample .....	147

---

Using the Table Viewer code sample .....	150
SQL Anywhere ASP.NET Providers .....	155
Adding the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET provider schema to the database .....	157
Registering the connection string .....	158
Registering the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers .....	159
Membership provider XML attributes .....	161
Roles provider table schema .....	162
Profile provider table schema .....	163
Web Part Personalization provider table schema .....	164
Health Monitoring provider table schema .....	165
Tutorial: Developing a simple .NET database application with Visual Studio .....	167
Lesson 1: Create a table viewer .....	168
Lesson 2: Add a synchronizing data control .....	172
SQL Anywhere .NET 2.0 API reference .....	177
iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace (.NET 2.0) .....	178
SQL Anywhere OLE DB and ADO development .....	447
Introduction to OLE DB .....	448
ADO programming with SQL Anywhere .....	449
Setting up a Microsoft Linked Server using OLE DB .....	456
Supported OLE DB interfaces .....	457
SQL Anywhere ODBC API .....	463
Introduction to ODBC .....	464
Building ODBC applications .....	466
ODBC samples .....	471
ODBC handles .....	473
Choosing an ODBC connection function .....	476
SQL Anywhere connection attributes .....	479
Executing SQL statements .....	481
64-bit ODBC considerations .....	485
Data alignment requirements .....	489
Working with result sets .....	491
Calling stored procedures .....	496
Handling errors .....	498
SQL Anywhere JDBC driver .....	501
Introduction to JDBC .....	502
Using the iAnywhere JDBC driver .....	505

Using the jConnect JDBC driver .....	507
Connecting from a JDBC client application .....	511
Using JDBC to access data .....	517
Using JDBC escape syntax .....	526
iAnywhere JDBC 3.0 API support .....	529
SQL Anywhere embedded SQL .....	531
Introduction to embedded SQL .....	532
Sample embedded SQL programs .....	538
Embedded SQL data types .....	542
Using host variables .....	546
The SQL Communication Area (SQLCA) .....	555
Static and dynamic SQL .....	561
The SQL descriptor area (SQLDA) .....	565
Fetching data .....	574
Sending and retrieving long values .....	582
Using simple stored procedures .....	586
Embedded SQL programming techniques .....	589
SQL preprocessor .....	590
Library function reference .....	593
Embedded SQL statement summary .....	615
SQL Anywhere C API reference .....	617
Introduction to the SQL Anywhere C API version 1.0 .....	618
sacapidll.h .....	619
sacapi.h .....	621
a_sqlany_bind_param struct .....	639
a_sqlany_bind_param_info struct .....	640
a_sqlany_column_info struct .....	641
a_sqlany_data_info struct .....	642
a_sqlany_data_value struct .....	643
SQLAnywhereInterface struct .....	644
a_sqlany_data_direction enumeration .....	647
a_sqlany_data_type enumeration .....	648
a_sqlany_native_type enumeration .....	650
sacapi_error_size constant .....	651
sqlany_current_api_version constant .....	652
SQL Anywhere C API examples .....	653

---

SQL Anywhere External Function API .....	669
Calling external libraries from procedures .....	670
Creating procedures and functions with external calls .....	671
External function prototypes .....	673
Using the external function call API methods .....	681
Handling data types .....	685
Unloading external libraries .....	688
SQL Anywhere external environment support .....	689
Overview of external environments .....	690
The CLR external environment .....	694
The ESQL and ODBC external environments .....	697
The Java external environment .....	706
The PERL external environment .....	711
The PHP external environment .....	715
SQL Anywhere Perl DBD::SQLAnywhere DBI module .....	721
Introduction to DBD::SQLAnywhere .....	722
Installing DBD::SQLAnywhere on Windows .....	723
Installing DBD::SQLAnywhere on Unix and Mac OS X .....	725
Writing Perl scripts that use DBD::SQLAnywhere .....	727
SQL Anywhere Python Database support .....	731
Introduction to sqlanydb .....	732
Installing sqlanydb on Windows .....	733
Installing sqlanydb on Unix and Mac OS X .....	734
Writing Python scripts that use sqlanydb .....	735
SQL Anywhere PHP API .....	739
Introduction to the SQL Anywhere PHP module .....	740
Installing and configuring SQL Anywhere PHP .....	741
Running PHP test scripts in your web pages .....	746
Writing PHP scripts .....	748
SQL Anywhere PHP API reference .....	754
Building the SQL Anywhere PHP module on Unix and Mac OS X .....	803
SQL Anywhere for Ruby .....	809
Ruby support in SQL Anywhere .....	810
Rails support in SQL Anywhere .....	812
Ruby-DBI Driver for SQL Anywhere .....	814
SQL Anywhere Ruby API .....	818
Sybase Open Client API .....	839

Open Client architecture .....	840
What you need to build Open Client applications .....	841
Data type mappings .....	842
Using SQL in Open Client applications .....	844
Known Open Client limitations of SQL Anywhere .....	847
SQL Anywhere web services .....	849
Introduction to web services .....	850
Quick start to web services .....	851
Creating web services .....	856
Starting a database server that listens for web requests .....	859
Understanding how URLs are interpreted .....	861
Creating SOAP and DISH web services .....	865
Tutorial: Accessing web services from Microsoft .NET .....	868
Tutorial: Accessing web services from JAX-WS .....	871
Using procedures that provide HTML documents .....	877
Working with data types .....	880
Tutorial: Using data types with Microsoft .NET .....	887
Tutorial: Using data types with JAX-WS .....	892
Using the iAnywhere WSDL compiler .....	898
Creating web service client functions and procedures .....	900
Working with return values and result sets .....	905
Selecting from result sets .....	907
Using parameters .....	908
Working with structured data types .....	911
Working with variables .....	917
Working with HTTP headers .....	919
Using SOAP services .....	922
Working with SOAP headers .....	925
Working with MIME types .....	932
Using HTTP sessions .....	935
Using automatic character set conversion .....	941
Handling errors .....	942

**SQL Anywhere Database Tools Interface ..... 945**

Database tools interface .....	947
--------------------------------	-----



---

Introduction to the database tools interface .....	948
Using the database tools interface .....	950
DBTools functions .....	957
DBTools structures .....	967
DBTools enumeration types .....	1007
Exit codes .....	1013
Software component exit codes .....	1014
<b>Deploying SQL Anywhere .....</b>	<b>1015</b>
Deploying databases and applications .....	1017
Introduction to deployment .....	1018
Understanding installation directories and file names .....	1020
Using the <b>Deployment Wizard</b> .....	1023
Using a silent install for deployment .....	1027
Deploying client applications .....	1029
Deploying administration tools .....	1048
Deploying database servers .....	1074
Deploying external environment support .....	1079
Deploying security .....	1081
Deploying embedded database applications .....	1082
<b>Glossary .....</b>	<b>1087</b>
Glossary .....	1089
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>1119</b>

---

---

# About this book

## **Subject**

This book describes how to build and deploy database applications using the C, C++, Java, PHP, Perl, Python, and .NET programming languages such as Visual Basic and Visual C#. A variety of programming interfaces such as ADO.NET and ODBC are described.

## **Audience**

This book is intended for application developers writing programs that work directly with one of the SQL Anywhere interfaces.

## About the SQL Anywhere documentation

The complete SQL Anywhere documentation is available in four formats that contain identical information.

- **HTML Help** The online Help contains the complete SQL Anywhere documentation, including the books and the context-sensitive help for SQL Anywhere tools.

If you are using a Microsoft Windows operating system, the online Help is provided in HTML Help (CHM) format. To access the documentation, choose **Start » Programs » SQL Anywhere 11 » Documentation » Online Books**.

The administration tools use the same online documentation for their Help features.

- **Eclipse** On Unix platforms, the complete online Help is provided in Eclipse format. To access the documentation, run *sadoc* from the *bin32* or *bin64* directory of your SQL Anywhere 11 installation.
- **DocCommentXchange** DocCommentXchange is a community for accessing and discussing SQL Anywhere documentation.

Use DocCommentXchange to:

- View documentation
- Check for clarifications users have made to sections of documentation
- Provide suggestions and corrections to improve documentation for all users in future releases

Visit <http://dcx.sybase.com>.

- **PDF** The complete set of SQL Anywhere books is provided as a set of Portable Document Format (PDF) files. You must have a PDF reader to view information. To download Adobe Reader, visit <http://get.adobe.com/reader/>.

To access the PDF documentation on Microsoft Windows operating systems, choose **Start » Programs » SQL Anywhere 11 » Documentation » Online Books - PDF Format**.

To access the PDF documentation on Unix operating systems, use a web browser to open *install-dir/documentation/en/pdf/index.html*.

## About the books in the documentation set

The SQL Anywhere documentation consists of the following books:

- **SQL Anywhere 11 - Introduction** This book introduces SQL Anywhere 11, a comprehensive package that provides data management and data exchange, enabling the rapid development of database-powered applications for server, desktop, mobile, and remote office environments.
- **SQL Anywhere 11 - Changes and Upgrading** This book describes new features in SQL Anywhere 11 and in previous versions of the software.
- **SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration** This book describes how to run, manage, and configure SQL Anywhere databases. It describes database connections, the database server, database

files, backup procedures, security, high availability, replication with the Replication Server, and administration utilities and options.

- **SQL Anywhere Server - Programming** This book describes how to build and deploy database applications using the C, C++, Java, PHP, Perl, Python, and .NET programming languages such as Visual Basic and Visual C#. A variety of programming interfaces such as ADO.NET and ODBC are described.
- **SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference** This book provides reference information for system procedures, and the catalog (system tables and views). It also provides an explanation of the SQL Anywhere implementation of the SQL language (search conditions, syntax, data types, and functions).
- **SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage** This book describes how to design and create databases; how to import, export, and modify data; how to retrieve data; and how to build stored procedures and triggers.
- **MobiLink - Getting Started** This book introduces MobiLink, a session-based relational-database synchronization system. MobiLink technology allows two-way replication and is well suited to mobile computing environments.
- **MobiLink - Client Administration** This book describes how to set up, configure, and synchronize MobiLink clients. MobiLink clients can be SQL Anywhere or UltraLite databases. This book also describes the Dbmlsync API, which allows you to integrate synchronization seamlessly into your C++ or .NET client applications.
- **MobiLink - Server Administration** This book describes how to set up and administer MobiLink applications.
- **MobiLink - Server-Initiated Synchronization** This book describes MobiLink server-initiated synchronization, a feature that allows the MobiLink server to initiate synchronization or perform actions on remote devices.
- **QAnywhere** This book describes QAnywhere, which is a messaging platform for mobile, wireless, desktop, and laptop clients.
- **SQL Remote** This book describes the SQL Remote data replication system for mobile computing, which enables sharing of data between a SQL Anywhere consolidated database and many SQL Anywhere remote databases using an indirect link such as email or file transfer.
- **UltraLite - Database Management and Reference** This book introduces the UltraLite database system for small devices.
- **UltraLite - C and C++ Programming** This book describes UltraLite C and C++ programming interfaces. With UltraLite, you can develop and deploy database applications to handheld, mobile, or embedded devices.
- **UltraLite - M-Business Anywhere Programming** This book describes UltraLite for M-Business Anywhere. With UltraLite for M-Business Anywhere you can develop and deploy web-based database applications to handheld, mobile, or embedded devices, running Palm OS, Windows Mobile, or Windows.
- **UltraLite - .NET Programming** This book describes UltraLite.NET. With UltraLite.NET you can develop and deploy database applications to computers, or handheld, mobile, or embedded devices.
- **UltraLiteJ** This book describes UltraLiteJ. With UltraLiteJ, you can develop and deploy database applications in environments that support Java. UltraLiteJ supports BlackBerry smartphones and Java SE environments. UltraLiteJ is based on the iAnywhere UltraLite database product.

- **Error Messages** This book provides a complete listing of SQL Anywhere error messages together with diagnostic information.

## Documentation conventions

This section lists the conventions used in this documentation.

### Operating systems

SQL Anywhere runs on a variety of platforms. In most cases, the software behaves the same on all platforms, but there are variations or limitations. These are commonly based on the underlying operating system (Windows, Unix), and seldom on the particular variant (AIX, Windows Mobile) or version.

To simplify references to operating systems, the documentation groups the supported operating systems as follows:

- **Windows** The Microsoft Windows family includes Windows Vista and Windows XP, used primarily on server, desktop, and laptop computers, and Windows Mobile used on mobile devices.

Unless otherwise specified, when the documentation refers to Windows, it refers to all Windows-based platforms, including Windows Mobile.

- **Unix** Unless otherwise specified, when the documentation refers to Unix, it refers to all Unix-based platforms, including Linux and Mac OS X.

### Directory and file names

In most cases, references to directory and file names are similar on all supported platforms, with simple transformations between the various forms. In these cases, Windows conventions are used. Where the details are more complex, the documentation shows all relevant forms.

These are the conventions used to simplify the documentation of directory and file names:

- **Uppercase and lowercase directory names** On Windows and Unix, directory and file names may contain uppercase and lowercase letters. When directories and files are created, the file system preserves letter case.

On Windows, references to directories and files are *not* case sensitive. Mixed case directory and file names are common, but it is common to refer to them using all lowercase letters. The SQL Anywhere installation contains directories such as *Bin32* and *Documentation*.

On Unix, references to directories and files *are* case sensitive. Mixed case directory and file names are not common. Most use all lowercase letters. The SQL Anywhere installation contains directories such as *bin32* and *documentation*.

The documentation uses the Windows forms of directory names. In most cases, you can convert a mixed case directory name to lowercase for the equivalent directory name on Unix.

- **Slashes separating directory and file names** The documentation uses backslashes as the directory separator. For example, the PDF form of the documentation is found in *install-dir\Documentation\en\PDF* (Windows form).

On Unix, replace the backslash with the forward slash. The PDF documentation is found in *install-dir/documentation/en/pdf*.

- **Executable files** The documentation shows executable file names using Windows conventions, with a suffix such as *.exe* or *.bat*. On Unix, executable file names have no suffix.

For example, on Windows, the network database server is *dbsrv11.exe*. On Unix, it is *dbsrv11*.

- **install-dir** During the installation process, you choose where to install SQL Anywhere. The environment variable `SQLANY11` is created and refers to this location. The documentation refers to this location as *install-dir*.

For example, the documentation may refer to the file *install-dir\readme.txt*. On Windows, this is equivalent to `%SQLANY11%\readme.txt`. On Unix, this is equivalent to `$(SQLANY11)/readme.txt` or `${SQLANY11}/readme.txt`.

For more information about the default location of *install-dir*, see [“SQLANY11 environment variable” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

- **samples-dir** During the installation process, you choose where to install the samples included with SQL Anywhere. The environment variable `SQLANY11SAMP` is created and refers to this location. The documentation refers to this location as *samples-dir*.

To open a Windows Explorer window in *samples-dir*, from the **Start** menu, choose **Programs » SQL Anywhere 11 » Sample Applications And Projects**.

For more information about the default location of *samples-dir*, see [“SQLANY11SAMP environment variable” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## Command prompts and command shell syntax

Most operating systems provide one or more methods of entering commands and parameters using a command shell or command prompt. Windows command prompts include Command Prompt (DOS prompt) and 4NT. Unix command shells include Korn shell and bash. Each shell has features that extend its capabilities beyond simple commands. These features are driven by special characters. The special characters and features vary from one shell to another. Incorrect use of these special characters often results in syntax errors or unexpected behavior.

The documentation provides command line examples in a generic form. If these examples contain characters that the shell considers special, the command may require modification for the specific shell. The modifications are beyond the scope of this documentation, but generally, use quotes around the parameters containing those characters or use an escape character before the special characters.

These are some examples of command line syntax that may vary between platforms:

- **Parentheses and curly braces** Some command line options require a parameter that accepts detailed value specifications in a list. The list is usually enclosed with parentheses or curly braces. The documentation uses parentheses. For example:

```
-x tcpip(host=127.0.0.1)
```

Where parentheses cause syntax problems, substitute curly braces:

```
-x tcpip{host=127.0.0.1}
```

If both forms result in syntax problems, the entire parameter should be enclosed in quotes as required by the shell:

```
-x "tcPIP(host=127.0.0.1)"
```

- **Quotes** If you must specify quotes in a parameter value, the quotes may conflict with the traditional use of quotes to enclose the parameter. For example, to specify an encryption key whose value contains double-quotes, you might have to enclose the key in quotes and then escape the embedded quote:

```
-ek "my \"secret\" key"
```

In many shells, the value of the key would be my "secret" key.

- **Environment variables** The documentation refers to setting environment variables. In Windows shells, environment variables are specified using the syntax `%ENVVAR%`. In Unix shells, environment variables are specified using the syntax `$ENVVAR` or `${ENVVAR}`.

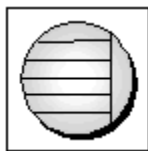
## Graphic icons

The following icons are used in this documentation.

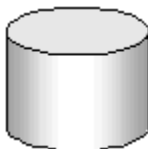
- A client application.



- A database server, such as Sybase SQL Anywhere.



- A database. In some high-level diagrams, the icon may be used to represent both the database and the database server that manages it.



- Replication or synchronization middleware. These assist in sharing data among databases. Examples are the MobiLink server and the SQL Remote Message Agent.





- A programming interface.



## Contacting the documentation team

We would like to receive your opinions, suggestions, and feedback on this Help.

To submit your comments and suggestions, send an email to the SQL Anywhere documentation team at [iasdoc@sybase.com](mailto:iasdoc@sybase.com). Although we do not reply to emails, your feedback helps us to improve our documentation, so your input is welcome.

### DocCommentXchange

You can also leave comments directly on help topics using DocCommentXchange. DocCommentXchange (DCX) is a community for accessing and discussing SQL Anywhere documentation. Use DocCommentXchange to:

- View documentation
- Check for clarifications users have made to sections of documentation
- Provide suggestions and corrections to improve documentation for all users in future releases

Visit <http://dcx.sybase.com>.

## Finding out more and requesting technical support

Additional information and resources are available at the Sybase iAnywhere Developer Community at <http://www.sybase.com/developer/library/sql-anywhere-techcorner>.

If you have questions or need help, you can post messages to the Sybase iAnywhere newsgroups listed below.

When you write to one of these newsgroups, always provide details about your problem, including the build number of your version of SQL Anywhere. You can find this information by running the following command:  
**dbeng11 -v.**

The newsgroups are located on the *forums.sybase.com* news server.

The newsgroups include the following:

- [sybase.public.sqlanywhere.general](#)
- [sybase.public.sqlanywhere.linux](#)
- [sybase.public.sqlanywhere.mobilink](#)
- [sybase.public.sqlanywhere.product\\_futures\\_discussion](#)
- [sybase.public.sqlanywhere.replication](#)
- [sybase.public.sqlanywhere.ultralite](#)
- [ianywhere.public.sqlanywhere.qanywhere](#)

For web development issues, see <http://groups.google.com/group/sql-anywhere-web-development>.

**Newsgroup disclaimer**

iAnywhere Solutions has no obligation to provide solutions, information, or ideas on its newsgroups, nor is iAnywhere Solutions obliged to provide anything other than a systems operator to monitor the service and ensure its operation and availability.

iAnywhere Technical Advisors, and other staff, assist on the newsgroup service when they have time. They offer their help on a volunteer basis and may not be available regularly to provide solutions and information. Their ability to help is based on their workload.

# Introduction to Programming with SQL Anywhere

This section introduces you to programming with SQL Anywhere,

---

SQL Anywhere data access programming interfaces .....	3
SQL Anywhere Explorer .....	17
Using SQL in applications .....	23
Three-tier computing and distributed transactions .....	65



---

# SQL Anywhere data access programming interfaces

## Contents

- SQL Anywhere .NET support ..... 4
- SQL Anywhere OLE DB and ADO support ..... 5
- SQL Anywhere ODBC support ..... 6
- SQL Anywhere JDBC support ..... 7
- SQL Anywhere embedded SQL ..... 8
- SQL Anywhere C language support ..... 9
- SQL Anywhere Perl DBI support ..... 10
- SQL Anywhere Python support ..... 11
- SQL Anywhere PHP support ..... 12
- SQL Anywhere Ruby support ..... 13
- SQL Anywhere web services support ..... 14
- Sybase Open Client support ..... 15

## SQL Anywhere .NET support

ADO.NET is the latest data access API from Microsoft in the line of ODBC, OLE DB, and ADO. It is the preferred data access component for the Microsoft .NET Framework and allows you to access relational database systems.

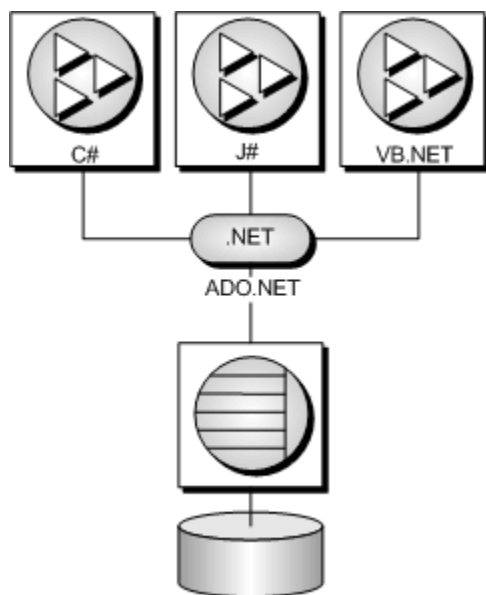
The SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider implements the `iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere` namespace and allows you to write programs in any of the .NET supported languages, such as C# and Visual Basic .NET, and access data from SQL Anywhere databases.

For general information about .NET data access, see the Microsoft [.NET Data Access Architecture Guide](#).

### ADO.NET applications

You can develop Internet and intranet applications using object-oriented languages, and then connect these applications to SQL Anywhere using the ADO.NET data provider.

Combine this provider with built-in XML and web services features, .NET scripting capability for MobiLink synchronization, and an UltraLite .NET component for development of handheld database applications, and SQL Anywhere can integrate with the .NET Framework.



### See also

- [“SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider” on page 109](#)
- [“iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace \(.NET 2.0\)” on page 178](#)
- [“Tutorial: Using the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider” on page 145](#)

## SQL Anywhere OLE DB and ADO support

SQL Anywhere includes an OLE DB provider for OLE DB and ADO programmers.

OLE DB is a set of Component Object Model (COM) interfaces developed by Microsoft, which provide applications with uniform access to data stored in diverse information sources and that also provide the ability to implement additional database services. These interfaces support the amount of DBMS functionality appropriate to the data store, enabling it to share its data.

ADO is an object model for programmatically accessing, editing, and updating a wide variety of data sources through OLE DB system interfaces. ADO is also developed by Microsoft. Most developers using the OLE DB programming interface do so by writing to the ADO API rather than directly to the OLE DB API.

Do not confuse the ADO interface with ADO.NET. ADO.NET is a separate interface. For more information, see [“SQL Anywhere .NET support” on page 4](#).

Refer to the Microsoft Developer Network for documentation on OLE DB and ADO programming. For SQL Anywhere-specific information about OLE DB and ADO development, see [“SQL Anywhere OLE DB and ADO development” on page 447](#).

## SQL Anywhere ODBC support

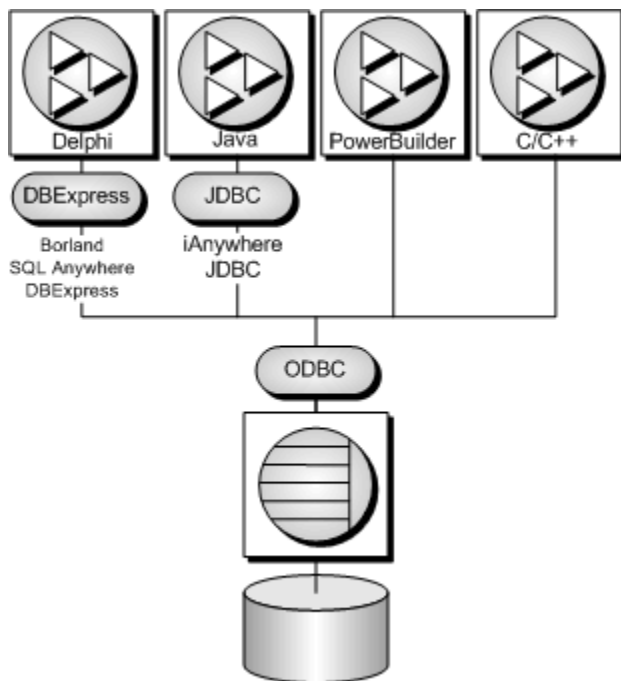
ODBC (Open Database Connectivity) is a standard call level interface (CLI) developed by Microsoft. It is based on the SQL Access Group CLI specification. ODBC applications can run against any data source that provides an ODBC driver. ODBC is a good choice for a programming interface if you want your application to be portable to other data sources that have ODBC drivers.

ODBC is a low-level interface. Almost all the SQL Anywhere functionality is available with this interface. ODBC is available as a DLL under Windows operating systems with the exception of Windows Mobile. It is provided as a library for Unix.

The primary documentation for ODBC is the Microsoft ODBC Software Development Kit.

### ODBC applications

You can develop applications using a variety of development tools and programming languages, as shown in the figure below, and accessing the SQL Anywhere database server using the ODBC API.



For example, of the applications supplied with SQL Anywhere, InfoMaker and PowerDesigner Physical Data Model use ODBC to connect to the database.

### See also

- [“SQL Anywhere ODBC API” on page 463](#)



## SQL Anywhere JDBC support

JDBC is a call-level interface for Java applications. Developed by Sun Microsystems, JDBC provides Java programmers with a uniform interface to a wide range of relational databases, and provides a common base on which higher level tools and interfaces can be built. JDBC is now a standard part of Java and is included in the JDK.

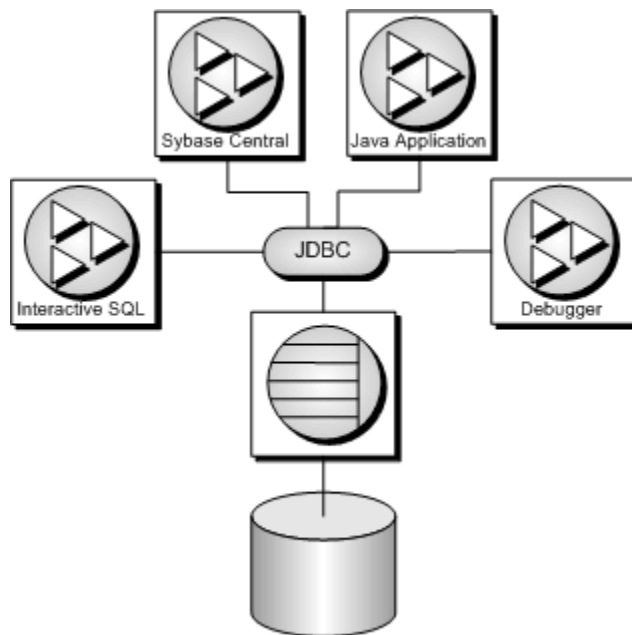
SQL Anywhere includes a pure Java JDBC driver, named jConnect. It also includes the iAnywhere JDBC driver, which is a type 2 driver. Both are described in [“SQL Anywhere JDBC driver” on page 501](#).

For information about choosing a driver, see [“Choosing a JDBC driver” on page 502](#).

In addition to using JDBC as a client-side application programming interface, you can also use JDBC inside the database server to access data by using Java in the database.

### JDBC applications

You can develop Java applications that use the JDBC API to connect to SQL Anywhere. Several of the applications supplied with SQL Anywhere use JDBC, such as the debugger, Sybase Central, and Interactive SQL.



Java and JDBC are also important programming languages for developing UltraLite applications.

### See also

- [“Choosing a JDBC driver” on page 502](#)
- [“SQL Anywhere JDBC driver” on page 501](#)

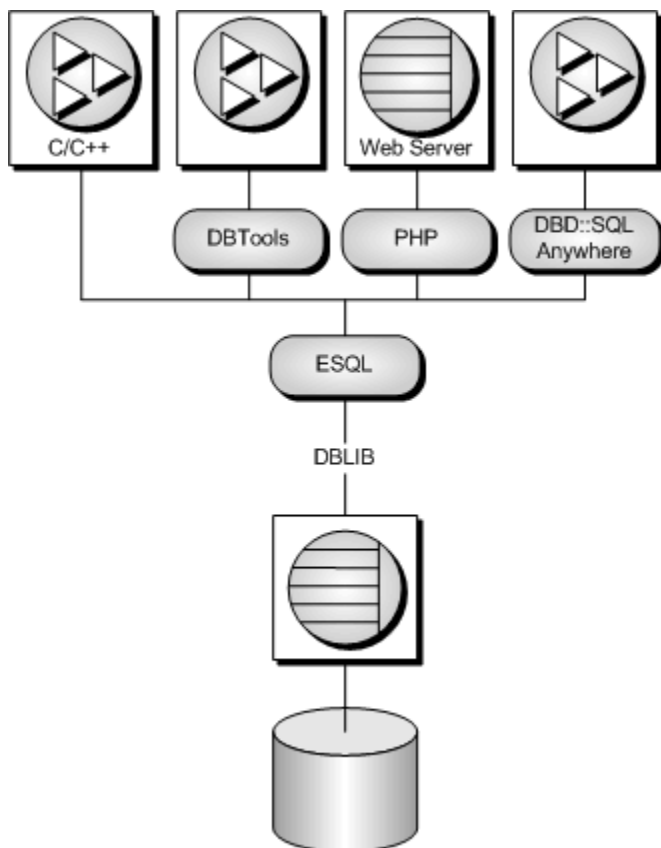
## SQL Anywhere embedded SQL

SQL statements embedded in a C or C++ source file are referred to as embedded SQL. A preprocessor translates these statements into calls to a runtime library. Embedded SQL is an ISO/ANSI and IBM standard.

Embedded SQL is portable to other databases and other environments, and is functionally equivalent in all operating environments. It is a comprehensive, low-level interface that provides all the functionality available in the product. Embedded SQL requires knowledge of C or C++ programming languages.

### Embedded SQL applications

You can develop C or C++ applications that access the SQL Anywhere server using the SQL Anywhere embedded SQL interface. The command line database tools are examples of applications developed in this manner.



### See also

- [“SQL Anywhere embedded SQL” on page 531](#)

## SQL Anywhere C language support

The SQL Anywhere C API is a data access API for the C / C++ languages. The C API specification defines a set of functions, variables and conventions that provide a consistent database interface independent of the actual database being used. Using the SQL Anywhere C API, your C / C++ applications have direct access to SQL Anywhere database servers.

### See also

- [“SQL Anywhere C API reference” on page 617](#)

## SQL Anywhere Perl DBI support

DBD::SQLAnywhere is the SQL Anywhere database driver for DBI, which is a data access API for the Perl language. The DBI API specification defines a set of functions, variables and conventions that provide a consistent database interface independent of the actual database being used. Using DBI and DBD::SQLAnywhere, your Perl scripts have direct access to SQL Anywhere database servers.

### See also

- [“SQL Anywhere Perl DBD::SQLAnywhere DBI module” on page 721](#)

## SQL Anywhere Python support

The SQL Anywhere Python database interface, `sqlanydb`, is a data access API for the Python language. The Python Database API specification defines a set of methods that provides a consistent database interface independent of the actual database being used. Using the `sqlanydb` module, your Python scripts have direct access to SQL Anywhere database servers.

### See also

- [“SQL Anywhere Python Database support” on page 731](#)

## SQL Anywhere PHP support

PHP provides the ability to retrieve information from many popular databases. SQL Anywhere includes a module that provides access to SQL Anywhere databases from PHP. You can use the PHP language to retrieve information from SQL Anywhere databases and provide dynamic web content on your own web sites.

The SQL Anywhere PHP module provides a native means of accessing your databases from PHP. You might prefer it to other PHP data access techniques because it is simple, and it helps to avoid system resource leaks that can occur with other techniques.

### See also

- [“SQL Anywhere PHP API” on page 739](#)

## SQL Anywhere Ruby support

There are three different Ruby APIs supported by SQL Anywhere. First, there is the SQL Anywhere Ruby API. This API provides a Ruby wrapping over the interface exposed by the SQL Anywhere C API. Second, there is support for ActiveRecord, an object-relational mapper popularized by being part of the Ruby on Rails web development framework. Third, there is support for Ruby DBI. SQL Anywhere provides a Ruby Database Driver (DBD) which can be used with DBI.

### See also

- [“SQL Anywhere for Ruby” on page 809](#)

## SQL Anywhere web services support

SQL Anywhere web services provide client applications an alternative to data access APIs such as JDBC and ODBC. Web services can be accessed from client applications written in a variety of languages and running on a variety of platforms. Even common scripting languages such as Perl and Python can provide access to web services.

### See also

- [“SQL Anywhere web services” on page 849](#)



## Sybase Open Client support

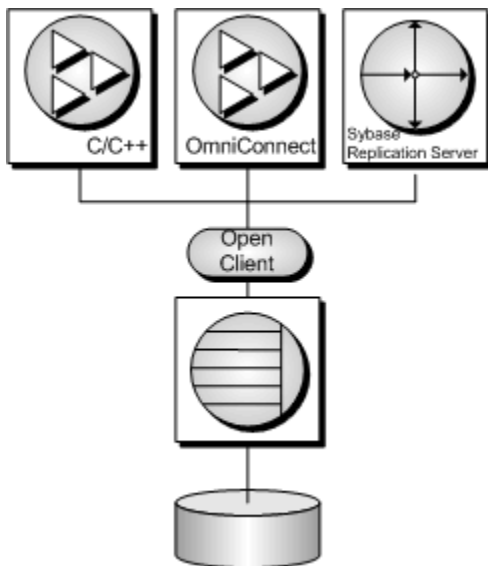
Sybase Open Client provides customer applications, third-party products, and other Sybase products with the interfaces needed to communicate with SQL Anywhere and other Open Servers.

### When to use Open Client

You should consider using the Open Client interface if you are concerned with Adaptive Server Enterprise compatibility or if you are using other Sybase products that support the Open Client interface, such as Replication Server.

### Open Client applications

You can develop applications in C or C++, and then connect those applications to SQL Anywhere using the Open Client API. Other Sybase applications, such as OmniConnect or Replication Server, use Open Client. The Open Client API is also supported by Sybase Adaptive Server Enterprise.



### See also

- “Using SQL Anywhere as an Open Server” [[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration](#)]

---

---

# SQL Anywhere Explorer

## Contents

Introduction to the SQL Anywhere Explorer ..... 18  
Using the SQL Anywhere Explorer ..... 19

---

## Introduction to the SQL Anywhere Explorer

The SQL Anywhere Explorer is a component that lets you connect to SQL Anywhere and UltraLite databases from Visual Studio.

For information about using the SQL Anywhere Explorer for UltraLite, see [“SQL Anywhere Explorer for UltraLite” \[UltraLite - .NET Programming\]](#).

## Using the SQL Anywhere Explorer

In Visual Studio, you can use the SQL Anywhere Explorer to create connections to SQL Anywhere databases. Once you connect to a database, you can:

- view the tables, views, and procedures in the database
- view the data stored in tables and views
- design programs to open connections with the SQL Anywhere database, or to retrieve and manipulate data
- drag and drop database objects onto C# or Visual Basic code or forms so that the IDE automatically generates code that references the selected object

You can also open Sybase Central and Interactive SQL from Visual Studio by choosing the corresponding command from the **Tools** menu.

### Installation note

If you install SQL Anywhere software on a Windows computer that already has Visual Studio installed, the installation process detects the presence of Visual Studio and performs the necessary integration steps. If you install Visual Studio after installing SQL Anywhere, or install a new version of Visual Studio, the process to integrate SQL Anywhere with Visual Studio must be performed at a command prompt as follows:

- Ensure Visual Studio is not running.
- At a command prompt, run *install-dir\Assembly\v2\SetupVSPackage.exe /install*.

## Working with database connections in Visual Studio

Use the SQL Anywhere Explorer to display the SQL Anywhere database connections under the **Data Connections** node. You must create a data connection to view the data in the tables and views.

You can list database tables, views, stored procedures, and functions in the SQL Anywhere Explorer and expand individual tables to list their columns. The properties for an object selected in the SQL Anywhere Explorer window appear in the Visual Studio **Properties** pane.

### To add a SQL Anywhere database connection in Visual Studio

1. Open the SQL Anywhere Explorer by choosing **View » SQL Anywhere Explorer**.
2. In the SQL Anywhere Explorer window, right-click **Data Connections**, and then choose **Add Connection**.
3. Select **SQL Anywhere**, and then click **OK**.
4. Enter the appropriate values to connect to your database.
5. Click **OK**.

A connection is made to the database, and the connection is added to the **Data Connections** list.

### To remove a SQL Anywhere database connection from Visual Studio

1. Open the SQL Anywhere Explorer by choosing **View » SQL Anywhere Explorer**.
2. In the SQL Anywhere Explorer window, right-click the data connections you want to remove, and then choose **Delete**.

The connection is removed from the SQL Anywhere Explorer window.

## Configuring the SQL Anywhere Explorer

The Visual Studio **Options** window includes settings that you can use to configure the SQL Anywhere Explorer.

### To access SQL Anywhere Explorer options

1. From the Visual Studio **Tools** menu, choose **Options**.
2. In the left pane of the **Options** window, expand **SQL Anywhere**.
3. Click **General** to configure the SQL Anywhere Explorer general options as required.

**Limit Query Results Sent To Output Window** Specify the number of rows that appear in the **Output** window. The default value is 500.

**Show System Objects In Server Explorer** Check this option if you want to see system objects in the Microsoft Server Explorer. This is not a SQL Anywhere Explorer option but a Server Explorer option. System objects include those owned by the "dbo" user.

**Sort Objects** Choose to sort objects in the SQL Anywhere Explorer window by object name or by object owner name.

**Generate UI Code When Dropping A Table Or View Onto The Designer** Generate the code for tables or views that you drag and drop onto the Windows forms designer.

**Generate Insert, Update, And Delete Commands For Data Adapters** Generate INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE commands for the data adapter when you drag and drop a table or view onto a C# or Visual Basic document.

**Generate Table Mappings For Data Adapters** Generate table mappings for the data adapter when you drag and drop a table onto a C# or Visual Basic document.

## Adding database objects using the SQL Anywhere Explorer

In Visual Studio, when you drag certain database objects from the SQL Anywhere Explorer and drop them onto Visual Studio designers, the IDE automatically creates new components that reference the selected objects. You can configure the settings for drag and drop operations by choosing **Tools » Options** in Visual Studio and opening the SQL Anywhere node.

For example, if you drag a stored procedure from the SQL Anywhere Explorer onto a Windows form, the IDE automatically creates a Command object preconfigured to call that stored procedure.

The following table lists the objects you can drag from the SQL Anywhere Explorer, and describes the components created when you drop them onto a Visual Studio Forms Designer or Code Editor.

Item	Result
Data connection	Creates a data connection.
Table	Creates an adapter.
View	Creates an adapter.
Stored procedure or function	Creates a command.

#### To create a new data component using the SQL Anywhere Explorer

1. Open the form or class that you want to add a data component to.
2. In the SQL Anywhere Explorer, select the object you want to use.
3. Drag the object from the SQL Anywhere Explorer to the Forms Designer or Code Editor.

## Working with tables using the SQL Anywhere Explorer

The SQL Anywhere Explorer enables you to view the properties and data for tables and views in a SQL Anywhere database from within Visual Studio.

#### To view a table or view data in Visual Studio

1. Connect to a SQL Anywhere database using the SQL Anywhere Explorer.
2. In the SQL Anywhere Explorer window, expand your database, and then expand Tables or Views, depending on the object you want to view.
3. Right-click a table or view, and then choose **Retrieve Data**.

The data in the selected table or view appears in the **Output** window in Visual Studio.

## Working with procedures and functions using the SQL Anywhere Explorer

If changes are made to a stored procedure, you can refresh the procedure from the SQL Anywhere Explorer to get the latest changes to columns or parameters.

**To refresh a procedure in Visual Studio**

1. Connect to a SQL Anywhere database.
2. Right-click the procedure and choose **Refresh**.

The parameters and columns are updated if any changes have been made to the procedure in the database.



---

# Using SQL in applications

## Contents

Executing SQL statements in applications .....	24
Preparing statements .....	26
Introduction to cursors .....	29
Working with cursors .....	32
Choosing cursor types .....	39
SQL Anywhere cursors .....	41
Describing result sets .....	58
Controlling transactions in applications .....	60

---

## Executing SQL statements in applications

The way you include SQL statements in your application depends on the application development tool and programming interface you use.

- **ADO.NET** You can execute SQL statements using a variety of ADO.NET objects. The `SACCommand` object is one example:

```
SACCommand cmd = new SACCommand(  
    "DELETE FROM Employees WHERE EmployeeID = 105", conn );  
cmd.ExecuteNonQuery();
```

See [“SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider” on page 109](#).

- **ODBC** If you are writing directly to the ODBC programming interface, your SQL statements appear in function calls. For example, the following C function call executes a DELETE statement:

```
SQLExecDirect( stmt,  
    "DELETE FROM Employees  
    WHERE EmployeeID = 105",  
    SQL_NTS );
```

See [“SQL Anywhere ODBC API” on page 463](#).

- **JDBC** If you are using the JDBC programming interface, you can execute SQL statements by invoking methods of the statement object. For example:

```
stmt.executeUpdate(  
    "DELETE FROM Employees  
    WHERE EmployeeID = 105" );
```

See [“SQL Anywhere JDBC driver” on page 501](#).

- **Embedded SQL** If you are using embedded SQL, you prefix your C language SQL statements with the keyword EXEC SQL. The code is then run through a preprocessor before compiling. For example:

```
EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE  
'DELETE FROM Employees  
WHERE EmployeeID = 105';
```

See [“SQL Anywhere embedded SQL” on page 531](#).

- **Sybase Open Client** If you use the Sybase Open Client interface, your SQL statements appear in function calls. For example, the following pair of calls executes a DELETE statement:

```
ret = ct_command( cmd, CS_LANG_CMD,  
    "DELETE FROM Employees  
    WHERE EmployeeID=105"  
    CS_NULLTERM,  
    CS_UNUSED);  
ret = ct_send(cmd);
```

See [“Sybase Open Client API” on page 839](#).

- **Application development tools** Application development tools such as the members of the Sybase Enterprise Application Studio family provide their own SQL objects, which use either ODBC (PowerBuilder) or JDBC (Power J) internally.

For more details about including SQL in your application, see your development tool documentation. If you are using ODBC or JDBC, consult the software development kit for those interfaces.

### **Applications inside the database server**

In many ways, stored procedures and triggers act as applications or parts of applications running inside the database server. You can also use many of the techniques here in stored procedures.

For more information about stored procedures and triggers, see [“Using procedures, triggers, and batches” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#).

Java classes in the database can use the JDBC interface in the same way as Java applications outside the server. This chapter discusses some aspects of JDBC. For more information about using JDBC, see [“SQL Anywhere JDBC driver” on page 501](#).

## Preparing statements

Each time a statement is sent to a database, the database server must perform the following steps:

- It must parse the statement and transform it into an internal form. This is sometimes called **preparing** the statement.
- It must verify the correctness of all references to database objects by checking, for example, that columns named in a query actually exist.
- The query optimizer generates an access plan if the statement involves joins or subqueries.
- It executes the statement after all these steps have been carried out.

### Reusing prepared statements can improve performance

If you find yourself using the same statement repeatedly, for example inserting many rows into a table, repeatedly preparing the statement causes a significant and unnecessary overhead. To remove this overhead, some database programming interfaces provide ways of using prepared statements. A **prepared statement** is a statement containing a series of placeholders. When you want to execute the statement, all you have to do is assign values to the placeholders, rather than prepare the entire statement over again.

Using prepared statements is particularly useful when carrying out many similar actions, such as inserting many rows.

Generally, using prepared statements requires the following steps:

#### 1. Prepare the statement

In this step you generally provide the statement with some placeholder character instead of the values.

#### 2. Repeatedly execute the prepared statement

In this step you supply values to be used each time the statement is executed. The statement does not have to be prepared each time.

#### 3. Drop the statement

In this step you free the resources associated with the prepared statement. Some programming interfaces handle this step automatically.

### Do not prepare statements that are used only once

In general, you should not prepare statements if they are only executed once. There is a slight performance penalty for separate preparation and execution, and it introduces unnecessary complexity into your application.

In some interfaces, however, you do need to prepare a statement to associate it with a cursor.

For information about cursors, see [“Introduction to cursors” on page 29](#).

The calls for preparing and executing statements are not a part of SQL, and they differ from interface to interface. Each of the SQL Anywhere programming interfaces provides a method for using prepared statements.

## How to use prepared statements

This section provides a brief overview of how to use prepared statements. The general procedure is the same, but the details vary from interface to interface. Comparing how to use prepared statements in different interfaces illustrates this point.

### To use a prepared statement (generic)

1. Prepare the statement.
2. Bind the parameters that will hold values in the statement.
3. Assign values to the bound parameters in the statement.
4. Execute the statement.
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 as needed.
6. Drop the statement when finished. In JDBC the Java garbage collection mechanism drops the statement.

### To use a prepared statement (ADO.NET)

1. Create an `SACommand` object holding the statement.

```
SACommand cmd = new SACommand(  
    "SELECT * FROM Employees WHERE Surname=?", conn );
```

2. Declare data types for any parameters in the statement.

Use the `SACommand.CreateParameter` method.

3. Prepare the statement using the `Prepare` method.

```
cmd.Prepare();
```

4. Execute the statement.

```
SADataReader reader = cmd.ExecuteReader();
```

For an example of preparing statements using ADO.NET, see the source code in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ADO.NET\SimpleWin32*.

### To use a prepared statement (ODBC)

1. Prepare the statement using `SQLPrepare`.
2. Bind the statement parameters using `SQLBindParameter`.
3. Execute the statement using `SQLExecute`.
4. Drop the statement using `SQLFreeStmt`.

For an example of preparing statements using ODBC, see the source code in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ODBCPrepare*.

For more information about ODBC prepared statements, see the ODBC SDK documentation, and [“Executing prepared statements” on page 483](#).

### To use a prepared statement (JDBC)

1. Prepare the statement using the `prepareStatement` method of the connection object. This returns a prepared statement object.
2. Set the statement parameters using the appropriate `setType` methods of the prepared statement object. Here, *Type* is the data type assigned.
3. Execute the statement using the appropriate method of the prepared statement object. For inserts, updates, and deletes this is the `executeUpdate` method.

For an example of preparing statements using JDBC, see the source code file `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JDBC\JDBCExample.java`.

For more information about using prepared statements in JDBC, see [“Using prepared statements for more efficient access” on page 519](#).

### To use a prepared statement (embedded SQL)

1. Prepare the statement using the EXEC SQL PREPARE statement.
2. Assign values to the parameters in the statement.
3. Execute the statement using the EXEC SQL EXECUTE statement.
4. Free the resources associated with the statement using the EXEC SQL DROP statement.

For more information about embedded SQL prepared statements, see [“PREPARE statement \[ESQL\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

### To use a prepared statement (Open Client)

1. Prepare the statement using the `ct_dynamic` function, with a `CS_PREPARE` type parameter.
2. Set statement parameters using `ct_param`.
3. Execute the statement using `ct_dynamic` with a `CS_EXECUTE` type parameter.
4. Free the resources associated with the statement using `ct_dynamic` with a `CS_DEALLOC` type parameter.

For more information about using prepared statements in Open Client, see [“Using SQL in Open Client applications” on page 844](#).

## Introduction to cursors

When you execute a query in an application, the result set consists of several rows. In general, you do not know how many rows the application is going to receive before you execute the query. Cursors provide a way of handling query result sets in applications.

The way you use cursors and the kinds of cursors available to you depend on the programming interface you use. For a list of cursor types available from each interface, see [“Availability of cursors” on page 39](#).

With cursors, you can perform the following tasks within any programming interface:

- Loop over the results of a query.
- Perform inserts, updates, and deletes on the underlying data at any point within a result set.

In addition, some programming interfaces allow you to use special features to tune the way result sets return to your application, providing substantial performance benefits for your application.

For more information about the kinds of cursors available through different programming interfaces, see [“Availability of cursors” on page 39](#).

## What are cursors?

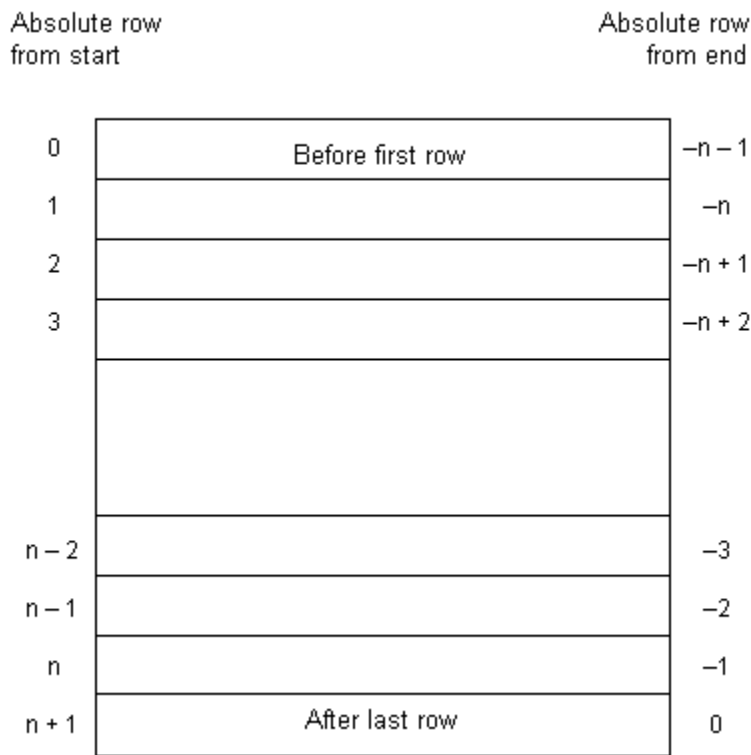
A **cursor** is a name associated with a result set. The result set is obtained from a SELECT statement or stored procedure call.

A cursor is a handle on the result set. At any time, the cursor has a well-defined position within the result set. With a cursor you can examine and possibly manipulate the data one row at a time. SQL Anywhere cursors support forward and backward movement through the query results.

### Cursor positions

Cursors can be positioned in the following places:

- Before the first row of the result set.
- On a row in the result set.
- After the last row of the result set.



The cursor position and result set are maintained in the database server. Rows are **fetch**ed by the client for display and processing either one at a time or a few at a time. The entire result set does not need to be delivered to the client.

## Benefits of using cursors

You do not need to use cursors in database applications, but they do provide several benefits. These benefits follow from the fact that if you do not use a cursor, the entire result set must be transferred to the client for processing and display:

- **Client-side memory** For large results, holding the entire result set on the client can lead to demanding memory requirements.
- **Response time** Cursors can provide the first few rows before the whole result set is assembled. If you do not use cursors, the entire result set must be delivered before any rows are displayed by your application.
- **Concurrency control** If you make updates to your data and do not use cursors in your application, you must send separate SQL statements to the database server to apply the changes. This raises the possibility of concurrency problems if the result set has changed since it was queried by the client. In turn, this raises the possibility of lost updates.



Cursors act as pointers to the underlying data, and so impose proper concurrency constraints on any changes you make.

## Working with cursors

This section describes how to perform different kinds of operations using cursors.

### Using cursors

Using a cursor in embedded SQL is different than using a cursor in other interfaces.

#### To use a cursor (ADO.NET, ODBC, JDBC, and Open Client)

1. Prepare and execute a statement.

Execute a statement using the usual method for the interface. You can prepare and then execute the statement, or you can execute the statement directly.

With ADO.NET, only the `SACommand.ExecuteReader` method returns a cursor. It provides a read-only, forward-only cursor.

2. Test to see if the statement returns a result set.

A cursor is implicitly opened when a statement that creates a result set is executed. When the cursor is opened, it is positioned before the first row of the result set.

3. Fetch results.

Although simple fetch operations move the cursor to the next row in the result set, SQL Anywhere permits more complicated movement around the result set.

4. Close the cursor.

When you have finished with the cursor, close it to free associated resources.

5. Free the statement.

If you used a prepared statement, free it to reclaim memory.

#### To use a cursor (embedded SQL)

1. Prepare a statement.

Cursors generally use a statement handle rather than a string. You need to prepare a statement to have a handle available.

For information about preparing a statement, see [“Preparing statements” on page 26](#).

2. Declare the cursor.

Each cursor refers to a single `SELECT` or `CALL` statement. When you declare a cursor, you state the name of the cursor and the statement it refers to.

For more information, see [“DECLARE CURSOR statement \[ESQL\] \[SP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

3. Open the cursor. See [“OPEN statement \[ESQL\] \[SP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

In the case of a CALL statement, opening the cursor executes the procedure up to the point where the first row is about to be obtained.

4. Fetch results.

Although simple fetch operations move the cursor to the next row in the result set, SQL Anywhere permits more complicated movement around the result set. How you declare the cursor determines which fetch operations are available to you. See [“FETCH statement \[ESQL\] \[SP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#) and [“Fetching data” on page 574](#).

5. Close the cursor.

When you have finished with the cursor, close it. This frees any resources associated with the cursor. See [“CLOSE statement \[ESQL\] \[SP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

6. Drop the statement.

To free the memory associated with the statement, you must drop the statement. See [“DROP STATEMENT statement \[ESQL\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

For more information about using cursors in embedded SQL, see [“Fetching data” on page 574](#).

### **Prefetching rows**

In some cases, the interface library may undertake performance optimizations internally (such as prefetching results), so these steps in the client application may not correspond exactly to software operations.

## **Cursor positioning**

When a cursor is opened, it is positioned before the first row. You can move the cursor position to an absolute position from the start or the end of the query results, or to a position relative to the current cursor position. The specifics of how you change cursor position, and what operations are possible, are governed by the programming interface.

The number of row positions you can fetch in a cursor is governed by the size of an integer. You can fetch rows numbered up to number 2147483646, which is one less than the value that can be held in an integer. When using negative numbers (rows from the end) you can fetch down to one more than the largest negative value that can be held in an integer.

You can use special positioned update and delete operations to update or delete the row at the current position of the cursor. If the cursor is positioned before the first row or after the last row, an error is returned indicating that there is no corresponding cursor row.

### Cursor positioning problems

Inserts and some updates to asensitive cursors can cause problems with cursor positioning. SQL Anywhere does not put inserted rows at a predictable position within a cursor unless there is an ORDER BY clause on the SELECT statement. In some cases, the inserted row does not appear at all until the cursor is closed and opened again. With SQL Anywhere, this occurs if a work table had to be created to open the cursor. See [“Use work tables in query processing \(use All-rows optimization goal\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#).

The UPDATE statement may cause a row to move in the cursor. This happens if the cursor has an ORDER BY clause that uses an existing index (a work table is not created). Using STATIC SCROLL cursors alleviates these problems but requires more memory and processing.

## Configuring cursors on opening

You can configure the following aspects of cursor behavior when you open the cursor:

- **Isolation level** You can explicitly set the isolation level of operations on a cursor to be different from the current isolation level of the transaction. To do this, set the `isolation_level` option. See [“isolation\\_level option \[database\] \[compatibility\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).
- **Holding** By default, cursors in embedded SQL close at the end of a transaction. Opening a cursor WITH HOLD allows you to keep it open until the end of a connection, or until you explicitly close it. ADO.NET, ODBC, JDBC, and Open Client leave cursors open at the end of transactions by default.

## Fetching rows through a cursor

The simplest way of processing the result set of a query using a cursor is to loop through all the rows of the result set until there are no more rows.

### To loop through the rows of a result set

1. Declare and open the cursor (embedded SQL), or execute a statement that returns a result set (ODBC, JDBC, Open Client) or `SADataReader` object (ADO.NET).
2. Continue to fetch the next row until you get a `Row Not Found` error.
3. Close the cursor.

How step 2 of this operation is carried out depends on the interface you use. For example,

- **ADO.NET** Use the `SADataReader.NextResult` method. See [“NextResult method” on page 340](#).
- **ODBC** `SQLFetch`, `SQLExtendedFetch`, or `SQLFetchScroll` advances the cursor to the next row and returns the data.

For more information about using cursors in ODBC, see [“Working with result sets” on page 491](#).

- **JDBC** The next method of the ResultSet object advances the cursor and returns the data.  
For more information about using the ResultSet object in JDBC, see [“Returning result sets” on page 523](#).
- **Embedded SQL** The FETCH statement carries out the same operation.  
For more information about using cursors in embedded SQL, see [“Using cursors in embedded SQL” on page 575](#).
- **Open Client** The ct\_fetch function advances the cursor to the next row and returns the data.  
For more information about using cursors in Open Client applications, see [“Using cursors” on page 844](#).

## Fetching multiple rows

Multiple-row fetching should not be confused with prefetching rows. Multiple row fetching is performed by the application, while prefetching is transparent to the application, and provides a similar performance gain. Fetching multiple rows at a time can improve performance.

### Multiple-row fetches

Some interfaces provide methods for fetching more than one row at a time into the next several fields in an array. Generally, the fewer separate fetch operations you execute, the fewer individual requests the server must respond to, and the better the performance. A modified FETCH statement that retrieves multiple rows is also sometimes called a **wide fetch**. Cursors that use multiple-row fetches are sometimes called **block cursors** or **fat cursors**.

### Using multiple-row fetching

- In ODBC, you can set the number of rows that will be returned on each call to SQLFetchScroll or SQLExtendedFetch by setting the SQL\_ATTR\_ROW\_ARRAY\_SIZE or SQL\_ROWSET\_SIZE attribute.
- In embedded SQL, the FETCH statement uses an ARRAY clause to control the number of rows fetched at a time.
- Open Client and JDBC do not support multi-row fetches. They do use prefetching.

## Fetching with scrollable cursors

ODBC and embedded SQL provide methods for using scrollable cursors and dynamic scrollable cursors. These methods allow you to move several rows forward at a time, or to move backward through the result set.

The JDBC and Open Client interfaces do not support scrollable cursors.

Prefetching does not apply to scrollable operations. For example, fetching a row in the reverse direction does not prefetch several previous rows.

## Modifying rows through a cursor

Cursors can do more than just read result sets from a query. You can also modify data in the database while processing a cursor. These operations are commonly called **positioned** insert, update, and delete operations, or PUT operations if the action is an insert.

Not all query result sets allow positioned updates and deletes. If you perform a query on a non-updatable view, then no changes occur to the underlying tables. Also, if the query involves a join, then you must specify which table you want to delete from, or which columns you want to update, when you perform the operations.

Inserts through a cursor can only be executed if any non-inserted columns in the table allow NULL or have defaults.

If multiple rows are inserted into a value-sensitive (keyset driven) cursor, they appear at the end of the cursor result set. The rows appear at the end, even if they do not match the WHERE clause of the query or if an ORDER BY clause would normally have placed them at another location in the result set. This behavior is independent of programming interface. For example, it applies when using the embedded SQL PUT statement or the ODBC SQLBulkOperations function. The value of an autoincrement column for the most recent row inserted can be found by selecting the last row in the cursor. For example, in embedded SQL the value could be obtained using `FETCH ABSOLUTE -1 cursor-name`. As a result of this behavior, the first multiple-row insert for a value-sensitive cursor may be expensive.

ODBC, JDBC, embedded SQL, and Open Client permit data modification using cursors, but ADO.NET does not. With Open Client, you can delete and update rows, but you can only insert rows on a single-table query.

### Which table are rows deleted from?

If you attempt a positioned delete through a cursor, the table from which rows are deleted is determined as follows:

1. If no FROM clause is included in the DELETE statement, the cursor must be on a single table only.
2. If the cursor is for a joined query (including using a view containing a join), then the FROM clause must be used. Only the current row of the specified table is deleted. The other tables involved in the join are not affected.
3. If a FROM clause is included, and no table owner is specified, the table-spec value is first matched against any correlation names. See [“FROM clause” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).
4. If a correlation name exists, the table-spec value is identified with the correlation name.
5. If a correlation name does not exist, the table-spec value must be unambiguously identifiable as a table name in the cursor.
6. If a FROM clause is included, and a table owner is specified, the table-spec value must be unambiguously identifiable as a table name in the cursor.
7. The positioned DELETE statement can be used on a cursor open on a view as long as the view is updatable.

---

## Understanding updatable statements

This section describes how clauses in the `SELECT` statement affect updatable statements and cursors.

### Updatability of read-only statements

Specifying `FOR READ ONLY` in the cursor declaration, or including a `FOR READ ONLY` clause in the statement, renders the statement read-only. In other words, a `FOR READ ONLY` clause, or the appropriate read-only cursor declaration when using a client API, overrides any other updatability specification.

If the outermost block of a `SELECT` statement contains an `ORDER BY` clause, and the statement does not specify `FOR UPDATE`, then the cursor is `READ ONLY`. If the SQL `SELECT` statement specifies `FOR XML`, then the cursor is `READ ONLY`. Otherwise, the cursor is updatable.

### Updatable statements and concurrency control

For updatable statements, SQL Anywhere provides both optimistic and pessimistic concurrency control mechanisms on cursors to ensure that a result set remains consistent during scrolling operations. These mechanisms are alternatives to using `INSENSITIVE` cursors or snapshot isolation, although they have different semantics and tradeoffs.

The specification of `FOR UPDATE` can affect whether a cursor is updatable. However, in SQL Anywhere, the `FOR UPDATE` syntax has no other effect on concurrency control. If `FOR UPDATE` is specified with additional parameters, SQL Anywhere alters the processing of the statement to incorporate one of two concurrency control options as follows:

- **Pessimistic** For all rows fetched in the cursor's result set, the database server acquires intent row locks to prevent the rows from being updated by any other transaction.
- **Optimistic** The cursor type used by the database server is changed to a keyset-driven cursor (insensitive row membership, value-sensitive) so that the application can be informed when a row in the result has been modified or deleted by this, or any other transaction.

Pessimistic or optimistic concurrency is specified at the cursor level either through options with `DECLARE CURSOR` or `FOR` statements, or through the concurrency setting API for a specific programming interface. If a statement is updatable and the cursor does not specify a concurrency control mechanism, the statement's specification is used. The syntax is as follows:

- **FOR UPDATE BY LOCK** The database server acquires intent row locks on fetched rows of the result set. These are long-term locks that are held until transaction `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK`.
- **FOR UPDATE BY { VALUES | TIMESTAMP }** The database server utilizes a keyset-driven cursor to enable the application to be informed when rows have been modified or deleted as the result set is scrolled.

For more information, see “[DECLARE statement](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)], and “[FOR statement](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].

### Restricting updatable statements

`FOR UPDATE ( column-list )` enforces the restriction that only named result set attributes can be modified in a subsequent `UPDATE WHERE CURRENT OF` statement.

## Canceling cursor operations

You can cancel a request through an interface function. From Interactive SQL, you can cancel a request by clicking Interrupt SQL Statement on the toolbar (or by choosing Stop from the SQL menu).

If you cancel a request that is carrying out a cursor operation, the position of the cursor is indeterminate. After canceling the request, you must locate the cursor by its absolute position, or close it.



---

## Choosing cursor types

This section describes mappings between SQL Anywhere cursors and the options available to you from the programming interfaces supported by SQL Anywhere.

For information about SQL Anywhere cursors, see [“SQL Anywhere cursors” on page 41](#).

## Availability of cursors

Not all interfaces provide support for all types of cursors.

- ADO.NET provides only forward-only, read-only cursors.
- ADO/OLE DB and ODBC support all types of cursors.  
For more information, see [“Working with result sets” on page 491](#).
- Embedded SQL supports all types of cursors.
- For JDBC:
  - The iAnywhere JDBC driver supports the JDBC 2.0 and JDBC 3.0 specifications and permits the declaration of insensitive, sensitive, and forward-only asensitive cursors.
  - jConnect 5.5 and 6.0.5 support the declaration of insensitive, sensitive, and forward-only asensitive cursors in the same manner as the iAnywhere JDBC driver. However, the underlying implementation of jConnect only supports asensitive cursor semantics.  
For more information about declaring JDBC cursors, see [“Requesting SQL Anywhere cursors” on page 55](#).
- Sybase Open Client supports only asensitive cursors. Also, a severe performance penalty results when using updatable, non-unique cursors.

## Cursor properties

You request a cursor type, either explicitly or implicitly, from the programming interface. Different interface libraries offer different choices of cursor types. For example, JDBC and ODBC specify different cursor types.

Each cursor type is defined by several characteristics:

- **Uniqueness** Declaring a cursor to be unique forces the query to return all the columns required to uniquely identify each row. Often this means returning all the columns in the primary key. Any columns required but not specified are added to the result set. The default cursor type is non-unique.
- **Updatability** A cursor declared as read only cannot be used in a positioned update or delete operation. The default cursor type is updatable.

- **Scrollability** You can declare cursors to behave different ways as you move through the result set. Some cursors can fetch only the current row or the following row. Others can move backward and forward through the result set.
- **Sensitivity** Changes to the database may or may not be visible through a cursor.

These characteristics may have significant side effects on performance and on database server memory usage.

SQL Anywhere makes available cursors with a variety of mixes of these characteristics. When you request a cursor of a given type, SQL Anywhere tries to match those characteristics.

There are some occasions when not all characteristics can be supplied. For example, insensitive cursors in SQL Anywhere must be read-only. If your application requests an updatable insensitive cursor, a different cursor type (value-sensitive) is supplied instead.

## Bookmarks and cursors

ODBC provides **bookmarks**, or values, used to identify rows in a cursor. SQL Anywhere supports bookmarks for value-sensitive and insensitive cursors. For example, this means that the ODBC cursor types `SQL_CURSOR_STATIC` and `SQL_CURSOR_KEYSET_DRIVEN` support bookmarks while cursor types `SQL_CURSOR_DYNAMIC` and `SQL_CURSOR_FORWARD_ONLY` do not.

## Block cursors

ODBC provides a cursor type called a block cursor. When you use a `BLOCK` cursor, you can use `SQLFetchScroll` or `SQLExtendedFetch` to fetch a block of rows, rather than a single row. Block cursors behave identically to embedded SQL `ARRAY` fetches.

## SQL Anywhere cursors

Any cursor, once opened, has an associated result set. The cursor is kept open for a length of time. During that time, the result set associated with the cursor may be changed, either through the cursor itself or, subject to isolation level requirements, by other transactions. Some cursors permit changes to the underlying data to be visible, while others do not reflect these changes. A sensitivity to changes to the underlying data causes different cursor behavior, or **cursor sensitivity**.

SQL Anywhere provides cursors with a variety of sensitivity characteristics. This section describes what sensitivity is, and describes the sensitivity characteristics of cursors.

This section assumes that you have read [“What are cursors?” on page 29](#).

### Membership, order, and value changes

Changes to the underlying data can affect the result set of a cursor in the following ways:

- **Membership** The set of rows in the result set, as identified by their primary key values.
- **Order** The order of the rows in the result set.
- **Value** The values of the rows in the result set.

For example, consider the following simple table with employee information (EmployeeID is the primary key column):

EmployeeID	Surname
1	Whitney
2	Cobb
3	Chin

A cursor on the following query returns all results from the table in primary key order:

```
SELECT EmployeeID, Surname
FROM Employees
ORDER BY EmployeeID;
```

The membership of the result set could be changed by adding a new row or deleting a row. The values could be changed by changing one of the names in the table. The order could be changed by changing the primary key value of one of the employees.

### Visible and invisible changes

Subject to isolation level requirements, the membership, order, and values of the result set of a cursor can be changed after the cursor is opened. Depending on the type of cursor in use, the result set as seen by the application may or may not change to reflect these changes.

Changes to the underlying data may be **visible** or **invisible** through the cursor. A visible change is a change that is reflected in the result set of the cursor. Changes to the underlying data that are not reflected in the result set seen by the cursor are invisible.

## Cursor sensitivity overview

SQL Anywhere cursors are classified by their sensitivity to changes in the underlying data. In particular, cursor sensitivity is defined in terms of which changes are visible.

- **Insensitive cursors** The result set is fixed when the cursor is opened. No changes to the underlying data are visible. See [“Insensitive cursors” on page 46](#).
- **Sensitive cursors** The result set can change after the cursor is opened. All changes to the underlying data are visible. See [“Sensitive cursors” on page 46](#).
- **Asensitive cursors** Changes may be reflected in the membership, order, or values of the result set seen through the cursor, or may not be reflected at all. See [“Asensitive cursors” on page 48](#).
- **Value-sensitive cursors** Changes to the order or values of the underlying data are visible. The membership of the result set is fixed when the cursor is opened. See [“Value-sensitive cursors” on page 49](#).

The differing requirements on cursors place different constraints on execution, and so, performance. See [“Cursor sensitivity and performance” on page 50](#).

## Cursor sensitivity example: A deleted row

This example uses a simple query to illustrate how different cursors respond to a row in the result set being deleted.

Consider the following sequence of events:

1. An application opens a cursor on the following query against the sample database.

```
SELECT EmployeeID, Surname
FROM Employees
ORDER BY EmployeeID;
```

EmployeeID	Surname
102	Whitney
105	Cobb
160	Breault
...	...

2. The application fetches the first row through the cursor (102).
3. The application fetches the next row through the cursor (105).
4. A separate transaction deletes employee 102 (Whitney) and commits the change.

The results of cursor actions in this situation depend on the cursor sensitivity:

- **Insensitive cursors** The DELETE is not reflected in either the membership or values of the results as seen through the cursor:

Action	Result
Fetch previous row	Returns the original copy of the row (102).
Fetch the first row (absolute fetch)	Returns the original copy of the row (102).
Fetch the second row (absolute fetch)	Returns the unchanged row (105).

- **Sensitive cursors** The membership of the result set has changed so that row 105 is now the first row in the result set:

Action	Result
Fetch previous row	Returns <code>Row Not Found</code> . There is no previous row.
Fetch the first row (absolute fetch)	Returns row 105.
Fetch the second row (absolute fetch)	Returns row 160.

- **Value-sensitive cursors** The membership of the result set is fixed, and so row 105 is still the second row of the result set. The DELETE is reflected in the values of the cursor, and creates an effective hole in the result set.

Action	Result
Fetch previous row	Returns <code>No current row of cursor</code> . There is a hole in the cursor where the first row used to be.
Fetch the first row (absolute fetch)	Returns <code>No current row of cursor</code> . There is a hole in the cursor where the first row used to be.
Fetch the second row (absolute fetch)	Returns row 105.

- **Asensitive cursors** For changes, the membership and values of the result set are indeterminate. The response to a fetch of the previous row, the first row, or the second row depends on the particular optimization method for the query, whether that method involved the formation of a work table, and whether the row being fetched was prefetched from the client.

The benefit of asensitive cursors is that for many applications, sensitivity is unimportant. In particular, if you are using a forward-only, read-only cursor, no underlying changes are seen. Also, if you are running at a high isolation level, underlying changes are disallowed.

## Cursor sensitivity example: An updated row

This example uses a simple query to illustrate how different cursor types respond to a row in the result set being updated in such a way that the order of the result set is changed.

Consider the following sequence of events:

1. An application opens a cursor on the following query against the sample database.

```
SELECT EmployeeID, Surname
FROM Employees;
```

EmployeeID	Surname
102	Whitney
105	Cobb
160	Breault
...	...

2. The application fetches the first row through the cursor (102).
3. The application fetches the next row through the cursor (105).
4. A separate transaction updates the employee ID of employee 102 (Whitney) to 165 and commits the change.

The results of the cursor actions in this situation depend on the cursor sensitivity:

- **Insensitive cursors** The UPDATE is not reflected in either the membership or values of the results as seen through the cursor:

Action	Result
Fetch previous row	Returns the original copy of the row (102).
Fetch the first row (absolute fetch)	Returns the original copy of the row (102).
Fetch the second row (absolute fetch)	Returns the unchanged row (105).

- **Sensitive cursors** The membership of the result set has changed so that row 105 is now the first row in the result set:

Action	Result
Fetch previous row	Returns <code>Row Not Found</code> . The membership of the result set has changed so that 105 is now the first row. The cursor is moved to the position before the first row.
Fetch the first row (absolute fetch)	Returns row 105.
Fetch the second row (absolute fetch)	Returns row 160.

In addition, a fetch on a sensitive cursor returns a `SQL_ROW_UPDATED_WARNING` warning if the row has changed since the last reading. The warning is given only once. Subsequent fetches of the same row do not produce the warning.

Similarly, a positioned update or delete through the cursor on a row since it was last fetched returns the `SQL_ROW_UPDATED_SINCE_READ` error. An application must fetch the row again for an update or delete on a sensitive cursor to work.

An update to any column causes the warning/error, even if the column is not referenced by the cursor. For example, a cursor on a query returning Surname would report the update even if only the Salary column was modified.

- Value-sensitive cursors** The membership of the result set is fixed, and so row 105 is still the second row of the result set. The `UPDATE` is reflected in the values of the cursor, and creates an effective "hole" in the result set.

Action	Result
Fetch previous row	Returns <code>Row Not Found</code> . The membership of the result set has changed so that 105 is now the first row: The cursor is positioned on the hole: it is before row 105.
Fetch the first row (absolute fetch)	Returns <code>No current row of cursor</code> . The membership of the result set has changed so that 105 is now the first row: The cursor is positioned on the hole: it is before row 105.
Fetch the second row (absolute fetch)	Returns row 105.

- Asensitive cursors** For changes, the membership and values of the result set are indeterminate. The response to a fetch of the previous row, the first row, or the second row depends on the particular optimization method for the query, whether that method involved the formation of a work table, and whether the row being fetched was prefetched from the client.

**No warnings or errors in bulk operations mode**

Update warning and error conditions do not occur in bulk operations mode (-b database server option).

## Insensitive cursors

These cursors have insensitive membership, order, and values. No changes made after cursor open time are visible.

Insensitive cursors are used only for read-only cursor types.

### Standards

Insensitive cursors correspond to the ISO/ANSI standard definition of insensitive cursors, and to ODBC static cursors.

### Programming interfaces

Interface	Cursor type	Comment
ODBC, ADO/OLE DB	Static	If an updatable static cursor is requested, a value-sensitive cursor is used instead.
Embedded SQL	INSENSITIVE	
JDBC	INSENSITIVE	Insensitive semantics are only supported by the iAnywhere JDBC driver.
Open Client	Unsupported	

### Description

Insensitive cursors always return rows that match the query's selection criteria, in the order specified by any `ORDER BY` clause.

The result set of an insensitive cursor is fully materialized as a work table when the cursor is opened. This has the following consequences:

- If the result set is very large, the disk space and memory requirements for managing the result set may be significant.
- No row is returned to the application before the entire result set is assembled as a work table. For complex queries, this may lead to a delay before the first row is returned to the application.
- Subsequent rows can be fetched directly from the work table, and so are returned quickly. The client library may prefetch several rows at a time, further improving performance.
- Insensitive cursors are not affected by `ROLLBACK` or `ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT`.

## Sensitive cursors

Sensitive cursors can be used for read-only or updatable cursor types.

These cursors have sensitive membership, order, and values.



## Standards

Sensitive cursors correspond to the ISO/ANSI standard definition of sensitive cursors, and to ODBC dynamic cursors.

## Programming interfaces

Interface	Cursor type	Comment
ODBC, ADO/OLE DB	Dynamic	
Embedded SQL	SENSITIVE	Also supplied in response to a request for a DYNAMIC SCROLL cursor when no work table is required and the prefetch option is set to Off.
JDBC	SENSITIVE	Sensitive cursors are fully supported by the iAnywhere JDBC driver.

## Description

Prefetching is disabled for sensitive cursors. All changes are visible through the cursor, including changes through the cursor and from other transactions. Higher isolation levels may hide some changes made in other transactions because of locking.

Changes to cursor membership, order, and all column values are all visible. For example, if a sensitive cursor contains a join, and one of the values of one of the underlying tables is modified, then all result rows composed from that base row show the new value. Result set membership and order may change at each fetch.

Sensitive cursors always return rows that match the query's selection criteria, and are in the order specified by any ORDER BY clause. Updates may affect the membership, order, and values of the result set.

The requirements of sensitive cursors place restrictions on the implementation of sensitive cursors:

- Rows cannot be prefetched, as changes to the prefetched rows would not be visible through the cursor. This may impact performance.
- Sensitive cursors must be implemented without any work tables being constructed, as changes to those rows stored as work tables would not be visible through the cursor.
- The no work table limitation restricts the choice of join method by the optimizer and therefore may impact performance.
- For some queries, the optimizer is unable to construct a plan that does not include a work table that would make a cursor sensitive.

Work tables are commonly used for sorting and grouping intermediate results. A work table is not needed for sorting if the rows can be accessed through an index. It is not possible to state exactly which queries employ work tables, but the following queries do employ them:

- UNION queries, although UNION ALL queries do not necessarily use work tables.
- Statements with an ORDER BY clause, if there is no index on the ORDER BY column.
- Any query that is optimized using a hash join.

- Many queries involving DISTINCT or GROUP BY clauses.

In these cases, SQL Anywhere either returns an error to the application, or changes the cursor type to an asensitive cursor and returns a warning.

For more information about query optimization and the use of work tables, see [“Query optimization and execution” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#).

## Asensitive cursors

These cursors do not have well-defined sensitivity in their membership, order, or values. The flexibility that is allowed in the sensitivity permits asensitive cursors to be optimized for performance.

Asensitive cursors are used only for read-only cursor types.

### Standards

Asensitive cursors correspond to the ISO/ANSI standard definition of asensitive cursors, and to ODBC cursors with unspecified sensitivity.

### Programming interfaces

Interface	Cursor type
ODBC, ADO/OLE DB	Unspecified sensitivity
Embedded SQL	DYNAMIC SCROLL

### Description

A request for an asensitive cursor places few restrictions on the methods SQL Anywhere can use to optimize the query and return rows to the application. For these reasons, asensitive cursors provide the best performance. In particular, the optimizer is free to employ any measure of materialization of intermediate results as work tables, and rows can be prefetched by the client.

SQL Anywhere makes no guarantees about the visibility of changes to base underlying rows. Some changes may be visible, others not. Membership and order may change at each fetch. In particular, updates to base rows may result in only some of the updated columns being reflected in the cursor's result.

Asensitive cursors do not guarantee to return rows that match the query's selection and order. The row membership is fixed at cursor open time, but subsequent changes to the underlying values are reflected in the results.

Asensitive cursors always return rows that matched the customer's WHERE and ORDER BY clauses at the time the cursor membership is established. If column values change after the cursor is opened, rows may be returned that no longer match WHERE and ORDER BY clauses.

## Value-sensitive cursors

For value-sensitive cursors, membership is insensitive, and the order and value of the result set is sensitive.

Value-sensitive cursors can be used for read-only or updatable cursor types.

### Standards

Value-sensitive cursors do not correspond to an ISO/ANSI standard definition. They correspond to ODBC keyset-driven cursors.

### Programming interfaces

Interface	Cursor type	Comment
ODBC, ADO/OLE DB	Keyset-driven	
Embedded SQL	SCROLL	
JDBC	INSENSITIVE and CONCUR_UPDATABLE	With the iAnywhere JDBC driver, a request for an updatable INSENSITIVE cursor is answered with a value-sensitive cursor.
Open Client and jConnect	Not supported	

### Description

If the application fetches a row composed of a base underlying row that has changed, then the application must be presented with the updated value, and the `SQL_ROW_UPDATED` status must be issued to the application. If the application attempts to fetch a row that was composed of a base underlying row that was deleted, a `SQL_ROW_DELETED` status must be issued to the application.

Changes to primary key values remove the row from the result set (treated as a delete, followed by an insert). A special case occurs when a row in the result set is deleted (either from cursor or outside) and a new row with the same key value is inserted. This will result in the new row replacing the old row where it appeared.

There is no guarantee that rows in the result set match the query's selection or order specification. Since row membership is fixed at open time, subsequent changes that make a row not match the `WHERE` clause or `ORDER BY` do not change a row's membership nor position.

All values are sensitive to changes made through the cursor. The sensitivity of membership to changes made through the cursor is controlled by the ODBC option `SQL_STATIC_SENSITIVITY`. If this option is on, then inserts through the cursor add the row to the cursor. Otherwise, they are not part of the result set. Deletes through the cursor remove the row from the result set, preventing a hole returning the `SQL_ROW_DELETED` status.

Value-sensitive cursors use a **key set table**. When the cursor is opened, SQL Anywhere populates a work table with identifying information for each row contributing to the result set. When scrolling through the

result set, the key set table is used to identify the membership of the result set, but values are obtained, if necessary, from the underlying tables.

The fixed membership property of value-sensitive cursors allows your application to remember row positions within a cursor and be assured that these positions will not change. See [“Cursor sensitivity example: A deleted row” on page 42](#).

- If a row was updated or may have been updated since the cursor was opened, SQL Anywhere returns a `SQL_ROW_UPDATED_WARNING` when the row is fetched. The warning is generated only once: fetching the same row again does not produce the warning.

An update to any column of the row causes the warning, even if the updated column is not referenced by the cursor. For example, a cursor on Surname and GivenName would report the update even if only the Birthdate column was modified. These update warning and error conditions do not occur in bulk operations mode (-b database server option) when row locking is disabled. See [“Performance aspects of bulk operations” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#), and [“Row has been updated since last time read” \[Error Messages\]](#).

- An attempt to execute a positioned update or delete on a row that has been modified since it was last fetched returns a `SQL_ROW_UPDATED_SINCE_READ` error and cancels the statement. An application must `FETCH` the row again before the `UPDATE` or `DELETE` is permitted.

An update to any column of the row causes the error, even if the updated column is not referenced by the cursor. The error does not occur in bulk operations mode. See [“Row has changed since last read -- operation canceled” \[Error Messages\]](#).

- If a row has been deleted after the cursor is opened, either through the cursor or from another transaction, a **hole** is created in the cursor. The membership of the cursor is fixed, so a row position is reserved, but the `DELETE` operation is reflected in the changed value of the row. If you fetch the row at this hole, you receive a `No Current Row of Cursor` error, indicating that there is no current row, and the cursor is left positioned on the hole. You can avoid holes by using sensitive cursors, as their membership changes along with the values. See [“No current row of cursor” \[Error Messages\]](#).

Rows cannot be prefetched for value-sensitive cursors. This requirement may impact performance in some cases.

## Inserting multiple rows

When inserting multiple rows through a value-sensitive cursor, the new rows appear at the end of the result set. See [“Modifying rows through a cursor” on page 36](#).

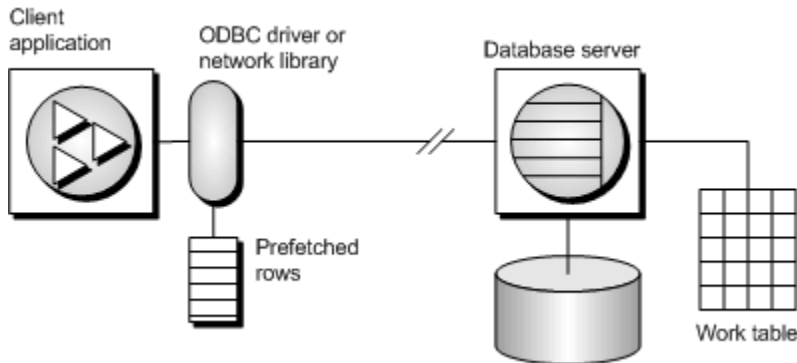
## Cursor sensitivity and performance

There is a trade-off between performance and other cursor properties. In particular, making a cursor updatable places restrictions on the cursor query processing and delivery that constrain performance. Also, putting requirements on cursor sensitivity may constrain cursor performance.

To understand how the updatability and sensitivity of cursors affects performance, you need to understand how the results that are visible through a cursor are transmitted from the database to the client application.

In particular, results may be stored at two intermediate locations for performance reasons:

- **Work tables** Either intermediate or final results may be stored as work tables. Value-sensitive cursors employ a work table of primary key values. Query characteristics may also lead the optimizer to use work tables in its chosen execution plan.
- **Prefetching** The client side of the communication may retrieve rows into a buffer on the client side to avoid separate requests to the database server for each row.



Sensitivity and updatability limit the use of intermediate locations.

## Prefetching rows

Prefetches and multiple-row fetches are different. Prefetches can be carried out without explicit instructions from the client application. Prefetching retrieves rows from the server into a buffer on the client side, but does not make those rows available to the client application until the application fetches the appropriate row.

By default, the SQL Anywhere client library prefetches multiple rows whenever an application fetches a single row. The SQL Anywhere client library stores the additional rows in a buffer.

Prefetching assists performance by cutting down on client/server round trips, and increases throughput by making many rows available without a separate request to the server for each row or block of rows.

For more information about controlling prefetches, see [“prefetch option \[database\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### Controlling prefetching from an application

- The prefetch option controls whether prefetching occurs. You can set the prefetch option to Always, Conditional, or Off for a single connection. By default, it is set to Conditional.
- In embedded SQL, you can control prefetching on a per-cursor basis when you open a cursor on an individual FETCH operation using the BLOCK clause.

The application can specify a maximum number of rows contained in a single fetch from the server by specifying the BLOCK clause. For example, if you are fetching and displaying 5 rows at a time, you could use BLOCK 5. Specifying BLOCK 0 fetches 1 record at a time and also causes a FETCH RELATIVE 0 to always fetch the row from the server again.

Although you can also turn off prefetch by setting a connection parameter on the application, it is more efficient to specify BLOCK 0 than to set the prefetch option to Off. See “[prefetch option \[database\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration](#)].

- Prefetch is disabled by default for value sensitive cursor types.
- In Open Client, you can control prefetching behavior using `ct_cursor` with `CS_CURSOR_ROWS` after the cursor is declared, but before it is opened.

Prefetch dynamically increases the number of prefetch rows in cases that are likely to result in improved performance. This includes cursors that meet the following conditions:

- They use one of the supported cursor types:
  - **ODBC and OLE DB** FORWARD-ONLY and READ-ONLY (default) cursors
  - **Embedded SQL** DYNAMIC SCROLL (default), NO SCROLL, and INSENSITIVE cursors
  - **ADO.NET** all cursors
- They perform only FETCH NEXT operations (no absolute, relative, or backward fetching).
- The application does not change the host variable type between fetches and does not use a GET DATA statement to get column data in chunks (using *one* GET DATA statement to get the value is supported).

## Lost updates

When using an updatable cursor, it is important to guard against lost updates. A lost update is a scenario in which two or more transactions update the same row, but neither transaction is aware of the modification made by the other transaction, and the second change overwrites the first modification. The following example illustrates this problem:

1. An application opens a cursor on the following query against the sample database.

```
SELECT ID, Quantity
FROM Products;
```

ID	Quantity
300	28
301	54
302	75
...	...

2. The application fetches the row with ID = 300 through the cursor.
3. A separate transaction updates the row using the following statement:

```
UPDATE Products
SET Quantity = Quantity - 10
WHERE ID = 300;
```

4. The application then updates the row through the cursor to a value of (Quantity - 5 ).
5. The correct final value for the row would be 13. If the cursor had prefetched the row, the new value of the row would be 23. The update from the separate transaction is lost.

In a database application, the potential for a lost update exists at any isolation level if changes are made to rows without verification of their values beforehand. At higher isolation levels (2 and 3), locking (read, intent, and write locks) can be used to ensure that changes to rows cannot be made by another transaction once the row has been read by the application. However, at isolation levels 0 and 1, the potential for lost updates is greater: at isolation level 0, read locks are not acquired to prevent subsequent changes to the data, and isolation level 1 only locks the current row. Lost updates cannot occur when using snapshot isolation since any attempt to change an old value results in an update conflict. Also, the use of prefetching at isolation level 1 can also introduce the potential for lost updates, since the result set row that the application is positioned on, which is in the client's prefetch buffer, may not be the same as the current row that the server is positioned on in the cursor.

To prevent lost updates from occurring with cursors at isolation level 1, the database server supports three different concurrency control mechanisms that can be specified by an application:

1. The acquisition of intent row locks on each row in the cursor as it is fetched. Intent locks prevent other transactions from acquiring intent or write locks on the same row, preventing simultaneous updates. However, intent locks do not block read row locks, so they do not affect the concurrency of read-only statements
2. The use of a value-sensitive cursor. Value-sensitive cursors can be used to track when an underlying row has changed, or has been deleted, so that the application can respond.
3. The use of FETCH FOR UPDATE, which acquires an intent row lock for that specific row.

How these alternatives are specified depends on the interface used by the application. For the first two alternatives that pertain to a SELECT statement:

- In ODBC, lost updates cannot occur because the application must specify a cursor concurrency parameter to the SQLSetStmtAttr function when declaring an updatable cursor. This parameter is one of SQL\_CONCUR\_LOCK, SQL\_CONCUR\_VALUES, SQL\_CONCUR\_READ\_ONLY, or SQL\_CONCUR\_TIMESTAMP. For SQL\_CONCUR\_LOCK, the database server acquires row intent locks. For SQL\_CONCUR\_VALUES and SQL\_CONCUR\_TIMESTAMP, a value-sensitive cursor is used. SQL\_CONCUR\_READ\_ONLY is used for read-only cursors, and is the default.
- In JDBC, the concurrency setting for a statement is similar to that of ODBC. The iAnywhere JDBC driver supports the JDBC concurrency values RESULTSET\_CONCUR\_READ\_ONLY and RESULTSET\_CONCUR\_UPDATABLE. The first value corresponds to the ODBC concurrency setting SQL\_CONCUR\_READ\_ONLY and specifies a read-only statement. The second value corresponds to the ODBC SQL\_CONCUR\_LOCK setting, so row intent locks are used to prevent lost updates. Note that value-sensitive cursors cannot be specified directly in the JDBC 3.0 specification.
- In jConnect, updatable cursors are supported at the API level, but the underlying implementation (using TDS) does not support updates through a cursor. Instead, jConnect sends a separate UPDATE statement

to the database server to update the specific row. To avoid lost updates, the application must run at isolation level 2 or higher. Alternatively, the application can issue separate UPDATE statements from the cursor, but you must ensure that the UPDATE statement verifies that the row values have not been altered since the row was read by placing appropriate conditions in the UPDATE statement's WHERE clause.

- In embedded SQL, a concurrency specification can be set by including syntax within the SELECT statement itself, or in the cursor declaration. In the SELECT statement, the syntax SELECT ... FOR UPDATE BY LOCK causes the database server to acquire intent row locks on the result set.

Alternatively, SELECT ... FOR UPDATE BY [ VALUES | TIMESTAMP ] causes the database server to change the cursor type to a value-sensitive cursor, so that if a specific row has been changed since the row was last read through the cursor, the application receives either a warning (SQLE\_ROW\_UPDATED\_WARNING) on a FETCH statement, or an error (SQLE\_ROW\_UPDATED\_SINCE\_READ) on an UPDATE WHERE CURRENT OF statement. If the row was deleted, the application also receives an error (SQLE\_NO\_CURRENT\_ROW).

FETCH FOR UPDATE functionality is also supported by the embedded SQL and ODBC interfaces, although the details differ depending on the API that is used.

In embedded SQL, the application uses FETCH FOR UPDATE, rather than FETCH, to cause an intent lock to be acquired on the row. In ODBC, the application uses the API call SQLSetPos with the operation argument SQL\_POSITION or SQL\_REFRESH, and the lock type argument SQL\_LOCK\_EXCLUSIVE, to acquire an intent lock on a row. In SQL Anywhere, these are long-term locks that are held until the transaction commits or rolls back.

## Cursor sensitivity and isolation levels

Both cursor sensitivity and isolation levels address the problem of concurrency control, but in different ways, and with different sets of tradeoffs.

By choosing an isolation level for a transaction (typically at the connection level), you determine the type and locks to place, and when, on rows in the database. Locks prevent other transactions from accessing or modifying rows in the database. In general, the greater the number of locks held, the lower the expected level of concurrency across concurrent transactions.

However, locks do not prevent updates from other portions of the same transaction from occurring. So, a single transaction that maintains multiple updatable cursors cannot rely on locking to prevent such problems as lost updates.

Snapshot isolation is intended to eliminate the need for read locks by ensuring that each transaction sees a consistent view of the database. The obvious advantage is that a consistent view of the database can be queried without relying on fully serializable transactions (isolation level 3), and the loss of concurrency that comes with using isolation level 3. However, snapshot isolation comes with a significant cost because copies of modified rows must be maintained to satisfy the requirements of both concurrent snapshot transactions already executing, and snapshot transactions that have yet to start. Because of this copy maintenance, the use of snapshot isolation may be inappropriate for heavy-update workloads. See [“Choosing a snapshot isolation level” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#).



Cursor sensitivity, on the other hand, determines which changes are visible (or not) to the cursor's result. Because cursor sensitivity is specified on a cursor basis, cursor sensitivity applies to both the effects of other transactions and to update activity of the same transaction, although these effects depend entirely on the cursor type specified. By setting cursor sensitivity, you are not directly determining when locks are placed on rows in the database. However, it is the combination of cursor sensitivity and isolation level that controls the various concurrency scenarios that are possible with a particular application.

## Requesting SQL Anywhere cursors

When you request a cursor type from your client application, SQL Anywhere provides a cursor. SQL Anywhere cursors are defined, not by the type as specified in the programming interface, but by the sensitivity of the result set to changes in the underlying data. Depending on the cursor type you ask for, SQL Anywhere provides a cursor with behavior to match the type.

SQL Anywhere cursor sensitivity is set in response to the client cursor type request.

## ADO.NET

Forward-only, read-only cursors are available by using `SACCommand.ExecuteReader`. The `SADDataAdapter` object uses a client-side result set instead of cursors. See [“SACCommand class” on page 206](#).

## ADO/OLE DB and ODBC

The following table illustrates the cursor sensitivity that is set in response to different ODBC scrollable cursor types.

ODBC scrollable cursor type	SQL Anywhere cursor
STATIC	Insensitive
KEYSET-DRIVEN	Value-sensitive
DYNAMIC	Sensitive
MIXED	Value-sensitive

A MIXED cursor is obtained by setting the cursor type to `SQL_CURSOR_KEYSET_DRIVEN`, and then specifying the number of rows in the keyset for a keyset-driven cursor using `SQL_ATTR_KEYSET_SIZE`. If the keyset size is 0 (the default), the cursor is fully keyset-driven. If the keyset size is greater than 0, the cursor is mixed (keyset-driven within the keyset and dynamic outside the keyset). The default keyset size is 0. It is an error if the keyset size is greater than 0 and less than the rowset size (`SQL_ATTR_ROW_ARRAY_SIZE`).

For information about SQL Anywhere cursors and their behavior, see [“SQL Anywhere cursors” on page 41](#).

For information about how to request a cursor type in ODBC, see [“Choosing ODBC cursor characteristics” on page 492](#).

### Exceptions

If a STATIC cursor is requested as updatable, a value-sensitive cursor is supplied instead and a warning is issued.

If a DYNAMIC or MIXED cursor is requested and the query cannot be executed without using work tables, a warning is issued and an asensitive cursor is supplied instead.

## JDBC

The JDBC 2.0 and 3.0 specifications support three types of cursors: insensitive, sensitive, and forward-only asensitive. The iAnywhere JDBC driver is compliant with these JDBC specifications and supports these different cursor types for a JDBC ResultSet object. However, there are cases when the database server cannot construct an access plan with the required semantics for a given cursor type. In these cases, the database server either returns an error or substitutes a different cursor type. See [“Sensitive cursors” on page 46](#).

With jConnect, the underlying protocol (TDS) only supports forward-only, read-only asensitive cursors on the database server, even though jConnect supports the APIs for creating different types of cursors following the JDBC 2.0 specification. All jConnect cursors are asensitive because the TDS protocol buffers the statement's result set in blocks. These blocks of buffered results are scrolled when the application needs to scroll through an insensitive or sensitive cursor type that supports scrollability. If the application scrolls backward past the beginning of the cached result set, the statement is re-executed, which can result in data inconsistencies if the data has been altered between statement executions.

## Embedded SQL

To request a cursor from an embedded SQL application, you specify the cursor type on the DECLARE statement. The following table illustrates the cursor sensitivity that is set in response to different requests:

Cursor type	SQL Anywhere cursor
NO SCROLL	Asensitive
DYNAMIC SCROLL	Asensitive
SCROLL	Value-sensitive
INSENSITIVE	Insensitive
SENSITIVE	Sensitive

**Exceptions**

If a DYNAMIC SCROLL or NO SCROLL cursor is requested as UPDATABLE, then a sensitive or value-sensitive cursor is supplied. It is not guaranteed which of the two is supplied. This uncertainty fits the definition of asensitive behavior.

If an INSENSITIVE cursor is requested as UPDATABLE, then a value-sensitive cursor is supplied.

If a DYNAMIC SCROLL cursor is requested, if the prefetch database option is set to Off, and if the query execution plan involves no work tables, then a sensitive cursor may be supplied. Again, this uncertainty fits the definition of asensitive behavior.

**Open Client**

As with jConnect, the underlying protocol (TDS) for Open Client only supports forward-only, read-only, asensitive cursors.

## Describing result sets

Some applications build SQL statements that cannot be completely specified in the application. In some cases, for example, statements depend on a response from the user before the application knows exactly what information to retrieve, such as when a reporting application allows a user to select which columns to display.

In such a case, the application needs a method for retrieving information about both the nature of the **result set** and the contents of the result set. The information about the nature of the result set, called a **descriptor**, identifies the data structure, including the number and type of columns expected to be returned. Once the application has determined the nature of the result set, retrieving the contents is straightforward.

This **result set metadata** (information about the nature and content of the data) is manipulated using descriptors. Obtaining and managing the result set metadata is called **describing**.

Since cursors generally produce result sets, descriptors and cursors are closely linked, although some interfaces hide the use of descriptors from the user. Typically, statements needing descriptors are either SELECT statements or stored procedures that return result sets.

A sequence for using a descriptor with a cursor-based operation is as follows:

1. Allocate the descriptor. This may be done implicitly, although some interfaces allow explicit allocation as well.
2. Prepare the statement.
3. Describe the statement. If the statement is a stored procedure call or batch, and the result set is not defined by a result clause in the procedure definition, then the describe should occur after opening the cursor.
4. Declare and open a cursor for the statement (embedded SQL) or execute the statement.
5. Get the descriptor and modify the allocated area if necessary. This is often done implicitly.
6. Fetch and process the statement results.
7. Deallocate the descriptor.
8. Close the cursor.
9. Drop the statement. Some interfaces do this automatically.

### Implementation notes

- In embedded SQL, a SQLDA (SQL Descriptor Area) structure holds the descriptor information. See [“The SQL descriptor area \(SQLDA\)” on page 565](#).
- In ODBC, a descriptor handle allocated using SQLAllocHandle provides access to the fields of a descriptor. You can manipulate these fields using SQLSetDescRec, SQLSetDescField, SQLGetDescRec, and SQLGetDescField.

Alternatively, you can use SQLDescribeCol and SQLColAttributes to obtain column information.

- In Open Client, you can use ct\_dynamic to prepare a statement and ct\_describe to describe the result set of the statement. However, you can also use ct\_command to send a SQL statement without preparing it

first and use `ct_results` to handle the returned rows one by one. This is the more common way of operating in Open Client application development.

- In JDBC, the `java.sql.ResultSetMetaData` class provides information about result sets.
- You can also use descriptors for sending data to the database server (for example, with the INSERT statement); however, this is a different kind of descriptor than for result sets.

For more information about input and output parameters of the DESCRIBE statement, see [“DESCRIBE statement \[ESQL\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

## Controlling transactions in applications

Transactions are sets of atomic SQL statements. Either all statements in the transaction are executed, or none. This section describes a few aspects of transactions in applications.

For more information about transactions, see [“Using transactions and isolation levels” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#).

## Setting autocommit or manual commit mode

Database programming interfaces can operate in either **manual commit** mode or **autocommit** mode.

- **Manual commit mode** Operations are committed only when your application carries out an explicit commit operation or when the database server carries out an automatic commit, for example when executing an ALTER TABLE statement or other data definition statement. Manual commit mode is also sometimes called **chained mode**.

To use transactions in your application, including nested transactions and savepoints, you must operate in manual commit mode.

- **Autocommit mode** Each statement is treated as a separate transaction. Autocommit mode is equivalent to appending a COMMIT statement to the end of each of your SQL statements. Autocommit mode is also sometimes called **unchained mode**.

Autocommit mode can affect the performance and behavior of your application. Do not use autocommit if your application requires transactional integrity.

For information about how autocommit mode affects performance, see [“Turn off autocommit mode” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#).

## Controlling autocommit behavior

The way to control the commit behavior of your application depends on the programming interface you are using. The implementation of autocommit may be client-side or server-side, depending on the interface. See [“Autocommit implementation details” on page 62](#).

### To control autocommit mode (ADO.NET)

- By default, the ADO.NET provider operates in autocommit mode. To use explicit transactions, use the `SACConnection.BeginTransaction` method. See [“Transaction processing” on page 136](#).

### To control autocommit mode (OLE DB)

- By default, the OLE DB provider operates in autocommit mode. To use explicit transactions, use the `ITransactionLocal::StartTransaction`, `ITransaction::Commit`, and `ITransaction::Abort` methods.

### To control autocommit mode (ODBC)

- By default, ODBC operates in autocommit mode. The way you turn off autocommit depends on whether you are using ODBC directly, or using an application development tool. If you are programming directly to the ODBC interface, set the `SQL_ATTR_AUTOCOMMIT` connection attribute.

### To control autocommit mode (JDBC)

- By default, JDBC operates in autocommit mode. To turn off autocommit, use the `setAutoCommit` method of the connection object:

```
conn.setAutoCommit( false );
```

### To control autocommit mode (embedded SQL)

- By default, embedded SQL applications operate in manual commit mode. To turn on autocommit, set the chained database option (a server-side option) to Off using a statement such as the following:

```
SET OPTION chained='Off';
```

### To control autocommit mode (Open Client)

- By default, a connection made through Open Client operates in autocommit mode. You can change this behavior by setting the chained database option (a server-side option) to On in your application using a statement such as the following:

```
SET OPTION chained='On';
```

### To control autocommit mode (PHP)

- By default, PHP operates in autocommit mode. To turn off autocommit, use the `sqlanywhere_set_option` function:

```
$result = sasql_set_option( $conn, "auto_commit", "Off" );
```

See [“sasql\\_set\\_option” on page 772](#).

### To control autocommit mode (on the server)

- By default, the database server operates in manual commit mode. To turn on automatic commits, set the chained database option (a server-side option) to Off using a statement such as the following:

```
SET OPTION chained='Off';
```

If you are using an interface that controls commits on the client side, setting the chained database option (a server-side option) can impact performance and/or behavior of your application. Setting the server's chained mode is not recommended.

See [“Setting autocommit or manual commit mode” on page 60](#).

## Autocommit implementation details

Autocommit mode has slightly different behavior depending on the interface you are using and how you control the autocommit behavior.

Autocommit mode can be implemented in one of two ways:

- **Client-side autocommit** When an application uses autocommit, the client-library sends a COMMIT statement after each SQL statement executed.

ADO.NET, ADO/OLE DB, ODBC, and PHP applications control commit behavior from the client side.

- **Server-side autocommit** When an application turns off chained mode, the database server commits the results of each SQL statement. This behavior is controlled, implicitly in the case of JDBC, by the chained database option.

Embedded SQL, JDBC, and Open Client applications manipulate server-side commit behavior (for example, they set the chained option).

There is a difference between client-side and server-side autocommit in the case of compound statements such as stored procedures or triggers. From the client side, a stored procedure is a single statement, and so autocommit sends a single commit statement after the whole procedure is executed. From the database server perspective, the stored procedure may be composed of many SQL statements, and so server-side autocommit commits the results of each SQL statement within the procedure.

### **Do not mix client-side and server-side implementations**

Do not combine setting of the chained option with setting of the autocommit option in your ADO.NET, ADO/OLE DB, ODBC, or PHP application.

## Controlling the isolation level

You can set the isolation level of a current connection using the `isolation_level` database option.

Some interfaces, such as ODBC, allow you to set the isolation level for a connection at connection time. You can reset this level later using the `isolation_level` database option. See [“isolation\\_level option \[database\] \[compatibility\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## Cursors and transactions

In general, a cursor closes when a COMMIT is performed. There are two exceptions to this behavior:

- The `close_on_endtrans` database option is set to Off.
- A cursor is opened WITH HOLD, which is the default with Open Client and JDBC.

If either of these two cases is true, the cursor remains open on a COMMIT.



### **ROLLBACK and cursors**

If a transaction rolls back, then cursors close except for those cursors opened WITH HOLD. However, don't rely on the contents of any cursor after a rollback.

The draft ISO SQL3 standard states that on a rollback, all cursors (even those cursors opened WITH HOLD) should close. You can obtain this behavior by setting the `ansi_close_cursors_on_rollback` option to On.

### **Savepoints**

If a transaction rolls back to a savepoint, and if the `ansi_close_cursors_on_rollback` option is On, then all cursors (even those cursors opened WITH HOLD) opened after the SAVEPOINT close.

### **Cursors and isolation levels**

You can change the isolation level of a connection during a transaction using the SET OPTION statement to alter the `isolation_level` option. However, this change does not affect open cursors.

A snapshot of all rows committed at the snapshot start time is visible when the WITH HOLD clause is used with the snapshot, statement-snapshot, and readonly-statement-snapshot isolation levels. Also visible are all modifications completed by the current connection since the start of the transaction within which the cursor was open. For more details about supported isolation levels, see [“Isolation levels and consistency” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#) and [“isolation\\_level option \[database\] \[compatibility\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

---

---

# Three-tier computing and distributed transactions

## Contents

Introduction to three-tier computing and distributed transactions .....	66
Three-tier computing architecture .....	67
Using distributed transactions .....	70
Using EAServer with SQL Anywhere .....	72

---

## Introduction to three-tier computing and distributed transactions

You can use SQL Anywhere as a database server or **resource manager**, participating in distributed transactions coordinated by a transaction server.

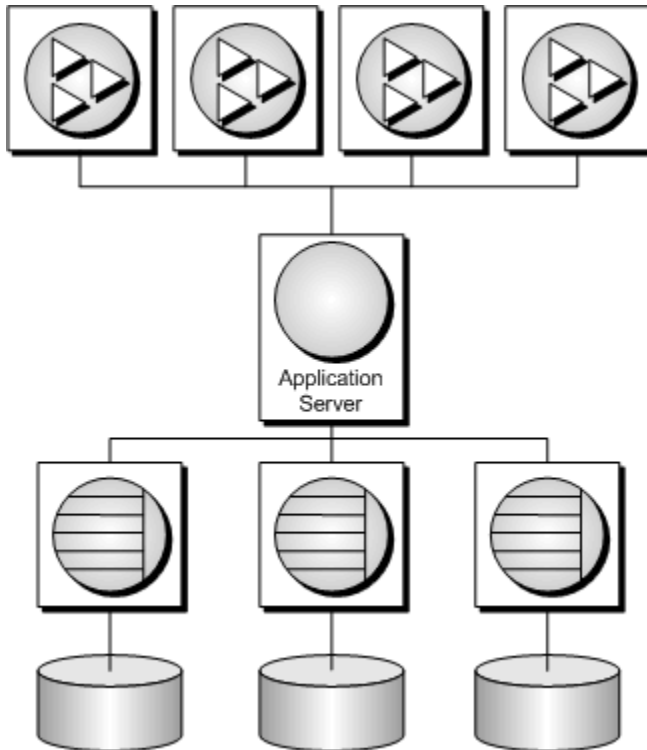
A three-tier environment, where an application server sits between client applications and a set of resource managers, is a common distributed-transaction environment. Sybase EAServer and some other application servers are also transaction servers.

Sybase EAServer and Microsoft Transaction Server both use the Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (DTC) to coordinate transactions. SQL Anywhere provides support for distributed transactions controlled by the DTC service, so you can use SQL Anywhere with either of these application servers, or any other product based on the DTC model.

When integrating SQL Anywhere into a three-tier environment, most of the work needs to be done from the Application Server. This chapter provides an introduction to the concepts and architecture of three-tier computing, and an overview of relevant SQL Anywhere features. It does not describe how to configure your Application Server to work with SQL Anywhere. For more information, see your Application Server documentation.

## Three-tier computing architecture

In three-tier computing, application logic is held in an application server, such as Sybase EAServer, which sits between the resource manager and the client applications. In many situations, a single application server may access multiple resource managers. In the Internet case, client applications are browser-based, and the application server is generally a web server extension.



Sybase EAServer stores application logic in the form of components, and makes these components available to client applications. The components may be PowerBuilder components, JavaBeans, or COM components.

For more information, see your Sybase EAServer documentation.

## Distributed transactions in three-tier computing

When client applications or application servers work with a single transaction processing database, such as SQL Anywhere, there is no need for transaction logic outside the database itself, but when working with multiple resource managers, transaction control must span the resources involved in the transaction. Application servers provide transaction logic to their client applications—guaranteeing that sets of operations are executed atomically.

Many transaction servers, including Sybase EAServer, use the Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (DTC) to provide transaction services to their client applications. DTC uses **OLE**

**transactions**, which in turn use the **two-phase commit** protocol to coordinate transactions involving multiple resource managers. You must have DTC installed to use the features described in this chapter.

### SQL Anywhere in distributed transactions

SQL Anywhere can take part in transactions coordinated by DTC, which means that you can use SQL Anywhere databases in distributed transactions using a transaction server such as Sybase EAServer or Microsoft Transaction Server. You can also use DTC directly in your applications to coordinate transactions across multiple resource managers.

## The vocabulary of distributed transactions

This chapter assumes some familiarity with distributed transactions. For information, see your transaction server documentation. This section describes some commonly used terms.

- **Resource managers** are those services that manage the data involved in the transaction.  
The SQL Anywhere database server can act as a resource manager in a distributed transaction when accessed through OLE DB or ODBC. The ODBC driver and OLE DB provider act as resource manager proxies on the client computer.
- Instead of communicating directly with the resource manager, application components can communicate with **resource dispensers**, which in turn manage connections or pools of connections to the resource managers.  
SQL Anywhere supports two resource dispensers: the ODBC driver manager and OLE DB.
- When a transactional component requests a database connection (using a resource manager), the application server **enlists** each database connection that takes part in the transaction. DTC and the resource dispenser perform the enlistment process.

### Two-phase commit

Distributed transactions are managed using two-phase commit. When the work of the transaction is complete, the transaction manager (DTC) asks all the resource managers enlisted in the transaction whether they are ready to commit the transaction. This phase is called **preparing** to commit.

If all the resource managers respond that they are prepared to commit, DTC sends a commit request to each resource manager, and responds to its client that the transaction is completed. If one or more resource manager does not respond, or responds that it cannot commit the transaction, all the work of the transaction is rolled back across all resource managers.

## How application servers use DTC

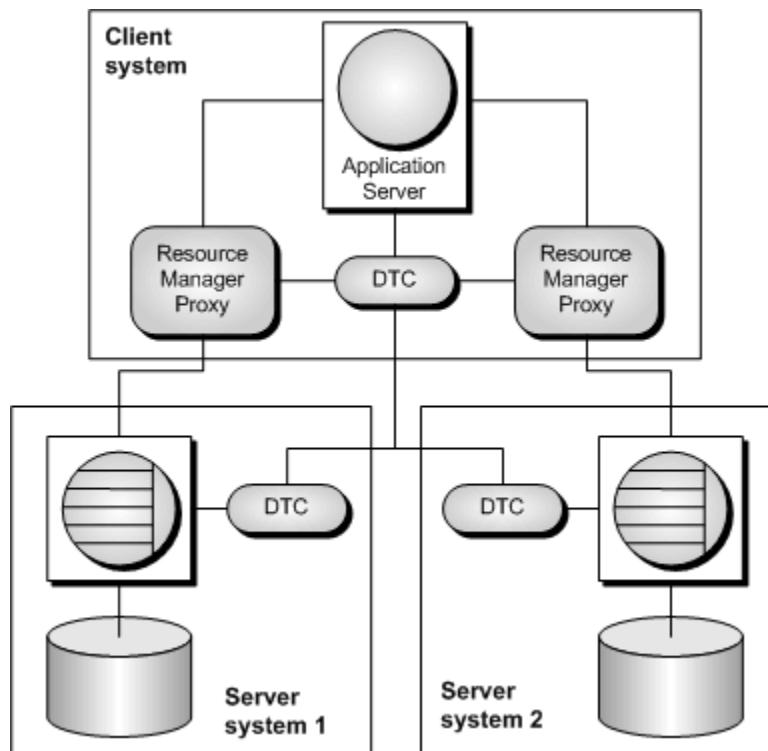
Sybase EAServer and Microsoft Transaction Server are both component servers. The application logic is held in the form of components, and made available to client applications.

Each component has a transaction attribute that indicates how the component participates in transactions. The application developer building the component must program the work of the transaction into the

component—the resource manager connections, the operations on the data for which each resource manager is responsible. However, the application developer does not need to add transaction management logic to the component. Once the transaction attribute is set, to indicate that the component needs transaction management, EAServer uses DTC to enlist the transaction and manage the two-phase commit process.

## Distributed transaction architecture

The following diagram illustrates the architecture of distributed transactions. In this case, the resource manager proxy is either ODBC or OLE DB.



In this case, a single resource dispenser is used. The Application Server asks DTC to prepare a transaction. DTC and the resource dispenser enlist each connection in the transaction. Each resource manager must be in contact with both the DTC and the database, so the work can be performed and the DTC can be notified of its transaction status when required.

A DTC service must be running on each computer to operate distributed transactions. You can control DTC services from the Services icon in the Windows Control Panel; the DTC service is named **MSDTC**.

For more information, see your DTC or EAServer documentation.

## Using distributed transactions

While SQL Anywhere is enlisted in a distributed transaction, it hands transaction control over to the transaction server, and SQL Anywhere ensures that it does not perform any implicit transaction management. The following conditions are imposed automatically by SQL Anywhere when it participates in distributed transactions:

- Autocommit is automatically turned off, if it is in use.
- Data definition statements (which commit as a side effect) are disallowed during distributed transactions.
- An explicit COMMIT or ROLLBACK issued by the application directly to SQL Anywhere, instead of through the transaction coordinator, generates an error. The transaction is not aborted, however.
- A connection can participate in only a single distributed transaction at a time.
- There must be no uncommitted operations at the time the connection is enlisted in a distributed transaction.

## DTC isolation levels

DTC has a set of isolation levels, which the application server specifies. These isolation levels map to SQL Anywhere isolation levels as follows:

DTC isolation level	SQL Anywhere isolation level
ISOLATIONLEVEL_UNSPECIFIED	0
ISOLATIONLEVEL_CHAOS	0
ISOLATIONLEVEL_READUNCOMMITTED	0
ISOLATIONLEVEL_BROWSE	0
ISOLATIONLEVEL_CURSORSTABILITY	1
ISOLATIONLEVEL_READCOMMITTED	1
ISOLATIONLEVEL_REPEATABLEREAD	2
ISOLATIONLEVEL_SERIALIZABLE	3
ISOLATIONLEVEL_ISOLATED	3



## Recovery from distributed transactions

If the database server faults while uncommitted operations are pending, it must either rollback or commit those operations on startup to preserve the atomic nature of the transaction.

If uncommitted operations from a distributed transaction are found during recovery, the database server attempts to connect to DTC and requests that it be re-enlisted in the pending or in-doubt transactions. Once the re-enlistment is complete, DTC instructs the database server to roll back or commit the outstanding operations.

If the reenlistment process fails, SQL Anywhere has no way of knowing whether the in-doubt operations should be committed or rolled back, and recovery fails. If you want the database in such a state to recover, regardless of the uncertain state of the data, you can force recovery using the following database server options:

- **-tmf** If DTC cannot be located, the outstanding operations are rolled back and recovery continues. See “-tmf server option” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].
- **-tmt** If re-enlistment is not achieved before the specified time, the outstanding operations are rolled back and recovery continues. See “-tmt server option” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

## Using EAServer with SQL Anywhere

This section provides an overview of the actions you need to take in EAServer 3.0 or later to work with SQL Anywhere. For more details, see the EAServer documentation.

### Configuring EAServer

All components installed in a Sybase EAServer system share the same transaction coordinator.

EAServer 3.0 and later offer a choice of transaction coordinators. You must use DTC as the transaction coordinator if you are including SQL Anywhere in the transactions. This section describes how to configure EAServer 3.0 to use DTC as its transaction coordinator.

The component server in EAServer is named Jaguar.

#### To configure an EAServer to use the Microsoft DTC transaction model

1. Ensure that your Jaguar server is running.

On Windows, the Jaguar server commonly runs as a service. To manually start the installed Jaguar server that is included with EAServer 3.0, choose **Start » Programs » Sybase » EAServer » EAServer**.

2. Start Jaguar Manager.

From the Windows desktop, choose **Start » Programs » Sybase » EAServer » Jaguar Manager**.

3. Connect to the Jaguar server from Jaguar Manager.

From Sybase Central, choose **Tools » Connect » Jaguar Manager**. In the connection window, enter **jagadmin** as the **User Name**, leave the **Password** field blank, and enter a **Host Name** of **localhost**. Click **OK** to connect.

4. Set the transaction model for the Jaguar server.

In the left pane, open the **Servers** folder. In the right pane, right-click the server you want to configure, and choose **Server Properties**. Click the **Transactions** tab, and choose **Microsoft DTC** as the transaction model. Click **OK** to complete the operation.

### Setting the component transaction attribute

In EAServer, you can implement a component that carries out operations on more than one database. You assign a **transaction attribute** to this component that defines how it participates in transactions. The transaction attribute can have the following values:

- **Not Supported** The component's methods never execute as part of a transaction. If the component is activated by another component that is executing within a transaction, the new instance's work is performed outside the existing transaction. This is the default.
- **Supports Transaction** The component can execute in the context of a transaction, but a connection is not required to execute the component's methods. If the component is instantiated directly by a base

client, EAServer does not begin a transaction. If component A is instantiated by component B, and component B is executing within a transaction, component A executes in the same transaction.

- **Requires Transaction** The component always executes in a transaction. When the component is instantiated directly by a base client, a new transaction begins. If component A is activated by component B, and B is executing within a transaction, then A executes within the same transaction; if B is not executing in a transaction, then A executes in a new transaction.
- **Requires New Transaction** Whenever the component is instantiated, a new transaction begins. If component A is activated by component B, and B is executing within a transaction, then A begins a new transaction that is unaffected by the outcome of B's transaction; if B is not executing in a transaction, then A executes in a new transaction.

For example, in the Sybase Virtual University sample application, included with EAServer as the SVU package, the SVUEnrollment component enroll method carries out two separate operations (reserves a seat in a course, bills the student for the course). These two operations need to be treated as a single transaction.

Microsoft Transaction Server provides the same set of attribute values.

### To set the transaction attribute of a component

1. In Jaguar Manager, locate the component.

To find the SVUEnrollment component in the Jaguar sample application, connect to the Jaguar server, open the **Packages** folder, and open the SVU package. The components in the package are listed in the right pane.

2. Set the transaction attribute for the component.

Right-click the component, and choose **Component Properties**. Click the **Transaction** tab, and choose the transaction attribute value from the list. Click **OK** to complete the operation.

The SVUEnrollment component is already marked as **Requires Transaction**.

Once the component transaction attribute is set, you can perform SQL Anywhere database operations from that component, and be assured of transaction processing at the level you have specified.

---

# Java in the database

This section provides an introduction to Java and Java in the database.

---

Java support in SQL Anywhere .....	77
------------------------------------	----



---

# Java support in SQL Anywhere

## Contents

Introduction to Java support .....	78
Java in the database Q & A .....	80
Java error handling .....	84
The runtime environment for Java in the database .....	85
Creating a Java class for use with SQL Anywhere .....	89
Choosing a Java VM .....	91
Install the sample Java class .....	93
Using the CLASSPATH variable .....	94
Accessing methods in the Java class .....	95
Accessing fields and methods of the Java object .....	96
Installing Java classes into a database .....	98
Special features of Java classes in the database .....	102
Starting and stopping the Java VM .....	106

---

## Introduction to Java support

SQL Anywhere provides a mechanism for executing Java classes from within the database server environment. Using Java methods in the database server provides powerful ways of adding programming logic to a database.

Java support in the database offers the following:

- You can reuse Java components in the different layers of your application—client, middle-tier, or server—and use them wherever it makes the most sense to you. SQL Anywhere becomes a platform for distributed computing.
- Java provides a more powerful language than the SQL stored procedure language for building logic into the database.
- Java can be used in the database server without jeopardizing the integrity, security, or robustness of the database and the server.

### The SQLJ standard

Java in the database is based on the SQLJ Part 1 proposed standard (ANSI/INCITS 331.1-1999). SQLJ Part 1 provides specifications for calling Java static methods as SQL stored procedures and functions.

## Learning about Java in the database

The following table outlines the documentation regarding the use of Java in the database.

Title	Purpose
<a href="#">“Java support in SQL Anywhere” on page 77</a> (this chapter)	Java concepts and how to apply them in SQL Anywhere.
<a href="#">“Creating a Java class for use with SQL Anywhere” on page 89</a>	Practical steps for using Java in the database.
<a href="#">“SQL Anywhere JDBC driver” on page 501</a>	Accessing data from Java classes, including distributed computing.

The following table is a guide to which parts of the Java documentation apply to you, depending on your interests and background.

If you ...	Consider reading ...
Are a Java developer who wants to just get started.	<a href="#">“The runtime environment for Java in the database” on page 85</a> <a href="#">“Creating a Java class for use with SQL Anywhere” on page 89</a>



<b>If you ...</b>	<b>Consider reading ...</b>
Want to know the key features of Java in the database.	<a href="#">“Java in the database Q &amp; A” on page 80</a>
Want to find out how to access data from Java.	<a href="#">“SQL Anywhere JDBC driver” on page 501</a>

## Java in the database Q & A

This section describes the key features of Java in the database.

### What are the key features of Java in the database?

Detailed explanations of all the following points appear in later sections.

- **You can run Java in the database server** An external Java Virtual Machine (VM) runs Java code in the database server.
- **You can access data from Java** An internal JDBC driver lets you access data from Java.
- **SQL is preserved** The use of Java does not alter the behavior of existing SQL statements or other aspects of non-Java relational database behavior.

### How do I store Java classes in the database?

Java is an object-oriented language, so its instructions (source code) come in the form of classes. To execute Java in a database, you write the Java instructions outside the database and compile them outside the database into compiled classes (**byte code**), which are binary files holding Java instructions.

You then install these compiled classes into a database. Once installed, you can execute these classes from the database server as a stored procedure. For example, the following statement creates the interface to a Java procedure:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE insertfix()  
EXTERNAL NAME 'JDBCExample.InsertFixed()'V'  
LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

SQL Anywhere facilitates a runtime environment for Java classes, not a Java development environment. You need a Java development environment, such as the Sun Microsystems Java Development Kit, to write and compile Java. You also need a Java Runtime Environment to execute Java classes.

For more information, see [“Installing Java classes into a database” on page 98](#).

### How does Java get executed in a database?

SQL Anywhere uses a **Java Virtual Machine (VM)**. The Java VM interprets compiled Java instructions and runs them on behalf of the database server. The database server starts the Java VM automatically when needed: you do not have to take any explicit action to start or stop the Java VM.

The SQL request processor in the database server has been extended so it can call into the Java VM to execute Java instructions. It can also process requests from the Java VM to enable data access from Java.

## Why Java?

Java provides several features that make it ideal for use in the database:

- Thorough error checking at compile time.
- Built-in error handling with a well-defined error handling methodology.
- Built-in garbage collection (memory recovery).
- Elimination of many bug-prone programming techniques.
- Strong security features.
- Java code is interpreted, so no operations get executed without being acceptable to the Java VM.

## On what platforms is Java in the database supported?

Java in the database is supported on all Unix and Windows operating systems except Windows Mobile.

## How do I use Java and SQL together?

Java methods are declared as stored procedures, and can then be called just like SQL stored procedures.

You can use many of the classes that are part of the Java API as included in the Sun Microsystems Java Development Kit. You can also use classes created and compiled by Java developers.

## How do I access Java from SQL?

You can treat Java methods as stored procedures, which can be called from SQL.

You must create a stored procedure that runs your method. For example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE javaproc()  
EXTERNAL NAME 'JDBCExample.MyMethod ()V'  
LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

For more information, see [“CREATE PROCEDURE statement \(web services\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

For example, the SQL function `PI( * )` returns the value for pi. The Java API class `java.lang.Math` has a parallel field named `PI` returning the same value. But `java.lang.Math` also has a field named `E` that returns the base of the natural logarithms, and a method that computes the remainder operation on two arguments as prescribed by the IEEE 754 standard.

Other members of the Java API offer even more specialized functionality. For example, `java.util.Stack` generates a last-in, first-out queue that can store ordered lists; `java.util.HashTable` maps values to keys; and `java.util.StringTokenizer` breaks a string of characters into individual word units.

## How can I use my own Java classes in databases?

You can install your own Java classes into a database. For example, you could design, write in Java, and compile with a Java compiler, a user-created Employees class or Package class.

User-created Java classes can contain both information about the subject and some computational logic. Once installed in a database, SQL Anywhere lets you use these classes in all parts and operations of the database and execute their functionality (in the form of class or instance methods) as easily as calling a stored procedure.

### **Java classes and stored procedures are different**

Java classes are different from stored procedures. Whereas stored procedures are written in SQL, Java classes provide a more powerful language, and can be called from client applications as easily and in the same way as stored procedures.

For more information, see [“Installing Java classes into a database” on page 98](#).

## Can I access data using Java?

The JDBC interface is an industry standard, designed specifically to access database systems. The JDBC classes are designed to connect to a database, request data using SQL statements, and return result sets that can be processed in the client application.

Normally, client applications use JDBC classes, and the database system vendor supplies a JDBC driver that allows the JDBC classes to establish a connection.

You can connect to SQL Anywhere from a client application via JDBC, using jConnect, or using the iAnywhere JDBC driver. SQL Anywhere also provides an internal JDBC driver that permits Java classes installed in a database to use JDBC classes that execute SQL statements. See [“SQL Anywhere JDBC driver” on page 501](#).

## Can I move classes from client to server?

You can create Java classes that can be moved between levels of an enterprise application. The same Java class can be integrated into either the client application, a middle tier, or the database—wherever is most appropriate.

You can move a class containing business logic to any level of the enterprise system, including the database server, allowing you complete flexibility to make the most appropriate use of resources. It also enables enterprise customers to develop their applications using a single programming language in a multi-tier architecture with unparalleled flexibility.

## What can I not do with Java in the database?

SQL Anywhere is a runtime environment for Java classes, not a Java development environment.

You cannot perform the following tasks in the database:

- Edit class source files (\*.java files).
- Compile Java class source files (\*.java files).
- Execute unsupported Java APIs, such as applet and visual classes.
- Execute Java methods that require the execution of native methods. All user classes installed into the database must be 100% Java.

The Java classes used in SQL Anywhere must be written and compiled using a Java application development tool, and then installed into a database for use.

## Java error handling

Java error handling code is separate from the code for normal processing.

Errors generate an exception object representing the error. This is called **throwing an exception**. A thrown exception terminates a Java program unless it is caught and handled properly at some level of the application.

Both Java API classes and custom-created classes can throw exceptions. In fact, users can create their own exception classes that throw their own custom-created classes.

If there is no exception handler in the body of the method where the exception occurred, then the search for an exception handler continues up the call stack. If the top of the call stack is reached and no exception handler has been found, the default exception handler of the Java interpreter running the application is called and the program terminates.

In SQL Anywhere, if a SQL statement calls a Java method, and an unhandled exception is thrown, a SQL error is generated.

## The runtime environment for Java in the database

This section describes the SQL Anywhere runtime environment for Java, and how it differs from a standard Java runtime environment.

### The runtime Java classes

The runtime Java classes are the low-level classes that are made available to a database when it is created or Java-enabled. These classes include a subset of the Java API. These classes are part of the Sun Java Development Kit.

The runtime classes provide basic functionality on which to build applications. The runtime classes are always available to classes in the database.

You can incorporate the runtime Java classes in your own user-created classes: either inheriting their functionality or using it within a calculation or operation in a method.

#### Examples

Some Java API classes included in the runtime Java classes include:

- **Primitive Java data types** All primitive (native) data types in Java have a corresponding class. In addition to being able to create objects of these types, the classes have additional, often useful, functionality.

The Java int data type has a corresponding class in `java.lang.Integer`.

- **The utility package** The package `java.util.*` contains several classes with functionality that is unavailable in the SQL Anywhere SQL functions.

Some of the classes include:

- **Hashtable** maps keys to values.
- **StringTokenizer** breaks a String down into individual words.
- **Vector** holds an array of objects whose size can change dynamically.
- **Stack** holds a last-in, first-out stack of objects.
- **JDBC for SQL operations** The package `java.SQL.*` contains the classes needed by Java objects to extract data from the database using SQL statements.

Unlike user-defined classes, the runtime classes are not stored in the database. Instead, they are stored where the Sun JRE is installed.

## Java is case sensitive

Java syntax works as you would expect it to, and SQL syntax is unaltered by the presence of Java classes. This is true even if the same SQL statement contains both Java and SQL syntax. It is a simple statement, but with far-reaching implications.

Java is case sensitive. The Java class FindOut is a completely different class from the class Findout. For keywords and identifiers SQL is case insensitive.

Java case sensitivity is preserved even when embedded in a SQL statement that is case insensitive. The Java parts of the statement must be case sensitive, even though the parts previous to and following the Java syntax can be in either upper or lowercase.

For example, the following SQL statement executes successfully because the case of Java objects, classes, and operators is respected even though there is variation in the case of the remaining SQL parts of the statement.

```
SeLeCt java.lang.Math.random();
```

## Strings in Java and SQL

A set of double quotes identifies string literals in Java, as in the following Java code fragment:

```
String str = "This is a string";
```

In SQL, however, single quotes mark strings, and double quotes indicate an identifier, as illustrated by the following SQL statement:

```
INSERT INTO TABLE DBA.t1  
VALUES( 'Hello' );
```

You should always use the double quote in Java source code, and single quotes in SQL statements.

The following Java code fragment is valid, if used within a Java class.

```
String str = new java.lang.String(  
    "Brand new object" );
```

## Printing to the command line

Printing to the standard output is a quick way of checking variable values and execution results at various points of code execution. When the method in the second line of the following Java code fragment is encountered, the string argument it accepts prints out to standard output.

```
String str = "Hello world";  
System.out.println( str );
```

In SQL Anywhere, standard output is the database server messages window, so the string appears there. Executing the above Java code within the database is the equivalent of the following SQL statement.

```
MESSAGE 'Hello world';
```



## Using the main method

When a class contains a main method matching the following declaration, most Java run time environments, such as the Sun Java interpreter, execute it automatically. Normally, this static method executes only if it is the class being invoked by the Java interpreter.

```
public static void main( String args[ ] ) { }
```

You are always guaranteed this method will be called first when the Sun Java runtime system starts.

In SQL Anywhere, the Java runtime system is always available. The functionality of objects and methods can be tested in an ad hoc, dynamic manner using SQL statements. This provides a flexible method for testing Java class functionality.

## Persistence

Once a Java class has been added to a database, it remains there until you explicitly remove it with a REMOVE JAVA statement.

Variables in Java classes, like SQL variables, persist only for the duration of the connection.

For more information about removing classes, see [“REMOVE JAVA statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

## Java escape characters in SQL statements

In Java code, you can use escape characters to insert certain special characters into strings. Consider the following code, which inserts a new line and tab in front of a sentence containing an apostrophe.

```
String str = "\n\t\This is an object\'s string literal";
```

SQL Anywhere permits the use of Java escape characters only when being used by Java classes. From within SQL, however, you must follow the rules that apply to strings in SQL.

For example, to pass a string value to a field using a SQL statement, you could use the following statement (which includes SQL escape characters), but the Java escape characters could not be used.

```
SET obj.str = '\n\This is the object\'s string field';
```

For more information about SQL string handling rules, see [“Strings” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

## Using import statements

It is common in a Java class declaration to include an import statement to access classes in another package. You can reference imported classes using unqualified class names.

For example, you can reference the Stack class of the java.util package in two ways:

- explicitly using the name `java.util.Stack`
- using the name `Stack`, and including the following import statement:

```
import java.util.*;
```

### **Classes further up in the hierarchy must also be installed**

A class referenced by another class, either explicitly with a fully qualified name or implicitly using an import statement, must also be installed in the database.

The import statement works as intended within compiled classes. However, within the SQL Anywhere runtime environment, no equivalent to the import statement exists. All class names used in stored procedures must be fully qualified. For example, to create a variable of type `String`, you would reference the class using the fully qualified name: `java.lang.String`.

## **Public fields**

It is a common practice in object-oriented programming to define class fields as private and make their values available only through public methods.

Many of the examples used in this documentation render fields public to make examples more compact and easier to read. Using public fields in SQL Anywhere also offers a performance advantage over accessing public methods.

The general convention followed in this documentation is that a user-created Java class designed for use in SQL Anywhere exposes its main values in its fields. Methods contain computational automation and logic that may act on these fields.

## Creating a Java class for use with SQL Anywhere

The following sections describe the steps involved in creating Java methods and calling them from SQL. It shows you how to compile and install a Java class into the database to make it available for use in SQL Anywhere. It also shows you how to access the class and its members and methods from SQL statements.

The following sections assume that you have a Java Development Kit (JDK) installed, including the Java compiler (javac) and Java VM.

Source code and batch files for the sample are provided in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JavaInvoice*.

The first step to using Java in the database is to write the Java code and compile it. This is done outside the database.

### To create and compile the class

1. Create the sample Java class source file.

For your convenience, the sample code is included here. You can paste the following code into *Invoice.java* or obtain the file from *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JavaInvoice*.

```
import java.io.*;

public class Invoice
{
    public static String lineItem1Description;
    public static double lineItem1Cost;

    public static String lineItem2Description;
    public static double lineItem2Cost;

    public static double totalSum() {
        double runningsum;
        double taxfactor = 1 + Invoice.rateOfTaxation();

        runningsum = lineItem1Cost + lineItem2Cost;
        runningsum = runningsum * taxfactor;

        return runningsum;
    }

    public static double rateOfTaxation()
    {
        double rate;
        rate = .15;

        return rate;
    }

    public static void init(
        String item1desc, double item1cost,
        String item2desc, double item2cost )
    {
        lineItem1Description = item1desc;
        lineItem1Cost = item1cost;
        lineItem2Description = item2desc;
        lineItem2Cost = item2cost;
    }

    public static String getLineItem1Description()
```

```
{
    return lineItem1Description;
}

public static double getLineItem1Cost()
{
    return lineItem1Cost;
}

public static String getLineItem2Description()
{
    return lineItem2Description;
}

public static double getLineItem2Cost()
{
    return lineItem2Cost;
}

public static boolean testOut( int[] param )
{
    param[0] = 123;
    return true;
}

public static void main( String[] args )
{
    System.out.print( "Hello" );
    for ( int I = 0; I < args.length; I++ )
        System.out.print( " " + args[i] );
    System.out.println();
}
}
```

2. Compile the file to create the file *Invoice.class*.

```
javac Invoice.java
```

The class is now compiled and ready to be installed into the database.

## Choosing a Java VM

The database server must be set up to locate a Java VM. Since you can specify different Java VMs for each database, the ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement can be used to indicate the location (path) of the Java VM.

```
ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT JAVA
LOCATION 'c:\\jdk1.5.0_06\\jre\\bin\\java.exe';
```

If the location is not set, the database server searches for the location of the Java VM, as follows:

- Check the JAVA\_HOME environment variable.
- Check the JAVAHOME environment variable.
- Check the path.
- If the information is not in the path, return an error.

See “ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].

### Note

JAVA\_HOME and JAVAHOME are environment variables commonly created when installing a Java VM. If neither of these exist, you can create them manually, and point them to the root directory of your Java VM. However, this is not required if you use the ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement.

### To specify the location of the Java VM (Interactive SQL)

1. Start Interactive SQL and connect to the database.
2. In the SQL Statements pane, type the following statement:

```
ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT JAVA
LOCATION 'path\\java.exe';
```

Here, *path* indicates the location of the Java VM (for example, *c:\\jdk1.5.0\_06\\jre\\bin*).

You can also use the ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT to specify the database user whose connection can be used for installing classes and performing other Java-related administrative tasks.

```
ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT JAVA
USER user_name
```

For more information, see “ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].

Use the java\_vm\_options option to specify any additional command line options that are required to start the Java VM.

```
SET OPTION PUBLIC.java_vm_options='java-options';
```

For more information, see “java\_vm\_options option [database]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration](#)].

If you want to use JAVA in the database, but do not have a Java Runtime Environment (JRE) installed, you can install and use any Java JRE that you want to. Once installed, it is best to set the JAVA\_HOME or JAVAHOME environment variable to point to the root of the installed JRE. Note that most Java installers set one of these environment variables by default. Once a JRE is installed and JAVA\_HOME or JAVAHOME is set correctly, you should then be able to use Java in the database without performing any additional steps.

## Install the sample Java class

Java classes must be installed into a database before they can be used. You can install classes from Sybase Central or Interactive SQL.

### To install the class to the SQL Anywhere sample database (Sybase Central)

1. Start Sybase Central and connect to the sample database.
2. In the left pane, expand the **External Environments** folder.
3. Click **Java**.
4. Choose **File » New » Java Class**.
5. Click **Browse** and browse to the location of *Invoice.class*.
6. Click **Finish**.

### To install the class to the SQL Anywhere sample database (Interactive SQL)

1. Start Interactive SQL and connect to the sample database.
2. In the **SQL Statements** pane of Interactive SQL, type the following statement:

```
INSTALL JAVA NEW  
FROM FILE 'path\\Invoice.class';
```

Here *path* is the location of your compiled class file.

3. Press F5 to execute the statement.

The class is now installed into the sample database.

### Notes

- At this point, no Java in the database operations have taken place. The class has been installed into the database and is ready for use.
- Changes made to the class file from now on are *not* automatically reflected in the copy of the class in the database. You must update the classes in the database if you want the changes reflected.

For more information about installing classes, and for information about updating an installed class, see [“Installing Java classes into a database” on page 98](#).

## Using the CLASSPATH variable

The Sun Java runtime environment and the Sun JDK Java compiler use the CLASSPATH environment variable to locate classes referenced within Java code. A CLASSPATH variable provides the link between Java code and the actual file path or URL location of the classes being referenced. For example, `import java.io.*` allows all the classes in the java.io package to be referenced without a fully qualified name. Only the class name is required in the following Java code to use classes from the java.io package. The CLASSPATH environment variable on the system where the Java class declaration is to be compiled must include the location of the Java directory, the root of the java.io package.

### CLASSPATH used to install classes

The CLASSPATH variable can be used to locate a file during the installation of classes. For example, the following statement installs a user-created Java class to a database, but only specifies the name of the file, not its full path and name. (Note that this statement involves no Java operations.)

```
INSTALL JAVA NEW  
FROM FILE 'Invoice.class';
```

If the file specified is in a directory or ZIP file specified by the CLASSPATH environmental variable, SQL Anywhere successfully locates the file and install the class.



## Accessing methods in the Java class

To access the Java methods in the class, you must create stored procedures or functions that act as wrappers for the methods in the class.

### To call a Java method using Interactive SQL

1. Create the following SQL stored procedure to call the Invoice.main method in the sample class:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE InvoiceMain( IN arg1 CHAR(50) )
EXTERNAL NAME 'Invoice.main([Ljava/lang/String;)V'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

This stored procedure acts as a wrapper to the Java method.

For more information about the syntax of this statement, see “[CREATE PROCEDURE statement \(web services\)](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

2. Call the stored procedure to call the Java method:

```
CALL InvoiceMain('to you');
```

If you examine the database server message log, you see the message "Hello to you" written there. The database server has redirected the output there from System.out.

## Accessing fields and methods of the Java object

Here are more examples of how to call Java methods, pass arguments, and return values.

### To create stored procedures/functions for the methods in the Invoice class

1. Create the following SQL stored procedures to pass arguments to and retrieve return values from the Java methods in the Invoice class:

```
-- Invoice.init takes a string argument (Ljava/lang/String;)
-- a double (D), a string argument (Ljava/lang/String;), and
-- another double (D), and returns nothing (V)
CREATE PROCEDURE init( IN arg1 CHAR(50),
                     IN arg2 DOUBLE,
                     IN arg3 CHAR(50),
                     IN arg4 DOUBLE)

EXTERNAL NAME
  'Invoice.init(Ljava/lang/String;DLjava/lang/String;D)V'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
-- Invoice.rateOfTaxation take no arguments ()
-- and returns a double (D)
CREATE FUNCTION rateOfTaxation()
RETURNS DOUBLE
EXTERNAL NAME
  'Invoice.rateOfTaxation()D'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
-- Invoice.rateOfTaxation take no arguments ()
-- and returns a double (D)
CREATE FUNCTION totalSum()
RETURNS DOUBLE
EXTERNAL NAME
  'Invoice.totalSum()D'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
-- Invoice.getLineItem1Description take no arguments ()
-- and returns a string (Ljava/lang/String;)
CREATE FUNCTION getLineItem1Description()
RETURNS CHAR(50)
EXTERNAL NAME
  'Invoice.getLineItem1Description()Ljava/lang/String;'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
-- Invoice.getLineItem1Cost take no arguments ()
-- and returns a double (D)
CREATE FUNCTION getLineItem1Cost()
RETURNS DOUBLE
EXTERNAL NAME
  'Invoice.getLineItem1Cost()D'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
-- Invoice.getLineItem2Description take no arguments ()
-- and returns a string (Ljava/lang/String;)
CREATE FUNCTION getLineItem2Description()
RETURNS CHAR(50)
EXTERNAL NAME
  'Invoice.getLineItem2Description()Ljava/lang/String;'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
-- Invoice.getLineItem2Cost take no arguments ()
-- and returns a double (D)
CREATE FUNCTION getLineItem2Cost()
RETURNS DOUBLE
EXTERNAL NAME
```

```
'Invoice.getLineItem2Cost()'D'  
LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

The descriptors for arguments to and return values from Java methods have the following meanings:

Field type	Java data type
B	byte
C	char
D	double
F	float
I	int
J	long
L <i>class-name</i> ;	An instance of the class <i>class-name</i> . The class name must be fully qualified, and any dot in the name must be replaced by a /. For example, <b>java/lang/String</b> .
S	short
V	void
Z	Boolean
[	Use one for each dimension of an array.

For more information about the syntax of these statements, see “[CREATE PROCEDURE statement \(web services\)](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)] and “[CREATE FUNCTION statement \(web services\)](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].

2. Call the stored procedure that is acting as a wrapper to call the Java method:

```
CALL init('Shirt',10.00,'Jacket',25.00);  
SELECT getLineItem1Description() as Item1,  
       getLineItem1Cost() as Item1Cost,  
       getLineItem2Description() as Item2,  
       getLineItem2Cost() as Item2Cost,  
       rateOfTaxation() as TaxRate,  
       totalSum() as Cost;
```

The query returns six columns with values as follows:

Item1	Item1Cost	Item2	Item2Cost	TaxRate	Cost
Shirt	10	Jacket	25	0.15	40.25

## Installing Java classes into a database

You can install Java classes into a database as:

- **A single class** You can install a single class into a database from a compiled class file. Class files typically have extension *.class*.
- **A JAR** You can install a set of classes all at once if they are in either a compressed or uncompressed JAR file. JAR files typically have the extension *.jar* or *.zip*. SQL Anywhere supports all compressed JAR files created with the Sun JAR utility, and some other JAR compression schemes.

## Creating a class

Although the details of each step may differ depending on whether you are using a Java development tool, the steps involved in creating your own class generally include the following:

### To create a class

1. Define your class.

Write the Java code that defines your class. If you are using the Sun Java SDK then you can use a text editor. If you are using a development tool, the development tool provides instructions.

#### **Use only supported classes**

User classes must be 100% Java. Native methods are not allowed.

2. Name and save your class.

Save your class declaration (Java code) in a file with the extension *.java*. Make certain the name of the file is the same as the name of the class and that the case of both names is identical.

For example, a class called Utility should be saved in a file called *Utility.java*.

3. Compile your class.

This step turns your class declaration containing Java code into a new, separate file containing byte code. The name of the new file is the same as the Java code file, but has an extension of *.class*. You can run a compiled Java class in a Java runtime environment, regardless of the platform you compiled it on or the operating system of the runtime environment.

The Sun JDK contains a Java compiler, *javac*.

## Installing a class

To make your Java class available within the database, you install the class into the database either from Sybase Central, or using the `INSTALL JAVA` statement from Interactive SQL or another application. You must know the path and file name of the class you want to install.

You require DBA authority to install a class.

### To install a class (Sybase Central)

1. Connect to a database as a DBA user.
2. Open the **External Environments** folder.
3. Under this folder, open the **Java** folder.
4. Right-click the right pane and choose **New » Java Class**.
5. Follow the instructions in the wizard.

### To install a class (SQL)

1. Connect to the database as a DBA user.
2. Execute the following statement:

```
INSTALL JAVA NEW  
FROM FILE 'path\\ClassName.class';
```

*path* is the directory where the class file is located, and *ClassName.class* is the name of the class file.

The double backslash ensures that the backslash is not treated as an escape character.

For example, to install a class in a file named *Utility.class*, held in the directory *c:\source*, you would execute the following statement:

```
INSTALL JAVA NEW  
FROM FILE 'c:\\source\\Utility.class';
```

If you use a relative path, it must be relative to the current working directory of the database server.

For more information, see [“INSTALL JAVA statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

## Installing a JAR

It is useful and common practice to collect sets of related classes together in packages, and to store one or more packages in a **JAR file**.

You install a JAR file the same way as you install a class file. A JAR file can have the extension JAR or ZIP. Each JAR file must have a name in the database. Usually, you use the same name as the JAR file, without the extension. For example, if you install a JAR file named *myjar.zip*, you would generally give it a JAR name of *myjar*.

For more information, see [“INSTALL JAVA statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

### To install a JAR (Sybase Central)

1. Connect to the database as a DBA user.
2. Open the **External Environments** folder.
3. Under this folder, open the **Java** folder.

4. Right-click the right pane and choose **New » JAR File**.
5. Follow the instructions in the wizard.

### To install a JAR (SQL)

1. Connect to a database as a DBA user.
2. Execute the following statement:

```
INSTALL JAVA NEW  
JAR 'jarname'  
FROM FILE 'path\\JarName.jar';
```

## Updating classes and JAR files

You can update classes and JAR files using Sybase Central or by executing an `INSTALL JAVA` statement from Interactive SQL or some other client application.

To update a class or JAR, you must have DBA authority and a newer version of the compiled class file or JAR file available in a file on disk.

### When updated classes take effect

Only new connections established after installing the class, or that use the class for the first time after installing the class, use the new definition. Once the Java VM loads a class definition, it stays in memory until the connection closes.

If you have been using a Java class or objects based on a class in the current connection, you need to disconnect and reconnect to use the new class definition.

### To update a class or JAR (Sybase Central)

1. Connect to the database as a DBA user.
2. Open the **External Environments** folder.
3. Under this folder, open the **Java** folder.
4. Locate the subfolder containing the class or JAR file you want to update.
5. Select the class or JAR file and choose **File » Update**.
6. In the **Update** window, specify the name and location of the class or JAR file to be updated. You can click **Browse** to search for it.

#### Tips

You can also update a Java class or JAR file by right-clicking the class or JAR file name and choosing **Update**.

As well, you can update a Java class or JAR file by clicking **Update Now** on the **General** tab of its **Properties** window.

**To update a class or JAR (SQL)**

1. Connect to a database as a DBA user.
2. Execute the following statement:

```
INSTALL JAVA UPDATE  
[ JAR 'jarname' ]  
FROM FILE 'filename';
```

If you are updating a JAR, you must enter the name by which the JAR is known in the database. See [“INSTALL JAVA statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

## Special features of Java classes in the database

This section describes features of Java classes when used in the database.

### Calling the main method

You typically start Java applications (outside the database) by running the Java VM on a class that has a main method.

For example, the Invoice class in the file `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JavaInvoice\Invoice.java` has a main method. When you execute the class from the command line using a command such as the following, it is the main method that executes:

```
java Invoice
```

#### To call the main method of a class from SQL

1. Declare the method with an array of strings as an argument:

```
public static void main( java.lang.String args[] )
{
  ...
}
```

2. Create a stored procedure that wraps this method.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE JavaMain( in arg char(50) )
EXTERNAL NAME 'JavaClass.main([Ljava/lang/String;)V'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

For more information, see [“CREATE PROCEDURE statement \(web services\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

3. Invoke the main method using the CALL statement.

```
call JavaMain( 'Hello world' );
```

Due to the limitations of the SQL language, only a single string can be passed.

### Using threads in Java applications

With features of the `java.lang.Thread` package, you can use multiple threads in a Java application.

You can synchronize, suspend, resume, interrupt, or stop threads in Java applications.

### No Such Method Exception

If you supply an incorrect number of arguments when calling a Java method, or if you use an incorrect data type, the Java VM responds with a `java.lang.NoSuchMethodException` error. You should check the number and type of arguments.



For more information, see [“Accessing fields and methods of the Java object”](#) on page 96.

## Returning result sets from Java methods

This section describes how to make result sets available from Java methods. You must write a Java method that returns a result set to the calling environment, and wrap this method in a SQL stored procedure declared to be EXTERNAL NAME of LANGUAGE JAVA.

### To return result sets from a Java method

1. Ensure that the Java method is declared as public and static in a public class.
2. For each result set you expect the method to return, ensure that the method has a parameter of type `java.sql.ResultSet[]`. These result set parameters must all occur at the end of the parameter list.
3. In the method, first create an instance of `java.sql.ResultSet` and then assign it to one of the `ResultSet[]` parameters.
4. Create a SQL stored procedure of type EXTERNAL NAME LANGUAGE JAVA. This type of procedure is a wrapper around a Java method. You can use a cursor on the SQL procedure result set in the same way as any other procedure that returns result sets.

For more information about the syntax for stored procedures that are wrappers for Java methods, see [“CREATE PROCEDURE statement \(web services\)”](#) [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

### Example

The following simple class has a single method that executes a query and passes the result set back to the calling environment.

```
import java.sql.*;

public class MyResultSet
{
    public static void return_rset( ResultSet[] rset1 )
        throws SQLException
    {
        Connection conn = DriverManager.getConnection(
            "jdbc:default:connection" );
        Statement stmt = conn.createStatement();
        ResultSet rset =
            stmt.executeQuery (
                "SELECT Surname " +
                "FROM Customers" );
        rset1[0] = rset;
    }
}
```

You can expose the result set using a CREATE PROCEDURE statement that indicates the number of result sets returned from the procedure and the signature of the Java method.

A CREATE PROCEDURE statement indicating a result set could be defined as follows:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE result_set()
    DYNAMIC RESULT SETS 1
```

```
EXTERNAL NAME
'MyResultSet.return_rset([Ljava/sql/ResultSet;)V'
LANGUAGE JAVA
```

You can open a cursor on this procedure, just as you can with any SQL Anywhere procedure returning result sets.

The string `([Ljava/sql/ResultSet;)V` is a Java method signature that is a compact character representation of the number and type of the parameters and return value.

For more information about Java method signatures, see [“CREATE PROCEDURE statement \(web services\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

For more information about returning result sets, see [“Returning result sets” on page 523](#).

## Returning values from Java via stored procedures

You can use stored procedures created using the EXTERNAL NAME LANGUAGE JAVA as wrappers around Java methods. This section describes how to write your Java method to exploit OUT or INOUT parameters in the stored procedure.

Java does not have explicit support for INOUT or OUT parameters. Instead, you can use an array of the parameter. For example, to use an integer OUT parameter, create an array of exactly one integer:

```
public class Invoice
{
    public static boolean testOut( int[] param )
    {
        param[0] = 123;
        return true;
    }
}
```

The following procedure uses the testOut method:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE testOut( OUT p INTEGER )
EXTERNAL NAME 'Invoice.testOut([I]Z'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

The string `([I]Z` is a Java method signature, indicating that the method has a single parameter, which is an array of integers, and returns a Boolean value. You must define the method so that the method parameter you want to use as an OUT or INOUT parameter is an array of a Java data type that corresponds to the SQL data type of the OUT or INOUT parameter.

To test this, call the stored procedure with an uninitialized variable.

```
CREATE VARIABLE zap INTEGER;
CALL testOut( zap );
SELECT zap;
```

The result set is 123.

For more information about the syntax, including the method signature, see [“CREATE PROCEDURE statement \(web services\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

## Security management for Java

Java provides security managers that you can use to control user access to security-sensitive features of your applications, such as file access and network access. You should take advantage of the security management features supported by your Java VM.

## Starting and stopping the Java VM

The Java VM loads automatically whenever the first Java operation is carried out. If you want to load it explicitly in readiness for carrying out Java operations, you can do so by executing the following statement:

```
START JAVA;
```

You can unload the Java VM when Java is not in use using the STOP JAVA statement. Only a user with DBA authority can execute this statement. The syntax is:

```
STOP JAVA;
```

# SQL Anywhere Data Access APIs

This section describes the programming interfaces for SQL Anywhere.

---

SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider .....	109
Tutorial: Using the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider .....	145
SQL Anywhere ASP.NET Providers .....	155
Tutorial: Developing a simple .NET database application with Visual Studio .....	167
SQL Anywhere .NET 2.0 API reference .....	177
SQL Anywhere OLE DB and ADO development .....	447
SQL Anywhere ODBC API .....	463
SQL Anywhere JDBC driver .....	501
SQL Anywhere embedded SQL .....	531
SQL Anywhere C API reference .....	617
SQL Anywhere External Function API .....	669
SQL Anywhere external environment support .....	689
SQL Anywhere Perl DBD::SQLAnywhere DBI module .....	721
SQL Anywhere Python Database support .....	731
SQL Anywhere PHP API .....	739
SQL Anywhere for Ruby .....	809
Sybase Open Client API .....	839
SQL Anywhere web services .....	849



---

# SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider

## Contents

SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider features .....	110
Running the sample projects .....	111
Using the .NET Data Provider in a Visual Studio project .....	112
Connecting to a database .....	114
Accessing and manipulating data .....	117
Using stored procedures .....	134
Transaction processing .....	136
Error handling and the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider .....	138
Deploying the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider .....	139
Tracing support .....	141

---

## SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider features

SQL Anywhere supports the Microsoft .NET Framework version 2.0 or later through three distinct namespaces.

- **iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere** The ADO.NET object model is an all-purpose data access model. ADO.NET components were designed to factor data access from data manipulation. There are two central components of ADO.NET that do this: the DataSet, and the .NET Framework data provider, which is a set of components including the Connection, Command, DataReader, and DataAdapter objects. SQL Anywhere includes a .NET Framework Data Provider that communicates directly with a SQL Anywhere database server without adding the overhead of OLE DB or ODBC. The SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider is represented in the .NET namespace as iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.

The Microsoft .NET Compact Framework is the smart device development framework for Microsoft .NET. The SQL Anywhere .NET Compact Framework Data Provider supports devices running Windows Mobile.

The SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider namespace is described in this document.

- **System.Data.OleDb** This namespace supports OLE DB data sources. This namespace is an intrinsic part of the Microsoft .NET Framework. You can use System.Data.OleDb together with the SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider, SAOLEDB, to access SQL Anywhere databases.
- **System.Data.Odbc** This namespace supports ODBC data sources. This namespace is an intrinsic part of the Microsoft .NET Framework. You can use System.Data.Odbc together with the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver to access SQL Anywhere databases.

On Windows Mobile, only the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider is supported.

There are some key benefits to using the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider:

- In the .NET environment, the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider provides native access to a SQL Anywhere database. Unlike the other supported providers, it communicates directly with a SQL Anywhere server and does not require bridge technology.
- As a result, the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider is faster than the OLE DB and ODBC Data Providers. It is the recommended Data Provider for accessing SQL Anywhere databases.



## Running the sample projects

There are four sample projects included with the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider:

- **SimpleCE** A .NET Compact Framework sample project for Windows Mobile that demonstrates a simple listbox that is filled with the names from the Employees table when you click **Connect**.
- **SimpleWin32** A .NET Framework sample project for Windows that demonstrates a simple listbox that is filled with the names from the Employees table when you click **Connect**.
- **SimpleXML** A .NET Framework sample project for Windows that demonstrates how to obtain XML data from SQL Anywhere via ADO.NET.
- **TableViewer** A .NET Framework sample project for Windows that allows you to enter and execute SQL statements.

For tutorials explaining the sample projects, see [“Tutorial: Using the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider” on page 145](#).

**Note**

If you installed SQL Anywhere in a location other than the default installation directory (*C:\Program Files\SQL Anywhere 11*), you may receive an error referencing the Data Provider DLL when you load the sample projects. If this happens, add a new reference to *iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll*. There is one version of the Data Provider that supports the .NET Framework 2.0 and later versions. The Data Provider for Windows is located in *install-dir\Assembly\v2\iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll*. The Data Provider for Windows Mobile is located in *install-dir\ce\Assembly*.

For instructions on adding a reference to the DLL, see [“Adding a reference to the Data Provider DLL in your project” on page 112](#).

## Using the .NET Data Provider in a Visual Studio project

The SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider can be used to develop applications with Visual Studio 2005 or later versions. To use the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider, you must include two items in your Visual Studio project:

- a reference to the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider DLL
- a line in your source code referencing the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider classes

These steps are explained below.

For information about installing and registering the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider, see [“Deploying the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider” on page 139](#).

### Adding a reference to the Data Provider DLL in your project

Adding a reference tells Visual Studio which DLL to include to find the code for the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider.

#### To add a reference to the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider in a Visual Studio project

1. Start Visual Studio and open your project.
2. In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click **References** and choose **Add Reference**.
3. On the **.NET** tab, click **Browse** to locate *iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll*. Note that there are separate versions of the DLL for each of Windows and Windows Mobile platforms.
  - For the Windows SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider, the default location is *install-dir\Assembly\2*.
  - For the Windows Mobile SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider, the default location is *install-dir\ce\Assembly\2*.
4. Select the DLL and then click **Open**.

For a complete list of installed DLLs, see [“SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider required files” on page 139](#).

5. You can verify that the DLL is added to your project. Open the **Add Reference** window and then click the **.NET** tab. *iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll* appears in the **Selected Components** list. Click **OK** to close the window.

The DLL is added to the **References** folder in the **Solution Explorer** window of your project.

### Using the Data Provider classes in your source code

To assist with the use of the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider namespace and the types defined in this namespace, you should add a directive to your source code.

**To use the Data Provider namespace in your code**

1. Start Visual Studio and open your project.
2. Add the following line to your project:
  - If you are using C#, add the following line to the list of `using` directives at the beginning of your project:

```
using iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere;
```

- If you are using Visual Basic, add the following line at the beginning of your project before the line `Public Class Form1`:

```
Imports iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere
```

This directive is not required, however, it allows you to use short forms for the SQL Anywhere .NET classes. For example:

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection()
```

Without this directive, you can still use the following:

```
iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.SACConnection  
conn = new iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.SACConnection()
```

## Connecting to a database

Before you can perform any operations on the data, your application must connect to the database. This section describes how to write code to connect to a SQL Anywhere database.

For more information, see [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#) and [“ConnectionStringName property” on page 278](#).

### To connect to a SQL Anywhere database

1. Allocate an SAConnection object.

The following code creates an SAConnection object named `conn`:

```
SAConnection conn = new SAConnection(connection-string)
```

You can have more than one connection to a database from your application. Some applications use a single connection to a SQL Anywhere database, and keep the connection open all the time. To do this, you can declare a global variable for the connection:

```
private SAConnection _conn;
```

For more information, see the sample code in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ADO.NET\TableViewer* and [“Understanding the Table Viewer sample project” on page 152](#).

2. Specify the connection string used to connect to the database.

For example:

```
"Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo"
```

For a complete list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

Instead of supplying a connection string, you can prompt users for their user ID and password.

3. Open a connection to the database.

The following code attempts to connect to a database. It autostarts the database server if necessary.

```
conn.Open();
```

4. Catch connection errors.

Your application should be designed to catch any errors that occur when attempting to connect to the database. The following code demonstrates how to catch an error and display its message:

```
try {
    _conn = new SAConnection( txtConnectString.Text );
    _conn.Open();
} catch( SAException ex ) {
    MessageBox.Show( ex.Errors[0].Source + " : "
        + ex.Errors[0].Message + " (" +
        ex.Errors[0].NativeError.ToString() + ")",
        "Failed to connect" );
}
```

Alternately, you can use the `ConnectionString` property to set the connection string, rather than passing the connection string when the `SAConnection` object is created:

```
SACConnection _conn;  
_conn = new SACConnection();  
_conn.ConnectionString =  
    "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo";  
_conn.Open();
```

5. Close the connection to the database. Connections to the database stay open until they are explicitly closed using the `conn.Close()` method.

### Visual Basic connection example

The following Visual Basic code opens a connection to the SQL Anywhere sample database:

```
Private Sub Button1_Click(ByVal sender As _  
    System.Object, ByVal e As System.EventArgs) _  
    Handles Button1.Click  
    ' Declare the connection object  
    Dim myConn As New _  
        iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.SACConnection()  
    myConn.ConnectionString = _  
        "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo"  
    myConn.Open()  
    myConn.Close()  
End Sub
```

## Connection pooling

The SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider supports connection pooling. Connection pooling allows your application to reuse existing connections by saving the connection handle to a pool so it can be reused, rather than repeatedly creating a new connection to the database. Connection pooling is turned on by default.

The pool size is set in your connection string using the `POOLING` option. The default maximum pool size is 100, while the default minimum pool size is 0. You can specify the minimum and maximum pool sizes. For example:

```
"Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo;POOLING=TRUE;Max Pool Size=50;Min Pool  
Size=5"
```

When your application first attempts to connect to the database, it checks the pool for an existing connection that uses the same connection parameters you have specified. If a matching connection is found, that connection is used. Otherwise, a new connection is used. When you disconnect, the connection is returned to the pool so that it can be reused.

### See also

- “[ConnectionName property](#)” on page 278
- “[AutoStop connection parameter \[ASTOP\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*]

## Checking the connection state

Once your application has established a connection to the database, you can check the connection state to ensure that the connection is open before you fetch data from the database to update it. If a connection is lost or is busy, or if another statement is being processed, you can return an appropriate message to the user.

The SAConnection class has a state property that checks the state of the connection. Possible state values are Open and Closed.

The following code checks whether the Connection object has been initialized, and if it has, it ensures that the connection is open. A message is returned to the user if the connection is not open.

```
if( _conn == null || _conn.State !=  
    ConnectionState.Open ) {  
    MessageBox.Show( "Connect to a database first",  
        "Not connected" );  
    return;  
}
```

For more information, see [“State property” on page 254](#).

---

## Accessing and manipulating data

With the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider, there are two ways you can access data:

- **SACommand object** The SACommand object is the recommended way of accessing and manipulating data in .NET.

The SACommand object allows you to execute SQL statements that retrieve or modify data directly from the database. Using the SACommand object, you can issue SQL statements and call stored procedures directly against the database.

Within an SACommand object, an SADataReader is used to return read-only result sets from a query or stored procedure. The SADataReader returns only one row at a time, but this does not degrade performance because the SQL Anywhere client-side libraries use prefetch buffering to prefetch several rows at a time.

Using the SACommand object allows you to group your changes into transactions rather than operating in autocommit mode. When you use the SATransaction object, locks are placed on the rows so that other users cannot modify them.

For more information, see [“SACommand class” on page 206](#) and [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#).

- **SADataAdapter object** The SADataAdapter object retrieves the entire result set into a DataSet. A DataSet is a disconnected store for data that is retrieved from a database. You can then edit the data in the DataSet and when you are finished, the SADataAdapter object updates the database with the changes made to the DataSet. When you use the SADataAdapter, there is no way to prevent other users from modifying the rows in your DataSet. You need to include logic within your application to resolve any conflicts that may occur.

For more information about conflicts, see [“Resolving conflicts when using the SADataAdapter” on page 125](#).

For more information about the SADataAdapter object, see [“SADataAdapter class” on page 299](#).

There is no performance impact from using the SADataReader within an SACommand object to fetch rows from the database rather than the SADataAdapter object.

## Using the SACommand object to retrieve and manipulate data

The following sections describe how to retrieve data and how to insert, update, or delete rows using the SADataReader.

### Getting data using the SACommand object

The SACommand object allows you to execute a SQL statement or call a stored procedure against a SQL Anywhere database. You can use any of the following methods to retrieve data from the database:

- **ExecuteReader** Issues a SQL query that returns a result set. This method uses a forward-only, read-only cursor. You can loop quickly through the rows of the result set in one direction.

For more information, see [“ExecuteReader methods” on page 226](#).

- **ExecuteScalar** Issues a SQL query that returns a single value. This can be the first column in the first row of the result set, or a SQL statement that returns an aggregate value such as COUNT or AVG. This method uses a forward-only, read-only cursor.

For more information, see [“ExecuteScalar method” on page 227](#).

When using the SACommand object, you can use the SADataReader to retrieve a result set that is based on a join. However, you can only make changes (inserts, updates, or deletes) to data that is from a single table. You cannot update result sets that are based on joins.

The following instructions use the Simple code sample included with the .NET Data Provider.

For more information about the Simple code sample, see [“Understanding the Simple sample project” on page 148](#).

### To issue a SQL query that returns a complete result set

1. Declare and initialize a Connection object.

```
SAConnection conn = new SAConnection(
    "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo" );
```

2. Open the connection.

```
try {
    conn.Open();
}
```

3. Add a Command object to define and execute a SQL statement.

```
SACommand cmd = new SACommand(
    "SELECT Surname FROM Employees", conn );
```

If you are calling a stored procedure, you must specify the parameters for the stored procedure.

For more information, see [“Using stored procedures” on page 134](#) and [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#).

4. Call the ExecuteReader method to return the DataReader object.

```
SADataReader reader = cmd.ExecuteReader();
```

5. Display the results.

```
listEmployees.BeginUpdate();
while( reader.Read() ) {
    listEmployees.Items.Add( reader.GetString( 0 ) );
}
listEmployees.EndUpdate();
```

6. Close the DataReader and Connection objects.

```
reader.Close();
conn.Close();
```



### To issue a SQL query that returns only one value

1. Declare and initialize an SAConnection object.

```
SAConnection conn = new SAConnection(
    "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo" );
```

2. Open the connection.

```
conn.Open();
```

3. Add an SACommand object to define and execute a SQL statement.

```
SACommand cmd = new SACommand(
    "SELECT COUNT(*) FROM Employees WHERE Sex = 'M'",
    conn );
```

If you are calling a stored procedure, you must specify the parameters for the stored procedure.

For more information, see [“Using stored procedures” on page 134](#).

4. Call the ExecuteScalar method to return the object containing the value.

```
int count = (int) cmd.ExecuteScalar();
```

5. Close the SAConnection object.

```
conn.Close();
```

When using the SADataReader, there are several Get methods available that you can use to return the results in the specified data type.

For more information, see [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#).

### Visual Basic DataReader example

The following Visual Basic code opens a connection to the SQL Anywhere sample database and uses the DataReader to return the last name of the first five employees in the result set:

```
Dim myConn As New .SAConnection()
Dim myCmd As _
    New .SACommand _
    ("SELECT Surname FROM Employees", myConn)
Dim myReader As SADataReader
Dim counter As Integer
myConn.ConnectionString = _
    "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo"
myConn.Open()
myReader = myCmd.ExecuteReader()
counter = 0
Do While (myReader.Read())
    MsgBox(myReader.GetString(0))
    counter = counter + 1
    If counter >= 5 Then Exit Do
Loop
myConn.Close()
```

## Inserting, updating, and deleting rows using the SACommand object

To perform an insert, update, or delete with the SACommand object, use the ExecuteNonQuery function. The ExecuteNonQuery function issues a query (SQL statement or stored procedure) that does not return a result set. See [“ExecuteNonQuery method” on page 225](#).

You can only make changes (inserts, updates, or deletes) to data that is from a single table. You cannot update result sets that are based on joins. You must be connected to a database to use the SACommand object.

For information about obtaining primary key values for autoincrement primary keys, see [“Obtaining primary key values” on page 129](#).

If you want to set the isolation level for a SQL statement, you must use the SACommand object as part of an SATransaction object. When you modify data without an SATransaction object, the .NET Data Provider operates in autocommit mode and any changes that you make are applied immediately. See [“Transaction processing” on page 136](#).

### To issue a statement that inserts a row

1. Declare and initialize an SAConnection object.

```
SAConnection conn = new SAConnection(  
    c_connStr );  
conn.Open();
```

2. Open the connection.

```
conn.Open();
```

3. Add an SACommand object to define and execute an INSERT statement.

You can use an INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE statement with the ExecuteNonQuery method.

```
SACommand insertCmd = new SACommand(  
    "INSERT INTO Departments( DepartmentID, DepartmentName )  
    VALUES( ?, ? )", conn );
```

If you are calling a stored procedure, you must specify the parameters for the stored procedure.

For more information, see [“Using stored procedures” on page 134](#) and [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#).

4. Set the parameters for the SACommand object.

The following code defines parameters for the DepartmentID and DepartmentName columns respectively.

```
SAParameter parm = new SAParameter();  
parm.SADbType = SADbType.Integer;  
insertCmd.Parameters.Add( parm );  
parm = new SAParameter();  
parm.SADbType = SADbType.Char;  
insertCmd.Parameters.Add( parm );
```

5. Insert the new values and call the ExecuteNonQuery method to apply the changes to the database.

```
insertCmd.Parameters[0].Value = 600;  
insertCmd.Parameters[1].Value = "Eastern Sales";
```

```
int recordsAffected = insertCmd.ExecuteNonQuery();
insertCmd.Parameters[0].Value = 700;
insertCmd.Parameters[1].Value = "Western Sales";
recordsAffected = insertCmd.ExecuteNonQuery();
```

6. Display the results and bind them to the grid on the screen.

```
SACommand selectCmd = new SACommand(
    "SELECT * FROM Departments", conn );
SADataReader dr = selectCmd.ExecuteReader();

System.Windows.Forms.DataGrid dataGrid;
dataGrid = new System.Windows.Forms.DataGrid();
dataGrid.Location = new Point(10, 10);
dataGrid.Size = new Size(275, 200);
dataGrid.CaptionText = "iAnywhere SACommand Example";
this.Controls.Add(dataGrid);

dataGrid.DataSource = dr;
dataGrid.Show();
```

7. Close the SADataReader and SAConnection objects.

```
dr.Close();
conn.Close();
```

### To issue a statement that updates a row

1. Declare and initialize an SAConnection object.

```
SAConnection conn = new SAConnection(
    c_connStr );
```

2. Open the connection.

```
conn.Open();
```

3. Add an SACommand object to define and execute an UPDATE statement.

You can use an INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE statement with the ExecuteNonQuery method.

```
SACommand updateCmd = new SACommand(
    "UPDATE Departments SET DepartmentName = 'Engineering'
    WHERE DepartmentID=100", conn );
```

If you are calling a stored procedure, you must specify the parameters for the stored procedure.

For more information, see [“Using stored procedures” on page 134](#) and [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#).

4. Call the ExecuteNonQuery method to apply the changes to the database.

```
int recordsAffected = updateCmd.ExecuteNonQuery();
```

5. Display the results and bind them to the grid on the screen.

```
SACommand selectCmd = new SACommand(
    "SELECT * FROM Departments", conn );
SADataReader dr = selectCmd.ExecuteReader();
dataGrid.DataSource = dr;
```

6. Close the SADataReader and SAConnection objects.

```
dr.Close();  
conn.Close();
```

### To issue a statement that deletes a row

1. Declare and initialize an SAConnection object.

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection(  
    c_connStr );
```

2. Open the connection.

```
conn.Open();
```

3. Create an SACCommand object to define and execute a DELETE statement.

You can use an INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE statement with the ExecuteNonQuery method.

```
SACCommand deleteCmd = new SACCommand(  
    "DELETE FROM Departments WHERE ( DepartmentID > 500 )", conn );
```

If you are calling a stored procedure, you must specify the parameters for the stored procedure.

For more information, see [“Using stored procedures” on page 134](#) and [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#).

4. Call the ExecuteNonQuery method to apply the changes to the database.

```
int recordsAffected = deleteCmd.ExecuteNonQuery();
```

5. Close the SAConnection object.

```
conn.Close();
```

## Obtaining DataReader schema information

You can obtain schema information about columns in the result set.

If you are using the SADataReader, you can use the GetSchemaTable method to obtain information about the result set. The GetSchemaTable method returns the standard .NET DataTable object, which provides information about all the columns in the result set, including column properties.

For more information about the GetSchemaTable method, see [“GetSchemaTable method” on page 331](#).

### To obtain information about a result set using the GetSchemaTable method

1. Declare and initialize a connection object.

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection(  
    c_connStr );
```

2. Open the connection.

```
conn.Open();
```

3. Create an SACCommand object with the SELECT statement you want to use. The schema is returned for the result set of this query.

```
SACommand cmd = new SACommand(  
    "SELECT * FROM Employees", conn );
```

4. Create an SADataReader object and execute the Command object you created.

```
SADataReader dr = cmd.ExecuteReader();
```

5. Fill the DataTable with the schema from the data source.

```
DataTable schema = dr.GetSchemaTable();
```

6. Close the SADataReader and SAConnection objects.

```
dr.Close();  
conn.Close();
```

7. Bind the DataTable to the grid on the screen.

```
dataGridView.DataSource = schema;
```

## Using the SADataAdapter object to access and manipulate data

The following sections describe how to retrieve data and how to insert, update, or delete rows using the SADataAdapter.

### Getting data using the SADataAdapter object

The SADataAdapter allows you to view the entire result set by using the Fill method to fill a DataSet with the results from a query by binding the DataSet to the display grid.

Using the SADataAdapter, you can pass any string (SQL statement or stored procedure) that returns a result set. When you use the SADataAdapter, all the rows are fetched in one operation using a forward-only, read-only cursor. Once all the rows in the result set have been read, the cursor is closed. The SADataAdapter allows you to make changes to the DataSet. Once your changes are complete, you must reconnect to the database to apply the changes.

You can use the SADataAdapter object to retrieve a result set that is based on a join. However, you can only make changes (inserts, updates, or deletes) to data that is from a single table. You cannot update result sets that are based on joins.

#### **Caution**

Any changes you make to the DataSet are made while you are disconnected from the database. This means that your application does not have locks on these rows in the database. Your application must be designed to resolve any conflicts that may occur when changes from the DataSet are applied to the database in the event that another user changes the data you are modifying before your changes are applied to the database.

For more information about the SADataAdapter, see [“SADataAdapter class” on page 299](#).

## SDataAdapter example

The following example shows how to fill a DataSet using the SDataAdapter.

### To retrieve data using the SDataAdapter object

1. Connect to the database.
2. Create a new DataSet. In this case, the DataSet is called Results.

```
DataSet ds =new DataSet ();
```

3. Create a new SDataAdapter object to execute a SQL statement and fill the DataSet.

```
SDataAdapter da=new SDataAdapter(  
    txtSQLStatement.Text, _conn);  
da.Fill(ds, "Results")
```

4. Bind the DataSet to the grid on the screen.

```
dgResults.DataSource = ds.Tables["Results"]
```

## Inserting, updating, and deleting rows using the SDataAdapter object

The SDataAdapter retrieves the result set into a DataSet. A DataSet is a collection of tables and the relationships and constraints between those tables. The DataSet is built into the .NET Framework, and is independent of the Data Provider used to connect to your database.

When you use the SDataAdapter, you must be connected to the database to fill the DataSet and to update the database with changes made to the DataSet. However, once the DataSet is filled, you can modify the DataSet while disconnected from the database.

If you do not want to apply your changes to the database right away, you can write the DataSet, including the data and/or the schema, to an XML file using the WriteXML method. Then, you can apply the changes at a later time by loading a DataSet with the ReadXML method.

For more information, see the .NET Framework documentation for WriteXML and ReadXML.

When you call the Update method to apply changes from the DataSet to the database, the SDataAdapter analyzes the changes that have been made and then invokes the appropriate statements, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE, as necessary. When you use the DataSet, you can only make changes (inserts, updates, or deletes) to data that is from a single table. You cannot update result sets that are based on joins. If another user has a lock on the row you are trying to update, an exception is thrown.

### Caution

Any changes you make to the DataSet are made while you are disconnected. This means that your application does not have locks on these rows in the database. Your application must be designed to resolve any conflicts that may occur when changes from the DataSet are applied to the database in the event that another user changes the data you are modifying before your changes are applied to the database.

## Resolving conflicts when using the SDataAdapter

When you use the SDataAdapter, no locks are placed on the rows in the database. This means there is the potential for conflicts to arise when you apply changes from the DataSet to the database. Your application should include logic to resolve or log conflicts that arise.

Some of the conflicts that your application logic should address include:

- Unique primary keys** If two users insert new rows into a table, each row must have a unique primary key. For tables with autoincrement primary keys, the values in the DataSet may become out of sync with the values in the data source.  
  
 For information about obtaining primary key values for autoincrement primary keys, see [“Obtaining primary key values” on page 129](#).
- Updates made to the same value** If two users modify the same value, your application should include logic to determine which value is correct.
- Schema changes** If a user modifies the schema of a table you have updated in the DataSet, the update will fail when you apply the changes to the database.
- Data concurrency** Concurrent applications should see a consistent set of data. The SDataAdapter does not place a lock on rows that it fetches, so another user can update a value in the database once you have retrieved the DataSet and are working offline.

Many of these potential problems can be avoided by using the SACommand, SDataReader, and SATransaction objects to apply changes to the database. The SATransaction object is recommended because it allows you to set the isolation level for the transaction and it places locks on the rows so that other users cannot modify them.

For more information about using transactions to apply your changes to the database, see [“Inserting, updating, and deleting rows using the SACommand object” on page 120](#).

To simplify the process of conflict resolution, you can design your INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE statement to be a stored procedure call. By including INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements in stored procedures, you can catch the error if the operation fails. In addition to the statement, you can add error handling logic to the stored procedure so that if the operation fails the appropriate action is taken, such as recording the error to a log file, or trying the operation again.

## To insert rows into a table using the SDataAdapter

1. Declare and initialize an SAConnection object.

```
SAConnection conn = new SAConnection(
    c_connStr );
```

2. Open the connection.

```
conn.Open();
```

3. Create a new SDataAdapter object.

```
SDataAdapter adapter = new SDataAdapter();
adapter.MissingMappingAction =
    MissingMappingAction.Passthrough;
```

```
adapter.MissingSchemaAction =  
MissingSchemaAction.Add;
```

4. Create the necessary `SACommand` objects and define any necessary parameters.

The following code creates a `SELECT` and an `INSERT` statement and defines the parameters for the `INSERT` statement.

```
adapter.SelectCommand = new SACommand(  
    "SELECT * FROM Departments", conn );  
adapter.InsertCommand = new SACommand(  
    "INSERT INTO Departments( DepartmentID, DepartmentName )  
    VALUES( ?, ? )", conn );  
adapter.InsertCommand.UpdatedRowSource =  
    UpdateRowSource.None;  
SAParameter parm = new SAParameter();  
parm.SADbType = SADbType.Integer;  
parm.SourceColumn = "DepartmentID";  
parm.SourceVersion = DataRowVersion.Current;  
adapter.InsertCommand.Parameters.Add(  
    parm );  
parm = new SAParameter();  
parm.SADbType = SADbType.Char;  
parm.SourceColumn = "DepartmentName";  
parm.SourceVersion = DataRowVersion.Current;  
adapter.InsertCommand.Parameters.Add( parm );
```

5. Fill the `DataTable` with the results of the `SELECT` statement.

```
DataTable dataTable = new DataTable( "Departments" );  
int rowCount = adapter.Fill( dataTable );
```

6. Insert the new rows into the `DataTable` and apply the changes to the database.

```
DataRow row1 = dataTable.NewRow();  
row1[0] = 600;  
row1[1] = "Eastern Sales";  
dataTable.Rows.Add( row1 );  
DataRow row2 = dataTable.NewRow();  
row2[0] = 700;  
row2[1] = "Western Sales";  
dataTable.Rows.Add( row2 );  
recordsAffected = adapter.Update( dataTable );
```

7. Display the results of the updates.

```
dataTable.Clear();  
rowCount = adapter.Fill( dataTable );  
dataGridView.DataSource = dataTable;
```

8. Close the connection.

```
conn.Close();
```

### To update rows using the `SDataAdapter` object

1. Declare and initialize an `SACConnection` object.

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection( c_connStr );
```

2. Open the connection.



```
conn.Open();
```

3. Create a new `SDataAdapter` object.

```
SDataAdapter adapter = new SDataAdapter();
adapter.MissingMappingAction =
    MissingMappingAction.Passthrough;
adapter.MissingSchemaAction =
    MissingSchemaAction.Add;
```

4. Create an `SACCommand` object and define its parameters.

The following code creates a `SELECT` and an `UPDATE` statement and defines the parameters for the `UPDATE` statement.

```
adapter.SelectCommand = new SACCommand(
    "SELECT * FROM Departments WHERE DepartmentID > 500",
    conn );
adapter.UpdateCommand = new SACCommand(
    "UPDATE Departments SET DepartmentName = ?
    WHERE DepartmentID = ?", conn );
adapter.UpdateCommand.UpdatedRowSource =
    UpdateRowSource.None;
SAParameter parm = new SAParameter();
parm.SADbType = SADbType.Char;
parm.SourceColumn = "DepartmentName";
parm.SourceVersion = DataRowVersion.Current;
adapter.UpdateCommand.Parameters.Add( parm );
parm = new SAParameter();
parm.SADbType = SADbType.Integer;
parm.SourceColumn = "DepartmentID";
parm.SourceVersion = DataRowVersion.Original;
adapter.UpdateCommand.Parameters.Add( parm );
```

5. Fill the `DataTable` with the results of the `SELECT` statement.

```
DataTable dataTable = new DataTable( "Departments" );
int rowCount = adapter.Fill( dataTable );
```

6. Update the `DataTable` with the updated values for the rows and apply the changes to the database.

```
foreach ( DataRow row in dataTable.Rows )
{
    row[1] = ( string ) row[1] + "_Updated";
}
recordsAffected = adapter.Update( dataTable );
```

7. Bind the results to the grid on the screen.

```
dataTable.Clear();
adapter.SelectCommand.CommandText =
    "SELECT * FROM Departments";
rowCount = adapter.Fill( dataTable );
dataGridView.DataSource = dataTable;
```

8. Close the connection.

```
conn.Close();
```

## To delete rows from a table using the `SDataAdapter` object

1. Declare and initialize an `SACConnection` object.

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection( c_connStr );
```

2. Open the connection.

```
conn.Open();
```

3. Create an SDataAdapter object.

```
SDataAdapter adapter = new SDataAdapter();  
adapter.MissingMappingAction =  
    MissingMappingAction.Passthrough;  
adapter.MissingSchemaAction =  
    MissingSchemaAction.AddWithKey;
```

4. Create the required SACCommand objects and define any necessary parameters.

The following code creates a SELECT and a DELETE statement and defines the parameters for the DELETE statement.

```
adapter.SelectCommand = new SACCommand(  
    "SELECT * FROM Departments WHERE DepartmentID > 500",  
    conn );  
adapter.DeleteCommand = new SACCommand(  
    "DELETE FROM Departments WHERE DepartmentID = ?",  
    conn );  
adapter.DeleteCommand.UpdatedRowSource =  
    UpdateRowSource.None;  
SParameter parm = new SParameter();  
parm.SADbType = SADbType.Integer;  
parm.SourceColumn = "DepartmentID";  
parm.SourceVersion = DataRowVersion.Original;  
adapter.DeleteCommand.Parameters.Add( parm );
```

5. Fill the DataTable with the results of the SELECT statement.

```
DataTable dataTable = new DataTable( "Departments" );  
int rowCount = adapter.Fill( dataTable );
```

6. Modify the DataTable and apply the changes to the database.

```
for each ( DataRow in dataTable.Rows )  
{  
    row.Delete();  
}  
recordsAffected = adapter.Update( dataTable )
```

7. Bind the results to the grid on the screen.

```
dataTable.Clear();  
rowCount = adapter.Fill( dataTable );  
dataGridView.DataSource = dataTable;
```

8. Close the connection.

```
conn.Close();
```

## Obtaining SDataAdapter schema information

When using the SDataAdapter, you can use the FillSchema method to obtain schema information about the result set in the DataSet. The FillSchema method returns the standard .NET DataTable object, which provides the names of all the columns in the result set.

### To obtain DataSet schema information using the FillSchema method

1. Declare and initialize an SAConnection object.

```
SAConnection conn = new SAConnection(
    c_connStr );
```

2. Open the connection.

```
conn.Open();
```

3. Create an SADataAdapter with the SELECT statement you want to use. The schema is returned for the result set of this query.

```
SDataAdapter adapter = new SDataAdapter(
    "SELECT * FROM Employees", conn );
```

4. Create a new DataTable object, in this case called Table, to fill with the schema.

```
DataTable dataTable = new DataTable(
    "Table" );
```

5. Fill the DataTable with the schema from the data source.

```
adapter.FillSchema( dataTable, SchemaType.Source );
```

6. Close the SAConnection object.

```
conn.Close();
```

7. Bind the DataSet to the grid on the screen.

```
dataGridView.DataSource = dataTable;
```

## Obtaining primary key values

If the table you are updating has an autoincremented primary key, uses UUIDs, or if the primary key comes from a primary key pool, you can use a stored procedure to obtain values generated by the data source.

When using the SADataAdapter, this technique can be used to fill the columns in the DataSet with the primary key values generated by the data source. If you want to use this technique with the SACommand object, you can either get the key columns from the parameters or reopen the DataReader.

### Examples

The following examples use a table called adodotnet\_primarykey that contains two columns, ID and Name. The primary key for the table is ID. It is an INTEGER and contains an autoincremented value. The Name column is CHAR(40).

These examples call the following stored procedure to retrieve the autoincremented primary key value from the database.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE sp_adodotnet_primarykey( out p_id int, in p_name char(40) )
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO adodotnet_primarykey( name ) VALUES(
        p_name );
    SELECT @@IDENTITY INTO p_id;
END
```

**To insert a new row with an autoincremented primary key using the SACommand object**

1. Connect to the database.

```
SAConnection conn = OpenConnection();
```

2. Create a new SACommand object to insert new rows into the DataTable. In the following code, the line `int id1 = ( int ) parmId.Value;` verifies the primary key value of the row.

```
SACommand cmd = conn.CreateCommand();  
cmd.CommandText = "sp_adodotnet_primarykey";  
cmd.CommandType = CommandType.StoredProcedure;  
SAParameter parmId = new SAParameter();  
parmId.SADbType = SADbType.Integer;  
parmId.Direction = ParameterDirection.Output;  
cmd.Parameters.Add( parmId );  
SAParameter parmName = new SAParameter();  
parmName.SADbType = SADbType.Char;  
parmName.Direction = ParameterDirection.Input;  
cmd.Parameters.Add( parmName );  
parmName.Value = "R & D --- Command";  
cmd.ExecuteNonQuery();  
int id1 = ( int ) parmId.Value;  
parmName.Value = "Marketing --- Command";  
cmd.ExecuteNonQuery();  
int id2 = ( int ) parmId.Value;  
parmName.Value = "Sales --- Command";  
cmd.ExecuteNonQuery();  
int id3 = ( int ) parmId.Value;  
parmName.Value = "Shipping --- Command";  
cmd.ExecuteNonQuery();  
int id4 = ( int ) parmId.Value;
```

3. Bind the results to the grid on the screen and apply the changes to the database.

```
cmd.CommandText = "SELECT * FROM " +  
    adodotnet_primarykey";  
cmd.CommandType = CommandType.Text;  
SADataReader dr = cmd.ExecuteReader();  
dataGrid.DataSource = dr;
```

4. Close the connection.

```
conn.Close();
```

**To insert a new row with an autoincremented primary key using the SADataAdapter object**

1. Create a new SADataAdapter.

```
DataSet dataSet = new DataSet();  
SAConnection conn = OpenConnection();  
SADataAdapter adapter = new SADataAdapter();  
adapter.MissingMappingAction =  
    MissingMappingAction.Passthrough;  
adapter.MissingSchemaAction =  
    MissingSchemaAction.AddWithKey;
```

2. Fill the data and schema of the DataSet. The SelectCommand is called by the SADataAdapter.Fill method to do this. You can also create the DataSet manually without using the Fill method and SelectCommand if you do not need the existing records.

```
adapter.SelectCommand = new SACommand( "select * from +
adodotnet_primarykey", conn );
```

3. Create a new SACommand to obtain the primary key values from the database.

```
adapter.InsertCommand = new SACommand(
    "sp_adodotnet_primarykey", conn );
adapter.InsertCommand.CommandType =
    CommandType.StoredProcedure;
adapter.InsertCommand.UpdatedRowSource =
    UpdateRowSource.OutputParameters;
SAParameter parmId = new SAParameter();
parmId.SADbType = SADbType.Integer;
parmId.Direction = ParameterDirection.Output;
parmId.SourceColumn = "ID";
parmId.SourceVersion = DataRowVersion.Current;
adapter.InsertCommand.Parameters.Add( parmId );
SAParameter parmName = new SAParameter();
parmName.SADbType = SADbType.Char;
parmName.Direction = ParameterDirection.Input;
parmName.SourceColumn = "name";
parmName.SourceVersion = DataRowVersion.Current;
adapter.InsertCommand.Parameters.Add( parmName );
```

4. Fill the DataSet.

```
adapter.Fill( dataSet );
```

5. Insert the new rows into the DataSet.

```
DataRow row = dataSet.Tables[0].NewRow();
row[0] = -1;
row[1] = "R & D --- Adapter";
dataSet.Tables[0].Rows.Add( row );
row = dataSet.Tables[0].NewRow();
row[0] = -2;
row[1] = "Marketing --- Adapter";
dataSet.Tables[0].Rows.Add( row );
row = dataSet.Tables[0].NewRow();
row[0] = -3;
row[1] = "Sales --- Adapter";
dataSet.Tables[0].Rows.Add( row );
row = dataSet.Tables[0].NewRow();
row[0] = -4;
row[1] = "Shipping --- Adapter";
dataSet.Tables[0].Rows.Add( row );
```

6. Apply the changes in the DataSet to the database. When the Update method is called, the primary key values are changed to the values obtained from the database.

```
adapter.Update( dataSet );
dataGridView.DataSource = dataSet.Tables[0];
```

When you add new rows to the DataTable and call the Update method, the SDataAdapter calls the InsertCommand and maps the output parameters to the key columns for each new row. The Update method is called only once, but the InsertCommand is called by the Update method as many times as necessary for each new row being added.

7. Close the connection to the database.

```
conn.Close();
```

## Handling BLOBs

When fetching long string values or binary data, there are methods that you can use to fetch the data in pieces. For binary data, use the `GetBytes` method, and for string data, use the `GetChars` method. Otherwise, BLOB data is treated in the same manner as any other data you fetch from the database.

For more information, see [“GetBytes method” on page 319](#) and [“GetChars method” on page 321](#).

### To issue a statement that returns a string using the `GetChars` method

1. Declare and initialize a `Connection` object.
2. Open the connection.
3. Add a `Command` object to define and execute a SQL statement.

```
SACommand cmd = new SACommand(
    "SELECT int_col, blob_col FROM test", conn );
```

4. Call the `ExecuteReader` method to return the `DataReader` object.

```
SADataReader reader = cmd.ExecuteReader();
```

The following code reads the two columns from the result set. The first column is an integer (`GetInt32( 0 )`), while the second column is a LONG VARCHAR. `GetChars` is used to read 100 characters at a time from the LONG VARCHAR column.

```
int length = 100;
char[] buf = new char[ length ];
int intValue;
long dataIndex = 0;
long charsRead = 0;
long blobLength = 0;
while( reader.Read() ) {
    intValue = reader.GetInt32( 0 );
    while ( ( charsRead = reader.GetChars(
        1, dataIndex, buf, 0, length ) ) == ( long )
        length ) {
        dataIndex += length;
    }
    blobLength = dataIndex + charsRead;
}
```

5. Close the `DataReader` and `Connection` objects.

```
reader.Close();
conn.Close();
```

## Obtaining time values

The .NET Framework does not have a `Time` structure. If you want to fetch time values from SQL Anywhere, you must use the `GetTimeSpan` method. Using this method returns the data as a .NET Framework `TimeSpan` object.

For more information about the `GetTimeSpan` method, see [“GetTimeSpan method” on page 334](#).

### To convert a time value using the GetTimeSpan method

1. Declare and initialize a connection object.

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection(
    "Data Source=dsn-time-test;UID=DBA;PWD=sql" );
```

2. Open the connection.

```
conn.Open();
```

3. Add a Command object to define and execute a SQL statement.

```
SACCommand cmd = new SACCommand(
    "SELECT ID, time_col FROM time_test", conn )
```

4. Call the ExecuteReader method to return the DataReader object.

```
SADataReader reader = cmd.ExecuteReader();
```

The following code uses the GetTimeSpan method to return the time as TimeSpan.

```
while ( reader.Read() )
{
    int ID = reader.GetInt32();
    TimeSpan time = reader.GetTimeSpan();
}
```

5. Close the DataReader and Connection objects.

```
reader.Close();
conn.Close();
```

## Using stored procedures

You can use stored procedures with the .NET Data Provider. The `ExecuteReader` method is used to call stored procedures that return a result set, while the `ExecuteNonQuery` method is used to call stored procedures that do not return a result set. The `ExecuteScalar` method is used to call stored procedures that return only a single value.

When you call a stored procedure, you must create an `SAParameter` object. Use a question mark as a placeholder for parameters, as follows:

```
sp_producttype( ?, ? )
```

For more information about the `Parameter` object, see [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#).

### To execute a stored procedure

1. Declare and initialize an `SACConnection` object.

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection(
    "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo" );
```

2. Open the connection.

```
conn.Open();
```

3. Add an `SACCommand` object to define and execute a SQL statement. The following code uses the `CommandType` property to identify the statement as a stored procedure.

```
SACCommand cmd = new SACCommand( "ShowProductInfo",
    conn );
cmd.CommandType = CommandType.StoredProcedure;
```

If you do not specify the `CommandType` property, then you must use a question mark as a placeholder for parameters, as follows:

```
SACCommand cmd = new SACCommand(
    "call ShowProductInfo(?)", conn );
cmd.CommandType = CommandType.Text;
```

4. Add an `SAParameter` object to define the parameters for the stored procedure. You must create a new `SAParameter` object for each parameter the stored procedure requires.

```
SAParameter param = cmd.CreateParameter();
param.SADbType = SADbType.Int32;
param.Direction = ParameterDirection.Input;
param.Value = 301;
cmd.Parameters.Add( param );
```

For more information about the `Parameter` object, see [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#).

5. Call the `ExecuteReader` method to return the `DataReader` object. The `Get` methods are used to return the results in the specified data type.

```
SADataReader reader = cmd.ExecuteReader();
reader.Read();
int ID = reader.GetInt32(0);
string name = reader.GetString(1);
```



```
string descrip = reader.GetString(2);  
decimal price = reader.GetDecimal(6);
```

6. Close the SADataReader and SAConnection objects.

```
reader.Close();  
conn.Close();
```

### Alternative way to call a stored procedure

Step 3 in the above instructions presents two ways you can call a stored procedure. Another way you can call a stored procedure, without using a Parameter object, is to call the stored procedure from your source code, as follows:

```
SACommand cmd = new SACommand(  
    "call ShowProductInfo( 301 )", conn );
```

For information about calling stored procedures that return a result set or a single value, see [“Getting data using the SACommand object” on page 117](#).

For information about calling stored procedures that do not return a result set, see [“Inserting, updating, and deleting rows using the SACommand object” on page 120](#).

## Transaction processing

With the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider, you can use the `SATransaction` object to group statements together. Each transaction ends with a `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK`, which either makes your changes to the database permanent or cancels all the operations in the transaction. Once the transaction is complete, you must create a new `SATransaction` object to make further changes. This behavior is different from ODBC and embedded SQL, where a transaction persists after you execute a `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` until the transaction is closed.

If you do not create a transaction, the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider operates in autocommit mode by default. There is an implicit `COMMIT` after each insert, update, or delete, and once an operation is completed, the change is made to the database. In this case, the changes cannot be rolled back.

For more information about the `SATransaction` object, see [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#).

### Setting the isolation level for transactions

The database isolation level is used by default for transactions. However, you can choose to specify the isolation level for a transaction using the `IsolationLevel` property when you begin the transaction. The isolation level applies to all statements executed within the transaction. The SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider supports snapshot isolation.

For more information about isolation levels, see [“Isolation levels and consistency” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#).

The locks that SQL Anywhere uses when you enter a `SELECT` statement depend on the transaction's isolation level.

For more information about locking and isolation levels, see [“Locking during queries” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#).

The following example uses an `SATransaction` object to issue and then roll back a SQL statement. The transaction uses isolation level 2 (`RepeatableRead`), which places a write lock on the row being modified so that no other database user can update the row.

### To use an `SATransaction` object to issue a statement

1. Declare and initialize an `SACConnection` object.

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection(  
    "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo" );
```

2. Open the connection.

```
conn.Open();
```

3. Issue a SQL statement to change the price of Tee shirts.

```
string stmt = "UPDATE Products SET UnitPrice =  
    2000.00 WHERE name = 'Tee shirt'";
```

4. Create an `SATransaction` object to issue the SQL statement using a `Command` object.

Using a transaction allows you to specify the isolation level. Isolation level 2 (`RepeatableRead`) is used in this example so that another database user cannot update the row.

```
SATransaction trans = conn.BeginTransaction(
    IsolationLevel.RepeatableRead );
SACommand cmd = new SACommand( stmt, conn,
    trans );
int rows = cmd.ExecuteNonQuery();
```

5. Roll back the changes.

```
trans.Rollback();
```

The SATransaction object allows you to commit or roll back your changes to the database. If you do not use a transaction, the .NET Data Provider operates in autocommit mode and you cannot roll back any changes that you make to the database. If you want to make the changes permanent, you would use the following:

```
trans.Commit();
```

6. Close the SAConnection object.

```
conn.Close();
```

## Distributed transaction processing

The .NET 2.0 framework introduced a new namespace System.Transactions, which contains classes for writing transactional applications. Client applications can create and participate in distributed transactions with one or multiple participants. Client applications can implicitly create transactions using the TransactionScope class. The connection object can detect the existence of an ambient transaction created by the TransactionScope and automatically enlist. The client applications can also create a CommittableTransaction and call the EnlistTransaction method to enlist. This feature is supported by the SQL Anywhere .NET 2.0 Data Provider. Distributed transaction has significant performance overhead. It is recommended that you use database transactions for non-distributed transactions.

## Error handling and the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider

Your application must be designed to handle any errors that occur, including ADO.NET errors. ADO.NET errors are handled within your code in the same way that you handle other errors in your application.

The SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider throws `SAException` objects whenever errors occur during execution. Each `SAException` object consists of a list of `SAError` objects, and these error objects include the error message and code.

Errors are different from conflicts. Conflicts arise when changes are applied to the database. Your application should include a process to compute correct values or to log conflicts when they arise.

For more information about handling conflicts, see [“Resolving conflicts when using the `SADDataAdapter`” on page 125](#).

### .NET Data Provider error handling example

The following example is from the Simple sample project. Any errors that occur during execution and that originate with SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider objects are handled by displaying them in a window. The following code catches the error and displays its message:

```
catch( SAException ex ) {  
    MessageBox.Show( ex.Errors[0].Message );  
}
```

### Connection error handling example

The following example is from the Table Viewer sample project. If there is an error when the application attempts to connect to the database, the following code uses a try and catch block to catch the error and display its message:

```
try {  
    _conn = new SAConnection( txtConnectString.Text );  
    _conn.Open();  
} catch( SAException ex ) {  
    MessageBox.Show( ex.Errors[0].Source + " : "  
        + ex.Errors[0].Message + " (" +  
        ex.Errors[0].NativeError.ToString() + ")",  
        "Failed to connect" );  
}
```

For more error handling examples, see [“Understanding the Simple sample project” on page 148](#) and [“Understanding the Table Viewer sample project” on page 152](#).

For more information about error handling, see [“SAFactory class” on page 359](#) and [“SAError class” on page 349](#).

## Deploying the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider

The following sections describe how to deploy the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider.

### SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider system requirements

To use the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider, you must have the following installed on your computer or handheld device:

- The .NET Framework and/or .NET Compact Framework version 2.0 or later.
- Visual Studio 2005 or later, or a .NET language compiler, such as C# (required only for development).

### SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider required files

The SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider consists of two DLLs for each platform.

#### Windows required file

For Windows (except Windows Mobile), the following DLL is required:

- *install-dir\Assembly\v2\iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll*

The file *iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll* is the DLL that is referenced by Visual Studio projects. The DLL is required for .NET Framework version 2.0 or later applications.

#### Windows Mobile required files

For Windows Mobile, the following DLL is required:

- *install-dir\ce\Assembly\v2\iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll*

The file *iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll* is the DLL that is referenced by Visual Studio projects. The DLL is required for .NET Compact Framework version 2.0 or later applications.

Visual Studio deploys the .NET Data Provider DLL (*iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll*) to your device along with your program. If you are not using Visual Studio, you need to copy the Data Provider DLL to the device along with your program. It can go in the same directory as your application, or in the Windows directory.

### Registering the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider DLL

The SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider DLL (*install-dir\Assembly\v2\iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll*) needs to be registered in the Global Assembly Cache on Windows (except Windows Mobile). The Global Assembly Cache lists all the registered programs on your computer. When you install the .NET Data

Provider, the .NET Data Provider installation program registers it. On Windows Mobile, you do not need to register the DLL.

If you are deploying the .NET Data Provider, you must register the .NET Data Provider DLL (*install-dir\Assembly\v2\iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll*) using the **gacutil** utility that is included with the .NET Framework.

## Tracing support

The SQL Anywhere .NET provider supports tracing using the .NET 2.0 or later tracing feature. Note that tracing is not supported on Windows Mobile.

By default, tracing is disabled. To enable tracing, specify the trace source in your application's configuration file. Here's an example of the configuration file:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<configuration>
  <system.diagnostics>
    <sources>
      <source name="iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere"
        switchName="SASourceSwitch"
        switchType="System.Diagnostics.SourceSwitch">
        <listeners>
          <add name="ConsoleListener"
            type="System.Diagnostics.ConsoleTraceListener"/>
          <add name="EventListener"
            type="System.Diagnostics.EventLogTraceListener"
            initializeData="MyEventLog"/>
          <add name="TraceLogListener"
            type="System.Diagnostics.TextWriterTraceListener"
            initializeData="myTrace.log"
            traceOutputOptions="ProcessId, ThreadId, Timestamp"/>
          <remove name="Default"/>
        </listeners>
      </source>
    </sources>
    <switches>
      <add name="SASourceSwitch" value="All"/>
      <add name="SATraceAllSwitch" value="1" />
      <add name="SATraceExceptionSwitch" value="1" />
      <add name="SATraceFunctionSwitch" value="1" />
      <add name="SATracePoolingSwitch" value="1" />
      <add name="SATracePropertySwitch" value="1" />
    </switches>
  </system.diagnostics>
</configuration>
```

The trace configuration information is placed in the application's *bin\debug* folder under the name *app.exe.config*.

The *traceOutputOptions* that can be specified include the following:

- **Callstack** Write the call stack, which is represented by the return value of the *Environment.StackTrace* property.
- **DateTime** Write the date and time.
- **LogicalOperationStack** Write the logical operation stack, which is represented by the return value of the *CorrelationManager.LogicalOperationStack* property.
- **None** Do not write any elements.
- **ProcessId** Write the process identity, which is represented by the return value of the *Process.Id* property.

- **ThreadId** Write the thread identity, which is represented by the return value of the `Thread.ManagedThreadId` property for the current thread.
- **Timestamp** Write the timestamp, which is represented by the return value of the `System.Diagnostics.Stopwatch.GetTimeStamp` method.

You can limit what is traced by setting specific trace options. By default the trace option settings are all 0. The trace options that can be set include the following:

- **SATraceAllSwitch** The Trace All switch. When specified, all the trace options are enabled. You do not need to set any other options since they are all selected. You cannot disable individual options if you choose this option. For example, the following will not disable exception tracing.

```
<add name="SATraceAllSwitch" value="1" />
<add name="SATraceExceptionSwitch" value="0" />
```

- **SATraceExceptionSwitch** All exceptions are logged. Trace messages have the following form.

```
<Type|ERR> message='message_text'[ nativeError=error_number]
```

The `nativeError=error_number` text will only be displayed if there is an `SAException` object.

- **SATraceFunctionSwitch** All function scope entry/exits are logged. Trace messages have any of the following forms.

```
enter_nnn <sa.class_name.method_name|API> [object_id#][parameter_names]
leave_nnn
```

The `nnn` is an integer representing the scope nesting level 1, 2, 3,... The optional `parameter_names` is a list of parameter names separated by spaces.

- **SATracePoolingSwitch** All connection pooling is logged. Trace messages have any of the following forms.

```
<sa.ConnectionPool.AllocateConnection|CPOOL>
connectionString='connection_text'
<sa.ConnectionPool.RemoveConnection|CPOOL>
connectionString='connection_text'
<sa.ConnectionPool.ReturnConnection|CPOOL>
connectionString='connection_text'
<sa.ConnectionPool.ReuseConnection|CPOOL>
connectionString='connection_text'
```

- **SATracePropertySwitch** All property setting and retrieval is logged. Trace messages have any of the following forms.

```
<sa.class_name.get_property_name|API> object_id#
<sa.class_name.set_property_name|API> object_id#
```

You can try application tracing using the `TableViewer` sample.

### To configure an application for tracing

1. You must use .NET 2.0 or later.

Start Visual Studio and open the `TableViewer` project file (`TableViewer.sln`) in `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ADO.NET\TableViewer`.



2. Place a copy of the configuration file shown above in the application's *bin\debug* folder under the name *TableViewer.exe.config*.
3. From the Debug menu, select Start Debugging.

When the application finishes execution, you will find a trace output file in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ADO.NET\TableViewer\bin\Debug\myTrace.log*.

Tracing is not supported on Windows Mobile.

For more information, see "Tracing Data Access" at <http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/dnadonet/html/tracingdataaccess.asp>.

---

---

# Tutorial: Using the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider

## Contents

Introduction to the .NET Data Provider tutorial .....	146
Using the Simple code sample .....	147
Using the Table Viewer code sample .....	150

---

## Introduction to the .NET Data Provider tutorial

This chapter explains how to use the Simple and Table Viewer sample projects that are included with the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider. The sample projects can be used with Visual Studio 2005 or later versions. The sample projects were developed with Visual Studio 2005. If you use a later version, you may have to run the Visual Studio **Upgrade Wizard**.

## Using the Simple code sample

This tutorial is based on the Simple project that is included with SQL Anywhere.

The complete application can be found in your SQL Anywhere samples directory at *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ADO.NET\SimpleWin32*.

For information about the default location of *samples-dir*, see [“Samples directory” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

The Simple project illustrates the following features:

- connecting to a database using the `SACConnection` object
- executing a query using the `SACCommand` object
- obtaining the results using the `SADataReader` object
- basic error handling

For more information about how the sample works, see [“Understanding the Simple sample project” on page 148](#).

### To run the Simple code sample in Visual Studio

1. Start Visual Studio.
2. Choose **File » Open » Project**.
3. Browse to *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ADO.NET\SimpleWin32* and open the *Simple.sln* project.
4. When you use the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider in a project, you must add a reference to the Data Provider DLL. This has already been done in the Simple code sample. You can view the reference to the Data Provider DLL in the following location:
  - In the **Solution Explorer** window, open the **References** folder.
  - You should see `iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere` in the list.

For instructions about adding a reference to the Data Provider DLL, see [“Adding a reference to the Data Provider DLL in your project” on page 112](#).

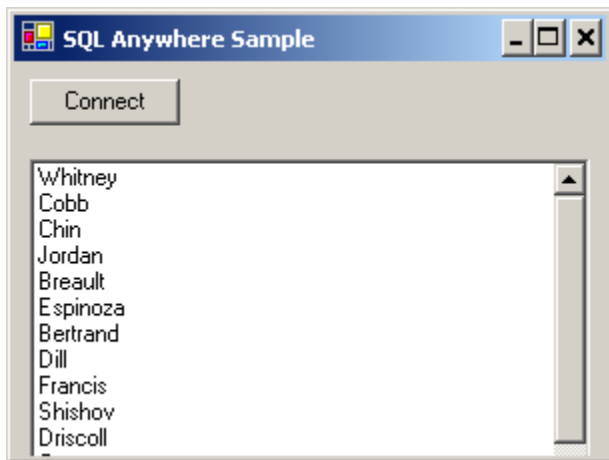
5. You must also add a `using` directive to your source code to reference the Data Provider classes. This has already been done in the Simple code sample. To view the `using` directive:
  - Open the source code for the project. In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click *Form1.cs* and choose **View Code**.
  - In the `using` directives in the top section, you should see the following line:

```
using iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere;
```

This line is required for C# projects. If you are using Visual Basic .NET, you need to add an `Imports` line to your source code.

6. Choose **Debug » Start Without Debugging** or press `Ctrl+F5` to run the Simple sample.
7. In the **SQL Anywhere Sample** window, click **Connect**.

The application connects to the SQL Anywhere sample database and puts the last name of each employee in the window, as follows:



8. Click the **X** in the upper right corner of the screen to shut down the application and disconnect from the sample database. This also shuts down the database server.

You have now run the application. The next section describes the application code.

## Understanding the Simple sample project

This section illustrates some key features of the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider by walking through some of the code from the Simple code sample. The Simple code sample uses the SQL Anywhere sample database, *demo.db*, which is held in your SQL Anywhere samples directory.

For information about the location of the SQL Anywhere samples directory, see [“Samples directory” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

For information about the sample database, including the tables in the database and the relationships between them, see [“SQL Anywhere sample database” \[SQL Anywhere 11 - Introduction\]](#).

In this section, the code is described a few lines at a time. Not all code from the sample is included here. To see all the code, open the sample project in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ADO.NET\SimpleWin32*.

**Declaring controls** The following code declares a button named `btnConnect` and a listbox named `listEmployees`.

```
private System.Windows.Forms.Button btnConnect;  
private System.Windows.Forms.ListBox listEmployees;
```

**Connecting to the database** The `btnConnect_Click` method declares and initializes an `SACConnection` connection object.

```
private void btnConnect_Click(object sender,  
    System.EventArgs e)  
    SACConnection conn = new SACConnection(  
        "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo;UID=DBA;PWD=sql" );
```

The `SACConnection` object uses the connection string to connect to the SQL Anywhere sample database when the `Open` method is called.

```
conn.Open();
```

For more information about the `SACConnection` object, see [“SACConnection class” on page 246](#).

**Defining a query** A SQL statement is executed using an `SACCommand` object. The following code declares and creates a command object using the `SACCommand` constructor. This constructor accepts a string representing the query to be executed, along with the `SACConnection` object that represents the connection that the query is executed on.

```
SACCommand cmd = new SACCommand(  
    "SELECT Surname FROM Employees", conn );
```

For more information about the `SACCommand` object, see [“SACCommand class” on page 206](#).

**Displaying the results** The results of the query are obtained using an `SADDataReader` object. The following code declares and creates an `SADDataReader` object using the `ExecuteReader` constructor. This constructor is a member of the `SACCommand` object, `cmd`, that was declared previously. `ExecuteReader` sends the command text to the connection for execution and builds an `SADDataReader`.

```
SADDataReader reader = cmd.ExecuteReader();
```

The following code loops through the rows held in the `SADDataReader` object and adds them to the listbox control. Each time the `Read` method is called, the data reader gets another row back from the result set. A new item is added to the listbox for each row that is read. The data reader uses the `GetString` method with an argument of 0 to get the first column from the result set row.

```
listEmployees.BeginUpdate();  
while( reader.Read() ) {  
    listEmployees.Items.Add( reader.GetString( 0 ) );  
}  
listEmployees.EndUpdate();
```

For more information about the `SADDataReader` object, see [“SADDataReader class” on page 310](#).

**Finishing off** The following code at the end of the method closes the data reader and connection objects.

```
reader.Close();  
conn.Close();
```

**Error handling** Any errors that occur during execution and that originate with SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider objects are handled by displaying them in a window. The following code catches the error and displays its message:

```
catch( SAException ex ) {  
    MessageBox.Show( ex.Errors[0].Message );  
}
```

For more information about the `SAException` object, see [“SAException class” on page 355](#).

## Using the Table Viewer code sample

This tutorial is based on the Table Viewer project that is included with the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider.

The complete application can be found in your SQL Anywhere samples directory in *samples-dir* \SQLAnywhere\ADO.NET\TableViewer.

For information about the default location of *samples-dir*, see [“Samples directory” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

The Table Viewer project is more complex than the Simple project. It illustrates the following features:

- connecting to a database using the SAConnection object
- executing a query using the SACommand object
- obtaining the results using the SADATAReader object
- using a grid to display the results using the DataGrid object
- more advanced error handling and result checking

For more information about how the sample works, see [“Understanding the Table Viewer sample project” on page 152](#).

### To run the Table Viewer code sample in Visual Studio

1. Start Visual Studio.
2. Choose **File » Open » Project**.
3. Browse to *samples-dir*\SQLAnywhere\ADO.NET\TableViewer and open the *TableViewer.sln* project.
4. If you want to use the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider in a project, you must add a reference to the Data Provider DLL. This has already been done in the Table Viewer code sample. You can view the reference to the Data Provider DLL in the following location:
  - In the **Solution Explorer** window, open the **References** folder.
  - You should see iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere in the list.

For instructions about adding a reference to the Data Provider DLL, see [“Adding a reference to the Data Provider DLL in your project” on page 112](#).

5. You must also add a `using` directive to your source code to reference the Data Provider classes. This has already been done in the Table Viewer code sample. To view the `using` directive:
  - Open the source code for the project. In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click *TableViewer.cs* and choose **View Code**.
  - In the `using` directives in the top section, you should see the following line:

```
using iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere;
```



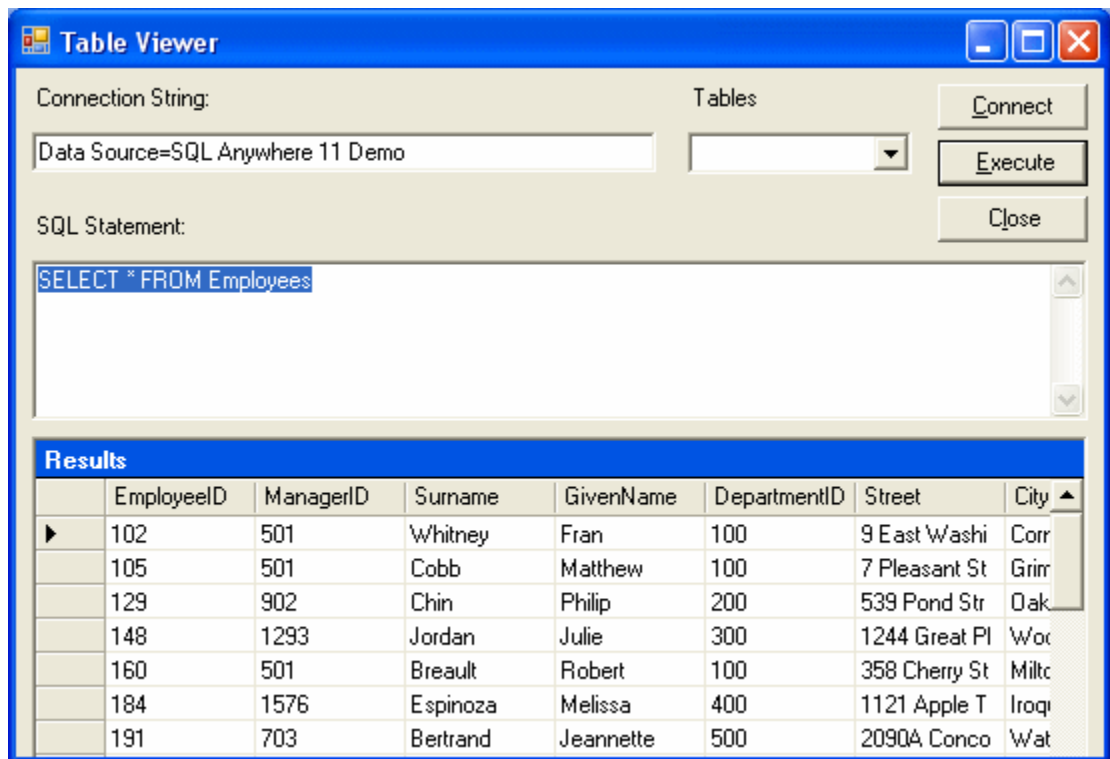
This line is required for C# projects. If you are using Visual Basic, you need to add an Imports line to your source code.

- Choose **Debug » Start Without Debugging** or press Ctrl+F5 to run the Table Viewer sample.

The application connects to the SQL Anywhere sample database.

- In the **Table Viewer** window, click **Connect**.
- In the **Table Viewer** window, click **Execute**.

The application retrieves the data from the Employees table in the sample database and puts the query results in the **Results** datagrid, as follows:



You can also execute other SQL statements from this application: type a SQL statement in the **SQL Statement** pane, and then click **Execute**.

- In the upper right corner of the window, click **X** to shut down the application and disconnect from the SQL Anywhere sample database. This also shuts down the database server.

You have now run the application. The next section describes the application code.

## Understanding the Table Viewer sample project

This section illustrates some key features of the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider by walking through some of the code from the Table Viewer code sample. The Table Viewer project uses the SQL Anywhere sample database, *demo.db*, which is held in your SQL Anywhere samples directory.

For information about the location of the SQL Anywhere samples directory, see [“Samples directory” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

For information about the sample database, including the tables in the database and the relationships between them, see [“SQL Anywhere sample database” \[SQL Anywhere 11 - Introduction\]](#).

In this section the code is described a few lines at a time. Not all code from the sample is included here. To see all the code, open the sample project in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ADO.NET\TableViewer*.

**Declaring controls** The following code declares a couple of Labels named *label1* and *label2*, a TextBox named *txtConnectionString*, a button named *btnConnect*, a TextBox named *txtSQLStatement*, a button named *btnExecute*, and a DataGrid named *dgResults*.

```
private System.Windows.Forms.Label label1;
private System.Windows.Forms.TextBox txtConnectionString;
private System.Windows.Forms.Label label2;
private System.Windows.Forms.Button btnConnect;
private System.Windows.Forms.TextBox txtSQLStatement;
private System.Windows.Forms.Button btnExecute;
private System.Windows.Forms.DataGrid dgResults;
```

**Declaring a connection object** The *SACConnection* type is used to declare an uninitialized SQL Anywhere connection object. The *SACConnection* object is used to represent a unique connection to a SQL Anywhere data source.

```
private SACConnection _conn;
```

For more information about the *SACConnection* class, see [“SACConnection class” on page 246](#).

**Connecting to the database** The *Text* property of the *txtConnectionString* object has a default value of "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo". This value can be overridden by the application user by typing a new value into the *txtConnectionString* text box. You can see how this default value is set by opening up the region or section in *TableViewer.cs* labeled Windows Form Designer Generated Code. In this section, you find the following line of code.

```
this.txtConnectionString.Text = "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo";
```

Later, the *SACConnection* object uses the connection string to connect to a database. The following code creates a new connection object with the connection string using the *SACConnection* constructor. It then establishes the connection by using the *Open* method.

```
_conn = new SACConnection( txtConnectionString.Text );
_conn.Open();
```

For more information about the *SACConnection* constructor, see [“SACConnection members” on page 247](#).

**Defining a query** The *Text* property of the *txtSQLStatement* object has a default value of "SELECT \* FROM Employees". This value can be overridden by the application user by typing a new value into the *txtSQLStatement* text box.

The SQL statement is executed using an `SACCommand` object. The following code declares and creates a command object using the `SACCommand` constructor. This constructor accepts a string representing the query to be executed, along with the `SACConnection` object that represents the connection that the query is executed on.

```
SACCommand cmd = new SACCommand( txtSQLStatement.Text.Trim(),
                                _conn );
```

For more information about the `SACCommand` object, see [“SACCommand class” on page 206](#).

**Displaying the results** The results of the query are obtained using an `SADDataReader` object. The following code declares and creates an `SADDataReader` object using the `ExecuteReader` constructor. This constructor is a member of the `SACCommand` object, `cmd`, that was declared previously. `ExecuteReader` sends the command text to the connection for execution and builds an `SADDataReader`.

```
SADDataReader dr = cmd.ExecuteReader();
```

The following code connects the `SADDataReader` object to the `DataGrid` object, which causes the result columns to appear on the screen. The `SADDataReader` object is then closed.

```
dgResults.DataSource = dr;
dr.Close();
```

For more information about the `SADDataReader` object, see [“SADDataReader class” on page 310](#).

**Error handling** If there is an error when the application attempts to connect to the database or when it populates the Tables combo box, the following code catches the error and displays its message:

```
try {
    _conn = new SACConnection( txtConnectionString.Text );
    _conn.Open();

    SACCommand cmd = new SACCommand(
        "SELECT table_name FROM SYS.SYSTAB where creator = 101", _conn );
    SADDataReader dr = cmd.ExecuteReader();

    comboBoxTables.Items.Clear();
    while ( dr.Read() ) {
        comboBoxTables.Items.Add( dr.GetString( 0 ) );
    }
    dr.Close();
} catch( SAException ex ) {
    MessageBox.Show( ex.Errors[0].Source + " : " +
        ex.Errors[0].Message + " (" +
        ex.Errors[0].NativeError.ToString() + ")",
        "Failed to connect" );
}
```

For more information about the `SAException` object, see [“SAException class” on page 355](#).

---

---

# SQL Anywhere ASP.NET Providers

## Contents

Adding the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET provider schema to the database .....	157
Registering the connection string .....	158
Registering the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers .....	159
Membership provider XML attributes .....	161
Roles provider table schema .....	162
Profile provider table schema .....	163
Web Part Personalization provider table schema .....	164
Health Monitoring provider table schema .....	165

---

The SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers replace the standard ASP.NET providers for SQL Server, and allow you to run your website on a SQL Anywhere database. There are five providers:

- **Membership Provider** The membership provider provides authentication and authorization services. Use the membership provider to create new users and passwords, and validate the identity of users.
- **Roles Provider** The roles provider provides methods for creating roles, adding users to roles, and deleting roles. Use the roles provider to assign users to groups and manage permissions.
- **Profiles Provider** The profiles provider provides methods for reading, storing, and retrieving user information. Use the profiles provider to save user preferences.
- **Web Parts Personalization Provider** The web parts personalization provider provides methods for loading and storing the personalized content and layout of web pages. Use the web parts personalization provider to allow users to create personalized views of your website.
- **Health Monitoring Provider** The health monitoring provider provides methods for monitoring the status of deployed web applications. Use the health monitoring provider to monitor application performance, identify failing applications or systems, and log and review significant events.

The SQL Anywhere database server schema used by the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers is identical to the schema used by the standard ASP.NET providers. The methodology used to manipulate and store data are identical.

When you have finished setting up the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers, you can use the Visual Studio ASP.NET Web Site Administration Tool to create and manage users and roles. You can also use the Visual

Studio Login, LoginView, and PasswordRecovery tools to add security your web site. Use the static wrapper classes to access more advanced provider functions, or to make your own login controls.

## Adding the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET provider schema to the database

To implement the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers you can create a new database, or add the schema to an existing database.

To add the schema to an existing SQL Anywhere database, run *SASetupAspNet.exe*. When executed, *SASetupAspNet.exe* connects to an existing SQL Anywhere database and creates tables and stored procedures required by the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers. All SQL Anywhere ASP.NET provider resources are prefixed with *aspnet\_*. To minimize naming conflicts with existing database resources you can install provider database resources under any database user.

You can use a wizard or the command line to run *SASetupAspNet.exe*. To access the wizard, run the application, or execute a command line statement without arguments. When using the command line to access the *SASetupAspNet.exe*, use the question mark (-?) argument to display detailed help for configuring the database.

### Setting up the database connection

It is recommended that you specify a connection string for a user with DBA authority. A user with DBA authority can create resources for other users that might not have the necessary permissions. Alternatively, specify a connection string for a user with RESOURCE authority. The RESOURCE authority allows a user to create database objects, such as tables, views, stored procedures, and triggers. The RESOURCE authority is not inherited through group membership, and can be granted only by a user with DBA authority.

### Specifying a resource owner

The wizard and command line allow you to specify the owner of the new resources. By default, the owner of new resources is DBA. When you specify the connection string for the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers, specify the user as DBA. You do not need to grant the user any permissions; the DBA owns the resources and has full permissions on the tables and stored procedures.

### Selecting features and preserving data

You can add or remove specific features. Common components are installed automatically. Selecting **Remove** for an uninstalled feature has no effect; selecting **Add** for a feature already installed reinstalls the feature. By default, the data in tables associated with the selected feature is preserved. If a user significantly changes the schema of a table, it might not be possible to automatically preserve the data stored in it. If a clean reinstall is required, data preservation can be turned off.

It is recommended that the membership and roles providers are installed together. The effectiveness of the Visual Studio ASP.NET Web Site Administration Tool is reduced when the membership provider is not installed with the roles provider.

## Registering the connection string

There are two methods for registering the connection string:

- You can register an ODBC data source in the ODBC Data Source Administrator, and reference it by name.
- You can specify a full SQL Anywhere connection string. For example:

```
connectionString="ENG=MyServer;DBN=MyDatabase;UID=DBA;PWD=sql"
```

When you add the <connectionStrings> element to the *web.config* file, the connection string and its provider can be referenced by the application. Updates can be implemented in a single location.

### XML code sample for connection string registration

```
<connectionStrings>  
  <add name="MyConnectionString"  
    connectionString="DSN=MyDataSource"  
    providerName="iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere" />  
</connectionStrings>
```



## Registering the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers

Your web application must be configured to use the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers and not the default providers. To register SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers:

- Add a reference to the `iAnywhere.Web.Security` assembly to your web site.
- Add an entry for each provider to the `<system.web>` element in `web.config` file.
- Add the name of the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET provider to the `defaultProvider` attribute in the application.

The provider database can store data for multiple applications. For each application, the `applicationName` attribute must be the same for each SQL Anywhere ASP.NET provider. If you do not specify an `applicationName` value, an identical name is assigned to each provider in the provider database.

To reference a previously registered connection string, replace the `connectionString` attribute with the `connectionStringName` attribute.

### XML code sample for Membership Provider registration

```
<membership defaultProvider="SAMembershipProvider">
  <providers>
    <add name="SAMembershipProvider"
      type="iAnywhere.Web.Security.SAMembershipProvider"
      connectionStringName="MyConnectionString"
      applicationName="MyApplication"
      commandTimeout="30"
      enablePasswordReset="true"
      enablePasswordRetrieval="false"
      maxInvalidPasswordAttempts="5"
      minRequiredNonalphanumericCharacters="1"
      minRequiredPasswordLength="7"
      passwordAttemptWindow="10"
      passwordFormat="Hashed"
      requiresQuestionAndAnswer="true"
      requiresUniqueEmail="true"
      passwordStrengthRegularExpression="" />
  </providers>
</membership>
```

For column descriptions, see [“Membership provider XML attributes” on page 161](#).

### XML code sample for Roles Provider registration

```
<roleManager enabled="true" defaultProvider="SARoleProvider">
  <providers>
    <add name="SARoleProvider"
      type="iAnywhere.Web.Security.SARoleProvider"
      connectionStringName="MyConnectionString"
      applicationName="MyApplication"
      commandTimeout="30" />
  </providers>
</roleManager>
```

For column descriptions, see [“Roles provider table schema” on page 162](#).

**XML code sample for Profiles Provider registration**

```
<profile defaultProvider="SAProfileProvider">
  <providers>
    <add name="SAProfileProvider"
      type="iAnywhere.Web.Security.SAProfileProvider"
      connectionStringName="MyConnectionString"
      applicationName="MyApplication"
      commandTimeout="30" />
  </providers>
  <properties>
    <add name="UserString" type="string"
      serializeAs="Xml" />
    <add name="UserObject" type="object"
      serializeAs="Binary" />
  </properties>
</profile>
```

For column descriptions, see [“Profile provider table schema” on page 163](#).

**XML code sample for Personalization Provider registration**

```
<webParts>
  <personalization defaultProvider="SAPersonalizationProvider">
    <providers>
      <add name="SAPersonalizationProvider"
        type="iAnywhere.Web.Security.SAPersonalizationProvider"
        connectionStringName="MyConnectionString"
        applicationName="MyApplication"
        commandTimeout="30" />
    </providers>
  </personalization>
</webParts>
```

For column descriptions, see [“Web Part Personalization provider table schema” on page 164](#).

**XML code sample for Health Monitoring Provider registration**

For more information about setting up health monitoring, see the Microsoft web page [How To: Use Health Monitoring in ASP.NET 2.0 \(http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms998306.aspx\)](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms998306.aspx).

```
<healthMonitoring enabled="true">
  ...
  <providers>
    <add name="SAWebEventProvider"
      type="iAnywhere.Web.Security.SAWebEventProvider"
      connectionStringName="MyConnectionString"
      commandTimeout="30"
      bufferMode="Notification"
      maxEventDetailsLength="Infinite" /
    </providers>
  ...
</healthMonitoring>
```

For column descriptions, see [“Health Monitoring provider table schema” on page 165](#).

## Membership provider XML attributes

Column Name	Description
name	The name of the provider.
type	<code>iAnywhere.Web.Security.SAMembershipProvider</code>
connectionStringName	The name of a connection string specified in the <connectionStrings> element.
connectionString	The connection string. Optional. Required if <code>connectionStringName</code> is not specified.
applicationName	The application name with which to associate provider data.
commandTimeout	The timeout value, in seconds, for server calls.
enablePasswordReset	Valid entries are true or false.
enablePasswordRetrieval	Valid entries are true or false.
maxInvalidPasswordAttempts	Valid entries are true or false.
minRequiredNonalphanumericCharacters	The minimum number of special characters that must be present in a valid password.
minRequiredPasswordLength	The minimum length required for a password.
passwordAttemptWindow	The time window between which consecutive failed attempts to provide a valid password or password answer are tracked.
passwordFormat	Valid entries are Clear, Hashed, or Encrypted.
requiresQuestionAndAnswer	Valid entries are true or false.
requiresUniqueEmail	Valid entries are true or false.
passwordStrengthRegularExpression	The regular expression used to evaluate a password.

## Roles provider table schema

SARoleProvider stores role information in the aspnet\_Roles table of the provider database. The namespace associated with SARoleProvider is `iAnywhere.Web.Security`. Each record in the Roles table corresponds to one role.

SARoleProvider uses the aspnet\_UsersInRoles table to map roles to users.

Column Name	Description
name	The name of the provider.
type	<code>iAnywhere.Web.Security.SARoleProvider</code>
connectionString-Name	The name of a connection string specified in the <code>&lt;connectionStrings&gt;</code> element.
connectionString	The connection string. Optional. Required if <code>connectionStringName</code> is not specified.
applicationName	The application name with which to associate provider data.
commandTime-out	The timeout value, in seconds, for server calls.

## Profile provider table schema

SAProfileProvider stores profile data in the aspnet\_Profile table of the provider database. The namespace associated with SAProfileProvider is `iAnywhere.Web.Security`. Each record in the Profile table corresponds to one user's persisted profile properties.

Column Name	Description
name	The name of the provider.
type	<code>iAnywhere.Web.Security.SAProfileProvider</code>
connectionString-Name	The name of a connection string specified in the <connectionStrings> element.
connectionString	The connection string. Optional. Required if <code>connectionStringName</code> is not specified.
applicationName	The application name with which to associate provider data.
commandTime-out	The timeout value, in seconds, for server calls.

## Web Part Personalization provider table schema

SAPersonalizationProvider preserves personalized user content in the aspnet\_Paths table of the provider database. The namespace associated with SAPersonalizationProvider is iAnywhere.Web.Security.

SARoleProvider uses the aspnet\_PersonalizationPerUser and aspnet\_PersonalizationAllUsers tables to define the path for which the Web Parts personalization state has been saved. The PathID columns point to the column of the same name in the aspnet\_Paths table.

Column Name	Description
name	The name of the provider.
type	<code>iAnywhere.Web.Security.SAPersonalizationProvider</code>
connectionString-Name	The name of a connection string specified in the <connectionStrings> element.
connectionString	The connection string. Optional. Required if <code>connectionStringName</code> is not specified.
applicationName	The application name with which to associate provider data.
commandTime-out	The timeout value, in seconds, for server calls.

## Health Monitoring provider table schema

SAWebEventProvider logs web events in the aspnet\_WebEvent\_Events table of the provider database. The namespace associated with SAWebEventProvider is iAnywhere.Web.Security. Each record in the WebEvents\_Events table corresponds to one web event.

For more information about setting up health monitoring, see the Microsoft web page [How To: Use Health Monitoring in ASP.NET 2.0 \(http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms998306.aspx\)](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms998306.aspx).

Column Name	Description
name	The name of the provider.
type	iAnywhere.Web.Security.SAWebEventProvider
connectionString-Name	The name of a connection string specified in the <connectionStrings> element.
connectionString	The connection string. Optional. Required if connectionStringName is not specified.
commandTimeout	The timeout value, in seconds, for server calls.
maxEventDetailsLength	The maximum length of the details string for each event or Infinite

---



---

# Tutorial: Developing a simple .NET database application with Visual Studio

## Contents

Lesson 1: Create a table viewer .....	168
Lesson 2: Add a synchronizing data control .....	172

---

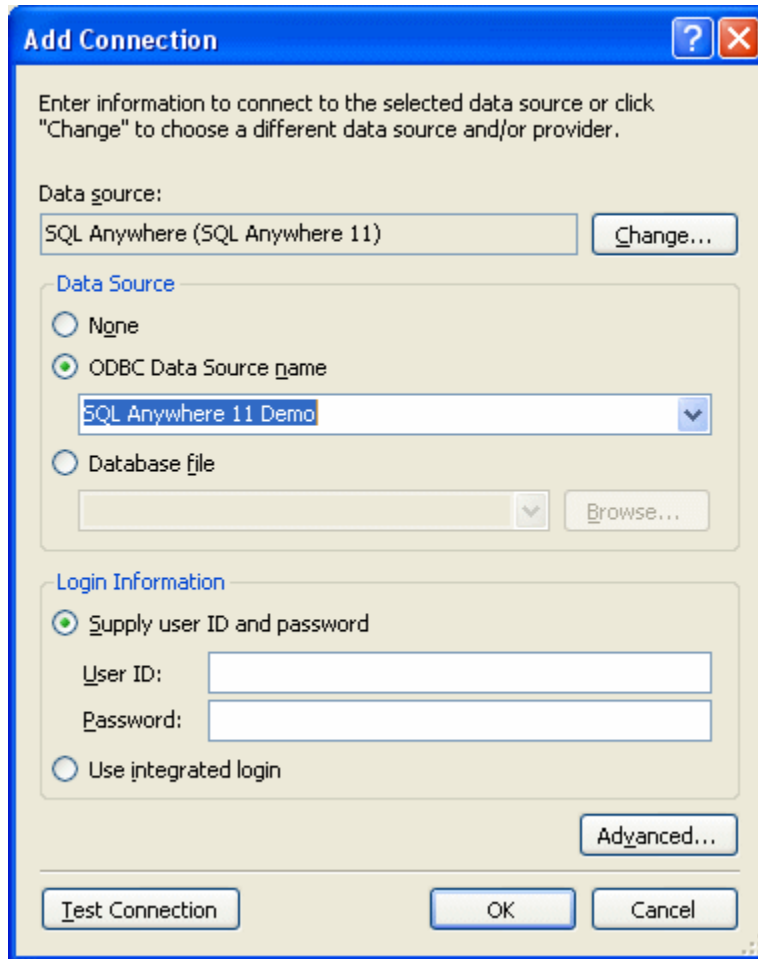
## Lesson 1: Create a table viewer

This tutorial is based on Visual Studio and the .NET Framework. The complete application can be found in the ADO.NET project *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ADO.NET\SimpleViewer\SimpleViewer.sln*.

In this tutorial, you use Microsoft Visual Studio, the Server Explorer, and the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider to create an application that accesses one of the tables in the SQL Anywhere sample database, allowing you to examine rows and perform updates.

### To develop a database application with Visual Studio

1. Start Visual Studio.
2. From the Visual Studio **File** menu, choose **New » Project**.  
The **New Project** window appears.
  - a. In the left pane of the **New Project** window, choose either **Visual Basic** or **Visual C#** for the programming language.
  - b. From the **Windows** subcategory, choose **Windows Application** (VS 2005) or **Windows Forms Application** (VS 2008).
  - c. In the project **Name** field, type **MySimpleViewer**.
  - d. Click **OK** to create the new project.
3. In the Visual Studio **View** menu, choose **Server Explorer**.
4. In the **Server Explorer** window, right-click **Data Connections** and choose **Add Connection**.  
A new connection named **SQL Anywhere.demo11** appears in the **Server Explorer** window.
5. In the **Add Connection** window:
  - a. If you have never used **Add Connection** for other projects, then you will see a list of data sources. Choose **SQL Anywhere** from the list of data sources presented.  
If you have used **Add Connection** before, then click **Change** to change the data source to **SQL Anywhere**.
  - b. Under **Data Source**, choose **ODBC Data Source Name** and type **SQL Anywhere 11 Demo**.



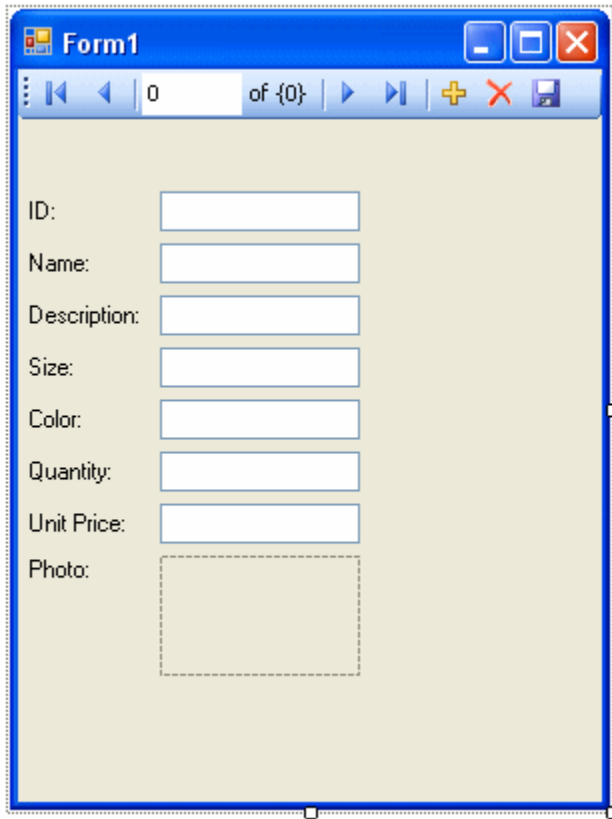
- c. Click **Test Connection** to verify that you can connect to the sample database.
  - d. Click **OK**.
6. Expand the **SQL Anywhere.demo11** connection in the **Server Explorer** window until you see the table names.
    - a. Right-click the Products table and choose **Show Table Data**.  
This shows the rows and columns of the Products table in a window.
    - b. Close the table data window.
  7. From the Visual Studio **Data** menu, choose **Add New Data Source**.
  8. In the **Data Source Configuration Wizard**, do the following:
    - a. On the **Data Source Type** page, choose **Database** and click **Next**.
    - b. On the **Data Connection** page, choose **SQL Anywhere.demo11** and click **Next**.
    - c. On the **Save The Connection String** page, make sure that **Yes, Save The Connection As** is chosen and click **Next**.

- d. On the **Choose Your Database Objects** page, choose **Tables** and click **Finish**.
9. From the Visual Studio **Data** menu, choose **Show Data Sources**.

The **Data Sources** window appears.

Expand the Products table in the **Data Sources** window.

- a. Click Products and choose **Details** from the dropdown list.
- b. Click Photo and choose **Picture Box** from the dropdown list.
- c. Click Products and drag it to your form (Form1).



A dataset control and several labeled text fields appear on the form.

10. On the form, choose the picture box next to Photo.
  - a. Change the shape of the box to a square.
  - b. Click the right-arrow in the upper-right corner of the picture box.

The **Picture Box Tasks** window opens.
  - c. From the **Size Mode** dropdown list, choose **Zoom**.
  - d. To close the **Picture Box Tasks** window, click anywhere outside the window.

11. Build and run the project.

- a. From the Visual Studio **Build** menu, choose **Build Solution**.
- b. From the Visual Studio **Debug** menu, choose **Start Debugging**.

The application connects to the SQL Anywhere sample database and displays the first row of the Products table in the text boxes and picture box.



- c. You can use the buttons on the control to scroll through the rows of the result set.
- d. You can go directly to a row in the result set by entering the row number in the scroll control.
- e. You can update values in the result set using the text boxes and save them by clicking the diskette icon.

You have now created a simple, yet powerful, .NET application using Visual Studio, the Server Explorer, and the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider.

12. Shut down the application and then save your project.

## Lesson 2: Add a synchronizing data control

This tutorial is a continuation of the tutorial described in “[Lesson 1: Create a table viewer](#)” on page 168. The complete application can be found in the ADO.NET project *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ADO.NET\SimpleViewer\SimpleViewer.sln*.

In this tutorial, you add a datagrid control to the form developed in the previous tutorial. This control updates automatically as you navigate through the result set.

### To add a datagrid control

1. Start Visual Studio and load your MySimpleViewer project that you created in “[Lesson 1: Create a table viewer](#)” on page 168.
2. Right-click DataSet1 in the **Data Sources** window and choose **Edit DataSet With Designer**.
3. Right-click an empty area in the **DataSet Designer** window and choose **Add » TableAdapter**.
4. In the **TableAdapter Configuration Wizard**:
  - a. On the **Choose Your Data Connection** page, click **Next**.
  - b. On the **Choose A Command Type** page, make sure **Use SQL Statements** is chosen and then click **Next**.
  - c. On the **Enter A SQL Statement** page, click **Query Builder**.
  - d. On the **Add Table** window, click the **Views** tab, choose **ViewSalesOrders**, and click **Add**.
  - e. Click **Close** to close the **Add Table** window.
5. Expand the **Query Builder** window so that all sections of the window are visible.
  - a. Expand the **ViewSalesOrders** window so that all the checkboxes are visible.
  - b. Choose **Region**.
  - c. Choose **Quantity**.
  - d. Choose **ProductID**.
  - e. In the grid below the **ViewSalesOrders** window, clear the checkbox under **Output** for the ProductID column.
  - f. For the ProductID column, type a question mark (?) in the **Filter** cell. This generates a WHERE clause for ProductID.

A SQL query has been built that looks like the following:

```
SELECT    Region, Quantity
FROM      GROUPO.ViewSalesOrders
WHERE     (ProductID = :Param1)
```

6. Modify the SQL query as follows:
  - a. Change Quantity to SUM(Quantity) AS TotalSales.
  - b. Add GROUP BY Region to the end of the query following the WHERE clause.

The modified SQL query now looks like this:

```

SELECT  Region, SUM(Quantity) as TotalSales
FROM    GROUPO.ViewSalesOrders
WHERE   (ProductID = :Param1)
GROUP BY Region

```

7. Click **OK**.

8. Click **Finish**.

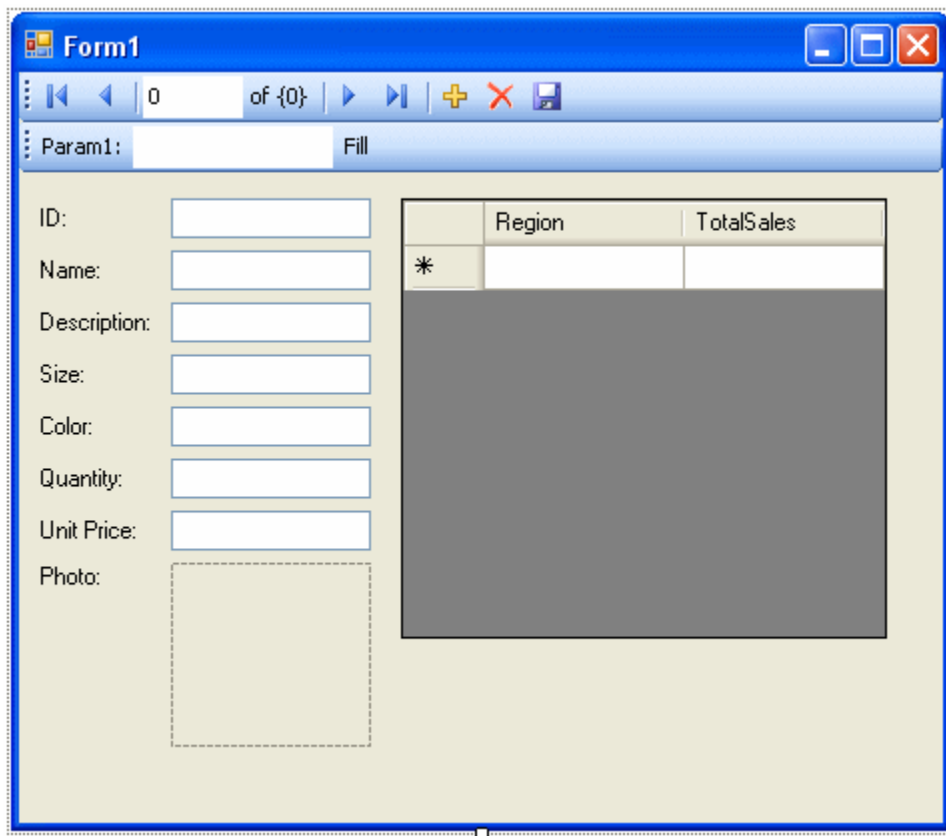
A new **TableAdapter** called **ViewSalesOrders** has been added to the **DataSet Designer** window.

9. Click the form design tab (Form1).

- Stretch the form to the right to make room for a new control.

10. Expand ViewSalesOrders in the **Data Sources** window.

- Click ViewSalesOrders and choose **DataGridView** from the dropdown list.
- Click ViewSalesOrders and drag it to your form (Form1).

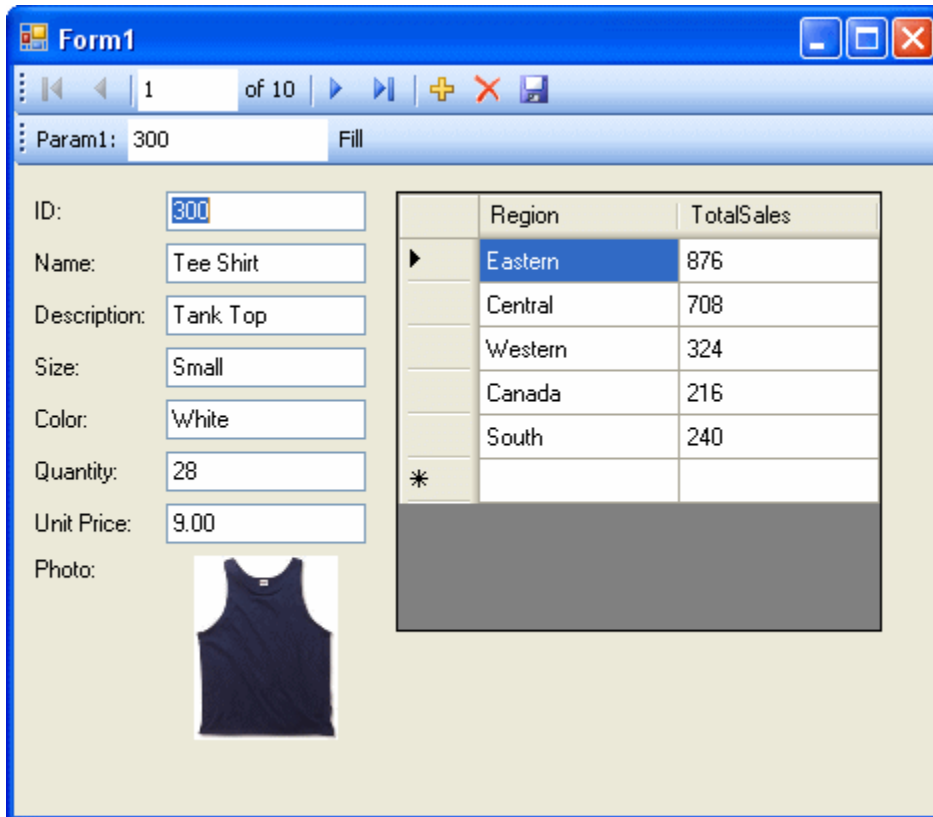


A datagrid view control appears on the form.

11. Build and run the project.

- From the Visual Studio **Build** menu, choose **Build Solution**.

- From the Visual Studio **Debug** menu, choose **Start Debugging**.
- In the **Param1** text box, enter a product ID number such as 300 and click **Fill**.  
The datagrid view displays a summary of sales by region for the product ID entered.



You can also use the other control on the form to move through the rows of the result set.


It would be ideal, however, if both controls could stay synchronized with each other. The next few steps show how to do this.

12. Shut down the application and then save your project.
13. Delete the Fill strip on the form since you do not need it.
  - On the design form (Form1), right-click the Fill strip to the right of the word **Fill** and choose **Delete**.  
The Fill strip is removed from the form.
14. Synchronize the two controls as follows.
  - a. On the design form (Form1), right-click the ID text box and choose **Properties**.
  - b. Click the **Events** icon (it appears as a lightning bolt).
  - c. Scroll down until you find the **TextChanged** event.



- d. Click **TextChanged** and choose **FillToolStripButton\_Click** from the dropdown list. If you are using Visual Basic, the event is called **FillToolStripButton\_Click**.
  - e. Double-click **FillToolStripButton\_Click** and the form's code window opens on the `fillToolStripButton_Click` event handler.
  - f. Find the reference to `param1ToolStripTextBox` and change this to `idTextBox`. If you are using Visual Basic, the text box is called `IDTextBox`.
  - g. Rebuild and run the project.
15. The application form now appears with a single navigation control.
- The datagrid view displays an updated summary of sales by region corresponding to the current product as you move through the result set.

The screenshot shows a Windows application window titled "Form1". The window has a navigation bar at the top with buttons for back, forward, and search, and a status bar showing "4 of 10". The main area of the form contains several text boxes for data entry:

- ID: 400
- Name: Baseball Cap
- Description: Cotton Cap
- Size: One size fits all
- Color: Black
- Quantity: 112
- Unit Price: 9.00
- Photo: 

To the right of the form is a data grid with two columns: "Region" and "TotalSales". The grid contains the following data:

	Region	TotalSales
▶	Eastern	1130
	Central	1116
	Western	360
	Canada	252
	South	420
*		

You have now added a control that updates automatically as you navigate through the result set.

16. Shut down the application and then save your project.

In these tutorials, you saw how the powerful combination of Microsoft Visual Studio, the Server Explorer, and the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider can be used to create database applications.

---

---

# SQL Anywhere .NET 2.0 API reference

## Contents

iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace (.NET 2.0) ..... 178

---

## iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace (.NET 2.0)

### SABulkCopy class

Efficiently bulk load a SQL Anywhere table with data from another source. This class cannot be inherited.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

Public NotInheritable Class **SABulkCopy**  
Implements IDisposable

##### C#

public sealed class **SABulkCopy** : IDisposable

#### Remarks

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopy class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**Implements:** [IDisposable](#)

#### See also

- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)

### SABulkCopy members

#### Public constructors

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SABulkCopy constructors</a>	Initializes an SABulkCopy object.

#### Public properties

Member name	Description
<a href="#">BatchSize property</a>	Gets or sets the number of rows in each batch. At the end of each batch, the rows in the batch are sent to the server.
<a href="#">BulkCopyTimeout property</a>	Gets or sets the number of seconds for the operation to complete before it times out.
<a href="#">ColumnMappings property</a>	Returns a collection of SABulkCopyColumnMapping items. Column mappings define the relationships between columns in the data source and columns in the destination.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">DestinationTableName property</a>	Gets or sets the name of the destination table on the server.
<a href="#">NotifyAfter property</a>	Gets or sets the number of rows to be processed before generating a notification event.

### Public methods

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Close method</a>	Closes the SABulkCopy instance.
<a href="#">Dispose method</a>	Disposes of the SABulkCopy instance.
<a href="#">WriteToServer methods</a>	Copies all rows in the supplied array of <a href="#">DataRow</a> objects to a destination table specified by the DestinationTableName property of the SABulkCopy object.

### Public events

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SARowsCopied event</a>	This event occurs every time the number of rows specified by the NotifyAfter property have been processed.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)

## SABulkCopy constructors

Initializes an SABulkCopy object.

### SABulkCopy(SAConnection) constructor

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _
    ByVal connection As SAConnection _
)
```

##### C#

```
public SABulkCopy(
```

```
    SACConnection connection
);
```

### Parameters

- **connection** The already open SACConnection that will be used to perform the bulk-copy operation. If the connection is not open, an exception is thrown in WriteToServer.

### Remarks

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopy class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy constructors” on page 179](#)

## SABulkCopy(String) constructor

Initializes an SABulkCopy object.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _
    ByVal connectionString As String _
)
```

#### C#

```
public SABulkCopy(
    string connectionString
);
```

### Parameters

- **connectionString** The string defining the connection that will be opened for use by the SABulkCopy instance. A connection string is a semicolon-separated list of keyword=value pairs.

### Remarks

This syntax opens a connection during WriteToServer using connectionString. The connection is closed at the end of WriteToServer.

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopy class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy constructors” on page 179](#)

## SABulkCopy(String, SABulkCopyOptions) constructor

Initializes an SABulkCopy object.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal connectionString As String, _  
    ByVal copyOptions As SABulkCopyOptions _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public SABulkCopy(  
    string connectionString,  
    SABulkCopyOptions copyOptions  
);
```

### Parameters

- **connectionString** The string defining the connection that will be opened for use by the SABulkCopy instance. A connection string is a semicolon-separated list of keyword=value pairs.
- **copyOptions** A combination of values from the SABulkCopyOptions enumeration that determines which data source rows are copied to the destination table.

### Remarks

This syntax opens a connection during WriteToServer using connectionString. The connection is closed at the end of WriteToServer. The copyOptions parameter has the effects described above.

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopy class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy constructors” on page 179](#)

## SABulkCopy(SAConnection, SABulkCopyOptions, SATransaction) constructor

Initializes an SABulkCopy object.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal connection As SAConnection, _  
    ByVal copyOptions As SABulkCopyOptions, _  
    ByVal externalTransaction As SATransaction _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public SABulkCopy(  
    SAConnection connection,  
    SABulkCopyOptions copyOptions,  
    SATransaction externalTransaction  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **connection** The already open SAConnection that will be used to perform the bulk-copy operation. If the connection is not open, an exception is thrown in WriteToServer.
- **copyOptions** A combination of values from the SABulkCopyOptions enumeration that determines which data source rows are copied to the destination table.
- **externalTransaction** An existing SATransaction instance under which the bulk copy will occur. If externalTransaction is not NULL, then the bulk-copy operation is done within it. It is an error to specify both an external transaction and the UseInternalTransaction option.

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopy class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy constructors” on page 179](#)

## BatchSize property

Gets or sets the number of rows in each batch. At the end of each batch, the rows in the batch are sent to the server.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Property **BatchSize** As Integer

**C#**

```
public int BatchSize { get; set; }
```

**Property value**

The number of rows in each batch. The default is 0.

**Remarks**

Setting this property to zero causes all the rows to be sent in one batch.

Setting this property to a value less than zero is an error.



If this value is changed while a batch is in progress, the current batch completes and any further batches use the new value.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)

## BulkCopyTimeout property

Gets or sets the number of seconds for the operation to complete before it times out.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Property **BulkCopyTimeout** As Integer

**C#**

```
public int BulkCopyTimeout { get; set; }
```

**Property value**

The default value is 30 seconds.

**Remarks**

A value of zero indicates no limit. This should be avoided because it may cause an indefinite wait.

If the operation times out, then all rows in the current transaction are rolled back and an SAException is raised.

Setting this property to a value less than zero is an error.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)

## ColumnMappings property

Returns a collection of SABulkCopyColumnMapping items. Column mappings define the relationships between columns in the data source and columns in the destination.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Readonly Property **ColumnMappings** As SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection

**C#**

```
public SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection ColumnMappings { get;}
```

**Property value**

By default, it is an empty collection.

**Remarks**

The property cannot be modified while WriteToServer is executing.

If ColumnMappings is empty when WriteToServer is executed, then the first column in the source is mapped to the first column in the destination, the second to the second, and so on. This takes place as long as the column types are convertible, there are at least as many destination columns as source columns, and any extra destination columns are nullable.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)

## DestinationTableName property

Gets or sets the name of the destination table on the server.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Property DestinationTableName As String
```

**C#**

```
public string DestinationTableName { get; set; }
```

**Property value**

The default value is a null reference. In Visual Basic it is Nothing.

**Remarks**

If the value is changed while WriteToServer is executing, the change has no effect.

If the value has not been set before a call to WriteToServer, an InvalidOperationException is raised.

It is an error to set the value to NULL or the empty string.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)

## NotifyAfter property

Gets or sets the number of rows to be processed before generating a notification event.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Property NotifyAfter As Integer
```

#### C#

```
public int NotifyAfter { get; set; }
```

### Property value

Zero is returned if the property has not been set.

### Remarks

Changes made to `NotifyAfter`, while executing `WriteToServer`, do not take effect until after the next notification.

Setting this property to a value less than zero is an error.

The values of `NotifyAfter` and `BulkCopyTimeout` are mutually exclusive, so the event can fire even if no rows have been sent to the database or committed.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)
- [“BulkCopyTimeout property” on page 183](#)

## Close method

Closes the `SABulkCopy` instance.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub Close()
```

#### C#

```
public void Close();
```

### See also

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)

## Dispose method

Disposes of the SABulkCopy instance.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
NotOverridable Public Sub Dispose()
```

#### C#

```
public void Dispose();
```

### See also

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)

## WriteToServer methods

Copies all rows in the supplied array of [DataRow](#) objects to a destination table specified by the DestinationTableName property of the SABulkCopy object.

### WriteToServer(DataRow[]) method

Copies all rows in the supplied array of [DataRow](#) objects to a destination table specified by the DestinationTableName property of the SABulkCopy object.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub WriteToServer( _  
    ByVal rows As DataRow() _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public void WriteToServer(  
    DataRow[] rows  
);
```

### Parameters

- **rows** An array of System.Data.DataRow objects that will be copied to the destination table.

### Remarks

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopy class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)
- [“WriteToServer methods” on page 186](#)
- [“DestinationTableName property” on page 184](#)

**WriteToServer(DataTable) method**

Copies all rows in the supplied [DataTable](#) to a destination table specified by the `DestinationTableName` property of the `SABulkCopy` object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub WriteToServer( _  
    ByVal table As DataTable _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public void WriteToServer(  
    DataTable table  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **table** A `System.Data.DataTable` whose rows will be copied to the destination table.

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The `SABulkCopy` class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)
- [“WriteToServer methods” on page 186](#)
- [“DestinationTableName property” on page 184](#)

**WriteToServer(IDataReader) method**

Copies all rows in the supplied [IDataReader](#) to a destination table specified by the `DestinationTableName` property of the `SABulkCopy` object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub WriteToServer( _  
    ByVal reader As IDataReader _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public void WriteToServer(  
    IDataReader reader  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **reader** A System.Data.IDataReader whose rows will be copied to the destination table.

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopy class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)
- [“WriteToServer methods” on page 186](#)
- [“DestinationTableName property” on page 184](#)

**WriteToServer(DataTable, DataRowState) method**

Copies all rows in the supplied [DataTable](#) with the specified row state to a destination table specified by the DestinationTableName property of the SABulkCopy object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub WriteToServer( _  
    ByVal table As DataTable, _  
    ByVal rowState As DataRowState _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public void WriteToServer(  
    DataTable table,  
    DataRowState rowState  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **table** A System.Data.DataTable whose rows will be copied to the destination table.
- **rowState** A value from the System.Data.DataRowState enumeration. Only rows matching the row state are copied to the destination.

**Remarks**

Only those rows matching the row state are copied.

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopy class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)
- [“WriteToServer methods” on page 186](#)
- [“DestinationTableName property” on page 184](#)

## SARowsCopied event

This event occurs every time the number of rows specified by the NotifyAfter property have been processed.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Event **SARowsCopied** As SARowsCopiedEventHandler

**C#**

public event SARowsCopiedEventHandler **SARowsCopied** ;

**Remarks**

The receipt of an SARowsCopied event does not imply that any rows have been sent to the database server or committed. You cannot call the Close method from this event.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)
- [“SABulkCopy members” on page 178](#)
- [“NotifyAfter property” on page 185](#)

## SABulkCopyColumnMapping class

Defines the mapping between a column in an SABulkCopy instance's data source and a column in the instance's destination table. This class cannot be inherited.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public NotInheritable Class **SABulkCopyColumnMapping**

**C#**

public sealed class **SABulkCopyColumnMapping**

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopyColumnMapping class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping members” on page 190](#)

## SABulkCopyColumnMapping members

**Public constructors**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SABulkCopyColumnMapping constructors</a>	Initializes a new instance of the <a href="#">“SABulkCopyColumnMapping class” on page 189</a> .

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">DestinationColumn property</a>	Gets or sets the name of the column in the destination database table being mapped to.
<a href="#">DestinationOrdinal property</a>	Gets or sets the ordinal value of the column in the destination table being mapped to.
<a href="#">SourceColumn property</a>	Gets or sets the name of the column being mapped in the data source.
<a href="#">SourceOrdinal property</a>	Gets or sets ordinal position of the source column within the data source.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping class” on page 189](#)

## SABulkCopyColumnMapping constructors

Initializes a new instance of the [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping class” on page 189](#).

### SABulkCopyColumnMapping() constructor

Creates a new column mapping, using column ordinals or names to refer to source and destination columns.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Sub **New()**



**C#**

```
public SABulkCopyColumnMapping();
```

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopyColumnMapping class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping class” on page 189](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping members” on page 190](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping constructors” on page 190](#)

**SABulkCopyColumnMapping(Int32, Int32) constructor**

Creates a new column mapping, using column ordinals to refer to source and destination columns.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal sourceColumnOrdinal As Integer, _  
    ByVal destinationColumnOrdinal As Integer _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public SABulkCopyColumnMapping(  
    int sourceColumnOrdinal,  
    int destinationColumnOrdinal  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **sourceColumnOrdinal** The ordinal position of the source column within the data source. The first column in a data source has ordinal position zero.
- **destinationColumnOrdinal** The ordinal position of the destination column within the destination table. The first column in a table has ordinal position zero.

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopyColumnMapping class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping class” on page 189](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping members” on page 190](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping constructors” on page 190](#)

## SABulkCopyColumnMapping(Int32, String) constructor

Creates a new column mapping, using a column ordinal to refer to the source column and a column name to refer to the destination column.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal sourceColumnOrdinal As Integer, _  
    ByVal destinationColumn As String _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public SABulkCopyColumnMapping(  
    int sourceColumnOrdinal,  
    string destinationColumn  
);
```

### Parameters

- **sourceColumnOrdinal** The ordinal position of the source column within the data source. The first column in a data source has ordinal position zero.
- **destinationColumn** The name of the destination column within the destination table.

### Remarks

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopyColumnMapping class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping class” on page 189](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping members” on page 190](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping constructors” on page 190](#)

## SABulkCopyColumnMapping(String, Int32) constructor

Creates a new column mapping, using a column name to refer to the source column and a column ordinal to refer to the destination column.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal sourceColumn As String, _  
    ByVal destinationColumnOrdinal As Integer _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public SABulkCopyColumnMapping(  
    string sourceColumn,  
    int destinationColumnOrdinal  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **sourceColumn** The name of the source column within the data source.
- **destinationColumnOrdinal** The ordinal position of the destination column within the destination table. The first column in a table has ordinal position zero.

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The `SABulkCopyColumnMapping` class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping class” on page 189](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping members” on page 190](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping constructors” on page 190](#)

**SABulkCopyColumnMapping(String, String) constructor**

Creates a new column mapping, using column names to refer to source and destination columns.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal sourceColumn As String, _  
    ByVal destinationColumn As String _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public SABulkCopyColumnMapping(  
    string sourceColumn,  
    string destinationColumn  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **sourceColumn** The name of the source column within the data source.
- **destinationColumn** The name of the destination column within the destination table.

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The `SABulkCopyColumnMapping` class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping class” on page 189](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping members” on page 190](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping constructors” on page 190](#)

## DestinationColumn property

Gets or sets the name of the column in the destination database table being mapped to.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **DestinationColumn** As String

#### C#

```
public string DestinationColumn { get; set; }
```

### Property value

A string specifying the name of the column in the destination table or a null reference (Nothing in Visual Basic) if the DestinationOrdinal property has priority.

### Remarks

The DestinationColumn property and DestinationOrdinal property are mutually exclusive. The most recently set value takes priority.

Setting the DestinationColumn property causes the DestinationOrdinal property to be set to -1. Setting the DestinationOrdinal property causes the DestinationColumn property to be set to a null reference (Nothing in Visual Basic).

It is an error to set DestinationColumn to null or the empty string.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping class” on page 189](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping members” on page 190](#)
- [“DestinationOrdinal property” on page 194](#)

## DestinationOrdinal property

Gets or sets the ordinal value of the column in the destination table being mapped to.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **DestinationOrdinal** As Integer

**C#**

```
public int DestinationOrdinal { get; set; }
```

**Property value**

An integer specifying the ordinal of the column being mapped to in the destination table or -1 if the property is not set.

**Remarks**

The DestinationColumn property and DestinationOrdinal property are mutually exclusive. The most recently set value takes priority.

Setting the DestinationColumn property causes the DestinationOrdinal property to be set to -1. Setting the DestinationOrdinal property causes the DestinationColumn property to be set to a null reference (Nothing in Visual Basic).

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping class” on page 189](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping members” on page 190](#)
- [“DestinationColumn property” on page 194](#)

## SourceColumn property

Gets or sets the name of the column being mapped in the data source.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Property SourceColumn As String
```

**C#**

```
public string SourceColumn { get; set; }
```

**Property value**

A string specifying the name of the column in the data source or a null reference (Nothing in Visual Basic) if the SourceOrdinal property has priority.

**Remarks**

The SourceColumn property and SourceOrdinal property are mutually exclusive. The most recently set value takes priority.

Setting the SourceColumn property causes the SourceOrdinal property to be set to -1. Setting the SourceOrdinal property causes the SourceColumn property to be set to a null reference (Nothing in Visual Basic).

It is an error to set SourceColumn to null or the empty string.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping class” on page 189](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping members” on page 190](#)
- [“SourceOrdinal property” on page 196](#)

## SourceOrdinal property

Gets or sets ordinal position of the source column within the data source.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **SourceOrdinal** As Integer

#### C#

```
public int SourceOrdinal { get; set; }
```

### Property value

An integer specifying the ordinal of the column in the data source or -1 if the property is not set.

### Remarks

The SourceColumn property and SourceOrdinal property are mutually exclusive. The most recently set value takes priority.

Setting the SourceColumn property causes the SourceOrdinal property to be set to -1. Setting the SourceOrdinal property causes the SourceColumn property to be set to a null reference (Nothing in Visual Basic).

### See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping class” on page 189](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping members” on page 190](#)
- [“SourceColumn property” on page 195](#)

## SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class

A collection of SABulkCopyColumnMapping objects that inherits from System.Collections.CollectionBase. This class cannot be inherited.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public NotInheritable Class **SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection**  
Inherits CollectionBase

**C#**

```
public sealed class SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection : CollectionBase
```

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members” on page 197](#)

## SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Capacity</a> (inherited from <a href="#">CollectionBase</a> )	Gets or sets the number of elements that the <a href="#">CollectionBase</a> can contain.
<a href="#">Count</a> (inherited from <a href="#">CollectionBase</a> )	Gets the number of elements contained in the <a href="#">CollectionBase</a> instance. This property cannot be overridden.
<a href="#">Item property</a>	Gets the SABulkCopyColumnMapping object at the specified index.

**Public methods**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Add methods</a>	Adds the specified SABulkCopyColumnMapping object to the collection.
<a href="#">Clear</a> (inherited from <a href="#">CollectionBase</a> )	Removes all objects from the <a href="#">CollectionBase</a> instance. This method cannot be overridden.
<a href="#">Contains method</a>	Gets a value indicating whether a specified SABulkCopyColumnMapping object exists in the collection.
<a href="#">CopyTo method</a>	Copies the elements of the SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection to an array of SABulkCopyColumnMapping items, starting at a particular index.
<a href="#">GetEnumerator</a> (inherited from <a href="#">CollectionBase</a> )	Returns an enumerator that iterates through the <a href="#">CollectionBase</a> instance.
<a href="#">IndexOf method</a>	Gets or sets the index of the specified SABulkCopyColumnMapping object within the collection.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Remove method</a>	Removes the specified SABulkCopyColumnMapping element from the SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection.
<a href="#">RemoveAt method</a>	Removes the mapping at the specified index from the collection.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class” on page 196](#)

## Item property

Gets the SABulkCopyColumnMapping object at the specified index.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Readonly Property Item ( _  
    ByVal index As Integer _  
) As SABulkCopyColumnMapping
```

**C#**

```
public SABulkCopyColumnMapping this [  
    int index  
] { get;}
```

**Parameters**

- **index** The zero-based index of the SABulkCopyColumnMapping object to find.

**Property value**

An SABulkCopyColumnMapping object is returned.

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class” on page 196](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members” on page 197](#)

## Add methods

Adds the specified SABulkCopyColumnMapping object to the collection.

### Add(SABulkCopyColumnMapping) method

Adds the specified SABulkCopyColumnMapping object to the collection.



## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Function Add( _  
    ByVal bulkCopyColumnMapping As SABulkCopyColumnMapping _  
) As SABulkCopyColumnMapping
```

### C#

```
public SABulkCopyColumnMapping Add(  
    SABulkCopyColumnMapping bulkCopyColumnMapping  
);
```

## Parameters

- **bulkCopyColumnMapping** The SABulkCopyColumnMapping object that describes the mapping to be added to the collection.

## Remarks

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

## See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class” on page 196](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members” on page 197](#)
- [“Add methods” on page 198](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMapping class” on page 189](#)

## Add(Int32, Int32) method

Creates a new SABulkCopyColumnMapping object using ordinals to specify both source and destination columns, and adds the mapping to the collection.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Function Add( _  
    ByVal sourceColumnOrdinal As Integer, _  
    ByVal destinationColumnOrdinal As Integer _  
) As SABulkCopyColumnMapping
```

### C#

```
public SABulkCopyColumnMapping Add(  
    int sourceColumnOrdinal,  
    int destinationColumnOrdinal  
);
```

## Parameters

- **sourceColumnOrdinal** The ordinal position of the source column within the data source.

- **destinationColumnOrdinal** The ordinal position of the destination column within the destination table.

### Remarks

**Restrictions:** The `SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection` class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class” on page 196](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members” on page 197](#)
- [“Add methods” on page 198](#)

## Add(Int32, String) method

Creates a new `SABulkCopyColumnMapping` object using a column ordinal to refer to the source column and a column name to refer to the destination column, and adds mapping to the collection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function Add( _  
    ByVal sourceColumnOrdinal As Integer, _  
    ByVal destinationColumn As String _  
) As SABulkCopyColumnMapping
```

#### C#

```
public SABulkCopyColumnMapping Add(  
    int sourceColumnOrdinal,  
    string destinationColumn  
);
```

### Parameters

- **sourceColumnOrdinal** The ordinal position of the source column within the data source.
- **destinationColumn** The name of the destination column within the destination table.

### Remarks

**Restrictions:** The `SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection` class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class” on page 196](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members” on page 197](#)
- [“Add methods” on page 198](#)

## Add(String, Int32) method

Creates a new SABulkCopyColumnMapping object using a column name to refer to the source column and a column ordinal to refer to the destination the column, and adds the mapping to the collection.

Creates a new column mapping, using column ordinals or names to refer to source and destination columns.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function Add( _  
    ByVal sourceColumn As String, _  
    ByVal destinationColumnOrdinal As Integer _  
) As SABulkCopyColumnMapping
```

#### C#

```
public SABulkCopyColumnMapping Add(  
    string sourceColumn,  
    int destinationColumnOrdinal  
);
```

### Parameters

- **sourceColumn** The name of the source column within the data source.
- **destinationColumnOrdinal** The ordinal position of the destination column within the destination table.

### Remarks

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class” on page 196](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members” on page 197](#)
- [“Add methods” on page 198](#)

## Add(String, String) method

Creates a new SABulkCopyColumnMapping object using column names to specify both source and destination columns, and adds the mapping to the collection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function Add( _  
    ByVal sourceColumn As String, _  
    ByVal destinationColumn As String _  
) As SABulkCopyColumnMapping
```

#### C#

```
public SABulkCopyColumnMapping Add(  
    string sourceColumn,  
    string destinationColumn  
);
```

#### Parameters

- **sourceColumn** The name of the source column within the data source.
- **destinationColumn** The name of the destination column within the destination table.

#### Remarks

**Restrictions:** The SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

#### See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class” on page 196](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members” on page 197](#)
- [“Add methods” on page 198](#)

## Contains method

Gets a value indicating whether a specified SABulkCopyColumnMapping object exists in the collection.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Function Contains(  
    ByVal value As SABulkCopyColumnMapping _  
) As Boolean
```

#### C#

```
public bool Contains(  
    SABulkCopyColumnMapping value  
);
```

#### Parameters

- **value** A valid SABulkCopyColumnMapping object.

#### Return value

True if the specified mapping exists in the collection; otherwise, false.

#### See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class” on page 196](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members” on page 197](#)

## CopyTo method

Copies the elements of the `SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection` to an array of `SABulkCopyColumnMapping` items, starting at a particular index.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub CopyTo( _  
    ByVal array As SABulkCopyColumnMapping(), _  
    ByVal index As Integer _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public void CopyTo(  
    SABulkCopyColumnMapping[] array,  
    int index  
);
```

### Parameters

- **array** The one-dimensional `SABulkCopyColumnMapping` array that is the destination of the elements copied from `SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection`. The array must have zero-based indexing.
- **index** The zero-based index in the array at which copying begins.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class” on page 196](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members” on page 197](#)

## IndexOf method

Gets or sets the index of the specified `SABulkCopyColumnMapping` object within the collection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function IndexOf( _  
    ByVal value As SABulkCopyColumnMapping _  
) As Integer
```

#### C#

```
public int IndexOf(  
    SABulkCopyColumnMapping value  
);
```

### Parameters

- **value** The `SABulkCopyColumnMapping` object to search for.

## Return value

The zero-based index of the column mapping is returned, or -1 is returned if the column mapping is not found in the collection.

## See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class” on page 196](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members” on page 197](#)

## Remove method

Removes the specified SABulkCopyColumnMapping element from the SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub Remove( _  
    ByVal value As SABulkCopyColumnMapping _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public void Remove(  
    SABulkCopyColumnMapping value  
);
```

### Parameters

- **value** The SABulkCopyColumnMapping object to be removed from the collection.

## See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class” on page 196](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members” on page 197](#)

## RemoveAt method

Removes the mapping at the specified index from the collection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub RemoveAt( _  
    ByVal index As Integer _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public void RemoveAt(
```

```
int index
);
```

### Parameters

- **index** The zero-based index of the `SABulkCopyColumnMapping` object to be removed from the collection.

### See also

- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class” on page 196](#)
- [“SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members” on page 197](#)

## SABulkCopyOptions enumeration

A bitwise flag that specifies one or more options to use with an instance of `SABulkCopy`.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Enum **SABulkCopyOptions**

#### C#

public enum **SABulkCopyOptions**

### Remarks

The `SABulkCopyOptions` enumeration is used when you construct an `SABulkCopy` object to specify how the `WriteToServer` methods will behave.

**Restrictions:** The `SABulkCopyOptions` class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

The `CheckConstraints` and `KeepNulls` options are not supported.

### Members

Member name	Description	Value
Default	Specifying only this value causes the default behavior to be used. By default, triggers are enabled.	0
DoNotFireTriggers	When specified, triggers are not fired. Disabling triggers requires DBA permission. Triggers are disabled for the connection at the start of <code>WriteToServer</code> and the value is restored at the end of the method.	1

Member name	Description	Value
KeepIdentity	When specified, the source values to be copied into an identity column are preserved. By default, new identity values are generated in the destination table.	2
TableLock	When specified the table is locked using the command LOCK TABLE table_name WITH HOLD IN SHARE MODE. This lock is in place until the connection is closed.	4
UseInternalTransaction	When specified, each batch of the bulk-copy operation is executed within a transaction. When not specified, transaction aren't used. If you indicate this option and also provide an SATransaction object to the constructor, a System.ArgumentException occurs.	8

**See also**

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)

## SACommand class

A SQL statement or stored procedure that is executed against a SQL Anywhere database. This class cannot be inherited.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public NotInheritable Class SACommand
    Inherits DbCommand
    Implements ICloneable
```

**C#**

```
public sealed class SACommand : DbCommand,
    ICloneable
```

**Remarks**

**Implements:** [ICloneable](#)

For more information, see [“Accessing and manipulating data” on page 117](#).

**See also**

- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)



## SACommand members

### Public constructors

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SACommand constructors</a>	Initializes a new instance of the “SACommand class” on page 206.

### Public properties

Member name	Description
<a href="#">CommandText property</a>	Gets or sets the text of a SQL statement or stored procedure.
<a href="#">CommandTimeout property</a>	Gets or sets the wait time in seconds before terminating an attempt to execute a command and generating an error.
<a href="#">CommandType property</a>	Gets or sets the type of command represented by an SACommand.
<a href="#">Connection property</a>	Gets or sets the connection object to which the SACommand object applies.
<a href="#">DesignTimeVisible property</a>	Gets or sets a value that indicates if the SACommand should be visible in a Windows Form Designer control. The default is true.
<a href="#">Parameters property</a>	A collection of parameters for the current statement. Use question marks in the CommandText to indicate parameters.
<a href="#">Transaction property</a>	Specifies the SATransaction object in which the SACommand executes.
<a href="#">UpdatedRowSource property</a>	Gets or sets how command results are applied to the DataRow when used by the Update method of the SADATAAdapter.

### Public methods

Member name	Description
<a href="#">BeginExecuteNonQuery methods</a>	Initiates the asynchronous execution of a SQL statement or stored procedure that is described by this SACommand.
<a href="#">BeginExecuteReader methods</a>	Initiates the asynchronous execution of a SQL statement or stored procedure that is described by this SACommand, and retrieves one or more result sets from the database server.
<a href="#">Cancel method</a>	Cancels the execution of an SACommand object.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">CreateParameter method</a>	Provides an SAParameter object for supplying parameters to SACommand objects.
<a href="#">EndExecuteNonQuery method</a>	Finishes asynchronous execution of a SQL statement or stored procedure.
<a href="#">EndExecuteReader method</a>	Finishes asynchronous execution of a SQL statement or stored procedure, returning the requested SADATAReader.
<a href="#">ExecuteNonQuery method</a>	Executes a statement that does not return a result set, such as an INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or data definition statement.
<a href="#">ExecuteReader methods</a>	Executes a SQL statement that returns a result set.
<a href="#">ExecuteScalar method</a>	Executes a statement that returns a single value. If this method is called on a query that returns multiple rows and columns, only the first column of the first row is returned.
<a href="#">Prepare method</a>	Prepares or compiles the SACommand on the data source.
<a href="#">ResetCommandTimeout method</a>	Resets the CommandTimeout property to its default value of 30 seconds.

**See also**

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)

## SACommand constructors

Initializes a new instance of the [“SACommand class” on page 206](#).

### SACommand() constructor

Initializes an SACommand object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New()
```

**C#**

```
public SACommand();
```

**See also**

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“SACommand constructors” on page 208](#)

**SACommand(String) constructor**

Initializes an SACommand object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal cmdText As String _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public SACommand(  
    string cmdText  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **cmdText** The text of the SQL statement or stored procedure. For parameterized statements, use a question mark (?) placeholder to pass parameters.

**See also**

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“SACommand constructors” on page 208](#)

**SACommand(String, SAConnection) constructor**

A SQL statement or stored procedure that is executed against a SQL Anywhere database.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal cmdText As String, _  
    ByVal connection As SAConnection _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public SACommand(  
    string cmdText,
```

```
        SACConnection connection
    );
```

### Parameters

- **cmdText** The text of the SQL statement or stored procedure. For parameterized statements, use a question mark (?) placeholder to pass parameters.
- **connection** The current connection.

### See also

- [“SACCommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACCommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“SACCommand constructors” on page 208](#)

## SACCommand(String, SACConnection, SATransaction) constructor

A SQL statement or stored procedure that is executed against a SQL Anywhere database.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _
    ByVal cmdText As String, _
    ByVal connection As SACConnection, _
    ByVal transaction As SATransaction _
)
```

#### C#

```
public SACCommand(
    string cmdText,
    SACConnection connection,
    SATransaction transaction
);
```

### Parameters

- **cmdText** The text of the SQL statement or stored procedure. For parameterized statements, use a question mark (?) placeholder to pass parameters.
- **connection** The current connection.
- **transaction** The SATransaction object in which the SACConnection executes.

### See also

- [“SACCommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACCommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“SACCommand constructors” on page 208](#)
- [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#)

## CommandText property

Gets or sets the text of a SQL statement or stored procedure.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Property CommandText As String
```

#### C#

```
public override string CommandText { get; set; }
```

### Property value

The SQL statement or the name of the stored procedure to execute. The default is an empty string.

### See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“SACommand\(\) constructor” on page 208](#)

## CommandTimeout property

Gets or sets the wait time in seconds before terminating an attempt to execute a command and generating an error.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Property CommandTimeout As Integer
```

#### C#

```
public override int CommandTimeout { get; set; }
```

### Property value

The default value is 30 seconds.

### Remarks

A value of 0 indicates no limit. This should be avoided because it may cause the attempt to execute a command to wait indefinitely.

### See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)

## CommandType property

Gets or sets the type of command represented by an SACCommand.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Property CommandType As CommandType
```

#### C#

```
public override CommandType CommandType { get; set; }
```

### Property value

One of the [CommandType](#) values. The default is [CommandType.Text](#).

### Remarks

Supported command types are as follows:

- [CommandType.StoredProcedure](#) When you specify this CommandType, the command text must be the name of a stored procedure and you must supply any arguments as SAParameter objects.
- [CommandType.Text](#) This is the default value.

When the CommandType property is set to StoredProcedure, the CommandText property should be set to the name of the stored procedure. The command executes this stored procedure when you call one of the Execute methods.

Use a question mark (?) placeholder to pass parameters. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM Customers WHERE ID = ?
```

The order in which SAParameter objects are added to the SAParameterCollection must directly correspond to the position of the question mark placeholder for the parameter.

### See also

- [“SACCommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACCommand members” on page 207](#)

## Connection property

Gets or sets the connection object to which the SACCommand object applies.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Property Connection As SACConnection
```

**C#**

```
public SAConnection Connection { get; set; }
```

**Property value**

The default value is a null reference. In Visual Basic it is Nothing.

**See also**

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)

## DesignTimeVisible property

Gets or sets a value that indicates if the SACommand should be visible in a Windows Form Designer control. The default is true.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Property DesignTimeVisible As Boolean
```

**C#**

```
public override bool DesignTimeVisible { get; set; }
```

**Property value**

True if this SACommand instance should be visible, false if this instance should not be visible. The default is false.

**See also**

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)

## Parameters property

A collection of parameters for the current statement. Use question marks in the CommandText to indicate parameters.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public ReadOnly Property Parameters As SAPParameterCollection
```

**C#**

```
public SAPParameterCollection Parameters { get; }
```

## Property value

The parameters of the SQL statement or stored procedure. The default value is an empty collection.

## Remarks

When CommandType is set to Text, pass parameters using the question mark placeholder. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM Customers WHERE ID = ?
```

The order in which SAParameter objects are added to the SAParameterCollection must directly correspond to the position of the question mark placeholder for the parameter in the command text.

When the parameters in the collection do not match the requirements of the query to be executed, an error may result or an exception may be thrown.

## See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)

## Transaction property

Specifies the SATransaction object in which the SACommand executes.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Property Transaction As SATransaction
```

### C#

```
public SATransaction Transaction { get; set; }
```

## Property value

The default value is a null reference. In Visual Basic, this is Nothing.

## Remarks

You cannot set the Transaction property if it is already set to a specific value and the command is executing. If you set the transaction property to an SATransaction object that is not connected to the same SAConnection object as the SACommand object, an exception will be thrown the next time you attempt to execute a statement.

For more information, see [“Transaction processing” on page 136](#).

## See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#)



## UpdatedRowSource property

Gets or sets how command results are applied to the DataRow when used by the Update method of the SADataAdapter.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Property **UpdatedRowSource** As UpdateRowSource

#### C#

```
public override UpdateRowSource UpdatedRowSource { get; set; }
```

### Property value

One of the UpdatedRowSource values. The default value is UpdateRowSource.OutputParameters. If the command is automatically generated, this property is UpdateRowSource.None.

### Remarks

UpdatedRowSource.Both, which returns both resultset and output parameters, is not supported.

### See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)

## BeginExecuteNonQuery methods

Initiates the asynchronous execution of a SQL statement or stored procedure that is described by this SACommand.

### BeginExecuteNonQuery() method

Initiates the asynchronous execution of a SQL statement or stored procedure that is described by this SACommand.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Function **BeginExecuteNonQuery()** As IAsyncResult

#### C#

```
public IAsyncResult BeginExecuteNonQuery();
```

**Return value**

An [IAsyncResult](#) that can be used to poll, wait for results, or both; this value is also needed when invoking `EndExecuteNonQuery(IAsyncResult)`, which returns the number of affected rows.

**See also**

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“BeginExecuteNonQuery methods” on page 215](#)
- [“EndExecuteNonQuery method” on page 221](#)

**BeginExecuteNonQuery(AsyncCallback, Object) method**

Initiates the asynchronous execution of a SQL statement or stored procedure that is described by this `SACommand`, given a callback procedure and state information.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Function BeginExecuteNonQuery( _  
    ByVal callback As AsyncCallback, _  
    ByVal stateObject As Object _  
) As IAsyncResult
```

**C#**

```
public IAsyncResult BeginExecuteNonQuery(  
    AsyncCallback callback,  
    object stateObject  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **callback** An [AsyncCallback](#) delegate that is invoked when the command's execution has completed. Pass null (Nothing in Microsoft Visual Basic) to indicate that no callback is required.
- **stateObject** A user-defined state object that is passed to the callback procedure. Retrieve this object from within the callback procedure using the [IAsyncResult.AsyncState](#).

**Return value**

An [IAsyncResult](#) that can be used to poll, wait for results, or both; this value is also needed when invoking `EndExecuteNonQuery(IAsyncResult)`, which returns the number of affected rows.

**See also**

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“BeginExecuteNonQuery methods” on page 215](#)
- [“EndExecuteNonQuery method” on page 221](#)

## BeginExecuteReader methods

Initiates the asynchronous execution of a SQL statement or stored procedure that is described by this `SACCommand`, and retrieves one or more result sets from the database server.

### BeginExecuteReader() method

Initiates the asynchronous execution of a SQL statement or stored procedure that is described by this `SACCommand`, and retrieves one or more result sets from the database server.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Function BeginExecuteReader() As IAsyncResult
```

##### C#

```
public IAsyncResult BeginExecuteReader();
```

#### Return value

An [IAsyncResult](#) that can be used to poll, wait for results, or both; this value is also needed when invoking `EndExecuteReader(IAsyncResult)`, which returns an `SADDataReader` object that can be used to retrieve the returned rows.

#### See also

- [“SACCommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACCommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“BeginExecuteReader methods” on page 217](#)
- [“EndExecuteReader method” on page 223](#)
- [“SADDataReader class” on page 310](#)

### BeginExecuteReader(CommandBehavior) method

Initiates the asynchronous execution of a SQL statement or stored procedure that is described by this `SACCommand`, and retrieves one or more result sets from the server.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Function BeginExecuteReader( _  
    ByVal behavior As CommandBehavior _  
) As IAsyncResult
```

##### C#

```
public IAsyncResult BeginExecuteReader(
```

```
CommandBehavior behavior
);
```

### Parameters

- **behavior** A bitwise combination of [CommandBehavior](#) flags describing the results of the query and its effect on the connection.

### Return value

An [IAsyncResult](#) that can be used to poll, wait for results, or both; this value is also needed when invoking [EndExecuteReader\(IAsyncResult\)](#), which returns an [SADataReader](#) object that can be used to retrieve the returned rows.

### See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“BeginExecuteReader methods” on page 217](#)
- [“EndExecuteReader method” on page 223](#)
- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)

## BeginExecuteReader(AsyncCallback, Object) method

Initiates the asynchronous execution of a SQL statement that is described by the [SACommand](#) object, and retrieves the result set, given a callback procedure and state information.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function BeginExecuteReader( _  
    ByVal callback As AsyncCallback, _  
    ByVal stateObject As Object _  
) As IAsyncResult
```

#### C#

```
public IAsyncResult BeginExecuteReader(  
    AsyncCallback callback,  
    object stateObject  
);
```

### Parameters

- **callback** An [AsyncCallback](#) delegate that is invoked when the command's execution has completed. Pass null (Nothing in Microsoft Visual Basic) to indicate that no callback is required.
- **stateObject** A user-defined state object that is passed to the callback procedure. Retrieve this object from within the callback procedure using the [IAsyncResult.AsyncState](#).

## Return value

An [IAsyncResult](#) that can be used to poll, wait for results, or both; this value is also needed when invoking `EndExecuteReader(IAsyncResult)`, which returns an `SADataReader` object that can be used to retrieve the returned rows.

## See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“BeginExecuteReader methods” on page 217](#)
- [“EndExecuteReader method” on page 223](#)
- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)

## BeginExecuteReader(AsyncCallback, Object, CommandBehavior) method

Initiates the asynchronous execution of a SQL statement or stored procedure that is described by this `SACommand`, and retrieves one or more result sets from the server.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Function BeginExecuteReader( _  
    ByVal callback As AsyncCallback, _  
    ByVal stateObject As Object, _  
    ByVal behavior As CommandBehavior _  
) As IAsyncResult
```

### C#

```
public IAsyncResult BeginExecuteReader(  
    AsyncCallback callback,  
    object stateObject,  
    CommandBehavior behavior  
);
```

## Parameters

- **callback** An [AsyncCallback](#) delegate that is invoked when the command's execution has completed. Pass null (Nothing in Microsoft Visual Basic) to indicate that no callback is required.
- **stateObject** A user-defined state object that is passed to the callback procedure. Retrieve this object from within the callback procedure using the [IAsyncResult.AsyncState](#).
- **behavior** A bitwise combination of [CommandBehavior](#) flags describing the results of the query and its effect on the connection.

## Return value

An [IAsyncResult](#) that can be used to poll, wait for results, or both; this value is also needed when invoking `EndExecuteReader(IAsyncResult)`, which returns an `SADataReader` object that can be used to retrieve the returned rows.

### See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“BeginExecuteReader methods” on page 217](#)
- [“EndExecuteReader method” on page 223](#)
- [“SADeveloper class” on page 310](#)

## Cancel method

Cancels the execution of an SACommand object.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Sub Cancel()
```

#### C#

```
public override void Cancel();
```

### Remarks

If there is nothing to cancel, nothing happens. If there is a command in process and the attempt to cancel fails, no exception is generated.

### See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)

## CreateParameter method

Provides an SAParameter object for supplying parameters to SACommand objects.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function CreateParameter() As SAParameter
```

#### C#

```
public SAParameter CreateParameter();
```

### Return value

A new parameter, as an SAParameter object.

## Remarks

Stored procedures and some other SQL statements can take parameters, indicated in the text of a statement by a question mark (?).

The CreateParameter method provides an SAParameter object. You can set properties on the SAParameter to specify the value, data type, and so on for the parameter.

## See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)

## EndExecuteNonQuery method

Finishes asynchronous execution of a SQL statement or stored procedure.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function EndExecuteNonQuery( _  
    ByVal asyncResult As IAsyncResult _  
) As Integer
```

#### C#

```
public int EndExecuteNonQuery(  
    IAsyncResult asyncResult  
);
```

### Parameters

- **asyncResult** The IAsyncResult returned by the call to SACommand.BeginExecuteNonQuery.

### Return value

The number of rows affected (the same behavior as SACommand.ExecuteNonQuery).

### Remarks

You must call EndExecuteNonQuery once for every call to BeginExecuteNonQuery. The call must be after BeginExecuteNonQuery has returned. ADO.NET is not thread safe; it is your responsibility to ensure that BeginExecuteNonQuery has returned. The IAsyncResult passed to EndExecuteNonQuery must be the same as the one returned from the BeginExecuteNonQuery call that is being completed. It is an error to call EndExecuteNonQuery to end a call to BeginExecuteReader, and vice versa.

If an error occurs while executing the command, the exception is thrown when EndExecuteNonQuery is called.

There are four ways to wait for execution to complete:

- (1) Call EndExecuteNonQuery.

Calling `EndExecuteNonQuery` blocks until the command completes. For example:

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection("DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo");
conn.Open();
SACCommand cmd = new SACCommand(
    "UPDATE Departments"
    + " SET DepartmentName = 'Engineering'"
    + " WHERE DepartmentID=100",
    conn );
IAsyncResult res = cmd.BeginExecuteNonQuery();
// perform other work
// this will block until the command completes
int rowCount reader = cmd.EndExecuteNonQuery( res );
```

(2) Poll the `IsCompleted` property of the `IAsyncResult`.

You can poll the `IsCompleted` property of the `IAsyncResult`. For example:

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection("DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo");
conn.Open();
SACCommand cmd = new SACCommand(
    "UPDATE Departments"
    + " SET DepartmentName = 'Engineering'"
    + " WHERE DepartmentID=100",
    conn
);
IAsyncResult res = cmd.BeginExecuteNonQuery();
while( !res.IsCompleted ) {
    // do other work
}
// this will not block because the command is finished
int rowCount = cmd.EndExecuteNonQuery( res );
```

(3) Use the `IAsyncResult.AsyncWaitHandle` property to get a synchronization object.

You can use the `IAsyncResult.AsyncWaitHandle` property to get a synchronization object, and wait on that. For example:

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection("DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo");
conn.Open();
SACCommand cmd = new SACCommand(
    "UPDATE Departments"
    + " SET DepartmentName = 'Engineering'"
    + " WHERE DepartmentID=100",
    conn
);
IAsyncResult res = cmd.BeginExecuteNonQuery();
// perform other work
WaitHandle wh = res.AsyncWaitHandle;
wh.WaitOne();
// this will not block because the command is finished
int rowCount = cmd.EndExecuteNonQuery( res );
```

(4) Specify a callback function when calling `BeginExecuteNonQuery`.

You can specify a callback function when calling `BeginExecuteNonQuery`. For example:

```
private void callbackFunction( IAsyncResult ar )
{
    SACCommand cmd = (SACCommand) ar.AsyncState;
    // this won't block since the command has completed
    int rowCount = cmd.EndExecuteNonQuery();
}
```



```
}
// elsewhere in the code
private void DoStuff()
{
    SAConnection conn = new SAConnection("DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo");
    conn.Open();
    SACommand cmd = new SACommand(
        "UPDATE Departments"
        + " SET DepartmentName = 'Engineering'"
        + " WHERE DepartmentID=100",
        conn
    );
    IAsyncResult res = cmd.BeginExecuteNonQuery( callbackFunction, cmd );
    // perform other work. The callback function will be
    // called when the command completes
}
```

The callback function executes in a separate thread, so the usual caveats related to updating the user interface in a threaded program apply.

### See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“BeginExecuteNonQuery\(\) method” on page 215](#)

## EndExecuteReader method

Finishes asynchronous execution of a SQL statement or stored procedure, returning the requested *SADaReader*.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function EndExecuteReader( _
    ByVal asyncResult As IAsyncResult _
) As SADaReader
```

#### C#

```
public SADaReader EndExecuteReader(
    IAsyncResult asyncResult
);
```

### Parameters

- **asyncResult** The *IAsyncResult* returned by the call to *SACommand.BeginExecuteReader*.

### Return value

An *SADaReader* object that can be used to retrieve the requested rows (the same behavior as *SACommand.ExecuteReader*).

**Remarks**

You must call `EndExecuteReader` once for every call to `BeginExecuteReader`. The call must be after `BeginExecuteReader` has returned. ADO.NET is not thread safe; it is your responsibility to ensure that `BeginExecuteReader` has returned. The `IAsyncResult` passed to `EndExecuteReader` must be the same as the one returned from the `BeginExecuteReader` call that is being completed. It is an error to call `EndExecuteReader` to end a call to `BeginExecuteNonQuery`, and vice versa.

If an error occurs while executing the command, the exception is thrown when `EndExecuteReader` is called.

There are four ways to wait for execution to complete:

(1) Call `EndExecuteReader`.

Calling `EndExecuteReader` blocks until the command completes. For example:

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection("DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo");
conn.Open();
SACCommand cmd = new SACCommand( "SELECT * FROM Departments",
    conn );
IAsyncResult res = cmd.BeginExecuteReader();
// perform other work
// this will block until the command completes
SADataReader reader = cmd.EndExecuteReader( res );
```

(2) Poll the `IsCompleted` property of the `IAsyncResult`.

You can poll the `IsCompleted` property of the `IAsyncResult`. For example:

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection("DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo");
conn.Open();
SACCommand cmd = new SACCommand( "SELECT * FROM Departments",
    conn );
IAsyncResult res = cmd.BeginExecuteReader();
while( !res.IsCompleted ) {
    // do other work
}
// this will not block because the command is finished
SADataReader reader = cmd.EndExecuteReader( res );
```

(3) Use the `IAsyncResult.AsyncWaitHandle` property to get a synchronization object.

You can use the `IAsyncResult.AsyncWaitHandle` property to get a synchronization object, and wait on that. For example:

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection("DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo");
conn.Open();
SACCommand cmd = new SACCommand( "SELECT * FROM Departments",
    conn );
IAsyncResult res = cmd.BeginExecuteReader();
// perform other work
WaitHandle wh = res.AsyncWaitHandle;
wh.WaitOne();
// this will not block because the command is finished
SADataReader reader = cmd.EndExecuteReader( res );
```

(4) Specify a callback function when calling `BeginExecuteReader`

You can specify a callback function when calling `BeginExecuteReader`. For example:

```
private void callbackFunction( IAsyncResult ar )
{
```

```
SACommand cmd = (SACommand) ar.AsyncState;
// this won't block since the command has completed
    SADATAReader reader = cmd.EndExecuteReader();
}
// elsewhere in the code
private void DoStuff()
{
    SAConnection conn = new SAConnection("DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo");
    conn.Open();
    SACommand cmd = new SACommand( "SELECT * FROM Departments",
        conn );
    IAsyncResult res = cmd.BeginExecuteReader( callbackFunction, cmd );
    // perform other work. The callback function will be
    // called when the command completes
}
}
```

The callback function executes in a separate thread, so the usual caveats related to updating the user interface in a threaded program apply.

### See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“BeginExecuteReader\(\) method” on page 217](#)
- [“SADATAReader class” on page 310](#)

## ExecuteNonQuery method

Executes a statement that does not return a result set, such as an INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or data definition statement.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Function **ExecuteNonQuery()** As Integer

#### C#

public override int **ExecuteNonQuery();**

### Return value

The number of rows affected.

### Remarks

You can use ExecuteNonQuery to change the data in a database without using a DataSet. Do this by executing UPDATE, INSERT, or DELETE statements.

Although ExecuteNonQuery does not return any rows, output parameters or return values that are mapped to parameters are populated with data.

For UPDATE, INSERT, and DELETE statements, the return value is the number of rows affected by the command. For all other types of statements, and for rollbacks, the return value is -1.

### See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“ExecuteReader\(\) method” on page 226](#)

## ExecuteReader methods

Executes a SQL statement that returns a result set.

### ExecuteReader() method

Executes a SQL statement that returns a result set.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

Public Function **ExecuteReader()** As SDataReader

##### C#

```
public SDataReader ExecuteReader();
```

#### Return value

The result set as an SDataReader object.

#### Remarks

The statement is the current SACommand object, with CommandText and Parameters as needed. The SDataReader object is a read-only, forward-only result set. For modifiable result sets, use an SDataAdapter.

### See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“ExecuteReader methods” on page 226](#)
- [“ExecuteNonQuery method” on page 225](#)
- [“SDataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“CommandText property” on page 211](#)
- [“Parameters property” on page 213](#)

### ExecuteReader(CommandBehavior) method

Executes a SQL statement that returns a result set.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Function ExecuteReader( _  
    ByVal behavior As CommandBehavior _  
) As SDataReader
```

### C#

```
public SDataReader ExecuteReader(  
    CommandBehavior behavior  
);
```

## Parameters

- **behavior** One of CloseConnection, Default, KeyInfo, SchemaOnly, SequentialAccess, SingleResult, or SingleRow.

For more information about this parameter, see the .NET Framework documentation for CommandBehavior Enumeration.

## Return value

The result set as an SDataReader object.

## Remarks

The statement is the current SACommand object, with CommandText and Parameters as needed. The SDataReader object is a read-only, forward-only result set. For modifiable result sets, use an SDataAdapter.

## See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“ExecuteReader methods” on page 226](#)
- [“ExecuteNonQuery method” on page 225](#)
- [“SDataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“CommandText property” on page 211](#)
- [“Parameters property” on page 213](#)

## ExecuteScalar method

Executes a statement that returns a single value. If this method is called on a query that returns multiple rows and columns, only the first column of the first row is returned.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function ExecuteScalar() As Object
```

## C#

```
public override object ExecuteScalar();
```

### Return value

The first column of the first row in the result set, or a null reference if the result set is empty.

### See also

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)

## Prepare method

Prepares or compiles the SACommand on the data source.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Sub Prepare()
```

## C#

```
public override void Prepare();
```

### Remarks

If you call one of the `ExecuteNonQuery`, `ExecuteReader`, or `ExecuteScalar` methods after calling `Prepare`, any parameter value that is larger than the value specified by the `Size` property is automatically truncated to the original specified size of the parameter, and no truncation errors are returned.

The truncation only happens for the following data types:

- CHAR
- VARCHAR
- LONG VARCHAR
- TEXT
- NCHAR
- NVARCHAR
- LONG NVARCHAR
- NTEXT
- BINARY
- LONG BINARY
- VARBINARY
- IMAGE

If the `size` property is not specified, and so is using the default value, the data is not truncated.

**See also**

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)
- [“ExecuteNonQuery method” on page 225](#)
- [“ExecuteReader\(\) method” on page 226](#)
- [“ExecuteScalar method” on page 227](#)

## ResetCommandTimeout method

Resets the CommandTimeout property to its default value of 30 seconds.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub ResetCommandTimeout()
```

**C#**

```
public void ResetCommandTimeout();
```

**See also**

- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SACommand members” on page 207](#)

## SACommandBuilder class

A way to generate single-table SQL statements that reconcile changes made to a DataSet with the data in the associated database. This class cannot be inherited.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public NotInheritable Class SACommandBuilder  
    Inherits DbCommandBuilder
```

**C#**

```
public sealed class SACommandBuilder : DbCommandBuilder
```

**See also**

- [“SACommandBuilder members” on page 230](#)

## SACommandBuilder members

### Public constructors

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SACommandBuilder constructors</a>	Initializes a new instance of the “ <a href="#">SACommandBuilder class</a> ” on page 229.

### Public properties

Member name	Description
<a href="#">CatalogLocation</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbCommandBuilder</a> )	Sets or gets the <a href="#">CatalogLocation</a> for an instance of the <a href="#">DbCommandBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">CatalogSeparator</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbCommandBuilder</a> )	Sets or gets a string used as the catalog separator for an instance of the <a href="#">DbCommandBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">ConflictOption</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbCommandBuilder</a> )	Specifies which <a href="#">ConflictOption</a> is to be used by the <a href="#">DbCommandBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">DataAdapter property</a>	Specifies the <a href="#">SADDataAdapter</a> for which to generate statements.
<a href="#">QuotePrefix</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbCommandBuilder</a> )	Gets or sets the beginning character or characters to use when specifying database objects (for example, tables or columns) whose names contain characters such as spaces or reserved tokens.
<a href="#">QuoteSuffix</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbCommandBuilder</a> )	Gets or sets the beginning character or characters to use when specifying database objects (for example, tables or columns) whose names contain characters such as spaces or reserved tokens.
<a href="#">SchemaSeparator</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbCommandBuilder</a> )	Gets or sets the character to be used for the separator between the schema identifier and any other identifiers.
<a href="#">SetAllValues</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbCommandBuilder</a> )	Specifies whether all column values in an update statement are included or only changed ones.

### Public methods

Member name	Description
<a href="#">DeriveParameters method</a>	Populates the <a href="#">Parameters</a> collection of the specified <a href="#">SACommand</a> object. This is used for the stored procedure specified in the <a href="#">SACommand</a> .
<a href="#">GetDeleteCommand methods</a>	Returns the generated <a href="#">SACommand</a> object that performs DELETE operations on the database when <a href="#">SADDataAdapter.Update</a> is called.



Member name	Description
<a href="#">GetInsertCommand methods</a>	Returns the generated SACommand object that performs INSERT operations on the database when an Update is called.
<a href="#">GetUpdateCommand methods</a>	Returns the generated SACommand object that performs UPDATE operations on the database when an Update is called.
<a href="#">QuoteIdentifier method</a>	Returns the correct quoted form of an unquoted identifier, including properly escaping any embedded quotes in the identifier.
<a href="#">RefreshSchema</a> (inherited from DbCommandBuilder)	Clears the commands associated with this <a href="#">DbCommandBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">UnquoteIdentifier method</a>	Returns the correct unquoted form of a quoted identifier, including properly un-escaping any embedded quotes in the identifier.

**See also**

- [“SACommandBuilder class” on page 229](#)

## SACommandBuilder constructors

Initializes a new instance of the [“SACommandBuilder class” on page 229](#).

### SACommandBuilder() constructor

Initializes an SACommandBuilder object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New()
```

**C#**

```
public SACommandBuilder();
```

**See also**

- [“SACommandBuilder class” on page 229](#)
- [“SACommandBuilder members” on page 230](#)
- [“SACommandBuilder constructors” on page 231](#)

### SACommandBuilder(SADataAdapter) constructor

Initializes an SACommandBuilder object.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal adapter As SDataAdapter _  
)
```

### C#

```
public SACCommandBuilder(  
    SDataAdapter adapter  
);
```

## Parameters

- **adapter** An SDataAdapter object for which to generate reconciliation statements.

## See also

- [“SACCommandBuilder class” on page 229](#)
- [“SACCommandBuilder members” on page 230](#)
- [“SACCommandBuilder constructors” on page 231](#)

## DataAdapter property

Specifies the SDataAdapter for which to generate statements.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Property DataAdapter As SDataAdapter
```

### C#

```
public SDataAdapter DataAdapter { get; set; }
```

## Property value

An SDataAdapter object.

## Remarks

When you create a new instance of SACCommandBuilder, any existing SACCommandBuilder that is associated with this SDataAdapter is released.

## See also

- [“SACCommandBuilder class” on page 229](#)
- [“SACCommandBuilder members” on page 230](#)

## DeriveParameters method

Populates the Parameters collection of the specified SACommand object. This is used for the stored procedure specified in the SACommand.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Shared Sub DeriveParameters( _  
    ByVal command As SACommand _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public static void DeriveParameters(  
    SACommand command  
);
```

### Parameters

- **command** An SACommand object for which to derive parameters.

### Remarks

DeriveParameters overwrites any existing parameter information for the SACommand.

DeriveParameters requires an extra call to the database server. If the parameter information is known in advance, it is more efficient to populate the Parameters collection by setting the information explicitly.

### See also

- [“SACommandBuilder class” on page 229](#)
- [“SACommandBuilder members” on page 230](#)

## GetDeleteCommand methods

Returns the generated SACommand object that performs DELETE operations on the database when SAdapter.Update is called.

### GetDeleteCommand(Boolean) method

Returns the generated SACommand object that performs DELETE operations on the database when SAdapter.Update is called.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function GetDeleteCommand( _  
    ByVal useColumnsForParameterNames As Boolean _  
) As SACommand
```

**C#**

```
public SACommand GetDeleteCommand(  
    bool useColumnsForParameterNames  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **useColumnsForParameterNames** If true, generate parameter names matching column names if possible. If false, generate @p1, @p2, and so on.

**Return value**

The automatically generated SACommand object required to perform deletions.

**Remarks**

The GetDeleteCommand method returns the SACommand object to be executed, so it may be useful for informational or troubleshooting purposes.

You can also use GetDeleteCommand as the basis of a modified command. For example, you might call GetDeleteCommand and modify the CommandTimeout value, and then explicitly set that value on the SADataAdapter.

SQL statements are first generated when the application calls Update or GetDeleteCommand. After the SQL statement is first generated, the application must explicitly call RefreshSchema if it changes the statement in any way. Otherwise, the GetDeleteCommand will still be using information from the previous statement.

**See also**

- [“SACommandBuilder class” on page 229](#)
- [“SACommandBuilder members” on page 230](#)
- [“GetDeleteCommand methods” on page 233](#)
- [DbCommandBuilder.RefreshSchema](#)

**GetDeleteCommand() method**

Returns the generated SACommand object that performs DELETE operations on the database when SADataAdapter.Update is called.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Function GetDeleteCommand() As SACommand
```

**C#**

```
public SACommand GetDeleteCommand();
```

**Return value**

The automatically generated SACommand object required to perform deletions.

## Remarks

The `GetDeleteCommand` method returns the `SACCommand` object to be executed, so it may be useful for informational or troubleshooting purposes.

You can also use `GetDeleteCommand` as the basis of a modified command. For example, you might call `GetDeleteCommand` and modify the `CommandTimeout` value, and then explicitly set that value on the `SADDataAdapter`.

SQL statements are first generated when the application calls `Update` or `GetDeleteCommand`. After the SQL statement is first generated, the application must explicitly call `RefreshSchema` if it changes the statement in any way. Otherwise, the `GetDeleteCommand` will still be using information from the previous statement.

## See also

- [“SACCommandBuilder class” on page 229](#)
- [“SACCommandBuilder members” on page 230](#)
- [“GetDeleteCommand methods” on page 233](#)
- [DbCommandBuilder.RefreshSchema](#)

## GetInsertCommand methods

Returns the generated `SACCommand` object that performs INSERT operations on the database when an `Update` is called.

### GetInsertCommand(Boolean) method

Returns the generated `SACCommand` object that performs INSERT operations on the database when an `Update` is called.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function GetInsertCommand( _  
    ByVal useColumnsForParameterNames As Boolean _  
) As SACCommand
```

#### C#

```
public SACCommand GetInsertCommand(  
    bool useColumnsForParameterNames  
);
```

### Parameters

- **useColumnsForParameterNames** If true, generate parameter names matching column names if possible. If false, generate @p1, @p2, and so on.

### Return value

The automatically generated `SACCommand` object required to perform insertions.

## Remarks

The `GetInsertCommand` method returns the `SACCommand` object to be executed, so it may be useful for informational or troubleshooting purposes.

You can also use `GetInsertCommand` as the basis of a modified command. For example, you might call `GetInsertCommand` and modify the `CommandTimeout` value, and then explicitly set that value on the `SADDataAdapter`.

SQL statements are first generated either when the application calls `Update` or `GetInsertCommand`. After the SQL statement is first generated, the application must explicitly call `RefreshSchema` if it changes the statement in any way. Otherwise, the `GetInsertCommand` will be still be using information from the previous statement, which might not be correct.

## See also

- [“SACCommandBuilder class” on page 229](#)
- [“SACCommandBuilder members” on page 230](#)
- [“GetInsertCommand methods” on page 235](#)
- [“GetDeleteCommand\(\) method” on page 234](#)

## GetInsertCommand() method

Returns the generated `SACCommand` object that performs INSERT operations on the database when an `Update` is called.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Function GetInsertCommand() As SACCommand
```

### C#

```
public SACCommand GetInsertCommand();
```

## Return value

The automatically generated `SACCommand` object required to perform insertions.

## Remarks

The `GetInsertCommand` method returns the `SACCommand` object to be executed, so it may be useful for informational or troubleshooting purposes.

You can also use `GetInsertCommand` as the basis of a modified command. For example, you might call `GetInsertCommand` and modify the `CommandTimeout` value, and then explicitly set that value on the `SADDataAdapter`.

SQL statements are first generated either when the application calls `Update` or `GetInsertCommand`. After the SQL statement is first generated, the application must explicitly call `RefreshSchema` if it changes the statement in any way. Otherwise, the `GetInsertCommand` will be still be using information from the previous statement, which might not be correct.

**See also**

- [“SACommandBuilder class” on page 229](#)
- [“SACommandBuilder members” on page 230](#)
- [“GetInsertCommand methods” on page 235](#)
- [“GetDeleteCommand\(\) method” on page 234](#)

## GetUpdateCommand methods

Returns the generated SACommand object that performs UPDATE operations on the database when an Update is called.

### GetUpdateCommand(Boolean) method

Returns the generated SACommand object that performs UPDATE operations on the database when an Update is called.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Function GetUpdateCommand( _  
    ByVal useColumnsForParameterNames As Boolean _  
) As SACommand
```

**C#**

```
public SACommand GetUpdateCommand(  
    bool useColumnsForParameterNames  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **useColumnsForParameterNames** If true, generate parameter names matching column names if possible. If false, generate @p1, @p2, and so on.

**Return value**

The automatically generated SACommand object required to perform updates.

**Remarks**

The GetUpdateCommand method returns the SACommand object to be executed, so it may be useful for informational or troubleshooting purposes.

You can also use GetUpdateCommand as the basis of a modified command. For example, you might call GetUpdateCommand and modify the CommandTimeout value, and then explicitly set that value on the SADATAAdapter.

SQL statements are first generated when the application calls Update or GetUpdateCommand. After the SQL statement is first generated, the application must explicitly call RefreshSchema if it changes the

statement in any way. Otherwise, the `GetUpdateCommand` will be still be using information from the previous statement, which might not be correct.

### See also

- [“SACommandBuilder class” on page 229](#)
- [“SACommandBuilder members” on page 230](#)
- [“GetUpdateCommand methods” on page 237](#)
- [DbCommandBuilder.RefreshSchema](#)

## GetUpdateCommand() method

Returns the generated `SACommand` object that performs UPDATE operations on the database when an Update is called.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Function **GetUpdateCommand()** As `SACommand`

#### C#

```
public SACommand GetUpdateCommand();
```

### Return value

The automatically generated `SACommand` object required to perform updates.

### Remarks

The `GetUpdateCommand` method returns the `SACommand` object to be executed, so it may be useful for informational or troubleshooting purposes.

You can also use `GetUpdateCommand` as the basis of a modified command. For example, you might call `GetUpdateCommand` and modify the `CommandTimeout` value, and then explicitly set that value on the `SADDataAdapter`.

SQL statements are first generated when the application calls `Update` or `GetUpdateCommand`. After the SQL statement is first generated, the application must explicitly call `RefreshSchema` if it changes the statement in any way. Otherwise, the `GetUpdateCommand` will be still be using information from the previous statement, which might not be correct.

### See also

- [“SACommandBuilder class” on page 229](#)
- [“SACommandBuilder members” on page 230](#)
- [“GetUpdateCommand methods” on page 237](#)
- [DbCommandBuilder.RefreshSchema](#)



## QuotIdentifier method

Returns the correct quoted form of an unquoted identifier, including properly escaping any embedded quotes in the identifier.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function QuotIdentifier( _  
    ByVal unquotedIdentifier As String _  
) As String
```

#### C#

```
public override string QuotIdentifier(  
    string unquotedIdentifier  
);
```

### Parameters

- **unquotedIdentifier** The string representing the unquoted identifier that will have be quoted.

### Return value

Returns a string representing the quoted form of an unquoted identifier with embedded quotes properly escaped.

### See also

- [“SACommandBuilder class” on page 229](#)
- [“SACommandBuilder members” on page 230](#)

## UnquotIdentifier method

Returns the correct unquoted form of a quoted identifier, including properly un-escaping any embedded quotes in the identifier.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function UnquotIdentifier( _  
    ByVal quotedIdentifier As String _  
) As String
```

#### C#

```
public override string UnquotIdentifier(  
    string quotedIdentifier  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **quotedIdentifier** The string representing the quoted identifier that will have its embedded quotes removed.

**Return value**

Returns a string representing the unquoted form of a quoted identifier with embedded quotes properly un-escaped.

**See also**

- [“SACommandBuilder class” on page 229](#)
- [“SACommandBuilder members” on page 230](#)

## SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class

Provides a simple way to create and manage the CommLinks options portion of connection strings used by the SAConnection class. This class cannot be inherited.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public NotInheritable Class **SACommLinksOptionsBuilder**

**C#**

public sealed class **SACommLinksOptionsBuilder**

**Remarks**

The SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

For a list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

**See also**

- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder members” on page 240](#)

## SACommLinksOptionsBuilder members

**Public constructors**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SACommLinksOptionsBuilder constructors</a>	Initializes a new instance of the <a href="#">“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class” on page 240</a> .

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">All property</a>	Gets or sets the ALL CommLinks option.
<a href="#">ConnectionString property</a>	Gets or sets the connection string being built.
<a href="#">SharedMemory property</a>	Gets or sets the SharedMemory protocol.
<a href="#">TcpOptionsBuilder property</a>	Gets or sets a TcpOptionsBuilder object used to create a TCP options string.
<a href="#">TcpOptionsString property</a>	Gets or sets a string of TCP options.

**Public methods**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">GetUseLongNameAsKeyword method</a>	Gets a boolean values that indicates whether long connection parameter names are used in the connection string.
<a href="#">SetUseLongNameAsKeyword method</a>	Sets a boolean value that indicates whether long connection parameter names are used in the connection string. Long connection parameter names are used by default.
<a href="#">ToString method</a>	Converts the SACCommLinksOptionsBuilder object to a string representation.

**See also**

- [“SACCommLinksOptionsBuilder class” on page 240](#)

**SACCommLinksOptionsBuilder constructors**

Initializes a new instance of the [“SACCommLinksOptionsBuilder class” on page 240](#).

**SACCommLinksOptionsBuilder() constructor**

Initializes an SACCommLinksOptionsBuilder object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Sub **New**()

**C#**

```
public SACommLinksOptionsBuilder();
```

**Remarks**

The SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**Example**

The following statement initializes an SACommLinksOptionsBuilder object.

```
SACommLinksOptionsBuilder commLinks =  
    new SACommLinksOptionsBuilder( );
```

**See also**

- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class” on page 240](#)
- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder members” on page 240](#)
- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder constructors” on page 241](#)

**SACommLinksOptionsBuilder(String) constructor**

Initializes an SACommLinksOptionsBuilder object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New(  
    ByVal options As String  
)
```

**C#**

```
public SACommLinksOptionsBuilder(  
    string options  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **options** A SQL Anywhere CommLinks connection parameter string.  
For a list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

**Remarks**

The SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**Example**

The following statement initializes an SACommLinksOptionsBuilder object.

```
SACommLinksOptionsBuilder commLinks =  
    new SACommLinksOptionsBuilder("TCPIP(DoBroadcast=ALL;Timeout=20)");
```

**See also**

- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class” on page 240](#)
- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder members” on page 240](#)
- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder constructors” on page 241](#)

## All property

Gets or sets the ALL CommLinks option.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Property **All** As Boolean

**C#**

```
public bool All { get; set; }
```

**Remarks**

Attempt to connect using the shared memory protocol first, followed by all remaining and available communication protocols. Use this setting if you are unsure of which communication protocol(s) to use.

The SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class” on page 240](#)
- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder members” on page 240](#)

## ConnectionString property

Gets or sets the connection string being built.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Property **ConnectionString** As String

**C#**

```
public string ConnectionString { get; set; }
```

**Remarks**

The SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class” on page 240](#)
- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder members” on page 240](#)

## SharedMemory property

Gets or sets the SharedMemory protocol.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **SharedMemory** As Boolean

#### C#

```
public bool SharedMemory { get; set; }
```

### Remarks

The SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class” on page 240](#)
- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder members” on page 240](#)

## TcpOptionsBuilder property

Gets or sets a TcpOptionsBuilder object used to create a TCP options string.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **TcpOptionsBuilder** As SATcpOptionsBuilder

#### C#

```
public SATcpOptionsBuilder TcpOptionsBuilder { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class” on page 240](#)
- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder members” on page 240](#)

## TcpOptionsString property

Gets or sets a string of TCP options.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Property TcpOptionsString As String
```

**C#**

```
public string TcpOptionsString { get; set; }
```

**See also**

- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class” on page 240](#)
- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder members” on page 240](#)

## GetUseLongNameAsKeyword method

Gets a boolean values that indicates whether long connection parameter names are used in the connection string.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Function GetUseLongNameAsKeyword() As Boolean
```

**C#**

```
public bool GetUseLongNameAsKeyword();
```

**Return value**

True if long connection parameter names are used to build connection strings; otherwise, false.

**Remarks**

SQL Anywhere connection parameters have both long and short forms of their names. For example, to specify the name of an ODBC data source in your connection string, you can use either of the following values: DataSourceName or DSN. By default, long connection parameter names are used to build connection strings.

**See also**

- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class” on page 240](#)
- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder members” on page 240](#)
- [“SetUseLongNameAsKeyword method” on page 245](#)

## SetUseLongNameAsKeyword method

Sets a boolean value that indicates whether long connection parameter names are used in the connection string. Long connection parameter names are used by default.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub SetUseLongNameAsKeyword( _  
    ByVal useLongNameAsKeyword As Boolean _  
)
```

### C#

```
public void SetUseLongNameAsKeyword(  
    bool useLongNameAsKeyword  
);
```

## Parameters

- **useLongNameAsKeyword** A boolean value that indicates whether the long connection parameter name is used in the connection string.

## See also

- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class” on page 240](#)
- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder members” on page 240](#)
- [“GetUseLongNameAsKeyword method” on page 245](#)

## ToString method

Converts the SACommLinksOptionsBuilder object to a string representation.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function ToString() As String
```

### C#

```
public override string ToString();
```

## Return value

The options string being built.

## See also

- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder class” on page 240](#)
- [“SACommLinksOptionsBuilder members” on page 240](#)

## SAConnection class

Represents a connection to a SQL Anywhere database. This class cannot be inherited.



**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public NotInheritable Class **SACConnection**  
 Inherits DbConnection

**C#**

public sealed class **SACConnection** : DbConnection

**Remarks**

For a list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

**See also**

- [“SACConnection members” on page 247](#)

**SACConnection members****Public constructors**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SACConnection constructors</a>	Initializes a new instance of the <a href="#">“SACConnection class” on page 246</a> .

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">ConnectionString property</a>	Provides the database connection string.
<a href="#">ConnectionTimeout property</a>	Gets the number of seconds before a connection attempt times out with an error.
<a href="#">DataSource property</a>	Gets the name of the database server.
<a href="#">Database property</a>	Gets the name of the current database.
<a href="#">InitString property</a>	A command that is executed immediately after the connection is established.
<a href="#">ServerVersion property</a>	Gets a string that contains the version of the instance of SQL Anywhere to which the client is connected.
<a href="#">State property</a>	Indicates the state of the SACConnection object.

**Public methods**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">BeginTransaction methods</a>	Returns a transaction object. Commands associated with a transaction object are executed as a single transaction. The transaction is terminated with a call to the Commit or Rollback methods.
<a href="#">ChangeDatabase method</a>	Changes the current database for an open SAConnection.
<a href="#">ChangePassword method</a>	Changes the password for the user indicated in the connection string to the supplied new password.
<a href="#">ClearAllPools method</a>	Empties all connection pools.
<a href="#">ClearPool method</a>	Empties the connection pool associated with the specified connection.
<a href="#">Close method</a>	Closes a database connection.
<a href="#">CreateCommand method</a>	Initializes an SACommand object.
<a href="#">EnlistDistributedTransaction method</a>	Enlists in the specified transaction as a distributed transaction.
<a href="#">EnlistTransaction method</a>	Enlists in the specified transaction as a distributed transaction.
<a href="#">GetSchema methods</a>	Returns the list of supported schema collections.
<a href="#">Open method</a>	Opens a database connection with the property settings specified by the SAConnection.ConnectionString.

**Public events**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">InfoMessage event</a>	Occurs when the SQL Anywhere database server returns a warning or informational message.
<a href="#">StateChange event</a>	Occurs when the state of the SAConnection object changes.

**See also**

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)

**SAConnection constructors**

Initializes a new instance of the [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#).

## SACConnection() constructor

Initializes an SACConnection object. The connection must be opened before you can perform any operations against the database.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New()
```

#### C#

```
public SACConnection();
```

### See also

- [“SACConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SACConnection members” on page 247](#)
- [“SACConnection constructors” on page 248](#)

## SACConnection(String) constructor

Initializes an SACConnection object. The connection must then be opened before you can perform any operations against the database.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal connectionString As String _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public SACConnection(  
    string connectionString  
);
```

### Parameters

- **connectionString** A SQL Anywhere connection string. A connection string is a semicolon-separated list of keyword=value pairs.

For a list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### Example

The following statement initializes an SACConnection object for a connection to a database named policies running on a SQL Anywhere database server named hr. The connection uses the user ID admin and the password money.

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection(
    "UID=admin;PWD=money;ENG=hr;DBN=policies" );
conn.Open();
```

### See also

- [“SACConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SACConnection members” on page 247](#)
- [“SACConnection constructors” on page 248](#)
- [“SACConnection class” on page 246](#)

## ConnectionString property

Provides the database connection string.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Property **ConnectionString** As String

#### C#

public override string **ConnectionString** { get; set; }

### Remarks

The ConnectionString is designed to match the SQL Anywhere connection string format as closely as possible with the following exception: when the Persist Security Info value is set to false (the default), the connection string that is returned is the same as the user-set ConnectionString minus security information. The SQL Anywhere SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider does not persist the password in a returned connection string unless you set Persist Security Info to true.

You can use the ConnectionString property to connect to a variety of data sources.

You can set the ConnectionString property only when the connection is closed. Many of the connection string values have corresponding read-only properties. When the connection string is set, all of these properties are updated, unless an error is detected. If an error is detected, none of the properties are updated. SACConnection properties return only those settings contained in the ConnectionString.

If you reset the ConnectionString on a closed connection, all connection string values and related properties are reset, including the password.

When the property is set, a preliminary validation of the connection string is performed. When an application calls the Open method, the connection string is fully validated. A runtime exception is generated if the connection string contains invalid or unsupported properties.

Values can be delimited by single or double quotes. Either single or double quotes may be used within a connection string by using the other delimiter, for example, name="value's" or name='value"s', but not name='value's' or name=""value"". Blank characters are ignored unless they are placed within a value or within quotes. keyword=value pairs must be separated by a semicolon. If a semicolon is part of a value, it must also be delimited by quotes. Escape sequences are not supported, and the value type is irrelevant. Names

are not case sensitive. If a property name occurs more than once in the connection string, the value associated with the last occurrence is used.

You should use caution when constructing a connection string based on user input, such as when retrieving a user ID and password from a window, and appending it to the connection string. The application should not allow a user to embed extra connection string parameters in these values.

The default value of connection pooling is true (pooling=true).

### Example

The following statements set a connection string for an ODBC data source named SQL Anywhere 11 Demo and open the connection.

```
SACConnection conn = new SACConnection();
conn.ConnectionString = "DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo";
conn.Open();
```

### See also

- [“SACConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SACConnection members” on page 247](#)
- [“SACConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“Open method” on page 267](#)

## ConnectionTimeout property

Gets the number of seconds before a connection attempt times out with an error.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Readonly Property **ConnectionTimeout** As Integer

#### C#

public override int **ConnectionTimeout** { get;}

### Property value

15 seconds

### Example

The following statement displays the value of the ConnectionTimeout.

```
MessageBox.Show( conn.ConnectionTimeout.ToString( ) );
```

### See also

- [“SACConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SACConnection members” on page 247](#)

## DataSource property

Gets the name of the database server.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Readonly Property **DataSource** As String

#### C#

```
public override string DataSource { get;}
```

### Remarks

If the connection is opened, the SAConnection object returns the ServerName server property. Otherwise, the SAConnection object looks in the connection string in the following order: EngineName, ServerName, ENG.

### See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)
- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)

## Database property

Gets the name of the current database.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Readonly Property **Database** As String

#### C#

```
public override string Database { get;}
```

### Remarks

If the connection is opened, SAConnection returns the name of the current database. Otherwise, SAConnection looks in the connection string in the following order: DatabaseName, DBN, DataSourceName, DataSource, DSN, DatabaseFile, DBF.

### See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)

## InitString property

A command that is executed immediately after the connection is established.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Property InitString As String
```

#### C#

```
public string InitString { get; set; }
```

### Remarks

The InitString will be executed immediately after the connection is opened.

### See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)

## ServerVersion property

Gets a string that contains the version of the instance of SQL Anywhere to which the client is connected.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Readonly Property ServerVersion As String
```

#### C#

```
public override string ServerVersion { get;}
```

### Property value

The version of the instance of SQL Anywhere.

### Remarks

The version is `##.##.####`, where the first two digits are the major version, the next two digits are the minor version, and the last four digits are the release version. The appended string is of the form `major.minor.build`, where major and minor are two digits, and build is four digits.

### See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)

## State property

Indicates the state of the SACConnection object.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Readonly Property **State** As ConnectionState

#### C#

```
public override ConnectionState State { get; }
```

### Property value

A [ConnectionState](#) enumeration.

### See also

- [“SACConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SACConnection members” on page 247](#)

## BeginTransaction methods

Returns a transaction object. Commands associated with a transaction object are executed as a single transaction. The transaction is terminated with a call to the Commit or Rollback methods.

### BeginTransaction() method

Returns a transaction object. Commands associated with a transaction object are executed as a single transaction. The transaction is terminated with a call to the Commit or Rollback methods.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Function **BeginTransaction()** As SATransaction

#### C#

```
public SATransaction BeginTransaction();
```

### Return value

An SATransaction object representing the new transaction.

### Remarks

To associate a command with a transaction object, use the SACCommand.Transaction property.



**See also**

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)
- [“BeginTransaction methods” on page 254](#)
- [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#)
- [“Transaction property” on page 214](#)

**BeginTransaction(IsolationLevel) method**

Returns a transaction object. Commands associated with a transaction object are executed as a single transaction. The transaction is terminated with a call to the Commit or Rollback methods.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Function BeginTransaction( _  
    ByVal isolationLevel As IsolationLevel _  
) As SATransaction
```

**C#**

```
public SATransaction BeginTransaction(  
    IsolationLevel isolationLevel  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **isolationLevel** A member of the SAIsolationLevel enumeration. The default value is ReadCommitted.

**Return value**

An SATransaction object representing the new transaction.

**Remarks**

To associate a command with a transaction object, use the SACommand.Transaction property.

**Example**

```
SATransaction tx = conn.BeginTransaction(  
    SAIsolationLevel.ReadUncommitted );
```

**See also**

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)
- [“BeginTransaction methods” on page 254](#)
- [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#)
- [“Transaction property” on page 214](#)
- [“SAIsolationLevel enumeration” on page 370](#)

## BeginTransaction(SAIsolationLevel) method

Returns a transaction object. Commands associated with a transaction object are executed as a single transaction. The transaction is terminated with a call to the Commit or Rollback methods.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function BeginTransaction( _  
    ByVal isolationLevel As SAIsolationLevel _  
) As SATransaction
```

#### C#

```
public SATransaction BeginTransaction(  
    SAIsolationLevel isolationLevel  
);
```

### Parameters

- **isolationLevel** A member of the SAIsolationLevel enumeration. The default value is ReadCommitted.

### Return value

An SATransaction object representing the new transaction.

For more information, see [“Transaction processing” on page 136](#).

For more information, see [“Typical types of inconsistency” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#).

### Remarks

To associate a command with a transaction object, use the SACommand.Transaction property.

### See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)
- [“BeginTransaction methods” on page 254](#)
- [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#)
- [“Transaction property” on page 214](#)
- [“SAIsolationLevel enumeration” on page 370](#)
- [“Commit method” on page 443](#)
- [“Rollback\(\) method” on page 443](#)
- [“Rollback\(String\) method” on page 444](#)

## ChangeDatabase method

Changes the current database for an open SAConnection.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Sub ChangeDatabase( _  
    ByVal database As String _  
)
```

### C#

```
public override void ChangeDatabase(  
    string database  
);
```

## Parameters

- **database** The name of the database to use instead of the current database.

## See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)

## ChangePassword method

Changes the password for the user indicated in the connection string to the supplied new password.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Shared Sub ChangePassword( _  
    ByVal connectionString As String, _  
    ByVal newPassword As String _  
)
```

### C#

```
public static void ChangePassword(  
    string connectionString,  
    string newPassword  
);
```

## Parameters

- **connectionString** The connection string that contains enough information to connect to the database server that you want. The connection string may contain the user ID and the current password.
- **newPassword** The new password to set. This password must comply with any password security policy set on the server, including minimum length, requirements for specific characters, and so on.

## See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)

## ClearAllPools method

Empties all connection pools.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Shared Sub ClearAllPools()
```

#### C#

```
public static void ClearAllPools();
```

### See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)

## ClearPool method

Empties the connection pool associated with the specified connection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Shared Sub ClearPool( _  
    ByVal connection As SAConnection _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public static void ClearPool(  
    SAConnection connection  
);
```

### Parameters

- **connection** The SAConnection object to be cleared from the pool.

### See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)
- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)

## Close method

Closes a database connection.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Overrides Sub **Close()**

**C#**

public override void **Close();**

**Remarks**

The Close method rolls back any pending transactions. It then releases the connection to the connection pool, or closes the connection if connection pooling is disabled. If Close is called while handling a StateChange event, no additional StateChange events are fired. An application can call Close multiple times.

**See also**

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)

## CreateCommand method

Initializes an SACCommand object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Function **CreateCommand()** As SACCommand

**C#**

public SACCommand **CreateCommand();**

**Return value**

An SACCommand object.

**Remarks**

The command object is associated with the SAConnection object.

**See also**

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)
- [“SACCommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)

## EnlistDistributedTransaction method

Enlists in the specified transaction as a distributed transaction.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub EnlistDistributedTransaction( _  
    ByVal transaction As ITransaction _  
)
```

### C#

```
public void EnlistDistributedTransaction(  
    ITransaction transaction  
);
```

## Parameters

- **transaction** A reference to an existing System.EnterpriseServices.ITransaction in which to enlist.

## See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)

## EnlistTransaction method

Enlists in the specified transaction as a distributed transaction.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Sub EnlistTransaction( _  
    ByVal transaction As Transaction _  
)
```

### C#

```
public override void EnlistTransaction(  
    Transaction transaction  
);
```

## Parameters

- **transaction** A reference to an existing System.Transactions.Transaction in which to enlist.

## See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)

## GetSchema methods

Returns the list of supported schema collections.

## GetSchema() method

Returns the list of supported schema collections.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetSchema() As DataTable
```

#### C#

```
public override DataTable GetSchema();
```

### Remarks

See [GetSchema\(string,string\[\]\)](#) for a description of the available metadata.

### See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)
- [“GetSchema methods” on page 260](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## GetSchema(String) method

Returns information for the specified metadata collection for this SAConnection object.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetSchema( _  
    ByVal collection As String _  
) As DataTable
```

#### C#

```
public override DataTable GetSchema(  
    string collection  
);
```

### Parameters

- **collection** Name of the metadata collection. If a name is not provided, `MetaDataCollections` is used.

### Remarks

See [GetSchema\(string,string\[\]\)](#) for a description of the available metadata.

**See also**

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)
- [“GetSchema methods” on page 260](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)
- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)

**GetSchema(String, String[]) method**

Returns schema information for the data source of this SAConnection object and, if specified, uses the specified string for the schema name and the specified string array for the restriction values.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Function GetSchema( _  
    ByVal collection As String, _  
    ByVal restrictions As String() _  
) As DataTable
```

**C#**

```
public override DataTable GetSchema(  
    string collection,  
    string [] restrictions  
);
```

**Return value**

A DataTable that contains schema information.

**Remarks**

These methods are used to query the database server for various metadata. Each type of metadata is given a collection name, which must be passed to receive that data. The default collection name is **MetaDataCollections**.

You can query the SQL Anywhere SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider to determine the list of supported schema collections by calling the GetSchema method with no arguments, or with the schema collection name **MetaDataCollections**. This will return a DataTable with a list of the supported schema collections (CollectionName), the number of restrictions that they each support (NumberOfRestrictions), and the number of identifier parts that they use (NumberOfIdentifierParts).

Collection	Metadata
Columns	Returns information on all columns in the database.
DataSourceInformation	Returns information about the database server.
DataTypes	Returns a list of supported data types.



Collection	Metadata
ForeignKeys	Returns information on all foreign keys in the database.
IndexColumns	Returns information on all index columns in the database.
Indexes	Returns information on all indexes in the database.
MetaDataCollections	Returns a list of all collection names.
ProcedureParameters	Returns information on all procedure parameters in the database.
Procedures	Returns information on all procedures in the database.
ReservedWords	Returns a list of reserved words used by SQL Anywhere.
Restrictions	Returns information on restrictions used in GetSchema.
Tables	Returns information on all tables in the database.
UserDefinedTypes	Returns information on all user-defined data types in the database.
Users	Returns information on all users in the database.
ViewColumns	Returns information on all columns in views in the database.
Views	Returns information on all views in the database.

These collection names are also available as read-only properties in the SAMetaDataCollectionNames class.

The results returned can be filtered by specifying an array of restrictions in the call to GetSchema.

The restrictions available with each collection can be queried by calling:

```
GetSchema( "Restrictions" )
```

If the collection requires four restrictions, then the restrictions parameter must be either NULL, or a string with four values.

To filter on a particular restriction, place the string to filter by in its place in the array and leave any unused places NULL. For example, the Tables collection has three restrictions: Owner, Table, and TableType.

To filter the Table collection by table\_name:

```
GetSchema( "Tables", new string[] { NULL, "my_table", NULL } )
```

This returns information on all tables named my\_table.

```
GetSchema( "Tables", new string[] { "DBA", "my_table", NULL } )
```

This returns information on all tables named my\_table owned by the user DBA.

The following is a summary of the columns returned by each collection. If the number of rows returned in a collection can be reduced by specifying a restriction on a column, the restriction name for that column is

shown in parenthesis. The order in which restrictions are specified is the order in which they are presented in the lists below.

### **Columns collection**

- table\_schema (Owner)
- table\_name (Table)
- column\_name (Column)
- ordinal\_position
- column\_default
- is\_nullable
- data\_type
- precision
- scale
- column\_size

### **DataSourceInformation collection**

- CompositeIdentifierSeparatorPattern
- DataSourceProductName
- DataSourceProductVersion
- DataSourceProductVersionNormalized
- GroupByBehavior
- IdentifierPattern
- IdentifierCase
- OrderByColumnsInSelect
- ParameterMarkerFormat
- ParameterMarkerPattern
- ParameterNameMaxLength
- ParameterNamePattern
- QuotedIdentifierPattern
- QuotedIdentifierCase
- StatementSeparatorPattern
- StringLiteralPattern
- SupportedJoinOperators

### DataTypes collection

- TypeName
- ProviderDbType
- ColumnSize
- CreateFormat
- CreateParameters
- DataType
- IsAutoIncrementable
- IsBestMatch
- IsCaseSensitive
- IsFixedLength
- IsFixedPrecisionScale
- IsLong
- IsNullable
- IsSearchable
- IsSearchableWithLike
- IsUnsigned
- MaximumScale
- MinimumScale
- IsConcurrencyType
- IsLiteralSupported
- LiteralPrefix
- LiteralSuffix

### ForeignKeys collection

- table\_schema (Owner)
- table\_name (Table)
- column\_name (Column)

### IndexColumns collection

- table\_schema (Owner)
- table\_name (Table)
- index\_name (Name)
- column\_name (Column)
- order

### Indexes collection

- table\_schema (Owner)
- table\_name (Table)
- index\_name (Name)
- primary\_key
- is\_unique

### **MetaDataCollections collection**

- CollectionName
- NumberOfRestrictions
- NumberOfIdentifierParts

### **ProcedureParameters collection**

- procedure\_schema (Owner)
- procedure\_name (Name)
- parmeter\_name (Parameter)
- data\_type
- parameter\_type
- is\_input
- is\_output

### **Procedures collection**

- procedure\_schema (Owner)
- procedure\_name (Name)

### **ReservedWords collection**

- reserved\_word

### **Restrictions collection**

- CollectionName
- RestrictionName
- RestrictionDefault
- RestrictionNumber

### **Tables collection**

- table\_schema (Owner)
- table\_name (Table)
- table\_type (TableType)

### **UserDefinedTypes collection**

- data\_type
- default
- precision
- scale

### **Users collection**

- user\_name (UserName)
- resource\_auth
- database\_auth
- schedule\_auth
- user\_group

### ViewColumns collection

- view\_schema (Owner)
- view\_name (Name)
- column\_name (Column)

### Views collection

- view\_schema (Owner)
- view\_name (Name)

### See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)
- [“GetSchema methods” on page 260](#)
- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)

## Open method

Opens a database connection with the property settings specified by the SAConnection.ConnectionString.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Sub **Open()**

#### C#

public override void **Open();**

### See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)
- [“ConnectionString property” on page 250](#)

## InfoMessage event

Occurs when the SQL Anywhere database server returns a warning or informational message.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Event **InfoMessage** As SAInfoMessageEventHandler

#### C#

public event SAInfoMessageEventHandler **InfoMessage** ;

## Remarks

The event handler receives an argument of type `SaInfoMessageEventArgs` containing data related to this event. The following `SaInfoMessageEventArgs` properties provide information specific to this event: `NativeError`, `Errors`, `Message`, `MessageType`, and `Source`.

For more information, see the .NET Framework documentation for `OleDbConnection.InfoMessage` Event.

## Event data

- **MessageType** Returns the type of the message. This can be one of: `Action`, `Info`, `Status`, or `Warning`.
- **Errors** Returns the collection of messages sent from the data source.
- **Message** Returns the full text of the error sent from the data source.
- **Source** Returns the name of the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider.
- **NativeError** Returns the SQL code returned by the database.

## See also

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)

## StateChange event

Occurs when the state of the `SAConnection` object changes.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Event StateChange As StateChangeEventHandler
```

### C#

```
public event override StateChangeEventHandler StateChange ;
```

## Remarks

The event handler receives an argument of type `StateChangeEventArgs` with data related to this event. The following `StateChangeEventArgs` properties provide information specific to this event: `CurrentState` and `OriginalState`.

For more information, see the .NET Framework documentation for `OleDbConnection.StateChange` Event.

## Event data

- **CurrentState** Gets the new state of the connection. The connection object will be in the new state already when the event is fired.
- **OriginalState** Gets the original state of the connection.

**See also**

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“SAConnection members” on page 247](#)

## SAConnectionStringBuilder class

Provides a simple way to create and manage the contents of connection strings used by the SAConnection class. This class cannot be inherited.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public NotInheritable Class **SAConnectionStringBuilder**  
Inherits SAConnectionStringBuilderBase

**C#**

```
public sealed class SAConnectionStringBuilder : SAConnectionString BuilderBase
```

**Remarks**

The SAConnectionStringBuilder class inherits SAConnectionStringBuilderBase, which inherits DbConnectionStringBuilder.

**Restrictions:** The SAConnectionStringBuilder class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**Inherits:** [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase class” on page 291](#)

For a list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

**See also**

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## SAConnectionStringBuilder members

**Public constructors**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilder constructors</a>	Initializes a new instance of the <a href="#">“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269</a> .

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">AppInfo property</a>	Gets or sets the AppInfo connection property.
<a href="#">AutoStart property</a>	Gets or sets the AutoStart connection property.
<a href="#">AutoStop property</a>	Gets or sets the AutoStop connection property.
<a href="#">BrowsableConnectionString</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets or sets a value that indicates whether the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder.ConnectionString</a> is visible in Visual Studio designers.
<a href="#">Charset property</a>	Gets or sets the Charset connection property.
<a href="#">CommBufferSize property</a>	Gets or sets the CommBufferSize connection property.
<a href="#">CommLinks property</a>	Gets or sets the CommLinks property.
<a href="#">Compress property</a>	Gets or sets the Compress connection property.
<a href="#">CompressionThreshold property</a>	Gets or sets the CompressionThreshold connection property.
<a href="#">ConnectionLifetime property</a>	Gets or sets the ConnectionLifetime connection property.
<a href="#">ConnectionName property</a>	Gets or sets the ConnectionName connection property.
<a href="#">ConnectionReset property</a>	Gets or sets the ConnectionReset connection property.
<a href="#">ConnectionString</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets or sets the connection string associated with the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">ConnectionTimeout property</a>	Gets or sets the ConnectionTimeout connection property.
<a href="#">Count</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets the current number of keys that are contained within the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder.ConnectionString</a> .
<a href="#">DataSourceName property</a>	Gets or sets the DataSourceName connection property.
<a href="#">DatabaseFile property</a>	Gets or sets the DatabaseFile connection property.
<a href="#">DatabaseKey property</a>	Gets or sets the DatabaseKey connection property.
<a href="#">DatabaseName property</a>	Gets or sets the DatabaseName connection property.
<a href="#">DatabaseSwitches property</a>	Gets or sets the DatabaseSwitches connection property.
<a href="#">DisableMultiRowFetch property</a>	Gets or sets the DisableMultiRowFetch connection property.



<b>Member name</b>	<b>Description</b>
<a href="#">Elevate property</a>	Gets or sets the Elevate connection property.
<a href="#">EncryptedPassword property</a>	Gets or sets the EncryptedPassword connection property.
<a href="#">Encryption property</a>	Gets or sets the Encryption connection property.
<a href="#">Enlist property</a>	Gets or sets the Enlist connection property.
<a href="#">FileDataSourceName property</a>	Gets or sets the FileDataSourceName connection property.
<a href="#">ForceStart property</a>	Gets or sets the ForceStart connection property.
<a href="#">IdleTimeout property</a>	Gets or sets the IdleTimeout connection property.
<a href="#">Integrated property</a>	Gets or sets the Integrated connection property.
<a href="#">IsFixedSize</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets a value that indicates whether the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> has a fixed size.
<a href="#">IsReadOnly</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets a value that indicates whether the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> is read-only.
<a href="#">Item property</a> (inherited from <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilderBase</a> )	Gets or sets the value of the connection keyword.
<a href="#">Kerberos property</a>	Gets or sets the Kerberos connection property.
<a href="#">Keys property</a> (inherited from <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilderBase</a> )	Gets an <a href="#">System.Collections.ICollection</a> that contains the keys in the <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">Language property</a>	Gets or sets the Language connection property.
<a href="#">LazyClose property</a>	Gets or sets the LazyClose connection property.
<a href="#">LivenessTimeout property</a>	Gets or sets the LivenessTimeout connection property.
<a href="#">LogFile property</a>	Gets or sets the LogFile connection property.
<a href="#">MaxPoolSize property</a>	Gets or sets the MaxPoolSize connection property.
<a href="#">MinPoolSize property</a>	Gets or sets the MinPoolSize connection property.
<a href="#">NewPassword property</a>	Gets or sets the NewPassword connection property.
<a href="#">Password property</a>	Gets or sets the Password connection property.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">PersistSecurityInfo property</a>	Gets or sets the PersistSecurityInfo connection property.
<a href="#">Pooling property</a>	Gets or sets the Pooling connection property.
<a href="#">PrefetchBuffer property</a>	Gets or sets the PrefetchBuffer connection property.
<a href="#">PrefetchRows property</a>	Gets or sets the PrefetchRows connection property. The default value is 200.
<a href="#">RetryConnectionTimeout property</a>	Gets or sets the RetryConnectionTimeout property.
<a href="#">ServerName property</a>	Gets or sets the ServerName connection property.
<a href="#">StartLine property</a>	Gets or sets the StartLine connection property.
<a href="#">Unconditional property</a>	Gets or sets the Unconditional connection property.
<a href="#">UserID property</a>	Gets or sets the UserID connection property.
<a href="#">Values</a> (inherited from DbConnectionStringBuilder)	Gets an <a href="#">ICollection</a> that contains the values in the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> .

### Public methods

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Add</a> (inherited from DbConnectionStringBuilder)	Adds an entry with the specified key and value into the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">Clear</a> (inherited from DbConnectionStringBuilder)	Clears the contents of the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> instance.
<a href="#">ContainsKey method</a> (inherited from SAConnectionStringBuilderBase)	Determines whether the SAConnectionStringBuilder object contains a specific keyword.
<a href="#">EquivalentTo</a> (inherited from DbConnectionStringBuilder)	Compares the connection information in this <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> object with the connection information in the supplied object.
<a href="#">GetKeyword method</a> (inherited from SAConnectionStringBuilderBase)	Gets the keyword for specified SAConnectionStringBuilder property.
<a href="#">GetUseLongNameAsKeyword method</a> (inherited from SAConnectionStringBuilderBase)	Gets a boolean values that indicates whether long connection parameter names are used in the connection string.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Remove method</a> (inherited from SAConnectionStringBuilderBase)	Removes the entry with the specified key from the SAConnectionStringBuilder instance.
<a href="#">SetUseLongNameAsKeyword method</a> (inherited from SAConnectionStringBuilderBase)	Sets a boolean value that indicates whether long connection parameter names are used in the connection string. Long connection parameter names are used by default.
<a href="#">ShouldSerialize method</a> (inherited from SAConnectionStringBuilderBase)	Indicates whether the specified key exists in this SAConnectionStringBuilder instance.
<a href="#">ToString</a> (inherited from DbConnectionStringBuilder)	Returns the connection string associated with this <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">TryGetValue method</a> (inherited from SAConnectionStringBuilderBase)	Retrieves a value corresponding to the supplied key from this SAConnectionStringBuilder.

**See also**

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)

## SAConnectionStringBuilder constructors

Initializes a new instance of the [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#).

### SAConnectionStringBuilder() constructor

Initializes a new instance of the SAConnectionStringBuilder class.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New()
```

**C#**

```
public SAConnectionStringBuilder();
```

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The SAConnectionStringBuilder class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder constructors” on page 273](#)

## SAConnectionStringBuilder(String) constructor

Initializes a new instance of the SAConnectionStringBuilder class.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal connectionString As String _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public SAConnectionStringBuilder(  
    string connectionString  
);
```

### Parameters

- **connectionString** The basis for the object's internal connection information. Parsed into keyword=value pairs.

For a list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### Remarks

**Restrictions:** The SAConnectionStringBuilder class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### Example

The following statement initializes an SAConnection object for a connection to a database named policies running on a SQL Anywhere database server named hr. The connection uses the user ID admin and the password money.

```
SAConnectionStringBuilder conn = new  
SAConnectionStringBuilder("UID=admin;PWD=money;ENG=hr;DBN=policies");
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder constructors” on page 273](#)

## AppInfo property

Gets or sets the AppInfo connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **AppInfo** As String

#### C#

```
public string AppInfo { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## AutoStart property

Gets or sets the AutoStart connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **AutoStart** As String

#### C#

```
public string AutoStart { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## AutoStop property

Gets or sets the AutoStop connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **AutoStop** As String

#### C#

```
public string AutoStop { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## Charset property

Gets or sets the Charset connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **Charset** As String

#### C#

```
public string Charset { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## CommBufferSize property

Gets or sets the CommBufferSize connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **CommBufferSize** As Integer

#### C#

```
public int CommBufferSize { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## CommLinks property

Gets or sets the CommLinks property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **CommLinks** As String

### C#

```
public string CommLinks { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## Compress property

Gets or sets the Compress connection property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **Compress** As String

### C#

```
public string Compress { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## CompressionThreshold property

Gets or sets the CompressionThreshold connection property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **CompressionThreshold** As Integer

### C#

```
public int CompressionThreshold { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## ConnectionLifetime property

Gets or sets the ConnectionLifetime connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **ConnectionLifetime** As Integer

#### C#

```
public int ConnectionLifetime { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## ConnectionName property

Gets or sets the ConnectionName connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **ConnectionName** As String

#### C#

```
public string ConnectionName { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## ConnectionReset property

Gets or sets the ConnectionReset connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **ConnectionReset** As Boolean

#### C#

```
public bool ConnectionReset { get; set; }
```



**Property value**

A DataTable that contains schema information.

**See also**

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## ConnectionTimeout property

Gets or sets the ConnectionTimeout connection property.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Property **ConnectionTimeout** As Integer

**C#**

```
public int ConnectionTimeout { get; set; }
```

**Example**

The following statement displays the value of the ConnectionTimeout property.

```
MessageBox.Show( connString.ConnectionTimeout.ToString() );
```

**See also**

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## DataSourceName property

Gets or sets the DataSourceName connection property.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Property **DataSourceName** As String

**C#**

```
public string DataSourceName { get; set; }
```

**See also**

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## DatabaseFile property

Gets or sets the DatabaseFile connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **DatabaseFile** As String

#### C#

```
public string DatabaseFile { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## DatabaseKey property

Gets or sets the DatabaseKey connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **DatabaseKey** As String

#### C#

```
public string DatabaseKey { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## DatabaseName property

Gets or sets the DatabaseName connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **DatabaseName** As String

#### C#

```
public string DatabaseName { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## DatabaseSwitches property

Gets or sets the DatabaseSwitches connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **DatabaseSwitches** As String

#### C#

```
public string DatabaseSwitches { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## DisableMultiRowFetch property

Gets or sets the DisableMultiRowFetch connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **DisableMultiRowFetch** As String

#### C#

```
public string DisableMultiRowFetch { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## Elevate property

Gets or sets the Elevate connection property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **Elevate** As String

### C#

```
public string Elevate { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## EncryptedPassword property

Gets or sets the EncryptedPassword connection property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **EncryptedPassword** As String

### C#

```
public string EncryptedPassword { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## Encryption property

Gets or sets the Encryption connection property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **Encryption** As String

### C#

```
public string Encryption { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## Enlist property

Gets or sets the Enlist connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **Enlist** As Boolean

#### C#

```
public bool Enlist { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## FileDataSourceName property

Gets or sets the FileDataSourceName connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **FileDataSourceName** As String

#### C#

```
public string FileDataSourceName { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## ForceStart property

Gets or sets the ForceStart connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **ForceStart** As String

#### C#

```
public string ForceStart { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## IdleTimeout property

Gets or sets the IdleTimeout connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **IdleTimeout** As Integer

#### C#

```
public int IdleTimeout { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## Integrated property

Gets or sets the Integrated connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **Integrated** As String

#### C#

```
public string Integrated { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## Kerberos property

Gets or sets the Kerberos connection property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **Kerberos** As String

### C#

```
public string Kerberos { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## Language property

Gets or sets the Language connection property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **Language** As String

### C#

```
public string Language { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## LazyClose property

Gets or sets the LazyClose connection property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **LazyClose** As String

### C#

```
public string LazyClose { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## LivenessTimeout property

Gets or sets the LivenessTimeout connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **LivenessTimeout** As Integer

#### C#

```
public int LivenessTimeout { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## LogFile property

Gets or sets the LogFile connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **LogFile** As String

#### C#

```
public string LogFile { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## MaxPoolSize property

Gets or sets the MaxPoolSize connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **MaxPoolSize** As Integer

#### C#

```
public int MaxPoolSize { get; set; }
```



### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## MinPoolSize property

Gets or sets the MinPoolSize connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **MinPoolSize** As Integer

#### C#

```
public int MinPoolSize { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## NewPassword property

Gets or sets the NewPassword connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **NewPassword** As String

#### C#

```
public string NewPassword { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## Password property

Gets or sets the Password connection property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **Password** As String

### C#

```
public string Password { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## PersistSecurityInfo property

Gets or sets the PersistSecurityInfo connection property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **PersistSecurityInfo** As Boolean

### C#

```
public bool PersistSecurityInfo { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## Pooling property

Gets or sets the Pooling connection property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **Pooling** As Boolean

### C#

```
public bool Pooling { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## PrefetchBuffer property

Gets or sets the PrefetchBuffer connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **PrefetchBuffer** As Integer

#### C#

```
public int PrefetchBuffer { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## PrefetchRows property

Gets or sets the PrefetchRows connection property. The default value is 200.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **PrefetchRows** As Integer

#### C#

```
public int PrefetchRows { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## RetryConnectionTimeout property

Gets or sets the RetryConnectionTimeout property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **RetryConnectionTimeout** As Integer

#### C#

```
public int RetryConnectionTimeout { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## ServerName property

Gets or sets the ServerName connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **ServerName** As String

#### C#

```
public string ServerName { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## StartLine property

Gets or sets the StartLine connection property.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **StartLine** As String

#### C#

```
public string StartLine { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## Unconditional property

Gets or sets the Unconditional connection property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **Unconditional** As String

### C#

```
public string Unconditional { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## UserID property

Gets or sets the UserID connection property.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **UserID** As String

### C#

```
public string UserID { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder class” on page 269](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilder members” on page 269](#)

## SAConnectionStringBuilderBase class

Base class of the SAConnectionStringBuilder class. This class is abstract and so cannot be instantiated.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

MustInherit Public Class **SAConnectionStringBuilderBase**  
Inherits DbConnectionStringBuilder

### C#

```
public abstract class SAConnectionStringBuilderBase : DbConnectionStringBuilder
```

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase members” on page 292](#)

## SACConnectionStringBuilderBase members

### Public properties

Member name	Description
<a href="#">BrowsableConnectionString</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets or sets a value that indicates whether the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder.ConnectionString</a> is visible in Visual Studio designers.
<a href="#">ConnectionString</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets or sets the connection string associated with the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">Count</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets the current number of keys that are contained within the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder.ConnectionString</a> .
<a href="#">IsFixedSize</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets a value that indicates whether the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> has a fixed size.
<a href="#">IsReadOnly</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets a value that indicates whether the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> is read-only.
<a href="#">Item property</a>	Gets or sets the value of the connection keyword.
<a href="#">Keys property</a>	Gets an <a href="#">System.Collections.ICollection</a> that contains the keys in the <a href="#">SACConnectionStringBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">Values</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets an <a href="#">ICollection</a> that contains the values in the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> .

### Public methods

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Add</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Adds an entry with the specified key and value into the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">Clear</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Clears the contents of the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> instance.
<a href="#">ContainsKey method</a>	Determines whether the <a href="#">SACConnectionStringBuilder</a> object contains a specific keyword.
<a href="#">EquivalentTo</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Compares the connection information in this <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> object with the connection information in the supplied object.
<a href="#">GetKeyword method</a>	Gets the keyword for specified <a href="#">SACConnectionStringBuilder</a> property.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">GetUseLongNameAsKeyword method</a>	Gets a boolean values that indicates whether long connection parameter names are used in the connection string.
<a href="#">Remove method</a>	Removes the entry with the specified key from the SAConnection-StringBuilder instance.
<a href="#">SetUseLongNameAsKeyword method</a>	Sets a boolean value that indicates whether long connection parameter names are used in the connection string. Long connection parameter names are used by default.
<a href="#">ShouldSerialize method</a>	Indicates whether the specified key exists in this SAConnection-StringBuilder instance.
<a href="#">ToString</a> (inherited from DbConnectionStringBuilder)	Returns the connection string associated with this <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">TryGetValue method</a>	Retrieves a value corresponding to the supplied key from this SA-ConnectionStringBuilder.

**See also**

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase class” on page 291](#)

**Item property**

Gets or sets the value of the connection keyword.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Default Property Item ( _
    ByVal keyword As String _
) As Object
```

**C#**

```
public override object this [
    string keyword
] { get; set; }
```

**Parameters**

- **keyword** The name of the connection keyword.

**Property value**

An object representing the value of the specified connection keyword.

## Remarks

If the keyword or type is invalid, an exception is raised. keyword is case insensitive.

When setting the value, passing NULL clears the value.

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase class” on page 291](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase members” on page 292](#)

## Keys property

Gets an System.Collections.ICollection that contains the keys in the SAConnectionStringBuilder.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Readonly Property **Keys** As ICollection

#### C#

```
public override ICollection Keys { get;}
```

### Property value

An System.Collections.ICollection that contains the keys in the SAConnectionStringBuilder.

## See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase class” on page 291](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase members” on page 292](#)

## ContainsKey method

Determines whether the SAConnectionStringBuilder object contains a specific keyword.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function ContainsKey( _  
    ByVal keyword As String _  
) As Boolean
```

#### C#

```
public override bool ContainsKey(  
    string keyword  
);
```



**Parameters**

- **keyword** The keyword to locate in the SAConnectionStringBuilder.

**Return value**

True if the value associated with keyword has been set; otherwise, false.

**Example**

The following statement determines whether the SAConnectionStringBuilder object contains the UserID keyword.

```
connectString.ContainsKey("UserID")
```

**See also**

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase class” on page 291](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase members” on page 292](#)

## GetKeyword method

Gets the keyword for specified SAConnectionStringBuilder property.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Function GetKeyword( _  
    ByVal propName As String _  
) As String
```

**C#**

```
public string GetKeyword(  
    string propName  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **propName** The name of the SAConnectionStringBuilder property.

**Return value**

The keyword for specified SAConnectionStringBuilder property.

**See also**

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase class” on page 291](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase members” on page 292](#)

## GetUseLongNameAsKeyword method

Gets a boolean values that indicates whether long connection parameter names are used in the connection string.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Function **GetUseLongNameAsKeyword()** As Boolean

#### C#

public bool **GetUseLongNameAsKeyword()**;

### Return value

True if long connection parameter names are used to build connection strings; otherwise, false.

### Remarks

SQL Anywhere connection parameters have both long and short forms of their names. For example, to specify the name of an ODBC data source in your connection string, you can use either of the following values: DataSourceName or DSN. By default, long connection parameter names are used to build connection strings.

### See also

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase class” on page 291](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase members” on page 292](#)
- [“SetUseLongNameAsKeyword method” on page 297](#)

## Remove method

Removes the entry with the specified key from the SAConnectionStringBuilder instance.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Function **Remove**( \_  
    ByVal *keyword* As String \_  
) As Boolean

#### C#

public override bool **Remove**(  
    string *keyword*  
);

### Parameters

- **keyword** The key of the key/value pair to be removed from the connection string in this SAConnectionStringBuilder.

**Return value**

True if the key existed within the connection string and was removed; false if the key did not exist.

**See also**

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase class” on page 291](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase members” on page 292](#)

## SetUseLongNameAsKeyword method

Sets a boolean value that indicates whether long connection parameter names are used in the connection string. Long connection parameter names are used by default.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub SetUseLongNameAsKeyword( _  
    ByVal useLongNameAsKeyword As Boolean _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public void SetUseLongNameAsKeyword(  
    bool useLongNameAsKeyword  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **useLongNameAsKeyword** A boolean value that indicates whether the long connection parameter name is used in the connection string.

**See also**

- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase class” on page 291](#)
- [“SAConnectionStringBuilderBase members” on page 292](#)
- [“GetUseLongNameAsKeyword method” on page 296](#)

## ShouldSerialize method

Indicates whether the specified key exists in this SAConnectionStringBuilder instance.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Function ShouldSerialize( _  
    ByVal keyword As String _  
) As Boolean
```

**C#**

```
public override bool ShouldSerialize(  
    string keyword  
);
```

### Parameters

- **keyword** The key to locate in the `SACConnectionStringBuilder`.

### Return value

True if the `SACConnectionStringBuilder` contains an entry with the specified key; otherwise false.

### See also

- [“SACConnectionStringBuilderBase class” on page 291](#)
- [“SACConnectionStringBuilderBase members” on page 292](#)

## TryGetValue method

Retrieves a value corresponding to the supplied key from this `SACConnectionStringBuilder`.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function TryGetValue( _  
    ByVal keyword As String, _  
    ByVal value As Object _  
    ) As Boolean
```

#### C#

```
public override bool TryGetValue(  
    string keyword,  
    object value  
);
```

### Parameters

- **keyword** The key of the item to retrieve.
- **value** The value corresponding to keyword.

### Return value

true if keyword was found within the connection string; otherwise false.

### See also

- [“SACConnectionStringBuilderBase class” on page 291](#)
- [“SACConnectionStringBuilderBase members” on page 292](#)

## SDataAdapter class

Represents a set of commands and a database connection used to fill a [DataSet](#) and to update a database. This class cannot be inherited.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public NotInheritable Class **SDataAdapter**  
Inherits DbDataAdapter

#### C#

public sealed class **SDataAdapter** : DbDataAdapter

### Remarks

The [DataSet](#) provides a way to work with data offline. The SDataAdapter provides methods to associate a DataSet with a set of SQL statements.

**Implements:** [IDbDataAdapter](#), [IDataAdapter](#), [ICloneable](#)

For more information, see “[Using the SDataAdapter object to access and manipulate data](#)” on page 123 and “[Accessing and manipulating data](#)” on page 117.

### See also

- “[SDataAdapter members](#)” on page 299

## SDataAdapter members

### Public constructors

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SDataAdapter constructors</a>	Initializes a new instance of the “ <a href="#">SDataAdapter class</a> ” on page 299.

### Public properties

Member name	Description
<a href="#">AcceptChangesDuringFill</a> (inherited from DataAdapter)	Gets or sets a value indicating whether <a href="#">DataRow.AcceptChanges</a> is called on a <a href="#">DataRow</a> after it is added to the <a href="#">DataTable</a> during any of the Fill operations.
<a href="#">AcceptChangesDuringUpdate</a> (inherited from DataAdapter)	Gets or sets whether <a href="#">DataRow.AcceptChanges</a> is called during a <a href="#">DataAdapter.Update</a> .

Member name	Description
<a href="#">ContinueUpdateOnError</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DataAdapter</a> )	Gets or sets a value that specifies whether to generate an exception when an error is encountered during a row update.
<a href="#">DeleteCommand</a> property	Specifies an <a href="#">SACommand</a> object that is executed against the database when the <a href="#">Update</a> method is called to delete rows in the database that correspond to deleted rows in the <a href="#">DataSet</a> .
<a href="#">FillLoadOption</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DataAdapter</a> )	Gets or sets the <a href="#">LoadOption</a> that determines how the adapter fills the <a href="#">DataTable</a> from the <a href="#">DbDataReader</a> .
<a href="#">InsertCommand</a> property	Specifies an <a href="#">SACommand</a> that is executed against the database when the <a href="#">Update</a> method is called that adds rows to the database to correspond to rows that were inserted in the <a href="#">DataSet</a> .
<a href="#">MissingMappingAction</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DataAdapter</a> )	Determines the action to take when incoming data does not have a matching table or column.
<a href="#">MissingSchemaAction</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DataAdapter</a> )	Determines the action to take when existing <a href="#">DataSet</a> schema does not match incoming data.
<a href="#">ReturnProviderSpecificTypes</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DataAdapter</a> )	Gets or sets whether the <a href="#">Fill</a> method should return provider-specific values or common CLS-compliant values.
<a href="#">SelectCommand</a> property	Specifies an <a href="#">SACommand</a> that is used during <a href="#">Fill</a> or <a href="#">FillSchema</a> to obtain a result set from the database for copying into a <a href="#">DataSet</a> .
<a href="#">TableMappings</a> property	Specifies a collection that provides the master mapping between a source table and a <a href="#">DataTable</a> .
<a href="#">UpdateBatchSize</a> property	Gets or sets the number of rows that are processed in each round-trip to the server.
<a href="#">UpdateCommand</a> property	Specifies an <a href="#">SACommand</a> that is executed against the database when the <a href="#">Update</a> method is called to update rows in the database that correspond to updated rows in the <a href="#">DataSet</a> .

### Public methods

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Fill</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbDataAdapter</a> )	Adds or refreshes rows in the <a href="#">DataSet</a> .
<a href="#">FillSchema</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbDataAdapter</a> )	Adds a <a href="#">DataTable</a> named "Table" to the specified <a href="#">DataSet</a> and configures the schema to match that in the data source based on the specified <a href="#">SchemaType</a> .

Member name	Description
<a href="#">GetFillParameters method</a>	Returns the parameters set by you when executing a SELECT statement.
<a href="#">ResetFillLoadOption</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DataAdapter</a> )	Resets <a href="#">DataAdapter.FillLoadOption</a> to its default state and causes <a href="#">DataAdapter.Fill</a> to honor <a href="#">DataAdapter.AcceptChangesDuringFill</a> .
<a href="#">ShouldSerializeAcceptChangesDuringFill</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DataAdapter</a> )	Determines whether the <a href="#">DataAdapter.AcceptChangesDuringFill</a> should be persisted.
<a href="#">ShouldSerializeFillLoadOption</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DataAdapter</a> )	Determines whether the <a href="#">DataAdapter.FillLoadOption</a> should be persisted.
<a href="#">Update</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbDataAdapter</a> )	Calls the respective INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE statements for each inserted, updated, or deleted row in the specified array of <a href="#">DataRow</a> objects.

### Public events

Member name	Description
<a href="#">FillError</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DataAdapter</a> )	Returned when an error occurs during a fill operation.
<a href="#">RowUpdated event</a>	Occurs during an update after a command is executed against the data source. When an attempt to update is made, the event fires.
<a href="#">RowUpdating event</a>	Occurs during an update before a command is executed against the data source. When an attempt to update is made, the event fires.

### See also

- [“SADDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)

## SADDataAdapter constructors

Initializes a new instance of the [“SADDataAdapter class” on page 299](#).

### SADDataAdapter() constructor

Initializes an SADDataAdapter object.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New()
```

### C#

```
public SDataAdapter();
```

## See also

- [“SDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“SDataAdapter members” on page 299](#)
- [“SDataAdapter constructors” on page 301](#)
- [“SDataAdapter\(SACommand\) constructor” on page 302](#)
- [“SDataAdapter\(String, SAConnection\) constructor” on page 303](#)
- [“SDataAdapter\(String, String\) constructor” on page 303](#)

## SDataAdapter(SACommand) constructor

Initializes an SDataAdapter object with the specified SELECT statement.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal selectCommand As SACommand _  
)
```

### C#

```
public SDataAdapter(  
    SACommand selectCommand  
);
```

## Parameters

- **selectCommand** An SACommand object that is used during [DbDataAdapter.Fill](#) to select records from the data source for placement in the [DataSet](#).

## See also

- [“SDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“SDataAdapter members” on page 299](#)
- [“SDataAdapter constructors” on page 301](#)
- [“SDataAdapter\(\) constructor” on page 301](#)
- [“SDataAdapter\(String, SAConnection\) constructor” on page 303](#)
- [“SDataAdapter\(String, String\) constructor” on page 303](#)



## SADDataAdapter(String, SAConnection) constructor

Initializes an SADDataAdapter object with the specified SELECT statement and connection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal selectCommandText As String, _  
    ByVal selectConnection As SAConnection _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public SADDataAdapter(  
    string selectCommandText,  
    SAConnection selectConnection  
);
```

### Parameters

- **selectCommandText** A SELECT statement to be used to set the SADDataAdapter.SelectCommand property of the SADDataAdapter object.
- **selectConnection** An SAConnection object that defines a connection to a database.

### See also

- [“SADDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“SADDataAdapter members” on page 299](#)
- [“SADDataAdapter constructors” on page 301](#)
- [“SADDataAdapter\(\) constructor” on page 301](#)
- [“SADDataAdapter\(SACommand\) constructor” on page 302](#)
- [“SADDataAdapter\(String, String\) constructor” on page 303](#)
- [“SelectCommand property” on page 305](#)
- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)

## SADDataAdapter(String, String) constructor

Initializes an SADDataAdapter object with the specified SELECT statement and connection string.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal selectCommandText As String, _  
    ByVal selectConnectionString As String _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public SADDataAdapter(
```

```
string selectCommandText,  
string selectConnectionString  
);
```

### Parameters

- **selectCommandText** A SELECT statement to be used to set the `SDataAdapter.SelectCommand` property of the `SDataAdapter` object.
- **selectConnectionString** A connection string for a SQL Anywhere database.

### See also

- [“SDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“SDataAdapter members” on page 299](#)
- [“SDataAdapter constructors” on page 301](#)
- [“SDataAdapter\(\) constructor” on page 301](#)
- [“SDataAdapter\(SACommand\) constructor” on page 302](#)
- [“SDataAdapter\(String, SAConnection\) constructor” on page 303](#)
- [“SelectCommand property” on page 305](#)

## DeleteCommand property

Specifies an `SACommand` object that is executed against the database when the `Update` method is called to delete rows in the database that correspond to deleted rows in the `DataSet`.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Property DeleteCommand As SACommand
```

#### C#

```
public SACommand DeleteCommand { get; set; }
```

### Remarks

If this property is not set and primary key information is present in the `DataSet` during `Update`, `DeleteCommand` can be generated automatically by setting `SelectCommand` and using the `SACommandBuilder`. In that case, the `SACommandBuilder` generates any additional commands that you do not set. This generation logic requires key column information to be present in the `SelectCommand`.

When `DeleteCommand` is assigned to an existing `SACommand` object, the `SACommand` object is not cloned. The `DeleteCommand` maintains a reference to the existing `SACommand`.

### See also

- [“SDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“SDataAdapter members” on page 299](#)
- [“SelectCommand property” on page 305](#)

## InsertCommand property

Specifies an SACommand that is executed against the database when the Update method is called that adds rows to the database to correspond to rows that were inserted in the DataSet.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **InsertCommand** As SACommand

#### C#

```
public SACommand InsertCommand { get; set; }
```

### Remarks

The SACommandBuilder does not require key columns to generate InsertCommand.

When InsertCommand is assigned to an existing SACommand object, the SACommand is not cloned. The InsertCommand maintains a reference to the existing SACommand.

If this command returns rows, the rows may be added to the DataSet depending on how you set the UpdatedRowSource property of the SACommand object.

### See also

- [“SADDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“SADDataAdapter members” on page 299](#)

## SelectCommand property

Specifies an SACommand that is used during Fill or FillSchema to obtain a result set from the database for copying into a DataSet.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **SelectCommand** As SACommand

#### C#

```
public SACommand SelectCommand { get; set; }
```

### Remarks

When SelectCommand is assigned to a previously-created SACommand, the SACommand is not cloned. The SelectCommand maintains a reference to the previously-created SACommand object.

If the SelectCommand does not return any rows, no tables are added to the DataSet, and no exception is raised.

The SELECT statement can also be specified in the SADDataAdapter constructor.

### See also

- [“SADDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“SADDataAdapter members” on page 299](#)

## TableMappings property

Specifies a collection that provides the master mapping between a source table and a DataTable.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Readonly Property **TableMappings** As DataTableMappingCollection

#### C#

```
public DataTableMappingCollection TableMappings { get; }
```

### Remarks

The default value is an empty collection.

When reconciling changes, the SADDataAdapter uses the DataTableMappingCollection collection to associate the column names used by the data source with the column names used by the DataSet.

**Restrictions:** The TableMappings property is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SADDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“SADDataAdapter members” on page 299](#)

## UpdateBatchSize property

Gets or sets the number of rows that are processed in each round-trip to the server.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Property **UpdateBatchSize** As Integer

#### C#

```
public override int UpdateBatchSize { get; set; }
```

### Remarks

The default value is 1.

Setting the value to something greater than 1 causes SADDataAdapter.Update to execute all the insert statements in batches. The deletions and updates are executed sequentially as before, but insertions are

executed afterward in batches of size equal to the value of UpdateBatchSize. Setting the value to 0 causes Update to send the insert statements in a single batch.

Setting the value to something greater than 1 causes SAdapter.Fill to execute all the insert statements in batches. The deletions and updates are executed sequentially as before, but insertions are executed afterward in batches of size equal to the value of UpdateBatchSize.

Setting the value to 0 causes Fill to send the insert statements in a single batch.

Setting it less than 0 is an error.

If UpdateBatchSize is set to something other than one, and the InsertCommand property is set to something that is not an INSERT statement, then an exception is thrown when calling Fill.

This behavior is different from SqlDataAdapter. It batches all types of commands.

### See also

- [“SAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“SAdapter members” on page 299](#)

## UpdateCommand property

Specifies an SACommand that is executed against the database when the Update method is called to update rows in the database that correspond to updated rows in the DataSet.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Property UpdateCommand As SACommand
```

#### C#

```
public SACommand UpdateCommand { get; set; }
```

### Remarks

During Update, if this property is not set and primary key information is present in the SelectCommand, the UpdateCommand can be generated automatically if you set the SelectCommand property and use the SACommandBuilder. Then, any additional commands that you do not set are generated by the SACommandBuilder. This generation logic requires key column information to be present in the SelectCommand.

When UpdateCommand is assigned to a previously-created SACommand, the SACommand is not cloned. The UpdateCommand maintains a reference to the previously-created SACommand object.

If execution of this command returns rows, these rows can be merged with the DataSet depending on how you set the UpdatedRowSource property of the SACommand object.

### See also

- [“SAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“SAdapter members” on page 299](#)

## GetFillParameters method

Returns the parameters set by you when executing a SELECT statement.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Function **GetFillParameters()** As SAParameter

#### C#

public SAParameter **GetFillParameters()**;

### Return value

An array of IDataParameter objects that contains the parameters set by the user.

### See also

- [“SADDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“SADDataAdapter members” on page 299](#)

## RowUpdated event

Occurs during an update after a command is executed against the data source. When an attempt to update is made, the event fires.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Event **RowUpdated** As SARowUpdatedEventHandler

#### C#

public event SARowUpdatedEventHandler **RowUpdated** ;

### Remarks

The event handler receives an argument of type SARowUpdatedEventArgs containing data related to this event.

For more information, see the .NET Framework documentation for OleDbDataAdapter.RowUpdated Event.

### Event data

- **Command** Gets the SACommand that is executed when [DataAdapter.Update](#) is called.
- **RecordsAffected** Returns the number of rows changed, inserted, or deleted by execution of the SQL statement.
- **Command** Gets the IDbCommand executed when [DbDataAdapter.Update](#) is called.

- **Errors** Gets any errors generated by the .NET Framework data provider when the [RowUpdatedEventArgs.Command](#) was executed.
- **Row** Gets the [DataRow](#) sent through an [DbDataAdapter.Update](#).
- **RowCount** Gets the number of rows processed in a batch of updated records.
- **StatementType** Gets the type of SQL statement executed.
- **Status** Gets the [UpdateStatus](#) of the [RowUpdatedEventArgs.Command](#).
- **TableMapping** Gets the [DataTableMapping](#) sent through an [DbDataAdapter.Update](#).

#### See also

- [“SADDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“SADDataAdapter members” on page 299](#)

## RowUpdating event

Occurs during an update before a command is executed against the data source. When an attempt to update is made, the event fires.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Event RowUpdating As SARowUpdatingEventHandler
```

##### C#

```
public event SARowUpdatingEventHandler RowUpdating ;
```

#### Remarks

The event handler receives an argument of type [SARowUpdatingEventArgs](#) containing data related to this event.

For more information, see the .NET Framework documentation for [OleDbDataAdapter.RowUpdating Event](#).

#### Event data

- **Command** Specifies the [SACCommand](#) to execute when performing the Update.
- **Command** Gets the [IDbCommand](#) to execute during the [DbDataAdapter.Update](#) operation.
- **Errors** Gets any errors generated by the .NET Framework data provider when the [RowUpdatedEventArgs.Command](#) executes.
- **Row** Gets the [DataRow](#) that will be sent to the server as part of an insert, update, or delete operation.
- **StatementType** Gets the type of SQL statement to execute.
- **Status** Gets or sets the [UpdateStatus](#) of the [RowUpdatedEventArgs.Command](#).
- **TableMapping** Gets the [DataTableMapping](#) to send through the [DbDataAdapter.Update](#).

### See also

- [“SDataAdapter class” on page 299](#)
- [“SDataAdapter members” on page 299](#)

## SADaReader class

A read-only, forward-only result set from a query or stored procedure. This class cannot be inherited.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public NotInheritable Class **SADaReader**  
Inherits DbDataReader  
Implements IListSource

#### C#

```
public sealed class SADaReader : DbDataReader,  
IListSource
```

### Remarks

There is no constructor for SADaReader. To get an SADaReader object, execute an SACommand:

```
SACommand cmd = new SACommand(  
    "SELECT EmployeeID FROM Employees", conn );  
SADaReader reader = cmd.ExecuteReader();
```

You can only move forward through an SADaReader. If you need a more flexible object to manipulate results, use an SDataAdapter.

The SADaReader retrieves rows as needed, whereas the SDataAdapter must retrieve all rows of a result set before you can carry out any action on the object. For large result sets, this difference gives the SADaReader a much faster response time.

**Implements:** [IDataReader](#), [IDisposable](#), [IDataRecord](#), [IListSource](#)

For more information, see [“Accessing and manipulating data” on page 117](#).

### See also

- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“ExecuteReader\(\) method” on page 226](#)



## SADataReader members

### Public properties

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Depth property</a>	Gets a value indicating the depth of nesting for the current row. The outermost table has a depth of zero.
<a href="#">FieldCount property</a>	Gets the number of columns in the result set.
<a href="#">HasRows property</a>	Gets a value that indicates whether the SADataReader contains one or more rows.
<a href="#">IsClosed property</a>	Gets a values that indicates whether the SADataReader is closed.
<a href="#">Item properties</a>	Returns the value of a column in its native format. In C#, this property is the indexer for the SADataReader class.
<a href="#">RecordsAffected property</a>	The number of rows changed, inserted, or deleted by execution of the SQL statement.
<a href="#">VisibleFieldCount</a> (inherited from DbDataReader)	Gets the number of fields in the <a href="#">DbDataReader</a> that are not hidden.

### Public methods

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Close method</a>	Closes the SADataReader.
<a href="#">Dispose</a> (inherited from DbDataReader)	Releases all resources used by the current instance of the <a href="#">DbDataReader</a> .
<a href="#">GetBoolean method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a Boolean.
<a href="#">GetByte method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a Byte.
<a href="#">GetBytes method</a>	Reads a stream of bytes from the specified column offset into the buffer as an array, starting at the given buffer offset.
<a href="#">GetChar method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a character.
<a href="#">GetChars method</a>	Reads a stream of characters from the specified column offset into the buffer as an array starting at the given buffer offset.
<a href="#">GetData method</a>	This method is not supported. When called, it throws an <a href="#">InvalidOperationException</a> .

Member name	Description
<a href="#">GetDataTypeName method</a>	Returns the name of the source data type.
<a href="#">GetDateTime method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a DateTime object.
<a href="#">GetDecimal method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a Decimal object.
<a href="#">GetDouble method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a double-precision floating point number.
<a href="#">GetEnumerator method</a>	Returns a <a href="#">IEnumerator</a> that iterates through the SADataReader object.
<a href="#">GetFieldType method</a>	Returns the Type that is the data type of the object.
<a href="#">GetFloat method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a single-precision floating point number.
<a href="#">GetGuid method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a global unique identifier (GUID).
<a href="#">GetInt16 method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a 16-bit signed integer.
<a href="#">GetInt32 method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a 32-bit signed integer.
<a href="#">GetInt64 method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a 64-bit signed integer.
<a href="#">GetName method</a>	Returns the name of the specified column.
<a href="#">GetOrdinal method</a>	Returns the column ordinal, given the column name.
<a href="#">GetProviderSpecificFieldType</a> (inherited from DbDataReader)	Returns the provider-specific field type of the specified column.
<a href="#">GetProviderSpecificValue</a> (inherited from DbDataReader)	Gets the value of the specified column as an instance of <a href="#">Object</a> .
<a href="#">GetProviderSpecificValues</a> (inherited from DbDataReader)	Gets all provider-specific attribute columns in the collection for the current row.
<a href="#">GetSchemaTable method</a>	Returns a DataTable that describes the column metadata of the SADataReader.
<a href="#">GetString method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a string.
<a href="#">GetTimeSpan method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a TimeSpan object.
<a href="#">GetUInt16 method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a 16-bit unsigned integer.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">GetUInt32 method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a 32-bit unsigned integer.
<a href="#">GetUInt64 method</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as a 64-bit unsigned integer.
<a href="#">GetValue methods</a>	Returns the value of the specified column as an Object.
<a href="#">GetValues method</a>	Gets all the columns in the current row.
<a href="#">IsDBNull method</a>	Returns a value indicating whether the column contains NULL values.
<a href="#">NextResult method</a>	Advances the SADATAReader to the next result, when reading the results of batch SQL statements.
<a href="#">Read method</a>	Reads the next row of the result set and moves the SADATAReader to that row.
<a href="#">myDispose method</a>	Frees the resources associated with the object.

**See also**

- [“SADATAReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“ExecuteReader\(\) method” on page 226](#)

## Depth property

Gets a value indicating the depth of nesting for the current row. The outermost table has a depth of zero.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Overrides ReadOnly Property **Depth** As Integer

**C#**

```
public override int Depth { get; }
```

**Property value**

The depth of nesting for the current row.

**See also**

- [“SADATAReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADATAReader members” on page 311](#)

## FieldCount property

Gets the number of columns in the result set.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Readonly Property **FieldCount** As Integer

#### C#

```
public override int FieldCount { get;}
```

### Property value

The number of columns in the current record.

### See also

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)

## HasRows property

Gets a value that indicates whether the SADaReader contains one or more rows.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Readonly Property **HasRows** As Boolean

#### C#

```
public override bool HasRows { get;}
```

### Property value

True if the SADaReader contains one or more rows; otherwise, false.

### See also

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)

## IsClosed property

Gets a values that indicates whether the SADaReader is closed.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Overrides Readonly Property **IsClosed** As Boolean

**C#**

```
public override bool IsClosed { get;}
```

**Property value**

True if the `SADataReader` is closed; otherwise, false.

**Remarks**

`IsClosed` and `RecordsAffected` are the only properties that you can call after the `SADataReader` is closed.

**See also**

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)

## Item properties

Returns the value of a column in its native format. In C#, this property is the indexer for the `SADataReader` class.

### Item(Int32) property

Returns the value of a column in its native format. In C#, this property is the indexer for the `SADataReader` class.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Default Readonly Property Item ( _  
    ByVal index As Integer _  
) As Object
```

**C#**

```
public override object this [  
    int index  
] { get;}
```

**Parameters**

- **index** The column ordinal.

**See also**

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“Item properties” on page 315](#)

**Item(String) property**

Returns the value of a column in its native format. In C#, this property is the indexer for the SADaReader class.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Default Readonly Property Item ( _  
    ByVal name As String _  
) As Object
```

**C#**

```
public override object this [  
    string name  
] { get;}
```

**Parameters**

- **name** The column name.

**See also**

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“Item properties” on page 315](#)

**RecordsAffected property**

The number of rows changed, inserted, or deleted by execution of the SQL statement.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Readonly Property RecordsAffected As Integer
```

**C#**

```
public override int RecordsAffected { get;}
```

**Property value**

The number of rows changed, inserted, or deleted. This is 0 if no rows were affected or the statement failed, or -1 for SELECT statements.

## Remarks

The number of rows changed, inserted, or deleted. The value is 0 if no rows were affected or the statement failed, and -1 for SELECT statements.

The value of this property is cumulative. For example, if two records are inserted in batch mode, the value of RecordsAffected will be two.

IsClosed and RecordsAffected are the only properties that you can call after the SDataReader is closed.

## See also

- [“SDataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SDataReader members” on page 311](#)

## Close method

Closes the SDataReader.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Sub Close()
```

#### C#

```
public override void Close();
```

### Remarks

You must explicitly call the Close method when you are finished using the SDataReader.

When running in autocommit mode, a COMMIT is issued as a side effect of closing the SDataReader.

## See also

- [“SDataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SDataReader members” on page 311](#)

## GetBoolean method

Returns the value of the specified column as a Boolean.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetBoolean( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As Boolean
```

#### C#

```
public override bool GetBoolean(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

### Parameters

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

### Return value

The value of the column.

### Remarks

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a Boolean.

### See also

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“GetOrdinal method” on page 330](#)
- [“GetFieldType method” on page 325](#)

## GetByte method

Returns the value of the specified column as a Byte.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetByte( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As Byte
```

#### C#

```
public override byte GetByte(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

### Parameters

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

### Return value

The value of the column.

### Remarks

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a byte.



**See also**

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)

## GetBytes method

Reads a stream of bytes from the specified column offset into the buffer as an array, starting at the given buffer offset.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Function GetBytes( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer, _  
    ByVal dataIndex As Long, _  
    ByVal buffer As Byte(), _  
    ByVal bufferIndex As Integer, _  
    ByVal length As Integer _  
    ) As Long
```

**C#**

```
public override long GetBytes(  
    int ordinal,  
    long dataIndex,  
    byte[] buffer,  
    int bufferIndex,  
    int length  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.
- **dataIndex** The index within the column value from which to read bytes.
- **buffer** An array in which to store the data.
- **bufferIndex** The index in the array to start copying data.
- **length** The maximum length to copy into the specified buffer.

**Return value**

The number of bytes read.

**Remarks**

GetBytes returns the number of available bytes in the field. In most cases this is the exact length of the field. However, the number returned may be less than the true length of the field if GetBytes has already been used to obtain bytes from the field. This may be the case, for example, when the SADaReader is reading a large data structure into a buffer.

If you pass a buffer that is a null reference (Nothing in Visual Basic), GetBytes returns the length of the field in bytes.

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a byte array.

#### See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)

## GetChar method

Returns the value of the specified column as a character.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetChar( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As Char
```

##### C#

```
public override char GetChar(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

#### Parameters

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

#### Return value

The value of the column.

#### Remarks

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a character.

Call the SADataReader.IsDBNull method to check for null values before calling this method.

#### See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“IsDBNull method” on page 339](#)
- [“IsDBNull method” on page 339](#)

## GetChars method

Reads a stream of characters from the specified column offset into the buffer as an array starting at the given buffer offset.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetChars( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer, _  
    ByVal dataIndex As Long, _  
    ByVal buffer As Char(), _  
    ByVal bufferIndex As Integer, _  
    ByVal length As Integer _  
    ) As Long
```

#### C#

```
public override long GetChars(  
    int ordinal,  
    long dataIndex,  
    char[] buffer,  
    int bufferIndex,  
    int length  
);
```

### Parameters

- **ordinal** The zero-based column ordinal.
- **dataIndex** The index within the row from which to begin the read operation.
- **buffer** The buffer into which to copy data.
- **bufferIndex** The index for buffer to begin the read operation.
- **length** The number of characters to read.

### Return value

The actual number of characters read.

### Remarks

GetChars returns the number of available characters in the field. In most cases this is the exact length of the field. However, the number returned may be less than the true length of the field if GetChars has already been used to obtain characters from the field. This may be the case, for example, when the `SADataReader` is reading a large data structure into a buffer.

If you pass a buffer that is a null reference (Nothing in Visual Basic), GetChars returns the length of the field in characters.

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a character array.

For information about handling BLOBs, see [“Handling BLOBs” on page 132](#).

### See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)

## GetData method

This method is not supported. When called, it throws an `InvalidOperationException`.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function GetData( _  
    ByVal i As Integer _  
) As IDataReader
```

#### C#

```
public IDataReader GetData(  
    int i  
);
```

### See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)
- [InvalidOperationException](#)

## GetDataTypeName method

Returns the name of the source data type.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetDataTypeName( _  
    ByVal index As Integer _  
) As String
```

#### C#

```
public override string GetDataTypeName(  
    int index  
);
```

### Parameters

- **index** The zero-based column ordinal.

**Return value**

The name of the back-end data type.

**See also**

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)

## GetDateTime method

Returns the value of the specified column as a DateTime object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Function GetDateTime( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As Date
```

**C#**

```
public override DateTime GetDateTime(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **ordinal** The zero-based column ordinal.

**Return value**

The value of the specified column.

**Remarks**

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a DateTime object.

Call the SADaReader.IsDBNull method to check for null values before calling this method.

**See also**

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“IsDBNull method” on page 339](#)

## GetDecimal method

Returns the value of the specified column as a Decimal object.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetDecimal( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As Decimal
```

### C#

```
public override decimal GetDecimal(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

## Parameters

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

## Return value

The value of the specified column.

## Remarks

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a Decimal object.

Call the `SADataReader.IsDBNull` method to check for null values before calling this method.

## See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“IsDBNull method” on page 339](#)

## GetDouble method

Returns the value of the specified column as a double-precision floating point number.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetDouble( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As Double
```

### C#

```
public override double GetDouble(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

### Parameters

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

### Return value

The value of the specified column.

### Remarks

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a double-precision floating point number.

Call the `SADataReader.IsDBNull` method to check for null values before calling this method.

### See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“IsDBNull method” on page 339](#)

## GetEnumerator method

Returns a [IEnumerator](#) that iterates through the `SADataReader` object.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Function **GetEnumerator()** As IEnumerator

#### C#

```
public override IEnumerator GetEnumerator();
```

### Return value

A [IEnumerator](#) for the `SADataReader` object.

### See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)

## GetFieldType method

Returns the `Type` that is the data type of the object.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetFieldType( _  
    ByVal index As Integer _  
) As Type
```

### C#

```
public override Type GetFieldType(  
    int index  
);
```

## Parameters

- **index** The zero-based column ordinal.

## Return value

The type that is the data type of the object.

## See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)

## GetFloat method

Returns the value of the specified column as a single-precision floating point number.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetFloat( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As Single
```

### C#

```
public override float GetFloat(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

## Parameters

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

## Return value

The value of the specified column.



**Remarks**

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a single-precision floating point number.  
Call the `SADataReader.IsDBNull` method to check for null values before calling this method.

**See also**

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“IsDBNull method” on page 339](#)

## GetGuid method

Returns the value of the specified column as a global unique identifier (GUID).

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Function GetGuid( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As Guid
```

**C#**

```
public override Guid GetGuid(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

**Return value**

The value of the specified column.

**Remarks**

The data retrieved must already be a globally-unique identifier or binary(16).  
Call the `SADataReader.IsDBNull` method to check for null values before calling this method.

**See also**

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“IsDBNull method” on page 339](#)

## GetInt16 method

Returns the value of the specified column as a 16-bit signed integer.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetInt16( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As Short
```

#### C#

```
public override short GetInt16(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

### Parameters

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

### Return value

The value of the specified column.

### Remarks

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a 16-bit signed integer.

### See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)

## GetInt32 method

Returns the value of the specified column as a 32-bit signed integer.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetInt32( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As Integer
```

#### C#

```
public override int GetInt32(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

**Return value**

The value of the specified column.

**Remarks**

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a 32-bit signed integer.

**See also**

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)

## GetInt64 method

Returns the value of the specified column as a 64-bit signed integer.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Function GetInt64( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As Long
```

**C#**

```
public override long GetInt64(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

**Return value**

The value of the specified column.

**Remarks**

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a 64-bit signed integer.

**See also**

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)

## GetName method

Returns the name of the specified column.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetName( _  
    ByVal index As Integer _  
) As String
```

#### C#

```
public override string GetName(  
    int index  
);
```

### Parameters

- **index** The zero-based index of the column.

### Return value

The name of the specified column.

### See also

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)

## GetOrdinal method

Returns the column ordinal, given the column name.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetOrdinal( _  
    ByVal name As String _  
) As Integer
```

#### C#

```
public override int GetOrdinal(  
    string name  
);
```

### Parameters

- **name** The column name.

**Return value**

The zero-based column ordinal.

**Remarks**

GetOrdinal performs a case-sensitive lookup first. If it fails, a second case-insensitive search is made.

GetOrdinal is Japanese kana-width insensitive.

Because ordinal-based lookups are more efficient than named lookups, it is inefficient to call GetOrdinal within a loop. You can save time by calling GetOrdinal once and assigning the results to an integer variable for use within the loop.

**See also**

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)

**GetSchemaTable method**

Returns a DataTable that describes the column metadata of the SADataReader.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Overrides Function **GetSchemaTable()** As DataTable

**C#**

public override DataTable **GetSchemaTable();**

**Return value**

A DataTable that describes the column metadata.

**Remarks**

This method returns metadata about each column in the following order:

DataTable column	Description
ColumnName	The name of the column or a null reference (Nothing in Visual Basic) if the column has no name. If the column is aliased in the SQL query, the alias is returned. Note that in result sets, not all columns have names and not all column names are unique.
ColumnOrdinal	The ID of the column. The value is in the range [0, FieldCount -1].
ColumnSize	For sized columns, the maximum length of a value in the column. For other columns, this is the size in bytes of the data type.

<b>DataTable column</b>	<b>Description</b>
NumericPrecision	The precision of a numeric column or DBNull if the column is not numeric.
NumericScale	The scale of a numeric column or DBNull if the column is not numeric.
IsUnique	True if the column is a non-computed unique column in the table (BaseTableName) it is taken from.
IsKey	True if the column is one of a set of columns in the result set that taken together form a unique key for the result set. The set of columns with IsKey set to true does not need to be the minimal set that uniquely identifies a row in the result set.
BaseServerName	The name of the SQL Anywhere database server used by the SAdaDataReader.
BaseCatalogName	The name of the catalog in the database that contains the column. This value is always DBNull.
BaseColumnName	The original name of the column in the table BaseTableName of the database or DBNull if the column is computed or if this information cannot be determined.
BaseSchemaName	The name of the schema in the database that contains the column.
BaseTableName	The name of the table in the database that contains the column, or DBNull if column is computed or if this information cannot be determined.
DataType	The .NET data type that is most appropriate for this type of column.
AllowDBNull	True if the column is nullable, false if the column is not nullable or if this information cannot be determined.
ProviderType	The type of the column.
IsAliased	True if the column name is an alias, false if it is not an alias.
IsExpression	True if the column is an expression, false if it is a column value.
IsIdentity	True if the column is an identity column, false if it is not an identity column.
IsAutoIncrement	True if the column is an autoincrement or global autoincrement column, false otherwise (or if this information cannot be determined).

DataTable column	Description
IsRowVersion	True if the column contains a persistent row identifier that cannot be written to, and has no meaningful value except to identify the row.
IsHidden	True if the column is hidden, false otherwise.
IsLong	True if the column is a long varchar, long nvarchar, or a long binary column, false otherwise.
IsReadOnly	True if the column is read-only, false if the column is modifiable or if its access cannot be determined.

For more information about these columns, see the .NET Framework documentation for `SqlDataReader.GetSchemaTable`.

For more information, see [“Obtaining DataReader schema information” on page 122](#).

#### See also

- [“SADeveloper class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADeveloper members” on page 311](#)

## GetString method

Returns the value of the specified column as a string.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetString( _
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _
) As String
```

##### C#

```
public override string GetString(
    int ordinal
);
```

#### Parameters

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

#### Return value

The value of the specified column.

#### Remarks

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a string.

Call the `SADataReader.IsDBNull` method to check for NULL values before calling this method.

### See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“IsDBNull method” on page 339](#)

## GetTimeSpan method

Returns the value of the specified column as a `TimeSpan` object.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function GetTimeSpan( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As TimeSpan
```

#### C#

```
public TimeSpan GetTimeSpan(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

### Parameters

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

### Return value

The value of the specified column.

### Remarks

The column must be a SQL Anywhere TIME data type. The data is converted to `TimeSpan`. The `Days` property of `TimeSpan` is always set to 0.

Call `SADataReader.IsDBNull` method to check for NULL values before calling this method.

For more information, see [“Obtaining time values” on page 132](#).

### See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“IsDBNull method” on page 339](#)



## GetUInt16 method

Returns the value of the specified column as a 16-bit unsigned integer.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function GetUInt16( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As UInt16
```

#### C#

```
public ushort GetUInt16(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

### Parameters

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

### Return value

The value of the specified column.

### Remarks

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a 16-bit unsigned integer.

### See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)

## GetUInt32 method

Returns the value of the specified column as a 32-bit unsigned integer.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function GetUInt32( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As UInt32
```

#### C#

```
public uint GetUInt32(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

### Parameters

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

### Return value

The value of the specified column.

### Remarks

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a 32-bit unsigned integer.

### See also

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)

## GetUInt64 method

Returns the value of the specified column as a 64-bit unsigned integer.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function GetUInt64( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As UInt64
```

#### C#

```
public ulong GetUInt64(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

### Parameters

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

### Return value

The value of the specified column.

### Remarks

No conversions are performed, so the data retrieved must already be a 64-bit unsigned integer.

### See also

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)

## GetValue methods

Returns the value of the specified column as an Object.

### GetValue(Int32) method

Returns the value of the specified column as an Object.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetValue( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As Object
```

##### C#

```
public override object GetValue(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

#### Parameters

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.

#### Return value

The value of the specified column as an object.

#### Remarks

This method returns DBNull for NULL database columns.

#### See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“GetValue methods” on page 337](#)

### GetValue(Int32, Int64, Int32) method

Returns a substring of the value of the specified column as an Object.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Function GetValue( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer, _  
    ByVal index As Long, _
```

```
    ByVal length As Integer _  
  ) As Object
```

**C#**

```
public object GetValue(  
    int ordinal,  
    long index,  
    int length  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **ordinal** An ordinal number indicating the column from which the value is obtained. The numbering is zero-based.
- **index** A zero-based index of the substring of the value to be obtained.
- **length** The length of the substring of the value to be obtained.

**Return value**

The substring value is returned as an object.

**Remarks**

This method returns DBNull for NULL database columns.

**See also**

- [“SADaReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADaReader members” on page 311](#)
- [“GetValue methods” on page 337](#)

## GetValues method

Gets all the columns in the current row.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Function GetValues( _  
    ByVal values As Object() _  
  ) As Integer
```

**C#**

```
public override int GetValues(  
    object[] values  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **values** An array of objects that holds an entire row of the result set.

**Return value**

The number of objects in the array.

**Remarks**

For most applications, the `GetValues` method provides an efficient means for retrieving all columns, rather than retrieving each column individually.

You can pass an Object array that contains fewer than the number of columns contained in the resulting row. Only the amount of data the Object array holds is copied to the array. You can also pass an Object array whose length is more than the number of columns contained in the resulting row.

This method returns `DBNull` for `NULL` database columns.

**See also**

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)

## IsDBNull method

Returns a value indicating whether the column contains `NULL` values.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Function IsDBNull( _  
    ByVal ordinal As Integer _  
) As Boolean
```

**C#**

```
public override bool IsDBNull(  
    int ordinal  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **ordinal** The zero-based column ordinal.

**Return value**

Returns true if the specified column value is equivalent to `DBNull`. Otherwise, it returns false.

**Remarks**

Call this method to check for `NULL` column values before calling the typed get methods (for example, `GetByte`, `GetChar`, and so on) to avoid raising an exception.

**See also**

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)

## NextResult method

Advances the `SADataReader` to the next result, when reading the results of batch SQL statements.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Function **NextResult()** As Boolean

#### C#

public override bool **NextResult();**

### Return value

Returns true if there are more result sets. Otherwise, it returns false.

### Remarks

Used to process multiple results, which can be generated by executing batch SQL statements.

By default, the data reader is positioned on the first result.

### See also

- [“SADataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADataReader members” on page 311](#)

## Read method

Reads the next row of the result set and moves the `SADataReader` to that row.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Function **Read()** As Boolean

#### C#

public override bool **Read();**

### Return value

Returns true if there are more rows. Otherwise, it returns false.

### Remarks

The default position of the `SADataReader` is prior to the first record. Therefore, you must call `Read` to begin accessing any data.

### Example

The following code fills a listbox with the values in a single column of results.

```
while( reader.Read() )
{
    listResults.Items.Add(
        reader.GetValue( 0 ).ToString() );
}
listResults.EndUpdate();
reader.Close();
```

**See also**

- [“SADDataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADDataReader members” on page 311](#)

## myDispose method

Frees the resources associated with the object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub myDispose()
```

**C#**

```
public void myDispose();
```

**See also**

- [“SADDataReader class” on page 310](#)
- [“SADDataReader members” on page 311](#)

## SADDataSourceEnumerator class

Provides a mechanism for enumerating all available instances of SQL Anywhere database servers within the local network. This class cannot be inherited.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public NotInheritable Class SADDataSourceEnumerator  
    Inherits DbDataSourceEnumerator
```

**C#**

```
public sealed class SADDataSourceEnumerator : DbDataSourceEnumerator
```

**Remarks**

There is no constructor for SADDataSourceEnumerator.

The SADDataSourceEnumerator class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SADataSourceEnumerator members” on page 342](#)

## SADataSourceEnumerator members

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Instance property</a>	Gets an instance of SADataSourceEnumerator, which can be used to retrieve information about all visible SQL Anywhere database servers.

**Public methods**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">GetDataSources method</a>	Retrieves a DataTable containing information about all visible SQL Anywhere database servers.

**See also**

- [“SADataSourceEnumerator class” on page 341](#)

## Instance property

Gets an instance of SADataSourceEnumerator, which can be used to retrieve information about all visible SQL Anywhere database servers.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Shared ReadOnly Property Instance As SADataSourceEnumerator
```

**C#**

```
public const SADataSourceEnumerator Instance { get;}
```

**See also**

- [“SADataSourceEnumerator class” on page 341](#)
- [“SADataSourceEnumerator members” on page 342](#)

## GetDataSources method

Retrieves a DataTable containing information about all visible SQL Anywhere database servers.



**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Overrides Function **GetDataSources()** As DataTable

**C#**

public override DataTable **GetDataSources();**

**Remarks**

The returned table has four columns: ServerName, IPAddress, PortNumber, and DataBaseNames. There is a row in the table for each available database server.

**Example**

The following code fills a DataTable with information for each database server that is available.

```
DataTable servers = SDataSourceEnumerator.Instance.GetDataSources();
```

**See also**

- [“SDataSourceEnumerator class” on page 341](#)
- [“SDataSourceEnumerator members” on page 342](#)

## SADbType enumeration

Enumerates the SQL Anywhere .NET database data types.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Enum **SADbType**

**C#**

public enum **SADbType**

**Remarks**

The table below lists which .NET types are compatible with each SADbType. In the case of integral types, table columns can always be set using smaller integer types, but can also be set using larger types as long as the actual value is within the range of the type.

SADbType	Compatible .NET type	C# built-in type	Visual Basic built-in type
<b>BigInt</b>	System.Int64	long	Long

<b>SADbType</b>	<b>Compatible .NET type</b>	<b>C# built-in type</b>	<b>Visual Basic built-in type</b>
<b>Binary, VarBinary</b>	System. <a href="#">Byte[]</a> , or System. <a href="#">Guid</a> if size is 16	byte[]	Byte()
<b>Bit</b>	System. <a href="#">Boolean</a>	bool	Boolean
<b>Char, VarChar</b>	System. <a href="#">String</a>	String	String
<b>Date</b>	System. <a href="#">DateTime</a>	DateTime (no built-in type)	Date
<b>DateTime, TimeStamp</b>	System. <a href="#">DateTime</a>	DateTime (no built-in type)	Date
<b>Decimal, Numeric</b>	System. <a href="#">String</a>	decimal	Decimal
<b>Double</b>	System. <a href="#">Double</a>	double	Double
<b>Float, Real</b>	System. <a href="#">Single</a>	float	Single
<b>Image</b>	System. <a href="#">Byte[]</a>	byte[]	Byte()
<b>Integer</b>	System. <a href="#">Int32</a>	int	Integer
<b>LongBinary</b>	System. <a href="#">Byte[]</a>	byte[]	Byte()
<b>LongNVarChar</b>	System. <a href="#">String</a>	String	String
<b>LongVarChar</b>	System. <a href="#">String</a>	String	String
<b>Money</b>	System. <a href="#">String</a>	decimal	Decimal
<b>NChar</b>	System. <a href="#">String</a>	String	String
<b>NText</b>	System. <a href="#">String</a>	String	String
<b>Numeric</b>	System. <a href="#">String</a>	decimal	Decimal
<b>NVarChar</b>	System. <a href="#">String</a>	String	String
<b>SmallDateTime</b>	System. <a href="#">DateTime</a>	DateTime (no built-in type)	Date
<b>SmallInt</b>	System. <a href="#">Int16</a>	short	Short

SADBType	Compatible .NET type	C# built-in type	Visual Basic built-in type
SmallMoney	System.String	decimal	Decimal
SysName	System.String	String	String
Text	System.String	String	String
Time	System.TimeSpan	TimeSpan (no built-in type)	TimeSpan (no built-in type)
TimeStamp	System.DateTime	DateTime (no built-in type)	Date
TinyInt	System.Byte	byte	Byte
UniqueIdentifier	System.Guid	Guid (no built-in type)	Guid (no built-in type)
UniqueIdentifierStr	System.String	String	String
UnsignedBigInt	System.UInt64	ulong	UInt64 (no built-in type)
UnsignedInt	System.UInt32	uint	UInt64 (no built-in type)
UnsignedSmallInt	System.UInt16	ushort	UInt64 (no built-in type)
Xml	System.System.Xml	String	String

Binary columns of length 16 are fully compatible with the UniqueIdentifier type.

## Members

Member name	Description	Value
BigInt	Signed 64-bit integer.	1
Binary	Binary data, with a specified maximum length. The enumeration values Binary and VarBinary are aliases of each other.	2
Bit	1-bit flag.	3

<b>Member name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Value</b>
Char	Character data, with a specified length. This type always supports Unicode characters. The types Char and VarChar are fully compatible.	4
Date	Date information.	5
DateTime	Timestamp information (date, time). The enumeration values DateTime and TimeStamp are aliases of each other.	6
Decimal	Exact numerical data, with a specified precision and scale. The enumeration values Decimal and Numeric are aliases of each other.	7
Double	Double precision floating-point number (8 bytes).	8
Float	Single precision floating-point number (4 bytes). The enumeration values Float and Real are aliases of each other.	9
Image	Stores binary data of arbitrary length.	10
Integer	Unsigned 32-bit integer.	11
LongBinary	Binary data, with variable length.	12
LongNVarchar	Character data in the NCHAR character set, with variable length. This type always supports Unicode characters.	13
LongVarbit	Bit arrays, with variable length.	14
LongVarchar	Character data, with variable length. This type always supports Unicode characters.	15
Money	Monetary data.	16
NChar	Stores Unicode character data, up to 8191 characters.	17
NText	Stores Unicode character data of arbitrary length.	18
Numeric	Exact numerical data, with a specified precision and scale. The enumeration values Decimal and Numeric are aliases of each other.	19

Member name	Description	Value
NVarChar	Stores Unicode character data, up to 8191 characters.	20
Real	Single precision floating-point number (4 bytes). The enumeration values Float and Real are aliases of each other.	21
SmallDateTime	A domain, implemented as <code>TIMESTAMP</code> .	22
SmallInt	Signed 16-bit integer.	23
SmallMoney	Stores monetary data that is less than one million currency units.	24
SysName	Stores character data of arbitrary length.	25
Text	Stores character data of arbitrary length.	26
Time	Time information.	27
TimeStamp	Timestamp information (date, time). The enumeration values <code>DateTime</code> and <code>TimeStamp</code> are aliases of each other.	28
TinyInt	Unsigned 8-bit integer.	29
UniqueIdentifier	Universally Unique Identifier (UUID/GUID).	30
UniqueIdentifierStr	A domain, implemented as <code>CHAR(36)</code> . <code>UniqueIdentifierStr</code> is used for remote data access when mapping Microsoft SQL Server uniqueidentifier columns.	31
UnsignedBigInt	Unsigned 64-bit integer.	32
UnsignedInt	Unsigned 32-bit integer.	33
UnsignedSmallInt	Unsigned 16-bit integer.	34
VarBinary	Binary data, with a specified maximum length. The enumeration values <b>Binary</b> and <b>VarBinary</b> are aliases of each other.	35
VarBit	Bit arrays that are from 1 to 32767 bits in length.	36

Member name	Description	Value
VarChar	Character data, with a specified maximum length. This type always supports Unicode characters. The types Char and VarChar are fully compatible.	37
Xml	XML data. This type stores character data of arbitrary length, and is used to store XML documents.	38

**See also**

- [“GetFieldType method” on page 325](#)
- [“GetDataTypeName method” on page 322](#)

## SADefault class

Represents a parameter with a default value. This is a static class and so cannot be inherited or instantiated.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public NotInheritable Class **SADefault**

**C#**

public sealed class **SADefault**

**Remarks**

There is no constructor for SADefault.

```
SAParameter parm = new SAParameter();
parm.Value = SADefault.Value;
```

**See also**

- [“SADefault members” on page 348](#)

## SADefault members

**Public fields**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Value field</a>	Gets the value for a default parameter. This field is read-only and static. This field is read-only.

**See also**

- [“SADefault class” on page 348](#)

## Value field

Gets the value for a default parameter. This field is read-only and static. This field is read-only.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Shared ReadOnly Value As SADefault
```

**C#**

```
public const SADefault Value ;
```

**See also**

- [“SADefault class” on page 348](#)
- [“SADefault members” on page 348](#)

## SAError class

Collects information relevant to a warning or error returned by the data source. This class cannot be inherited.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public NotInheritable Class SAError
```

**C#**

```
public sealed class SAError
```

**Remarks**

There is no constructor for SAError.

For information about error handling, see [“Error handling and the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider” on page 138](#).

**See also**

- [“SAError members” on page 350](#)

## SAError members

### Public properties

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Message property</a>	Returns a short description of the error.
<a href="#">NativeError property</a>	Returns database-specific error information.
<a href="#">Source property</a>	Returns the name of the provider that generated the error.
<a href="#">SqlState property</a>	The SQL Anywhere five-character SQLSTATE following the ANSI SQL standard.

### Public methods

Member name	Description
<a href="#">ToString method</a>	The complete text of the error message.

### See also

- [“SAError class” on page 349](#)

## Message property

Returns a short description of the error.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Readonly Property **Message** As String

#### C#

```
public string Message { get;}
```

### See also

- [“SAError class” on page 349](#)
- [“SAError members” on page 350](#)

## NativeError property

Returns database-specific error information.



**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Readonly Property **NativeError** As Integer

**C#**

```
public int NativeError { get;}
```

**See also**

- [“SAError class” on page 349](#)
- [“SAError members” on page 350](#)

## Source property

Returns the name of the provider that generated the error.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Readonly Property **Source** As String

**C#**

```
public string Source { get;}
```

**See also**

- [“SAError class” on page 349](#)
- [“SAError members” on page 350](#)

## SqlState property

The SQL Anywhere five-character SQLSTATE following the ANSI SQL standard.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Readonly Property **SqlState** As String

**C#**

```
public string SqlState { get;}
```

**See also**

- [“SAError class” on page 349](#)
- [“SAError members” on page 350](#)

## ToString method

The complete text of the error message.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function ToString() As String
```

#### C#

```
public override string ToString();
```

### Example

The return value is a string is in the form **SAError:**, followed by the Message. For example:

```
SAError:UserId or Password not valid.
```

### See also

- [“SAError class” on page 349](#)
- [“SAError members” on page 350](#)

## SAErrorCollection class

Collects all errors generated by the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider. This class cannot be inherited.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public NotInheritable Class SAErrorCollection  
Implements ICollection, IEnumerable
```

#### C#

```
public sealed class SAErrorCollection : ICollection, IEnumerable
```

### Remarks

There is no constructor for SAErrorCollection. Typically, an SAErrorCollection is obtained from the SAException.Errors property.

**Implements:** [ICollection](#), [IEnumerable](#)

For information about error handling, see [“Error handling and the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider” on page 138](#).

**See also**

- [“SAErrorCollection members” on page 353](#)
- [“Errors property” on page 357](#)
- [SqlClientFactory.CanCreateDataSourceEnumerator](#)

## SAErrorCollection members

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Count property</a>	Returns the number of errors in the collection.
<a href="#">Item property</a>	Returns the error at the specified index.

**Public methods**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">CopyTo method</a>	Copies the elements of the SAErrorCollection into an array, starting at the given index within the array.
<a href="#">GetEnumerator method</a>	Returns an enumerator that iterates through the SAErrorCollection.

**See also**

- [“SAErrorCollection class” on page 352](#)
- [“Errors property” on page 357](#)
- [SqlClientFactory.CanCreateDataSourceEnumerator](#)

## Count property

Returns the number of errors in the collection.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
NotOverridable Public Readonly Property Count As Integer
```

**C#**

```
public int Count { get;}
```

**See also**

- [“SAErrorCollection class” on page 352](#)
- [“SAErrorCollection members” on page 353](#)

## Item property

Returns the error at the specified index.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Readonly Property Item ( _  
    ByVal index As Integer _  
) As SAError
```

#### C#

```
public SAError this [  
    int index  
] { get; }
```

### Parameters

- **index** The zero-based index of the error to retrieve.

### Property value

An SAError object that contains the error at the specified index.

### See also

- [“SAErrorCollection class” on page 352](#)
- [“SAErrorCollection members” on page 353](#)
- [“SAError class” on page 349](#)

## CopyTo method

Copies the elements of the SAErrorCollection into an array, starting at the given index within the array.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
NotOverridable Public Sub CopyTo( _  
    ByVal array As Array, _  
    ByVal index As Integer _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public void CopyTo(  
    Array array,  
    int index  
);
```

### Parameters

- **array** The array into which to copy the elements.

- **index** The starting index of the array.

**See also**

- [“SAErrorCollection class” on page 352](#)
- [“SAErrorCollection members” on page 353](#)

## GetEnumerator method

Returns an enumerator that iterates through the SAErrorCollection.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

NotOverridable Public Function **GetEnumerator()** As IEnumerator

**C#**

```
public IEnumerator GetEnumerator();
```

**Return value**

An [IEnumerator](#) for the SAErrorCollection.

**See also**

- [“SAErrorCollection class” on page 352](#)
- [“SAErrorCollection members” on page 353](#)

## SAException class

The exception that is thrown when SQL Anywhere returns a warning or error.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Class **SAException**  
Inherits DbException

**C#**

```
public class SAException : DbException
```

**Remarks**

There is no constructor for SAException. Typically, an SAException object is declared in a catch. For example:

```
...  
catch( SAException ex )  
{
```

```

    }
    MessageBox.Show( ex.Errors[0].Message, "Error" );
}

```

For information about error handling, see [“Error handling and the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider”](#) on page 138.

### See also

- [“SAException members”](#) on page 356

## SAException members

### Public properties

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Data</a> (inherited from Exception)	Gets a collection of key/value pairs that provide additional user-defined information about the exception.
<a href="#">ErrorCode</a> (inherited from ExternalException)	Gets the HRESULT of the error.
<a href="#">Errors property</a>	Returns a collection of one or more <a href="#">“SAError class”</a> on page 349 objects.
<a href="#">HelpLink</a> (inherited from Exception)	Gets or sets a link to the help file associated with this exception.
<a href="#">InnerException</a> (inherited from Exception)	Gets the <a href="#">Exception</a> instance that caused the current exception.
<a href="#">Message property</a>	Returns the text describing the error.
<a href="#">NativeError property</a>	Returns database-specific error information.
<a href="#">Source property</a>	Returns the name of the provider that generated the error.
<a href="#">StackTrace</a> (inherited from Exception)	Gets a string representation of the frames on the call stack at the time the current exception was thrown.
<a href="#">TargetSite</a> (inherited from Exception)	Gets the method that throws the current exception.

### Public methods

Member name	Description
<a href="#">GetBaseException</a> (inherited from Exception)	When overridden in a derived class, returns the <a href="#">Exception</a> that is the root cause of one or more subsequent exceptions.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">GetObjectData method</a>	Sets the SerializationInfo with information about the exception. Overrides <a href="#">Exception.GetObjectData</a> .
<a href="#">GetType</a> (inherited from <a href="#">Exception</a> )	Gets the runtime type of the current instance.
<a href="#">ToString</a> (inherited from <a href="#">Exception</a> )	Creates and returns a string representation of the current exception.

**See also**

- [“SAException class” on page 355](#)

## Errors property

Returns a collection of one or more [“SAError class” on page 349](#) objects.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Readonly Property Errors As SAErrorCollection
```

**C#**

```
public SAErrorCollection Errors { get;}
```

**Remarks**

The SAErrorCollection object always contains at least one instance of the SAError object.

**See also**

- [“SAException class” on page 355](#)
- [“SAException members” on page 356](#)
- [“SAErrorCollection class” on page 352](#)
- [“SAError class” on page 349](#)

## Message property

Returns the text describing the error.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Readonly Property Message As String
```

#### C#

```
public override string Message { get;}
```

#### Remarks

This method returns a single string that contains a concatenation of all of the Message properties of all of the SAError objects in the Errors collection. Each message, except the last one, is followed by a carriage return.

#### See also

- [“SAException class” on page 355](#)
- [“SAException members” on page 356](#)
- [“SAError class” on page 349](#)

## NativeError property

Returns database-specific error information.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Readonly Property NativeError As Integer
```

#### C#

```
public int NativeError { get;}
```

#### See also

- [“SAException class” on page 355](#)
- [“SAException members” on page 356](#)

## Source property

Returns the name of the provider that generated the error.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Readonly Property Source As String
```

#### C#

```
public override string Source { get;}
```



**See also**

- [“SAException class” on page 355](#)
- [“SAException members” on page 356](#)

## GetObjectData method

Sets the `SerializationInfo` with information about the exception. Overrides [Exception.GetObjectData](#).

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Sub GetObjectData( _  
    ByVal info As SerializationInfo, _  
    ByVal context As StreamingContext _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public override void GetObjectData(  
    SerializationInfo info,  
    StreamingContext context  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **info** The `SerializationInfo` that holds the serialized object data about the exception being thrown.
- **context** The `StreamingContext` that contains contextual information about the source or destination.

**See also**

- [“SAException class” on page 355](#)
- [“SAException members” on page 356](#)

## SAFactory class

Represents a set of methods for creating instances of the `iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere` provider's implementation of the data source classes. This is a static class and so cannot be inherited or instantiated.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public NotInheritable Class SAFactory  
    Inherits DbProviderFactory  
    Implements IServiceProvider
```

**C#**

```
public sealed class SAFactory : DbProviderFactory,  
    IServiceProvider
```

**Remarks**

There is no constructor for SAFactory.

ADO.NET 2.0 adds two new classes, DbProviderFactories and DbProviderFactory, to make provider independent code easier to write. To use them with SQL Anywhere specify iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere as the provider invariant name passed to GetFactory. For example:

```
' Visual Basic
Dim factory As DbProviderFactory = _
    DbProviderFactories.GetFactory( "iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere" )
Dim conn As DbConnection = _
    factory.CreateConnection()
// C#
DbProviderFactory factory =
    DbProviderFactories.GetFactory( "iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere" );
DbConnection conn = factory.CreateConnection();
```

In this example, conn is created as an SAConnection object.

For an explanation of provider factories and generic programming in ADO.NET 2.0, see <http://msdn2.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms379620.aspx>.

**Restrictions:** The SAFactory class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**Inherits:** [DbProviderFactory](#)

**See also**

- [“SAFactory members” on page 360](#)

## SAFactory members

**Public fields**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Instance field</a>	Represents the singleton instance of the SAFactory class. This field is read-only.

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">CanCreateDataSourceEnumerator property</a>	Always returns true, which indicates that an SADataSourceEnumerator object can be created.

**Public methods**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">CreateCommand method</a>	Returns a strongly typed <a href="#">DbCommand</a> instance.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">CreateCommandBuilder method</a>	Returns a strongly typed <a href="#">DbCommandBuilder</a> instance.
<a href="#">CreateConnection method</a>	Returns a strongly typed <a href="#">DbConnection</a> instance.
<a href="#">CreateConnectionStringBuilder method</a>	Returns a strongly typed <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> instance.
<a href="#">CreateDataAdapter method</a>	Returns a strongly typed <a href="#">DbDataAdapter</a> instance.
<a href="#">CreateDataSourceEnumerator method</a>	Returns a strongly typed <a href="#">DbDataSourceEnumerator</a> instance.
<a href="#">CreateParameter method</a>	Returns a strongly typed <a href="#">DbParameter</a> instance.
<a href="#">CreatePermission method</a>	Returns a strongly-typed <a href="#">CodeAccessPermission</a> instance.

**See also**

- [“SAFactory class” on page 359](#)

## Instance field

Represents the singleton instance of the SAFactory class. This field is read-only.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Shared ReadOnly Instance As SAFactory
```

**C#**

```
public const SAFactory Instance ;
```

**Remarks**

SAFactory is a singleton class, which means only this instance of this class can exist.

Normally you would not use this field directly. Instead, you get a reference to this instance of SAFactory using [DbProviderFactories.GetFactory](#). For an example, see the SAFactory description.

**Restrictions:** The SAFactory class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SAFactory class” on page 359](#)
- [“SAFactory members” on page 360](#)
- [“SAFactory class” on page 359](#)

## CanCreateDataSourceEnumerator property

Always returns true, which indicates that an SADataSourceEnumerator object can be created.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Readonly Property **CanCreateDataSourceEnumerator** As Boolean

#### C#

```
public override bool CanCreateDataSourceEnumerator { get;}
```

### Property value

A new SACommand object typed as DbCommand.

### See also

- [“SAFactory class” on page 359](#)
- [“SAFactory members” on page 360](#)
- [“SADataSourceEnumerator class” on page 341](#)
- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)

## CreateCommand method

Returns a strongly typed [DbCommand](#) instance.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Function **CreateCommand()** As DbCommand

#### C#

```
public override DbCommand CreateCommand();
```

### Return value

A new SACommand object typed as DbCommand.

### See also

- [“SAFactory class” on page 359](#)
- [“SAFactory members” on page 360](#)
- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)

## CreateCommandBuilder method

Returns a strongly typed [DbCommandBuilder](#) instance.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Function **CreateCommandBuilder()** As DbCommandBuilder

### C#

public override DbCommandBuilder **CreateCommandBuilder();**

## Return value

A new SACommand object typed as DbCommand.

## See also

- [“SAFactory class” on page 359](#)
- [“SAFactory members” on page 360](#)
- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)

## CreateConnection method

Returns a strongly typed [DbConnection](#) instance.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Function **CreateConnection()** As DbConnection

### C#

public override DbConnection **CreateConnection();**

## Return value

A new SACommand object typed as DbCommand.

## See also

- [“SAFactory class” on page 359](#)
- [“SAFactory members” on page 360](#)
- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)

## CreateConnectionStringBuilder method

Returns a strongly typed [DbConnectionStringBuilder](#) instance.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Function **CreateConnectionStringBuilder()** As DbConnectionStringBuilder

#### C#

```
public override DbConnectionString Builder CreateConnectionStringBuilder();
```

#### Return value

A new `SACommand` object typed as `DbCommand`.

#### See also

- [“SAFactory class” on page 359](#)
- [“SAFactory members” on page 360](#)
- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)

## CreateDataAdapter method

Returns a strongly typed `DbDataAdapter` instance.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function CreateDataAdapter() As DbDataAdapter
```

#### C#

```
public override DbDataAdapter CreateDataAdapter();
```

#### Return value

A new `SACommand` object typed as `DbCommand`.

#### See also

- [“SAFactory class” on page 359](#)
- [“SAFactory members” on page 360](#)
- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)

## CreateDataSourceEnumerator method

Returns a strongly typed `DbDataSourceEnumerator` instance.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function CreateDataSourceEnumerator() As DbDataSourceEnumerator
```

#### C#

```
public override DbDataSourceEnumerator CreateDataSourceEnumerator();
```

**Return value**

A new `SACCommand` object typed as `DbCommand`.

**See also**

- [“SAFactory class” on page 359](#)
- [“SAFactory members” on page 360](#)
- [“SACCommand class” on page 206](#)

## CreateParameter method

Returns a strongly typed `DbParameter` instance.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Function CreateParameter() As DbParameter
```

**C#**

```
public override DbParameter CreateParameter();
```

**Return value**

A new `SACCommand` object typed as `DbCommand`.

**See also**

- [“SAFactory class” on page 359](#)
- [“SAFactory members” on page 360](#)
- [“SACCommand class” on page 206](#)

## CreatePermission method

Returns a strongly-typed `CodeAccessPermission` instance.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Function CreatePermission( _  
    ByVal state As PermissionState _  
) As CodeAccessPermission
```

**C#**

```
public override CodeAccessPermission CreatePermission(  
    PermissionState state  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **state** A member of the [PermissionState](#) enumeration.

**Return value**

A new `SACommand` object typed as `DbCommand`.

**See also**

- [“SAFactory class” on page 359](#)
- [“SAFactory members” on page 360](#)
- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)

## SAInfoMessageEventArgs class

Provides data for the `InfoMessage` event. This class cannot be inherited.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public NotInheritable Class SAInfoMessageEventArgs  
    Inherits EventArgs
```

**C#**

```
public sealed class SAInfoMessageEventArgs : EventArgs
```

**Remarks**

There is no constructor for `SAInfoMessageEventArgs`.

**See also**

- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs members” on page 366](#)

## SAInfoMessageEventArgs members

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Errors property</a>	Returns the collection of messages sent from the data source.
<a href="#">Message property</a>	Returns the full text of the error sent from the data source.
<a href="#">MessageType property</a>	Returns the type of the message. This can be one of: Action, Info, Status, or Warning.
<a href="#">NativeError property</a>	Returns the SQL code returned by the database.



Member name	Description
<a href="#">Source property</a>	Returns the name of the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider.

### Public methods

Member name	Description
<a href="#">ToString method</a>	Retrieves a string representation of the InfoMessage event.

### See also

- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs class” on page 366](#)

## Errors property

Returns the collection of messages sent from the data source.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Readonly Property **Errors** As SAErrorCollection

#### C#

```
public SAErrorCollection Errors { get;}
```

### See also

- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs class” on page 366](#)
- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs members” on page 366](#)

## Message property

Returns the full text of the error sent from the data source.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Readonly Property **Message** As String

#### C#

```
public string Message { get;}
```

### See also

- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs class” on page 366](#)
- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs members” on page 366](#)

## MessageType property

Returns the type of the message. This can be one of: Action, Info, Status, or Warning.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Readonly Property **MessageType** As SAMessageType

#### C#

```
public SAMessageType MessageType { get;}
```

### See also

- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs class” on page 366](#)
- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs members” on page 366](#)

## NativeError property

Returns the SQL code returned by the database.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Readonly Property **NativeError** As Integer

#### C#

```
public int NativeError { get;}
```

### See also

- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs class” on page 366](#)
- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs members” on page 366](#)

## Source property

Returns the name of the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Readonly Property **Source** As String

**C#**

```
public string Source { get;}
```

**See also**

- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs class” on page 366](#)
- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs members” on page 366](#)

## ToString method

Retrieves a string representation of the InfoMessage event.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Overrides Function **ToString()** As String

**C#**

```
public override string ToString();
```

**Return value**

A string representing the InfoMessage event.

**See also**

- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs class” on page 366](#)
- [“SAInfoMessageEventArgs members” on page 366](#)

## SAInfoMessageEventHandler delegate

Represents the method that handles the SACConnection.InfoMessage event of an SACConnection object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Delegate Sub SAInfoMessageEventHandler( _  
    ByVal obj As Object, _  
    ByVal args As SAInfoMessageEventArgs _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public delegate void SAInfoMessageEventHandler(  
    object obj,  
    SAInfoMessageEventArgs args  
);
```

**See also**

- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)
- [“InfoMessage event” on page 267](#)

## SAIsolationLevel enumeration

Specifies SQL Anywhere isolation levels. This class augments the [IsolationLevel](#).

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Enum SAIsolationLevel
```

**C#**

```
public enum SAIsolationLevel
```

**Remarks**

The SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider supports all SQL Anywhere isolation levels, including the snapshot isolation levels. To use snapshot isolation, specify one of `SAIsolationLevel.Snapshot`, `SAIsolationLevel.ReadOnlySnapshot`, or `SAIsolationLevel.StatementSnapshot` as the parameter to `BeginTransaction`. `BeginTransaction` has been overloaded so it can take either an `IsolationLevel` or an `SAIsolationLevel`. The values in the two enumerations are the same, except for `ReadOnlySnapshot` and `StatementSnapshot` which exist only in `SAIsolationLevel`. There is a new property in `SATransaction` called `SAIsolationLevel` that gets the `SAIsolationLevel`.

For more information, see [“Snapshot isolation” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#).

**Members**

Member name	Description	Value
Chaos	This isolation level is unsupported.	16
ReadCommitted	Sets the behavior to be equivalent to isolation level 1.	4096
ReadOnlySnapshot	For read-only statements, use a snapshot of committed data from the time when the first row is read from the database.	16777217
ReadUncommitted	Sets the behavior to be equivalent to isolation level 0.	256

Member name	Description	Value
RepeatableRead	Sets the behavior to be equivalent to isolation level 2.	65536
Serializable	Sets the behavior to be equivalent to isolation level 3.	1048576
Snapshot	Uses a snapshot of committed data from the time when the first row is read, inserted, updated, or deleted by the transaction.	16777216
StatementSnapshot	Use a snapshot of committed data from the time when the first row is read by the statement. Each statement within the transaction sees a snapshot of data from a different time.	16777218
Unspecified	This isolation level is unsupported.	-1

## SAMessageType enumeration

Identifies the type of message. This can be one of: Action, Info, Status, or Warning.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Enum **SAMessageType**

#### C#

public enum **SAMessageType**

### Members

Member name	Description	Value
Action	Message of type ACTION.	2
Info	Message of type INFO.	0
Status	Message of type STATUS.	3
Warning	Message of type WARNING.	1

## SAMetaDataCollectionNames class

Provides a list of constants for use with the `SACConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])` method to retrieve metadata collections. This class cannot be inherited.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public NotInheritable Class **SAMetaDataCollectionNames**

#### C#

public sealed class **SAMetaDataCollectionNames**

### Remarks

This field is constant and read-only.

### See also

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## SAMetaDataCollectionNames members

### Public fields

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Columns field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SACConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the Columns collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">DataSourceInformation field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SACConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the DataSourceInformation collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">DataTypes field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SACConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the DataTypes collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">ForeignKeys field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SACConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the ForeignKeys collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">IndexColumns field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SACConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the IndexColumns collection. This field is read-only.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Indexes field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the Indexes collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">MetaDataCollections field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the MetaDataCollections collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">ProcedureParameters field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the ProcedureParameters collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">Procedures field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the Procedures collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">ReservedWords field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the ReservedWords collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">Restrictions field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the Restrictions collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">Tables field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the Tables collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">UserDefinedTypes field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the UserDefinedTypes collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">Users field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the Users collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">ViewColumns field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the ViewColumns collection. This field is read-only.
<a href="#">Views field</a>	Provides a constant for use with the <code>SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])</code> method that represents the Views collection. This field is read-only.

**See also**

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## Columns field

Provides a constant for use with the `SACConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])` method that represents the Columns collection. This field is read-only.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Shared Readonly Columns As String
```

**C#**

```
public const string Columns ;
```

**Example**

The following code fills a `DataTable` with the Columns collection.

```
DataTable schema = GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.Columns );
```

**See also**

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## DataSourceInformation field

Provides a constant for use with the `SACConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])` method that represents the DataSourceInformation collection. This field is read-only.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Shared Readonly DataSourceInformation As String
```

**C#**

```
public const string DataSourceInformation ;
```

**Example**

The following code fills a `DataTable` with the DataSourceInformation collection.

```
DataTable schema =  
GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.DataSourceInformation );
```



**See also**

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## DataTypes field

Provides a constant for use with the `SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])` method that represents the `DataTypes` collection. This field is read-only.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Shared ReadOnly **DataTypes** As String

**C#**

public const string **DataTypes** ;

**Example**

The following code fills a `DataTable` with the `DataTypes` collection.

```
DataTable schema = GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.DataTypes );
```

**See also**

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## ForeignKeys field

Provides a constant for use with the `SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])` method that represents the `ForeignKeys` collection. This field is read-only.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Shared ReadOnly **ForeignKeys** As String

**C#**

public const string **ForeignKeys** ;

**Example**

The following code fills a `DataTable` with the `ForeignKeys` collection.

```
DataTable schema = GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.ForeignKeys );
```

**See also**

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## IndexColumns field

Provides a constant for use with the `SACConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])` method that represents the `IndexColumns` collection. This field is read-only.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Shared Readonly IndexColumns As String
```

**C#**

```
public const string IndexColumns ;
```

**Example**

The following code fills a `DataTable` with the `IndexColumns` collection.

```
DataTable schema = GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.IndexColumns );
```

**See also**

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## Indexes field

Provides a constant for use with the `SACConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])` method that represents the `Indexes` collection. This field is read-only.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Shared Readonly Indexes As String
```

**C#**

```
public const string Indexes ;
```

**Example**

The following code fills a `DataTable` with the `Indexes` collection.

```
DataTable schema = GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.Indexes );
```

**See also**

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## MetaDataCollections field

Provides a constant for use with the `SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])` method that represents the `MetaDataCollections` collection. This field is read-only.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Shared ReadOnly **MetaDataCollections** As String

**C#**

```
public const string MetaDataCollections ;
```

**Example**

The following code fills a `DataTable` with the `MetaDataCollections` collection.

```
DataTable schema =  
    GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.MetaDataCollections );
```

**See also**

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## ProcedureParameters field

Provides a constant for use with the `SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])` method that represents the `ProcedureParameters` collection. This field is read-only.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Shared ReadOnly **ProcedureParameters** As String

**C#**

```
public const string ProcedureParameters ;
```

**Example**

The following code fills a `DataTable` with the `ProcedureParameters` collection.

```
DataTable schema =  
GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.ProcedureParameters );
```

**See also**

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## Procedures field

Provides a constant for use with the `SACConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])` method that represents the Procedures collection. This field is read-only.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Shared Readonly Procedures As String
```

**C#**

```
public const string Procedures ;
```

**Example**

The following code fills a `DataTable` with the Procedures collection.

```
DataTable schema = GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.Procedures );
```

**See also**

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## ReservedWords field

Provides a constant for use with the `SACConnection.GetSchema(String,String[])` method that represents the ReservedWords collection. This field is read-only.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Shared Readonly ReservedWords As String
```

**C#**

```
public const string ReservedWords ;
```

## Example

The following code fills a DataTable with the ReservedWords collection.

```
DataTable schema = GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.ReservedWords );
```

## See also

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## Restrictions field

Provides a constant for use with the SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[]) method that represents the Restrictions collection. This field is read-only.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Shared ReadOnly **Restrictions** As String

#### C#

public const string **Restrictions** ;

## Example

The following code fills a DataTable with the Restrictions collection.

```
DataTable schema = GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.Restrictions );
```

## See also

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## Tables field

Provides a constant for use with the SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[]) method that represents the Tables collection. This field is read-only.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Shared ReadOnly **Tables** As String

#### C#

public const string **Tables** ;

## Example

The following code fills a DataTable with the Tables collection.

```
DataTable schema = GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.Tables );
```

## See also

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## UserDefinedTypes field

Provides a constant for use with the SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[]) method that represents the UserDefinedTypes collection. This field is read-only.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Shared Readonly UserDefinedTypes As String
```

#### C#

```
public const string UserDefinedTypes ;
```

### Example

The following code fills a DataTable with the Users collection.

```
DataTable schema = GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.UserDefinedTypes );
```

### See also

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## Users field

Provides a constant for use with the SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[]) method that represents the Users collection. This field is read-only.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Shared Readonly Users As String
```

#### C#

```
public const string Users ;
```

## Example

The following code fills a DataTable with the Users collection.

```
DataTable schema = GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.Users );
```

## See also

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## ViewColumns field

Provides a constant for use with the SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[]) method that represents the ViewColumns collection. This field is read-only.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Shared ReadOnly **ViewColumns** As String

#### C#

public const string **ViewColumns** ;

## Example

The following code fills a DataTable with the ViewColumns collection.

```
DataTable schema = GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.ViewColumns );
```

## See also

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## Views field

Provides a constant for use with the SAConnection.GetSchema(String,String[]) method that represents the Views collection. This field is read-only.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Shared ReadOnly **Views** As String

#### C#

public const string **Views** ;

## Example

The following code fills a DataTable with the Views collection.

```
DataTable schema = GetSchema( SAMetaDataCollectionNames.Views );
```

## See also

- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames class” on page 372](#)
- [“SAMetaDataCollectionNames members” on page 372](#)
- [“GetSchema\(String, String\[\]\) method” on page 262](#)

## SAPparameter class

Represents a parameter to an SACommand, and optionally, its mapping to a DataSet column. This class cannot be inherited.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public NotInheritable Class SAPparameter  
    Inherits DbParameter  
    Implements ICloneable
```

#### C#

```
public sealed class SAPparameter : DbParameter,  
    ICloneable
```

### Remarks

**Implements:** [IDbDataParameter](#), [IDataParameter](#), [ICloneable](#)

### See also

- [“SAPparameter members” on page 382](#)

## SAPparameter members

### Public constructors

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SAPparameter constructors</a>	Initializes a new instance of the <a href="#">“SAPparameter class” on page 382</a> .



**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">DbType property</a>	Gets and sets the DbType of the parameter.
<a href="#">Direction property</a>	Gets and sets a value indicating whether the parameter is input-only, output-only, bidirectional, or a stored procedure return value parameter.
<a href="#">IsNullable property</a>	Gets and sets a value indicating whether the parameter accepts null values.
<a href="#">Offset property</a>	Gets and sets the offset to the Value property.
<a href="#">ParameterName property</a>	Gets and sets the name of the SAParameter.
<a href="#">Precision property</a>	Gets and sets the maximum number of digits used to represent the Value property.
<a href="#">SADbType property</a>	The SADbType of the parameter.
<a href="#">Scale property</a>	Gets and sets the number of decimal places to which Value is resolved.
<a href="#">Size property</a>	Gets and sets the maximum size, in bytes, of the data within the column.
<a href="#">SourceColumn property</a>	Gets and sets the name of the source column mapped to the DataSet and used for loading or returning the value.
<a href="#">SourceColumnNullMapping property</a>	Gets and sets value that indicates whether the source column is nullable. This allows SACommandBuilder to generate Update statements for nullable columns correctly.
<a href="#">SourceVersion property</a>	Gets and sets the DataRowVersion to use when loading Value.
<a href="#">Value property</a>	Gets and sets the value of the parameter.

**Public methods**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">ResetDbType method</a>	Resets the type (the values of DbType and SADbType) associated with this SAParameter.
<a href="#">ToString method</a>	Returns a string containing the ParameterName.

**See also**

- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)

## SAParameter constructors

Initializes a new instance of the [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#).

### SAParameter() constructor

Initializes an SAParameter object with null (Nothing in Visual Basic) as its value.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New()
```

##### C#

```
public SAParameter();
```

#### See also

- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAParameter members” on page 382](#)
- [“SAParameter constructors” on page 384](#)

### SAParameter(String, Object) constructor

Initializes an SAParameter object with the specified parameter name and value. This constructor is not recommended; it is provided for compatibility with other data providers.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal parameterName As String, _  
    ByVal value As Object _  
)
```

##### C#

```
public SAParameter(  
    string parameterName,  
    object value  
);
```

#### Parameters

- **parameterName** The name of the parameter.
- **value** An Object that is the value of the parameter.

**See also**

- [“SAPParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPParameter members” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPParameter constructors” on page 384](#)

**SAPParameter(String, SADBType) constructor**

Initializes an SAPParameter object with the specified parameter name and data type.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal parameterName As String, _  
    ByVal dbType As SADBType _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public SAPParameter(  
    string parameterName,  
    SADBType dbType  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **parameterName** The name of the parameter.
- **dbType** One of the SADBType values.

**See also**

- [“SAPParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPParameter members” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPParameter constructors” on page 384](#)
- [“SADBType property” on page 391](#)

**SAPParameter(String, SADBType, Int32) constructor**

Initializes an SAPParameter object with the specified parameter name and data type.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal parameterName As String, _  
    ByVal dbType As SADBType, _  
    ByVal size As Integer _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public SAPParameter(  
    string parameterName,  
    SADBType dbType,  
    int size  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **parameterName** The name of the parameter.
- **dbType** One of the SADBType values
- **size** The length of the parameter.

**See also**

- [“SAPParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPParameter members” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPParameter constructors” on page 384](#)

**SAPParameter(String, SADBType, Int32, String) constructor**

Initializes an SAPParameter object with the specified parameter name, data type, and length.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal parameterName As String, _  
    ByVal dbType As SADBType, _  
    ByVal size As Integer, _  
    ByVal sourceColumn As String _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public SAPParameter(  
    string parameterName,  
    SADBType dbType,  
    int size,  
    string sourceColumn  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **parameterName** The name of the parameter.
- **dbType** One of the SADBType values
- **size** The length of the parameter.
- **sourceColumn** The name of the source column to map.

**See also**

- [“SAPParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPParameter members” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPParameter constructors” on page 384](#)

**SAPParameter(String, SADBType, Int32, ParameterDirection, Boolean, Byte, Byte, String, DataRowVersion, Object) constructor**

Initializes an SAPParameter object with the specified parameter name, data type, length, direction, nullability, numeric precision, numeric scale, source column, source version, and value.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal parameterName As String, _  
    ByVal dbType As SADBType, _  
    ByVal size As Integer, _  
    ByVal direction As ParameterDirection, _  
    ByVal isNullable As Boolean, _  
    ByVal precision As Byte, _  
    ByVal scale As Byte, _  
    ByVal sourceColumn As String, _  
    ByVal sourceVersion As DataRowVersion, _  
    ByVal value As Object _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public SAPParameter(  
    string parameterName,  
    SADBType dbType,  
    int size,  
    ParameterDirection direction,  
    bool isNullable,  
    byte precision,  
    byte scale,  
    string sourceColumn,  
    DataRowVersion sourceVersion,  
    object value  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **parameterName** The name of the parameter.
- **dbType** One of the SADBType values
- **size** The length of the parameter.
- **direction** One of the ParameterDirection values.
- **isNullable** True if the value of the field can be null; otherwise, false.

- **precision** The total number of digits to the left and right of the decimal point to which Value is resolved.
- **scale** The total number of decimal places to which Value is resolved.
- **sourceColumn** The name of the source column to map.
- **sourceVersion** One of the DataRowVersion values.
- **value** An Object that is the value of the parameter.

#### See also

- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAParameter members” on page 382](#)
- [“SAParameter constructors” on page 384](#)

## DbType property

Gets and sets the DbType of the parameter.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Property DbType As DbType
```

##### C#

```
public override DbType DbType { get; set; }
```

#### Remarks

The SADBType and DbType are linked. Therefore, setting the DbType changes the SADBType to a supporting SADBType.

The value must be a member of the SADBType enumerator.

#### See also

- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAParameter members” on page 382](#)

## Direction property

Gets and sets a value indicating whether the parameter is input-only, output-only, bidirectional, or a stored procedure return value parameter.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Property Direction As ParameterDirection
```

**C#**

```
public override ParameterDirection Direction { get; set; }
```

**Property value**

One of the ParameterDirection values.

**Remarks**

If the ParameterDirection is output, and execution of the associated SACommand does not return a value, the SAParameter contains a null value. After the last row from the last result set is read, the Output, InputOut, and ReturnValue parameters are updated.

**See also**

- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAParameter members” on page 382](#)

## IsNullable property

Gets and sets a value indicating whether the parameter accepts null values.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Property IsNullable As Boolean
```

**C#**

```
public override bool IsNullable { get; set; }
```

**Remarks**

This property is true if null values are accepted; otherwise, it is false. The default is false. Null values are handled using the DBNull class.

**See also**

- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAParameter members” on page 382](#)

## Offset property

Gets and sets the offset to the Value property.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Property Offset As Integer
```

#### C#

```
public int Offset { get; set; }
```

#### Property value

The offset to the value. The default is 0.

#### See also

- [“SAPparameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPparameter members” on page 382](#)

## ParameterName property

Gets and sets the name of the SAPparameter.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Property ParameterName As String
```

##### C#

```
public override string ParameterName { get; set; }
```

#### Property value

The default is an empty string.

#### Remarks

The SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider uses positional parameters that are marked with a question mark (?) instead of named parameters.

#### See also

- [“SAPparameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPparameter members” on page 382](#)

## Precision property

Gets and sets the maximum number of digits used to represent the Value property.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Property Precision As Byte
```



**C#**

```
public byte Precision { get; set; }
```

**Property value**

The value of this property is the maximum number of digits used to represent the Value property. The default value is 0, which indicates that the data provider sets the precision for the Value property.

**Remarks**

The Precision property is only used for decimal and numeric input parameters.

**See also**

- [“SAPParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPParameter members” on page 382](#)

## SADbType property

The SADbType of the parameter.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Property SADbType As SADbType
```

**C#**

```
public SADbType SADbType { get; set; }
```

**Remarks**

The SADbType and DbType are linked. Therefore, setting the SADbType changes the DbType to a supporting DbType.

The value must be a member of the SADbType enumerator.

**See also**

- [“SAPParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPParameter members” on page 382](#)

## Scale property

Gets and sets the number of decimal places to which Value is resolved.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Property Scale As Byte
```

**C#**

```
public byte Scale { get; set; }
```

**Property value**

The number of decimal places to which Value is resolved. The default is 0.

**Remarks**

The Scale property is only used for decimal and numeric input parameters.

**See also**

- [“SAPparameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPparameter members” on page 382](#)

## Size property

Gets and sets the maximum size, in bytes, of the data within the column.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Property Size As Integer
```

**C#**

```
public override int Size { get; set; }
```

**Property value**

The value of this property is the maximum size, in bytes, of the data within the column. The default value is inferred from the parameter value.

**Remarks**

The value of this property is the maximum size, in bytes, of the data within the column. The default value is inferred from the parameter value.

The Size property is used for binary and string types.

For variable length data types, the Size property describes the maximum amount of data to transmit to the server. For example, the Size property can be used to limit the amount of data sent to the server for a string value to the first one hundred bytes.

If not explicitly set, the size is inferred from the actual size of the specified parameter value. For fixed width data types, the value of Size is ignored. It can be retrieved for informational purposes, and returns the maximum amount of bytes the provider uses when transmitting the value of the parameter to the server.

**See also**

- [“SAPparameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPparameter members” on page 382](#)

## SourceColumn property

Gets and sets the name of the source column mapped to the DataSet and used for loading or returning the value.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Property SourceColumn As String
```

#### C#

```
public override string SourceColumn { get; set; }
```

### Property value

A string specifying the name of the source column mapped to the DataSet and used for loading or returning the value.

### Remarks

When SourceColumn is set to anything other than an empty string, the value of the parameter is retrieved from the column with the SourceColumn name. If Direction is set to Input, the value is taken from the DataSet. If Direction is set to Output, the value is taken from the data source. A Direction of InputOutput is a combination of both.

### See also

- [“SAPparameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPparameter members” on page 382](#)

## SourceColumnNullMapping property

Gets and sets value that indicates whether the source column is nullable. This allows SACommandBuilder to generate Update statements for nullable columns correctly.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Property SourceColumnNullMapping As Boolean
```

#### C#

```
public override bool SourceColumnNullMapping { get; set; }
```

### Remarks

If the source column is nullable, true is returned; otherwise, false.

**See also**

- [“SAPparameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPparameter members” on page 382](#)

## SourceVersion property

Gets and sets the DataRowVersion to use when loading Value.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Overrides Property **SourceVersion** As DataRowVersion

**C#**

```
public override DataRowVersion SourceVersion { get; set; }
```

**Remarks**

Used by UpdateCommand during an Update operation to determine whether the parameter value is set to Current or Original. This allows primary keys to be updated. This property is ignored by InsertCommand and DeleteCommand. This property is set to the version of the DataRow used by the Item property, or the GetChildRows method of the DataRow object.

**See also**

- [“SAPparameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPparameter members” on page 382](#)

## Value property

Gets and sets the value of the parameter.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Overrides Property **Value** As Object

**C#**

```
public override object Value { get; set; }
```

**Property value**

An Object that specifies the value of the parameter.

**Remarks**

For input parameters, the value is bound to the SACommand that is sent to the server. For output and return value parameters, the value is set on completion of the SACommand and after the SADataReader is closed.

When sending a null parameter value to the server, you must specify `DBNull`, not `null`. The null value in the system is an empty object that has no value. `DBNull` is used to represent null values.

If the application specifies the database type, the bound value is converted to that type when the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider sends the data to the server. The provider attempts to convert any type of value if it supports the `IConvertible` interface. Conversion errors may result if the specified type is not compatible with the value.

Both the `DbType` and `SADbType` properties can be inferred by setting the `Value`.

The `Value` property is overwritten by `Update`.

#### See also

- [“SAPParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPParameter members” on page 382](#)

## ResetDbType method

Resets the type (the values of `DbType` and `SADbType`) associated with this `SAPParameter`.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Sub ResetDbType()
```

##### C#

```
public override void ResetDbType();
```

#### See also

- [“SAPParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPParameter members” on page 382](#)

## ToString method

Returns a string containing the `ParameterName`.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function Tostring() As String
```

##### C#

```
public override string Tostring();
```

#### Return value

The name of the parameter.

**See also**

- [“SAPparameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPparameter members” on page 382](#)

## SAPparameterCollection class

Represents all parameters to an SACommand object and, optionally, their mapping to a DataSet column. This class cannot be inherited.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public NotInheritable Class **SAPparameterCollection**  
Inherits DbParameterCollection

**C#**

```
public sealed class SAPparameterCollection : DbParameterCollection
```

**Remarks**

There is no constructor for SAPparameterCollection. You obtain an SAPparameterCollection object from the SACommand.Parameters property of an SACommand object.

**See also**

- [“SAPparameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“Parameters property” on page 213](#)
- [“SAPparameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPparameterCollection class” on page 396](#)

## SAPparameterCollection members

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Count property</a>	Returns the number of SAPparameter objects in the collection.
<a href="#">IsFixedSize property</a>	Gets a value that indicates whether the SAPparameterCollection has a fixed size.
<a href="#">IsReadOnly property</a>	Gets a value that indicates whether the SAPparameterCollection is read-only.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">IsSynchronized property</a>	Gets a value that indicates whether the SAParameterCollection object is synchronized.
<a href="#">Item properties</a>	Gets and sets the SAParameter object at the specified index.
<a href="#">SyncRoot property</a>	Gets an object that can be used to synchronize access to the SAParameterCollection.

### Public methods

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Add methods</a>	Adds an SAParameter object to this collection.
<a href="#">AddRange methods</a>	Adds an array of values to the end of the SAParameterCollection.
<a href="#">AddWithValue method</a>	Adds a value to the end of this collection.
<a href="#">Clear method</a>	Removes all items from the collection.
<a href="#">Contains methods</a>	Indicates whether an SAParameter object exists in the collection.
<a href="#">CopyTo method</a>	Copies SAParameter objects from the SAParameterCollection to the specified array.
<a href="#">GetEnumerator method</a>	Returns an enumerator that iterates through the SAParameterCollection.
<a href="#">IndexOf methods</a>	Returns the location of the SAParameter object in the collection.
<a href="#">Insert method</a>	Inserts an SAParameter object in the collection at the specified index.
<a href="#">Remove method</a>	Removes the specified SAParameter object from the collection.
<a href="#">RemoveAt methods</a>	Removes the specified SAParameter object from the collection.

### See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SACommand class” on page 206](#)
- [“Parameters property” on page 213](#)
- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)

## Count property

Returns the number of SAPparameter objects in the collection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Readonly Property **Count** As Integer

#### C#

```
public override int Count { get;}
```

### Property value

The number of SAPparameter objects in the collection.

### See also

- [“SAPparameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAPparameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“SAPparameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPparameterCollection class” on page 396](#)

## IsFixedSize property

Gets a value that indicates whether the SAPparameterCollection has a fixed size.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Readonly Property **IsFixedSize** As Boolean

#### C#

```
public override bool IsFixedSize { get;}
```

### Property value

True if this collection has a fixed size, false otherwise.

### See also

- [“SAPparameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAPparameterCollection members” on page 396](#)

## IsReadOnly property

Gets a value that indicates whether the SAPparameterCollection is read-only.



## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Readonly Property **IsReadOnly** As Boolean

### C#

```
public override bool IsReadOnly { get;}
```

## Property value

True if this collection is read-only, false otherwise.

## See also

- [“SAPParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAPParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)

## IsSynchronized property

Gets a value that indicates whether the SAPParameterCollection object is synchronized.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Readonly Property **IsSynchronized** As Boolean

### C#

```
public override bool IsSynchronized { get;}
```

## Property value

True if this collection is synchronized, false otherwise.

## See also

- [“SAPParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAPParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)

## Item properties

Gets and sets the SAPParameter object at the specified index.

## Item(Int32) property

Gets and sets the SAPParameter object at the specified index.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Property Item ( _  
    ByVal index As Integer _  
) As SAPParameter
```

### C#

```
public SAPParameter this [  
    int index  
] { get; set; }
```

## Parameters

- **index** The zero-based index of the parameter to retrieve.

## Property value

The SAPParameter at the specified index.

## Remarks

In C#, this property is the indexer for the SAPParameterCollection object.

## See also

- [“SAPParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAPParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“Item properties” on page 399](#)
- [“SAPParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAPParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)

## Item(String) property

Gets and sets the SAPParameter object at the specified index.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Property Item ( _  
    ByVal parameterName As String _  
) As SAPParameter
```

### C#

```
public SAPParameter this [  
    string parameterName  
] { get; set; }
```

## Parameters

- **parameterName** The name of the parameter to retrieve.

### Property value

The SAParameter object with the specified name.

### Remarks

In C#, this property is the indexer for the SAParameterCollection object.

### See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“Item properties” on page 399](#)
- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“Item\(Int32\) property” on page 315](#)
- [“GetOrdinal method” on page 330](#)
- [“GetValue\(Int32\) method” on page 337](#)
- [“GetFieldType method” on page 325](#)

## SyncRoot property

Gets an object that can be used to synchronize access to the SAParameterCollection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Readonly Property **SyncRoot** As Object

#### C#

```
public override object SyncRoot { get;}
```

### See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)

## Add methods

Adds an SAParameter object to this collection.

### Add(Object) method

Adds an SAParameter object to this collection.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function Add( _  
    ByVal value As Object _  
) As Integer
```

### C#

```
public override int Add(  
    object value  
);
```

## Parameters

- **value** The SAPparameter object to add to the collection.

## Return value

The index of the new SAPparameter object.

## See also

- [“SAPparameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAPparameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“Add methods” on page 401](#)
- [“SAPparameter class” on page 382](#)

## Add(SAPparameter) method

Adds an SAPparameter object to this collection.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Function Add( _  
    ByVal value As SAPparameter _  
) As SAPparameter
```

### C#

```
public SAPparameter Add(  
    SAPparameter value  
);
```

## Parameters

- **value** The SAPparameter object to add to the collection.

## Return value

The new SAPparameter object.

**See also**

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“Add methods” on page 401](#)

**Add(String, Object) method**

Adds an SAParameter object to this collection, created using the specified parameter name and value, to the collection.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Function Add( _  
    ByVal parameterName As String, _  
    ByVal value As Object _  
) As SAParameter
```

**C#**

```
public SAParameter Add(  
    string parameterName,  
    object value  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **parameterName** The name of the parameter.
- **value** The value of the parameter to add to the connection.

**Return value**

The new SAParameter object.

**Remarks**

Because of the special treatment of the 0 and 0.0 constants and the way overloaded methods are resolved, it is highly recommended that you explicitly cast constant values to type object when using this method.

**See also**

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“Add methods” on page 401](#)
- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)

**Add(String, SADBType) method**

Adds an SAParameter object to this collection, created using the specified parameter name and data type, to the collection.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Function Add( _  
    ByVal parameterName As String, _  
    ByVal saDbType As SADBType _  
) As SAParameter
```

### C#

```
public SAParameter Add(  
    string parameterName,  
    SADBType saDbType  
);
```

## Parameters

- **parameterName** The name of the parameter.
- **saDbType** One of the SADBType values.

## Return value

The new SAParameter object.

## See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“Add methods” on page 401](#)
- [“SADBType enumeration” on page 343](#)
- [“Add\(SAParameter\) method” on page 402](#)
- [“Add\(String, Object\) method” on page 403](#)

## Add(String, SADBType, Int32) method

Adds an SAParameter object to this collection, created using the specified parameter name, data type, and length, to the collection.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Function Add( _  
    ByVal parameterName As String, _  
    ByVal saDbType As SADBType, _  
    ByVal size As Integer _  
) As SAParameter
```

### C#

```
public SAParameter Add(  
    string parameterName,  
    SADBType saDbType,
```

```
int size  
);
```

### Parameters

- **parameterName** The name of the parameter.
- **saDbType** One of the SADBType values.
- **size** The length of the parameter.

### Return value

The new SAParameter object.

### See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“Add methods” on page 401](#)
- [“SADBType enumeration” on page 343](#)
- [“Add\(SAParameter\) method” on page 402](#)
- [“Add\(String, Object\) method” on page 403](#)

## Add(String, SADBType, Int32, String) method

Adds an SAParameter object to this collection, created using the specified parameter name, data type, length, and source column name, to the collection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function Add(  
    ByVal parameterName As String, _  
    ByVal saDbType As SADBType, _  
    ByVal size As Integer, _  
    ByVal sourceColumn As String _  
) As SAParameter
```

#### C#

```
public SAParameter Add(  
    string parameterName,  
    SADBType saDbType,  
    int size,  
    string sourceColumn  
);
```

### Parameters

- **parameterName** The name of the parameter.
- **saDbType** One of the SADBType values.

- **size** The length of the column.
- **sourceColumn** The name of the source column to map.

### Return value

The new SAParameter object.

### See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“Add methods” on page 401](#)
- [“SADbType enumeration” on page 343](#)
- [“Add\(SAParameter\) method” on page 402](#)
- [“Add\(String, Object\) method” on page 403](#)

## AddRange methods

Adds an array of values to the end of the SAParameterCollection.

### AddRange(Array) method

Adds an array of values to the end of the SAParameterCollection.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Sub AddRange( _  
    ByVal values As Array _  
)
```

##### C#

```
public override void AddRange(  
    Array values  
);
```

#### Parameters

- **values** The values to add.

### See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“AddRange methods” on page 406](#)



## AddRange(SAPParameter[]) method

Adds an array of values to the end of the SAPParameterCollection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub AddRange( _  
    ByVal values As SAPParameter() _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public void AddRange(  
    SAPParameter[] values  
);
```

### Parameters

- **values** An array of SAPParameter objects to add to the end of this collection.

### See also

- [“SAPParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAPParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“AddRange methods” on page 406](#)

## AddWithValue method

Adds a value to the end of this collection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Function AddWithValue( _  
    ByVal parameterName As String, _  
    ByVal value As Object _  
) As SAPParameter
```

#### C#

```
public SAPParameter AddWithValue(  
    string parameterName,  
    object value  
);
```

### Parameters

- **parameterName** The name of the parameter.
- **value** The value to be added.

### Return value

The new SAParameter object.

### See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)

## Clear method

Removes all items from the collection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Sub Clear()
```

#### C#

```
public override void Clear();
```

### See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)

## Contains methods

Indicates whether an SAParameter object exists in the collection.

### Contains(Object) method

Indicates whether an SAParameter object exists in the collection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function Contains( _  
    ByVal value As Object _  
) As Boolean
```

#### C#

```
public override bool Contains(  
    object value  
);
```

## Parameters

- **value** The SAParameter object to find.

## Return value

True if the collection contains the SAParameter object. Otherwise, false.

## See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“Contains methods” on page 408](#)
- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“Contains\(String\) method” on page 409](#)

## Contains(String) method

Indicates whether an SAParameter object exists in the collection.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function Contains( _  
    ByVal value As String _  
) As Boolean
```

### C#

```
public override bool Contains(  
    string value  
);
```

## Parameters

- **value** The name of the parameter to search for.

## Return value

True if the collection contains the SAParameter object. Otherwise, false.

## See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“Contains methods” on page 408](#)
- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“Contains\(Object\) method” on page 408](#)

## CopyTo method

Copies SAParameter objects from the SAParameterCollection to the specified array.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Sub CopyTo( _  
    ByVal array As Array, _  
    ByVal index As Integer _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public override void CopyTo(  
    Array array,  
    int index  
);
```

### Parameters

- **array** The array to copy the SAParameter objects into.
- **index** The starting index of the array.

### See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)

## GetEnumerator method

Returns an enumerator that iterates through the SAParameterCollection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function GetEnumerator() As IEnumerator
```

#### C#

```
public override IEnumerator GetEnumerator();
```

### Return value

An [IEnumerator](#) for the SAParameterCollection object.

### See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)

## IndexOf methods

Returns the location of the SAParameter object in the collection.

### IndexOf(Object) method

Returns the location of the SAParameter object in the collection.

#### Syntax

##### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function IndexOf( _  
    ByVal value As Object _  
) As Integer
```

##### C#

```
public override int IndexOf(  
    object value  
);
```

#### Parameters

- **value** The SAParameter object to locate.

#### Return value

The zero-based location of the SAParameter object in the collection.

### See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“IndexOf methods” on page 411](#)
- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“IndexOf\(String\) method” on page 411](#)

### IndexOf(String) method

Returns the location of the SAParameter object in the collection.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Function IndexOf( _  
    ByVal parameterName As String _  
) As Integer
```

### C#

```
public override int IndexOf(  
    string parameterName  
);
```

## Parameters

- **parameterName** The name of the parameter to locate.

## Return value

The zero-based index of the SAParameter object in the collection.

## See also

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“IndexOf methods” on page 411](#)
- [“SAParameter class” on page 382](#)
- [“IndexOf\(Object\) method” on page 411](#)

## Insert method

Inserts an SAParameter object in the collection at the specified index.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Sub Insert( _  
    ByVal index As Integer, _  
    ByVal value As Object _  
)
```

### C#

```
public override void Insert(  
    int index,  
    object value  
);
```

## Parameters

- **index** The zero-based index where the parameter is to be inserted within the collection.
- **value** The SAParameter object to add to the collection.

**See also**

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)

## Remove method

Removes the specified SAParameter object from the collection.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Sub Remove( _  
    ByVal value As Object _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public override void Remove(  
    object value  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **value** The SAParameter object to remove from the collection.

**See also**

- [“SAParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)

## RemoveAt methods

Removes the specified SAParameter object from the collection.

### RemoveAt(Int32) method

Removes the specified SAParameter object from the collection.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Sub RemoveAt( _  
    ByVal index As Integer _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public override void RemoveAt(
```

```
int index
);
```

### Parameters

- **index** The zero-based index of the parameter to remove.

### See also

- [“SAPParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAPParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“RemoveAt methods” on page 413](#)
- [“RemoveAt\(String\) method” on page 414](#)

## RemoveAt(String) method

Removes the specified SAPParameter object from the collection.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Overrides Sub RemoveAt( _  
    ByVal parameterName As String _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public override void RemoveAt(  
    string parameterName  
);
```

### Parameters

- **parameterName** The name of the SAPParameter object to remove.

### See also

- [“SAPParameterCollection class” on page 396](#)
- [“SAPParameterCollection members” on page 396](#)
- [“RemoveAt methods” on page 413](#)
- [“RemoveAt\(Int32\) method” on page 413](#)

## SAPPermission class

Enables the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider to ensure that a user has a security level adequate to access a SQL Anywhere data source. This class cannot be inherited.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic



Public NotInheritable Class **SAPermission**  
Inherits DBDataPermission

**C#**

```
public sealed class SAPermission : DBDataPermission
```

**Remarks**

Base classes [DBDataPermission](#)

**See also**

- “[SAPermission members](#)” on page 415

## SAPermission members

**Public constructors**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SAPermission constructor</a>	Initializes a new instance of the SAPermission class.

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">AllowBlankPassword</a> (inherited from DBDataPermission)	Gets a value indicating whether a blank password is allowed.

**Public methods**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Add</a> (inherited from DBDataPermission)	Adds access for the specified connection string to the existing state of the DBDataPermission.
<a href="#">Assert</a> (inherited from CodeAccessPermission)	Declares that the calling code can access the resource protected by a permission demand through the code that calls this method, even if callers higher in the stack have not been granted permission to access the resource. Using <a href="#">CodeAccessPermission.Assert</a> can create security issues.
<a href="#">Copy</a> (inherited from DBDataPermission)	Creates and returns an identical copy of the current permission object.
<a href="#">Demand</a> (inherited from CodeAccessPermission)	Forces a <a href="#">SecurityException</a> at run time if all callers higher in the call stack have not been granted the permission specified by the current instance.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Deny</a> (inherited from <a href="#">CodeAccessPermission</a> )	Prevents callers higher in the call stack from using the code that calls this method to access the resource specified by the current instance.
<a href="#">Equals</a> (inherited from <a href="#">CodeAccessPermission</a> )	Determines whether the specified <a href="#">CodeAccessPermission</a> object is equal to the current <a href="#">CodeAccessPermission</a> .
<a href="#">FromXml</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DBDataPermission</a> )	Reconstructs a security object with a specified state from an XML encoding.
<a href="#">GetHashCode</a> (inherited from <a href="#">CodeAccessPermission</a> )	Gets a hash code for the <a href="#">CodeAccessPermission</a> object that is suitable for use in hashing algorithms and data structures such as a hash table.
<a href="#">Intersect</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DBDataPermission</a> )	Returns a new permission object representing the intersection of the current permission object and the specified permission object.
<a href="#">IsSubsetOf</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DBDataPermission</a> )	Returns a value indicating whether the current permission object is a subset of the specified permission object.
<a href="#">IsUnrestricted</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DBDataPermission</a> )	Returns a value indicating whether the permission can be represented as unrestricted without any knowledge of the permission semantics.
<a href="#">PermitOnly</a> (inherited from <a href="#">CodeAccessPermission</a> )	Prevents callers higher in the call stack from using the code that calls this method to access all resources except for the resource specified by the current instance.
<a href="#">ToString</a> (inherited from <a href="#">CodeAccessPermission</a> )	Creates and returns a string representation of the current permission object.
<a href="#">ToXml</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DBDataPermission</a> )	Creates an XML encoding of the security object and its current state.
<a href="#">Union</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DBDataPermission</a> )	Returns a new permission object that is the union of the current and specified permission objects.

**See also**

- [“SAPermission class” on page 414](#)

**SAPermission constructor**

Initializes a new instance of the SAPermission class.

**Syntax**

**Visual Basic**

Public Sub **New**( \_

```
    ByVal state As PermissionState _
)
```

**C#**

```
public SAPermission(
    PermissionState state
);
```

**Parameters**

- **state** One of the PermissionState values.

**See also**

- [“SAPermission class” on page 414](#)
- [“SAPermission members” on page 415](#)

## SAPermissionAttribute class

Associates a security action with a custom security attribute. This class cannot be inherited.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public NotInheritable Class SAPermissionAttribute
    Inherits DBDataPermissionAttribute
```

**C#**

```
public sealed class SAPermissionAttribute : DBDataPermissionAttribute
```

**See also**

- [“SAPermissionAttribute members” on page 417](#)

## SAPermissionAttribute members

**Public constructors**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SAPermissionAttribute constructor</a>	Initializes a new instance of the SAPermissionAttribute class.

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Action</a> (inherited from SecurityAttribute)	Gets or sets a security action.
<a href="#">AllowBlankPassword</a> (inherited from DBDataPermissionAttribute)	Gets or sets a value indicating whether a blank password is allowed.
<a href="#">ConnectionString</a> (inherited from DBDataPermissionAttribute)	Gets or sets a permitted connection string.
<a href="#">KeyRestrictionBehavior</a> (inherited from DBDataPermissionAttribute)	Identifies whether the list of connection string parameters identified by the <a href="#">DBDataPermissionAttribute.KeyRestrictions</a> are the only connection string parameters allowed.
<a href="#">KeyRestrictions</a> (inherited from DBDataPermissionAttribute)	Gets or sets connection string parameters that are allowed or disallowed.
<a href="#">TypeId</a> (inherited from Attribute)	When implemented in a derived class, gets a unique identifier for this <a href="#">Attribute</a> .
<a href="#">Unrestricted</a> (inherited from SecurityAttribute)	Gets or sets a value indicating whether full (unrestricted) permission to the resource protected by the attribute is declared.

**Public methods**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">CreatePermission method</a>	Returns an SAPermission object that is configured according to the attribute properties.
<a href="#">Equals</a> (inherited from Attribute)	Returns a value that indicates whether this instance is equal to a specified object.
<a href="#">GetHashCode</a> (inherited from Attribute)	Returns the hash code for this instance.
<a href="#">IsDefaultAttribute</a> (inherited from Attribute)	When overridden in a derived class, indicates whether the value of this instance is the default value for the derived class.
<a href="#">Match</a> (inherited from Attribute)	When overridden in a derived class, returns a value that indicates whether this instance equals a specified object.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">ShouldSerializeConnectionString</a> (inherited from DBDataPermissionAttribute)	Identifies whether the attribute should serialize the connection string.
<a href="#">ShouldSerializeKeyRestrictions</a> (inherited from DBDataPermissionAttribute)	Identifies whether the attribute should serialize the set of key restrictions.

**See also**

- [“SAPermissionAttribute class” on page 417](#)

## SAPermissionAttribute constructor

Initializes a new instance of the SAPermissionAttribute class.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New( _
    ByVal action As SecurityAction _
)
```

**C#**

```
public SAPermissionAttribute(
    SecurityAction action
);
```

**Parameters**

- **action** One of the SecurityAction values representing an action that can be performed using declarative security.

**See also**

- [“SAPermissionAttribute class” on page 417](#)
- [“SAPermissionAttribute members” on page 417](#)

## CreatePermission method

Returns an SAPermission object that is configured according to the attribute properties.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Overrides Function CreatePermission() As IPermission
```

**C#**

```
public override IPPermission CreatePermission();
```

**See also**

- [“SAPermissionAttribute class” on page 417](#)
- [“SAPermissionAttribute members” on page 417](#)

## SARowsCopiedEventArgs class

Represents the set of arguments passed to the SARowsCopiedEventHandler. This class cannot be inherited.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public NotInheritable Class SARowsCopiedEventArgs
```

**C#**

```
public sealed class SARowsCopiedEventArgs
```

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The SARowsCopiedEventArgs class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SARowsCopiedEventArgs members” on page 420](#)

## SARowsCopiedEventArgs members

**Public constructors**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SARowsCopiedEventArgs constructor</a>	Creates a new instance of the SARowsCopiedEventArgs object.

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Abort property</a>	Gets or sets a value that indicates whether the bulk-copy operation should be aborted.
<a href="#">RowsCopied property</a>	Gets the number of rows copied during the current bulk-copy operation.

**See also**

- [“SARowsCopiedEventArgs class” on page 420](#)

## SARowsCopiedEventArgs constructor

Creates a new instance of the SARowsCopiedEventArgs object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal rowsCopied As Long _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public SARowsCopiedEventArgs(  
    long rowsCopied  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **rowsCopied** An 64-bit integer value that indicates the number of rows copied during the current bulk-copy operation.

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The SARowsCopiedEventArgs class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**See also**

- [“SARowsCopiedEventArgs class” on page 420](#)
- [“SARowsCopiedEventArgs members” on page 420](#)

## Abort property

Gets or sets a value that indicates whether the bulk-copy operation should be aborted.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Property Abort As Boolean
```

**C#**

```
public bool Abort { get; set; }
```

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The SARowsCopiedEventArgs class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SARowsCopiedEventArgs class” on page 420](#)
- [“SARowsCopiedEventArgs members” on page 420](#)

## RowsCopied property

Gets the number of rows copied during the current bulk-copy operation.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Readonly Property **RowsCopied** As Long

#### C#

```
public long RowsCopied { get;}
```

### Remarks

**Restrictions:** The SARowsCopiedEventArgs class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SARowsCopiedEventArgs class” on page 420](#)
- [“SARowsCopiedEventArgs members” on page 420](#)

## SARowsCopiedEventHandler delegate

Represents the method that handles the SABulkCopy.SARowsCopied event of an SABulkCopy.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Delegate Sub SARowsCopiedEventHandler( _  
    ByVal sender As Object, _  
    ByVal rowsCopiedEventArgs As SARowsCopiedEventArgs _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public delegate void SARowsCopiedEventHandler(  
    object sender,  
    SARowsCopiedEventArgs rowsCopiedEventArgs  
);
```

### Remarks

**Restrictions:** The SARowsCopiedEventHandler delegate is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.



**See also**

- [“SABulkCopy class” on page 178](#)

## SARowUpdatedEventArgs class

Provides data for the RowUpdated event. This class cannot be inherited.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public NotInheritable Class **SARowUpdatedEventArgs**  
Inherits RowUpdatedEventArgs

**C#**

```
public sealed class SARowUpdatedEventArgs : RowUpdatedEventArgs
```

**See also**

- [“SARowUpdatedEventArgs members” on page 423](#)

## SARowUpdatedEventArgs members

**Public constructors**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SARowUpdatedEventArgs constructor</a>	Initializes a new instance of the SARowUpdatedEventArgs class.

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Command property</a>	Gets the SACommand that is executed when <a href="#">DataAdapter.Update</a> is called.
<a href="#">Errors</a> (inherited from RowUpdatedEventArgs)	Gets any errors generated by the .NET Framework data provider when the <a href="#">RowUpdatedEventArgs.Command</a> was executed.
<a href="#">RecordsAffected property</a>	Returns the number of rows changed, inserted, or deleted by execution of the SQL statement.
<a href="#">Row</a> (inherited from RowUpdatedEventArgs)	Gets the <a href="#">DataRow</a> sent through an <a href="#">DbDataAdapter.Update</a> .

Member name	Description
<a href="#">RowCount</a> (inherited from RowUpdatedEventArgs)	Gets the number of rows processed in a batch of updated records.
<a href="#">StatementType</a> (inherited from RowUpdatedEventArgs)	Gets the type of SQL statement executed.
<a href="#">Status</a> (inherited from RowUpdatedEventArgs)	Gets the <a href="#">UpdateStatus</a> of the <a href="#">RowUpdatedEventArgs.Command</a> .
<a href="#">TableMapping</a> (inherited from RowUpdatedEventArgs)	Gets the <a href="#">DataTableMapping</a> sent through an <a href="#">DbDataAdapter.Update</a> .

### Public methods

Member name	Description
<a href="#">CopyToRows</a> (inherited from RowUpdatedEventArgs)	Copies references to the modified rows into the provided array.

### See also

- [“SARowUpdatedEventArgs class” on page 423](#)

## SARowUpdatedEventArgs constructor

Initializes a new instance of the SARowUpdatedEventArgs class.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal row As DataRow, _  
    ByVal command As IDbCommand, _  
    ByVal statementType As StatementType, _  
    ByVal tableMapping As DataTableMapping _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public SARowUpdatedEventArgs(  
    DataRow row,  
    IDbCommand command,  
    StatementType statementType,  
    DataTableMapping tableMapping  
);
```

## Parameters

- **row** The DataRow sent through an Update.
- **command** The IDbCommand executed when Update is called.
- **statementType** One of the StatementType values that specifies the type of query executed.
- **tableMapping** The DataTableMapping sent through an Update.

## See also

- [“SARowUpdatedEventArgs class” on page 423](#)
- [“SARowUpdatedEventArgs members” on page 423](#)

## Command property

Gets the SACommand that is executed when [DataAdapter.Update](#) is called.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Readonly Property **Command** As SACommand

#### C#

```
public SACommand Command { get;}
```

### See also

- [“SARowUpdatedEventArgs class” on page 423](#)
- [“SARowUpdatedEventArgs members” on page 423](#)

## RecordsAffected property

Returns the number of rows changed, inserted, or deleted by execution of the SQL statement.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Readonly Property **RecordsAffected** As Integer

#### C#

```
public int RecordsAffected { get;}
```

### Property value

The number of rows changed, inserted, or deleted; 0 if no rows were affected or the statement failed; and -1 for SELECT statements.

### See also

- [“SARowUpdatedEventArgs class” on page 423](#)
- [“SARowUpdatedEventArgs members” on page 423](#)

## SARowUpdatedEventHandler delegate

Represents the method that handles the RowUpdated event of an SADATAAdapter.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Delegate Sub SARowUpdatedEventHandler( _  
    ByVal sender As Object, _  
    ByVal e As SARowUpdatedEventArgs _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public delegate void SARowUpdatedEventHandler(  
    object sender,  
    SARowUpdatedEventArgs e  
);
```

## SARowUpdatingEventArgs class

Provides data for the RowUpdating event. This class cannot be inherited.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public NotInheritable Class SARowUpdatingEventArgs  
    Inherits RowUpdatingEventArgs
```

#### C#

```
public sealed class SARowUpdatingEventArgs : RowUpdatingEventArgs
```

### See also

- [“SARowUpdatingEventArgs members” on page 427](#)

## SARowUpdatingEventArgs members

### Public constructors

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SARowUpdatingEventArgs constructor</a>	Initializes a new instance of the SARowUpdatingEventArgs class.

### Public properties

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Command property</a>	Specifies the SACommand to execute when performing the Update.
<a href="#">Errors</a> (inherited from RowUpdatingEventArgs)	Gets any errors generated by the .NET Framework data provider when the <a href="#">RowUpdatedEventArgs.Command</a> executes.
<a href="#">Row</a> (inherited from RowUpdatingEventArgs)	Gets the <a href="#">DataRow</a> that will be sent to the server as part of an insert, update, or delete operation.
<a href="#">StatementType</a> (inherited from RowUpdatingEventArgs)	Gets the type of SQL statement to execute.
<a href="#">Status</a> (inherited from RowUpdatingEventArgs)	Gets or sets the <a href="#">UpdateStatus</a> of the <a href="#">RowUpdatedEventArgs.Command</a> .
<a href="#">TableMapping</a> (inherited from RowUpdatingEventArgs)	Gets the <a href="#">DataTableMapping</a> to send through the <a href="#">DbDataAdapter.Update</a> .

### See also

- [“SARowUpdatingEventArgs class” on page 426](#)

## SARowUpdatingEventArgs constructor

Initializes a new instance of the SARowUpdatingEventArgs class.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _
    ByVal row As DataRow, _
    ByVal command As IDbCommand, _
    ByVal statementType As StatementType, _
    ByVal tableMapping As DataTableMapping _
)
```

**C#**

```
public SARowUpdatingEventArgs(  
    DataRow row,  
    IDbCommand command,  
    StatementType statementType,  
    DataTableMapping tableMapping  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **row** The DataRow to update.
- **command** The IDbCommand to execute during update.
- **statementType** One of the StatementType values that specifies the type of query executed.
- **tableMapping** The DataTableMapping sent through an Update.

**See also**

- [“SARowUpdatingEventArgs class” on page 426](#)
- [“SARowUpdatingEventArgs members” on page 427](#)

## Command property

Specifies the SACommand to execute when performing the Update.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Property Command As SACommand
```

**C#**

```
public SACommand Command { get; set; }
```

**See also**

- [“SARowUpdatingEventArgs class” on page 426](#)
- [“SARowUpdatingEventArgs members” on page 427](#)

## SARowUpdatingEventHandler delegate

Represents the method that handles the RowUpdating event of an SADATAAdapter.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Delegate Sub SARowUpdatingEventHandler( _  
    ByVal sender As Object, _
```

```
ByVal e As SARowUpdatingEventArgs _
)
```

**C#**

```
public delegate void SARowUpdatingEventHandler(
    object sender,
    SARowUpdatingEventArgs e
);
```

## SATcpOptionsBuilder class

Provides a simple way to create and manage the TCP options portion of connection strings used by the SAConnection object. This class cannot be inherited.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public NotInheritable Class SATcpOptionsBuilder
    Inherits SAConnectionStringBuilderBase
```

**C#**

```
public sealed class SATcpOptionsBuilder : SAConnectionStringBuilderBase
```

### Remarks

**Restrictions:** The SATcpOptionsBuilder class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)
- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)

## SATcpOptionsBuilder members

### Public constructors

Member name	Description
<a href="#">SATcpOptionsBuilder constructors</a>	Initializes a new instance of the “ <a href="#">SATcpOptionsBuilder class</a> ” on page 429.

### Public properties

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Broadcast property</a>	Gets or sets the Broadcast option.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">BroadcastListener</a> property	Gets or sets the BroadcastListener option.
<a href="#">BrowsableConnectionString</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets or sets a value that indicates whether the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder.ConnectionString</a> is visible in Visual Studio designers.
<a href="#">ClientPort</a> property	Gets or sets the ClientPort option.
<a href="#">ConnectionString</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets or sets the connection string associated with the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">Count</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets the current number of keys that are contained within the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder.ConnectionString</a> .
<a href="#">DoBroadcast</a> property	Gets or sets the DoBroadcast option.
<a href="#">Host</a> property	Gets or sets the Host option.
<a href="#">IPv6</a> property	Gets or sets the IPV6 option.
<a href="#">IsFixedSize</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets a value that indicates whether the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> has a fixed size.
<a href="#">IsReadOnly</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets a value that indicates whether the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> is read-only.
<a href="#">Item</a> property (inherited from <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilderBase</a> )	Gets or sets the value of the connection keyword.
<a href="#">Keys</a> property (inherited from <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilderBase</a> )	Gets an <a href="#">System.Collections.ICollection</a> that contains the keys in the <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">LDAP</a> property	Gets or sets the LDAP option.
<a href="#">LocalOnly</a> property	Gets or sets the LocalOnly option.
<a href="#">MyIP</a> property	Gets or sets the MyIP option.
<a href="#">ReceiveBufferSize</a> property	Gets or sets the ReceiveBufferSize option.
<a href="#">SendBufferSize</a> property	Gets or sets the Send BufferSize option.
<a href="#">ServerPort</a> property	Gets or sets the ServerPort option.



Member name	Description
<a href="#">TDS property</a>	Gets or sets the TDS option.
<a href="#">Timeout property</a>	Gets or sets the Timeout option.
<a href="#">Values</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Gets an <a href="#">ICollection</a> that contains the values in the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">VerifyServerName property</a>	Gets or sets the VerifyServerName option.

**Public methods**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Add</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Adds an entry with the specified key and value into the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> .
<a href="#">Clear</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Clears the contents of the <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> instance.
<a href="#">ContainsKey method</a> (inherited from <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilderBase</a> )	Determines whether the <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilder</a> object contains a specific keyword.
<a href="#">EquivalentTo</a> (inherited from <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> )	Compares the connection information in this <a href="#">DbConnectionStringBuilder</a> object with the connection information in the supplied object.
<a href="#">GetKeyword method</a> (inherited from <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilderBase</a> )	Gets the keyword for specified <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilder</a> property.
<a href="#">GetUseLongNameAsKeyword method</a> (inherited from <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilderBase</a> )	Gets a boolean values that indicates whether long connection parameter names are used in the connection string.
<a href="#">Remove method</a> (inherited from <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilderBase</a> )	Removes the entry with the specified key from the <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilder</a> instance.
<a href="#">SetUseLongNameAsKeyword method</a> (inherited from <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilderBase</a> )	Sets a boolean value that indicates whether long connection parameter names are used in the connection string. Long connection parameter names are used by default.
<a href="#">ShouldSerialize method</a> (inherited from <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilderBase</a> )	Indicates whether the specified key exists in this <a href="#">SAConnectionStringBuilder</a> instance.

Member name	Description
<a href="#">ToString method</a>	Converts the TcpOptionsBuilder object to a string representation.
<a href="#">TryGetValue method</a> (inherited from SAConnectionStringBuilderBase)	Retrieves a value corresponding to the supplied key from this SAConnectionStringBuilder.

**See also**

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SAConnection class” on page 246](#)

## SATcpOptionsBuilder constructors

Initializes a new instance of the [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#).

### SATcpOptionsBuilder() constructor

Initializes an SATcpOptionsBuilder object.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

```
Public Sub New()
```

**C#**

```
public SATcpOptionsBuilder();
```

**Remarks**

**Restrictions:** The SATcpOptionsBuilder class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

**Example**

The following statement initializes an SATcpOptionsBuilder object.

```
SATcpOptionsBuilder options = new SATcpOptionsBuilder( );
```

**See also**

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder constructors” on page 432](#)

## SATcpOptionsBuilder(String) constructor

Initializes an SATcpOptionsBuilder object.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub New( _  
    ByVal options As String _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public SATcpOptionsBuilder(  
    string options  
);
```

### Parameters

- **options** A SQL Anywhere TCP connection parameter options string.

For a list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### Remarks

**Restrictions:** The SATcpOptionsBuilder class is not available in the .NET Compact Framework 2.0.

### Example

The following statement initializes an SATcpOptionsBuilder object.

```
SATcpOptionsBuilder options = new SATcpOptionsBuilder( );
```

### See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder constructors” on page 432](#)

## Broadcast property

Gets or sets the Broadcast option.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Property Broadcast As String
```

#### C#

```
public string Broadcast { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## BroadcastListener property

Gets or sets the BroadcastListener option.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **BroadcastListener** As String

#### C#

```
public string BroadcastListener { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## ClientPort property

Gets or sets the ClientPort option.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **ClientPort** As String

#### C#

```
public string ClientPort { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## DoBroadcast property

Gets or sets the DoBroadcast option.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **DoBroadcast** As String

### C#

```
public string DoBroadcast { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## Host property

Gets or sets the Host option.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **Host** As String

### C#

```
public string Host { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## IPV6 property

Gets or sets the IPV6 option.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **IPV6** As String

### C#

```
public string IPV6 { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## LDAP property

Gets or sets the LDAP option.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **LDAP** As String

#### C#

```
public string LDAP { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## LocalOnly property

Gets or sets the LocalOnly option.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **LocalOnly** As String

#### C#

```
public string LocalOnly { get; set; }
```

### See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## MyIP property

Gets or sets the MyIP option.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **MyIP** As String

#### C#

```
public string MyIP { get; set; }
```

**See also**

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## ReceiveBufferSize property

Gets or sets the ReceiveBufferSize option.

**Syntax**

**Visual Basic**

Public Property **ReceiveBufferSize** As Integer

**C#**

```
public int ReceiveBufferSize { get; set; }
```

**See also**

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## SendBufferSize property

Gets or sets the Send BufferSize option.

**Syntax**

**Visual Basic**

Public Property **SendBufferSize** As Integer

**C#**

```
public int SendBufferSize { get; set; }
```

**See also**

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## ServerPort property

Gets or sets the ServerPort option.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **ServerPort** As String

### C#

```
public string ServerPort { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## TDS property

Gets or sets the TDS option.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **TDS** As String

### C#

```
public string TDS { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## Timeout property

Gets or sets the Timeout option.

## Syntax

### Visual Basic

Public Property **Timeout** As Integer

### C#

```
public int Timeout { get; set; }
```

## See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)



## VerifyServerName property

Gets or sets the VerifyServerName option.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Property **VerifyServerName** As String

#### C#

public string **VerifyServerName** { get; set; }

### See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## ToString method

Converts the TcpOptionsBuilder object to a string representation.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Function **ToString()** As String

#### C#

public override string **ToString();**

### Return value

The options string being built.

### See also

- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder class” on page 429](#)
- [“SATcpOptionsBuilder members” on page 429](#)

## SATransaction class

Represents a SQL transaction. This class cannot be inherited.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public NotInheritable Class **SATransaction**  
Inherits DbTransaction

**C#**

```
public sealed class SATransaction : DbTransaction
```

**Remarks**

There is no constructor for SATransaction. To obtain an SATransaction object, use one of the BeginTransaction methods. To associate a command with a transaction, use the SACommand.Transaction property.

For more information, see [“Transaction processing” on page 136](#) and [“Inserting, updating, and deleting rows using the SACommand object” on page 120](#).

**See also**

- [“SATransaction members” on page 440](#)
- [“BeginTransaction\(\) method” on page 254](#)
- [“BeginTransaction\(SAIsolationLevel\) method” on page 256](#)
- [“Transaction property” on page 214](#)

## SATransaction members

**Public properties**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Connection property</a>	The SAConnection object associated with the transaction, or a null reference (Nothing in Visual Basic) if the transaction is no longer valid.
<a href="#">IsolationLevel property</a>	Specifies the isolation level for this transaction.
<a href="#">SAIsolationLevel property</a>	Specifies the isolation level for this transaction.

**Public methods**

Member name	Description
<a href="#">Commit method</a>	Commits the database transaction.
<a href="#">Dispose</a> (inherited from DbTransaction)	Releases the unmanaged resources used by the <a href="#">DbTransaction</a> .
<a href="#">Rollback methods</a>	Rolls back a transaction from a pending state.
<a href="#">Save method</a>	Creates a savepoint in the transaction that can be used to roll back a portion of the transaction, and specifies the savepoint name.

**See also**

- [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#)
- [“BeginTransaction\(\) method” on page 254](#)
- [“BeginTransaction\(SAIsolationLevel\) method” on page 256](#)
- [“Transaction property” on page 214](#)

## Connection property

The SAConnection object associated with the transaction, or a null reference (Nothing in Visual Basic) if the transaction is no longer valid.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Readonly Property **Connection** As SAConnection

**C#**

```
public SAConnection Connection { get;}
```

**Remarks**

A single application can have multiple database connections, each with zero or more transactions. This property enables you to determine the connection object associated with a particular transaction created by BeginTransaction.

**See also**

- [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#)
- [“SATransaction members” on page 440](#)

## IsolationLevel property

Specifies the isolation level for this transaction.

**Syntax****Visual Basic**

Public Overrides Readonly Property **IsolationLevel** As IsolationLevel

**C#**

```
public override IsolationLevel IsolationLevel { get;}
```

### Property value

The isolation level for this transaction. This can be one of:

- ReadCommitted
- ReadUncommitted
- RepeatableRead
- Serializable
- Snapshot
- ReadOnlySnapshot
- StatementSnapshot

The default is ReadCommitted.

### See also

- [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#)
- [“SATransaction members” on page 440](#)

## SAIsolationLevel property

Specifies the isolation level for this transaction.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Readonly Property **SAIsolationLevel** As SAIsolationLevel

#### C#

```
public SAIsolationLevel SAIsolationLevel { get;}
```

### Property value

The IsolationLevel for this transaction. This can be one of:

- Chaos
- Read ReadCommitted
- ReadOnlySnapshot
- ReadUncommitted
- RepeatableRead
- Serializable
- Snapshot
- StatementSnapshot
- Unspecified

The default is ReadCommitted.

### Remarks

Parallel transactions are not supported. Therefore, the IsolationLevel applies to the entire transaction.

### See also

- [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#)
- [“SATransaction members” on page 440](#)

## Commit method

Commits the database transaction.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Sub **Commit()**

#### C#

public override void **Commit();**

### See also

- [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#)
- [“SATransaction members” on page 440](#)

## Rollback methods

Rolls back a transaction from a pending state.

### Rollback() method

Rolls back a transaction from a pending state.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

Public Overrides Sub **Rollback()**

#### C#

public override void **Rollback();**

### Remarks

The transaction can only be rolled back from a pending state (after BeginTransaction has been called, but before Commit is called).

### See also

- [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#)
- [“SATransaction members” on page 440](#)
- [“Rollback methods” on page 443](#)

## Rollback(String) method

Rolls back a transaction from a pending state.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub Rollback( _  
    ByVal savePoint As String _  
)
```

#### C#

```
public void Rollback(  
    string savePoint  
);
```

### Parameters

- **savePoint** The name of the savepoint to roll back to.

### Remarks

The transaction can only be rolled back from a pending state (after BeginTransaction has been called, but before Commit is called).

### See also

- [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#)
- [“SATransaction members” on page 440](#)
- [“Rollback methods” on page 443](#)

## Save method

Creates a savepoint in the transaction that can be used to roll back a portion of the transaction, and specifies the savepoint name.

### Syntax

#### Visual Basic

```
Public Sub Save( _  
    ByVal savePoint As String _  
)
```

**C#**

```
public void Save(  
    string savePoint  
);
```

**Parameters**

- **savePoint** The name of the savepoint to which to roll back.

**See also**

- [“SATransaction class” on page 439](#)
- [“SATransaction members” on page 440](#)

---



---

# SQL Anywhere OLE DB and ADO development

## Contents

Introduction to OLE DB ..... 448

ADO programming with SQL Anywhere ..... 449

Setting up a Microsoft Linked Server using OLE DB ..... 456

Supported OLE DB interfaces ..... 457

---

## Introduction to OLE DB

OLE DB is a data access model from Microsoft. It uses the Component Object Model (COM) interfaces and, unlike ODBC, OLE DB does not assume that the data source uses a SQL query processor.

SQL Anywhere includes an **OLE DB provider** named **SAOLEDB**. This provider is available for current Windows platforms. The provider is not available for Windows Mobile platforms.

You can also access SQL Anywhere using the Microsoft OLE DB Provider for ODBC (MSDASQL), together with the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver.

Using the SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider brings several benefits:

- Some features, such as updating through a cursor, are not available using the OLE DB/ODBC bridge.
- If you use the SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider, ODBC is not required in your deployment.
- MSDASQL allows OLE DB clients to work with any ODBC driver, but does not guarantee that you can use the full range of functionality of each ODBC driver. Using the SQL Anywhere provider, you can get full access to SQL Anywhere features from OLE DB programming environments.

## Supported platforms

The SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider is designed to work with OLE DB 2.5 and later.

For a list of supported platforms, see <http://www.sybase.com/detail?id=1061806>.

## Distributed transactions

The OLE DB driver can be used as a resource manager in a distributed transaction environment.

For more information, see “[Three-tier computing and distributed transactions](#)” on page 65.

## ADO programming with SQL Anywhere

ADO (ActiveX Data Objects) is a data access object model exposed through an Automation interface, which allows client applications to discover the methods and properties of objects at runtime without any prior knowledge of the object. Automation allows scripting languages like Visual Basic to use a standard data access object model. ADO uses OLE DB to provide data access.

Using the SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider, you get full access to SQL Anywhere features from an ADO programming environment.

This section describes how to perform basic tasks while using ADO from Visual Basic. It is not a complete guide to programming using ADO.

Code samples from this section can be found in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\VBSampler\vbsampler.sln* project file.

For information about programming in ADO, see your development tool documentation.

## Connecting to a database with the Connection object

This section describes a simple Visual Basic routine that connects to a database.

### Sample code

You can try this routine by placing a command button named Command1 on a form, and pasting the routine into its Click event. Run the program and click the button to connect and then disconnect.

```
Private Sub cmdTestConnection_Click( _
    ByVal eventSender As System.Object, _
    ByVal eventArgs As System.EventArgs) _
    Handles cmdTestConnection.Click

    ' Declare variables
    Dim myConn As New ADODB.Connection
    Dim myCommand As New ADODB.Command
    Dim cAffected As Integer

    On Error GoTo HandleError

    ' Establish the connection
    myConn.Provider = "SAOLEDB"
    myConn.ConnectionString = _
        "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo"
    myConn.Open()
    MsgBox("Connection succeeded")
    myConn.Close()
    Exit Sub

HandleError:
    MsgBox(ErrorToString(Err.Number))
    Exit Sub
End Sub
```

### Notes

The sample carries out the following tasks:

- It declares the variables used in the routine.
- It establishes a connection, using the SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider, to the sample database.
- It uses a Command object to execute a simple statement, which displays a message in the database server messages window.
- It closes the connection.

When the SAOLEDB provider is installed, it registers itself. This registration process includes making registry entries in the COM section of the registry, so that ADO can locate the DLL when the SAOLEDB provider is called. If you change the location of your DLL, you must re-register it.

### To register the OLE DB provider

1. Open a command prompt.
2. Change to the directory where the OLE DB provider is installed.
3. Enter the following commands to register the provider:

```
regsvr32 dboledb11.dll
regsvr32 dboledball.dll
```

For more information about connecting to a database using OLE DB, see [“Connecting to a database using OLE DB” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## Executing statements with the Command object

This section describes a simple routine that sends a simple SQL statement to the database.

### Sample code

You can try this routine by placing a command button named Command2 on a form, and pasting the routine into its Click event. Run the program and click the button to connect, display a message in the database server messages window, and then disconnect.

```
Private Sub cmdUpdate_Click( _
    ByVal eventSender As System.Object, _
    ByVal eventArgs As System.EventArgs) _
    Handles cmdUpdate.Click

    ' Declare variables
    Dim myConn As New ADODB.Connection
    Dim myCommand As New ADODB.Command
    Dim cAffected As Integer

    On Error GoTo HandleError

    ' Establish the connection
    myConn.Provider = "SAOLEDB"
    myConn.ConnectionString = _
        "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo"
    myConn.Open()

    'Execute a command
```

```

myCommand.CommandText = _
    "UPDATE Customers SET GivenName='Liz' WHERE ID=102"
myCommand.ActiveConnection = myConn
myCommand.Execute(cAffected)
MsgBox(CStr(cAffected) & " rows affected.",
    MsgBoxStyle.Information)

myConn.Close()
Exit Sub

HandleError:
MsgBox(ErrorToString(Err.Number))
Exit Sub
End Sub

```

## Notes

After establishing a connection, the example code creates a Command object, sets its CommandText property to an update statement, and sets its ActiveConnection property to the current connection. It then executes the update statement and displays the number of rows affected by the update in a window.

In this example, the update is sent to the database and committed when it is executed.

For information about using transactions within ADO, see [“Using transactions” on page 454](#).

You can also perform updates through a cursor.

For more information, see [“Updating data through a cursor” on page 453](#).

## Querying the database with the Recordset object

The ADO Recordset object represents the result set of a query. You can use it to view data from a database.

### Sample code

You can try this routine by placing a command button named cmdQuery on a form and pasting the routine into its Click event. Run the program and click the button to connect, display a message in the database server messages window, execute a query and display the first few rows in windows, and then disconnect.

```

Private Sub cmdQuery_Click( _
    ByVal eventSender As System.Object, _
    ByVal eventArgs As System.EventArgs) _
    Handles cmdQuery.Click

    ' Declare variables
    Dim i As Integer
    Dim myConn As New ADODB.Connection
    Dim myCommand As New ADODB.Command
    Dim myRS As New ADODB.Recordset

    On Error GoTo ErrorHandler

    ' Establish the connection
    myConn.Provider = "SAOLEDB"
    myConn.ConnectionString = _
        "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo"
    myConn.CursorLocation = _
        ADODB.CursorLocationEnum.adUseServer
    myConn.Mode = _

```

```
        ADODB.ConnectModeEnum.adModeReadWrite
myConn.IsolationLevel = _
        ADODB.IsolationLevelEnum.adXactCursorStability
myConn.Open()

'Execute a query
myRS = New ADODB.Recordset
myRS.CacheSize = 50
myRS.let_Source("SELECT * FROM Customers")
myRS.let_ActiveConnection(myConn)
myRS.CursorType = ADODB.CursorTypeEnum.adOpenKeyset
myRS.LockType = ADODB.LockTypeEnum.adLockOptimistic
myRS.Open()

'Scroll through the first few results
myRS.MoveFirst()
For i = 1 To 5
    MsgBox(myRS.Fields("CompanyName").Value,
        MsgBoxStyle.Information)
    myRS.MoveNext()
Next

myRS.Close()
myConn.Close()
Exit Sub

ErrorHandler:
    MsgBox(ErrorToString(Err.Number))
Exit Sub
End Sub
```

### Notes

The Recordset object in this example holds the results from a query on the Customers table. The For loop scrolls through the first several rows and displays the CompanyName value for each row.

This is a simple example of using a cursor from ADO.

For more advanced examples of using a cursor from ADO, see [“Working with the Recordset object” on page 452](#).

## Working with the Recordset object

When working with SQL Anywhere, the ADO Recordset represents a cursor. You can choose the type of cursor by declaring a CursorType property of the Recordset object before you open the Recordset. The choice of cursor type controls the actions you can take on the Recordset and has performance implications.

### Cursor types

ADO has its own naming convention for cursor types. The set of cursor types supported by SQL Anywhere is described in [“Cursor properties” on page 39](#).

The available cursor types, the corresponding cursor type constants, and the SQL Anywhere types they are equivalent to, are as follows:

ADO cursor type	ADO constant	SQL Anywhere type
Dynamic cursor	adOpenDynamic	Dynamic scroll cursor
Keyset cursor	adOpenKeyset	Scroll cursor
Static cursor	adOpenStatic	Insensitive cursor
Forward only	adOpenForwardOnly	No-scroll cursor

For information about choosing a cursor type that is suitable for your application, see [“Choosing cursor types” on page 39](#).

### Sample code

The following code sets the cursor type for an ADO Recordset object:

```
Dim myRS As New ADODB.Recordset
myRS.CursorType = ADODB.CursorTypeEnum.adOpenDynamic
```

## Updating data through a cursor

The SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider lets you update a result set through a cursor. This capability is not available through the MSDASQL provider.

### Updating record sets

You can update the database through a Recordset.

```
Private Sub cmdUpdateThroughCursor_Click( _
    ByVal eventSender As System.Object, _
    ByVal eventArgs As System.EventArgs) _
    Handles cmdUpdateThroughCursor.Click

    ' Declare variables
    Dim i As Integer
    Dim myConn As New ADODB.Connection
    Dim myRS As New ADODB.Recordset
    Dim SQLString As String

    On Error GoTo HandleError

    ' Connect
    myConn.Provider = "SAOLEDB"
    myConn.ConnectionString = _
        "Data Source=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo"
    myConn.Open()
    myConn.BeginTrans()
    SQLString = "SELECT * FROM Customers"
    myRS.Open(SQLString, myConn, _
        ADODB.CursorTypeEnum.adOpenDynamic, _
        ADODB.LockTypeEnum.adLockBatchOptimistic)

    If myRS.BOF And myRS.EOF Then
        MsgBox("Recordset is empty!", 16, "Empty Recordset")
    Else
```

```

MsgBox("Cursor type: " & CStr(myRS.CursorType), _
      MsgBoxStyle.Information)
myRS.MoveFirst()
For i = 1 To 3
  MsgBox("Row: " & CStr(myRS.Fields("ID").Value), _
        MsgBoxStyle.Information)
  If i = 2 Then
    myRS.Update("City", "Toronto")
    myRS.UpdateBatch()
  End If
  myRS.MoveNext()
Next i
myRS.Close()
End If
myConn.CommitTrans()
myConn.Close()
Exit Sub

HandleError:
MsgBox(ErrorToString(Err.Number))
Exit Sub

End Sub

```

**Notes**

If you use the `adLockBatchOptimistic` setting on the Recordset, the `myRS.Update` method does not make any changes to the database itself. Instead, it updates a local copy of the Recordset.

The `myRS.UpdateBatch` method makes the update to the database server, but does not commit it, because it is inside a transaction. If an `UpdateBatch` method was invoked outside a transaction, the change would be committed.

The `myConn.CommitTrans` method commits the changes. The Recordset object has been closed by this time, so there is no issue of whether the local copy of the data is changed or not.

## Using transactions

By default, any change you make to the database using ADO is committed when it is executed. This includes explicit updates, and the `UpdateBatch` method on a Recordset. However, the previous section illustrated that you can use the `BeginTrans` and `RollbackTrans` or `CommitTrans` methods on the Connection object to use transactions.

The transaction isolation level is set as a property of the Connection object. The `IsolationLevel` property can take on one of the following values:

ADO isolation level	Constant	SQL Anywhere level
Unspecified	<code>adXactUnspecified</code>	Not applicable. Set to 0
Chaos	<code>adXactChaos</code>	Unsupported. Set to 0
Browse	<code>adXactBrowse</code>	0



<b>ADO isolation level</b>	<b>Constant</b>	<b>SQL Anywhere level</b>
Read uncommitted	adXactReadUncommitted	0
Cursor stability	adXactCursorStability	1
Read committed	adXactReadCommitted	1
Repeatable read	adXactRepeatableRead	2
Isolated	adXactIsolated	3
Serializable	adXactSerializable	3
Snapshot	2097152	4
Statement snapshot	4194304	5
Readonly statement snapshot	8388608	6

For more information about isolation levels, see [“Isolation levels and consistency”](#) [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage*].

## Setting up a Microsoft Linked Server using OLE DB

A Microsoft Linked Server can be created that uses the SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider to obtain access to a SQL Anywhere database. SQL queries can be issued using either the Microsoft 4-part table referencing syntax or the Microsoft OPENQUERY SQL function. An example of the 4-part syntax follows.

```
SELECT * FROM SADATABASE..GROUPO.Customers
```

In this example, SADATABASE is the name of the Linked Server, GROUPO is the table owner in the SQL Anywhere database, and Customers is the table name in the SQL Anywhere database. The catalog name is omitted (as indicated by two consecutive dots) since catalog names are not a feature of SQL Anywhere databases.

The other form uses the Microsoft OPENQUERY function.

```
SELECT * FROM OPENQUERY( SADATABASE, 'SELECT * FROM Customers' )
```

In the OPENQUERY syntax, the second SELECT statement ( 'SELECT \* FROM Customers' ) is passed to the SQL Anywhere server for execution.

To set up a Linked Server that uses the SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider, a few steps must be followed.

### To set up a Linked Server

1. Fill in the **General** page.

The **Linked Server** field on the **General** page should contain a **Linked Server** name (like SADATABASE used above). The **Other Data Source** option should be chosen, and SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider should be chosen from the list. The **Product Name** field should contain an ODBC data source name (for example, SQL Anywhere 11 Demo). The **Provider String** field can contain additional connection parameters such as user ID and password (for example, uid=DBA;pwd=sql). Other fields, such as **Data Source**, on the **General** page should be left empty.

2. Choose the **Allow Inprocess** provider option.

The technique for doing this varies with different versions of Microsoft SQL Server. In SQL Server 2000, there is a **Provider Options** button that takes you to the page where you can choose this option. In SQL Server 2005, there is a global **Allow Inprocess** checkbox when you right-click the SAOLEDB provider in the **Linked Servers/Providers** tree view and choose **Properties**. If the **InProcess** option is not chosen, queries fail.

3. Choose the **RPC** and **RPC Out** options.

The technique for doing this varies with different versions of Microsoft SQL Server. In SQL Server 2000, there are two checkboxes that must be checked for these two options. These check boxes are found on the **Server Options** page. In SQL Server 2005, the options are True/False settings. Make sure that they are set True. The **Remote Procedure Call (RPC)** options must be set if you want to execute stored procedure/function calls in a SQL Anywhere database and pass parameters in and out successfully.

## Supported OLE DB interfaces

The OLE DB API consists of a set of interfaces. The following table describes the support for each interface in the SQL Anywhere OLE DB driver.

Interface	Purpose	Limitations
IAccessor	Define bindings between client memory and data store values.	DBACCESSOR_PASSBYREF not supported.DBACCESSOR_OPTIMIZED not supported.
IAlterIndex IAlterTable	Alter tables, indexes, and columns.	Not supported.
IChapteredRowset	A chaptered rowset allows rows of a rowset to be accessed in separate chapters.	Not supported. SQL Anywhere does not support chaptered rowsets.
IColumnsInfo	Get simple information about the columns in a rowset.	Supported.
IColumnsRowset	Get information about optional metadata columns in a rowset, and get a rowset of column metadata.	Supported.
ICommand	Execute SQL statements.	Does not support calling. ICommandProperties: GetProperties with DBPROPERTYSET_PROPERTYSET to find properties that could not have been set.
ICommandPersist	Persist the state of a command object (but not any active rowsets). These persistent command objects can subsequently be enumerated using the PROCEDURES or VIEWS rowset.	Supported.
ICommandPrepare	Prepare commands.	Supported.
ICommandProperties	Set Rowset properties for rowsets created by a command. Most commonly used to specify the interfaces the rowset should support.	Supported.

Interface	Purpose	Limitations
ICommandText	Set the SQL statement text for ICommand.	Only the DBGUID_DEFAULT SQL dialect is supported.
ICommandWithParameters	Set or get parameter information for a command.	No support for parameters stored as vectors of scalar values. No support for BLOB parameters.
IConvertType		Supported.
IDBAsynchNotify IDBAsynchStatus	Asynchronous processing. Notify client of events in the asynchronous processing of data source initialization, populating rowsets, and so on.	Not supported.
IDBCreateCommand	Create commands from a session.	Supported.
IDBCreateSession	Create a session from a data source object.	Supported.
IDBDataSourceAdmin	Create/destroy/modify data source objects, which are COM objects used by clients. This interface is not used to manage data stores (databases).	Not supported.
IDBInfo	Find information about keywords unique to this provider (that is, to find non-standard SQL keywords).  Also, find information about literals, special characters used in text matching queries, and other literal information.	Supported.
IDBInitialize	Initialize data source objects and enumerators.	Supported.
IDBProperties	Manage properties on a data source object or enumerator.	Supported.
IDBSchemaRowset	Get information about system tables, in a standard form (a rowset).	Supported.

<b>Interface</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Limitations</b>
IErrorInfo IErrorLookup IErrorRecords	ActiveX error object support.	Supported.
IGetDataSource	Returns an interface pointer to the session's data source object.	Supported.
IIndexDefinition	Create or drop indexes in the data store.	Not supported.
IMultipleResults	Retrieve multiple results (rowsets or row counts) from a command.	Supported.
IOpenRowset	Non-SQL way to access a database table by its name.	Supported. Opening a table by its name is supported, not by a GUID.
IParentRowset	Access chaptered/hierarchical rowsets.	Not supported.
IRowset	Access rowsets.	Supported.
IRowsetChange	Allow changes to rowset data, reflected back to the data store.  InsertRow/SetData for BLOBs are not implemented.	Supported.
IRowsetChapterMember	Access chaptered/hierarchical rowsets.	Not supported.
IRowsetCurrentIndex	Dynamically change the index for a rowset.	Not supported.
IRowsetFind	Find a row within a rowset matching a specified value.	Not supported.
IRowsetIdentity	Compare row handles.	Not supported.
IRowsetIndex	Access database indexes.	Not supported.
IRowsetInfo	Find information about rowset properties or to find the object that created the rowset.	Supported.
IRowsetLocate	Position on rows of a rowset, using bookmarks.	Supported.

<b>Interface</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Limitations</b>
IRowsetNotify	Provides a COM callback interface for rowset events.	Supported.
IRowsetRefresh	Get the latest value of data that is visible to a transaction.	Not supported.
IRowsetResynch	Old OLEDB 1.x interface, superseded by IRowsetRefresh.	Not supported.
IRowsetScroll	Scroll through rowset to fetch row data.	Not supported.
IRowsetUpdate	Delay changes to rowset data until Update is called.	Supported.
IRowsetView	Use views on an existing rowset.	Not supported.
ISequentialStream	Retrieve a BLOB column.	Supported for reading only. No support for SetData with this interface.
ISessionProperties	Get session property information.	Supported.
ISourcesRowset	Get a rowset of data source objects and enumerators.	Supported.
ISQLErrorInfo ISupportErrorInfo	ActiveX error object support.	Supported.
ITableDefinition ITableDefinitionWithConstraints	Create, drop, and alter tables, with constraints.	Supported.
ITransaction	Commit or abort transactions.	Not all the flags are supported.
ITransactionJoin	Support distributed transactions.	Not all the flags are supported.
ITransactionLocal	Handle transactions on a session. Not all the flags are supported.	Supported.
ITransactionOptions	Get or set options on a transaction.	Supported.
IViewChapter	Work with views on an existing rowset, specifically to apply post-processing filters/sorting on rows.	Not supported.

---

<b>Interface</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Limitations</b>
IViewFilter	Restrict contents of a rowset to rows matching a set of conditions.	Not supported.
IViewRowset	Restrict contents of a rowset to rows matching a set of conditions, when opening a rowset.	Not supported.
IViewSort	Apply sort order to a view.	Not supported.

---



---

# SQL Anywhere ODBC API

## Contents

Introduction to ODBC .....	464
Building ODBC applications .....	466
ODBC samples .....	471
ODBC handles .....	473
Choosing an ODBC connection function .....	476
SQL Anywhere connection attributes .....	479
Executing SQL statements .....	481
64-bit ODBC considerations .....	485
Data alignment requirements .....	489
Working with result sets .....	491
Calling stored procedures .....	496
Handling errors .....	498

---

## Introduction to ODBC

The **Open Database Connectivity (ODBC)** interface is an application programming interface defined by Microsoft Corporation as a standard interface to database management systems on Windows operating systems. ODBC is a call-based interface.

To write ODBC applications for SQL Anywhere, you need:

- SQL Anywhere.
- A C compiler capable of creating programs for your environment.
- The Microsoft ODBC Software Development Kit. This is available on the Microsoft Developer Network, and provides documentation and additional tools for testing ODBC applications.

### Supported platforms

SQL Anywhere supports the ODBC API on Unix and Windows Mobile, in addition to Windows. Having multi-platform ODBC support makes portable database application development much easier.

For information about enlisting the ODBC driver in distributed transactions, see [“Three-tier computing and distributed transactions” on page 65](#).

### See also

- [Microsoft Open Database Connectivity \(ODBC\)](#)

#### Note

Some application development tools that already have ODBC support provide their own programming interface that hides the ODBC interface. The SQL Anywhere documentation does not describe how to use those tools.

## ODBC conformance

SQL Anywhere provides support for ODBC 3.5, which is supplied as part of the Microsoft Data Access Kit 2.7.

### Levels of ODBC support

ODBC features are arranged according to level of conformance. Features are either **Core**, **Level 1**, or **Level 2**, with Level 2 being the most complete level of ODBC support. These features are listed in the Microsoft [ODBC Programmer's Reference](#).

### Features supported by SQL Anywhere

SQL Anywhere supports the ODBC 3.5 specification as follows:

- **Core conformance** SQL Anywhere supports all Core level features.
- **Level 1 conformance** SQL Anywhere supports all Level 1 features, except for asynchronous execution of ODBC functions.

SQL Anywhere supports multiple threads sharing a single connection. The requests from the different threads are serialized by SQL Anywhere.

- **Level 2 conformance** SQL Anywhere supports all Level 2 features, except for the following ones:
  - Three part names of tables and views. This is not applicable for SQL Anywhere.
  - Asynchronous execution of ODBC functions for specified individual statements.
  - Ability to time out login requests and SQL queries.

### **ODBC backward compatibility**

Applications developed using older versions of ODBC continue to work with SQL Anywhere and the newer ODBC driver manager. The new ODBC features are not provided for older applications.

### **The ODBC driver manager**

Microsoft Windows includes an ODBC driver manager. For Unix, an ODBC driver manager is supplied with SQL Anywhere.

## Building ODBC applications

This section describes how to compile and link simple ODBC applications.

### Including the ODBC header file

Every C source file that calls ODBC functions must include a platform-specific ODBC header file. Each platform-specific header file includes the main ODBC header file *odbc.h*, which defines all the functions, data types, and constant definitions required to write an ODBC program.

#### To include the ODBC header file in a C source file

1. Add an include line referencing the appropriate platform-specific header file to your source file. The lines to use are as follows:

Operating system	Include line
Windows	#include "ntodbc.h"
Unix	#include "unixodbc.h"
Windows Mobile	#include "ntodbc.h"

2. Add the directory containing the header file to the include path for your compiler.

Both the platform-specific header files and *odbc.h* are installed in the *SDK\Include* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation directory.

3. When building ODBC applications for Unix, you might have to define the macro "UNIX" for 32-bit applications or "UNIX64" for 64-bit applications to obtain the correct data alignment and sizes. This step is not required if you are using one of the following supported compilers:

- GNU C/C++ compiler on any of our supported platforms
- Intel C/C++ compiler for Linux (icc)
- SunPro C/C++ compiler for Linux or Solaris
- VisualAge C/C++ compiler for AIX
- C/C++ compiler (cc/aCC) for HP-UX

### Linking ODBC applications on Windows

This section does not apply to Windows Mobile.

For Windows Mobile information, see [“Linking ODBC applications on Windows Mobile” on page 467](#).

When linking your application, you must link against the appropriate import library file to have access to the ODBC functions. The import library defines entry points for the ODBC driver manager *odbc32.dll*. The driver manager in turn loads the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver *dbodbc11.dll*.

## To link an ODBC application (Windows)

1. Add the directory containing the platform-specific import library to the list of library directories in your LIB environment variable.

Typically, the import library is stored under the *Lib* directory structure of the Microsoft platform SDK:

Operating system	Import library
Windows (32-bit)	<i>Lib\odbc32.lib</i>
Windows (64-bit)	<i>Lib\x64\odbc32.lib</i>

Here is an example for a command prompt.

```
set LIB=%LIB%;C:\mssdk\v6.1\lib
```

2. To compile and link a simple ODBC application using the Microsoft compile and link tool, you can issue a single command from the command prompt. The following example compiles and links the application stored in *odbc.c*.

```
cl odbc.c /Ic:\sa11\SDK\Include odbc32.lib
```

## Linking ODBC applications on Windows Mobile

On Windows Mobile operating systems, there is no ODBC driver manager. The import library (*dbodbc11.lib*) defines entry points directly into the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver *dbodbc11.dll*. This file is located in the *SDK\Lib\CE\Arm.50* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation.

Since there is no ODBC driver manager for Windows Mobile, you must specify the location of the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver DLL for the DRIVER= parameter in the connection string supplied to the SQLDriverConnect function. The following is an example.

```
szConnStrIn = "driver=ospath\dbodbc11.dll;dbf=\\samples-dir\demo.db"
```

Here, *ospath* is the full path to the Windows directory on the Windows Mobile device. For example:

```
\\Windows
```

## To link an ODBC application (Windows Mobile)

- Add the directory containing the platform-specific import library to the list of library directories.

For a list of supported versions of Windows Mobile, see the SQL Anywhere for PC Platforms table in <http://www.sybase.com/detail?id=1002288>.

The sample program (*odbc\_sample.cpp*) uses a File Data Source (FileDSN connection parameter) called *SQL Anywhere 11 Demo.dsn*. This file placed in the root directory of your Windows Mobile device when you install SQL Anywhere for Windows Mobile to your device. You can create file data sources on your desktop system with the ODBC Data Source Administrator, but they must be set up for your desktop environment and then edited to match the Windows Mobile environment. After appropriate edits, you can copy them to your Windows Mobile device.

For information about the default location of *samples-dir*, see “Samples directory” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

### Windows Mobile and Unicode

SQL Anywhere uses an encoding known as UTF-8, a multibyte character encoding that can be used to encode Unicode.

The SQL Anywhere ODBC driver supports either ASCII (8-bit) strings or Unicode code (wide character) strings. The UNICODER macro controls whether ODBC functions expect ASCII or Unicode strings. If your application must be built with the UNICODER macro defined, but you want to use the ASCII ODBC functions, then the SQL\_NOUNICODERMAP macro must also be defined.

The sample file *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\C\odbc.c* illustrates how to use the Unicode ODBC features.

## Linking ODBC applications on Unix

An ODBC driver manager is included with SQL Anywhere and there are third party driver managers available. This section describes how to build ODBC applications that do not use an ODBC driver manager.

### ODBC driver

The ODBC driver is a shared object or shared library. Separate versions of the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver are supplied for single-threaded and multi-threaded applications. A generic SQL Anywhere ODBC driver is supplied that will detect the threading model in use and direct calls to the appropriate single-threaded or multi-threaded library.

The ODBC drivers are the following files:

Operating system	Threading model	ODBC driver
(all Unix except Mac OS X and HP-UX)	Generic	<i>libdbodbc11.so (libdbodbc11.so.1)</i>
(all Unix except Mac OS X and HP-UX)	Single threaded	<i>libdbodbc11_n.so (libdbodbc11_n.so.1)</i>
(all Unix except Mac OS X and HP-UX)	Multi-threaded	<i>libdbodbc11_r.so (libdbodbc11_r.so.1)</i>
HP-UX	Generic	<i>libdbodbc11.sl (libdbodbc11.sl.1)</i>
HP-UX	Single threaded	<i>libdbodbc11_n.sl (libdbodbc11_n.sl.1)</i>
HP-UX	Multi-threaded	<i>libdbodbc11_r.sl (libdbodbc11_r.sl.1)</i>
Mac OS X	Generic	<i>libdbodbc11.dylib</i>
Mac OS X	Single threaded	<i>libdbodbc11_n.dylib</i>

Operating system	Threading model	ODBC driver
Mac OS X	Multi-threaded	<i>libdbodbc11_r.dylib</i>

The libraries are installed as symbolic links to the shared library with a version number (shown in parentheses).

In addition, the following bundles are also provided for Mac OS X:

Operating system	Threading model	ODBC driver
Mac OS X	Single threaded	<i>dbodbc11.bundle</i>
Mac OS X	Multi-threaded	<i>dbodbc11_r.bundle</i>

### To link an ODBC application (Unix)

1. Link your application against the generic ODBC driver *libdbodbc11*.
2. When deploying your application, ensure that the appropriate (or all) ODBC driver versions (non-threaded or threaded) are available in the user's library path.

### Data source information

If SQL Anywhere does not detect the presence of an ODBC driver manager, it uses the system information file for data source information. See [“Using ODBC data sources on Unix” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## Using the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver manager on Unix

SQL Anywhere includes an ODBC driver manager for Unix. The *libdbodm11* shared object can be used on all supported Unix platforms as an ODBC driver manager. The iAnywhere ODBC driver manager can be used to load any version 3.0 or later ODBC driver. The driver manager will not perform mappings between ODBC 1.0/2.0 calls and ODBC 3.x calls; therefore, applications using the iAnywhere ODBC driver manager must restrict their use of the ODBC feature set to version 3.0 and later. Also, the iAnywhere ODBC driver manager can be used by both threaded and non-threaded applications.

The iAnywhere ODBC driver manager can perform tracing of ODBC calls for any given connection. To turn on tracing, a user can use the `TraceLevel` and `TraceLog` directives. These directives can be part of a connection string (in the case where `SQLDriverConnect` is being used) or within a DSN entry. The `TraceLog` is a log file where the traced output for the connection goes while the `TraceLevel` is the amount of tracing information wanted. The trace levels are:

- **NONE** No tracing information is printed.
- **MINIMAL** Routine name and parameters are included in the output.
- **LOW** In addition to the above, return values are included in the output.
- **MEDIUM** In addition to the above, the date and time of execution are included in the output.

- **HIGH** In addition to the above, parameter types are included in the output.

Also, third-party ODBC driver managers for Unix are available. Consult the documentation that accompanies these driver managers for information about their use.

## Using the unixODBC driver manager

Versions of the unixODBC release prior to version 2.2.13 have incorrectly implemented some aspects of the 64-bit ODBC specification as defined by Microsoft. These differences will cause problems when using the unixODBC driver manager with the SQL Anywhere 64-bit ODBC driver.

To avoid these problems, you should be aware of the differences. One of them is the definition of `SQLLEN` and `SQLULEN`. These are 64-bit types in the Microsoft 64-bit ODBC specification, and are expected to be 64-bit quantities by the SQL Anywhere 64-bit ODBC driver. Some implementations of unixODBC define these two types as 32-bit quantities and this will result in problems when interfacing to the SQL Anywhere 64-bit ODBC driver.

There are three things that you must do to avoid problems on 64-bit platforms.

1. Instead of including the unixODBC headers like `sql.h` and `sqlext.h`, you should include the SQL Anywhere ODBC header file `unixodbc.h`. This will guarantee that you have the correct definitions for `SQLLEN` and `SQLULEN`. The header files in unixODBC 2.2.13, when it is released, will correct this problem.
2. You must ensure that you have used the correct types for all parameters. Use of the correct header file and the strong type checking of your C/C++ compiler should help in this area. You must also ensure that you have used the correct types for all variables that are set by the SQL Anywhere driver indirectly through pointers. See [“64-bit ODBC considerations” on page 485](#).
3. You must not use versions of the unixODBC driver manager prior to release 2.2.13. Instead, you can link directly to the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver. For example, ensure that the `libodbc` shared object is linked to the SQL Anywhere driver.

```
libodbc.so.1 -> libdbodbc11_r.so.1
```

Alternatively, you can use the SQL Anywhere driver manager on platforms where it is available. See [“Using the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver manager on Unix” on page 469](#).

For more information, see [“Linking ODBC applications on Unix” on page 468](#).



## ODBC samples

Several ODBC samples are included with SQL Anywhere. You can find the samples in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere* subdirectories.

The samples in directories starting with ODBC illustrate separate and simple ODBC tasks, such as connecting to a database and executing statements. A complete sample ODBC program is supplied in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\C\odbc.c*. This program performs the same actions as the embedded SQL dynamic cursor example program that is in the same directory.

For a description of the associated embedded SQL program, see [“Sample embedded SQL programs” on page 538](#).

## Building the sample ODBC program

The ODBC sample program is located in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\C*. A batch file (shell script for Unix) is included that can be used to compile and link all the sample applications located in this folder.

### To build the sample ODBC program

1. Open a command prompt and change directory to the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\C* directory.
2. Run the *build.bat* or *build64.bat* batch file.

For x64 platform builds, you may need to set up the correct environment for compiling and linking. Here is an example that builds the sample programs for an x64 platform.

```
set mssdk=c:\MSSDK\v6.1
build64
```

### To build the sample ODBC program for Unix

1. Open a command shell and change directory to the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\C* directory.
2. Run the *build.sh* shell script.

## Running the sample ODBC program

### To run the ODBC sample

1. Start the program:
  - For 32-bit Windows, run the file *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\C\odbcwin.exe*.
  - For 64-bit Windows, run the file *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\C\odbcx64.exe*.
  - For Unix, run the file *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\C\odbc*.
2. Choose a table:

- Choose one of the tables in the sample database. For example, you can enter **Customers** or **Employees**.

## ODBC handles

ODBC applications use a small set of **handles** to define basic features such as database connections and SQL statements. A handle is a 32-bit value.

The following handles are used in essentially all ODBC applications:

- **Environment** The environment handle provides a global context in which to access data. Every ODBC application must allocate exactly one environment handle upon starting, and must free it at the end.

The following code illustrates how to allocate an environment handle:

```
SQLHENV env;
SQLRETURN rc;
rc = SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_ENV, SQL
_NULL_HANDLE, &env );
```

- **Connection** A connection is specified by an ODBC driver and a data source. An application can have several connections associated with its environment. Allocating a connection handle does not establish a connection; a connection handle must be allocated first and then used when the connection is established.

The following code illustrates how to allocate a connection handle:

```
SQLHDBC dbc;
SQLRETURN rc;
rc = SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_DBC, env, &dbc );
```

- **Statement** A statement handle provides access to a SQL statement and any information associated with it, such as result sets and parameters. Each connection can have several statements. Statements are used both for cursor operations (fetching data) and for single statement execution (for example, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE).

The following code illustrates how to allocate a statement handle:

```
SQLHSTMT stmt;
SQLRETURN rc;
rc = SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_STMT, dbc, &stmt );
```

## Allocating ODBC handles

The handle types required for ODBC programs are as follows:

Item	Handle type
Environment	SQLHENV
Connection	SQLHDBC
Statement	SQLHSTMT

Item	Handle type
Descriptor	SQLHDESC

### To use an ODBC handle

1. Call the `SQLAllocHandle` function.

`SQLAllocHandle` takes the following parameters:

- an identifier for the type of item being allocated
- the handle of the parent item
- a pointer to the location of the handle to be allocated

For a full description, see [SQLAllocHandle](#) in the Microsoft *ODBC Programmer's Reference*.

2. Use the handle in subsequent function calls.
3. Free the object using `SQLFreeHandle`.

`SQLFreeHandle` takes the following parameters:

- an identifier for the type of item being freed
- the handle of the item being freed

For a full description, see [SQLFreeHandle](#) in the Microsoft ODBC Programmer's Reference.

### Example

The following code fragment allocates and frees an environment handle:

```
SQLHENV env;
SQLRETURN retcode;
retcode = SQLAllocHandle(
    SQL_HANDLE_ENV,
    SQL_NULL_HANDLE,
    &env );
if( retcode == SQL_SUCCESS
    || retcode == SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO ) {
    // success: application code here
}
SQLFreeHandle( SQL_HANDLE_ENV, env );
```

For more information about return codes and error handling, see [“Handling errors”](#) on page 498.

## A first ODBC example

The following is a simple ODBC program that connects to the SQL Anywhere sample database and immediately disconnects.

You can find this sample in `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ODBCConnect\odbcconnect.cpp`.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include "ntodbc.h"
```

```
int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    SQLHENV env;
    SQLHDBC dbc;
    SQLRETURN retcode;

    retcode = SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_ENV,
                             SQL_NULL_HANDLE,
                             &env );
    if (retcode == SQL_SUCCESS
        || retcode == SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO) {
        printf( "env allocated\n" );
        /* Set the ODBC version environment attribute */
        retcode = SQLSetEnvAttr( env,
                                SQL_ATTR_ODBC_VERSION,
                                (void*)SQL_OV_ODBC3, 0);
        retcode = SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_DBC, env, &dbc );
        if (retcode == SQL_SUCCESS
            || retcode == SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO) {
            printf( "dbc allocated\n" );
            retcode = SQLConnect( dbc,
                                  (SQLCHAR*) "SQL Anywhere 11 Demo", SQL_NTS,
                                  (SQLCHAR*) "DBA", SQL_NTS,
                                  (SQLCHAR*) "sql", SQL_NTS );
            if (retcode == SQL_SUCCESS
                || retcode == SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO) {
                printf( "Successfully connected\n" );
            }
            SQLDisconnect( dbc );
        }
        SQLFreeHandle( SQL_HANDLE_DBC, dbc );
    }
    SQLFreeHandle( SQL_HANDLE_ENV, env );
    return 0;
}
```

## Choosing an ODBC connection function

ODBC supplies a set of connection functions. Which one you use depends on how you expect your application to be deployed and used:

- **SQLConnect** The simplest connection function.

SQLConnect takes a data source name and optional user ID and password. You may want to use SQLConnect if you hard-code a data source name into your application.

For more information, see [SQLConnect](#) in the Microsoft *ODBC Programmer's Reference*.

- **SQLDriverConnect** Connects to a data source using a connection string.

SQLDriverConnect allows the application to use SQL Anywhere-specific connection information that is external to the data source. Also, you can use SQLDriverConnect to request that the SQL Anywhere driver prompt for connection information.

SQLDriverConnect can also be used to connect without specifying a data source.

For more information, see [SQLDriverConnect](#) in the Microsoft *ODBC Programmer's Reference*.

- **SQLBrowseConnect** Connects to a data source using a connection string, like SQLDriverConnect.

SQLBrowseConnect allows your application to build its own windows to prompt for connection information and to browse for data sources used by a particular driver (in this case the SQL Anywhere driver).

For more information, see [SQLBrowseConnect](#) in the Microsoft *ODBC Programmer's Reference*.

For a complete list of connection parameters that can be used in connection strings, see “[Connection parameters](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

## Establishing a connection

Your application must establish a connection before it can perform any database operations.

### To establish an ODBC connection

1. Allocate an ODBC environment.

For example:

```
SQLHENV  env;  
SQLRETURN retcode;  
retcode = SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_ENV,  
    SQL_NULL_HANDLE, &env );
```

2. Declare the ODBC version.

By declaring that the application follows ODBC version 3, SQLSTATE values and some other version-dependent features are set to the proper behavior. For example:

```
retcode = SQLSetEnvAttr( env,
    SQL_ATTR_ODBC_VERSION, (void*)SQL_OV_ODBC3, 0 );
```

3. If necessary, assemble the data source or connection string.

Depending on your application, you may have a hard-coded data source or connection string, or you may store it externally for greater flexibility.

4. Allocate an ODBC connection item.

For example:

```
retcode = SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_DBC, env, &dbc );
```

5. Set any connection attributes that must be set before connecting.

Some connection attributes must be set before establishing a connection or after establishing a connection, while others can be set either before or after. The `SQL_AUTOCOMMIT` attribute is one that can be set before or after:

```
retcode = SQLSetConnectAttr( dbc,
    SQL_AUTOCOMMIT,
    (SQLPOINTER)SQL_AUTOCOMMIT_OFF, 0 );
```

For more information, see [“Setting connection attributes” on page 477](#).

6. Call the ODBC connection function.

For example:

```
if (retcode == SQL_SUCCESS
    || retcode == SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO) {
    printf( "dbc allocated\n" );
    retcode = SQLConnect( dbc,
        (SQLCHAR*) "SQL Anywhere 11 Demo", SQL_NTS,
        (SQLCHAR*) "DBA", SQL_NTS,
        (SQLCHAR*) "sql", SQL_NTS );
    if (retcode == SQL_SUCCESS
        || retcode == SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO){
        // successfully connected.
    }
}
```

You can find a complete sample in `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ODBCConnect\odbcconnect.cpp`.

## Notes

- **SQL\_NTS** Every string passed to ODBC has a corresponding length. If the length is unknown, you can pass `SQL_NTS` indicating that it is a **Null Terminated String** whose end is marked by the null character (`\0`).
- **SQLSetConnectAttr** By default, ODBC operates in autocommit mode. This mode is turned off by setting `SQL_AUTOCOMMIT` to false.

For more information, see [“Setting connection attributes” on page 477](#).

## Setting connection attributes

You use the `SQLSetConnectAttr` function to control details of the connection. For example, the following statement turns off ODBC autocommit behavior.

```
retcode = SQLSetConnectAttr( dbc, SQL_AUTOCOMMIT,  
    (SQLPOINTER)SQL_AUTOCOMMIT_OFF, 0 );
```

For more information including a list of connection attributes, see [SQLSetConnectAttr](#) in the Microsoft *ODBC Programmer's Reference*.

Many aspects of the connection can be controlled through the connection parameters. For information, see “[Connection parameters](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration](#)].

## Getting connection attributes

You use the `SQLGetConnectAttr` function to get details of the connection. For example, the following statement returns the connection state.

```
retcode = SQLGetConnectAttr( dbc, SQL_ATTR_CONNECTION_DEAD,  
    (SQLPOINTER)&closed, SQL_IS_INTEGER, 0 );
```

When using the `SQLGetConnectAttr` function to get the `SQL_ATTR_CONNECTION_DEAD` attribute, the value `SQL_CD_TRUE` is returned if the connection has been dropped even if no request has been sent to the server since the connection was dropped. Determining if the connection has been dropped is done without making a request to the server, and the dropped connection is detected within a few seconds. The connection can be dropped for several reasons, such as an idle timeout.

For more information including a list of connection attributes, see [SQLGetConnectAttr](#) in the Microsoft *ODBC Programmer's Reference*.

## Threads and connections in ODBC applications

You can develop multi-threaded ODBC applications for SQL Anywhere. It is recommended that you use a separate connection for each thread.

You can use a single connection for multiple threads. However, the database server does not allow more than one active request for any one connection at a time. If one thread executes a statement that takes a long time, all other threads must wait until the request is complete.



## SQL Anywhere connection attributes

The SQL Anywhere ODBC driver supports some extended connection attributes.

- **SA\_REGISTER\_MESSAGE\_CALLBACK** Messages can be sent to the client application from the server using the SQL MESSAGE statement. A message handler routine can be created to intercept these messages. The message handler callback prototype is as follows:

```
void SQL_CALLBACK message_handler(
SQLHDBC sqlany_dbc,
unsigned char msg_type,
long code,
unsigned short length,
char * message
);
```

The following possible values for *msg\_type* are defined in *sqldef.h*.

- **MESSAGE\_TYPE\_INFO** The message type was INFO.
- **MESSAGE\_TYPE\_WARNING** The message type was WARNING.
- **MESSAGE\_TYPE\_ACTION** The message type was ACTION.
- **MESSAGE\_TYPE\_STATUS** The message type was STATUS.

A SQLCODE associated with the message may be provided in *incode*. When not available, the *code* parameter value is 0.

The length of the message is contained in *length*.

A pointer to the message is contained in *message*. Note that *message* is not null-terminated. Your application must be designed to handle this. The following is an example.

```
memcpy( mybuff, msg, len );
mybuff[ len ] = '\0';
```

To register the message handler in ODBC, call the SQLSetConnectAttr function as follows:

```
rc = SQLSetConnectAttr(
hdbc,
SA_REGISTER_MESSAGE_CALLBACK,
(SQLPOINTER) &message_handler, SQL_IS_POINTER );
```

To unregister the message handler in ODBC, call the SQLSetConnectAttr function as follows:

```
rc = SQLSetConnectAttr(
hdbc,
SA_REGISTER_MESSAGE_CALLBACK,
NULL, SQL_IS_POINTER );
```

- **SA\_GET\_MESSAGE\_CALLBACK\_PARM** To retrieve the value of the SQLHDBC connection handle that will be passed to message handler callback routine, use SQLGetConnectAttr with the SA\_GET\_MESSAGE\_CALLBACK\_PARM parameter.

```
SQLHDBC callback_hdbc = NULL;
rc = SQLGetConnectAttr(
hdbc,
```

```
SA_GET_MESSAGE_CALLBACK_PARM,  
(SQLPOINTER) &callback_hdbc, 0, 0 );
```

The returned value will be the same as the parameter value that is passed to the message handler callback routine.

- **SA\_REGISTER\_VALIDATE\_FILE\_TRANSFER\_CALLBACK** This is used to register a file transfer validation callback function. Before allowing any transfer to take place, the ODBC driver will invoke the validation callback, if it exists. If the client data transfer is being requested during the execution of indirect statements such as from within a stored procedure, the ODBC driver will not allow a transfer unless the client application has registered a validation callback. The conditions under which a validation call is made are described more fully below.

The callback prototype is as follows:

```
int SQL_CALLBACK file_transfer_callback(  
void * sqlca,  
char * file_name,  
int is_write  
);
```

The *file\_name* parameter is the name of the file to be read or written. The *is\_write* parameter is 0 if a read is requested (transfer from the client to the server), and non-zero for a write. The callback function should return 0 if the file transfer is not allowed, non-zero otherwise.

For data security, the server tracks the origin of statements requesting a file transfer. The server determines if the statement was received directly from the client application. When initiating the transfer of data from the client, the server sends the information about the origin of the statement to the client software. On its part, the embedded SQL client library allows unconditional transfer of data only if the data transfer is being requested due to the execution of a statement sent directly by the client application. Otherwise, the application must have registered the validation callback described above, in the absence of which the transfer is denied and the statement fails with an error. Note that if the client statement invokes a stored procedure already existing in the database, then the execution of the stored procedure itself is considered not to have been for a client initiated statement. However, if the client application explicitly creates a temporary stored procedure then the execution of the stored procedure results in the server treating the procedure as having been client initiated. Similarly, if the client application executes a batch statement, then the execution of the batch statement is considered as being done directly by the client application.

- **SA\_SQL\_ATTR\_TXN\_ISOLATION** This is used to set an extended transaction isolation level. The following example sets a snapshot isolation level:

```
SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_DBC, env, &dbc );  
SQLSetConnectAttr( dbc, SQL_ATTR_TXN_ISOLATION,  
SA_SQL_TXN_SNAPSHOT, SQL_IS_UINTEGER );
```

For more information, see [“Choosing ODBC transaction isolation level” on page 491](#).

## Executing SQL statements

ODBC includes several functions for executing SQL statements:

- **Direct execution** SQL Anywhere parses the SQL statement, prepares an access plan, and executes the statement. Parsing and access plan preparation are called **preparing** the statement.
- **Prepared execution** The statement preparation is carried out separately from the execution. For statements that are to be executed repeatedly, this avoids repeated preparation and so improves performance.

For more information, see [“Executing prepared statements” on page 483](#).

## Executing statements directly

The `SQLExecDirect` function prepares and executes a SQL statement. The statement may include parameters.

The following code fragment illustrates how to execute a statement without parameters. The `SQLExecDirect` function takes a statement handle, a SQL string, and a length or termination indicator, which in this case is a null-terminated string indicator.

The procedure described in this section is straightforward but inflexible. The application cannot take any input from the user to modify the statement. For a more flexible method of constructing statements, see [“Executing statements with bound parameters” on page 482](#).

### To execute a SQL statement in an ODBC application

1. Allocate a handle for the statement using `SQLAllocHandle`.

For example, the following statement allocates a handle of type `SQL_HANDLE_STMT` with name `stmt`, on a connection with handle `dbc`:

```
SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_STMT, dbc, &stmt );
```

2. Call the `SQLExecDirect` function to execute the statement:

For example, the following lines declare a statement and execute it. The declaration of `deletestmt` would usually occur at the beginning of the function:

```
SQLCHAR deletestmt[ STMT_LEN ] =
    "DELETE FROM Departments WHERE DepartmentID = 201";
SQLExecDirect( stmt, deletestmt, SQL_NTS );
```

For a complete sample with error checking, see `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ODBCExecute\odbcexecute.cpp`.

For more information about `SQLExecDirect`, see [SQLExecDirect](#) in the Microsoft *ODBC Programmer's Reference*.

## Executing statements with bound parameters

This section describes how to construct and execute a SQL statement, using bound parameters to set values for statement parameters at runtime.

### To execute a SQL statement with bound parameters in an ODBC application

1. Allocate a handle for the statement using `SQLAllocHandle`.

For example, the following statement allocates a handle of type `SQL_HANDLE_STMT` with name `stmt`, on a connection with handle `dbc`:

```
SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_STMT, dbc, &stmt );
```

2. Bind parameters for the statement using `SQLBindParameter`.

For example, the following lines declare variables to hold the values for the department ID, department name, and manager ID, and for the statement string. They then bind parameters to the first, second, and third parameters of a statement executed using the `stmt` statement handle.

```
#defined DEPT_NAME_LEN 40
SQLLEN cbDeptID = 0,
      cbDeptName = SQL_NTS, cbManagerID = 0;
SQLCHAR deptName[ DEPT_NAME_LEN + 1 ];
SQLSMALLINT deptID, managerID;
SQLCHAR insertstmt[ STMT_LEN ] =
    "INSERT INTO Departments "
    "( DepartmentID, DepartmentName, DepartmentHeadID )"
    "VALUES (?, ?, ?)";
SQLBindParameter( stmt, 1, SQL_PARAM_INPUT,
                  SQL_C_SSHORT, SQL_INTEGER, 0, 0,
                  &deptID, 0, &cbDeptID);
SQLBindParameter( stmt, 2, SQL_PARAM_INPUT,
                  SQL_C_CHAR, SQL_CHAR, DEPT_NAME_LEN, 0,
                  deptName, 0, &cbDeptName);
SQLBindParameter( stmt, 3, SQL_PARAM_INPUT,
                  SQL_C_SSHORT, SQL_INTEGER, 0, 0,
                  &managerID, 0, &cbManagerID);
```

3. Assign values to the parameters.

For example, the following lines assign values to the parameters for the fragment of step 2.

```
deptID = 201;
strcpy( (char * ) deptName, "Sales East" );
managerID = 902;
```

Commonly, these variables would be set in response to user action.

4. Execute the statement using `SQLExecDirect`.

For example, the following line executes the statement string held in `insertstmt` on the statement handle `stmt`.

```
SQLExecDirect( stmt, insertstmt, SQL_NTS) ;
```

Bind parameters are also used with prepared statements to provide performance benefits for statements that are executed more than once. For more information, see [“Executing prepared statements” on page 483](#).

The above code fragments do not include error checking. For a complete sample, including error checking, see *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ODBCExecute\odbcexecute.cpp*.

For more information about `SQLExecDirect`, see [SQLExecDirect](#) in the Microsoft *ODBC Programmer's Reference*.

## Executing prepared statements

Prepared statements provide performance advantages for statements that are used repeatedly. ODBC provides a full set of functions for using prepared statements.

For an introduction to prepared statements, see “[Preparing statements](#)” on page 26.

### To execute a prepared SQL statement

1. Prepare the statement using `SQLPrepare`.

For example, the following code fragment illustrates how to prepare an `INSERT` statement:

```
SQLRETURN  retcode;
SQLHSTMT  stmt;
retcode = SQLPrepare( stmt,
    "INSERT INTO Departments
    ( DepartmentID, DepartmentName, DepartmentHeadID )
    VALUES (?, ?, ?,)",
    SQL_NTS);
```

In this example:

- **retcode** Holds a return code that should be tested for success or failure of the operation.
- **stmt** Provides a handle to the statement so that it can be referenced later.
- **?** The question marks are placeholders for statement parameters.

2. Set statement parameter values using `SQLBindParameter`.

For example, the following function call sets the value of the `DepartmentID` variable:

```
SQLBindParameter( stmt,
    1,
    SQL_PARAM_INPUT,
    SQL_C_SSHORT,
    SQL_INTEGER,
    0,
    0,
    &sDeptID,
    0,
    &cbDeptID);
```

In this example:

- **stmt** is the statement handle.
- **1** indicates that this call sets the value of the first placeholder.
- **SQL\_PARAM\_INPUT** indicates that the parameter is an input statement.

- **SQL\_C\_SHORT** indicates the C data type being used in the application.
- **SQL\_INTEGER** indicates SQL data type being used in the database.

The next two parameters indicate the column precision and the number of decimal digits: both zero for integers.

- **&sDeptID** is a pointer to a buffer for the parameter value.
- **0** indicates the length of the buffer, in bytes.
- **&cbDeptID** is a pointer to a buffer for the length of the parameter value.

3. Bind the other two parameters and assign values to sDeptId.

4. Execute the statement:

```
retcode = SQLExecute( stmt );
```

Steps 2 to 4 can be carried out multiple times.

5. Drop the statement.

Dropping the statement frees resources associated with the statement itself. You drop statements using `SQLFreeHandle`.

For a complete sample, including error checking, see *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ODBCPrepare\odbcprepare.cpp*.

For more information about `SQLPrepare`, see [SQLPrepare](#) in the Microsoft *ODBC Programmer's Reference*.

## 64-bit ODBC considerations

When you use an ODBC function like `SQLBindCol`, `SQLBindParameter`, or `SQLGetData`, some of the parameters are typed as `SQLLEN` or `SQLULEN` in the function prototype. Depending on the date of the Microsoft ODBC API Reference documentation that you are looking at, you might see the same parameters described as `SQLINTEGER` or `SQLUIINTEGER`.

`SQLLEN` and `SQLULEN` data items are 64 bits in a 64-bit ODBC application and 32 bits in a 32-bit ODBC application. `SQLINTEGER` and `SQLUIINTEGER` data items are 32 bits on all platforms.

To illustrate the problem, the following ODBC function prototype was excerpted from an older copy of the Microsoft ODBC API Reference.

```
SQLRETURN SQLGetData(
    SQLHSTMT      StatementHandle,
    SQLUSMALLINT ColumnNumber,
    SQLSMALLINT  TargetType,
    SQLPOINTER   TargetValuePtr,
    SQLINTEGER   BufferLength,
    SQLINTEGER   *StrLen_or_IndPtr);
```

Compare this with the actual function prototype found in `sql.h` in Microsoft Visual Studio version 8.

```
SQLRETURN SQL_API SQLGetData(
    SQLHSTMT      StatementHandle,
    SQLUSMALLINT ColumnNumber,
    SQLSMALLINT  TargetType,
    SQLPOINTER   TargetValue,
    SQLLEN       BufferLength,
    SQLLEN       *StrLen_or_Ind);
```

As you can see, the `BufferLength` and `StrLen_or_Ind` parameters are now typed as `SQLLEN`, not `SQLINTEGER`. For the 64-bit platform, these are 64-bit quantities, not 32-bit quantities as indicated in the Microsoft documentation.

To avoid issues with cross-platform compilation, SQL Anywhere provides its own ODBC header files. For Windows platforms, you should include the `ntodbc.h` header file. For Unix platforms such as Linux, you should include the `unixodbc.h` header file. Use of these header files ensures compatibility with the corresponding SQL Anywhere ODBC driver for the target platform.

The following table lists some common ODBC types that have the same or different storage sizes on 64-bit and 32-bit platforms.

ODBC API	64-bit platform	32-bit platform
SQLINTEGER	32 bits	32 bits
SQLUIINTEGER	32 bits	32 bits
SQLLEN	64 bits	32 bits
SQLULEN	64 bits	32 bits
SQLSETPOSIROW	64 bits	16 bits

ODBC API	64-bit platform	32-bit platform
SQL_C_BOOKMARK	64 bits	32 bits
BOOKMARK	64 bits	32 bits

If you declare data variables and parameters incorrectly, then you may encounter incorrect software behavior.

The following table summarizes the ODBC API function prototypes that have changed since the introduction of 64-bit support. The parameters that are affected are noted. The parameter name as documented by Microsoft is shown in parentheses when it differs from the actual parameter name used in the function prototype. The parameter names are those used in the Microsoft Visual Studio version 8 header files.

ODBC API	Parameter (Documented Parameter Name)
SQLBindCol	SQLLEN BufferLength SQLLEN *Strlen_or_Ind
SQLBindParam	SQLULEN LengthPrecision SQLLEN *Strlen_or_Ind
SQLBindParameter	SQLULEN cbColDef (ColumnSize) SQLLEN cbValueMax (BufferLength) SQLLEN *pcbValue (Strlen_or_IndPtr)
SQLColAttribute	SQLLEN *NumericAttribute
SQLColAttributes	SQLLEN *pfDesc
SQLDescribeCol	SQLULEN *ColumnSize (ColumnSizePtr)
SQLDescribeParam	SQLULEN *pcbParamDef (ParameterSizePtr)
SQLExtendedFetch	SQLLEN irow (FetchOffset) SQLULEN *pcrow (RowCountPtr)
SQLFetchScroll	SQLLEN FetchOffset
SQLGetData	SQLLEN BufferLength SQLLEN *Strlen_or_Ind (Strlen_or_IndPtr)
SQLGetDescRec	SQLLEN *Length (LengthPtr)
SQLParamOptions	SQLULEN crow, SQLULEN *pirow



ODBC API	Parameter (Documented Parameter Name)
SQLPutData	SQLLEN Strlen_or_Ind
SQLRowCount	SQLLEN *RowCount (RowCountPtr)
SQLSetConnectOption	SQLULEN Value
SQLSetDescRec	SQLLEN Length SQLLEN *StringLength (StringLengthPtr) SQLLEN *Indicator (IndicatorPtr)
SQLSetParam	SQLULEN LengthPrecision SQLLEN *Strlen_or_Ind (Strlen_or_IndPtr)
SQLSetPos	SQLSETPOSIROW irow (RowNumber)
SQLSetScrollOptions	SQLLEN crowKeyset
SQLSetStmtOption	SQLULEN Value

Some values passed into and returned from ODBC API calls through pointers have changed to accommodate 64-bit applications. For example, the following values for the SQLSetStmtAttr and SQLSetDescField functions are no longer SQLINTEGER/SQLINTEGER. The same rule applies to the corresponding parameters for the SQLGetStmtAttr and SQLGetDescField functions.

ODBC API	Type for Value/ValuePtr variable
SQLSetStmtAttr(SQL_ATTR_FETCH_BOOKMARK_PTR)	SQLLEN * value
SQLSetStmtAttr(SQL_ATTR_KEYSET_SIZE)	SQLULEN value
SQLSetStmtAttr(SQL_ATTR_MAX_LENGTH)	SQLULEN value
SQLSetStmtAttr(SQL_ATTR_MAX_ROWS)	SQLULEN value
SQLSetStmtAttr(SQL_ATTR_PARAM_BIND_OFFSET_PTR)	SQLULEN * value
SQLSetStmtAttr(SQL_ATTR_PARAMS_PROCESSED_PTR)	SQLULEN * value
SQLSetStmtAttr(SQL_ATTR_PARAMSET_SIZE)	SQLULEN value
SQLSetStmtAttr(SQL_ATTR_ROW_ARRAY_SIZE)	SQLULEN value
SQLSetStmtAttr(SQL_ATTR_ROW_BIND_OFFSET_PTR)	SQLULEN * value

<b>ODBC API</b>	<b>Type for Value/ValuePtr variable</b>
SQLSetStmtAttr(SQL_ATTR_ROW_NUMBER)	SQLULEN value
SQLSetStmtAttr(SQL_ATTR_ROWS_FETCHED_PTR)	SQLULEN * value
SQLSetDescField(SQL_DESC_ARRAY_SIZE)	SQLULEN value
SQLSetDescField(SQL_DESC_BIND_OFFSET_PTR)	SQLLEN * value
SQLSetDescField(SQL_DESC_ROWS_PROCESSED_PTR)	SQLULEN * value
SQLSetDescField(SQL_DESC_DISPLAY_SIZE)	SQLLEN value
SQLSetDescField(SQL_DESC_INDICATOR_PTR)	SQLLEN * value
SQLSetDescField(SQL_DESC_LENGTH)	SQLLEN value
SQLSetDescField(SQL_DESC_OCTET_LENGTH)	SQLLEN value
SQLSetDescField(SQL_DESC_OCTET_LENGTH_PTR)	SQLLEN * value

For more information, see the Microsoft article [ODBC 64-Bit API Changes in MDAC 2.7](#).

## Data alignment requirements

When you use `SQLBindCol`, `SQLBindParameter`, or `SQLGetData`, a C data type is specified for the column or parameter. On certain platforms, the storage (memory) provided for each column must be properly aligned to fetch or store a value of the specified type. The following table lists memory alignment requirements for processors such as Sun Sparc, Itanium-IA64, and ARM-based devices.

<b>C Data Type</b>	<b>Alignment required</b>
SQL_C_CHAR	none
SQL_C_BINARY	none
SQL_C_GUID	none
SQL_C_BIT	none
SQL_C_STINYINT	none
SQL_C_UTINYINT	none
SQL_C_TINYINT	none
SQL_C_NUMERIC	none
SQL_C_DEFAULT	none
SQL_C_SSHORT	2
SQL_C_USHORT	2
SQL_C_SHORT	2
SQL_C_DATE	2
SQL_C_TIME	2
SQL_C_TIMESTAMP	2
SQL_C_TYPE_DATE	2
SQL_C_TYPE_TIME	2
SQL_C_TYPE_TIMESTAMP	2
SQL_C_WCHAR	2 (buffer size must be a multiple of 2 on all platforms)
SQL_C_SLONG	4

<b>C Data Type</b>	<b>Alignment required</b>
SQL_C_ULONG	4
SQL_C_LONG	4
SQL_C_FLOAT	4
SQL_C_DOUBLE	8
SQL_C_SBIGINT	8
SQL_C_UBIGINT	8

The x86, x64, and PowerPC platforms do not require memory alignment. The x64 platform includes Advanced Micro Devices (AMD) AMD64 processors and Intel Extended Memory 64 Technology (EM64T) processors.

---

## Working with result sets

ODBC applications use cursors to manipulate and update result sets. SQL Anywhere provides extensive support for different kinds of cursors and cursor operations.

For an introduction to cursors, see [“Working with cursors” on page 32](#).

## Choosing ODBC transaction isolation level

You can use `SQLSetConnectAttr` to set the transaction isolation level for a connection. The characteristics that determine the transaction isolation level that SQL Anywhere provides include the following:

- **SQL\_TXN\_READ\_UNCOMMITTED** Set isolation level to 0. When this attribute value is set, it isolates any data read from changes by others and changes made by others cannot be seen. The re-execution of the read statement is affected by others. This does not support a repeatable read. This is the default value for isolation level.
- **SQL\_TXN\_READ\_COMMITTED** Set isolation level to 1. When this attribute value is set, it does not isolate data read from changes by others, and changes made by others can be seen. The re-execution of the read statement is affected by others. This does not support a repeatable read.
- **SQL\_TXN\_REPEATABLE\_READ** Set isolation level to 2. When this attribute value is set, it isolates any data read from changes by others, and changes made by others cannot be seen. The re-execution of the read statement is affected by others. This supports a repeatable read.
- **SQL\_TXN\_SERIALIZABLE** Set isolation level to 3. When this attribute value is set, it isolates any data read from changes by others, and changes made by others cannot be seen. The re-execution of the read statement is not affected by others. This supports a repeatable read.
- **SA\_SQL\_TXN\_SNAPSHOT** Set isolation level to snapshot. When this attribute value is set, it provides a single view of the database for the entire transaction.
- **SA\_SQL\_TXN\_STATEMENT\_SNAPSHOT** Set isolation level to statement-snapshot. When this attribute value is set, it provides less consistency than snapshot isolation, but may be useful in cases where long running transactions result in too much space being used in the temporary file by the version store.
- **SA\_SQL\_TXN\_READONLY\_STATEMENT\_SNAPSHOT** Set isolation level to readonly-statement-snapshot. When this attribute value is set, it provides less consistency than statement-snapshot isolation, but avoids the possibility of update conflicts. Therefore, it is most appropriate for porting applications originally intended to run under different isolation levels.

For more information, see [SQLSetConnectAttr](#) in the Microsoft *ODBC Programmer's Reference*.

### Example

The following fragment uses a snapshot isolation level:

```
SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_DBC, env, &dbc );
SQLSetConnectAttr( dbc, SQL_ATTR_TXN_ISOLATION,
                  SA_SQL_TXN_SNAPSHOT, SQL_IS_UIINTEGER );
```

## Choosing ODBC cursor characteristics

ODBC functions that execute statements and manipulate result sets, use cursors to perform their tasks. Applications open a cursor implicitly whenever they execute a `SQLExecute` or `SQLExecDirect` function.

For applications that move through a result set only in a forward direction and do not update the result set, cursor behavior is relatively straightforward. By default, ODBC applications request this behavior. ODBC defines a read-only, forward-only cursor, and SQL Anywhere provides a cursor optimized for performance in this case.

For a simple example of a forward-only cursor, see [“Retrieving data” on page 493](#).

For applications that need to scroll both forward and backward through a result set, such as many graphical user interface applications, cursor behavior is more complex. What does the application when it returns to a row that has been updated by some other application? ODBC defines a variety of **scrollable cursors** to allow you to build in the behavior that suits your application. SQL Anywhere provides a full set of cursors to match the ODBC scrollable cursor types.

You set the required ODBC cursor characteristics by calling the `SQLSetStmtAttr` function that defines statement attributes. You must call `SQLSetStmtAttr` before executing a statement that creates a result set.

You can use `SQLSetStmtAttr` to set many cursor characteristics. The characteristics that determine the cursor type that SQL Anywhere supplies include the following:

- **SQL\_ATTR\_CURSOR\_SCROLLABLE** Set to `SQL_SCROLLABLE` for a scrollable cursor and `SQL_NONSCROLLABLE` for a forward-only cursor. `SQL_NONSCROLLABLE` is the default.
- **SQL\_ATTR\_CONCURRENCY** Set to one of the following values:
  - **SQL\_CONCUR\_READ\_ONLY** Disallow updates. `SQL_CONCUR_READ_ONLY` is the default.
  - **SQL\_CONCUR\_LOCK** Use the lowest level of locking sufficient to ensure that the row can be updated.
  - **SQL\_CONCUR\_ROWVER** Use optimistic concurrency control, comparing row versions such as SQLBase ROWID or Sybase TIMESTAMP.
  - **SQL\_CONCUR\_VALUES** Use optimistic concurrency control, comparing values.

For more information, see [SQLSetStmtAttr](#) in the Microsoft *ODBC Programmer's Reference*.

### Example

The following fragment requests a read-only, scrollable cursor:

```
SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_STMT, dbc, &stmt );
SQLSetStmtAttr( stmt, SQL_ATTR_CURSOR_SCROLLABLE,
                SQL_SCROLLABLE, SQL_IS_UINTEGER );
```

## Retrieving data

To retrieve rows from a database, you execute a `SELECT` statement using `SQLExecute` or `SQLExecDirect`. This opens a cursor on the statement.

You then use `SQLFetch` or `SQLFetchScroll` to fetch rows through the cursor. These functions fetch the next rowset of data from the result set and return data for all bound columns. Using `SQLFetchScroll`, rowsets can be specified at an absolute or relative position or by bookmark. `SQLFetchScroll` replaces the older `SQLExtendedFetch` from the ODBC 2.0 specification.

When an application frees the statement using `SQLFreeHandle`, it closes the cursor.

To fetch values from a cursor, your application can use either `SQLBindCol` or `SQLGetData`. If you use `SQLBindCol`, values are automatically retrieved on each fetch. If you use `SQLGetData`, you must call it for each column after each fetch.

`SQLGetData` is used to fetch values in pieces for columns such as `LONG VARCHAR` or `LONG BINARY`. As an alternative, you can set the `SQL_ATTR_MAX_LENGTH` statement attribute to a value large enough to hold the entire value for the column. The default value for `SQL_ATTR_MAX_LENGTH` is 256 KB.

The SQL Anywhere ODBC driver implements `SQL_ATTR_MAX_LENGTH` in a different way than intended by the ODBC specification. The intended meaning for `SQL_ATTR_MAX_LENGTH` is that it be used as a mechanism to truncate large fetches. This might be done for a "preview" mode where only the first part of the data is displayed. For example, instead of transmitting a 4 MB blob from the server to the client application, only the first 500 bytes of it might be transmitted (by setting `SQL_ATTR_MAX_LENGTH` to 500). The SQL Anywhere ODBC driver does not support this implementation.

The following code fragment opens a cursor on a query and retrieves data through the cursor. Error checking has been omitted to make the example easier to read. The fragment is taken from a complete sample, which can be found in `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ODBCSelect\odbcselect.cpp`.

```
SQLINTEGER cbDeptID = 0, cbDeptName = SQL_NTS, cbManagerID = 0;
SQLCHAR deptName[ DEPT_NAME_LEN + 1 ];
SQLSMALLINT deptID, managerID;
SQLHENV env;
SQLHDBC dbc;
SQLHSTMT stmt;
SQLRETURN retcode;
SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_ENV, SQL_NULL_HANDLE, &env );
SQLSetEnvAttr( env,
               SQL_ATTR_ODBC_VERSION,
               (void*)SQL_OV_ODBC3, 0);
SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_DBC, env, &dbc );
SQLConnect( dbc,
            (SQLCHAR*) "SQL Anywhere 11 Demo", SQL_NTS,
            (SQLCHAR*) "DBA", SQL_NTS,
            (SQLCHAR*) "sql", SQL_NTS );
SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_STMT, dbc, &stmt );
SQLBindCol( stmt, 1,
            SQL_C_SHORT, &deptID, 0, &cbDeptID);
SQLBindCol( stmt, 2,
            SQL_C_CHAR, deptName,
            sizeof(deptName), &cbDeptName);
SQLBindCol( stmt, 3,
            SQL_C_SHORT, &managerID, 0, &cbManagerID);
SQLExecDirect( stmt, (SQLCHAR * )
              "SELECT DepartmentID, DepartmentName, DepartmentHeadID FROM Departments "
```

```
        "ORDER BY DepartmentID", SQL_NTS );
while( ( retcode = SQLFetch( stmt ) ) != SQL_NO_DATA ){
    printf( "%d %20s %d\n", deptID, deptName, managerID );
}
SQLFreeHandle( SQL_HANDLE_STMT, stmt );
SQLDisconnect( dbc );
SQLFreeHandle( SQL_HANDLE_DBC, dbc );
SQLFreeHandle( SQL_HANDLE_ENV, env );
```

The number of row positions you can fetch in a cursor is governed by the size of an integer. You can fetch rows numbered up to number 2147483646, which is one less than the value that can be held in a 32-bit integer. When using negative numbers (rows from the end) you can fetch down to one more than the largest negative value that can be held in an integer.

## Updating and deleting rows through a cursor

The Microsoft ODBC Programmer's Reference suggests that you use SELECT ... FOR UPDATE to indicate that a query is updatable using positioned operations. You do not need to use the FOR UPDATE clause in SQL Anywhere: SELECT statements are automatically updatable as long as the following conditions are met:

- The underlying query supports updates.

That is to say, as long as a data modification statement on the columns in the result is meaningful, then positioned data modification statements can be carried out on the cursor.

The `ansi_update_constraints` database option limits the type of queries that are updatable.

For more information, see [“ansi\\_update\\_constraints option \[compatibility\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

- The cursor type supports updates.

If you are using a read-only cursor, you cannot update the result set.

ODBC provides two alternatives for carrying out positioned updates and deletes:

- Use the `SQLSetPos` function.

Depending on the parameters supplied (`SQL_POSITION`, `SQL_REFRESH`, `SQL_UPDATE`, `SQL_DELETE`) `SQLSetPos` sets the cursor position and allows an application to refresh data, or update, or delete data in the result set.

This is the method to use with SQL Anywhere.

- Send positioned UPDATE and DELETE statements using `SQLExecute`. This method should not be used with SQL Anywhere.

## Using bookmarks

ODBC provides **bookmarks**, which are values used to identify rows in a cursor. SQL Anywhere supports bookmarks for value-sensitive and insensitive cursors. For example, this means that the ODBC cursor types



SQL\_CURSOR\_STATIC and SQL\_CURSOR\_KEYSET\_DRIVEN support bookmarks while cursor types SQL\_CURSOR\_DYNAMIC and SQL\_CURSOR\_FORWARD\_ONLY do not.

Before ODBC 3.0, a database could specify only whether it supported bookmarks or not: there was no interface to provide this information for each cursor type. There was no way for a database server to indicate for what kind of cursor bookmarks were supported. For ODBC 2 applications, SQL Anywhere returns that it does support bookmarks. There is therefore nothing to prevent you from trying to use bookmarks with dynamic cursors; however, you should not use this combination.

## Calling stored procedures

This section describes how to create and call stored procedures and process the results from an ODBC application.

For a full description of stored procedures and triggers, see [“Using procedures, triggers, and batches” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#).

### Procedures and result sets

There are two types of procedures: those that return result sets and those that do not. You can use `SQLNumResultCols` to tell the difference: the number of result columns is zero if the procedure does not return a result set. If there is a result set, you can fetch the values using `SQLFetch` or `SQLExtendedFetch` just like any other cursor.

Parameters to procedures should be passed using parameter markers (question marks). Use `SQLBindParameter` to assign a storage area for each parameter marker, whether it is an INPUT, OUTPUT, or INOUT parameter.

To handle multiple result sets, ODBC must describe the currently executing cursor, not the procedure-defined result set. Therefore, ODBC does not always describe column names as defined in the `RESULT` clause of the stored procedure definition. To avoid this problem, you can use column aliases in your procedure result set cursor.

### Example

This example creates and calls a procedure that does not return a result set. The procedure takes one INOUT parameter, and increments its value. In the example, the variable `num_col` has the value zero, since the procedure does not return a result set. Error checking has been omitted to make the example easier to read.

```
HDBC dbc;
HSTMT stmt;
long I;
SWORD num_col;

/* Create a procedure */
SQLAllocStmt( dbc, &stmt );
SQLExecDirect( stmt,
    "CREATE PROCEDURE Increment( INOUT a INT )" \
    " BEGIN" \
    "   SET a = a + 1" \
    " END", SQL_NTS );

/* Call the procedure to increment 'I' */
I = 1;
SQLBindParameter( stmt, 1, SQL_C_LONG, SQL_INTEGER, 0,
    0, &I, NULL );
SQLExecDirect( stmt, "CALL Increment( ? )",
    SQL_NTS );
SQLNumResultCols( stmt, &num_col );
do_something( I );
```

## Example

This example calls a procedure that returns a result set. In the example, the variable **num\_col** will have the value 2 since the procedure returns a result set with two columns. Again, error checking has been omitted to make the example easier to read.

```
HDBC dbc;
HSTMT stmt;
SWORD num_col;
RETCODE retcode;
char ID[ 10 ];
char Surname[ 20 ];

/* Create the procedure */
SQLExecDirect( stmt,
    "CREATE PROCEDURE employees()" \
    " RESULT( ID CHAR(10), Surname CHAR(20))" \
    " BEGIN" \
    " SELECT EmployeeID, Surname FROM Employees" \
    " END", SQL_NTS );

/* Call the procedure - print the results */
SQLExecDirect( stmt, "CALL employees()", SQL_NTS );
SQLNumResultCols( stmt, &num_col );
SQLBindCol( stmt, 1, SQL_C_CHAR, &ID,
    sizeof(ID), NULL );
SQLBindCol( stmt, 2, SQL_C_CHAR, &Surname,
    sizeof(Surname), NULL );

for( ;; ) {
    retcode = SQLFetch( stmt );
    if( retcode == SQL_NO_DATA_FOUND ) {
        retcode = SQLMoreResults( stmt );
        if( retcode == SQL_NO_DATA_FOUND ) break;
    } else {
        do_something( ID, Surname );
    }
}
```

## Handling errors

Errors in ODBC are reported using the return value from each of the ODBC function calls and either the `SQLError` function or the `SQLGetDiagRec` function. The `SQLError` function was used in ODBC versions up to, but not including, version 3. As of version 3 the `SQLError` function has been deprecated and replaced by the `SQLGetDiagRec` function.

Every ODBC function returns a `SQLRETURN`, which is one of the following status codes:

Status code	Description
<code>SQL_SUCCESS</code>	No error.
<code>SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO</code>	The function completed, but a call to <code>SQLError</code> will indicate a warning.  The most common case for this status is that a value being returned is too long for the buffer provided by the application.
<code>SQL_ERROR</code>	The function did not complete because of an error. Call <code>SQLError</code> to get more information about the problem.
<code>SQL_INVALID_HANDLE</code>	An invalid environment, connection, or statement handle was passed as a parameter.  This often happens if a handle is used after it has been freed, or if the handle is the null pointer.
<code>SQL_NO_DATA_FOUND</code>	There is no information available.  The most common use for this status is when fetching from a cursor; it indicates that there are no more rows in the cursor.
<code>SQL_NEED_DATA</code>	Data is needed for a parameter.  This is an advanced feature described in the ODBC SDK documentation under <code>SQLParamData</code> and <code>SQLPutData</code> .

Every environment, connection, and statement handle can have one or more errors or warnings associated with it. Each call to `SQLError` or `SQLGetDiagRec` returns the information for one error and removes the information for that error. If you do not call `SQLError` or `SQLGetDiagRec` to remove all errors, the errors are removed on the next function call that passes the same handle as a parameter.

Each call to `SQLError` passes three handles for an environment, connection, and statement. The first call uses `SQL_NULL_HSTMT` to get the error associated with a connection. Similarly, a call with both `SQL_NULL_DBC` and `SQL_NULL_HSTMT` get any error associated with the environment handle.

Each call to `SQLGetDiagRec` can pass either an environment, connection or statement handle. The first call passes in a handle of type `SQL_HANDLE_DBC` to get the error associated with a connection. The second call passes in a handle of type `SQL_HANDLE_STMT` to get the error associated with the statement that was just executed.

SQLError and SQLGetDiagRec return SQL\_SUCCESS if there is an error to report (*not* SQL\_ERROR), and SQL\_NO\_DATA\_FOUND if there are no more errors to report.

### Example 1

The following code fragment uses SQLError and return codes:

```

/* Declare required variables */
SQLHDBC dbc;
SQLHSTMT stmt;
SQLRETURN retcode;
UCHAR errormsg[100];
/* Code omitted here */
retcode = SQLAllocHandle(SQL_HANDLE_STMT, dbc, &stmt );
if( retcode == SQL_ERROR ){
    SQLError( env, dbc, SQL_NULL_HSTMT, NULL, NULL,
             errormsg, sizeof(errormsg), NULL );
    /* Assume that print_error is defined */
    print_error( "Allocation failed", errormsg );
    return;
}

/* Delete items for order 2015 */
retcode = SQLExecDirect( stmt,
                        "DELETE FROM SalesOrderItems WHERE ID=2015",
                        SQL_NTS );
if( retcode == SQL_ERROR ) {
    SQLError( env, dbc, stmt, NULL, NULL,
             errormsg, sizeof(errormsg), NULL );
    /* Assume that print_error is defined */
    print_error( "Failed to delete items", errormsg );
    return;
}

```

### Example 2

The following code fragment uses SQLGetDiagRec and return codes:

```

/* Declare required variables */
SQLHDBC dbc;
SQLHSTMT stmt;
SQLRETURN retcode;
SQLSMALLINT errmsglen;
SQLINTEGER errnative;
UCHAR errormsg[255];
UCHAR errstate[5];
/* Code omitted here */
retcode = SQLAllocHandle(SQL_HANDLE_STMT, dbc, &stmt );
if( retcode == SQL_ERROR ){
    SQLGetDiagRec(SQL_HANDLE_DBC, dbc, 1, errstate,
                 &errnative, errormsg, sizeof(errormsg), &errmsglen);
    /* Assume that print_error is defined */
    print_error( "Allocation failed",
                errstate, errnative, errormsg );
    return;
}

/* Delete items for order 2015 */
retcode = SQLExecDirect( stmt,
                        "DELETE FROM SalesOrderItems WHERE ID=2015",
                        SQL_NTS );
if( retcode == SQL_ERROR ) {
    SQLGetDiagRec(SQL_HANDLE_STMT, stmt,

```

```
        recnum, errstate,  
        &errnative, errmsg, sizeof(errmsg), &errmsglen);  
/* Assume that print_error is defined */  
print_error("Failed to delete items",  
           errstate, errnative, errmsg );  
return;  
}
```

---

# SQL Anywhere JDBC driver

## Contents

Introduction to JDBC .....	502
Using the iAnywhere JDBC driver .....	505
Using the jConnect JDBC driver .....	507
Connecting from a JDBC client application .....	511
Using JDBC to access data .....	517
Using JDBC escape syntax .....	526
iAnywhere JDBC 3.0 API support .....	529

---

## Introduction to JDBC

JDBC can be used both from client applications and inside the database. Java classes using JDBC provide a more powerful alternative to SQL stored procedures for incorporating programming logic into the database.

JDBC provides a SQL interface for Java applications: if you want to access relational data from Java, you do so using JDBC calls.

The phrase **client application** applies both to applications running on a user's computer and to logic running on a middle-tier application server.

The examples illustrate the distinctive features of using JDBC in SQL Anywhere. For more information about JDBC programming, see any JDBC programming book.

You can use JDBC with SQL Anywhere in the following ways:

- **JDBC on the client** Java client applications can make JDBC calls to SQL Anywhere. The connection takes place through a JDBC driver.

SQL Anywhere supports and includes two JDBC drivers: the iAnywhere JDBC driver, which is a Type 2 JDBC driver, and the jConnect driver for pure Java applications, which is a Type 4 JDBC driver.

- **JDBC in the database** Java classes installed into a database can make JDBC calls to access and modify data in the database using an internal JDBC driver.

### JDBC resources

- **Example source code** You can find source code for the examples in this chapter in the directory *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JDBC*.
- **JDBC Specification** You can find more on the JDBC Data Access API at [Java SE Technologies - Database](#).
- **Required software** You need TCP/IP to use the jConnect driver.

The jConnect driver is available at [jConnect for JDBC](#).

For more information about the jConnect driver and its location, see “[Using the jConnect JDBC driver](#)” on page 507.

## Choosing a JDBC driver

SQL Anywhere supports the following JDBC drivers:

- **iAnywhere JDBC driver** This driver communicates with SQL Anywhere using the Command Sequence client/server protocol. Its behavior is consistent with ODBC, embedded SQL, and OLE DB applications. The iAnywhere JDBC driver is the recommended JDBC driver for connecting to SQL Anywhere databases.
- **jConnect** This driver is a 100% pure Java driver. It communicates with SQL Anywhere using the TDS client/server protocol.



jConnect and jConnect documentation are available from [jConnect for JDBC](#).

When choosing which driver to use, you should consider the following factors:

- **Features** Both the iAnywhere JDBC driver and jConnect 6.0.5 are JDBC 3.0 compliant. However, the iAnywhere JDBC driver provides fully-scrollable cursors when connected to a SQL Anywhere database. The jConnect JDBC driver provides fully-scrollable cursors only when connected to an Adaptive Server Enterprise database.  
  
The JDBC 3.0 API documentation is available at [JDBC Downloads](#). For a summary of the JDBC API methods supported by iAnywhere, see [“iAnywhere JDBC 3.0 API support” on page 529](#).
- **Pure Java** The jConnect driver is a pure Java solution. The iAnywhere JDBC driver requires the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver and is not a pure Java solution.
- **Performance** The iAnywhere JDBC driver provides better performance for most purposes than the jConnect driver.
- **Compatibility** The TDS protocol used by the jConnect driver is shared with Adaptive Server Enterprise. Some aspects of the driver's behavior are governed by this protocol, and are configured to be compatible with Adaptive Server Enterprise.

For information about platform availability for iAnywhere JDBC driver and jConnect, see <http://www.sybase.com/detail?id=1061806>.

For information about using jConnect with Windows Mobile, see [“Using jConnect on Windows Mobile” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## JDBC program structure

The following sequence of events typically occurs in JDBC applications:

### 1. Create a Connection object

Calling a `getConnection` class method of the `DriverManager` class creates a `Connection` object, and establishes a connection with a database.

### 2. Generate a Statement object

The `Connection` object generates a `Statement` object.

### 3. Pass a SQL statement

A SQL statement that executes within the database environment is passed to the `Statement` object. If the statement is a query, this action returns a `ResultSet` object.

The `ResultSet` object contains the data returned from the SQL statement, but exposes it one row at a time (similar to the way a cursor works).

### 4. Loop over the rows of the result set

The next method of the `ResultSet` object performs two actions:

- The current row (the row in the result set exposed through the `ResultSet` object) advances one row.

- A boolean value returns to indicate whether there is a row to advance to.

5. **For each row, retrieve the values**

Values are retrieved for each column in the `ResultSet` object by identifying either the name or position of the column. You can use the `getData` method to get the value from a column on the current row.

Java objects can use JDBC objects to interact with a database and get data for their own use.

## Differences between client- and server-side JDBC connections

A difference between JDBC on the client and in the database server lies in establishing a connection with the database environment.

- **Client side** In client-side JDBC, establishing a connection requires the `iAnywhere JDBC driver` or the `jConnect JDBC driver`. Passing arguments to `DriverManager.getConnection` establishes the connection. The database environment is an external application from the perspective of the client application.
- **Server-side** When using JDBC within the database server, a connection already exists. The string `"jdbc:default:connection"` is passed to `DriverManager.getConnection`, which allows the JDBC application to work within the current user connection. This is a quick, efficient, and safe operation because the client application has already passed the database security to establish the connection. The user ID and password, having been provided once, do not need to be provided again. The server-side JDBC driver can only connect to the database of the current connection.

You can write JDBC classes so that they can run both at the client and at the server by employing a single conditional statement for constructing the URL. An external connection requires the host name and port number, while the internal connection requires `"jdbc:default:connection"`.

## Using the iAnywhere JDBC driver

The iAnywhere JDBC driver provides a JDBC driver that has some performance benefits and feature benefits compared to the pure Java jConnect JDBC driver, but which is not a pure-Java solution. The iAnywhere JDBC driver is recommended in most cases.

For information about choosing which JDBC driver to use, see [“Choosing a JDBC driver” on page 502](#).

## Loading the iAnywhere JDBC driver

Before you can use the iAnywhere JDBC driver in your application, you must load the appropriate driver. Load the iAnywhere JDBC 3.0 driver with the following statement:

```
DriverManager.registerDriver( (Driver)
    Class.forName(
        "iAnywhere.ml.jdbcodbc.jdbc3.IDriver" ).newInstance()
    );
```

Using the newInstance method works around issues in some browsers.

- As the classes are loaded using Class.forName, the package containing the iAnywhere JDBC driver does not have to be imported using import statements.
- *jodbc.jar* must be in your classpath when you run the application.

```
set classpath=%classpath%;install-dir\java\jodbc.jar
```

### Required files

The Java component of the iAnywhere JDBC driver is included in the *jodbc.jar* file installed into the *Java* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation. For Windows, the native component is *dbjodbc11.dll* in the *bin32* or *bin64* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation; for Unix, the native component is *libdbjodbc11.so*. This component must be in the system path. When deploying applications using this driver, you must also deploy the ODBC driver files.

## Supplying a URL to the driver

To connect to a database via the iAnywhere JDBC driver, you need to supply a URL for the database. For example:

```
Connection con = DriverManager.getConnection(
    "jdbc:iAnywhere:DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo" );
```

The URL contains **jdbc:iAnywhere:** followed by a standard ODBC connection string. The connection string is commonly an ODBC data source, but you can also use explicit individual connection parameters, separated by semicolons, in addition to or instead of the data source. For more information about the parameters that you can use in a connection string, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

If you do not use a data source, you should specify the ODBC driver to use by including the DRIVER parameter in your connection string:

```
Connection con = DriverManager.getConnection(  
    "jdbc:ianywhere:driver=SQL Anywhere 11;..." );
```

## Using the jConnect JDBC driver

SQL Anywhere supports one version of jConnect: jConnect 6.0.5. The jConnect driver is available as a separate download from [jConnect for JDBC](#). Documentation for jConnect can also be found on the same page.

If you want to use JDBC from an applet, you must use the jConnect JDBC driver to connect to SQL Anywhere databases.

### The jConnect driver files

SQL Anywhere supports the following version of jConnect:

- **jConnect 6.0.5** This version of jConnect is for developing JDK 1.4 or later applications. jConnect 6.0.5 is JDBC 3.0 compliant. jConnect 6.0.5 is supplied as a JAR file named *jconn3.jar*.

#### Note

For the purposes of this documentation, all the explanations and code samples provided assume that you are developing JDK 1.5 applications, and that you are using the jConnect 6.0.5 driver.

There is a copy of *jconn3.jar* in the *install-dir\java* folder. However, we recommend that you use the version of the file included with jConnect 6.0.5 since it will be current with the version of jConnect that you have installed.

### Setting the class path for jConnect

For your application to use jConnect, the jConnect classes must be in your class path at compile time and run time, so that the Java compiler and Java runtime can locate the necessary files.

The following command adds the jConnect 6.0.5 driver to an existing CLASSPATH environment variable (where *path* is your jConnect installation directory).

```
set classpath=path\jConnect-6_0\classes\jconn3.jar;%classpath%
```

### Importing the jConnect classes

The classes in jConnect 6.0.5 are all in `com.sybase.jdbc3.jdbc`. You must import these classes at the beginning of each source file:

```
import com.sybase.jdbc3.jdbc.*
```

### Encrypting passwords

SQL Anywhere supports password encryption for jConnect connections.

## Installing jConnect system objects into a database

If you want to use jConnect to access system table information (database metadata), you must add the jConnect system objects to your database.

You can add the jConnect system objects to the database when creating the database or at a later time by upgrading the database. You can upgrade a database from Sybase Central or by using the dbupgrad utility.

**Windows Mobile**

Do not add jConnect system objects to your Windows Mobile database. See [“Using jConnect on Windows Mobile” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

**Caution**

You should always back up your database files before upgrading. If you apply the upgrade to the existing files, then these files become unusable if the upgrade fails. For information about backing up your database, see [“Backup and data recovery” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

**To add jConnect system objects to a database (Sybase Central)**

1. Connect to the database from Sybase Central as a DBA user.
2. Select the database, if necessary, and then from the **Tools** menu choose SQL Anywhere 11 and then **Upgrade Database**.
3. Follow the instructions in the **Upgrade Database Wizard**.

**To add jConnect system objects to a database (dbupgrad)**

- From a command prompt, run the following command:

```
dbupgrad -c "connection-string"
```

In this command, *connection-string* is a suitable connection string that enables access to a database and server as a DBA user.

## Loading the jConnect driver

Before you can use jConnect in your application, load the driver with the following statement:

```
DriverManager.registerDriver( (Driver)  
    Class.forName(  
        "com.sybase.jdbc3.jdbc.SybDriver").newInstance()  
    );
```

Using the newInstance method works around issues in some browsers.

- As the classes are loaded using Class.forName, the package containing the jConnect driver does not have to be imported using import statements.
- To use jConnect 6.0.5, *jconn3.jar* must be in your classpath when you run the application. *jconn3.jar* is located in the *classes* subdirectory of your jConnect 6.0.5 installation (typically, *jConnect-6\_0\classes*).

## Supplying a URL to the driver

To connect to a database via jConnect, you need to supply a URL for the database. For example:

```
Connection con = DriverManager.getConnection(
    "jdbc:sybase:Tds:localhost:2638", "DBA", "sql");
```

The URL is composed in the following way:

```
jdbc:sybase:Tds:host:port
```

The individual components are:

- **jdbc:sybase:Tds** The jConnect JDBC driver, using the TDS application protocol.
- **host** The IP address or name of the computer on which the server is running. If you are establishing a same-host connection, you can use localhost, which means the computer system you are logged into.
- **port** The port number on which the database server listens. The port number assigned to SQL Anywhere is 2638. Use that number unless there are specific reasons not to do so.

The connection string must be less than 253 characters in length.

## Specifying a database on a server

Each SQL Anywhere database server can have one or more databases loaded at a time. If the URL you supply when connecting via jConnect specifies a server, but does not specify a database, then the connection attempt is made to the default database on the server.

You can specify a particular database by providing an extended form of the URL in one of the following ways.

### Using the ServiceName parameter

```
jdbc:sybase:Tds:host:port?ServiceName=database
```

The question mark followed by a series of assignments is a standard way of providing arguments to a URL. The case of ServiceName is not significant, and there must be no spaces around the = sign. The *database* parameter is the database name, not the server name. The database name must not include the path or file suffix. For example:

```
Connection con = DriverManager.getConnection(
    "jdbc:sybase:Tds:localhost:2638?ServiceName=demo", "DBA", "sql");
```

### Using the RemotePWD parameter

A workaround exists for passing additional connection parameters to the server.

This technique allows you to provide additional connection parameters such as the database name, or a database file, using the RemotePWD field. You set RemotePWD as a Properties field using the put method.

The following code illustrates how to use the field.

```
import java.util.Properties;
.
```

```
.
.
DriverManager.registerDriver( (Driver)
    Class.forName(
        "com.sybase.jdbc3.jdbc.SybDriver").newInstance()
    );

Properties props = new Properties();
props.put( "User", "DBA" );
props.put( "Password", "sql" );
props.put( "RemotePWD", " ,DatabaseFile=mydb.db" );

Connection con = DriverManager.getConnection(
    "jdbc:sybase:Tds:localhost:2638", props );
```

As shown in the example, a comma must precede the DatabaseFile connection parameter. Using the DatabaseFile parameter, you can start a database on a server using jConnect. By default, the database is started with autostop=YES. If you specify utility\_db with a DatabaseFile (DBF) or DatabaseName (DBN) connection parameter (for example, DBN=utility\_db), then the utility database is started automatically.

For more information about the utility database, see [“Using the utility database” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## Database options set for jConnect connections

When an application connects to the database using the jConnect driver, the sp\_tsql\_environment stored procedure is called. The sp\_tsql\_environment procedure sets some database options for compatibility with Adaptive Server Enterprise behavior.

### See also

- [“Characteristics of Open Client and jConnect connections” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)
- [“sp\\_tsql\\_environment system procedure” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)



## Connecting from a JDBC client application

Database metadata is always available when using the iAnywhere JDBC driver.

If you want to access database system tables (database metadata) from a JDBC application that uses jConnect, you must add a set of jConnect system objects to your database. These procedures are installed to all databases by default. The `dbinit -i` option prevents this installation.

For more information about adding the jConnect system objects to a database, see [“Using the jConnect JDBC driver” on page 507](#).

The following complete Java application is a command line program that connects to a running database, prints a set of information to your command line, and terminates.

Establishing a connection is the first step any JDBC application must take when working with database data.

This example illustrates an external connection, which is a regular client/server connection. For information about how to create an internal connection from Java classes running inside the database server, see [“Establishing a connection from a server-side JDBC class” on page 514](#).

### Connection example code

The following is the source code for the methods used to make a connection. The source code can be found in the file `JDBCConnect.java` in the `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JDBC` directory. As presented, the example uses the JDBC 3.0 version of the iAnywhere JDBC driver to connect to the database. To use the jConnect 6.0.5 driver replace `ianywhere.ml.jdbcodbc.jdbc3.IDriver` with `com.sybase.jdbc3.jdbc.SybDriver`. You must also change the connection string if you want to use the jConnect 6.0.5 driver. Code alternatives are included as comments in the source code.

```
import java.io.*;
import java.sql.*;

public class JDBCConnect
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        try
        {
            // Select the JDBC driver. May throw a SQLException.
            // Choices are jConnect 6.0 driver
            // or iAnywhere JDBC 3.0 driver.
            // Currently, we use the iAnywhere JDBC 3.0 driver.
            DriverManager.registerDriver( (Driver)
                Class.forName(
                    // "com.sybase.jdbc3.jdbc.SybDriver").newInstance()
                    "ianywhere.ml.jdbcodbc.jdbc3.IDriver").newInstance()
                );

            // Create a connection. Choices are TDS using jConnect,
            // Sun's JDBC-ODBC bridge, or the iAnywhere JDBC driver.
            // Currently, we use the iAnywhere JDBC driver.
            Connection con = DriverManager.getConnection(
                // "jdbc:sybase:Tds:localhost:2638", "DBA", "sql");
                // "jdbc:odbc:driver=SQL Anywhere 11;uid=DBA;pwd=sql" );
                "jdbc:ianywhere:driver=SQL Anywhere 11;uid=DBA;pwd=sql" );

            // Create a statement object, the container for the SQL
```

```
// statement. May throw a SQLException.
Statement stmt = con.createStatement();

// Create a result set object by executing the query.
// May throw a SQLException.
ResultSet rs = stmt.executeQuery(
    "SELECT ID, GivenName, Surname FROM Customers");

// Process the result set.
while (rs.next())
{
    int value = rs.getInt(1);
    String FirstName = rs.getString(2);
    String LastName = rs.getString(3);
    System.out.println(value+" "+FirstName+" "+LastName);
}
rs.close();
stmt.close();
con.close();
}
catch (SQLException sqe)
{
    System.out.println("Unexpected exception : " +
        sqe.toString() + ", sqlstate = " +
        sqe.getSQLState());
    System.exit(1);
}
catch (Exception e)
{
    e.printStackTrace();
    System.exit(1);
}

System.exit(0);
}
```

## How the connection example works

The external connection example is a Java command line program.

### Importing packages

The application requires a couple of packages, which are imported in the first lines of *JDBCConnect.java*:

- The `java.io` package contains the Sun Microsystems io classes, which are required for printing to the console window.
- The `java.sql` package contains the Sun Microsystems JDBC classes, which are required for all JDBC applications.

### The main method

Each Java application requires a class with a method named `main`, which is the method invoked when the program starts. In this simple example, `JDBCConnect.main` is the only public method in the application.

The `JDBCConnect.main` method carries out the following tasks:

1. Loads the iAnywhere JDBC 3.0 driver (identified by the driver string "iAnywhere.ml.jdbcodbc.jdbc3.IDriver").

Class.forName loads the driver. Using the newInstance method works around issues in some browsers.

2. Connects to the default running database using an iAnywhere JDBC driver URL. If you are using the jConnect driver instead, use the URL "jdbc:sybase:Tds:localhost:2638" (as shown in comments) with "DBA" and "sql" as the user ID and password, respectively.

DriverManager.getConnection establishes a connection using the specified URL.

3. Creates a statement object, which is the container for the SQL statement.
4. Creates a result set object by executing a SQL query.
5. Iterates through the result set, printing the column information.
6. Closes each of the result set, statement, and connection objects.

## Running the connection example

### To create and execute the external connection example application

1. At a command prompt, change to the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JDBC* directory.
2. Start a database server with the sample database on your local computer using the following command:

```
dbeng11 samples-dir\demo.db
```

3. Set the CLASSPATH environment variable.

```
set classpath=%classpath%;install-dir\java\jodbc.jar
```

If you are using the jConnect driver instead, then use the following (where *path* is your jConnect installation directory):

```
set classpath=path\jConnect-6_0\classes\jconn3.jar;%classpath%
```

4. Run the following command to compile the example:

```
javac JBCCConnect.java
```

5. Run the following command to run the example:

```
java JBCCConnect
```

6. Confirm that a list of identification numbers with customer's names appears at the command prompt.

If the attempt to connect fails, an error message appears instead. Confirm that you have executed all the steps as required. Check that your class path is correct. An incorrect setting may result in a failure to locate a class.

## Establishing a connection from a server-side JDBC class

SQL statements in JDBC are built using the `createStatement` method of a `Connection` object. Even classes running inside the server need to establish a connection to create a `Connection` object.

Establishing a connection from a server-side JDBC class is more straightforward than establishing an external connection. Because the user is already connected to the database, the class simply uses the current connection.

### Server-side connection example code

The following is the source code for the server-side connection example. It is a modified version of the source code in `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JDBC\JDBCConnect.java`.

```
import java.io.*;
import java.sql.*;

public class JDBCConnect2
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        try
        {
            // Open the connection. May throw a SQLException.
            Connection con = DriverManager.getConnection(
                "jdbc:default:connection" );

            // Create a statement object, the container for the SQL
            // statement. May throw a SQLException.
            Statement stmt = con.createStatement();
            // Create a result set object by executing the query.
            // May throw a SQLException.
            ResultSet rs = stmt.executeQuery(
                "SELECT ID, GivenName, Surname FROM Customers");

            // Process the result set.
            while (rs.next())
            {
                int value = rs.getInt(1);
                String FirstName = rs.getString(2);
                String LastName = rs.getString(3);
                System.out.println(value+" "+FirstName+" "+LastName);
            }
            rs.close();
            stmt.close();
            con.close();
        }
        catch (SQLException sqe)
        {
            System.out.println("Unexpected exception : " +
                sqe.toString() + ", sqlstate = " +
                sqe.getSQLState());
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
}
```

## How the server-side connection example differs

The server-side connection example is almost identical to the client-side connection example, with the following exceptions:

1. The driver manager does not need to be loaded. The following code has been removed from the example.

```
DriverManager.registerDriver( (Driver)
    Class.forName(
        // "com.sybase.jdbc3.jdbc.SybDriver").newInstance()
        "iAnywhere.ml.jdbcodbc.IDriver").newInstance()
    );
```

2. It connects to the default running database using the current connection. The URL in the getConnection call has been changed as follows:

```
Connection con = DriverManager.getConnection(
    "jdbc:default:connection" );
```

3. The System.exit() statements have been removed.

## Running the server-side connection example

### To create and execute the internal connection example application

1. At a command prompt, change to the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JDBC* directory.
2. Start a database server with the sample database on your local computer using the following command:

```
dbeng11 samples-dir\demo.db
```

3. For server-side JDBC, it is not necessary to set the CLASSPATH environment variable.
4. Enter the following command to compile the example:

```
javac JDBCConnect2.java
```

5. Install the class into the sample database using Interactive SQL. Run the following statement:

```
INSTALL JAVA NEW
FROM FILE 'samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JDBC\JDBCConnect2.class'
```

You can also install the class using Sybase Central. While connected to the sample database, open the **Java** subfolder under **External Environments** and choose **File » New » Java Class**. Then follow the instructions in the wizard.

6. Define a stored procedure named JDBCConnect that acts as a wrapper for the JDBCConnect2.main method in the class:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE JDBCConnect()
EXTERNAL NAME 'JDBCConnect2.main([Ljava/lang/String;])V'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

7. Call the JDBCConnect2.main method as follows:

```
call JDBCConnect();
```

The first time a Java class is called in a session, the Java VM must be loaded. This might take a few seconds.

8. Confirm that a list of identification numbers with customers' names appears in the database server messages window.

If the attempt to connect fails, an error message appears instead. Confirm that you have executed all the steps as required.

## Notes on JDBC connections

- **Autocommit behavior** The JDBC specification requires that, by default, a COMMIT is performed after each data modification statement. Currently, the client-side JDBC behavior is to commit (autocommit is true) and the server-side behavior is to not commit (autocommit is false). To obtain the same behavior in both client-side and server-side applications, you can use a statement such as the following:

```
con.setAutoCommit( false );
```

In this statement, con is the current connection object. You could also set autocommit to true.

- **Connection defaults** From server-side JDBC, only the first call to `getConnection( "jdbc:default:connection" )` creates a new connection with the default values. Subsequent calls return a wrapper of the current connection with all connection properties unchanged. If you set autocommit to false in your initial connection, any subsequent `getConnection` calls within the same Java code return a connection with autocommit set to false.

You may want to ensure that closing a connection restores the connection properties to their default values, so that subsequent connections are obtained with standard JDBC values. The following code achieves this:

```
Connection con =
    DriverManager.getConnection("jdbc:default:connection");

boolean oldAutoCommit = con.getAutoCommit();
try {
    // main body of code here
}
finally {
    con.setAutoCommit( oldAutoCommit );
}
```

This discussion applies not only to autocommit, but also to other connection properties such as transaction isolation level and read-only mode.

For more information about the `getTransactionIsolation`, `setTransactionIsolation`, and `isReadOnly` methods, see documentation on the `java.sql.Connection` interface.

## Using JDBC to access data

Java applications that hold some or all classes in the database have significant advantages over traditional SQL stored procedures. At an introductory level, however, it may be helpful to use the parallels with SQL stored procedures to demonstrate the capabilities of JDBC. In the following examples, you write Java classes that insert a row into the Departments table.

As with other interfaces, SQL statements in JDBC can be either **static** or **dynamic**. Static SQL statements are constructed in the Java application and sent to the database. The database server parses the statement, selects an execution plan, and executes the statement. Together, parsing and selecting an execution plan are referred to as **preparing** the statement.

If a similar statement has to be executed many times (many inserts into one table, for example), there can be significant overhead in static SQL because the preparation step has to be executed each time.

In contrast, a dynamic SQL statement contains placeholders. The statement, prepared once using these placeholders, can be executed many times without the additional expense of preparing. Dynamic SQL is discussed in [“Using prepared statements for more efficient access” on page 519](#).

## Preparing for the examples

### Sample code

The code fragments in this section are taken from the complete class in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JDBC\JDBCExample.java*.

### To install the JDBCExample class

1. Compile the *JDBCExample.java* source code.
2. Using Interactive SQL, connect to the sample database as the DBA.
3. Install the *JDBCExample.class* file into the sample database by executing the following statement in Interactive SQL (*samples-dir* represents the SQL Anywhere samples directory):

```
INSTALL JAVA NEW  
FROM FILE 'samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JDBC\JDBCExample.class'
```

You can also install the class using Sybase Central. While connected to the sample database, open the **Java** subfolder under **External Environments** and choose **File » New » Java Class**. Follow the instructions in the wizard.

## Inserts, updates, and deletes using JDBC

The Statement object executes static SQL statements. You execute SQL statements such as INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE, which do not return result sets, using the executeUpdate method of the Statement object. Statements, such as CREATE TABLE and other data definition statements, can also be executed using executeUpdate.

When using the iAnywhere JDBC driver to perform batched inserts, it is recommended that you use a small column size. Using batched inserts to insert large binary or character data into long binary or long varchar columns is not recommended and may cause a degradation of performance. This is because the iAnywhere JDBC driver must allocate large amounts of memory to hold each of the batched insert rows. In all other cases, using batched inserts should provide better performance than using individual inserts.

If you do not want your application to use batched inserts to insert large data into a long binary or long varchar column, the default maximum field size of any batched insert column is 256K. If your application needs to batch inserts with more than 256K of column data, then a larger maximum field size must be specified in the `Statement.setMaxFieldSize()` method before the batch insert performed.

The following code fragment illustrates how to execute an INSERT statement. It uses a `Statement` object that has been passed to the `InsertStatic` method as an argument.

```
public static void InsertStatic( Statement stmt )
{
    try
    {
        int iRows = stmt.executeUpdate(
            "INSERT INTO Departments (DepartmentID, DepartmentName)"
            + " VALUES (201, 'Eastern Sales')" );
        // Print the number of rows inserted
        System.out.println(iRows + " rows inserted");
    }
    catch (SQLException sqe)
    {
        System.out.println("Unexpected exception : " +
            sqe.toString() + ", sqlstate = " +
            sqe.getSQLState());
    }
    catch (Exception e)
    {
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
}
```

**Source code available**

This code fragment is part of the `JDBCExample` class included in the `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JDBC` directory.

**Notes**

- The `executeUpdate` method returns an integer that reflects the number of rows affected by the operation. In this case, a successful INSERT would return a value of one (1).
- When run as a server-side class, the output from `System.out.println` goes to the database server messages window.

**To run the JDBC Insert example**

1. Using Interactive SQL, connect to the sample database as the DBA.
2. Ensure the `JDBCExample` class has been installed.



For more information about installing the Java examples classes, see [“Preparing for the examples” on page 517](#).

3. Define a stored procedure named JDBCExample that acts as a wrapper for the JDBCExample.main method in the class:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE JDBCExample( IN arg CHAR(50) )
  EXTERNAL NAME 'JDBCExample.main([Ljava/lang/String;)'V'
  LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

4. Call the JDBCExample.main method as follows:

```
CALL JDBCExample( 'insert' );
```

The argument string 'insert' causes the InsertStatic method to be invoked.

5. Confirm that a row has been added to the Departments table.

```
SELECT * FROM Departments;
```

The example program displays the updated contents of the Departments table in the database server messages window.

6. There is a similar method in the example class called DeleteStatic that shows how to delete the row that has just been added. Call the JDBCExample.main method as follows:

```
CALL JDBCExample( 'delete' );
```

The argument string 'delete' causes the DeleteStatic method to be invoked.

7. Confirm that the row has been deleted from the Departments table.

```
SELECT * FROM Departments;
```

The example program displays the updated contents of the Departments table in the database server messages window.

## Using prepared statements for more efficient access

If you use the Statement interface, you parse each statement that you send to the database, generate an access plan, and execute the statement. The steps prior to actual execution are called **preparing** the statement.

You can achieve performance benefits if you use the PreparedStatement interface. This allows you to prepare a statement using placeholders, and then assign values to the placeholders when executing the statement.

Using prepared statements is particularly useful when carrying out many similar actions, such as inserting many rows.

For more information about prepared statements, see [“Preparing statements” on page 26](#).

### Example

The following example illustrates how to use the PreparedStatement interface, although inserting a single row is not a good use of prepared statements.

The following InsertDynamic method of the JDBCExample class carries out a prepared statement:

```
public static void InsertDynamic( Connection con,
                                String ID, String name )
{
    try {
        // Build the INSERT statement
        // ? is a placeholder character
        String sqlStr = "INSERT INTO Departments " +
            "( DepartmentID, DepartmentName ) " +
            "VALUES ( ? , ? )";

        // Prepare the statement
        PreparedStatement stmt =
            con.prepareStatement( sqlStr );

        // Set some values
        int idValue = Integer.valueOf( ID );
        stmt.setInt( 1, idValue );
        stmt.setString( 2, name );

        // Execute the statement
        int iRows = stmt.executeUpdate();

        // Print the number of rows inserted
        System.out.println(iRows + " rows inserted");
    }
    catch (SQLException sqe)
    {
        System.out.println("Unexpected exception : " +
            sqe.toString() + ", sqlstate = " +
            sqe.getSQLState());
    }
    catch (Exception e)
    {
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
}
```

**Source code available**

This code fragment is part of the JDBCExample class included in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JDBC* directory.

**Notes**

- The executeUpdate method returns an integer that reflects the number of rows affected by the operation. In this case, a successful INSERT would return a value of one (1).
- When run as a server-side class, the output from System.out.println goes to the database server messages window.

**To run the JDBC Insert example**

1. Using Interactive SQL, connect to the sample database as the DBA.
2. Ensure the JDBCExample class has been installed.

For more information about installing the Java examples classes, see [“Preparing for the examples” on page 517](#).

3. Define a stored procedure named JDBCInsert that acts as a wrapper for the JDBCExample.Insert method in the class:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE JDBCInsert( IN arg1 INTEGER, IN arg2 CHAR(50) )
  EXTERNAL NAME 'JDBCExample.Insert(ILjava/lang/String;)'V'
  LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

4. Call the JDBCExample.Insert method as follows:

```
CALL JDBCInsert( 202, 'Southeastern Sales' );
```

The Insert method causes the InsertDynamic method to be invoked.

5. Confirm that a row has been added to the Departments table.

```
SELECT * FROM Departments;
```

The example program displays the updated contents of the Departments table in the database server messages window.

6. There is a similar method in the example class called DeleteDynamic that shows how to delete the row that has just been added.

Define a stored procedure named JDBCDelete that acts as a wrapper for the JDBCExample.Delete method in the class:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE JDBCDelete( in arg1 integer )
  EXTERNAL NAME 'JDBCExample.Delete(I)V'
  LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

7. Call the JDBCExample.Delete method as follows:

```
CALL JDBCDelete( 202 );
```

The Delete method causes the DeleteDynamic method to be invoked.

8. Confirm that the row has been deleted from the Departments table.

```
SELECT * FROM Departments;
```

The example program displays the updated contents of the Departments table in the database server messages window.

## Using prepared statements for wide inserts

The PreparedStatement.addBatch() method is useful for performing batched (or wide) inserts. The following are some guidelines to using this method.

1. An INSERT statement should be prepared using one of the Connection.prepareStatement() methods.

```
// Build the INSERT statement
String sqlStr = "INSERT INTO Departments " +
  "( DepartmentID, DepartmentName ) " +
```

```
        "VALUES ( ? , ? )";  
// Prepare the statement  
PreparedStatement stmt =  
    con.prepareStatement( sqlStr );
```

2. The parameters for the prepared insert statement should be set and batched as follows:

```
// loop to batch "n" sets of parameters  
for( i=0; i < n; i++ )  
{  
    // Note "stmt" is the original prepared insert statement from step 1.  
    stmt.setSomeType( 1, param_1 );  
    stmt.setSomeType( 2, param_2 );  
    .  
    .  
    // Note that there are "m" parameters in the statement.  
    stmt.setSomeType( m , param_m );  
  
    // Add the set of parameters to the batch and  
    // move to the next row of parameters.  
    stmt.addBatch();  
}
```

Example:

```
for( i=0; i < 5; i++ )  
{  
    stmt.setInt( 1, idValue );  
    stmt.setString( 2, name );  
    stmt.addBatch();  
}
```

3. The batch should then be executed using the `PreparedStatement.executeUpdate()` method.

It should be noted that only the `PreparedStatement.addBatch()` method is supported and that the `PreparedStatement.executeUpdate()` method needs to be called to execute the batch. None of batch methods for the `Statement` object (i.e. `Statement.addBatch()`, `Statement.clearBatch()`, `Statement.executeBatch()`) are supported since these methods are completely optional and not very useful. For such static batches, it is best to call `Statement.execute()` or `Statement.executeQuery()` on a single string with the batched statements wrapped inside a `BEGIN...END`.

## Notes

- BLOB parameters are not supported in batches.
- String/Binary parameters are supported but the size of the string/binary parameter is an issue. By default the string/binary parameter is restricted to 255 characters or 510 bytes. The reason for the restriction is due to the underlying ODBC protocol and will not be discussed here. For further information, it is best to view the documentation on passing arrays of parameters in ODBC. If, however, an application needs to pass larger string or binary parameters within a batch then an additional method, `setBatchStringSize`, has been provided to increase the size of the string/binary parameter. Note that this method must be called prior to the first `addBatch()` call. If the method is called after the first `addBatch()` call, then the new size setting will be ignored. So, when calling this method to change the size of a string/binary parameter, the application needs to know ahead of time what the maximum string or binary value for that parameter will be.

To use the `setBatchStringSize` method, you must modify the "code" above as follows:

```

// You need to cast "stmt" to an IPreparedStatment object
// to change the size of string/binary parameters.
ianywhere.ml.jdbcodbc.IPreparedStatement _stmt =
    (ianywhere.ml.jdbcodbc.IPreparedStatement)stmt;

// Now, for example, change the size of string parameter 4
// from the default 255 characters to 300 characters.
// Note that string parameters are measured in "characters".
_stmt.setBatchStringSize( 4, 300 );

// Change the size of binary parameter 6
// from the default 510 bytes to 750 bytes.
// Note that binary parameters are measured in "bytes".
_stmt.setBatchStringSize( 6, 750 );

// loop to batch "n" sets of parameters
// where n should not be too large
for( i=0; i < n; i++ )
{
    // stmt is the prepared insert statement from step 1
    stmt.setSomeType( 1, param_1 );
    stmt.setSomeType( 2, param_2 );
    .
    .
    // Note that there are "m" parameters in the statement.
    stmt.setSomeType( m , param_m );

    // Add the set of parameters to the batch and
    // move to the next row of parameters.
    stmt.addBatch();
}

```

The maximum string/binary size of a parameter should be modified with caution. If the maximum is set too high, then the additional memory allocation cost will probably override any performance gained from using the batch. Also, there is a good chance the application will not know ahead of time what the maximum string or binary value for a particular parameter is. The recommendation then is to not change the maximum string or binary size of a parameter, but rather to use the batch method until a string or binary value larger than the current/default maximum is encountered. The application can, at that point, call `executeBatch()` to execute the parameters that are currently batched, then call the regular `set` and `executeUpdate()` method to execute until the large string/binary parameters have been handled, then switch back into batch mode when smaller string/binary parameters are encountered.

## Returning result sets

This section describes how to make one or more result sets available from Java methods.

You must write a Java method that returns one or more result sets to the calling environment, and wrap this method in a SQL stored procedure. The following code fragment illustrates how multiple result sets can be returned to the calling SQL code. It uses three `executeQuery` statements to obtain three different result sets.

```

public static void Results( ResultSet[] rset )
    throws SQLException
{
    // Demonstrate returning multiple result sets

    Connection con = DriverManager.getConnection(

```

```

        "jdbc:default:connection" );
rset[0] = con.createStatement().executeQuery(
    "SELECT * FROM Employees" +
    " ORDER BY EmployeeID" );
rset[1] = con.createStatement().executeQuery(
    "SELECT * FROM Departments" +
    " ORDER BY DepartmentID" );
rset[2] = con.createStatement().executeQuery(
    "SELECT i.ID,i.LineID,i.ProductID,i.Quantity," +
    "        s.OrderDate,i.ShipDate," +
    "        s.Region,e.GivenName||' '||e.Surname" +
    " FROM SalesOrderItems AS i" +
    " JOIN SalesOrders AS s" +
    " JOIN Employees AS e" +
    " WHERE s.ID=i.ID" +
    "        AND s.SalesRepresentative=e.EmployeeID" );
con.close();
}

```

**Source code available**

This code fragment is part of the JDBCExample class included in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\JDBC* directory.

**Notes**

- This server-side JDBC example connects to the default running database using the current connection using getConnection.
- The executeQuery methods return result sets.

**To run the JDBC result set example**

1. Using Interactive SQL, connect to the sample database as the DBA.
2. Ensure the JDBCExample class has been installed.

For more information about installing the Java examples classes, see [“Preparing for the examples” on page 517](#).

3. Define a stored procedure named JDBCResults that acts as a wrapper for the JDBCExample.Results method in the class:

```

CREATE PROCEDURE JDBCResults()
    DYNAMIC RESULT SETS 3
    EXTERNAL NAME 'JDBCExample.Results([Ljava/sql/ResultSet;])V'
    LANGUAGE JAVA;

```

4. Set the following Interactive SQL options so you can see all the results of the query:
  - a. From the **Tools** menu, choose **Options**.
  - b. Click **SQL Anywhere**.
  - c. Click the **Results** tab.
  - d. Set the value for **Maximum Number Of Rows To Display** to **5000**.
  - e. Select **Show All Result Sets**.
  - f. Click **OK**.

5. Call the JDBCExample.Results method as follows:

```
CALL JDBCResults();
```

6. Check each of the three results tabs, Result Set 1, Result Set 2, and Result Set 3.

## Miscellaneous JDBC notes

- **Access permissions** Like all Java classes in the database, classes containing JDBC statements can be accessed by any user provided that the GRANT EXECUTE statement has granted them permission to execute the stored procedure that is acting as a wrapper for the Java method.
- **Execution permissions** Java classes are executed with the permissions of the connection executing them. This behavior is different from that of stored procedures, which execute with the permissions of the owner.

## Using JDBC escape syntax

You can use JDBC escape syntax from any JDBC application, including Interactive SQL. This escape syntax allows you to call stored procedures regardless of the database management system you are using. The general form for the escape syntax is

```
{{ keyword parameters }}
```

In Interactive SQL, the braces *must* be doubled. There must not be a space between successive braces: "{{{" is acceptable, but "{ {" is not. As well, you cannot use newline characters in the statement. The escape syntax cannot be used in stored procedures because they are not executed by Interactive SQL.

You can use the escape syntax to access a library of functions implemented by the JDBC driver that includes number, string, time, date, and system functions.

For example, to obtain the name of the current user in a database management system-neutral way, you would execute the following:

```
SELECT {{ FN USER() }}
```

The functions that are available depend on the JDBC driver that you are using. The following tables list the functions that are supported by the iAnywhere JDBC driver and by the jConnect driver.

### iAnywhere JDBC driver supported functions

Numeric functions	String functions	System functions	Time/date functions
ABS	ASCII	IFNULL	CURDATE
ACOS	CHAR	USERNAME	CURTIME
ASIN	CONCAT		DAYNAME
ATAN	DIFFERENCE		DAYOFMONTH
ATAN2	INSERT		DAYOFWEEK
CEILING	LCASE		DAYOFYEAR
COS	LEFT		hour
COT	LENGTH		MINUTE
DEGREES	LOCATE		MONTH
EXP	LOCATE_2		MONTHNAME
FLOOR	LTRIM		NOW
LOG	REPEAT		QUARTER



<b>Numeric functions</b>	<b>String functions</b>	<b>System functions</b>	<b>Time/date functions</b>
LOG10	RIGHT		SECOND
MOD	RTRIM		WEEK
PI	SOUNDEX		YEAR
POWER	SPACE		
RADIANS	SUBSTRING		
RAND	UCASE		
ROUND			
SIGN			
SIN			
SQRT			
TAN			
TRUNCATE			

**jConnect supported functions**

<b>Numeric functions</b>	<b>String functions</b>	<b>System functions</b>	<b>Time/date functions</b>
ABS	ASCII	DATABASE	CURDATE
ACOS	CHAR	IFNULL	CURTIME
ASIN	CONCAT	USER	DAYNAME
ATAN	DIFFERENCE	CONVERT	DAYOFMONTH
ATAN2	LCASE		DAYOFWEEK
CEILING	LENGTH		HOUR
COS	REPEAT		MINUTE
COT	RIGHT		MONTH
DEGREES	SOUNDEX		MONTHNAME
EXP	SPACE		NOW

<b>Numeric functions</b>	<b>String functions</b>	<b>System functions</b>	<b>Time/date functions</b>
FLOOR	SUBSTRING		QUARTER
LOG	UCASE		SECOND
LOG10			TIMESTAMPADD
PI			TIMESTAMPDIFF
POWER			YEAR
RADIANS			
RAND			
ROUND			
SIGN			
SIN			
SQRT			
TAN			

A statement using the escape syntax should work in SQL Anywhere, Adaptive Server Enterprise, Oracle, SQL Server, or another database management system to which you are connected.

For example, to obtain database properties with the sa\_db\_info procedure using SQL escape syntax, you would execute the following in Interactive SQL:

```
{{CALL sa_db_info( 0 ) }}
```

## iAnywhere JDBC 3.0 API support

All mandatory classes and methods of the JDBC 3.0 specification are supported. Some optional methods of the `java.sql.Blob` interface are not supported. These optional methods are:

- `long position( Blob pattern, long start );`
- `long position( byte[] pattern, long start );`
- `OutputStream setBinaryStream( long pos )`
- `int setBytes( long pos, byte[] bytes )`
- `int setBytes( long pos, byte[] bytes, int offset, int len );`
- `void truncate( long len );`

---

---

# SQL Anywhere embedded SQL

## Contents

Introduction to embedded SQL .....	532
Sample embedded SQL programs .....	538
Embedded SQL data types .....	542
Using host variables .....	546
The SQL Communication Area (SQLCA) .....	555
Static and dynamic SQL .....	561
The SQL descriptor area (SQLDA) .....	565
Fetching data .....	574
Sending and retrieving long values .....	582
Using simple stored procedures .....	586
Embedded SQL programming techniques .....	589
SQL preprocessor .....	590
Library function reference .....	593
Embedded SQL statement summary .....	615

---

## Introduction to embedded SQL

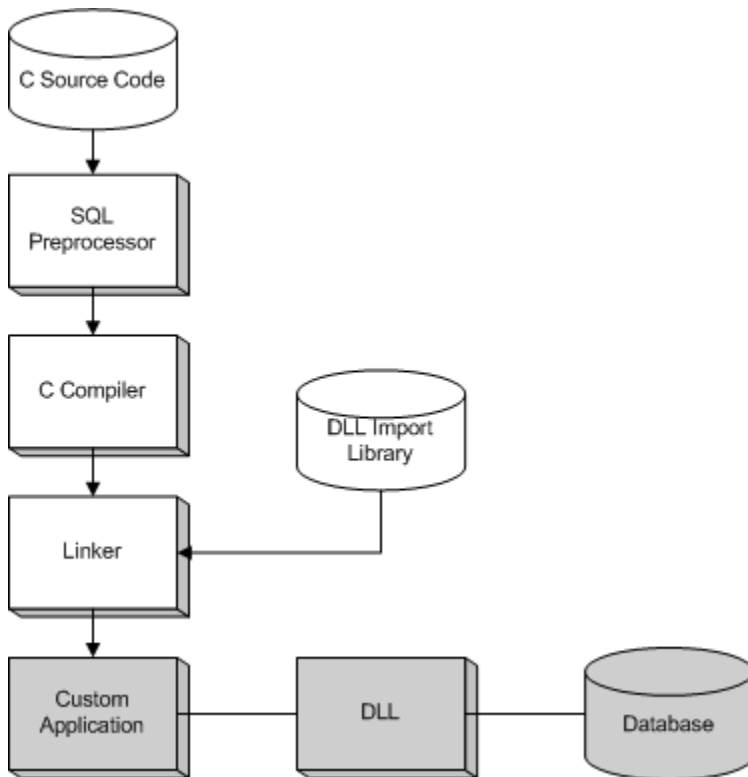
Embedded SQL is a database programming interface for the C and C++ programming languages. It consists of SQL statements intermixed with (embedded in) C or C++ source code. These SQL statements are translated by a **SQL preprocessor** into C or C++ source code, which you then compile.

At runtime, embedded SQL applications use a SQL Anywhere **interface library** called DBLIB to communicate with a database server. DBLIB is a dynamic link library (**DLL**) or shared object on most platforms.

- On Windows operating systems, the interface library is *dblib11.dll*.
- On Unix operating systems, the interface library is *libdblib11.so*, *libdblib11.sl*, or *libdblib11.a*, depending on the operating system.
- On Mac OS X, the interface library is *libdblib11.dylib.1*.

SQL Anywhere provides two flavors of embedded SQL. Static embedded SQL is simpler to use, but is less flexible than dynamic embedded SQL.

## Development process overview



Once the program has been successfully preprocessed and compiled, it is linked with the **import library** for DBLIB to form an executable file. When the database server is running, this executable file uses DBLIB to interact with the database server. The database server does not have to be running when the program is preprocessed.

For Windows, there are separate import libraries for Microsoft Visual C++, for Watcom C/C++, and for Borland C++.

Under Windows, the use of import libraries is one method for developing applications that call functions in DLLs. SQL Anywhere also provides an alternative, and recommended method which avoids the use of import libraries. For more information, see [“Loading DBLIB dynamically under Windows” on page 536](#).

## Running the SQL preprocessor

The SQL preprocessor is an executable named *sqlpp*.

The SQLPP command line is as follows:

```
sqlpp [ options ] sql-filename [ output-filename ]
```

The SQL preprocessor processes a C program with embedded SQL before the C or C++ compiler is run. The preprocessor translates the SQL statements into C/C++ language source that is put into the output file. The normal extension for source programs with embedded SQL is *.sql*. The default output file name is the *sql-filename* with an extension of *.c*. If the *sql-filename* already has a *.c* extension, then the output file name extension is *.cc* by default.

### Reprocessing embedded SQL

When an application is rebuilt to use a new major version of the database interface library, the embedded SQL files must be preprocessed with the same version's SQL preprocessor.

For a full listing of the command line options, see [“SQL preprocessor” on page 590](#).

## Supported compilers

The C language SQL preprocessor has been used in conjunction with the following compilers:

Operating system	Compiler	Version
Windows	Watcom C/C++	9.5 or later
Windows	Microsoft Visual C++	6.0 or later
Windows	Borland C++	4.5
Windows Mobile	Microsoft Visual C++	2005
Windows Mobile	Microsoft eMbedded Visual C++	3.0, 4.0

Operating system	Compiler	Version
Unix	GNU or native compiler	

## Embedded SQL header files

All header files are installed in the *SDK\Include* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation directory.

File name	Description
<i>sqlca.h</i>	Main header file included in all embedded SQL programs. This file includes the structure definition for the SQL Communication Area (SQLCA) and prototypes for all embedded SQL database interface functions.
<i>sqlda.h</i>	SQL Descriptor Area structure definition included in embedded SQL programs that use dynamic SQL.
<i>sqldef.h</i>	Definition of embedded SQL interface data types. This file also contains structure definitions and return codes needed for starting the database server from a C program.
<i>sqlerr.h</i>	Definitions for error codes returned in the <i>sqlcode</i> field of the SQLCA.
<i>sqlstate.h</i>	Definitions for ANSI/ISO SQL standard error states returned in the <i>sqlstate</i> field of the SQLCA.
<i>pshpk1.h</i> , <i>pshpk4.h</i> , <i>poppk.h</i>	These headers ensure that structure packing is handled correctly.

## Import libraries

On Windows platforms, all import libraries are installed in the *SDK\Lib* subdirectories, under the SQL Anywhere installation directory. Windows import libraries are stored in the *SDK\Lib\x86* and *SDK\Lib\x64* subdirectories. Windows Mobile import libraries are installed in the *SDK\Lib\CE\Arm.50* subdirectory.

On Unix platforms, all import libraries are installed in the *Lib32* and *Lib64* subdirectories, under the SQL Anywhere installation directory.

On Mac OS X platforms, all import libraries are installed in the *System/Lib32* and *System/Lib64* subdirectories, under the SQL Anywhere installation directory.

Operating system	Compiler	Import library
Windows	Microsoft Visual C++	<i>dblibtm.lib</i>



Operating system	Compiler	Import library
Windows Mobile	Microsoft Visual C++ 2005	<i>dblib11.lib</i>
Windows Mobile	Microsoft eMbedded Visual C++	<i>dblib11.lib</i>
Unix (unthreaded applications)	All compilers	<i>libdblib11.so, libdbtasks11.so, libdblib11.sl, libdbtasks11.sl</i>
Unix (threaded applications)	All compilers	<i>libdblib11_r.so, libdbtasks11_r.so, libdblib11_r.sl, libdbtasks11_r.sl</i>
Mac OS X (threaded applications)	All compilers	<i>libdblib11.dylib, libdbtasks11.dylib</i>
Mac OS X (threaded applications)	All compilers	<i>libdblib11_r.dylib, libdbtasks11_r.dylib</i>

The *libdbtasks11* libraries are called by the *libdblib11* libraries. Some compilers locate *libdbtasks11* automatically. For others, you need to specify it explicitly.

## A simple example

The following is a very simple example of an embedded SQL program.

```
#include <stdio.h>
EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
main()
{
    db_init( &sqlca );
    EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR GOTO error;
    EXEC SQL CONNECT "DBA" IDENTIFIED BY "sql";
    EXEC SQL UPDATE Employees
        SET Surname = 'Plankton'
        WHERE EmployeeID = 195;
    EXEC SQL COMMIT WORK;
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT;
    db_fini( &sqlca );
    return( 0 );
error:
    printf( "update unsuccessful -- sqlcode = %ld\n",
        sqlca.sqlcode );
    db_fini( &sqlca );
    return( -1 );
}
```

This example connects to the database, updates the last name of employee number 195, commits the change, and exits. There is virtually no interaction between the SQL and C code. The only thing the C code is used

for in this example is control flow. The WHENEVER statement is used for error checking. The error action (GOTO in this example) is executed after any SQL statement that causes an error.

For a description of fetching data, see [“Fetching data” on page 574](#).

## Structure of embedded SQL programs

SQL statements are placed (embedded) within regular C or C++ code. All embedded SQL statements start with the words EXEC SQL and end with a semicolon (;). Normal C language comments are allowed in the middle of embedded SQL statements.

Every C program using embedded SQL must contain the following statement before any other embedded SQL statements in the source file.

```
EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
```

Every C program using embedded SQL must initialize a SQLCA first:

```
db_init( &sqlca );
```

One of the first embedded SQL statements executed by the C program must be a CONNECT statement. The CONNECT statement is used to establish a connection with the database server and to specify the user ID that is used for authorizing all statements executed during the connection.

Some embedded SQL statements do not generate any C code, or do not involve communication with the database. These statements are allowed before the CONNECT statement. Most notable are the INCLUDE statement and the WHENEVER statement for specifying error processing.

Every C program using embedded SQL must finalize any SQLCA that has been initialized.

```
db_fini( &sqlca );
```

## Loading DBLIB dynamically under Windows

The usual practice for developing applications that use functions from DLLs is to link the application against an **import library**, which contains the required function definitions.

This section describes an alternative to using an import library for developing SQL Anywhere applications. DBLIB can be loaded dynamically, without having to link against the import library, using the *esqldll.c* module in the *SDK\C* subdirectory of your installation directory.

A similar technique could be used to dynamically load DBLIB on Unix platforms.

### To load the interface DLL dynamically

1. Your program must call `db_init_dll` to load the DLL, and must call `db_fini_dll` to free the DLL. The `db_init_dll` call must be before any function in the database interface, and no function in the interface can be called after `db_fini_dll`.

You must still call the `db_init` and `db_fini` library functions.

2. You must `#include` the *esqdll.h* header file before the EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA statement or `#include <sqlca.h>` line in your embedded SQL program. The *esqdll.h* header file includes *sqlca.h*.
3. A SQL OS macro must be defined. The header file *sqlos.h*, which is included by *sqlca.h*, attempts to determine the appropriate macro and define it. However, certain combinations of platforms and compilers may cause this to fail. In this case, you must add a `#define` to the top of this file, or make the definition using a compiler option. The macro that must be defined for Windows is shown below.

Macro	Platforms
<code>_SQL_OS_WINDOWS</code>	All Windows operating systems

4. Compile *esqdll.c*.
5. Instead of linking against the imports library, link the object module *esqdll.obj* with your embedded SQL application objects.

### Sample

You can find a sample program illustrating how to load the interface library dynamically in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ESQLDynamicLoad* directory. The source code is in *sample.sqc*.

## Sample embedded SQL programs

Sample embedded SQL programs are included with the SQL Anywhere installation. They are placed in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\C* directory. For Windows Mobile, an additional example is located in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\CE\esql\_sample* directory.

- The static cursor embedded SQL example, *cur.sqc*, demonstrates the use of static SQL statements.
- The dynamic cursor embedded SQL example, *dcur.sqc*, demonstrates the use of dynamic SQL statements.

To reduce the amount of code that is duplicated by the sample programs, the mainlines and the data printing functions have been placed into a separate file. This is *mainch.c* for character mode systems and *mainwin.c* for windowing environments.

The sample programs each supply the following three routines, which are called from the mainlines:

- **WSQLEX\_Init** Connects to the database and opens the cursor.
- **WSQLEX\_Process\_Command** Processes commands from the user, manipulating the cursor as necessary.
- **WSQLEX\_Finish** Closes the cursor and disconnects from the database.

The function of the mainline is to:

1. Call the **WSQLEX\_Init** routine.
2. Loop, getting commands from the user and calling **WSQLEX\_Process\_Command** until the user quits.
3. Call the **WSQLEX\_Finish** routine.

Connecting to the database is done with the embedded SQL **CONNECT** statement supplying the appropriate user ID and password.

In addition to these samples, you may find other programs and source files as part of SQL Anywhere that demonstrate features available for particular platforms.

## Building the sample programs

Files to build the sample programs are supplied with the sample code.

- For Windows, use *build.bat* or *build64.bat* to compile the sample programs.

For x64 platform builds, you may need to set up the correct environment for compiling and linking. Here is an example that builds the sample programs for an x64 platform.

```
set mssdk=c:\MSSDK\v6.1
build64
```

- For Unix, use the shell script *build.sh*.

- For Windows Mobile, use the *esql\_sample.sln* project file for Microsoft Visual C++. This file appears in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\CE\esql\_sample*.

This will build the following examples.

- **CUR** An embedded SQL static cursor example
- **DCUR** An embedded SQL dynamic cursor example
- **ODBC** An ODBC example which is discussing in “[ODBC samples](#)” on page 471.

## Running the sample programs

The executable files and corresponding source code are located in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\C* directory. For Windows Mobile, an additional example is located in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\CE\esql\_sample* directory.

### To run the static cursor sample program

1. Start the SQL Anywhere sample database, *demo.db*.
2. For 32-bit Windows, run the file *curwin.exe*.  
For 64-bit Windows, run the file *curx64.exe*.  
For Unix, run the file *cur*.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.

The various commands manipulate a database cursor and print the query results on the screen. Enter the letter of the command that you want to perform. Some systems may require you to press Enter after the letter.

### To run the dynamic cursor sample program

1. For 32-bit Windows, run the file *dcurwin.exe*.  
For 64-bit Windows, run the file *dcurx64.exe*.  
For Unix, run the file *dcur*.
2. Each sample program presents a console-type user interface and prompts you for a command. Enter the following connection string to connect to the sample database:  

```
DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo
```
3. Each sample program prompts you for a table. Choose one of the tables in the sample database. For example, you can enter **Customers** or **Employees**.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions.

The various commands manipulate a database cursor and print the query results on the screen. Enter the letter of the command you want to perform. Some systems may require you to press Enter after the letter.

## Windows samples

The Windows versions of the example programs use the Windows graphical user interface. However, to keep the user interface code relatively simple, some simplifications have been made. In particular, these applications do not repaint their Windows on WM\_PAINT messages except to reprint the prompt.

## Static cursor sample

This example demonstrates the use of cursors. The particular cursor used here retrieves certain information from the Employees table in the sample database. The cursor is declared statically, meaning that the actual SQL statement to retrieve the information is hard coded into the source program. This is a good starting point for learning how cursors work. The Dynamic Cursor sample takes this first example and converts it to use dynamic SQL statements. See [“Dynamic cursor sample” on page 540](#).

For information about where the source code can be found and how to build this example program, see [“Sample embedded SQL programs” on page 538](#).

The `open_cursor` routine both declares a cursor for the specific SQL query and also opens the cursor.

Printing a page of information is done by the `print` routine. It loops `pagesize` times, fetching a single row from the cursor and printing it out. Note that the `fetch` routine checks for warning conditions (such as `Row not found`) and prints appropriate messages when they arise. In addition, the cursor is repositioned by this program to the row before the one that appears at the top of the current page of data.

The `move`, `top`, and `bottom` routines use the appropriate form of the `FETCH` statement to position the cursor. Note that this form of the `FETCH` statement doesn't actually get the data—it only positions the cursor. Also, a general relative positioning routine, `move`, has been implemented to move in either direction depending on the sign of the parameter.

When the user quits, the cursor is closed and the database connection is also released. The cursor is closed by a `ROLLBACK WORK` statement, and the connection is released by a `DISCONNECT`.

## Dynamic cursor sample

This sample demonstrates the use of cursors for a dynamic SQL `SELECT` statement. It is a slight modification of the static cursor example. If you have not yet looked at Static Cursor sample, it would be helpful to do so before looking at this sample. See [“Static cursor sample” on page 540](#).

For information about where the source code can be found and how to build this sample program, see [“Sample embedded SQL programs” on page 538](#).

The `dcur` program allows the user to select a table to look at with the `n` command. The program then presents as much information from that table as fits on the screen.

When this program is run, it prompts for a connection string of the form:

```
UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db
```

The C program with the embedded SQL is held in the `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\C` directory. For Windows Mobile, a dynamic cursor example is located in the `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\CE\esql_sample` directory.

The program looks much like the static cursor sample with the exception of the connect, open\_cursor, and print functions.

The connect function uses the embedded SQL interface function db\_string\_connect to connect to the database. This function provides the extra functionality to support the connection string that is used to connect to the database.

The open\_cursor routine first builds the SELECT statement

```
SELECT * FROM table-name
```

where *table-name* is a parameter passed to the routine. It then prepares a dynamic SQL statement using this string.

The embedded SQL DESCRIBE statement is used to fill in the SQLDA structure with the results of the SELECT statement.

**Size of the SQLDA**

An initial guess is taken for the size of the SQLDA (3). If this is not big enough, the actual size of the select list returned by the database server is used to allocate a SQLDA of the correct size.

The SQLDA structure is then filled with buffers to hold strings that represent the results of the query. The fill\_s\_sqlda routine converts all data types in the SQLDA to DT\_STRING and allocates buffers of the appropriate size.

A cursor is then declared and opened for this statement. The rest of the routines for moving and closing the cursor remain the same.

The fetch routine is slightly different: it puts the results into the SQLDA structure instead of into a list of host variables. The print routine has changed significantly to print results from the SQLDA structure up to the width of the screen. The print routine also uses the name fields of the SQLDA to print headings for each column.

## Embedded SQL data types

To transfer information between a program and the database server, every piece of data must have a data type. The embedded SQL data type constants are prefixed with `DT_`, and can be found in the `sqldef.h` header file. You can create a host variable of any one of the supported types. You can also use these types in a SQLDA structure for passing data to and from the database.

You can define variables of these data types using the `DECL_` macros listed in `sqlca.h`. For example, a variable holding a `BIGINT` value could be declared with `DECL_BIGINT`.

The following data types are supported by the embedded SQL programming interface:

- **DT\_BIT** 8-bit signed integer.
- **DT\_SMALLINT** 16-bit signed integer.
- **DT\_UNSMALLINT** 16-bit unsigned integer.
- **DT\_TINYINT** 8-bit signed integer.
- **DT\_BIGINT** 64-bit signed integer.
- **DT\_UNBIGINT** 64-bit unsigned integer.
- **DT\_INT** 32-bit signed integer.
- **DT\_UNSENT** 32-bit unsigned integer.
- **DT\_FLOAT** 4-byte floating point number.
- **DT\_DOUBLE** 8-byte floating point number.
- **DT\_DECIMAL** Packed decimal number (proprietary format).

```
typedef struct TYPE_DECIMAL {  
    char array[1];  
} TYPE_DECIMAL;
```
- **DT\_STRING** Null-terminated character string, in the CHAR character set. The string is blank-padded if the database is initialized with blank-padded strings.
- **DT\_NSTRING** Null-terminated character string, in the NCHAR character set. The string is blank-padded if the database is initialized with blank-padded strings.
- **DT\_DATE** Null-terminated character string that is a valid date.
- **DT\_TIME** Null-terminated character string that is a valid time.
- **DT\_TIMESTAMP** Null-terminated character string that is a valid timestamp.
- **DT\_FIXCHAR** Fixed-length blank-padded character string, in the CHAR character set. The maximum length, specified in bytes, is 32767. The data is not null-terminated.
- **DT\_NFIXCHAR** Fixed-length blank-padded character string, in the NCHAR character set. The maximum length, specified in bytes, is 32767. The data is not null-terminated.



- **DT\_VARCHAR** Varying length character string, in the CHAR character set, with a two-byte length field. The maximum length is 32765 bytes . When sending data, you must set the length field. When fetching data, the database server sets the length field. The data is not null-terminated or blank-padded.

```
typedef struct VARCHAR {
    unsigned short int len;
    char            array[1];
} VARCHAR;
```

- **DT\_NVARCHAR** Varying length character string, in the NCHAR character set, with a two-byte length field. The maximum length is 32765 bytes. When sending data, you must set the length field. When fetching data, the database server sets the length field. The data is not null-terminated or blank-padded.

```
typedef struct NVARCHAR {
    unsigned short int len;
    char            array[1];
} NVARCHAR;
```

- **DT\_LONGVARCHAR** Long varying length character string, in the CHAR character set.

```
typedef struct LONGVARCHAR {
    a_sql_uint32 array_len; /* number of allocated bytes in array */
    a_sql_uint32 stored_len; /* number of bytes stored in array
    * (never larger than array_len) */
    a_sql_uint32 untrunc_len; /* number of bytes in untruncated expression
    * (may be larger than array_len) */
    char array[1]; /* the data */
} LONGVARCHAR, LONGNVARCHAR, LONGBINARY;
```

The LONGVARCHAR structure can be used with more than 32767 bytes of data. Large data can be fetched all at once, or in pieces using the GET DATA statement. Large data can be supplied to the server all at once, or in pieces by appending to a database variable using the SET statement. The data is not null-terminated or blank-padded.

For more information, see [“Sending and retrieving long values” on page 582](#).

- **DT\_LONGNVARCHAR** Long varying length character string, in the NCHAR character set. The macro defines a structure, as follows:

```
typedef struct LONGVARCHAR {
    a_sql_uint32 array_len; /* number of allocated bytes in array */
    a_sql_uint32 stored_len; /* number of bytes stored in array
    * (never larger than array_len) */
    a_sql_uint32 untrunc_len; /* number of bytes in untruncated expression
    * (may be larger than array_len) */
    char array[1]; /* the data */
} LONGVARCHAR, LONGNVARCHAR, LONGBINARY;
```

The LONGNVARCHAR structure can be used with more than 32767 bytes of data. Large data can be fetched all at once, or in pieces using the GET DATA statement. Large data can be supplied to the server all at once, or in pieces by appending to a database variable using the SET statement. The data is not null-terminated or blank-padded.

For more information, see [“Sending and retrieving long values” on page 582](#).

- **DT\_BINARY** Varying length binary data with a two-byte length field. The maximum length is 32765 bytes. When supplying information to the database server, you must set the length field. When fetching information from the database server, the server sets the length field.

```
typedef struct BINARY {
    unsigned short int len;
    char array[1];
} BINARY;
```

- **DT\_LONGBINARY** Long binary data. The macro defines a structure, as follows:

```
typedef struct LONGVARCHAR {
    a_sql_uint32 array_len; /* number of allocated bytes in array */
    a_sql_uint32 stored_len; /* number of bytes stored in array
    * (never larger than array_len) */
    a_sql_uint32 untrunc_len; /* number of bytes in untruncated expression
    * (may be larger than array_len) */
    char array[1]; /* the data */
} LONGVARCHAR, LONGNVARCHAR, LONGBINARY;
```

The LONGBINARY structure may be used with more than 32767 bytes of data. Large data can be fetched all at once, or in pieces using the GET DATA statement. Large data can be supplied to the server all at once, or in pieces by appending to a database variable using the SET statement.

For more information, see [“Sending and retrieving long values” on page 582](#).

- **DT\_TIMESTAMP\_STRUCT** SQLDATETIME structure with fields for each part of a timestamp.

```
typedef struct sqldatetime {
    unsigned short year; /* for example 1999 */
    unsigned char month; /* 0-11 */
    unsigned char day_of_week; /* 0-6 0=Sunday */
    unsigned short day_of_year; /* 0-365 */
    unsigned char day; /* 1-31 */
    unsigned char hour; /* 0-23 */
    unsigned char minute; /* 0-59 */
    unsigned char second; /* 0-59 */
    unsigned long microsecond; /* 0-999999 */
} SQLDATETIME;
```

The SQLDATETIME structure can be used to retrieve fields of DATE, TIME, and TIMESTAMP type (or anything that can be converted to one of these). Often, applications have their own formats and date manipulation code. Fetching data in this structure makes it easier for a programmer to manipulate this data. Note that DATE, TIME, and TIMESTAMP fields can also be fetched and updated with any character type.

If you use a SQLDATETIME structure to enter a date, time, or timestamp into the database, the day\_of\_year and day\_of\_week members are ignored.

See:

- [“date\\_format option \[database\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)
- [“date\\_order option \[database\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)
- [“time\\_format option \[compatibility\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)
- [“timestamp\\_format option \[compatibility\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)
- **DT\_VARIABLE** Null-terminated character string. The character string must be the name of a SQL variable whose value is used by the database server. This data type is used only for supplying data to the database server. It cannot be used when fetching data from the database server.

The structures are defined in the *sqlca.h* file. The VARCHAR, NVARCHAR, BINARY, DECIMAL, and LONG data types are not useful for declaring host variables because they contain a one-character array. However, they are useful for allocating variables dynamically or typecasting other variables.

### **DATE and TIME database types**

There are no corresponding embedded SQL interface data types for the various DATE and TIME database types. These database types are all fetched and updated using either the SQLDATETIME structure or character strings.

For more information, see [“GET DATA statement \[ESQL\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#) and [“SET statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

## Using host variables

Host variables are C variables that are identified to the SQL preprocessor. Host variables can be used to send values to the database server or receive values from the database server.

Host variables are quite easy to use, but they have some restrictions. Dynamic SQL is a more general way of passing information to and from the database server using a structure known as the SQL Descriptor Area (SQLDA). The SQL preprocessor automatically generates a SQLDA for each statement in which host variables are used.

You cannot use host variables in batches.

For information about dynamic SQL, see [“Static and dynamic SQL” on page 561](#).

## Declaring host variables

Host variables are defined by putting them into a **declaration section**. According to the ANSI embedded SQL standard, host variables are defined by surrounding the normal C variable declarations with the following:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
/* C variable declarations */
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

These host variables can then be used in place of value constants in any SQL statement. When the database server executes the statement, the value of the host variable is used. Note that host variables cannot be used in place of table or column names: dynamic SQL is required for this. The variable name is prefixed with a colon (:) in a SQL statement to distinguish it from other identifiers allowed in the statement.

In the SQL preprocessor, C language code is only scanned inside a DECLARE SECTION. So, TYPEDEF types and structures are not allowed, but initializers on the variables are allowed inside a DECLARE SECTION.

### Example

The following sample code illustrates the use of host variables on an INSERT statement. The variables are filled in by the program and then inserted into the database:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
long employee_number;
char employee_name[50];
char employee_initials[8];
char employee_phone[15];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
/* program fills in variables with appropriate values
*/
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO Employees
VALUES (:employee_number, :employee_name,
:employee_initials, :employee_phone );
```

For a more extensive example, see [“Static cursor sample” on page 540](#).

## C host variable types

Only a limited number of C data types are supported as host variables. Also, certain host variable types do not have a corresponding C type.

Macros defined in the *sqlca.h* header file can be used to declare host variables of the following types: NCHAR, VARCHAR, NVARCHAR, LONGVARCHAR, LONGNVARCHAR, BINARY, LONGBINARY, DECIMAL, FIXCHAR, NFIXCHAR, DATETIME (SQLDATETIME), BIT, BIGINT, or UNSIGNED BIGINT. They are used as follows:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
DECL_NCHAR          v_nchar[10];
DECL_VARCHAR( 10 )  v_varchar;
DECL_NVARCHAR( 10 ) v_nvarchar;
DECL_LONGVARCHAR( 32768 ) v_longvarchar;
DECL_LONGNVARCHAR( 32768 ) v_longnvarchar;
DECL_BINARY( 4000 ) v_binary;
DECL_LONGBINARY( 128000 ) v_longbinary;
DECL_DECIMAL( 30, 6 ) v_decimal;
DECL_FIXCHAR( 10 )  v_fixchar;
DECL_NFIXCHAR( 10 ) v_nfixchar;
DECL_DATETIME       v_datetime;
DECL_BIT            v_bit;
DECL_BIGINT         v_bigint;
DECL_UNSIGNED_BIGINT v_ubigint;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

The preprocessor recognizes these macros within a declaration section and treats the variable as the appropriate type. It is recommended that the DECIMAL (DT\_DECIMAL, DECL\_DECIMAL) type not be used since the format of decimal numbers is proprietary.

The following table lists the C variable types that are allowed for host variables and their corresponding embedded SQL interface data types.

C data type	Embedded SQL interface type	Description
short si; short int si;	DT_SMALLINT	16-bit signed integer.
unsigned short int usi;	DT_UNSSMALLINT	16-bit unsigned integer.
long l; long int l;	DT_INT	32-bit signed integer.
unsigned long int ul;	DT_UNSINT	32-bit unsigned integer.
DECL_BIGINT ll;	DT_BIGINT	64-bit signed integer.
DECL_UNSIGNED_BIGINT ull;	DT_UNSBIGINT	64-bit unsigned integer.
float f;	DT_FLOAT	4-byte floating point.
double d;	DT_DOUBLE	8-byte floating point.

<b>C data type</b>	<b>Embedded SQL interface type</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>char a[n]; /*n&gt;=1*/</code>	DT_STRING	Null-terminated string, in CHAR character set. The string is blank-padded if the database is initialized with blank-padded strings. This variable holds n-1 bytes plus the null terminator.
<code>char *a;</code>	DT_STRING	Null-terminated string, in CHAR character set. This variable points to an area that can hold up to 32766 bytes plus the null terminator.
<code>DECL_NCHAR a[n]; /*n&gt;=1*/</code>	DT_NSTRING	Null-terminated string, in NCHAR character set. The string is blank-padded if the database is initialized with blank-padded strings. This variable holds n-1 bytes plus the null terminator.
<code>DECL_NCHAR *a;</code>	DT_NSTRING	Null-terminated string, in NCHAR character set. This variable points to an area that can hold up to 32766 bytes plus the null terminator.
<code>DECL_VARCHAR(n) a;</code>	DT_VARCHAR	Varying length character string, in CHAR character set, with 2-byte length field. Not null-terminated or blank-padded. The maximum value for n is 32765 (bytes).
<code>DECL_NVARCHAR(n) a;</code>	DT_NVARCHAR	Varying length character string, in NCHAR character set, with 2-byte length field. Not null-terminated or blank-padded. The maximum value for n is 32765 (bytes).

C data type	Embedded SQL interface type	Description
<code>DECL_LONGVARCHAR(n) a;</code>	DT_LONGVARCHAR	Varying length long character string, in CHAR character set, with three 4-byte length fields. Not null-terminated or blank-padded.
<code>DECL_LONGNVARCHAR(n) a;</code>	DT_LONGNVARCHAR	Varying length long character string, in NCHAR character set, with three 4-byte length fields. Not null-terminated or blank-padded.
<code>DECL_BINARY(n) a;</code>	DT_BINARY	Varying length binary data with 2-byte length field. The maximum value for n is 32765 (bytes).
<code>DECL_LONGBINARY(n) a;</code>	DT_LONGBINARY	Varying length long binary data with three 4-byte length fields.
<code>char a; /*n=1*/</code> <code>DECL_FIXCHAR(n) a;</code>	DT_FIXCHAR	Fixed length character string, in CHAR character set. Blank-padded but not null-terminated. The maximum value for n is 32767 (bytes).
<code>DECL_NCHAR a; /*n=1*/</code> <code>DECL_NFIXCHAR(n) a;</code>	DT_NFIXCHAR	Fixed length character string, in NCHAR character set. Blank-padded but not null-terminated. The maximum value for n is 32767 (bytes).
<code>DECL_DATETIME a;</code>	DT_TIME- STAMP_STRUCT	SQLDATETIME structure

### Character sets

For DT\_FIXCHAR, DT\_STRING, DT\_VARCHAR, and DT\_LONGVARCHAR, character data is in the application's CHAR character set, which is usually the character set of the application's locale. An application can change the CHAR character set either by using the CHARSET connection parameter, or by calling the db\_change\_char\_charset function.

For DT\_NFIXCHAR, DT\_NSTRING, DT\_NVARCHAR, and DT\_LONGNVARCHAR, data is in the application's NCHAR character set. By default, the application's NCHAR character set is the same as the

CHAR character set. An application can change the NCHAR character set by calling the `db_change_nchar_charset` function.

For more information about locales and character sets, see [“Understanding locales” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

For more information about changing the CHAR character set, see [“CharSet connection parameter \[CS\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#) or [“db\\_change\\_char\\_charset function” on page 598](#).

For more information about changing the NCHAR character set, see [“db\\_change\\_nchar\\_charset function” on page 598](#).

### Data lengths

Regardless of the CHAR and NCHAR character sets in use, all data lengths are specified in bytes.

If character set conversion occurs between the server and the application, it is the application's responsibility to ensure that buffers are sufficiently large to handle the converted data, and to issue additional GET DATA statements if data is truncated.

### Pointers to char

The database interface considers a host variable declared as a **pointer to char** (`char * a`) to be 32767 bytes long. Any host variable of type pointer to char used to retrieve information from the database must point to a buffer large enough to hold any value that could possibly come back from the database.

This is potentially quite dangerous because someone could change the definition of the column in the database to be larger than it was when the program was written. This could cause random memory corruption problems. It is better to use a declared array, even as a parameter to a function, where it is passed as a pointer to char. This technique allows the embedded SQL statements to know the size of the array.

### Scope of host variables

A standard host-variable declaration section can appear anywhere that C variables can normally be declared. This includes the parameter declaration section of a C function. The C variables have their normal scope (available within the block in which they are defined). However, since the SQL preprocessor does not scan C code, it does not respect C blocks.

As far as the SQL preprocessor is concerned, host variables are global to the source file; two host variables cannot have the same name.

## Host variable usage

Host variables can be used in the following circumstances:

- SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements in any place where a number or string constant is allowed.
- The INTO clause of SELECT and FETCH statements.
- Host variables can also be used in place of a statement name, a cursor name, or an option name in statements specific to embedded SQL.



- For CONNECT, DISCONNECT, and SET CONNECT statements, a host variable can be used in place of a server name, database name, connection name, user ID, password, or connection string.
- For SET OPTION and GET OPTION, a host variable can be used in place of a user ID, option name, or option value.
- Host variables cannot be used in place of a table name or a column name in any statement.

### SQLCODE and SQLSTATE host variables

The ISO/ANSI standard allows an embedded SQL source file to declare the following special host variables within a declaration section:

```
long SQLCODE;
char SQLSTATE[6];
```

If used, these variables are set after any embedded SQL statement that makes a database request (EXEC SQL statements other than DECLARE SECTION, INCLUDE, WHENEVER SQLCODE, and so on).

The SQLCODE and SQLSTATE host variables must be visible in the scope of every embedded SQL statement that generates database requests.

For more information, see the description of the sqlpp -k option in [“SQL preprocessor” on page 590](#).

The following is valid embedded SQL:

```
EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
long SQLCODE;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
sub1() {
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char SQLSTATE[6];
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
    exec SQL CREATE TABLE ...
}
```

The following is not valid embedded SQL:

```
EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
sub1() {
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char SQLSTATE[6];
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
    exec SQL CREATE TABLE...
}
sub2() {
    exec SQL DROP TABLE...
    // No SQLSTATE in scope of this statement
}
```

## Indicator variables

Indicator variables are C variables that hold supplementary information when you are fetching or putting data. There are several distinct uses for indicator variables:

- **NULL values** To enable applications to handle NULL values.

- **String truncation** To enable applications to handle cases when fetched values must be truncated to fit into host variables.
- **Conversion errors** To hold error information.

An indicator variable is a host variable of type short int that is placed immediately following a regular host variable in a SQL statement. For example, in the following INSERT statement, :ind\_phone is an indicator variable:

```
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO Employees
VALUES (:employee_number, :employee_name,
       :employee_initials, :employee_phone:ind_phone );
```

On a fetch or execute where no rows are received from the database server (such as when an error or end of result set occurs), then indicator values are unchanged.

## Using indicator variables to handle NULL

Do not confuse the SQL concept of NULL with the C-language constant of the same name. In the SQL language, NULL represents either an unknown attribute or inapplicable information. The C-language constant represents a pointer value that does not point to a memory location.

When NULL is used in the SQL Anywhere documentation, it refers to the SQL database meaning given above. The C language constant is referred to as the null pointer (lowercase).

NULL is not the same as any value of the column's defined type. So, something extra is required beyond regular host variables to pass NULL values to the database or receive NULL results back. **Indicator variables** are used for this purpose.

### Using indicator variables when inserting NULL

An INSERT statement could include an indicator variable as follows:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
short int employee_number;
char employee_name[50];
char employee_initials[6];
char employee_phone[15];
short int ind_phone;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
/*
This program fills in the employee number,
name, initials, and phone number.
*/
if( /* Phone number is unknown */ ) {
    ind_phone = -1;
} else {
    ind_phone = 0;
}
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO Employees
VALUES (:employee_number, :employee_name,
       :employee_initials, :employee_phone:ind_phone );
```

If the indicator variable has a value of -1, a NULL is written. If it has a value of 0, the actual value of employee\_phone is written.

## Using indicator variables when fetching NULL

Indicator variables are also used when receiving data from the database. They are used to indicate that a NULL value was fetched (indicator is negative). If a NULL value is fetched from the database and an indicator variable is not supplied, an error is generated (SQLE\_NO\_INDICATOR).

## Using indicator variables for truncated values

Indicator variables indicate whether any fetched values were truncated to fit into a host variable. This enables applications to handle truncation appropriately.

If a value is truncated on fetching, the indicator variable is set to a positive value, containing the actual length of the database value before truncation. If the length of the value is greater than 32767 bytes, then the indicator variable contains 32767.

## Using indicator values for conversion errors

By default, the `conversion_error` database option is set to `On`, and any data type conversion failure leads to an error, with no row returned.

You can use indicator variables to tell which column produced a data type conversion failure. If you set the database option `conversion_error` to `Off`, any data type conversion failure gives a `CANNOT_CONVERT` warning, rather than an error. If the column that suffered the conversion error has an indicator variable, that variable is set to a value of `-2`.

If you set the `conversion_error` option to `Off` when inserting data into the database, a value of `NULL` is inserted when a conversion failure occurs.

## Summary of indicator variable values

The following table provides a summary of indicator variable usage.

Indicator value	Supplying value to database	Receiving value from database
> 0	Host variable value	Retrieved value was truncated—actual length in indicator variable
0	Host variable value	Fetch successful, or <code>conversion_error</code> set to <code>On</code>
-1	NULL value	NULL result
-2	NULL value	Conversion error (when <code>conversion_error</code> is set to <code>Off</code> only). <code>SQLCODE</code> indicates a <code>CANNOT_CONVERT</code> warning

Indicator value	Supplying value to database	Receiving value from database
< -2	NULL value	NULL result

For more information about retrieving long values, see [“GET DATA statement \[ESQL\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

## The SQL Communication Area (SQLCA)

The **SQL Communication Area (SQLCA)** is an area of memory that is used on every database request for communicating statistics and errors from the application to the database server and back to the application. The SQLCA is used as a handle for the application-to-database communication link. It is passed in to all database library functions that need to communicate with the database server. It is implicitly passed on all embedded SQL statements.

A global SQLCA variable is defined in the interface library. The preprocessor generates an external reference for the global SQLCA variable and an external reference for a pointer to it. The external reference is named `sqlca` and is of type `SQLCA`. The pointer is named `sqlcaptr`. The actual global variable is declared in the `imports` library.

The SQLCA is defined by the `sqlca.h` header file, included in the `SDK\Include` subdirectory of your installation directory.

### SQLCA provides error codes

You reference the SQLCA to test for a particular error code. The `sqlcode` and `sqlstate` fields contain error codes when a database request has an error. Some C macros are defined for referencing the `sqlcode` field, the `sqlstate` field, and some other fields.

## SQLCA fields

The fields in the SQLCA have the following meanings:

- **sqlcaid** An 8-byte character field that contains the string `SQLCA` as an identification of the SQLCA structure. This field helps in debugging when you are looking at memory contents.
- **sqlcabc** A long integer that contains the length of the SQLCA structure (136 bytes).
- **sqlcode** A long integer that specifies the error code when the database detects an error on a request. Definitions for the error codes can be found in the header file `sqlerr.h`. The error code is 0 (zero) for a successful operation, positive for a warning, and negative for an error.

For a full listing of error codes, see [Error Messages](#).

- **sqlerrml** The length of the information in the `sqlerrmc` field.
- **sqlerrmc** Zero or more character strings to be inserted into an error message. Some error messages contain one or more placeholder strings (`%1`, `%2`, ...) that are replaced with the strings in this field.

For example, if a `Table Not Found` error is generated, `sqlerrmc` contains the table name, which is inserted into the error message at the appropriate place.

For a full listing of error messages, see [Error Messages](#).

- **sqlerrp** Reserved.
- **sqlerrd** A utility array of long integers.
- **sqlwarn** Reserved.

- **sqlstate** The SQLSTATE status value. The ANSI SQL standard defines this type of return value from a SQL statement in addition to the SQLCODE value. The SQLSTATE value is always a five-character null-terminated string, divided into a two-character class (the first two characters) and a three-character subclass. Each character can be a digit from 0 through 9 or an uppercase alphabetic character A through Z.

Any class or subclass that begins with 0 through 4 or A through H is defined by the SQL standard; other classes and subclasses are implementation defined. The SQLSTATE value '00000' means that there has been no error or warning.

For more SQLSTATE values, see [“SQL Anywhere error messages sorted by SQLSTATE” \[Error Messages\]](#).

### sqlerror array

The sqlerror field array has the following elements.

- **sqlerrd[1] (SQLIOCOUNT)** The actual number of input/output operations that were required to complete a statement.

The database server does not set this number to zero for each statement. Your program can set this variable to zero before executing a sequence of statements. After the last statement, this number is the total number of input/output operations for the entire statement sequence.

- **sqlerrd[2] (SQLCOUNT)** The value of this field depends on which statement is being executed.
  - **INSERT, UPDATE, PUT, and DELETE statements** The number of rows that were affected by the statement.
  - **OPEN statement** On a cursor OPEN, this field is filled in with either the actual number of rows in the cursor (a value greater than *or equal to* 0) or an estimate thereof (a negative number whose absolute value is the estimate). It is the actual number of rows if the database server can compute it without counting the rows. The database can also be configured to always return the actual number of rows using the row\_counts option.
  - **FETCH cursor statement** The SQLCOUNT field is filled if a SQLE\_NOTFOUND warning is returned. It contains the number of rows by which a FETCH RELATIVE or FETCH ABSOLUTE statement goes outside the range of possible cursor positions (a cursor can be on a row, before the first row, or after the last row). In the case of a wide fetch, SQLCOUNT is the number of rows actually fetched, and is less than or equal to the number of rows requested. During a wide fetch, SQLE\_NOTFOUND is only set if no rows are returned.

For more information about wide fetches, see [“Fetching more than one row at a time” on page 577](#).

The value is 0 if the row was not found, but the position is valid, for example, executing FETCH RELATIVE 1 when positioned on the last row of a cursor. The value is positive if the attempted fetch was beyond the end of the cursor, and negative if the attempted fetch was before the beginning of the cursor.

- **GET DATA statement** The SQLCOUNT field holds the actual length of the value.

- **DESCRIBE statement** In the WITH VARIABLE RESULT clause used to describe procedures that may have more than one result set, SQLCOUNT is set to one of the following values:

- **0** The result set may change: the procedure call should be described again following each OPEN statement.
- **1** The result set is fixed. No re-describing is required.

In the case of a syntax error, SQLE\_SYNTAX\_ERROR, this field contains the approximate character position within the statement where the error was detected.

- **sqlerrd[3] (SQLIOESTIMATE)** The estimated number of input/output operations that are required to complete the statement. This field is given a value on an OPEN or EXPLAIN statement.

## SQLCA management for multi-threaded or reentrant code

You can use embedded SQL statements in multi-threaded or reentrant code. However, if you use a single connection, you are restricted to one active request per connection. In a multi-threaded application, you should not use the same connection to the database on each thread unless you use a semaphore to control access.

There are no restrictions on using separate connections on each thread that wants to use the database. The SQLCA is used by the runtime library to distinguish between the different thread contexts. So, each thread wanting to use the database concurrently must have its own SQLCA.

Any given database connection is accessible only from one SQLCA, with the exception of the cancel instruction, which must be issued from a separate thread.

For information about canceling requests, see [“Implementing request management” on page 589](#).

The following is an example of multi-threaded embedded SQL reentrant code.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <malloc.h>
#include <ctype.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <process.h>
#include <windows.h>
EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLDA;

#define TRUE 1
#define FALSE 0

// multithreading support

typedef struct a_thread_data {
    SQLCA sqlca;
    int num_iters;
    int thread;
    int done;
} a_thread_data;

// each thread's ESQL test

EXEC SQL SET SQLCA "&thread_data->sqlca";
```

```
static void PrintSQLError( a_thread_data * thread_data )
/*****
{
    char                buffer[200];

    printf( "%d: SQL error %d -- %s ... aborting\n",
            thread_data->thread,
            SQLCODE,
            sqlerror_message( &thread_data->sqlca,
                             buffer, sizeof( buffer ) ) );
    exit( 1 );
}

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR { PrintSQLError( thread_data ); };

static void do_one_iter( void * data )
{
    a_thread_data *   thread_data = (a_thread_data *)data;
    int               i;
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char              user[ 20 ];
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    if( db_init( &thread_data->sqlca ) != 0 ) {
        for( i = 0; i < thread_data->num_iters; i++ ) {
            EXEC SQL CONNECT "dba" IDENTIFIED BY "sql";
            EXEC SQL SELECT USER INTO :user;
            EXEC SQL DISCONNECT;
        }
        printf( "Thread %d did %d iters successfully\n",
                thread_data->thread, thread_data->num_iters );
        db_fini( &thread_data->sqlca );
    }
    thread_data->done = TRUE;
}

int main()
{
    int num_threads = 4;
    int thread;
    int num_iters = 300;
    int num_done = 0;
    a_thread_data *thread_data;
    thread_data = (a_thread_data *)malloc( sizeof( a_thread_data ) *
num_threads );
    for( thread = 0; thread < num_threads; thread++ ) {
        thread_data[ thread ].num_iters = num_iters;
        thread_data[ thread ].thread = thread;
        thread_data[ thread ].done = FALSE;
        if( _beginthread( do_one_iter,
                        8096,
                        (void *)&thread_data[thread] ) <= 0 ) {
            printf( "FAILED creating thread.\n" );
            return( 1 );
        }
    }
    while( num_done != num_threads ) {
        Sleep( 1000 );
        num_done = 0;
        for( thread = 0; thread < num_threads; thread++ ) {
            if( thread_data[ thread ].done == TRUE ) {
                num_done++;
            }
        }
    }
}
```



```
    }  
  }  
  return( 0 );  
}
```

## Using multiple SQLCAs

### To manage multiple SQLCAs in your application

1. You must not use the option on the SQL preprocessor that generates non-reentrant code (-r-). The reentrant code is a little larger and a little slower because statically initialized global variables cannot be used. However, these effects are minimal.
2. Each SQLCA used in your program must be initialized with a call to `db_init` and cleaned up at the end with a call to `db_fini`.
3. The embedded SQL statement `SET SQLCA` is used to tell the SQL preprocessor to use a different SQLCA for database requests. Usually, a statement such as `EXEC SQL SET SQLCA 'task_data->sqlca';` is used at the top of your program or in a header file to set the SQLCA reference to point at task specific data. Performance is unaffected because this statement does not generate any code. It changes the state within the preprocessor so that any reference to the SQLCA uses the given string.

For information about creating SQLCAs, see [“SET SQLCA statement \[ESQL\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

## When to use multiple SQLCAs

You can use the multiple SQLCA support in any of the supported embedded SQL environments, but it is only required in reentrant code.

The following list details the environments where multiple SQLCAs must be used:

- **Multi-threaded applications** Each thread must have its own SQLCA. This can also happen when you have a DLL that uses embedded SQL and is called by more than one thread in your application.
- **Dynamic link libraries and shared libraries** A DLL has only one data segment. While the database server is processing a request from one application, it may yield to another application that makes a request to the database server. If your DLL uses the global SQLCA, both applications are using it at the same time. Each Windows application must have its own SQLCA.
- **A DLL with one data segment** A DLL can be created with only one data segment or one data segment for each application. If your DLL has only one data segment, you cannot use the global SQLCA for the same reason that a DLL cannot use the global SQLCA. Each application must have its own SQLCA.

## Connection management with multiple SQLCAs

You do not need to use multiple SQLCAs to connect to more than one database or have more than one connection to a single database.

Each SQLCA can have one unnamed connection. Each SQLCA has an active or current connection See [“SET CONNECTION statement \[Interactive SQL\] \[ESQL\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

All operations on a given database connection must use the same SQLCA that was used when the connection was established.

### **Record locking**

Operations on different connections are subject to the normal record locking mechanisms and may cause each other to block and possibly to deadlock. For information about locking, see [“Using procedures, triggers, and batches” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#).

## Static and dynamic SQL

There are two ways to embed SQL statements into a C program:

- Static statements
- Dynamic statements

Until now, static SQL has been discussed. This section compares static and dynamic SQL.

### Static SQL statements

All standard SQL data manipulation and data definition statements can be embedded in a C program by prefixing them with EXEC SQL and suffixing the statement with a semicolon (;). These statements are referred to as **static** statements.

Static statements can contain references to host variables. All examples to this point have used static embedded SQL statements. See [“Using host variables” on page 546](#).

Host variables can only be used in place of string or numeric constants. They cannot be used to substitute column names or table names; dynamic statements are required to perform those operations.

### Dynamic SQL statements

In the C language, strings are stored in arrays of characters. Dynamic statements are constructed in C language strings. These statements can then be executed using the PREPARE and EXECUTE statements. These SQL statements cannot reference host variables in the same manner as static statements since the C language variables are not accessible by name when the C program is executing.

To pass information between the statements and the C language variables, a data structure called the **SQL Descriptor Area (SQLDA)** is used. This structure is set up for you by the SQL preprocessor if you specify a list of host variables on the EXECUTE statement in the USING clause. These variables correspond by position to place holders in the appropriate positions of the prepared statement.

For information about the SQLDA, see [“The SQL descriptor area \(SQLDA\)” on page 565](#).

A **place holder** is put in the statement to indicate where host variables are to be accessed. A place holder is either a question mark (?) or a host variable reference as in static statements (a host variable name preceded by a colon). In the latter case, the host variable name used in the actual text of the statement serves only as a place holder indicating a reference to the SQL descriptor area.

A host variable used to pass information to the database is called a **bind variable**.

#### Example

For example:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;  
char comm[200];  
char Street[30];  
char City[20];
```

```
short int cityind;
long empnum;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

...
sprintf( comm,
    "UPDATE %s SET Street = :?, City = :?"
    "WHERE EmployeeID = :?",
    tablename );
EXEC SQL PREPARE S1 FROM :comm;
EXEC SQL EXECUTE S1 USING :Street, :City:cityind, :empnum;
```

This method requires you to know how many host variables there are in the statement. Usually, this is not the case. So, you can set up your own SQLDA structure and specify this SQLDA in the USING clause on the EXECUTE statement.

The DESCRIBE BIND VARIABLES statement returns the host variable names of the bind variables that are found in a prepared statement. This makes it easier for a C program to manage the host variables. The general method is as follows:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char comm[200];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
...
sprintf( comm, "UPDATE %s set Street = :Street,
    City = :City"
    " WHERE EmployeeID = :empnum",
    tablename );
EXEC SQL PREPARE S1 FROM :comm;
/* Assume that there are no more than 10 host variables.
 * See next example if you cannot put a limit on it. */
sqlda = alloc_sqlda( 10 );
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE BIND VARIABLES FOR S1 INTO sqlda;
/* sqlda->sqld will tell you how many
 * host variables there were. */
/* Fill in SQLDA_VARIABLE fields with
 * values based on name fields in sqlda. */
...
EXEC SQL EXECUTE S1 USING DESCRIPTOR sqlda;
free_sqlda( sqlda );
```

## SQLDA contents

The SQLDA consists of an array of variable descriptors. Each descriptor describes the attributes of the corresponding C program variable or the location that the database stores data into or retrieves data from:

- data type
- length if *type* is a string type
- memory address
- indicator variable

For a complete description of the SQLDA structure, see [“The SQL descriptor area \(SQLDA\)” on page 565](#).

## Indicator variables and NULL

The indicator variable is used to pass a NULL value to the database or retrieve a NULL value from the database. The database server also uses the indicator variable to indicate truncation conditions encountered

during a database operation. The indicator variable is set to a positive value when not enough space was provided to receive a database value.

For more information, see [“Indicator variables” on page 551](#).

## Dynamic SELECT statement

A SELECT statement that returns only a single row can be prepared dynamically, followed by an EXECUTE with an INTO clause to retrieve the one-row result. SELECT statements that return multiple rows, however, are managed using dynamic cursors.

With dynamic cursors, results are put into a host variable list or a SQLDA that is specified on the FETCH statement (FETCH INTO and FETCH USING DESCRIPTOR). Since the number of select list items is usually unknown to the C programmer, the SQLDA route is the most common. The DESCRIBE SELECT LIST statement sets up a SQLDA with the types of the select list items. Space is then allocated for the values using the fill\_sqlda or fill\_s\_sqlda functions, and the information is retrieved by the FETCH USING DESCRIPTOR statement.

The typical scenario is as follows:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char comm[200];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
int actual_size;
SQLDA * sqlda;
...
sprintf( comm, "SELECT * FROM %s", table_name );
EXEC SQL PREPARE S1 FROM :comm;
/* Initial guess of 10 columns in result.
   If it is wrong, it is corrected right
   after the first DESCRIBE by reallocating
   sqlda and doing DESCRIBE again. */
sqlda = alloc_sqlda( 10 );
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE SELECT LIST FOR S1
INTO sqlda;
if( sqlda->sqld > sqlda->sqln )
{
    actual_size = sqlda->sqld;
    free_sqlda( sqlda );
    sqlda = alloc_sqlda( actual_size );
    EXEC SQL DESCRIBE SELECT LIST FOR S1
    INTO sqlda;
}
fill_sqlda( sqlda );
EXEC SQL DECLARE C1 CURSOR FOR S1;
EXEC SQL OPEN C1;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOTFOUND {break};
for( ;; )
{
    EXEC SQL FETCH C1 USING DESCRIPTOR sqlda;
    /* do something with data */
}
EXEC SQL CLOSE C1;
EXEC SQL DROP STATEMENT S1;
```

**Drop statements after use**

To avoid consuming unnecessary resources, ensure that statements are dropped after use.

For a complete example using cursors for a dynamic select statement, see [“Dynamic cursor sample” on page 540](#).

For more information about the functions mentioned above, see [“Library function reference” on page 593](#).

## The SQL descriptor area (SQLDA)

The SQLDA (SQL Descriptor Area) is an interface structure that is used for dynamic SQL statements. The structure passes information regarding host variables and SELECT statement results to and from the database. The SQLDA is defined in the header file *sqlda.h*.

There are functions in the database interface library or DLL that you can use to manage SQLDAs. For descriptions, see “[Library function reference](#)” on page 593.

When host variables are used with static SQL statements, the preprocessor constructs a SQLDA for those host variables. It is this SQLDA that is actually passed to and from the database server.

## The SQLDA header file

The contents of *sqlda.h* are as follows:

```
#ifndef _SQLDA_H_INCLUDED
#define _SQLDA_H_INCLUDED
#define II_SQLDA

#include "sqlca.h"

#if defined( _SQL_PACK_STRUCTURES )
#include "pshpk1.h"
#endif

#define SQL_MAX_NAME_LEN 30

#define _sqldafar
typedef short int a_sql_type;
struct sqlname
{
    short int length; /* length of char data */
    char data[ SQL_MAX_NAME_LEN ]; /* data */
};
struct sqlvar
{
    /* array of variable descriptors */
    short int sqltype; /* type of host variable */
    short int sqllen; /* length of host variable */
    void *sqldata; /* address of variable */
    short int *sqlind; /* indicator variable pointer */
    struct sqlname sqlname;
};
struct sqlda
{
    unsigned char sqldaaid[8]; /* eye catcher "SQLDA" */
    a_sql_int32 sqldabc; /* length of sqlda structure */
    short int sqln; /* descriptor size in number of entries */
    short int sqld; /* number of variables found by DESCRIBE */
    struct sqlvar sqlvar[1]; /* array of variable descriptors */
};

typedef struct sqlda SQLDA;
typedef struct sqlvar SQLVAR, SQLDA_VARIABLE;
typedef struct sqlname SQLNAME, SQLDA_NAME;
#ifndef SQLDASIZE
#define SQLDASIZE(n) ( sizeof( struct sqlda ) + \
                      (n-1) * sizeof( struct sqlvar ) )
#endif
```

```
#endif
#if defined( _SQL_PACK_STRUCTURES )
#include "poppk.h"
#endif
#endif
```

## SQLDA fields

The SQLDA fields have the following meanings:

Field	Description
<b>sqldaid</b>	An 8-byte character field that contains the string <b>SQLDA</b> as an identification of the SQLDA structure. This field helps in debugging when you are looking at memory contents.
<b>sqldabc</b>	A long integer containing the length of the SQLDA structure.
<b>sqln</b>	The number of variable descriptors allocated in the sqlvar array.
<b>sqld</b>	The number of variable descriptors that are valid (contain information describing a host variable). This field is set by the DESCRIBE statement and sometimes by the programmer when supplying data to the database server.
<b>sqlvar</b>	An array of descriptors of type struct sqlvar, each describing a host variable.

## SQLDA host variable descriptions

Each sqlvar structure in the SQLDA describes a host variable. The fields of the sqlvar structure have the following meanings:

- **sqltype** The type of the variable that is described by this descriptor. See [“Embedded SQL data types” on page 542](#).

The low order bit indicates whether NULL values are allowed. Valid types and constant definitions can be found in the *sqldef.h* header file.

This field is filled by the DESCRIBE statement. You can set this field to any type when supplying data to the database server or retrieving data from the database server. Any necessary type conversion is done automatically.

- **sqllen** The length of the variable. What the length actually means depends on the type information and how the SQLDA is being used.

For LONG VARCHAR, LONG NVARCHAR, and LONG BINARY data types, the array\_len field of the DT\_LONGVARCHAR, DT\_LONGNVARCHAR, or DT\_LONGBINARY data type structure is used instead of the sqllen field.

For more information about the length field, see [“SQLDA sqllen field values” on page 568](#).



- **sqldata** A pointer to the memory occupied by this variable. This memory must correspond to the sqltype and sqlllen fields.

For storage formats, see [“Embedded SQL data types” on page 542](#).

For UPDATE and INSERT statements, this variable is not involved in the operation if the sqldata pointer is a null pointer. For a FETCH, no data is returned if the sqldata pointer is a null pointer. In other words, the column returned by the sqldata pointer is an **unbound column**.

If the DESCRIBE statement uses LONG NAMES, this field holds the long name of the result set column. If, in addition, the DESCRIBE statement is a DESCRIBE USER TYPES statement, then this field holds the long name of the user-defined data type, instead of the column. If the type is a base type, the field is empty.

- **sqlind** A pointer to the indicator value. An indicator value is a short int. A negative indicator value indicates a NULL value. A positive indicator value indicates that this variable has been truncated by a FETCH statement, and the indicator value contains the length of the data before truncation. A value of -2 indicates a conversion error if the conversion\_error database option is set to Off. See [“conversion\\_error option \[compatibility\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

For more information, see [“Indicator variables” on page 551](#).

If the sqlind pointer is the null pointer, no indicator variable pertains to this host variable.

The sqlind field is also used by the DESCRIBE statement to indicate parameter types. If the type is a user-defined data type, this field is set to DT\_HAS\_USERTYPE\_INFO. In this case, you may want to perform a DESCRIBE USER TYPES to obtain information on the user-defined data types.

- **sqlname** A VARCHAR-like structure, as follows:

```
struct sqlname {
    short int length;
    char data[ SQL_MAX_NAME_LEN ];
};
```

It is filled by a DESCRIBE statement and is not otherwise used. This field has a different meaning for the two formats of the DESCRIBE statement:

- **SELECT LIST** The name data buffer is filled with the column heading of the corresponding item in the select list.
- **BIND VARIABLES** The name data buffer is filled with the name of the host variable that was used as a bind variable, or "?" if an unnamed parameter marker is used.

On a DESCRIBE SELECT LIST statement, any indicator variables present are filled with a flag indicating whether the select list item is updatable or not. More information about this flag can be found in the *sqldef.h* header file.

If the DESCRIBE statement is a DESCRIBE USER TYPES statement, then this field holds the long name of the user-defined data type instead of the column. If the type is a base type, the field is empty.

## SQLDA sqlen field values

The sqlen field length of the sqlvar structure in a SQLDA is used in the following kinds of interactions with the database server:

- **describing values** The DESCRIBE statement gets information about the host variables required to store data retrieved from the database, or host variables required to pass data to the database. See [“Describing values” on page 568](#).
- **retrieving values** Retrieving values from the database. See [“Retrieving values” on page 571](#).
- **sending values** Sending information to the database. See [“Sending values” on page 570](#).

These interactions are described in this section.

The following tables detail each of these interactions. These tables list the interface constant types (the DT\_ types) found in the *sqldef.h* header file. These constants would be placed in the SQLDA sqltype field.

For information about sqltype field values, see [“Embedded SQL data types” on page 542](#).

In static SQL, a SQLDA is still used, but it is generated and completely filled in by the SQL preprocessor. In this static case, the tables give the correspondence between the static C language host variable types and the interface constants.

## Describing values

The following table indicates the values of the sqlen and sqltype structure members returned by the DESCRIBE statement for the various database types (both SELECT LIST and BIND VARIABLE DESCRIBE statements). In the case of a user-defined database data type, the base type is described.

Your program can use the types and lengths returned from a DESCRIBE, or you may use another type. The database server performs type conversions between any two types. The memory pointed to by the sqldata field must correspond to the sqltype and sqlen fields. The embedded SQL type is obtained by a bitwise AND of sqltype with DT\_TYPES (sqltype & DT\_TYPES).

For information about embedded SQL data types, see [“Embedded SQL data types” on page 542](#).

Database field type	Embedded SQL type returned	Length (in bytes) returned on describe
BIGINT	DT_BIGINT	8
BINARY(n)	DT_BINARY	n
BIT	DT_BIT	1
CHAR(n)	DT_FIXCHAR	n
DATE	DT_DATE	length of longest formatted string

Database field type	Embedded SQL type returned	Length (in bytes) returned on describe
DECIMAL(p,s)	DT_DECIMAL	high byte of length field in SQLDA set to p, and low byte set to s
DOUBLE	DT_DOUBLE	8
FLOAT	DT_FLOAT	4
INT	DT_INT	4
LONG BINARY	DT_LONGBINARY	32767
LONG NVARCHAR	DT_LONGNVARCHAR <sup>1</sup>	32767
LONG VARCHAR	DT_LONGVARCHAR	32767
NCHAR(n)	DT_NFIXCHAR <sup>1</sup>	n times maximum character length in client's NCHAR character set
NVARCHAR(n)	DT_NVARCHAR <sup>1</sup>	n times maximum character length in client's NCHAR character set
REAL	DT_FLOAT	4
SMALLINT	DT_SMALLINT	2
TIME	DT_TIME	length of longest formatted string
TIMESTAMP	DT_TIMESTAMP	length of longest formatted string
TINYINT	DT_TINYINT	1
UNSIGNED BIGINT	DT_UNSBIGINT	8
UNSIGNED INT	DT_UNSENT	4
UNSIGNED SMALLINT	DT_UNSSMALLINT	2
VARCHAR(n)	DT_VARCHAR	n

<sup>1</sup> In embedded SQL, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, and LONG NVARCHAR are described as either DT\_FIXCHAR, DT\_VARCHAR, and DT\_LONGVARCHAR, respectively, by default. If the `db_change_nchar_charset` function has been called, the types are described as DT\_NFIXCHAR, DT\_NVARCHAR, and DT\_LONGNVARCHAR, respectively. See [“db\\_change\\_nchar\\_charset function” on page 598](#).

## Sending values

The following table indicates how you specify lengths of values when you supply data to the database server in the SQLDA.

Only the data types displayed in the table are allowed in this case. The DT\_DATE, DT\_TIME, and DT\_TIMESTAMP types are treated the same as DT\_STRING when supplying information to the database; the value must be a null-terminated character string in an appropriate date format.

Embedded SQL data type	Program action to set the length
DT_BIGINT	No action required.
DT_BINARY(n)	Length taken from field in BINARY structure.
DT_BIT	No action required.
DT_DATE	Length determined by terminating \0.
DT_DOUBLE	No action required.
DT_FIXCHAR(n)	Length field in SQLDA determines length of string.
DT_FLOAT	No action required.
DT_INT	No action required.
DT_LONGBINARY	Length field ignored. See <a href="#">“Sending LONG data” on page 584</a> .
DT_LONGNVARCHAR	Length field ignored. See <a href="#">“Sending LONG data” on page 584</a> .
DT_LONGVARCHAR	Length field ignored. See <a href="#">“Sending LONG data” on page 584</a> .
DT_NFIXCHAR(n)	Length field in SQLDA determines length of string.
DT_NSTRING	Length determined by terminating \0. If the ansi_blanks option is On and the database is blank-padded, then the length field in the SQLDA must be set to the length of the buffer containing the value (at least the length of the value plus space for the terminating null character).
DT_NVARCHAR	Length taken from field in NVARCHAR structure.
DT_SMALLINT	No action required.

Embedded SQL data type	Program action to set the length
DT_STRING	Length determined by terminating \0. If the ansi_blanks option is On and the database is blank-padded, then the length field in the SQLDA must be set to the length of the buffer containing the value (at least the length of the value plus space for the terminating null character).
DT_TIME	Length determined by terminating \0.
DT_TIMESTAMP	Length determined by terminating \0.
DT_TIMESTAMP_STRUCT	No action required.
DT_UNSBIGINT	No action required.
DT_UNSENT	No action required.
DT_UNSSMALLINT	No action required.
DT_VARCHAR(n)	Length taken from field in VARCHAR structure.
DT_VARIABLE	Length determined by terminating \0.

## Retrieving values

The following table indicates the values of the length field when you retrieve data from the database using a SQLDA. The sqlen field is never modified when you retrieve data.

Only the interface data types displayed in the table are allowed in this case. The DT\_DATE, DT\_TIME, and DT\_TIMESTAMP data types are treated the same as DT\_STRING when you retrieve information from the database. The value is formatted as a character string in the current date format.

Embedded SQL data type	What the program must set length field to when receiving	How the database returns length information after fetching a value
DT_BIGINT	No action required.	No action required.
DT_BINARY(n)	Maximum length of BINARY structure (n+2). The maximum value for n is 32765.	len field of BINARY structure set to actual length in bytes.
DT_BIT	No action required.	No action required.
DT_DATE	Length of buffer.	\0 at end of string.
DT_DOUBLE	No action required.	No action required.

<b>Embedded SQL data type</b>	<b>What the program must set length field to when receiving</b>	<b>How the database returns length information after fetching a value</b>
DT_FIXCHAR(n)	Length of buffer, in bytes. The maximum value for n is 32767.	Padded with blanks to length of buffer.
DT_FLOAT	No action required.	No action required.
DT_INT	No action required.	No action required.
DT_LONGBINARY	Length field ignored. See <a href="#">“Retrieving LONG data” on page 583</a> .	Length field ignored. See <a href="#">“Retrieving LONG data” on page 583</a> .
DT_LONGNVARCHAR	Length field ignored. See <a href="#">“Retrieving LONG data” on page 583</a> .	Length field ignored. See <a href="#">“Retrieving LONG data” on page 583</a> .
DT_LONGVARCHAR	Length field ignored. See <a href="#">“Retrieving LONG data” on page 583</a> .	Length field ignored. See <a href="#">“Retrieving LONG data” on page 583</a> .
DT_NFIXCHAR(n)	Length of buffer, in bytes. The maximum value for n is 32767.	Padded with blanks to length of buffer.
DT_NSTRING	Length of buffer.	\0 at end of string.
DT_NVARCHAR(n)	Maximum length of NVARCHAR structure (n+2). The maximum value for n is 32765.	len field of NVARCHAR structure set to actual length in bytes of string.
DT_SMALLINT	No action required.	No action required.
DT_STRING	Length of buffer.	\0 at end of string.
DT_TIME	Length of buffer.	\0 at end of string.
DT_TIMESTAMP	Length of buffer.	\0 at end of string.
DT_TIMESTAMP_STRUCT	No action required.	No action required.
DT_UNSBIGINT	No action required.	No action required.
DT_UNSSINT	No action required.	No action required.
DT_UNSSMALLINT	No action required.	No action required.

<b>Embedded SQL data type</b>	<b>What the program must set length field to when receiving</b>	<b>How the database returns length information after fetching a value</b>
DT_VARCHAR(n)	Maximum length of VARCHAR structure (n+2). The maximum value for n is 32765.	len field of VARCHAR structure set to actual length in bytes of string.

## Fetching data

Fetching data in embedded SQL is done using the SELECT statement. There are two cases:

- **The SELECT statement returns at most one row** Use an INTO clause to assign the returned values directly to host variables. See [“SELECT statements that return at most one row” on page 574](#).
- **The SELECT statement may return multiple rows** Use cursors to manage the rows of the result set. See [“Using cursors in embedded SQL” on page 575](#).

## SELECT statements that return at most one row

A single row query retrieves at most one row from the database. A single-row query SELECT statement has an INTO clause following the select list and before the FROM clause. The INTO clause contains a list of host variables to receive the value for each select list item. There must be the same number of host variables as there are select list items. The host variables may be accompanied by indicator variables to indicate NULL results.

When the SELECT statement is executed, the database server retrieves the results and places them in the host variables. If the query results contain more than one row, the database server returns an error.

If the query results in no rows being selected, a Row Not Found warning is returned. Errors and warnings are returned in the SQLCA structure. See [“The SQL Communication Area \(SQLCA\)” on page 555](#).

### Example

The following code fragment returns 1 if a row from the Employees table is fetched successfully, 0 if the row doesn't exist, and -1 if an error occurs.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
long   ID;
char   name[41];
char   Sex;
char   birthdate[15];
short int ind_birthdate;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
...
int find_employee( long Employees )
{
    ID = Employees;
    EXEC SQL SELECT GivenName ||
        ' ' || Surname, Sex, BirthDate
        INTO :name, :Sex,
            :birthdate:ind_birthdate
        FROM Employees
        WHERE EmployeeID = :ID;
    if( SQLCODE == SQLE_NOTFOUND )
    {
        return( 0 ); /* Employees not found */
    }
    else if( SQLCODE < 0 )
    {
        return( -1 ); /* error */
    }
    else

```



```

    {
      return( 1 ); /* found */
    }
  }
}

```

## Using cursors in embedded SQL

A cursor is used to retrieve rows from a query that has multiple rows in its result set. A **cursor** is a handle or an identifier for the SQL query and a position within the result set.

For an introduction to cursors, see [“Working with cursors” on page 32](#).

### To manage a cursor in embedded SQL

1. Declare a cursor for a particular SELECT statement, using the DECLARE statement.
2. Open the cursor using the OPEN statement.
3. Retrieve results one row at a time from the cursor using the FETCH statement.
4. Fetch rows until the Row Not Found warning is returned.

Errors and warnings are returned in the SQLCA structure. See [“The SQL Communication Area \(SQLCA\)” on page 555](#).

5. Close the cursor, using the CLOSE statement.

By default, cursors are automatically closed at the end of a transaction (on COMMIT or ROLLBACK). Cursors that are opened with a WITH HOLD clause are kept open for subsequent transactions until they are explicitly closed.

The following is a simple example of cursor usage:

```

void print_employees( void )
{
  EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
  char name[50];
  char Sex;
  char birthdate[15];
  short int ind_birthdate;
  EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
  EXEC SQL DECLARE C1 CURSOR FOR
    SELECT GivenName || ' ' || Surname,
           Sex, BirthDate
    FROM Employees;
  EXEC SQL OPEN C1;
  for( ;; )
  {
    EXEC SQL FETCH C1 INTO :name, :Sex,
      :birthdate:ind_birthdate;
    if( SQLCODE == SQLE_NOTFOUND )
    {
      break;
    }
    else if( SQLCODE < 0 )
    {
      break;
    }
  }
}

```

```

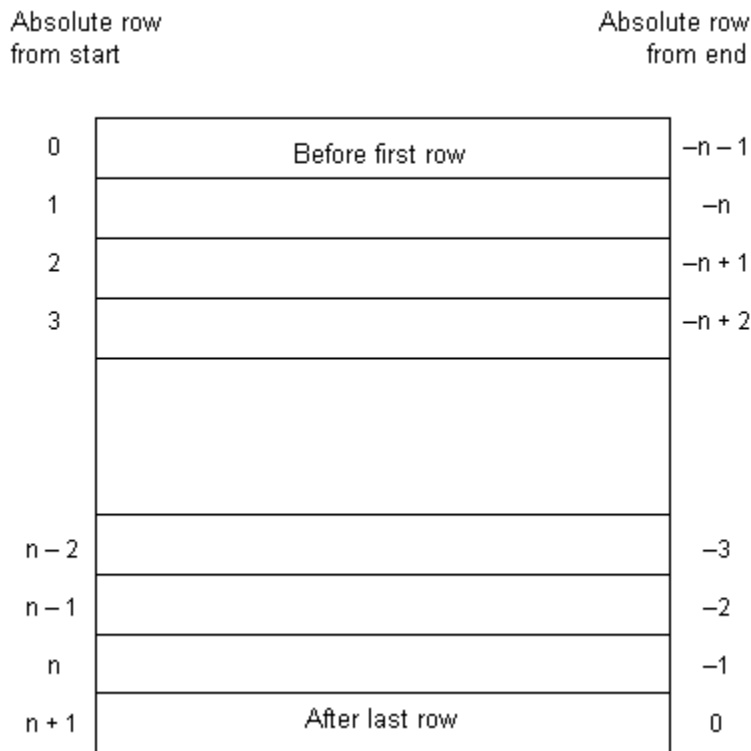
        if( ind_birthdate < 0 )
        {
            strcpy( birthdate, "UNKNOWN" );
        }
        printf( "Name: %s Sex: %c Birthdate:
                %s.n",name, Sex, birthdate );
    }
    EXEC SQL CLOSE C1;
}
    
```

For complete examples using cursors, see [“Static cursor sample” on page 540](#) and [“Dynamic cursor sample” on page 540](#).

**Cursor positioning**

A cursor is positioned in one of three places:

- On a row
- Before the first row
- After the last row



When a cursor is opened, it is positioned before the first row. The cursor position can be moved using the FETCH statement. It can be positioned to an absolute position either from the start or from the end of the

query results. It can also be moved relative to the current cursor position. See “[FETCH statement \[ESQL\] \[SP\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

There are special **positioned** versions of the UPDATE and DELETE statements that can be used to update or delete the row at the current position of the cursor. If the cursor is positioned before the first row or after the last row, an error is returned indicating that there is no corresponding row in the cursor.

The PUT statement can be used to insert a row into a cursor. See “[PUT statement \[ESQL\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

### Cursor positioning problems

Inserts and some updates to DYNAMIC SCROLL cursors can cause problems with cursor positioning. The database server does not put inserted rows at a predictable position within a cursor unless there is an ORDER BY clause on the SELECT statement. In some cases, the inserted row does not appear at all until the cursor is closed and opened again.

With SQL Anywhere, this occurs if a temporary table had to be created to open the cursor.

For a description, see “[Use work tables in query processing \(use All-rows optimization goal\)](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage*].

The UPDATE statement can cause a row to move in the cursor. This happens if the cursor has an ORDER BY clause that uses an existing index (a temporary table is not created).

## Fetching more than one row at a time

The FETCH statement can be modified to fetch more than one row at a time, which may improve performance. This is called a **wide fetch** or an **array fetch**.

SQL Anywhere also supports wide puts and inserts. See “[PUT statement \[ESQL\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*] and “[EXECUTE statement \[ESQL\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

To use wide fetches in embedded SQL, include the fetch statement in your code as follows:

```
EXEC SQL FETCH ... ARRAY nnn
```

where ARRAY *nnn* is the last item of the FETCH statement. The fetch count *nnn* can be a host variable. The number of variables in the SQLDA must be the product of *nnn* and the number of columns per row. The first row is placed in SQLDA variables 0 to (columns per row) - 1, and so on.

Each column must be of the same type in each row of the SQLDA, or a SQLDA\_INCONSISTENT error is returned.

The server returns in SQLCOUNT the number of records that were fetched, which is always greater than zero unless there is an error or warning. On a wide fetch, a SQLCOUNT of one with no error condition indicates that one valid row has been fetched.

### Example

The following example code illustrates the use of wide fetches. You can also find this code in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\esqlwidefetch\widefetch.sqc*.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include "sqldef.h"
EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR { PrintSQLError();
    goto err; };

static void PrintSQLError()
{
    char buffer[200];

    printf( "SQL error %d -- %s\n",
        SQLCODE,
        sqlerror_message( &sqlca,
            buffer,
            sizeof( buffer ) ) );
}
static SQLDA * PrepareSQLDA(
    a_sql_statement_number stat0,
    unsigned width,
    unsigned *cols_per_row )

/* Allocate a SQLDA to be used for fetching from
the statement identified by "stat0". "width"
rows are retrieved on each FETCH request.
The number of columns per row is assigned to
"cols_per_row". */
{
    int num_cols;
    unsigned row, col, offset;
    SQLDA * sqlda;
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    a_sql_statement_number stat;
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
    stat = stat0;
    sqlda = alloc_sqlda( 100 );
    if( sqlda == NULL ) return( NULL );
    EXEC SQL DESCRIBE :stat INTO sqlda;
    *cols_per_row = num_cols = sqlda->sqlc;
    if( num_cols * width > sqlda->sqln )
    {
        free_sqlda( sqlda );
        sqlda = alloc_sqlda( num_cols * width );
        if( sqlda == NULL ) return( NULL );
        EXEC SQL DESCRIBE :stat INTO sqlda;
    }
    // copy first row in SQLDA setup by describe
    // to following (wide) rows
    sqlda->sqlc = num_cols * width;
    offset = num_cols;
    for( row = 1; row < width; row++ )
    {
        for( col = 0;
            col < num_cols;
            col++, offset++ )
        {
            sqlda->sqlvar[offset].sqltype =
                sqlda->sqlvar[col].sqltype;
            sqlda->sqlvar[offset].sqllen =
                sqlda->sqlvar[col].sqllen;
            // optional: copy described column name
            memcpy( &sqlda->sqlvar[offset].sqlname,
```

```

        &sqlda->sqlvar[col].sqlname,
        sizeof( sqlda->sqlvar[0].sqlname ) );
    }
}
fill_s_sqlda( sqlda, 40 );
return( sqlda );
err:
return( NULL );
}
static void PrintFetchedRows(
    SQLDA * sqlda,
    unsigned cols_per_row )
{
    /* Print rows already wide fetched in the SQLDA */
    long      rows_fetched;
    int       row, col, offset;

    if( SQLCOUNT == 0 )
    {
        rows_fetched = 1;
    }
    else
    {
        rows_fetched = SQLCOUNT;
    }
    printf( "Fetched %d Rows:\n", rows_fetched );
    for( row = 0; row < rows_fetched; row++ )
    {
        for( col = 0; col < cols_per_row; col++ )
        {
            offset = row * cols_per_row + col;
            printf( " \"%s\"",
                (char *)sqlda->sqlvar[offset].sqldata );
        }
        printf( "\n" );
    }
}
static int DoQuery(
    char * query_str0,
    unsigned fetch_width0 )
{
    /* Wide Fetch "query_str0" select statement
     * using a width of "fetch_width0" rows */
    SQLDA *      sqlda;
    unsigned     cols_per_row;
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    a_sql_statement_number stat;
    char *      query_str;
    unsigned     fetch_width;
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    query_str = query_str0;
    fetch_width = fetch_width0;

    EXEC SQL PREPARE :stat FROM :query_str;
    EXEC SQL DECLARE QCURSOR CURSOR FOR :stat
        FOR READ ONLY;
    EXEC SQL OPEN QCURSOR;
    sqlda = PrepareSQLDA( stat,
        fetch_width,
        &cols_per_row );
    if( sqlda == NULL )
    {
        printf( "Error allocating SQLDA\n" );
    }
}

```

```
    return( SQLE_NO_MEMORY );
}
for( ;; )
{
    EXEC SQL FETCH QCURSOR INTO DESCRIPTOR sqlda
        ARRAY :fetch_width;
    if( SQLCODE != SQLE_NOERROR ) break;
    PrintFetchedRows( sqlda, cols_per_row );
}
EXEC SQL CLOSE QCURSOR;
EXEC SQL DROP STATEMENT :stat;
free_filled_sqllda( sqlda );
err:
return( SQLCODE );
}
void main( int argc, char *argv[] )
{
    /* Optional first argument is a select statement,
     * optional second argument is the fetch width */
    char *query_str =
        "SELECT GivenName, Surname FROM Employees";
    unsigned fetch_width = 10;

    if( argc > 1 )
    {
        query_str = argv[1];
        if( argc > 2 )
        {
            fetch_width = atoi( argv[2] );
            if( fetch_width < 2 )
            {
                fetch_width = 2;
            }
        }
    }
    db_init( &sqlca );
    EXEC SQL CONNECT "DBA" IDENTIFIED BY "sql";

    DoQuery( query_str, fetch_width );

    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT;
err:
    db_fini( &sqlca );
}
```

### Notes on using wide fetches

- In the function PrepareSQLDA, the SQLDA memory is allocated using the alloc\_sqlda function. This allows space for indicator variables, rather than using the alloc\_sqlda\_noind function.
- If the number of rows fetched is fewer than the number requested, but is not zero (at the end of the cursor for example), the SQLDA items corresponding to the rows that were not fetched are returned as NULL by setting the indicator value. If no indicator variables are present, an error is generated (SQLE\_NO\_INDICATOR: no indicator variable for NULL result).
- If a row being fetched has been updated, generating a SQLE\_ROW\_UPDATED\_WARNING warning, the fetch stops on the row that caused the warning. The values for all rows processed to that point (including the row that caused the warning) are returned. SQLCOUNT contains the number of rows that were fetched, including the row that caused the warning. All remaining SQLDA items are marked as NULL.

- If a row being fetched has been deleted or is locked, generating a `SQL_NO_CURRENT_ROW` or `SQL_LOCKED` error, `SQLCOUNT` contains the number of rows that were read prior to the error. This does not include the row that caused the error. The `SQLDA` does not contain values for any of the rows since `SQLDA` values are not returned on errors. The `SQLCOUNT` value can be used to reposition the cursor, if necessary, to read the rows.

## Sending and retrieving long values

The method for sending and retrieving LONG VARCHAR, LONG NVARCHAR, and LONG BINARY values in embedded SQL applications is different from that for other data types. The standard SQLDA fields are limited to 32767 bytes of data as the fields holding the length information (sqldata, sqlen, sqlind) are 16-bit values. Changing these values to 32-bit values would break existing applications.

The method of describing LONG VARCHAR, LONG NVARCHAR, and LONG BINARY values is the same as for other data types.

For information about how to retrieve and send values, see [“Retrieving LONG data” on page 583](#), and [“Sending LONG data” on page 584](#).

### Static SQL structures

Separate fields are used to hold the allocated, stored, and untruncated lengths of LONG BINARY, LONG VARCHAR, and LONG NVARCHAR data types. The static SQL data types are defined in *sqlca.h* as follows:

```
#define DECL_LONGVARCHAR( size )      \
    struct { a_sql_uint32  array_len;  \
             a_sql_uint32  stored_len; \
             a_sql_uint32  untrunc_len; \
             char           array[size+1]; \
    }
#define DECL_LONGNVARCHAR( size )    \
    struct { a_sql_uint32  array_len;  \
             a_sql_uint32  stored_len; \
             a_sql_uint32  untrunc_len; \
             char           array[size+1]; \
    }
#define DECL_LONGBINARY( size )      \
    struct { a_sql_uint32  array_len;  \
             a_sql_uint32  stored_len; \
             a_sql_uint32  untrunc_len; \
             char           array[size]; \
    }
```

### Dynamic SQL structures

For dynamic SQL, set the sqltype field to DT\_LONGVARCHAR, DT\_LONGNVARCHAR, or DT\_LONGBINARY as appropriate. The associated LONGVARCHAR, LONGNVARCHAR, and LONGBINARY structures are as follows:

```
typedef struct LONGVARCHAR {
    a_sql_uint32  array_len;
    a_sql_uint32  stored_len;
    a_sql_uint32  untrunc_len;
    char          array[1];
} LONGVARCHAR, LONGNVARCHAR, LONGBINARY;
```

### Structure member definitions

For both static and dynamic SQL structures, the structure members are defined as follows:

- **array\_len** (Sending and retrieving.) The number of bytes allocated for the array part of the structure.



- **stored\_len** (Sending and retrieving.) The number of bytes stored in the array. Always less than or equal to `array_len` and `untrunc_len`.
- **untrunc\_len** (Retrieving only.) The number of bytes that would be stored in the array if the value was not truncated. Always greater than or equal to `stored_len`. If truncation occurs, this value is larger than `array_len`.

## Retrieving LONG data

This section describes how to retrieve LONG values from the database. For background information, see [“Sending and retrieving long values” on page 582](#).

The procedures are different depending on whether you are using static or dynamic SQL.

### To receive a LONG VARCHAR, LONG NVARCHAR, or LONG BINARY value (static SQL)

1. Declare a host variable of type `DECL_LONGVARCHAR`, `DECL_LONGNVARCHAR`, or `DECL_LONGBINARY`, as appropriate. The `array_len` member is filled in automatically.
2. Retrieve the data using `FETCH`, `GET DATA`, or `EXECUTE INTO`. SQL Anywhere sets the following information:
  - **indicator variable** Negative if the value is NULL, 0 if there is no truncation, otherwise the positive untruncated length in bytes up to a maximum of 32767.  
For more information, see [“Indicator variables” on page 551](#).
  - **stored\_len** The number of bytes stored in the array. Always less than or equal to `array_len` and `untrunc_len`.
  - **untrunc\_len** The number of bytes that would be stored in the array if the value was not truncated. Always greater than or equal to `stored_len`. If truncation occurs, this value is larger than `array_len`.

### To receive a value into a LONGVARCHAR, LONGNVARCHAR, or LONGBINARY structure (dynamic SQL)

1. Set the `sqltype` field to `DT_LONGVARCHAR`, `DT_LONGNVARCHAR`, or `DT_LONGBINARY` as appropriate.
2. Set the `sqldata` field to point to the `LONGVARCHAR`, `LONGNVARCHAR`, or `LONGBINARY` host variable structure.  
You can use the `LONGVARCHARSIZE(n)`, `LONGNVARCHARSIZE(n)`, or `LONGBINARYSIZE(n)` macro to determine the total number of bytes to allocate to hold *n* bytes of data in the array field.
3. Set the `array_len` field of the host variable structure to the number of bytes allocated for the array field.
4. Retrieve the data using `FETCH`, `GET DATA`, or `EXECUTE INTO`. SQL Anywhere sets the following information:
  - **\* sqlind** This `sqlda` field is negative if the value is NULL, 0 if there is no truncation, and is the positive untruncated length in bytes up to a maximum of 32767.

- **stored\_len** The number of bytes stored in the array. Always less than or equal to array\_len and untrunc\_len.
- **untrunc\_len** The number of bytes that would be stored in the array if the value was not truncated. Always greater than or equal to stored\_len. If truncation occurs, this value is larger than array\_len.

The following code fragment illustrates the mechanics of retrieving LONG VARCHAR data using dynamic embedded SQL. It is not intended to be a practical application:

```
#define DATA_LEN 128000
void get_test_var()
{
    LONGVARCHAR *longptr;
    SQLDA      *sqlda;
    SQLVAR     *sqlvar;

    sqlda = alloc_sqlda( 1 );
    longptr = (LONGVARCHAR *)malloc(
        LONGVARCHARSIZE( DATA_LEN ) );
    if( sqlda == NULL || longptr == NULL )
    {
        fatal_error( "Allocation failed" );
    }

    // init longptr for receiving data
    longptr->array_len = DATA_LEN;

    // init sqlda for receiving data
    // (sqlen is unused with DT_LONG types)
    sqlda->sqld = 1; // using 1 sqlvar
    sqlvar = &sqlda->sqlvar[0];
    sqlvar->sqltype = DT_LONGVARCHAR;
    sqlvar->sqldata = longptr;
    printf( "fetching test_var\n" );
    EXEC SQL PREPARE select_stmt FROM 'SELECT test_var';
    EXEC SQL EXECUTE select_stmt INTO DESCRIPTOR sqlda;
    EXEC SQL DROP STATEMENT select_stmt;
    printf( "stored_len: %d, untrunc_len: %d, "
        "1st char: %c, last char: %c\n",
        longptr->stored_len,
        longptr->untrunc_len,
        longptr->array[0],
        longptr->array[DATA_LEN-1] );
    free_sqlda( sqlda );
    free( longptr );
}
```

## Sending LONG data

This section describes how to send LONG values to the database from embedded SQL applications. For background information, see [“Sending and retrieving long values” on page 582](#).

The procedures are different depending on whether you are using static or dynamic SQL.

**To send a LONG value (static SQL)**

1. Declare a host variable of type DECL\_LONGVARCHAR, DECL\_LONGNVARCHAR, or DECL\_LONGBINARY, as appropriate.
2. If you are sending NULL, set the indicator variable to a negative value.  
For more information, see [“Indicator variables” on page 551](#).
3. Set the stored\_len field of the host variable structure to the number of bytes of data in the array field.
4. Send the data by opening the cursor or executing the statement.

The following code fragment illustrates the mechanics of sending a LONG VARCHAR using static embedded SQL. It is not intended to be a practical application.

```
#define DATA_LEN 12800
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
// SQLPP initializes longdata.array_len
DECL_LONGVARCHAR(128000) longdata;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

void set_test_var()
{
    // init longdata for sending data
    memset( longdata.array, 'a', DATA_LEN );
    longdata.stored_len = DATA_LEN;

    printf( "Setting test_var to %d a's\n", DATA_LEN );
    EXEC SQL SET test_var = :longdata;
}
```

**To send a LONG value (dynamic SQL)**

1. Set the sqltype field to DT\_LONGVARCHAR, DT\_LONGNVARCHAR, or DT\_LONGBINARY, as appropriate.
2. If you are sending NULL, set \* **sqlind** to a negative value.
3. If you are not sending NULL, set the sqldata field to point to the LONGVARCHAR, LONGNVARCHAR, or LONGBINARY host variable structure.  
You can use the LONGVARCHARSIZE(*n*), LONGNVARCHARSIZE(*n*), or LONGBINARYSIZE(*n*) macros to determine the total number of bytes to allocate to hold *n* bytes of data in the array field.
4. Set the array\_len field of the host variable structure to the number of bytes allocated for the array field.
5. Set the stored\_len field of the host variable structure to the number of bytes of data in the array field.  
This must not be more than array\_len.
6. Send the data by opening the cursor or executing the statement.

## Using simple stored procedures

You can create and call stored procedures in embedded SQL.

You can embed a CREATE PROCEDURE just like any other data definition statement, such as CREATE TABLE. You can also embed a CALL statement to execute a stored procedure. The following code fragment illustrates both creating and executing a stored procedure in embedded SQL:

```
EXEC SQL CREATE PROCEDURE pettycash(  
  IN Amount DECIMAL(10,2) )  
BEGIN  
  UPDATE account  
  SET balance = balance - Amount  
  WHERE name = 'bank';  
  
  UPDATE account  
  SET balance = balance + Amount  
  WHERE name = 'pettycash expense';  
END;  
EXEC SQL CALL pettycash( 10.72 );
```

If you want to pass host variable values to a stored procedure or to retrieve the output variables, you prepare and execute a CALL statement. The following code fragment illustrates the use of host variables. Both the USING and INTO clauses are used on the EXECUTE statement.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;  
double hv_expense;  
double hv_balance;  
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;  
  
// Code here  
EXEC SQL CREATE PROCEDURE pettycash(  
  IN expense DECIMAL(10,2),  
  OUT endbalance DECIMAL(10,2) )  
BEGIN  
  UPDATE account  
  SET balance = balance - expense  
  WHERE name = 'bank';  
  UPDATE account  
  SET balance = balance + expense  
  WHERE name = 'pettycash expense';  
  
  SET endbalance = ( SELECT balance FROM account  
                    WHERE name = 'bank' );  
END;  
  
EXEC SQL PREPARE S1 FROM 'CALL pettycash( ?, ? )';  
EXEC SQL EXECUTE S1 USING :hv_expense INTO :hv_balance;
```

For more information, see “EXECUTE statement [ESQL]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)], and “PREPARE statement [ESQL]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].

## Stored procedures with result sets

Database procedures can also contain SELECT statements. The procedure is declared using a RESULT clause to specify the number, name, and types of the columns in the result set. Result set columns are different

from output parameters. For procedures with result sets, the CALL statement can be used in place of a SELECT statement in the cursor declaration:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
  char hv_name[100];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL CREATE PROCEDURE female_employees()
  RESULT( name char(50) )
BEGIN
  SELECT GivenName || Surname FROM Employees
  WHERE Sex = 'f';
END;

EXEC SQL PREPARE S1 FROM 'CALL female_employees()';

EXEC SQL DECLARE C1 CURSOR FOR S1;
EXEC SQL OPEN C1;
for(;;)
{
  EXEC SQL FETCH C1 INTO :hv_name;
  if( SQLCODE != SQLE_NOERROR ) break;
  printf( "%s\n", hv_name );
}
EXEC SQL CLOSE C1;
```

In this example, the procedure has been invoked with an OPEN statement rather than an EXECUTE statement. The OPEN statement causes the procedure to execute until it reaches a SELECT statement. At this point, C1 is a cursor for the SELECT statement within the database procedure. You can use all forms of the FETCH statement (backward and forward scrolling) until you are finished with it. The CLOSE statement stops execution of the procedure.

If there had been another statement following the SELECT in the procedure, it would not have been executed. To execute statements following a SELECT, use the RESUME cursor-name statement. The RESUME statement either returns the warning SQLE\_PROCEDURE\_COMPLETE or it returns SQLE\_NOERROR indicating that there is another cursor. The example illustrates a two-select procedure:

```
EXEC SQL CREATE PROCEDURE people()
  RESULT( name char(50) )
BEGIN
  SELECT GivenName || Surname
  FROM Employees;

  SELECT GivenName || Surname
  FROM Customers;
END;

EXEC SQL PREPARE S1 FROM 'CALL people()';
EXEC SQL DECLARE C1 CURSOR FOR S1;
EXEC SQL OPEN C1;
while( SQLCODE == SQLE_NOERROR )
{
  for(;;)
  {
    EXEC SQL FETCH C1 INTO :hv_name;
    if( SQLCODE != SQLE_NOERROR ) break;
    printf( "%s\n", hv_name );
  }
  EXEC SQL RESUME C1;
}
EXEC SQL CLOSE C1;
```

### Dynamic cursors for CALL statements

These examples have used static cursors. Full dynamic cursors can also be used for the CALL statement.

For a description of dynamic cursors, see [“Dynamic SELECT statement”](#) on page 563.

The DESCRIBE statement works fully for procedure calls. A DESCRIBE OUTPUT produces a SQLDA that has a description for each of the result set columns.

If the procedure does not have a result set, the SQLDA has a description for each INOUT or OUT parameter for the procedure. A DESCRIBE INPUT statement produces a SQLDA having a description for each IN or INOUT parameter for the procedure.

### DESCRIBE ALL

DESCRIBE ALL describes IN, INOUT, OUT, and RESULT set parameters. DESCRIBE ALL uses the indicator variables in the SQLDA to provide additional information.

The DT\_PROCEDURE\_IN and DT\_PROCEDURE\_OUT bits are set in the indicator variable when a CALL statement is described. DT\_PROCEDURE\_IN indicates an IN or INOUT parameter and DT\_PROCEDURE\_OUT indicates an INOUT or OUT parameter. Procedure RESULT columns have both bits clear.

After a describe OUTPUT, these bits can be used to distinguish between statements that have result sets (need to use OPEN, FETCH, RESUME, CLOSE) and statements that do not (need to use EXECUTE).

For a complete description, see [“DESCRIBE statement \[ESQL\]”](#) [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

### Multiple result sets

If you have a procedure that returns multiple result sets, you must re-describe after each RESUME statement if the result sets change shapes.

You need to describe the cursor, not the statement, to re-describe the current position of the cursor.

# Embedded SQL programming techniques

This section contains a set of tips for developers of embedded SQL programs.

## Implementing request management

The default behavior of the interface DLL is for applications to wait for completion of each database request before carrying out other functions. This behavior can be changed using request management functions. For example, when using Interactive SQL, the operating system is still active while Interactive SQL is waiting for a response from the database and Interactive SQL carries out some tasks in that time.

You can achieve application activity while a database request is in progress by providing a callback function. In this callback function, you must not do another database request except `db_cancel_request`. You can use the `db_is_working` function in your message handlers to determine if you have a database request in progress.

The `db_register_a_callback` function is used to register your application callback functions.

### See also

- [“db\\_register\\_a\\_callback function” on page 604](#)
- [“db\\_cancel\\_request function” on page 597](#)
- [“db\\_is\\_working function” on page 601](#)

## Backup functions

The `db_backup` function provides support for online backup in embedded SQL applications. The backup utility makes use of this function. You should only need to write a program to use this function if your backup requirements are not satisfied by the SQL Anywhere backup utility.

### **BACKUP statement is recommended**

Although this function provides one way to add backup features to an application, the recommended way to do this task is to use the `BACKUP` statement. See [“BACKUP statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

You can also access the backup utility directly using the Database Tools `DBBackup` function. See [“DBBackup function” on page 957](#).

### See also

- [“db\\_backup function” on page 593](#)

## SQL preprocessor

The SQL preprocessor processes a C or C++ program containing embedded SQL before the compiler is run.

### Syntax

`sqlpp [ options ] input-file [ output-file ]`

Option	Description
<b>-d</b>	Generate code that reduces data space size. Data structures are reused and initialized at execution time before use. This increases code size.
<b>-e level</b>	<p>Flag as an error any static embedded SQL that is not part of a specified standard. The <i>level</i> value indicates the standard to use. For example, <code>sqlpp -e c03 . . .</code> flags any syntax that is not part of the core SQL/2003 standard. The supported <i>level</i> values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>c03</b> Flag syntax that is not core SQL/2003 syntax</li> <li>• <b>p03</b> Flag syntax that is not full SQL/2003 syntax</li> <li>• <b>c99</b> Flag syntax that is not core SQL/1999 syntax</li> <li>• <b>p99</b> Flag syntax that is not full SQL/1999 syntax</li> <li>• <b>e92</b> Flag syntax that is not entry-level SQL/1992 syntax</li> <li>• <b>i92</b> Flag syntax that is not intermediate-level SQL/1992 syntax</li> <li>• <b>f92</b> Flag syntax that is not full-SQL/1992 syntax</li> <li>• <b>t</b> Flag non-standard host variable types</li> <li>• <b>u</b> Flag syntax that is not supported by UltraLite</li> </ul> <p>For compatibility with previous SQL Anywhere versions, you can also specify <i>e</i>, <i>i</i>, and <i>f</i>, which correspond to <i>e92</i>, <i>i92</i>, and <i>f92</i>, respectively.</p>
<b>-h width</b>	Limit the maximum length of lines output by <code>sqlpp</code> to <i>width</i> . The continuation character is a backslash (\) and the minimum value of <i>width</i> is 10.
<b>-k</b>	Notify the preprocessor that the program to be compiled includes a user declaration of <code>SQLCODE</code> . The definition must be of type <code>LONG</code> , but does not need to be in a declaration section.
<b>-n</b>	Generate line number information in the C file. This consists of <i>#line</i> directives in the appropriate places in the generated C code. If the compiler that you are using supports the <i>#line</i> directive, this option makes the compiler report errors on line numbers in the SQC file (the one with the embedded SQL) as opposed to reporting errors on line numbers in the C file generated by the SQL preprocessor. Also, the <i>#line</i> directives are used indirectly by the source level debugger so that you can debug while viewing the SQC source file.



Option	Description
<b>-o</b> <i>operating-system</i>	Specify the target operating system. The supported operating systems are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>WINDOWS</b> Microsoft Windows</li> <li>• <b>UNIX</b> Use this option if you are creating a 32-bit Unix application.</li> <li>• <b>UNIX64</b> Use this option if you are creating a 64-bit Unix application.</li> </ul>
<b>-q</b>	Quiet mode—do not print messages.
<b>-r-</b>	Generate non-reentrant code. For more information about reentrant code, see <a href="#">“SQLCA management for multi-threaded or reentrant code” on page 557</a> .
<b>-s</b> <i>len</i>	Set the maximum size string that the preprocessor puts into the C file. Strings longer than this value are initialized using a list of characters ( <i>a</i> , <i>b</i> , <i>c</i> , and so on). Most C compilers have a limit on the size of string literal they can handle. This option is used to set that upper limit. The default value is 500.
<b>-u</b>	Generate code for UltraLite. For more information, see <a href="#">“Embedded SQL API reference” [UltraLite - C and C++ Programming]</a> .
<b>-w</b> <i>level</i>	Flag as a warning any static embedded SQL that is not part of a specified standard. The <i>level</i> value indicates the standard to use. For example, <code>sqlpp -w c03 . . .</code> flags any SQL syntax that is not part of the core SQL/2003 syntax. The supported <i>level</i> values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>c03</b> Flag syntax that is not core SQL/2003 syntax</li> <li>• <b>p03</b> Flag syntax that is not full SQL/2003 syntax</li> <li>• <b>c99</b> Flag syntax that is not core SQL/1999 syntax</li> <li>• <b>p99</b> Flag syntax that is not full SQL/1999 syntax</li> <li>• <b>e92</b> Flag syntax that is not entry-level SQL/1992 syntax</li> <li>• <b>i92</b> Flag syntax that is not intermediate-level SQL/1992 syntax</li> <li>• <b>f92</b> Flag syntax that is not full-SQL/1992 syntax</li> <li>• <b>t</b> Flag non-standard host variable types</li> <li>• <b>u</b> Flag syntax that is not supported by UltraLite</li> </ul> For compatibility with previous SQL Anywhere versions, you can also specify <i>e</i> , <i>i</i> , and <i>f</i> , which correspond to <i>e92</i> , <i>i92</i> , and <i>f92</i> , respectively.
<b>-x</b>	Change multibyte strings to escape sequences so that they can pass through compilers.

Option	Description
<code>-z cs</code>	<p>Specify the collation sequence. For a list of recommended collation sequences, enter <code>dbinit -l</code> at a command prompt.</p> <p>The collation sequence is used to help the preprocessor understand the characters used in the source code of the program, for example, in identifying alphabetic characters suitable for use in identifiers. If <code>-z</code> is not specified, the preprocessor attempts to determine a reasonable collation to use based on the operating system and the <code>SALANG</code> and <code>SACHARSET</code> environment variables. See “<a href="#">SACHARSET environment variable</a>” [<i>SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration</i>], and “<a href="#">SALANG environment variable</a>” [<i>SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration</i>].</p>
<code>input-file</code>	A C or C++ program containing embedded SQL to be processed.
<code>output-file</code>	The C language source file created by the SQL preprocessor.

### Description

The SQL preprocessor translates the SQL statements in the *input-file* into C language source that is put into the *output-file*. The normal extension for source programs with embedded SQL is *.sql*. The default output file name is the *input-file* with an extension of *.c*. If *input-file* has a *.c* extension, the default output file name extension is *.cc*.

### See also

- “[Introduction to embedded SQL](#)” on page 532
- “[sql\\_flagger\\_error\\_level option \[compatibility\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*]
- “[sql\\_flagger\\_warning\\_level option \[compatibility\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*]
- “[SQLFLAGGER function \[Miscellaneous\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*]
- “[sa\\_ansi\\_standard\\_packages system procedure](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*]
- “[SQL preprocessor error messages](#)” [*Error Messages*]

## Library function reference

The SQL preprocessor generates calls to functions in the interface library or DLL. In addition to the calls generated by the SQL preprocessor, a set of library functions is provided to make database operations easier to perform. Prototypes for these functions are included by the EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA statement.

This section contains a reference description of these various functions.

### DLL entry points

The DLL entry points are the same except that the prototypes have a modifier appropriate for DLLs.

You can declare the entry points in a portable manner using `_esqlentry_`, which is defined in `sqlca.h`. It resolves to the value `__stdcall`.

## alloc\_sqllda function

### Prototype

```
struct sqllda * alloc_sqllda( unsigned numvar );
```

### Description

Allocates a SQLDA with descriptors for *numvar* variables. The `sqln` field of the SQLDA is initialized to *numvar*. Space is allocated for the indicator variables, the indicator pointers are set to point to this space, and the indicator value is initialized to zero. A null pointer is returned if memory cannot be allocated. It is recommended that you use this function instead of the `alloc_sqllda_noind` function.

## alloc\_sqllda\_noind function

### Prototype

```
struct sqllda * alloc_sqllda_noind( unsigned numvar );
```

### Description

Allocates a SQLDA with descriptors for *numvar* variables. The `sqln` field of the SQLDA is initialized to *numvar*. Space is not allocated for indicator variables; the indicator pointers are set to the null pointer. A null pointer is returned if memory cannot be allocated.

## db\_backup function

### Prototype

```
void db_backup(  
SQLCA * sqlca,  
int op,  
int file_num,
```

```
unsigned long page_num,  
struct sqlda * sqlda);
```

## Authorization

Must be connected as a user with DBA authority, REMOTE DBA authority (SQL Remote), or BACKUP authority.

## Description

### **BACKUP statement is recommended**

Although this function provides one way to add backup features to an application, the recommended way to do this task is to use the BACKUP statement. See “[BACKUP statement](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].

The action performed depends on the value of the *op* parameter:

- **DB\_BACKUP\_START** Must be called before a backup can start. Only one backup can be running per database at one time against any given database server. Database checkpoints are disabled until the backup is complete (db\_backup is called with an *op* value of DB\_BACKUP\_END). If the backup cannot start, the SQLCODE is SQLE\_BACKUP\_NOT\_STARTED. Otherwise, the SQLCOUNT field of the *sqlca* is set to the database page size. Backups are processed one page at a time.

The *file\_num*, *page\_num*, and *sqlda* parameters are ignored.

- **DB\_BACKUP\_OPEN\_FILE** Open the database file specified by *file\_num*, which allows pages of the specified file to be backed up using DB\_BACKUP\_READ\_PAGE. Valid file numbers are 0 through DB\_BACKUP\_MAX\_FILE for the root database files, and 0 through DB\_BACKUP\_TRANS\_LOG\_FILE for the transaction log file. If the specified file does not exist, the SQLCODE is SQLE\_NOTFOUND. Otherwise, SQLCOUNT contains the number of pages in the file, SQLIOESTIMATE contains a 32-bit value (POSIX time\_t) that identifies the time that the database file was created, and the operating system file name is in the *sqlerrmc* field of the SQLCA.

The *page\_num* and *sqlda* parameters are ignored.

- **DB\_BACKUP\_READ\_PAGE** Read one page of the database file specified by *file\_num*. The *page\_num* should be a value from 0 to one less than the number of pages returned in SQLCOUNT by a successful call to db\_backup with the DB\_BACKUP\_OPEN\_FILE operation. Otherwise, SQLCODE is set to SQLE\_NOTFOUND. The *sqlda* descriptor should be set up with one variable of type DT\_BINARY or DT\_LONG\_BINARY pointing to a buffer. The buffer should be large enough to hold binary data of the size returned in the SQLCOUNT field on the call to db\_backup with the DB\_BACKUP\_START operation.

DT\_BINARY data contains a two-byte length followed by the actual binary data, so the buffer must be two bytes longer than the page size.

### **Application must save buffer**

This call makes a copy of the specified database page into the buffer, but it is up to the application to save the buffer on some backup media.

- **DB\_BACKUP\_READ\_RENAME\_LOG** This action is the same as `DB_BACKUP_READ_PAGE`, except that after the last page of the transaction log has been returned, the database server renames the transaction log and starts a new one.

If the database server is unable to rename the log at the current time (for example in version 7.0.x or earlier databases there may be incomplete transactions), the `SQLC_BACKUP_CANNOT_RENAME_LOG_YET` error is set. In this case, do not use the page returned, but instead reissue the request until you receive `SQLC_NOERROR` and then write the page. Continue reading the pages until you receive the `SQLC_NOTFOUND` condition.

The `SQLC_BACKUP_CANNOT_RENAME_LOG_YET` error may be returned multiple times and on multiple pages. In your retry loop, you should add a delay so as not to slow the server down with too many requests.

When you receive the `SQLC_NOTFOUND` condition, the transaction log has been backed up successfully and the file has been renamed. The name for the old transaction file is returned in the `sqlerrmc` field of the `SQLCA`.

You should check the `sqlca->sqlvar[0].sqlind` value after a `db_backup` call. If this value is greater than zero, the last log page has been written and the log file has been renamed. The new name is still in `sqlca.sqlerrmc`, but the `SQLCODE` value is `SQLC_NOERROR`.

You should not call `db_backup` again after this, except to close files and finish the backup. If you do, you get a second copy of your backed up log file and you receive `SQLC_NOTFOUND`.

- **DB\_BACKUP\_CLOSE\_FILE** Must be called when processing of one file is complete to close the database file specified by `file_num`.

The `page_num` and `sqlda` parameters are ignored.

- **DB\_BACKUP\_END** Must be called at the end of the backup. No other backup can start until this backup has ended. Checkpoints are enabled again.

The `file_num`, `page_num` and `sqlda` parameters are ignored.

- **DB\_BACKUP\_PARALLEL\_START** Starts a parallel backup. Like `DB_BACKUP_START`, only one backup can be running against a database at one time on any given database server. Database checkpoints are disabled until the backup is complete (until `db_backup` is called with an `op` value of `DB_BACKUP_END`). If the backup cannot start, you receive `SQLC_BACKUP_NOT_STARTED`. Otherwise, the `SQLCOUNT` field of the `sqlca` is set to the database page size.

The `file_num` parameter instructs the database server to rename the transaction log and start a new one after the last page of the transaction log has been returned. If the value is non-zero then the transaction log is renamed or restarted. Otherwise, it is not renamed and restarted. This parameter eliminates the need for the `DB_BACKUP_READ_RENAME_LOG` operation, which is not allowed during a parallel backup operation.

The `page_num` parameter informs the database server of the maximum size of the client's buffer, in database pages. On the server side, the parallel backup readers try to read sequential blocks of pages—this value lets the server know how large to allocate these blocks: passing a value of  $N$  lets the server know that the client is willing to accept at most  $N$  database pages at a time from the server. The server may return blocks of pages of less than size  $N$  if it is unable to allocate enough memory for blocks of  $N$  pages. If the client does not know the size of database pages until after the call to `DB_BACKUP_PARALLEL_START`, this value can be provided to the server with the

DB\_BACKUP\_INFO operation. This value must be provided before the first call to retrieve backup pages (DB\_BACKUP\_PARALLEL\_READ).

**Note**

If you are using db\_backup to start a parallel backup, db\_backup does not create writer threads. The caller of db\_backup must receive the data and act as the writer.

- **DB\_BACKUP\_INFO** This parameter provides additional information to the database server about the parallel backup. The *file\_num* parameter indicates the type of information being provided, and the *page\_num* parameter provides the value. You can specify the following additional information with DB\_BACKUP\_INFO:
  - **DB\_BACKUP\_INFO\_PAGES\_IN\_BLOCK** The *page\_num* argument contains the maximum number of pages that should be sent back in one block.
  - **DB\_BACKUP\_INFO\_CHKPT\_LOG** This is the client-side equivalent to the WITH CHECKPOINT LOG option of the BACKUP statement. A *page\_num* value of DB\_BACKUP\_CHKPT\_COPY indicates COPY, while the value DB\_BACKUP\_CHKPT\_NOCOPY indicates NO COPY. If this value is not provided it defaults to COPY.
- **DB\_BACKUP\_PARALLEL\_READ** This operation reads a block of pages from the database server. Before invoking this operation, use the DB\_BACKUP\_OPEN\_FILE operation to open all the files that you want to back up. DB\_BACKUP\_PARALLEL\_READ ignores the *file\_num* and *page\_num* arguments.

The sqlda descriptor should be set up with one variable of type DT\_LONGBINARY pointing to a buffer. The buffer should be large enough to hold binary data of the size *N* pages (specified in the DB\_BACKUP\_START\_PARALLEL operation, or in a DB\_BACKUP\_INFO operation). For more information about this data type, see DT\_LONGBINARY in [“Embedded SQL data types” on page 542](#).

The server returns a sequential block of database pages for a particular database file. The page number of the first page in the block is returned in the SQLCOUNT field. The file number that the pages belong to is returned in the SQLIOESTIMATE field, and this value matches one of the file numbers used in the DB\_BACKUP\_OPEN\_FILE calls. The size of the data returned is available in the *stored\_len* field of the DT\_LONGBINARY variable, and is always a multiple of the database page size. While the data returned by this call contains a block of sequential pages for a given file, it is not safe to assume that separate blocks of data are returned in sequential order, or that all of one database file's pages are returned before another database file's pages. The caller should be prepared to receive portions of another individual file out of sequential order, or of any opened database file on any given call.

An application should make repeated calls to this operation until the size of the read data is 0, or the value of sqlda->sqlvar[0].sqlind is greater than 0. If the backup is started with transaction log renaming/restarting, SQLERROR could be set to SQLE\_BACKUP\_CANNOT\_RENAME\_LOG\_YET. In this case, do not use the pages returned, but instead reissue the request until you receive SQLE\_NOERROR, and then write the data. The SQLE\_BACKUP\_CANNOT\_RENAME\_LOG\_YET error may be returned multiple times and on multiple pages. In your retry loop, you should add a delay so the database server is not slowed down by too many requests. Continue reading the pages until either of the first two conditions are met.

The `dbbackup` utility uses the following algorithm. Note that this is *not* C code, and does not include error checking.

```

sqlda->sqlid = 1;
sqlda->sqlvar[0].sqltype = DT_LONGBINARY

/* Allocate LONGBINARY value for page buffer. It MUST have */
/* enough room to hold the requested number (128) of database pages */
sqlda->sqlvar[0].sqldata = allocated buffer

/* Open the server files needing backup */
for file_num = 0 to DB_BACKUP_MAX_FILE
  db_backup( ... DB_BACKUP_OPEN_FILE, file_num ... )
  if SQLCODE == SQLE_NO_ERROR
    /* The file exists */
    num_pages = SQLCOUNT
    file_time = SQLE_IO_ESTIMATE
    open backup file with name from sqlca.sqlerrmc
  end for

/* read pages from the server, write them locally */
while TRUE
  /* file_no and page_no are ignored */
  db_backup( &sqlca, DB_BACKUP_PARALLEL_READ, 0, 0, &sqlda );

  if SQLCODE != SQLE_NO_ERROR
    break;

  if buffer->stored_len == 0 || sqlda->sqlvar[0].sqlind > 0
    break;

  /* SQLCOUNT contains the starting page number of the block */
  /* SQLIOESTIMATE contains the file number the pages belong to */
  write block of pages to appropriate backup file
end while

/* close the server backup files */
for file_num = 0 to DB_BACKUP_MAX_FILE
  /* close backup file */
  db_backup( ... DB_BACKUP_CLOSE_FILE, file_num ... )
end for

/* shut down the backup */
db_backup( ... DB_BACKUP_END ... )

/* cleanup */
free page buffer

```

## db\_cancel\_request function

### Prototype

```
int db_cancel_request( SQLCA * sqlca );
```

### Description

Cancels the currently active database server request. This function checks to make sure a database server request is active before sending the cancel request. If the function returns 1, then the cancel request was sent; if it returns 0, then no request was sent.

A non-zero return value does not mean that the request was canceled. There are a few critical timing cases where the cancel request and the response from the database or server cross. In these cases, the cancel simply has no effect, even though the function still returns TRUE.

The `db_cancel_request` function can be called asynchronously. This function and `db_is_working` are the only functions in the database interface library that can be called asynchronously using a SQLCA that might be in use by another request.

If you cancel a request that is carrying out a cursor operation, the position of the cursor is indeterminate. You must locate the cursor by its absolute position or close it, following the cancel.

## db\_change\_char\_charset function

### Prototype

```
unsigned int db_change_char_charset(  
SQLCA * sqlca,  
char * charset );
```

### Description

Changes the application's CHAR character set for this connection. Data sent and fetched using FIXCHAR, VARCHAR, LONGVARCHAR, and STRING types are in the CHAR character set.

Returns 1 if the change is successful, 0 otherwise.

For a list of recommended character sets, see [“Recommended character sets and collations” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## db\_change\_nchar\_charset function

### Prototype

```
unsigned int db_change_nchar_charset(  
SQLCA * sqlca,  
char * charset );
```

### Description

Changes the application's NCHAR character set for this connection. Data sent and fetched using NFIXCHAR, NVARCHAR, LONGNVARCHAR, and NSTRING host variable types are in the NCHAR character set.

If the `db_change_nchar_charset` function is not called, all data is sent and fetched using the CHAR character set. Typically, an application that wants to send and fetch Unicode data should set the NCHAR character set to UTF-8.

If this function is called, the charset parameter is usually "UTF-8". The NCHAR character set cannot be set to UTF-16.

Returns 1 if the change is successful, 0 otherwise.



In embedded SQL, NCHAR, NVARCHAR and LONG NVARCHAR are described as DT\_FIXCHAR, DT\_VARCHAR, and DT\_LONGVARCHAR, respectively, by default. If the `db_change_nchar_charset` function has been called, these types are described as DT\_NFIXCHAR, DT\_NVARCHAR, and DT\_LONGNVARCHAR, respectively.

For a list of recommended character sets, see [“Recommended character sets and collations” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## db\_delete\_file function

### Prototype

```
void db_delete_file(  
    SQLCA * sqlca,  
    char * filename );
```

### Authorization

Must be connected to a user ID with DBA authority or REMOTE DBA authority (SQL Remote).

### Description

The `db_delete_file` function requests the database server to delete *filename*. This can be used after backing up and renaming the transaction log to delete the old transaction log. See `DB_BACKUP_READ_RENAME_LOG` in [“db\\_backup function” on page 593](#).

You must be connected to a user ID with DBA authority.

## db\_find\_engine function

### Prototype

```
unsigned short db_find_engine(  
    SQLCA * sqlca,  
    char * name );
```

### Description

Returns an unsigned short value, which indicates status information about the local database server whose name is *name*. If no server can be found over shared memory with the specified name, the return value is 0. A non-zero value indicates that the local server is currently running.

If a null pointer is specified for *name*, information is returned about the default database server.

Each bit in the return value conveys some information. Constants that represent the bits for the various pieces of information are defined in the *sqldef.h* header file. Their meaning is described below.

- **DB\_ENGINE** This flag is always set.
- **DB\_CLIENT** This flag is always set.

- **DB\_CAN\_MULTI\_DB\_NAME** This flag is obsolete.
- **DB\_DATABASE\_SPECIFIED** This flag is always set.
- **DB\_ACTIVE\_CONNECTION** This flag is always set.
- **DB\_CONNECTION\_DIRTY** This flag is obsolete.
- **DB\_CAN\_MULTI\_CONNECT** This flag is obsolete.
- **DB\_NO\_DATABASES** This flag is set if the server has no databases started.

## db\_fini function

### Prototype

```
int db_fini( SQLCA * sqlca );
```

### Description

This function frees resources used by the database interface or DLL. You must not make any other library calls or execute any embedded SQL statements after `db_fini` is called. If an error occurs during processing, the error code is set in `SQLCA` and the function returns 0. If there are no errors, a non-zero value is returned.

You need to call `db_fini` once for each `SQLCA` being used.

For information about using `db_init` in UltraLite applications, see [“db\\_fini function” \[UltraLite - C and C+ + Programming\]](#).

## db\_get\_property function

### Prototype

```
unsigned int db_get_property(  
SQLCA * sqlca,  
a_db_property property,  
char * value_buffer,  
int value_buffer_size );
```

### Description

This function is used to obtain information about the database interface or the server to which you are connected.

The arguments are as follows:

- **a\_db\_property** The property requested, either `DB_PROP_CLIENT_CHARSET`, `DB_PROP_SERVER_ADDRESS`, or `DB_PROP_DBLIB_VERSION`.
- **value\_buffer** This argument is filled with the property value as a null-terminated string.

- **value\_buffer\_size** The maximum length of the string `value_buffer`, including the terminating null character.

The following properties are supported:

- **DB\_PROP\_CLIENT\_CHARSET** This property value gets the client character set (for example, "windows-1252").
- **DB\_PROP\_SERVER\_ADDRESS** This property value gets the current connection's server network address as a printable string. The shared memory protocol always returns the empty string for the address. The TCP/IP protocol returns non-empty string addresses.
- **DB\_PROP\_DBLIB\_VERSION** This property value gets the database interface library's version (for example, "11.0.0.1297").

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

## db\_init function

### Prototype

```
int db_init( SQLCA * sqlca );
```

### Description

This function initializes the database interface library. This function must be called before any other library call is made and before any embedded SQL statement is executed. The resources the interface library required for your program are allocated and initialized on this call.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

Use `db_fini` to free the resources at the end of your program. If there are any errors during processing, they are returned in the `SQLCA` and 0 is returned. If there are no errors, a non-zero value is returned and you can begin using embedded SQL statements and functions.

In most cases, this function should be called only once (passing the address of the global `sqlca` variable defined in the `sqlca.h` header file). If you are writing a DLL or an application that has multiple threads using embedded SQL, call `db_init` once for each `SQLCA` that is being used.

For more information, see [“SQLCA management for multi-threaded or reentrant code” on page 557](#).

For information about using `db_init` in UltraLite applications, see [“db\\_init function” \[UltraLite - C and C++ Programming\]](#).

## db\_is\_working function

### Prototype

```
unsigned short db_is_working( SQLCA * sqlca );
```

## Description

Returns 1 if your application has a database request in progress that uses the given `sqlca` and 0 if there is no request in progress that uses the given `sqlca`.

This function can be called asynchronously. This function and `db_cancel_request` are the only functions in the database interface library that can be called asynchronously using a SQLCA that might be in use by another request.

## db\_locate\_servers function

### Prototype

```
unsigned int db_locate_servers(  
    SQLCA * sqlca,  
    SQL_CALLBACK_PARM callback_address,  
    void * callback_user_data );
```

### Description

Provides programmatic access to the information displayed by the `dblocate` utility, listing all the SQL Anywhere database servers on the local network that are listening on TCP/IP.

The callback function must have the following prototype:

```
int (*)( SQLCA * sqlca,  
    a_server_address * server_addr,  
    void * callback_user_data );
```

The callback function is called for each server found. If the callback function returns 0, `db_locate_servers` stops iterating through servers.

The `sqlca` and `callback_user_data` passed to the callback function are those passed into `db_locate_servers`. The second parameter is a pointer to an `a_server_address` structure. `a_server_address` is defined in `sqlca.h`, with the following definition:

```
typedef struct a_server_address {  
    a_sql_uint32 port_type;  
    a_sql_uint32 port_num;  
    char        *name;  
    char        *address;  
} a_server_address;
```

- **port\_type** Is always `PORT_TYPE_TCP` at this time (defined to be 6 in `sqlca.h`).
- **port\_num** Is the TCP port number on which this server is listening.
- **name** Points to a buffer containing the server name.
- **address** Points to a buffer containing the IP address of the server.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

**See also**

- “Server Enumeration utility (dblocate)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration](#)]

## db\_locate\_servers\_ex function

**Prototype**

```
unsigned int db_locate_servers_ex(
    SQLCA * sqlca,
    SQL_CALLBACK_PARM callback_address,
    void * callback_user_data,
    unsigned int bitmask);
```

**Description**

Provides programmatic access to the information displayed by the dblocate utility, listing all the SQL Anywhere database servers on the local network that are listening on TCP/IP, and provides a mask parameter used to select addresses passed to the callback function.

The callback function must have the following prototype:

```
int (*)( SQLCA * sqlca,
    a_server_address * server_addr,
    void * callback_user_data );
```

The callback function is called for each server found. If the callback function returns 0, db\_locate\_servers\_ex stops iterating through servers.

The sqlca and callback\_user\_data passed to the callback function are those passed into db\_locate\_servers. The second parameter is a pointer to an a\_server\_address structure. a\_server\_address is defined in sqlca.h, with the following definition:

```
typedef struct a_server_address {
    a_sql_uint32    port_type;
    a_sql_uint32    port_num;
    char           *name;
    char           *address;
    char           *dbname;
} a_server_address;
```

- **port\_type** Is always PORT\_TYPE\_TCP at this time (defined to be 6 in sqlca.h).
- **port\_num** Is the TCP port number on which this server is listening.
- **name** Points to a buffer containing the server name.
- **address** Points to a buffer containing the IP address of the server.
- **dbname** Points to a buffer containing the database name.

Three bitmask flags are supported:

- `DB_LOOKUP_FLAG_NUMERIC`
- `DB_LOOKUP_FLAG_ADDRESS_INCLUDES_PORT`
- `DB_LOOKUP_FLAG_DATABASES`

These flags are defined in *sqlca.h* and can be ORed together.

`DB_LOOKUP_FLAG_NUMERIC` ensures that addresses passed to the callback function are IP addresses, instead of host names.

`DB_LOOKUP_FLAG_ADDRESS_INCLUDES_PORT` specifies that the address includes the TCP/IP port number in the `a_server_address` structure passed to the callback function.

`DB_LOOKUP_FLAG_DATABASES` specifies that the callback function is called once for each database found, or once for each database server found if the database server doesn't support sending database information (version 9.0.2 and earlier database servers).

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

For more information, see “[Server Enumeration utility \(dblocate\)](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

## db\_register\_a\_callback function

### Prototype

```
void db_register_a_callback(  
SQLCA * sqlca,  
a_db_callback_index index,  
( SQL_CALLBACK_PARM ) callback );
```

### Description

This function registers callback functions.

If you do not register a `DB_CALLBACK_WAIT` callback, the default action is to do nothing. Your application blocks, waiting for the database response. You must register a callback for the `MESSAGE TO CLIENT` statement. See “[MESSAGE statement](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

To remove a callback, pass a null pointer as the *callback* function.

The following values are allowed for the *index* parameter:

- **DB\_CALLBACK\_DEBUG\_MESSAGE** The supplied function is called once for each debug message and is passed a null-terminated string containing the text of the debug message. A debug message is a message that is logged to the LogFile file. In order for a debug message to be passed to this callback, the LogFile connection parameter must be used. The string normally has a newline character (\n) immediately before the terminating null character. The prototype of the callback function is as follows:

```
void SQL_CALLBACK debug_message_callback(  
SQLCA * sqlca,  
char * message_string );
```

For more information, see “[LogFile connection parameter \[LOG\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

- **DB\_CALLBACK\_START** The prototype is as follows:

```
void SQL_CALLBACK start_callback( SQLCA * sqlca );
```

This function is called just before a database request is sent to the server. DB\_CALLBACK\_START is used only on Windows.

- **DB\_CALLBACK\_FINISH** The prototype is as follows:

```
void SQL_CALLBACK finish_callback( SQLCA * sqlca );
```

This function is called after the response to a database request has been received by the interface DLL. DB\_CALLBACK\_FINISH is used only on Windows operating systems.

- **DB\_CALLBACK\_CONN\_DROPPED** The prototype is as follows:

```
void SQL_CALLBACK conn_dropped_callback (
SQLCA * sqlca,
char * conn_name );
```

This function is called when the database server is about to drop a connection because of a liveness timeout, through a DROP CONNECTION statement, or because the database server is being shut down. The connection name *conn\_name* is passed in to allow you to distinguish between connections. If the connection was not named, it has a value of NULL.

- **DB\_CALLBACK\_WAIT** The prototype is as follows:

```
void SQL_CALLBACK wait_callback( SQLCA * sqlca );
```

This function is called repeatedly by the interface library while the database server or client library is busy processing your database request.

You would register this callback as follows:

```
db_register_a_callback( &sqlca,
DB_CALLBACK_WAIT,
(SQL_CALLBACK_PARM)&db_wait_request );
```

- **DB\_CALLBACK\_MESSAGE** This is used to enable the application to handle messages received from the server during the processing of a request.

The callback prototype is as follows:

```
void SQL_CALLBACK message_callback(
SQLCA * sqlca,
unsigned char msg_type,
an_sql_code code,
unsigned short length,
char * msg
);
```

The *msg\_type* parameter states how important the message is and you may want to handle different message types in different ways. The available message types are MESSAGE\_TYPE\_INFO, MESSAGE\_TYPE\_WARNING, MESSAGE\_TYPE\_ACTION, and MESSAGE\_TYPE\_STATUS.

These constants are defined in *sqldef.h*. The *code* field may provide a SQLCODE associated with the message, otherwise the value is 0. The *length* field tells you how long the message is. The message is *not* null-terminated.

For example, the Interactive SQL callback displays STATUS and INFO message on the Messages tab, while messages of type ACTION and WARNING go to a window. If an application does not register this callback, there is a default callback, which causes all messages to be written to the server logfile (if debugging is on and a logfile is specified). In addition, messages of type MESSAGE\_TYPE\_WARNING and MESSAGE\_TYPE\_ACTION are more prominently displayed, in an operating system-dependent manner.

When a message callback is not registered by the application, messages sent to the client are saved to the log file when the LogFile connection parameter is specified. Also, ACTION or STATUS messages sent to the client appear in a window on Windows operating systems and are logged to stderr on Unix operating systems.

- **DB\_CALLBACK\_VALIDATE\_FILE\_TRANSFER** This is used to register a file transfer validation callback function. Before allowing any transfer to take place, the client library will invoke the validation callback, if it exists. If the client data transfer is being requested during the execution of indirect statements such as from within a stored procedure, the client library will not allow a transfer unless the client application has registered a validation callback. The conditions under which a validation call is made are described more fully below.

The callback prototype is as follows:

```
int SQL_CALLBACK file_transfer_callback(  
SQLCA * sqlca,  
char * file_name,  
int is_write  
);
```

The *file\_name* parameter is the name of the file to be read or written. The *is\_write* parameter is 0 if a read is requested (transfer from the client to the server), and non-zero for a write. The callback function should return 0 if the file transfer is not allowed, non-zero otherwise.

For data security, the server tracks the origin of statements requesting a file transfer. The server determines if the statement was received directly from the client application. When initiating the transfer of data from the client, the server sends the information about the origin of the statement to the client software. On its part, the embedded SQL client library allows unconditional transfer of data only if the data transfer is being requested due to the execution of a statement sent directly by the client application. Otherwise, the application must have registered the validation callback described above, in the absence of which the transfer is denied and the statement fails with an error. Note that if the client statement invokes a stored procedure already existing in the database, then the execution of the stored procedure itself is considered not to have been for a client initiated statement. However, if the client application explicitly creates a temporary stored procedure then the execution of the stored procedure results in the server treating the procedure as having been client initiated. Similarly, if the client application executes a batch statement, then the execution of the batch statement is considered as being done directly by the client application.



## db\_start\_database function

### Prototype

```
unsigned int db_start_database( SQLCA * sqlca, char * parms );
```

### Arguments

- **sqlca** A pointer to a SQLCA structure. For information, see [“The SQL Communication Area \(SQLCA\)” on page 555](#).
- **parms** A null-terminated string containing a semicolon-delimited list of parameter settings, each of the form **KEYWORD=value**. For example:

```
"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=c:\\db\\mydatabase.db"
```

For a list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### Description

The database is started on an existing server, if possible. Otherwise, a new server is started. The steps carried out to start a database are described in [“Locating a database server” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

If the database was already running or was successfully started, the return value is true (non-zero) and SQLCODE is set to 0. Error information is returned in the SQLCA.

If a user ID and password are supplied in the parameters, they are ignored.

The permission required to start and stop a database is set on the server command line. For information, see [“-gd server option” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## db\_start\_engine function

### Prototype

```
unsigned int db_start_engine( SQLCA * sqlca, char * parms );
```

### Arguments

- **sqlca** A pointer to a SQLCA structure. For information, see [“The SQL Communication Area \(SQLCA\)” on page 555](#).
- **parms** A null-terminated string containing a semicolon-delimited list of parameter settings, each of the form **KEYWORD=value**. For example,

```
"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=c:\\db\\mydatabase.db"
```

For a list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## Description

Starts the database server if it is not running.

For a description of the steps carried out by this function, see [“Locating a database server” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

If the database server was already running or was successfully started, the return value is TRUE (non-zero) and SQLCODE is set to 0. Error information is returned in the SQLCA.

The following call to `db_start_engine` starts the database server and names it `demo`, but does not load the database, despite the `DBF` connection parameter:

```
db_start_engine( &sqlca,  
                "DBF=samples-dir\\demo.db;START=dbeng11" );
```

If you want to start a database and the server, include the database file in the `StartLine` (`START`) connection parameter:

```
db_start_engine( &sqlca,  
                "ENG=eng_name;START=dbeng11 samples-dir\\demo.db" );
```

This call starts the server, names it `eng_name`, and starts the SQL Anywhere sample database on that server.

The `db_start_engine` function attempts to connect to a server before starting one, to avoid attempting to start a server that is already running.

The `ForceStart` (`FORCE`) connection parameter is used only by the `db_start_engine` function. When set to `YES`, there is no attempt to connect to a server before trying to start one. This enables the following pair of commands to work as expected:

1. Start a database server named `server_1`:

```
start dbeng11 -n server_1 demo.db
```

2. Force a new server to start and connect to it:

```
db_start_engine( &sqlca,  
                "START=dbeng11 -n server_2 mydb.db;ForceStart=YES" )
```

If `ForceStart` (`FORCE`) was not used, and without a `ServerName` (`ENG`) parameter, the second command would have attempted to connect to `server_1`. The `db_start_engine` function does not pick up the server name from the `-n` option of the `StartLine` (`START`) parameter.

## db\_stop\_database function

### Prototype

```
unsigned int db_stop_database( SQLCA * sqlca, char * parms );
```

### Arguments

- **sqlca** A pointer to a `SQLCA` structure. For information, see [“The SQL Communication Area \(SQLCA\)” on page 555](#).

- **parms** A null-terminated string containing a semicolon-delimited list of parameter settings, each of the form **KEYWORD=value**. For example:

```
"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=c:\\db\\mydatabase.db"
```

For a list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## Description

Stop the database identified by DatabaseName (DBN) on the server identified by ServerName (ENG). If ServerName is not specified, the default server is used.

By default, this function does not stop a database that has existing connections. If Unconditional is yes, the database is stopped regardless of existing connections.

A return value of TRUE indicates that there were no errors.

The permission required to start and stop a database is set on the server command line. For information, see [“-gd server option” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## db\_stop\_engine function

### Prototype

```
unsigned int db_stop_engine( SQLCA * sqlca, char * parms );
```

### Arguments

- **sqlca** A pointer to a SQLCA structure. For information, see [“The SQL Communication Area \(SQLCA\)” on page 555](#).
- **parms** A null-terminated string containing a semicolon-delimited list of parameter settings, each of the form **KEYWORD=value**. For example,

```
"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=c:\\db\\mydatabase.db"
```

For a list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### Description

Stops execution of the database server. The steps carried out by this function are:

- Look for a local database server that has a name that matches the ServerName (ENG) parameter. If no ServerName is specified, look for the default local database server.
- If no matching server is found, this function returns with success.
- Send a request to the server to tell it to checkpoint and shut down all databases.
- Unload the database server.

By default, this function does not stop a database server that has existing connections. If Unconditional is yes, the database server is stopped regardless of existing connections.

A C program can use this function instead of spawning dbstop. A return value of TRUE indicates that there were no errors.

The use of db\_stop\_engine is subject to the permissions set with the -gk server option. See “-gk server option” [[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration](#)].

## db\_string\_connect function

### Prototype

```
unsigned int db_string_connect( SQLCA * sqlca, char * parms );
```

### Arguments

- **sqlca** A pointer to a SQLCA structure. For information, see “[The SQL Communication Area \(SQLCA\)](#)” on page 555.
- **parms** A null-terminated string containing a semicolon-delimited list of parameter settings, each of the form **KEYWORD=value**. For example:

```
"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=c:\\db\\mydatabase.db"
```

For a list of connection parameters, see “[Connection parameters](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration](#)].

### Description

Provides extra functionality beyond the embedded SQL CONNECT statement.

For a description of the algorithm used by this function, see “[Troubleshooting connections](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration](#)].

The return value is TRUE (non-zero) if a connection was successfully established and FALSE (zero) otherwise. Error information for starting the server, starting the database, or connecting is returned in the SQLCA.

## db\_string\_disconnect function

### Prototype

```
unsigned int db_string_disconnect(  
    SQLCA * sqlca,  
    char * parms );
```

### Arguments

- **sqlca** A pointer to a SQLCA structure. For information, see “[The SQL Communication Area \(SQLCA\)](#)” on page 555.

- **parms** A null-terminated string containing a semicolon-delimited list of parameter settings, each of the form **KEYWORD=value**. For example:

```
"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=c:\\db\\mydatabase.db"
```

For a list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## Description

This function disconnects the connection identified by the `ConnectionName` parameter. All other parameters are ignored.

If no `ConnectionName` parameter is specified in the string, the unnamed connection is disconnected. This is equivalent to the embedded SQL `DISCONNECT` statement. The return value is `TRUE` if a connection was successfully ended. Error information is returned in the `SQLCA`.

This function shuts down the database if it was started with the `AutoStop=yes` parameter and there are no other connections to the database. It also stops the server if it was started with the `AutoStop=yes` parameter and there are no other databases running.

## db\_string\_ping\_server function

### Prototype

```
unsigned int db_string_ping_server(
    SQLCA * sqlca,
    char * connect_string,
    unsigned int connect_to_db);
```

### Description

- **connect\_string** The `connect_string` is a normal connect string that may or may not contain server and database information.
- **connect\_to\_db** If `connect_to_db` is non-zero (`TRUE`), then the function attempts to connect to a database on a server. It returns `TRUE` only if the connect string is sufficient to connect to the named database on the named server.
- **connect\_to\_db** If `connect_to_db` is zero, then the function only attempts to locate a server. It returns `TRUE` only if the connect string is sufficient to locate a server. It makes no attempt to connect to the database.

## db\_time\_change function

### Prototype

```
unsigned int db_time_change(
    SQLCA * sqlca);
```

## Description

**sqlca** A pointer to a SQLCA structure. For information, see [“The SQL Communication Area \(SQLCA\)”](#) on page 555.

This function permits clients to notify the server that the time has changed on the client. This function recalculates the time zone adjustment and sends it to the server. On Windows platforms, it is recommended that applications call this function when they receive the WM\_TIMECHANGE message. This will make sure that UTC timestamps are consistent over time changes, time zone changes, or daylight savings time changeovers.

Returns TRUE if successful, and FALSE otherwise.

## fill\_s\_sqlda function

### Prototype

```
struct sqlda * fill_s_sqlda(  
    struct sqlda * sqlda,  
    unsigned int maxlen );
```

### Description

The same as fill\_sqlda, except that it changes all the data types in *sqlda* to type DT\_STRING. Enough space is allocated to hold the string representation of the type originally specified by the SQLDA, up to a maximum of *maxlen* bytes. The length fields in the SQLDA (*sqlen*) are modified appropriately. Returns *sqlda* if successful and returns the null pointer if there is not enough memory available.

The SQLDA should be freed using the free\_filled\_sqlda function.

## fill\_sqlda function

### Prototype

```
struct sqlda * fill_sqlda( struct sqlda * sqlda );
```

### Description

Allocates space for each variable described in each descriptor of *sqlda*, and assigns the address of this memory to the *sqldata* field of the corresponding descriptor. Enough space is allocated for the database type and length indicated in the descriptor. Returns *sqlda* if successful and returns the null pointer if there is not enough memory available.

The SQLDA should be freed using the free\_filled\_sqlda function.

## free\_filled\_sqlda function

### Prototype

```
void free_filled_sqlda( struct sqlda * sqlda );
```

### Description

Free the memory allocated to each sqldata pointer and the space allocated for the SQLDA itself. Any null pointer is not freed.

This should only be called if fill\_sqlda or fill\_s\_sqlda was used to allocate the sqldata fields of the SQLDA.

Calling this function causes free\_sqlda to be called automatically, and so any descriptors allocated by alloc\_sqlda are freed.

## free\_sqlda function

### Prototype

```
void free_sqlda( struct sqlda * sqlda );
```

### Description

Free space allocated to this *sqlda* and free the indicator variable space, as allocated in fill\_sqlda. Do not free the memory referenced by each sqldata pointer.

## free\_sqlda\_noind function

### Prototype

```
void free_sqlda_noind( struct sqlda * sqlda );
```

### Description

Free space allocated to this *sqlda*. Do not free the memory referenced by each sqldata pointer. The indicator variable pointers are ignored.

## sql\_needs\_quotes function

### Prototype

```
unsigned int sql_needs_quotes( SQLCA *sqlca, char * str );
```

**Description**

Returns a TRUE or FALSE value that indicates whether the string requires double quotes around it when it is used as a SQL identifier. This function formulates a request to the database server to determine if quotes are needed. Relevant information is stored in the `sqlcode` field.

There are three cases of return value/code combinations:

- **return = FALSE, sqlcode = 0** The string does not need quotes.
- **return = TRUE** The `sqlcode` is always `SQLE_WARNING`, and the string requires quotes.
- **return = FALSE** If `sqlcode` is something other than `SQLE_WARNING`, the test is inconclusive.

## sqlda\_storage function

**Prototype**

```
unsigned int sqlda_storage( struct sqlda * sqlda, int varno );
```

**Description**

Returns an unsigned 32-bit integer value representing the amount of storage required to store any value for the variable described in `sqlda->sqlvar[varno]`.

## sqlda\_string\_length function

**Prototype**

```
unsigned int sqlda_string_length( struct sqlda * sqlda, int varno );
```

**Description**

Returns an unsigned 32-bit integer value representing the length of the C string (type `DT_STRING`) that would be required to hold the variable `sqlda->sqlvar[varno]` (no matter what its type is).

## sqlerror\_message function

**Prototype**

```
char * sqlerror_message( SQLCA * sqlca, char * buffer, int max );
```

**Description**

Return a pointer to a string that contains an error message. The error message contains text for the error code in the `SQLCA`. If no error was indicated, a null pointer is returned. The error message is placed in the buffer supplied, truncated to length `max` if necessary.



## Embedded SQL statement summary

### EXEC SQL

ALL embedded SQL statements must be preceded with EXEC SQL and end with a semicolon (;).

There are two groups of embedded SQL statements. Standard SQL statements are used by simply placing them in a C program enclosed with EXEC SQL and a semicolon (;). CONNECT, DELETE, SELECT, SET, and UPDATE have additional formats only available in embedded SQL. The additional formats fall into the second category of embedded SQL specific statements.

For descriptions of the standard SQL statements, see “SQL statements” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].

Several SQL statements are specific to embedded SQL and can only be used in a C program. See “SQL language elements” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].

Standard data manipulation and data definition statements can be used from embedded SQL applications. In addition the following statements are specifically for embedded SQL programming:

- **ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR** allocate memory for a descriptor. See “ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement [ESQL]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **CLOSE** close a cursor. See “CLOSE statement [ESQL] [SP]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **CONNECT** connect to the database. See “CONNECT statement [ESQL] [Interactive SQL]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR** reclaim memory for a descriptor. See “DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement [ESQL]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **Declaration section** declare host variables for database communication. See “Declaration section [ESQL]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **DECLARE CURSOR** declare a cursor. See “DECLARE CURSOR statement [ESQL] [SP]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **DELETE (positioned)** delete the row at the current position in a cursor. See “DELETE (positioned) statement [ESQL] [SP]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **DESCRIBE** describe the host variables for a particular SQL statement. See “DESCRIBE statement [ESQL]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **DISCONNECT** disconnect from database server. See “DISCONNECT statement [ESQL] [Interactive SQL]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **DROP STATEMENT** free resources used by a prepared statement. See “DROP STATEMENT statement [ESQL]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **EXECUTE** execute a particular SQL statement. See “EXECUTE statement [ESQL]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].

- **EXPLAIN** explain the optimization strategy for a particular cursor. See “[EXPLAIN statement \[ESQL\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **FETCH** fetch a row from a cursor. See “[FETCH statement \[ESQL\] \[SP\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **GET DATA** fetch long values from a cursor. See “[GET DATA statement \[ESQL\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **GET DESCRIPTOR** retrieve information about a variable in a SQLDA. See “[GET DESCRIPTOR statement \[ESQL\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **GET OPTION** get the setting for a particular database option. See “[GET OPTION statement \[ESQL\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **INCLUDE** include a file for SQL preprocessing. See “[INCLUDE statement \[ESQL\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **OPEN** open a cursor. See “[OPEN statement \[ESQL\] \[SP\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **PREPARE** prepare a particular SQL statement. See “[PREPARE statement \[ESQL\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **PUT** insert a row into a cursor. See “[PUT statement \[ESQL\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **SET CONNECTION** change active connection. See “[SET CONNECTION statement \[Interactive SQL\] \[ESQL\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **SET DESCRIPTOR** describe the variables in a SQLDA and place data into the SQLDA. See “[SET DESCRIPTOR statement \[ESQL\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **SET SQLCA** use a SQLCA other than the default global one. See “[SET SQLCA statement \[ESQL\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **UPDATE (positioned)** update the row at the current location of a cursor. See “[UPDATE \(positioned\) statement \[ESQL\] \[SP\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].
- **WHENEVER** specify actions to occur on errors in SQL statements. See “[WHENEVER statement \[ESQL\]](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].

---

# SQL Anywhere C API reference

## Contents

Introduction to the SQL Anywhere C API version 1.0 .....	618
sacapidll.h .....	619
sacapi.h .....	621
a_sqlany_bind_param struct .....	639
a_sqlany_bind_param_info struct .....	640
a_sqlany_column_info struct .....	641
a_sqlany_data_info struct .....	642
a_sqlany_data_value struct .....	643
SQLAnywhereInterface struct .....	644
a_sqlany_data_direction enumeration .....	647
a_sqlany_data_type enumeration .....	648
a_sqlany_native_type enumeration .....	650
sacapi_error_size constant .....	651
sqlany_current_api_version constant .....	652
SQL Anywhere C API examples .....	653

---

## Introduction to the SQL Anywhere C API version 1.0

The SQL Anywhere C application programming interface (API) simplifies the creation of C and C++ wrapper drivers for several interpreted programming languages including PHP, Perl, Python, and Ruby. The SQL Anywhere C API is layered on top of the DBLIB package and it was implemented with Embedded SQL.

Although it is not a replacement for DBLIB, the SQL Anywhere C API simplifies the creation of applications using C and C++. You do not need an advanced knowledge of embedded SQL to use the SQL Anywhere C API. For more information about implementation, see *sqlany\_imp.sqc*.

### API distribution

The API is built as a dynamic link library (DLL) (*dbcapi.dll*) on Microsoft Windows systems and as a shared object (*libdbcapi.so*) on Unix systems. The DLL is statically linked to the DBLIB package of the SQL Anywhere version on which it is built. When the *dbcapi.dll* file is loaded, the corresponding *dblibX.dll* file is loaded by the operating system. Applications using *dbcapi.dll* can either link directly to it or load it dynamically.

Descriptions of the SQL Anywhere C API data types and entry points are provided in the main header file (*sacapi.h*).

### Threading support

The SQL Anywhere C API library is thread-unaware; the library does not perform any tasks that require mutual exclusion. To allow the library to work in threaded applications, only one request is allowed on a single connection. With this rule, the application is responsible for doing mutual exclusion when accessing any connection-specific resource. This includes connection handles, prepared statements, and result set objects.

## Loading the interface library dynamically

The code to dynamically load the DLL is contained in the header file *sacapidll.h*. Applications must include the *sacapidll.h* header file and compile in *sacapidll.c*. You can use `sqlany_initialize_interface` to dynamically load the DLL and look up the entry points.

---

## sacapidll.h

Dynamically loads the SQL Anywhere C API DLL.

### Syntax

```
#define function(x) x ## _func x
```

### Remarks

You must include *sacapidll.h* in your source files and compile in *sacapidll.c*.

## sqlany\_initialize\_interface function

Initializes the SQLAnywhereInterface object and loads the DLL dynamically.

### Syntax

```
int sqlany_initialize_interface ( SQLAnywhereInterface * api, const char * optional_path_to_dll )
```

### Parameters

- **api** The name of the API structure to initialize.
- **optional\_path\_to\_dll** Optional argument that specifies a path to a DLL API.

### Remarks

This function attempts to load the SQL Anywhere C API DLL dynamically and looks up all the entry points of the DLL. The fields in the SQLAnywhereInterface structure are populated to point to the corresponding functions in the DLL. If the optional path argument is NULL, the environment variable SQLANY\_DLL\_PATH is checked. If the variable is set, the library attempts to load the DLL specified by the environment variable. If that fails, the interface attempts to load the DLL directly (this relies on the environment being setup correctly).

### Returns

- 1 on successful initialization, and 0 on failure.

### See also

- [“connecting.cpp” on page 653](#)
- [“dbcapi\\_isql.cpp” on page 654](#)
- [“fetching\\_a\\_result\\_set.cpp” on page 657](#)
- [“fetching\\_multiple\\_from\\_sp.cpp” on page 659](#)
- [“preparing\\_statements.cpp” on page 661](#)
- [“send\\_retrieve\\_full\\_blob.cpp” on page 663](#)
- [“send\\_retrieve\\_part\\_blob.cpp” on page 665](#)

## sqlany\_finalize\_interface function

Unloads the library and uninitializes the SQLAnywhereInterface structure.

### Syntax

```
void sqlany_finalize_interface( SQLAnywhereInterface * api )
```

### Parameters

- **api** The name of the API structure to initialize.

### Remarks

Use `sqlany_finalize_interface` to finalize and free resources associated with the SQL Anywhere C API DLL.

### See also

- “[connecting.cpp](#)” on page 653
- “[dbcapi\\_isql.cpp](#)” on page 654
- “[fetching\\_a\\_result\\_set.cpp](#)” on page 657
- “[fetching\\_multiple\\_from\\_sp.cpp](#)” on page 659
- “[preparing\\_statements.cpp](#)” on page 661
- “[send\\_retrieve\\_full\\_blob.cpp](#)” on page 663
- “[send\\_retrieve\\_part\\_blob.cpp](#)” on page 665
-

---

## sacapi.h

Loads the SQL Anywhere C API DLL and looks up all the entry points when the instance is initialized.

### Remarks

Only one instance of this element is required in your network environment.

### Members

All members of sacapi.h file reference, including all inherited members.

- [“a\\_sqlany\\_bind\\_param\\_info struct” on page 640](#)
- [“a\\_sqlany\\_column\\_info struct” on page 641](#)
- [“a\\_sqlany\\_data\\_info struct” on page 642](#)
- [“a\\_sqlany\\_data\\_value struct” on page 643](#)
- [“SQLAnywhereInterface struct” on page 644](#)

## sqlany\_affected\_rows function

Returns the number of rows affected by execution of the prepared statement.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_i32 sqlany_affected_rows( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt )
```

### Parameters

- **stmt** A statement that was prepared and executed successfully in which no result set was returned. For example, an INSERT, UPDATE or DELETE statement was executed.

### Returns

- **sacapi\_i32** The number of rows affected, or -1 on failure.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_execute function” on page 625](#)

## sqlany\_bind\_param function

Binds a user-supplied buffer as a parameter to the prepared statement.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_bind_param( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt, sacapi_u32 index, a_sqlany_bind_param * param )
```

### Parameters

- **stmt** A statement prepared successfully using sqlany\_prepare.

- **index** The index of the parameter. The number must be between 0 and `sqlany_num_params()` - 1.
- **param** An `a_sqlany_bind_param` structure description of the parameter to be bound.

### Returns

1 when successful or 0 when unsuccessful.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_describe\\_bind\\_param function” on page 624](#)

## sqlany\_clear\_error function

Clears the last stored error code.

### Syntax

```
void sqlany_clear_error( a_sqlany_connection * conn )
```

### Parameters

- **conn** A connection object returned from `sqlany_new_connection`.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_new\\_connection function” on page 634](#)

## sqlany\_client\_version function

Returns the current client version.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_client_version( char * buffer, size_t len )
```

### Parameters

- **buffer** The buffer to be filled with the client version string.
- **len** The length of the buffer.

### Returns

1 when successful or 0 when unsuccessful.

## sqlany\_commit function

Commits the current transaction.



**Syntax**

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_commit( a_sqlany_connection * conn )
```

**Parameters**

- **conn** The connection object on which the commit operation is to be performed.

**Returns**

1 when successful or 0 when unsuccessful.

**See also**

- [“sqlany\\_rollback function” on page 637](#)

## sqlany\_connect function

Creates a connection to a SQL Anywhere database server using the specified connection object and connection string.

**Syntax**

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_connect( a_sqlany_connection * conn, const char * str )
```

**Parameters**

- **conn** The connection object created by `sqlany_new_connection`.
- **str** A SQL Anywhere connection string.

**Returns**

1 if the connection is established successfully or 0 when the connection fails. Use `sqlany_error` to retrieve the error code and message.

**See also**

- [“sqlany\\_new\\_connection function” on page 634](#)
- [“sqlany\\_error function” on page 625](#)
- [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)
- [“SQL Anywhere database connections” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)

**Example**

```
a_sqlany_connection * conn;
conn = sqlany_new_connection();
if( !sqlany_connect( conn, "uid=dba;pwd=sql" ) ) {
    char          reason[SACAPI_ERROR_SIZE];
    sacapi_i32    code;
    code = sqlany_error( conn, reason, sizeof(reason) );
    printf( "Connection failed. Code: %d Reason: %s\n", code, reason );
} else {
    printf( "Connected successfully!\n" );
    sqlany_disconnect( conn );
}
sqlany_free_connection( conn );
```

## sqlany\_describe\_bind\_param function

Describes the bind parameters of a prepared statement.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_describe_bind_param( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt,  
sacapi_u32 index, a_sqlany_bind_param * param )
```

### Parameters

- **stmt** A statement prepared successfully using `sqlany_prepare`.
- **index** The index of the parameter. The number must be between 0 and `sqlany_num_params()` - 1.
- **param** The `a_sqlany_bind_param` structure that is populated with information.

### Remarks

This function allows the caller to determine information about prepared statement parameters. The type of prepared statement (stored procedure or a DML), determines the amount of information provided. The direction of the parameters (input, output, or input-output) are always provided.

### Returns

1 on success or 0 on failure.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_bind\\_param function” on page 621](#)
- [“sqlany\\_prepare function” on page 635](#)

## sqlany\_disconnect function

Disconnects a SQL Anywhere connection. All uncommitted transactions are rolled back.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_disconnect( a_sqlany_connection * conn )
```

### Parameters

- **conn** A connection object with a connection established using `sqlany_connect`.

### Returns

1 on success or 0 on failure.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_connect function” on page 623](#)
- [“sqlany\\_new\\_connection function” on page 634](#)

---

## sqlany\_error function

Returns the last error code and message stored in the connection object.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_i32 sqlany_error( a_sqlany_connection * conn, char * buffer, size_t size )
```

### Parameters

- **conn** A connection object returned from `sqlany_new_connection`.
- **buffer** A buffer to be filled with the error message.
- **size** The size of the supplied buffer.

### Returns

The last error code. Positive values are warnings, negative values are errors, and 0 is success.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_connect function” on page 623](#)
- [“SQL Anywhere error messages sorted by SQLCODE” \[Error Messages\]](#)

## sqlany\_execute function

Executes a prepared statement.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_execute( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt )
```

### Parameters

- **stmt** A statement prepared successfully using `sqlany_prepare`.

### Returns

1 on success or 0 on failure.

### Remarks

You can use `sqlany_num_cols` to verify if the statement returned a result set.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_prepare function” on page 635](#)

### Example

```
// This example shows how to execute a statement that does not return a result set
set
  a_sqlany_stmt *      stmt;
  int                I;
  a_sqlany_bind_param param;
```

```
stmt = sqlany_prepare( conn, "insert into moe(id,value) values( ?,? )" );
if( stmt ) {
    sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 0, &param );
    param.value.buffer = (char *)&I;
    param.value.type   = A_VAL32;
    sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 0, &param );

    sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 1, &param );
    param.value.buffer = (char *)&I;
    param.value.type   = A_VAL32;
    sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 1, &param );

    for( I = 0; I < 10; I++ ) {
        if( !sqlany_execute( stmt ) ) {
            // call sqlany_error()
        }
    }
    sqlany_free_stmt( stmt );
}
```

## sqlany\_execute\_direct function

Executes the SQL statement specified by the string argument.

### Syntax

```
a_sqlany_stmt * sqlany_execute_direct( a_sqlany_connection * conn, const char * sql )
```

### Parameters

- **conn** A connection object with a connection established using `sqlany_connect`.
- **sql** A SQL string. The SQL string should not have parameters such as `?`.

### Remarks

Use this function if you want to prepare and execute a statement, or instead of `sqlany_prepare` followed by `sqlany_execute`. Do not use this function to execute a SQL statement with parameters.

### Returns

A statement handle when the function executes successfully, NULL when the function executes unsuccessfully.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_absolute function” on page 627](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_next function” on page 628](#)
- [“sqlany\\_num\\_cols function” on page 634](#)
- [“sqlany\\_get\\_column function” on page 629](#)

### Example

```
stmt = sqlany_execute_direct( conn, "select * from employees" ) ) {
    if( stmt ) {
        while( sqlany_fetch_next( stmt ) ) {
```

```
        int i;  
        for( i = 0; i < sqlany_num_cols( stmt ); i++ ) {  
            // Get i'th column data  
        }  
    }  
    sqlany_free_stmt( stmt );  
}
```

## sqlany\_execute\_immediate function

Executes the specified SQL statement immediately without returning a result set.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_execute_immediate( a_sqlany_connection * conn, const char * sql )
```

### Parameters

- **conn** A connection object with a connection established using `sqlany_connect`.
- **sql** A string representing the SQL statement to be executed.

### Returns

1 on success or 0 on failure.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_error function” on page 625](#)

## sqlany\_fetch\_absolute function

Moves the current row in the result set to the row number specified and then fetches the data at that row.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_fetch_absolute( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt, sacapi_i32 row_num )
```

### Parameters

- **stmt** A statement object that was executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.
- **row\_num** The row number to be fetched. The first row is 1, the last row is -1.

### Returns

1 if the fetch is successful, 0 when the fetch is unsuccessful.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_error function” on page 625](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute function” on page 625](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct function” on page 626](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_next function” on page 628](#)

## sqlany\_fetch\_next function

Returns the next row from the result set. This function first advances the row pointer and then fetches the data at the new row.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_fetch_next( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt )
```

### Parameters

- **stmt** A statement object that was executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.

### Returns

1 if the fetch is successful, 0 when the fetch is unsuccessful.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_error function” on page 625](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute function” on page 625](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct function” on page 626](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_absolute function” on page 627](#)

## sqlany\_fini function

Frees resources allocated by the API.

### Syntax

```
void sqlany_fini( void )
```

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_init function” on page 633](#)

## sqlany\_free\_connection function

Frees the resources associated with a connection object.

### Syntax

```
void sqlany_free_connection( a_sqlany_connection * conn )
```

### Parameters

- **conn** A connection object created by `sqlany_new_connection`.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_new\\_connection function” on page 634](#)

---

## sqlany\_free\_stmt function

Frees resources associated with a prepared statement object.

### Syntax

```
void sqlany_free_stmt( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt )
```

### Parameters

- **stmt** A statement object returned by the successful execution of `sqlany_prepare` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_prepare function” on page 635](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct function” on page 626](#)

## sqlany\_get\_bind\_param\_info function

Retrieves information about the parameters that were bound using `sqlany_bind_param`.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_get_bind_param_info( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt, sacapi_u32 index,  
a_sqlany_bind_param_info * info )
```

### Parameters

- **stmt** A statement successfully prepared using `sqlany_prepare`.
- **index** The index of the parameter. The number must be between 0 and `sqlany_num_params()` - 1.
- **info** The `sqlany_bind_param_info` buffer to be populated with the bound parameter's information.

### Returns

1 on success or 0 on failure.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_bind\\_param function” on page 621](#)
- [“sqlany\\_describe\\_bind\\_param function” on page 624](#)
- [“sqlany\\_prepare function” on page 635](#)

## sqlany\_get\_column function

Fills the supplied buffer with the value fetched for the specified column.

## Syntax

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_get_column( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt, sacapi_u32 col_index,  
a_sqlany_data_value * value )
```

## Parameters

- **stmt** A statement object that was executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.
- **col\_index** The number of the column to be retrieved. A column number is between 0 and `sqlany_num_cols()` - 1.
- **value** The `a_sqlany_data_value` object to be filled with the data fetched for column `col_index`.

## Remarks

For `A_BINARY` and `A_STRING *` data types, **value->buffer** points to an internal buffer associated with the result set. Do not rely upon or alter the content of the pointer **buffer** as it changes when a new row is fetched or when the result set object is freed. Copy the data from the pointers into the buffers.

The **length** field indicates the number of valid characters that **value->buffer** points to. The data returned in **value->buffer** is not null-terminated. This function fetches all the returned values from the SQL Anywhere database server. For example, if a column contains a 2 GB blob, the `sqlany_get_column` function attempts to allocate enough memory to hold that value. If you do not want to allocate memory, use `sqlany_get_data`.

## Returns

1 on success or 0 for failure. A failure can happen if any of the parameters are invalid or if there is not enough memory to retrieve the full value from the SQL Anywhere database server.

## See also

- [“sqlany\\_execute function” on page 625](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct function” on page 626](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_absolute function” on page 627](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_next function” on page 628](#)

## sqlany\_get\_column\_info function

Adds column information to the `a_sqlany_column_info` structure.

## Syntax

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_get_column_info( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt, sacapi_u32 col_index,  
a_sqlany_column_info * info )
```

## Parameters

- **stmt** A statement object created by `sqlany_prepare` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.
- **col\_index** The column number between 0 and `sqlany_num_cols` - 1.
- **info** A column info structure to be filled with column information.



## Returns

1 on success or 0 if the column index is out of range, or if the statement does not return a result set.

## See also

- [“sqlany\\_execute function” on page 625](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct function” on page 626](#)
- [“sqlany\\_prepare function” on page 635](#)

## sqlany\_get\_data function

Retrieves the data fetched for the specified column into the supplied buffer memory.

## Syntax

```
sacapi_i32 sqlany_get_data( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt, sacapi_u32 col_index,  
size_t offset, void * buffer, size_t size )
```

## Parameters

- **stmt** A statement object executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.
- **col\_index** The number of the column to be retrieved. A column number is between 0 and `sqlany_num_cols() - 1`.
- **offset** The starting offset of the data to get.
- **buffer** A buffer to be filled with the contents of the column. The buffer pointer must be aligned correctly for the data type copied into it.
- **size** The size of the buffer in bytes. The function fails if you specify a size greater than 2 GB.

## Returns

The number of bytes successfully copied into the supplied buffer. This number will not exceed 2 GB. 0 indicates no data remains to be copied. A -1 indicates a failure.

## See also

- [“sqlany\\_execute function” on page 625](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct function” on page 626](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_absolute function” on page 627](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_next function” on page 628](#)

## sqlany\_get\_data\_info function

Retrieves information about the data that was fetched by the last fetch operation.

## Syntax

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_get_data_info( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt, sacapi_u32 col_index,  
a_sqlany_data_info * info )
```

**Parameters**

- **stmt** A statement object executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.
- **col\_index** The column number between 0 and `sqlany_num_cols()` - 1.
- **info** A data info buffer to be filled with the metadata about the data fetched.

**Returns**

1 on success, and 0 on failure. If any of the supplied parameters is invalid, the `sqlany_get_data_info` function fails.

**See also**

- [“sqlany\\_execute function” on page 625](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct function” on page 626](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_absolute function” on page 627](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_next function” on page 628](#)

## sqlany\_get\_next\_result function

Advances to the next result set in a multiple result set query.

**Syntax**

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_get_next_result( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt )
```

**Parameters**

- **stmt** A statement object executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.

**Returns**

1 if the statement successfully advances to the next result set, 0 otherwise.

**See also**

- [“sqlany\\_execute function” on page 625](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct function” on page 626](#)

**Example**

```
stmt = sqlany_execute_direct( conn, "call  
my_multiple_results_procedure()" );  
if( result ) {  
    do {  
        while( sqlany_fetch_next( stmt ) ) {  
            // get column data  
        }  
    } while( sqlany_get_next_result( stmt ) );  
    sqlany_free_stmt( stmt );  
}
```

## sqlany\_init function

Initializes the interface.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_init( const char * app_name, sacapi_u32 api_version, sacapi_u32 * version_available )
```

### Parameters

- **app\_name** A statement object executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.
- **api\_version** The version of the compiled application (use `SQLANY_CURRENT_API_VERSION`).
- **version\_available** The maximum supported API version.

### Returns

1 on success, 0 otherwise

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_fini function” on page 628](#)

### Example

```
SQLAnywhereInterface  api;
a_sqlany_connection  *conn;
unsigned int          max_api_ver;

if( !sqlany_initialize_interface( &api, NULL ) ) {
    printf( "Could not initialize the interface!\n" );
    exit( 0 );
}

if( !api.sqlany_init( "MyAPP", SQLANY_CURRENT_API_VERSION, &max_api_ver ) ) {
    printf( "Failed to initialize the interface! Supported version = %d\n",
max_api_ver );
    sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );
    return -1;
}
```

## sqlany\_make\_connection function

Creates a connection object based on a supplied DBLIB SQLCA pointer.

### Syntax

```
a_sqlany_connection * sqlany_make_connection( void * arg )
```

### Parameters

- **arg** A void \* pointer to a DBLIB SQLCA object.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_new\\_connection function” on page 634](#)

## sqlany\_new\_connection function

Creates a connection object.

### Syntax

```
a_sqlany_connection * sqlany_new_connection( void )
```

### Remarks

You must create an API connection object before establishing a database connection. Errors can be retrieved from the connection object. Only one request can be processed on a connection at a time. In addition, not more than one thread is allowed to access a connection object at a time. Undefined behavior or a failure occurs when multiple threads attempt to access a connection object simultaneously.

### Returns

A connection object.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_connect function” on page 623](#)
- [“sqlany\\_disconnect function” on page 624](#)

## sqlany\_num\_cols function

Returns number of columns in the result set.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_i32 sqlany_num_cols( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt )
```

### Parameters

- **stmt** A statement object created by `sqlany_prepare` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.

### Returns

The number of columns in the result set, or -1 on a failure.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_execute function” on page 625](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct function” on page 626](#)
- [“sqlany\\_prepare function” on page 635](#)

---

## sqlany\_num\_params function

Returns the number of parameters that are expected for a prepared statement.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_i32 sqlany_num_params( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt )
```

### Parameters

- **stmt** A statement object returned by the successful execution of `sqlany_prepare`.

### Returns

The expected number of parameters, or -1 if the statement object is not valid.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_prepare function” on page 635](#)

## sqlany\_num\_rows function

Returns the number of rows in the result set.

### Syntax

```
sacapi_i32 sqlany_num_rows( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt )
```

### Parameters

- **stmt** A statement object executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.

### Remarks

By default, this function only returns an estimate. To return an exact count, set the `ROW_COUNTS` option on the connection. For more information, see [“row\\_counts option \[database\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### Returns

The number of rows in the result set. If the number of rows is an estimate, the number returned is negative and the estimate is the absolute value of the returned integer. The value returned is positive if the number of rows is exact.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_execute function” on page 625](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct function” on page 626](#)

## sqlany\_prepare function

Prepares the supplied SQL string

**Syntax**

```
a_sqlany_stmt * sqlany_prepare( a_sqlany_connection * conn, const char * sql )
```

**Parameters**

- **conn** A connection object with a connection established using `sqlany_connect`.
- **sql** The SQL statement to be prepared.

**Returns**

A handle to a SQL Anywhere statement object.

**Remarks**

The statement associated with the statement object is executed by `sqlany_execute`. You can use `sqlany_free_stmt` to free the resources associated with the statement object.

**See also**

- [“sqlany\\_execute function” on page 625](#)
- [“sqlany\\_free\\_stmt function” on page 629](#)
- [“sqlany\\_num\\_params function” on page 635](#)
- [“sqlany\\_describe\\_bind\\_param function” on page 624](#)
- [“sqlany\\_bind\\_param function” on page 621](#)

**Example**

```
char * str;
a_sqlany_stmt * stmt;

str = "select * from employees where salary >= ?";
stmt = sqlany_prepare( conn, str );
if( stmt == NULL ) {
    // Failed to prepare statement, call sqlany_error() for more info
}
```

## sqlany\_reset function

Resets a statement to its prepared state condition.

**Syntax**

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_reset( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt )
```

**Parameters**

- **stmt** A statement prepared successfully using `sqlany_prepare`.

**Returns**

1 on success, 0 on failure.

**See also**

- [“sqlany\\_prepare function” on page 635](#)

## sqlany\_rollback function

Rolls back the current transaction.

**Syntax**

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_rollback( a_sqlany_connection * conn )
```

**Parameters**

- **conn** The connection object on which the rollback operation is to be performed.

**Returns**

1 on success, 0 otherwise.

**See also**

- [“sqlany\\_commit function” on page 622](#)

## sqlany\_send\_param\_data function

Sends data as part of a bound parameter.

**Syntax**

```
sacapi_bool sqlany_send_param_data( a_sqlany_stmt * stmt, sacapi_u32 index,  
char * buffer, size_t size )
```

**Parameters**

- **stmt** A statement prepared successfully using `sqlany_prepare`.
- **index** The index of the parameter. This should be a number between 0 and `sqlany_num_params()` - 1.
- **buffer** The data to be sent.
- **size** The number of bytes to send.

**Returns**

1 on success or 0 on failure.

**See also**

- [“sqlany\\_prepare function” on page 635](#)

## sqlany\_sqlstate function

Retrieves the current SQL state.

### Syntax

```
size_t sqlany_sqlstate( a_sqlany_connection * conn, char * buffer, size_t size )
```

### Parameters

- **conn** A connection object returned from `sqlany_new_connection`.
- **buffer** A buffer to be filled with the current 5-character SQL state.
- **size** The buffer size.

### Returns

The number of bytes copied into the buffer.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_error function” on page 625](#)
- [“SQL Anywhere error messages sorted by SQLSTATE” \[Error Messages\]](#)



## a\_sqlany\_bind\_param struct

Binds prepared statement parameters for execution.

### Syntax

```
public a_sqlany_bind_param
```

### Properties

Name	Type	Description
direction	a_sqlany_bind_param	The data direction (input, output, input_output).
name	a_sqlany_bind_param	The bind parameter name.
value	a_sqlany_bind_param	The value to be set.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_execute function” on page 625](#)

### Examples

To view examples of the a\_sqlany\_bind\_param struct reference syntax, see:

- [“preparing\\_statements.cpp” on page 661](#)
- [“send\\_retrieve\\_full\\_blob.cpp” on page 663](#)
- [“send\\_retrieve\\_part\\_blob.cpp” on page 665](#)

## a\_sqlany\_bind\_param\_info struct

Used to bind prepared statement parameters for execution.

### Syntax

```
typedef struct a_sqlany_bind_param_info
{
    char *      name;
    a_sqlany_data_direction  direction;
    a_sqlany_data_value      input_value;
    a_sqlany_data_value      output_value;
} a_sqlany_bind_param_info;
```

### Properties

Name	Type	Description
direction	a_sqlany_data_direction	Parameter direction.
input_value	a_sqlany_data_value	Information about the bound input value.
name	char *	Pointer to name of the parameter.
output_value	a_sqlany_data_value	Information about the bound output value.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_execute function” on page 625](#)

### Examples

To view examples of the a\_sqlany\_bind\_param\_info struct reference syntax, see:

- [“preparing\\_statements.cpp” on page 661](#)
- [“send\\_retrieve\\_full\\_blob.cpp” on page 663](#)
- [“send\\_retrieve\\_part\\_blob.cpp” on page 665](#)

## a\_sqlany\_column\_info struct

Used to return column metadata information.

### Syntax

```
typedef struct a_sqlany_column_info
{
    char *      name;
    a_sqlany_data_type  type;
    a_sqlany_native_type  native_type;
    unsigned short  precision;
    unsigned short  scale;
    size_t      max_size;
    sacapi_bool    nullable;
} a_sqlany_column_info;
```

### Properties

Name	Type	Description
max_size	size_t	The maximum size a data value in this column can take.
name	char *	The name of the column (null-terminated). The string can be referenced as long as the result set object is not freed.
native_type	a_sqlany_native_type	The native type of the column in the database.
nullable	sacapi_bool	If a value in the column can be null or not.
precision	unsigned short	Precision.
scale	unsigned short	Scale.
type	a_sqlany_data_type	The column data type.

### Remarks

You can use `sqlany_get_column_info` to populate this structure.

### Examples

To view an example of the `a_sqlany_column_info` structure in use, see:

- [“dbcapi\\_isql.cpp” on page 654](#)

## a\_sqlany\_data\_info struct

Used to return information about a column value in a result set.

### Syntax

```
typedef struct a_sqlany_data_info
{
    a_sqlany_data_type  type;
    sacapi_bool        is_null;
    size_t              data_size;
} a_sqlany_data_info;
```

### Properties

Name	Type	Description
data_size	size_t	The total number of bytes available to be fetched. This field is only valid after a successful fetch operation.
is_null	sacapi_bool	Indicates whether the last fetched data is NULL. This field is only valid after a successful fetch operation.
type	a_sqlany_data_type	Type of the data in the column.

### Remarks

You can use `sqlany_get_data_info` to populate this structure with information about what was last retrieved by a fetch operation.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_get\\_data\\_info function” on page 631](#)

### Examples

To view an example of the `a_sqlany_data_info` structure in use, see:

- [“send\\_retrieve\\_part\\_blob.cpp” on page 665](#)

## a\_sqlany\_data\_value struct

Used to return a description of the attributes of a data value.

### Syntax

```
typedef struct a_sqlany_data_value
{
    char *    buffer;
    size_t    buffer_size;
    size_t *  length;
    a_sqlany_data_type  type;
    sacapi_bool *  is_null;
} a_sqlany_data_value;
```

### Parameters

Name	Type	Description
buffer	char *	Pointer to user supplied buffer of data.
buffer_size	size_t	The size of the buffer.
is_null	sacapi_bool *	Pointer to an indicator whether the last fetched data is NULL.
length	size_t *	Pointer to the number of valid bytes in the buffer. Must be less than buffer_size.
type	a_sqlany_data_type	The type of the data.

### Examples

To view examples of the a\_sqlany\_data\_value structure in use, see:

- [“dbcapi\\_isql.cpp” on page 654](#)
- [“fetching\\_a\\_result\\_set.cpp” on page 657](#)
- [“send\\_retrieve\\_full\\_blob.cpp” on page 663](#)
- [“send\\_retrieve\\_part\\_blob.cpp” on page 665](#)
- [“preparing\\_statements.cpp” on page 661](#)

## SQLAnywhereInterface struct

The SQL Anywhere C API interface structure.

### Syntax

```
typedef struct SQLAnywhereInterface {
    /** DLL handle.
     */
    void * dll_handle;

    /** Flag to know if initialized or not.
     */
    int initialized;

    /** Pointer to ::sqlany_init() function.
     */
    function( sqlany_init );

    /** Pointer to ::sqlany_fini() function.
     */
    function( sqlany_fini );

    /** Pointer to ::sqlany_new_connection() function.
     */
    function( sqlany_new_connection );

    /** Pointer to ::sqlany_free_connection() function.
     */
    function( sqlany_free_connection );

    /** Pointer to ::sqlany_make_connection() function.
     */
    function( sqlany_make_connection );

    /** Pointer to ::sqlany_connect() function.
     */
    function( sqlany_connect );

    /** Pointer to ::sqlany_disconnect() function.
     */
    function( sqlany_disconnect );

    /** Pointer to ::sqlany_execute_immediate() function.
     */
    function( sqlany_execute_immediate );

    /** Pointer to ::sqlany_prepare() function.
     */
    function( sqlany_prepare );

    /** Pointer to ::sqlany_free_stmt() function.
     */
    function( sqlany_free_stmt );

    /** Pointer to ::sqlany_num_params() function.
```

```
*/
function( sqlany_num_params );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_describe_bind_param() function.
*/
function( sqlany_describe_bind_param );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_bind_param() function.
*/
function( sqlany_bind_param );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_send_param_data() function.
*/
function( sqlany_send_param_data );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_reset() function.
*/
function( sqlany_reset );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_get_bind_param_info() function.
*/
function( sqlany_get_bind_param_info );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_execute() function.
*/
function( sqlany_execute );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_execute_direct() function.
*/
function( sqlany_execute_direct );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_fetch_absolute() function.
*/
function( sqlany_fetch_absolute );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_fetch_next() function.
*/
function( sqlany_fetch_next );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_get_next_result() function.
*/
function( sqlany_get_next_result );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_affected_rows() function.
*/
function( sqlany_affected_rows );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_num_cols() function.
*/
function( sqlany_num_cols );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_num_rows() function.
*/
function( sqlany_num_rows );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_get_column() function.
*/
```

```
function( sqlany_get_column );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_get_data() function.
 */
function( sqlany_get_data );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_get_data_info() function.
 */
function( sqlany_get_data_info );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_get_column_info() function.
 */
function( sqlany_get_column_info );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_commit() function.
 */
function( sqlany_commit );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_rollback() function.
 */
function( sqlany_rollback );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_client_version() function.
 */
function( sqlany_client_version );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_error() function.
 */
function( sqlany_error );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_sqlstate() function.
 */
function( sqlany_sqlstate );

/** Pointer to ::sqlany_clear_error() function.
 */
function( sqlany_clear_error );

} SQLAnywhereInterface;
```

## Remarks

Only one instance of this structure is required in your application environment. This structure is initialized by the **sqlany\_initialize\_interface** function. It attempts to load the SQL Anywhere C API Dynamic Link Library or shared object dynamically and looks up all the entry points of the DLL. The fields in the SQLAnywhereInterface structure will be populated to point to the corresponding functions in the DLL.

## See also

- [“sqlany\\_initialize\\_interface function” on page 619](#)



## a\_sqlany\_data\_direction enumeration

A data direction enumeration.

### Syntax

```
typedef enum a_sqlany_data_direction
{
    DD_INVALID      = 0x0,
    DD_INPUT        = 0x1,
    DD_OUTPUT       = 0x2,
    DD_INPUT_OUTPUT = 0x3
} a_sqlany_data_direction;
```

### Properties

Name	Type	Description
DD_INVALID	a_sqlany_data_direction	Invalid data direction.
DD_INPUT	a_sqlany_data_direction	Input only host variables.
DD_OUTPUT	a_sqlany_data_direction	Output only host variables.
DD_INPUT_OUTPUT	a_sqlany_data_direction	Input and Output host variables.

## a\_sqlany\_data\_type enumeration

Specifies the data type that is being passed in or retrieved.

### Syntax

```
typedef enum a_sqlany_data_type
{
    A_INVALID_TYPE,
    A_BINARY,
    A_STRING,
    A_DOUBLE,
    A_VAL64,
    A_UVAL64,
    A_VAL32,
    A_UVAL32,
    A_UVAL16,
    A_VAL8,
    A_UVAL8
} a_sqlany_data_type
```

### Parameters

Name	Type	Description
A_INVALID_TYPE	a_sqlany_data_type	Invalid data type.
A_BINARY	a_sqlany_data_type	Binary data. Binary data is treated as-is and no character set conversion is performed.
A_STRING	a_sqlany_data_type	String data. Data where character set conversion is performed.
A_DOUBLE	a_sqlany_data_type	Double data. Includes float values.
A_VAL64	a_sqlany_data_type	64-bit integer.
A_UVAL64	a_sqlany_data_type	64-bit unsigned integer.
A_VAL32	a_sqlany_data_type	32-bit integer.
A_UVAL32	a_sqlany_data_type	32-bit unsigned integer.
A_VAL16	a_sqlany_data_type	16-bit integer.
A_UVAL16	a_sqlany_data_type	16-bit unsigned integer.
A_VAL8	a_sqlany_data_type	8-bit integer.

<b>Name</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
A_UVAL8	a_sqlany_data_type	8-bit unsigned integer.

## a\_sqlany\_native\_type enumeration

An enumeration of the Embedded SQL (ESQL) data types.

### Syntax

```
typedef enum a_sqlany_native_type
{
    DT_NOTYPE          = 0,
    DT_DATE            = 384,
    DT_TIME           = 388,
    DT_TIMESTAMP      = 392,
    DT_VARCHAR        = 448,
    DT_FIXCHAR        = 452,
    DT_LONGVARCHAR    = 456,
    DT_STRING         = 460,
    DT_DOUBLE         = 480,
    DT_FLOAT          = 482,
    DT_DECIMAL        = 484,
    DT_INT            = 496,
    DT_SMALLINT       = 500,
    DT_BINARY         = 524,
    DT_LONGBINARY     = 528,
    DT_TINYINT        = 604,
    DT_BIGINT         = 608,
    DT_UNSSMALLINT    = 612,
    DT_UNSBIGINT      = 616,
    DT_BIT            = 620,
    DT_LONGNVARCHAR   = 624,
    DT_LONGNVARCHAR   = 640
} a_sqlany_native_type;
```

### See also

- [“a\\_sqlany\\_column\\_info struct” on page 641](#)
- [“sqlany\\_get\\_column\\_info function” on page 630](#)
- [“Embedded SQL data types” on page 542](#)

## sacapi\_error\_size constant

Returns the error buffer size.

### Synopsis

```
#define SACAPI_ERROR_SIZE
```

## sqlany\_current\_api\_version constant

Indicates the current API level.

### Synopsis

```
#defineSQLANY_CURRENT_API_VERSION
```

# SQL Anywhere C API examples

## connecting.cpp

This is an example of how to create a connection object and connect with it to SQL Anywhere.

```
// *****
// Copyright 1994-2008 iAnywhere Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved.
// This sample code is provided AS IS, without warranty or liability
// of any kind.
//
// You may use, reproduce, modify and distribute this sample code
// without limitation, on the condition that you retain the foregoing
// copyright notice and disclaimer as to the original iAnywhere code.
// *****
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include "sacapidll.h"

int main( int argc, char * argv[] )
{
    SQLAnywhereInterface  api;
    a_sqlany_connection   *conn;
    unsigned int          max_api_ver;

    if( !sqlany_initialize_interface( &api, NULL ) ) {
        printf( "Could not initialize the interface!\n" );
        exit( 0 );
    }

    if( !api.sqlany_init( "MyAPP", SQLANY_CURRENT_API_VERSION,
&max_api_ver ) ) {
        printf( "Failed to initialize the interface! Supported version = %d
\n", max_api_ver );
        sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );
        return -1;
    }

    /* A connection object needs to be created first */
    conn = api.sqlany_new_connection();

    if( !api.sqlany_connect( conn, "uid=dba;pwd=sql" ) ) {
        /* failed to connect */
        char buffer[SACAPI_ERROR_SIZE];
        int rc;
        rc = api.sqlany_error( conn, buffer, sizeof(buffer) );
        printf( "Failed to connect: error code=%d error message=%s\n",
rc, buffer );
    } else {
        printf( "Connected successfully!\n" );
        api.sqlany_disconnect( conn );
    }

    /* Must free the connection object or there will be a memory leak */
    api.sqlany_free_connection( conn );

    api.sqlany_fini();
}
```

```
    sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );
    return 0;
}
```

## dbcapi\_isql.cpp

This example shows how to write an ISQL application using dbcapi.

```
// *****
// Copyright 1994-2008 iAnywhere Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved.
// This sample code is provided AS IS, without warranty or liability
// of any kind.
//
// You may use, reproduce, modify and distribute this sample code
// without limitation, on the condition that you retain the foregoing
// copyright notice and disclaimer as to the original iAnywhere code.
//
// *****
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <ctype.h>
#include <assert.h>

#include "sacapidll.h"

#define max( x, y ) ( x >= y ? x : y )

SQLAnywhereInterface api;
a_sqlany_connection *conn;

void print_blob( char * buffer, size_t length )
/*****/
{
    size_t I;

    if( length == 0 ) {
        return;
    }
    printf( "0x" );
    I = 0;
    while( I < length ) {
        printf( "%.2X", (unsigned char)buffer[i] );
        I++;
    }
}

void execute( char * query )
/*****/
{
    a_sqlany_stmt * stmt;
    int err_code;
    char err_msg[SACAPI_ERROR_SIZE];
    int I;
    int num_rows;
    int length;
```



```

stmt = api.sqlany_execute_direct( conn, query );
if( stmt == NULL ) {
    err_code = api.sqlany_error( conn, err_mesg, sizeof(err_mesg) );
    printf( "Failed: [%d] '%s'\n", err_code, err_mesg );
    return;
}
if( api.sqlany_error( conn, NULL, 0 ) > 0 ) {
    err_code = api.sqlany_error( conn, err_mesg, sizeof(err_mesg) );
    printf( "Warning: [%d] '%s'\n", err_code, err_mesg );
}
if( api.sqlany_num_cols( stmt ) == 0 ) {
    printf( "Executed successfully.\n" );
    if( api.sqlany_affected_rows( stmt ) > 0 ) {
        printf( "%d affected rows.\n",
api.sqlany_affected_rows( stmt ) );
    }
    api.sqlany_free_stmt( stmt );
    return;
}

// first output column header
length = 0;
for( I = 0; I < api.sqlany_num_cols( stmt ); I++ ) {
    a_sqlany_column_info    column_info;

    if( I > 0 ) {
        printf( ", " );
        length += 1;
    }
    api.sqlany_get_column_info( stmt, I, &column_info );
    printf( "%s", column_info.name );
    length += (int)strlen( column_info.name );
}
printf( "\n" );
for( I = 0; I < length; I++ ) {
    printf( "-" );
}
printf( "\n" );
num_rows = 0;
while( api.sqlany_fetch_next( stmt ) ) {
    num_rows++;
    for( I = 0; I < api.sqlany_num_cols( stmt ); I++ ) {
        a_sqlany_data_value dvalue;

        api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, I, &dvalue );
        if( I > 0 ) {
            printf( ", " );
        }
        if( *(dvalue.is_null) ) {
            printf( "(NULL)" );
            continue;
        }
        switch( dvalue.type ) {
            case A_BINARY:
                print_blob( dvalue.buffer, *(dvalue.length) );
                break;
            case A_STRING:
                printf( "%.*s", *(dvalue.length), (char *)dvalue.buffer,
*(dvalue.length) );
                break;
            case A_VAL64:
                printf( "%lld", *(long long*)dvalue.buffer);
                break;
            case A_UVAL64:

```

```

        printf( "%lld", *(unsigned long long*)dvalue.buffer);
        break;
    case A_VAL32:
        printf( "%d", *(int*)dvalue.buffer );
        break;
    case A_UVAL32:
        printf( "%u", *(unsigned int*)dvalue.buffer );
        break;
    case A_VAL16:
        printf( "%d", *(short*)dvalue.buffer );
        break;
    case A_UVAL16:
        printf( "%u", *(unsigned short*)dvalue.buffer );
        break;
    case A_VAL8:
        printf( "%d", *(char*)dvalue.buffer );
        break;
    case A_UVAL8:
        printf( "%d", *(char*)dvalue.buffer );
        break;
    case A_DOUBLE:
        printf( "%f", *(double*)dvalue.buffer );
        break;
    }
}
printf( "\n" );
}
for( I = 0; I < length; I++ ) {
    printf( "-" );
}
printf( "\n" );

printf( "%d rows returned\n", num_rows );
if( api.sqlany_error( conn, NULL, 0 ) != 100 ) {
    char buffer[256];
    int code = api.sqlany_error( conn, buffer, sizeof(buffer) );
    printf( "Failed: [%d] '%s'\n", code, buffer );
}
printf( "\n" );

fflush( stdout );
api.sqlany_free_stmt( stmt );
}

int main( int argc, char * argv[] )
/*****/
{
    unsigned int max_api_ver;
    char buffer[256];
    int len;
    int ch;

    if( argc < 1 ) {
        printf( "Usage: %s -c <connection_string>\n", argv[0] );
        exit( 0 );
    }
    if( !sqlany_initialize_interface( &api, NULL ) ) {
        printf( "Failed to initialize the interface!\n" );
        exit( 0 );
    }
    if( !api.sqlany_init( "isql", SQLANY_CURRENT_API_VERSION, &max_api_ver ) )
    {
        printf( "Failed to initialize the interface! Supported version = %d

```

```

\n", max_api_ver );
    sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );
    return -1;
}
conn = api.sqlany_new_connection();

if( !api.sqlany_connect( conn, argv[1] ) ) {
    int code = api.sqlany_error( conn, buffer, sizeof(buffer) );
    printf( "Could not connect: [%d] %s\n", code, buffer );
    goto done;
}

printf( "Connected successfully!\n" );
while( 1 ) {
    printf( "\n%s> ", argv[0] );
    fflush( stdout );

    len = 0;
    while( len < (sizeof(buffer) - 1) ) {
        ch = fgetc( stdin );
        if( ch == '\0' || ch == '\n' || ch == '\r' || ch == -1 ) {
            break;
        }
        buffer[len] = (char)tolower( ch );
        len++;
    }
    buffer[len] = '\0';
    if(buffer[0] == '\0' ) {
        break;
    }
    if( strcmp( buffer, "quit" ) == 0 ) {
        break;
    }
    execute( buffer );
}

api.sqlany_disconnect( conn );

done:
api.sqlany_free_connection( conn );
api.sqlany_fini();
sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );
}

```

## fetching\_a\_result\_set.cpp

This example shows how to fetch data from a result set.

```

// *****
// Copyright 1994-2008 iAnywhere Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved.
// This sample code is provided AS IS, without warranty or liability
// of any kind.
//
// You may use, reproduce, modify and distribute this sample code
// without limitation, on the condition that you retain the foregoing
// copyright notice and disclaimer as to the original iAnywhere code.
//
// *****
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>

```

```
#include "sacapidll.h"

int main( )
{
    SQLAnywhereInterface api;
    a_sqlany_connection * conn;
    a_sqlany_stmt * stmt;
    unsigned int max_api_ver;

    if( !sqlany_initialize_interface( &api, NULL ) ) {
        printf( "Could not initialize the interface!\n" );
        exit( 0 );
    }

    if( !api.sqlany_init( "MyAPP", SQLANY_CURRENT_API_VERSION,
&max_api_ver ) ) {
        printf( "Failed to initialize the interface! Supported version=%d\n",
max_api_ver );
        sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );
        return -1;
    }

    /* A connection object needs to be created first */
    conn = api.sqlany_new_connection();

    if( !api.sqlany_connect( conn, "uid=dba;pwd=sql" ) ) {
        api.sqlany_free_connection( conn );
        api.sqlany_fini();
        sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );
        exit( -1 );
    }

    printf( "Connected successfully!\n" );

    if( (stmt = api.sqlany_execute_direct( conn, "select * from systable" )) !
= NULL ) {
        int num_rows = 0;
        a_sqlany_data_value value;

        while( api.sqlany_fetch_next( stmt ) ) {

            num_rows++;
            printf( "\nRow [%d] data ..... \n", num_rows );
            for( int I = 0; I < api.sqlany_num_cols( stmt ); I++ ) {
                int rc = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, I, &value );

                if( rc < 0 ) {
                    printf( "Truncation of column %d\n", I );
                }
                if( *(value.is_null) ) {
                    printf( "Received a NULL value\n" );
                    continue;
                }

                switch( value.type ) {
                    case A_BINARY:
                        printf( "Binary value of length %d.\n",
*(value.length) );
                        break;
                    case A_STRING:
                        printf( "String value [%.*s] of length %d.\n",
*(value.length), (char *)value.buffer,
*(value.length) );
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

        break;
    case A_VAL64:
        printf( "A_VAL64 value [%lld].\n", *(long long
*)value.buffer );
        break;
    case A_UVAL64:
        printf( "A_UVAL64 value [%lld].\n", *(unsigned long
long *)value.buffer );
        break;
    case A_VAL32:
        printf( "A_VAL32 value [%d].\n",
*(int*)value.buffer );
        break;
    case A_UVAL32:
        printf( "A_UVAL32 value [%d].\n", *(unsigned
int*)value.buffer );
        break;
    case A_VAL16:
        printf( "A_VAL16 value [%d].\n",
*(short*)value.buffer );
        break;
    case A_UVAL16:
        printf( "A_UVAL16 value [%d].\n", *(unsigned
short*)value.buffer );
        break;
    case A_VAL8:
        printf( "A_VAL8 value [%d].\n", *(char
*)value.buffer );
        break;
    case A_UVAL8:
        printf( "A_UVAL8 value [%d].\n", *(unsigned char
*)value.buffer );
        break;
    }
    /* do some processing with the data ... */
}
}

/* Must free the result set object when done with it */
api.sqlany_free_stmt( stmt );
}
api.sqlany_disconnect( conn );

/* Must free the connection object or there will be a memory leak */
api.sqlany_free_connection( conn );

api.sqlany_fini();

sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );

return 0;
}

```

## fetching\_multiple\_from\_sp.cpp

This example shows how to fetch multiple result sets from a stored procedure.

```

// *****
// Copyright 1994-2008 iAnywhere Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved.
// This sample code is provided AS IS, without warranty or liability
// of any kind.

```

```
//
// You may use, reproduce, modify and distribute this sample code
// without limitation, on the condition that you retain the foregoing
// copyright notice and disclaimer as to the original iAnywhere code.
//
// *****
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include "sacapidll.h"

int main( )
{
    SQLAnywhereInterface api;
    a_sqlany_connection * conn;
    a_sqlany_stmt * stmt;
    unsigned int max_api_ver;

    if( !sqlany_initialize_interface( &api, NULL ) ) {
        printf( "Could not initialize the interface!\n" );
        exit( 0 );
    }

    if( !api.sqlany_init( "MyAPP", SQLANY_CURRENT_API_VERSION,
&max_api_ver ) ) {
        printf( "Failed to initialize the interface! Supported version=%d\n",
max_api_ver );
        sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );
        return -1;
    }

    /* A connection object needs to be created first */
    conn = api.sqlany_new_connection();

    if( !api.sqlany_connect( conn, "uid=dba;pwd=sql" ) ) {
        api.sqlany_free_connection( conn );
        api.sqlany_fini();
        sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );
        exit( -1 );
    }

    printf( "Connected successfully!\n" );

    api.sqlany_execute_immediate( conn, "drop procedure myproc" );
    api.sqlany_execute_immediate( conn,
        "create procedure myproc( ) \n"
        "begin \n"
        "    select 1, 2; \n"
        "    select 3, 4, 5;\n"
        "end \n" );

    if( (stmt = api.sqlany_execute_direct( conn, "call myproc()" ) ) != NULL )
    {
        do {
            /* fetch one row at a time */
            while( api.sqlany_fetch_next( stmt ) ) {

                /* sqlany_num_cols() will be updated everytime the result set
shape changes */
                for( int I = 0; I < api.sqlany_num_cols( stmt ); I++ ) {
                    /* process data here ... */
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

        /* Check to see if there are other result sets */
    } while( api.sqlany_get_next_result( stmt ) );

    /* Must free the result set object when done with it */
    api.sqlany_free_stmt( stmt );
}
api.sqlany_disconnect( conn );

/* Must free the connection object or there will be a memory leak */
api.sqlany_free_connection( conn );

api.sqlany_fini();

sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );

return 0;
}

```

## preparing\_statements.cpp

This example shows how to prepare and execute a statement.

```

// *****
// Copyright 1994-2008 iAnywhere Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved.
// This sample code is provided AS IS, without warranty or liability
// of any kind.
//
// You may use, reproduce, modify and distribute this sample code
// without limitation, on the condition that you retain the foregoing
// copyright notice and disclaimer as to the original iAnywhere code.
//
// *****
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include "sacapidll.h"
#include <assert.h>

int main( )
{
    SQLAnywhereInterface api;
    a_sqlany_connection * conn;
    a_sqlany_stmt * stmt;
    unsigned int max_api_ver;

    if( !sqlany_initialize_interface( &api, NULL ) ) {
        printf( "Could not initialize the interface!\n" );
        exit( 0 );
    }

    if( !api.sqlany_init( "MyAPP", SQLANY_CURRENT_API_VERSION,
&max_api_ver ) ) {
        printf( "Failed to initialize the interface! Supported version=%d\n",
max_api_ver );
        sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );
        return -1;
    }

    /* A connection object needs to be created first */
    conn = api.sqlany_new_connection();

```

```

    if( !api.sqlany_connect( conn, "pktdump=c:\\temp\\
    \\pktdump;uid=dba;pwd=sql" ) ) {
        api.sqlany_free_connection( conn );
        api.sqlany_fini();
        sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );
        exit( -1 );
    }

    printf( "Connected successfully!\n" );

    api.sqlany_execute_immediate( conn, "drop procedure myproc" );
    api.sqlany_execute_immediate( conn,
        "create procedure myproc ( IN prefix char(10),          \n"
        "                          INOUT buffer varchar(256),\n"
        "                          OUT str_len int,              \n"
        "                          IN suffix char(10) ) \n"
        "begin                                                    \n"
        "    set buffer = prefix || buffer || suffix;\n"
        "    select length( buffer ) into str_len; \n"
        "end                                                        \n" );
    stmt = api.sqlany_prepare( conn, "call myproc( ?, ?, ?, ? )" );

    if( stmt ) {

        a_sqlany_bind_param      param;
        char                     buffer[256] = "-some_string-";
        int                      str_len;
        size_t                   buffer_size = strlen(buffer);
        size_t                   prefix_length = 6;
        size_t                   suffix_length = 6;

        assert( api.sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 0, &param ) );
        param.value.buffer = "PREFIX";
        param.value.length = &prefix_length;
        assert( api.sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 0, &param ) );

        assert( api.sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 1, &param ) );
        param.value.buffer = buffer;
        param.value.length = &buffer_size;
        //params[1].value.type      = A_STRING;           // already set by
sqlany_describe_bind_param()
        //params[1].direction      = INPUT_OUTPUT;       // already set by
sqlany_describe_bind_param()
        param.value.buffer_size = sizeof(buffer);       // IMPORTANT: this
field must be set for
// OUTPUT and
INPUT_OUTPUT parameters so that
// the library knows
how much data can be written
// into the buffer
        assert( api.sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 1, &param ) );

        assert( api.sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 2, &param ) );
        param.value.buffer = (char *)&str_len;
        param.value.is_null = NULL;                    // use NULL if not
interested in nullability
        //param.value.type        = A_VAL32;           // already set by
sqlany_describe_bind_param()
        //param.direction        = OUTPUT_ONLY;       // already set by
sqlany_describe_bind_param()
        //param.value.buffer_size = sizeof(str_len);   // for non string
or binary buffers, buffer_size is not needed
        assert( api.sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 2, &param ) );
    }

```



```

        assert( api.sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 3, &param ) );
        param.value.buffer      = "SUFFIX";
        param.value.length     = &suffix_length;
        //params.value.type     = A_STRING;           // already set by
sqlany_describe_bind_param()
        assert( api.sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 3, &param ) );

        /* We are not expecting a result set so the result set parameter could
be NULL */
        if( api.sqlany_execute( stmt ) ) {
            printf( "Complete string is %s and is %d chars long \n", buffer,
str_len );
            assert( str_len == (6+13+6) );

            buffer_size = str_len;
            api.sqlany_execute( stmt );
            printf( "Complete string is %s and is %d chars long \n", buffer,
str_len );
            assert( str_len == 6+(6+13+6)+6 );
        } else {
            char buffer[SACAPI_ERROR_SIZE];
            int rc;
            rc = api.sqlany_error( conn, buffer, sizeof(buffer));
            printf( "Failed to execute! [%d] %s\n", rc, buffer );
        }

        /* Free the statement object or there will be a memory leak */
        api.sqlany_free_stmt( stmt );
    }

    api.sqlany_disconnect( conn );

    /* Must free the connection object or there will be a memory leak */
    api.sqlany_free_connection( conn );

    api.sqlany_fini();

    sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );

    return 0;
}

```

## send\_retrieve\_full\_blob.cpp

This example shows how to insert and retrieve a blob in one chunk.

```

// *****
// Copyright 1994-2008 iAnywhere Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved.
// This sample code is provided AS IS, without warranty or liability
// of any kind.
//
// You may use, reproduce, modify and distribute this sample code
// without limitation, on the condition that you retain the foregoing
// copyright notice and disclaimer as to the original iAnywhere code.
//
// *****
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <assert.h>
#include "sacapidll.h"

```

```
int main( )
{
    SQLAnywhereInterface api;
    a_sqlany_connection *conn;
    a_sqlany_stmt      *stmt;
    unsigned int       I;
    unsigned char      *data;
    size_t             size = 1024*1024; // 1MB blob
    int                code;
    a_sqlany_data_value value;
    int                num_cols;
    unsigned int       max_api_ver;
    a_sqlany_bind_param param;

    if( !sqlany_initialize_interface( &api, NULL ) ) {
        printf( "Could not initialize the interface!\n" );
        exit( 0 );
    }

    assert( api.sqlany_init( "my_php_app", SQLANY_CURRENT_API_VERSION,
&max_api_ver ) );
    conn = api.sqlany_new_connection();

    if( !api.sqlany_connect( conn, "uid=dba;pwd=sql" ) ) {
        char buffer[SACAPI_ERROR_SIZE];
        code = api.sqlany_error( conn, buffer, sizeof(buffer) );
        printf( "Could not connection[%d]:%s\n", code, buffer );
        goto clean;
    }

    printf( "Connected successfully!\n" );

    api.sqlany_execute_immediate( conn, "drop table my_blob_table" );
    assert( api.sqlany_execute_immediate( conn, "create table my_blob_table
(size integer, data long binary)" ) != 0);

    stmt = api.sqlany_prepare( conn, "insert into my_blob_table( size, data )
values( ?, ?)" );
    assert( stmt != NULL );

    data = (unsigned char *)malloc( size );
    // initialize the buffer
    for( I = 0; I < size; I++ ) {
        data[I] = I % 256;
    }

    // initialize the parameters
    api.sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 0, &param );
    param.value.buffer = (char *)&size;
    param.value.type   = A_VAL32;           // This needs to be set as the
server does not
    // know what data will be inserting.
    api.sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 0, &param );

    api.sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 1, &param );
    param.value.buffer = (char *)data;
    param.value.length = &size;
    param.value.type   = A_BINARY;        // This needs to be set for
the same reason as above.
    api.sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 1, &param );

    assert( api.sqlany_execute( stmt ) );
}
```

```

    api.sqlany_free_stmt( stmt );

    api.sqlany_commit( conn );

    stmt = api.sqlany_execute_direct( conn, "select * from my_blob_table" );
    assert( stmt != NULL );

    assert( api.sqlany_fetch_next( stmt ) == 1 );

    num_cols = api.sqlany_num_cols( stmt );

    assert( num_cols == 2 );

    api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 0, &value );

    assert( *((int*)value.buffer) == size );
    assert( value.type == A_VAL32 );

    api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 1, &value );

    assert( value.type == A_BINARY );
    assert( *(value.length) == size );

    for( I = 0; I < (*value.length); I++ ) {
        assert( (unsigned char)(value.buffer[i]) == data[i]);
    }

    assert( api.sqlany_fetch_next( stmt ) == 0 );
    api.sqlany_free_stmt( stmt );

    api.sqlany_disconnect( conn );

clean:
    api.sqlany_free_connection( conn );

    api.sqlany_fini();

    sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );
    printf( "Success!\n" );
}

```

## send\_retrieve\_part\_blob.cpp

This example shows how to insert a blob in chunks and retrieve it in chunks too.

```

// *****
// Copyright 1994-2008 iAnywhere Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved.
// This sample code is provided AS IS, without warranty or liability
// of any kind.
//
// You may use, reproduce, modify and distribute this sample code
// without limitation, on the condition that you retain the foregoing
// copyright notice and disclaimer as to the original iAnywhere code.
//
// *****
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <assert.h>
#include "sacapidll.h"

```

```
int main( )
{
    SQLAnywhereInterface api;
    a_sqlany_connection *conn;
    a_sqlany_stmt *stmt;
    unsigned int I;
    unsigned char *data;
    unsigned int size = 1024*1024; // 1MB blob
    int code;
    a_sqlany_data_value value;
    int num_cols;
    unsigned char retrieve_buffer[4096];
    a_sqlany_data_info dinfo;
    int bytes_read;
    size_t total_bytes_read;
    unsigned int max_api_ver;

    if( !sqlany_initialize_interface( &api, NULL ) ) {
        printf( "Could not initialize the interface!\n" );
        exit( 0 );
    }

    assert( api.sqlany_init( "my_php_app", SQLANY_CURRENT_API_VERSION,
&max_api_ver ) );
    conn = api.sqlany_new_connection();

    if( !api.sqlany_connect( conn, "uid=dba;pwd=sql" ) ) {
        char buffer[SACAPI_ERROR_SIZE];
        code = api.sqlany_error( conn, buffer, sizeof(buffer) );
        printf( "Could not connection[%d]:%s\n", code, buffer );
        goto clean;
    }

    printf( "Connected successfully!\n" );

    api.sqlany_execute_immediate( conn, "drop table my_blob_table" );
    assert( api.sqlany_execute_immediate( conn, "create table my_blob_table
(size integer, data long binary)" ) != 0 );

    // 1. Starting to insert blob operation
    stmt = api.sqlany_prepare( conn, "insert into my_blob_table( size, data)
values( ?, ? )" );
    assert( stmt != NULL );

    // 1.1 We must first bind the parameters
    a_sqlany_bind_param param;

    api.sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 0, &param );
    param.value.buffer = (char *)&size;
    param.value.type = A_VAL32;
    param.value.is_null= NULL;
    param.direction = DD_INPUT;
    api.sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 0, &param );

    api.sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 1, &param );
    param.value.buffer = NULL;
    param.value.type = A_BINARY;
    param.value.is_null= NULL;
    param.direction = DD_INPUT;
    api.sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 1, &param );

    data = (unsigned char *)malloc( size );
```

```
for( I = 0; I < size; I++ ) {
    data[i] = I % 256;
}

// 1.2 upload the blob data to the server in chunks
for( I = 0; I < size; I += 4096 ) {
    if( !api.sqlany_send_param_data( stmt, 1, (char *)&data[i], 4096 ) ) {
        char buffer[SACAPI_ERROR_SIZE];
        code = api.sqlany_error( conn, buffer, sizeof(buffer) );
        printf( "Could not send param[%d]:%s\n", code, buffer );
    }
}

// 1.3 actually do the row insert operation
assert( api.sqlany_execute( stmt ) == 1 );

api.sqlany_commit( conn );

api.sqlany_free_stmt( stmt );

// 2. Now let's retrieve the blob
stmt = api.sqlany_execute_direct( conn, "select * from my_blob_table" );
assert( stmt != NULL );

assert( api.sqlany_fetch_next( stmt ) == 1 );

num_cols = api.sqlany_num_cols( stmt );

assert( num_cols == 2 );

api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 0, &value );

assert( I == size );
assert( value.type == A_VAL32 );

api.sqlany_get_data_info( stmt, 1, &dinfo );

assert( dinfo.type == A_BINARY );
assert( dinfo.data_size == size );
assert( dinfo.is_null == 0 );

// 2.1 Retrieve data in 4096 byte chunks
total_bytes_read = 0;
while( 1 ) {
    bytes_read = api.sqlany_get_data( stmt, 1, total_bytes_read,
retrieve_buffer, sizeof(retrieve_buffer) );
    if( bytes_read <= 0 ) {
        break;
    }
    // verify the buffer contents
    for( I = 0; I < (unsigned int)bytes_read; I++ ) {
        assert( retrieve_buffer[i] == data[total_bytes_read+I] );
    }
    total_bytes_read += bytes_read;
}
assert( total_bytes_read == size );

free(data );

assert( api.sqlany_fetch_next( stmt ) == 0 );

api.sqlany_free_stmt( stmt );
```

```
    api.sqlany_disconnect( conn );  
clean:  
    api.sqlany_free_connection( conn );  
    api.sqlany_fini();  
    sqlany_finalize_interface( &api );  
    printf( "Success!\n" );  
}
```

---

# SQL Anywhere External Function API

## Contents

Calling external libraries from procedures .....	670
Creating procedures and functions with external calls .....	671
External function prototypes .....	673
Using the external function call API methods .....	681
Handling data types .....	685
Unloading external libraries .....	688

---

## Calling external libraries from procedures

You can call a function in an external library from a stored procedure or function. You can call functions in a DLL under Windows operating systems and in a shared object on Unix. You cannot call external functions on Windows Mobile.

This section describes how to use the external library call API. Sample external stored procedures, plus the files required to build a DLL containing them, are located in the following folder: *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ExternalProcedures*. For information about the location of *samples-dir*, see [“Samples directory” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

**Caution**

External libraries called from procedures share the memory of the server. If you call an external library from a procedure and the external library contains memory-handling errors, you can crash the server or corrupt your database. Ensure that you thoroughly test your libraries before deploying them on production databases.

The API described in this section replaces an older API. The older API is deprecated. Libraries written to the older API, used in versions before version 7.0.x, are still supported, but in any new development, we encourage you to use the new API. Note that the new API must be used for all Unix platforms and for all 64-bit platforms, including 64-bit Windows.

SQL Anywhere includes a set of system procedures that make use of this capability, for example to send MAPI email messages. See [“MAPI and SMTP procedures” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).



# Creating procedures and functions with external calls

This section presents some examples of procedures and functions with external calls.

**DBA authority required**

You must have DBA authority to create procedures or functions that reference external libraries. This requirement is more strict than the RESOURCE authority required for creating other procedures or functions.

## Syntax

You can create a SQL stored procedure that calls a C/C++ function in a library (a Dynamic Link Library (DLL) or shared object) as follows:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE coverProc( parameter-list )
  EXTERNAL NAME 'myFunction@myLibrary'
  LANGUAGE C_ESQL32;
```

When you define a stored procedure or function in this way, you are creating a bridge to the function in the external DLL. The stored procedure or function cannot perform any other tasks.

Similarly, you can create a SQL stored function that calls a C/C++ function in a library as follows:

```
CREATE FUNCTION coverFunc( parameter-list )
  RETURNS data-type
  EXTERNAL NAME 'myFunction@myLibrary'
  LANGUAGE C_ESQL32;
```

In these statements, the EXTERNAL NAME clause indicates the function name and library in which it resides. In the example, myFunction is the exported name of a function in the library, and myLibrary is the name of the library (for example, myLibrary.dll or myLibrary.so).

The LANGUAGE clause indicates that the function is to be called in an external environment. The LANGUAGE clause can specify one of C\_ESQL32, C\_ESQL64, C\_ODBC32, or C\_ODBC64. The **32** or **64** suffix indicates that the function is compiled as a 32-bit or 64-bit application. The **ODBC** designation indicates that the application uses the ODBC API. The **ESQL** designation indicates that the application could use the Embedded SQL API, the SQL Anywhere C API, any other non-ODBC API, or no API at all.

If the LANGUAGE clause is omitted, then the library containing the function is loaded into the address space of the database server. When called, the external function will execute as part of the server. In this case, if the function causes a fault, then the database server will be terminated. Because of this, loading and executing functions in an external environment is recommended. If a function causes a fault in an external environment, the database server will continue to run.

The arguments in *parameter-list* must correspond in type and order to the arguments expected by the library function. The library function accesses the procedure arguments using an API described in [“External function prototypes” on page 673](#).

Any value or result set returned by the external function can be returned by the stored procedure or function to the calling environment.

## No other statements permitted

A stored procedure or function that references an external function can include no other statements: its sole purpose is to take arguments for a function, call the function, and return any value and returned arguments

from the function to the calling environment. You can use IN, INOUT, or OUT parameters in the procedure call in the same way as for other procedures: the input values get passed to the external function, and any parameters modified by the function are returned to the calling environment in OUT or INOUT parameters or as the RETURNS result of the stored function.

### System-dependent calls

You can specify operating-system dependent calls, so that a procedure calls one function when run on one operating system, and another function (presumably analogous) on another operating system. The syntax for such calls involves prefixing the function name with the operating system name. The operating system identifier must be Unix. An example follows.

```
CREATE FUNCTION func ( parameter-list )
  RETURNS data-type
  EXTERNAL NAME 'Unix:function-name@library.so;function-name@library.dll';
```

If the list of functions does not contain an entry for the operating system on which the server is running, but the list does contain an entry without an operating system specified, the database server calls the function in that entry.

### See also

- “CREATE PROCEDURE statement (web services)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “CREATE FUNCTION statement (web services)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “SQL Anywhere external environment support” on page 689

## External function prototypes

This section describes the API that you use for functions written in C or C++.

The API is defined by a header file named *extfnapi.h*, in the *SDK\Include* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation directory. This header file handles the platform-dependent features of external function prototypes.

### Function prototypes

The name of the function must match that referenced in the CREATE PROCEDURE or CREATE FUNCTION statement. Suppose the following CREATE FUNCTION statement had been executed.

```
CREATE FUNCTION cover-name ( parameter-list )
  RETURNS data-type
  EXTERNAL NAME 'function-name@library.dll'
  LANGUAGE C_ESQL32;
```

The C/C++ function declaration must be as follows:

```
void function-name( an_extfn_api *api, void *argument-handle )
```

The function must return void, and must take as arguments a pointer to a structure used to call a set of callback functions and a handle to the arguments provided by the SQL procedure.

## extfn\_use\_new\_api method

To notify the database server that the external library is written using the external function call API, your external library must export the following function:

### Syntax

```
a_sql_uint32 extfn_use_new_api( );
```

### Returns

The function returns an unsigned 32-bit integer. The returned value must be the API version number, EXTFN\_API\_VERSION, defined in *extfnapi.h*. A return value of 0 means that the old API is being used.

### Remarks

If the function is not exported by the library, the database server assumes that the old API is in use. The new API must be used for all Unix platforms and for all 64-bit platforms, including 64-bit Windows.

A typical implementation of this function follows:

```
a_sql_uint32 extfn_use_new_api( void )
{
    return( EXTFN_API_VERSION );
}
```

**See also**

- [“an\\_extfn\\_api structure” on page 674](#)

## extfn\_cancel method

To notify the database server that the external library supports cancel processing, your external library must export the following function:

**Syntax**

```
void extfn_cancel( void *cancel_handle );
```

**Parameters**

- **cancel\_handle** A pointer to a variable to manipulate.

**Remarks**

This function is called asynchronously by the database server whenever the currently executing SQL statement is canceled.

The function uses the cancel\_handle to set a flag indicating to the external library functions that the SQL statement has been canceled.

If the function is not exported by the library, the database server assumes that cancel processing is not supported.

A typical implementation of this function follows:

```
void extfn_cancel( void *cancel_handle )
{
    *(short *)cancel_handle = 1;
}
```

**See also**

- [“an\\_extfn\\_api structure” on page 674](#)

## an\_extfn\_api structure

Used to communicate with the calling SQL environment.

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct an_extfn_api {
    short (SQL_CALLBACK *get_value)(
        void *      arg_handle,
        a_sql_uint32 arg_num,
        an_extfn_value *value
    );
    short (SQL_CALLBACK *get_piece)(
        void *      arg_handle,
        a_sql_uint32 arg_num,
        an_extfn_value *value,

```

```

        a_sql_uint32    offset
    );
    short (SQL_CALLBACK *set_value)(
        void *          arg_handle,
        a_sql_uint32    arg_num,
        an_extfn_value *value
        short           append
    );
    void (SQL_CALLBACK *set_cancel)(
        void *          arg_handle,
        void *          cancel_handle
    );
} an_extfn_api;

```

## Properties

- **get\_value** Use this callback function to get the specified parameter's value. The following example gets the value for parameter 1.

```

result = extapi->get_value( arg_handle, 1, &arg )
if( result == 0 || arg.data == NULL )
{
    return; // no parameter or parameter is NULL
}

```

- **get\_piece** Use this callback function to get the next chunk of the specified parameter's value (if there are any). The following example gets the remaining pieces for parameter 1.

```

cmd = (char *)malloc( arg.len.total_len + 1 );
offset = 0;
for( ; result != 0; )
{
    if( arg.data == NULL ) break;
    memcpy( &cmd[offset], arg.data, arg.piece_len );
    offset += arg.piece_len;
    cmd[offset] = '\0';
    if( arg.piece_len == 0 ) break;
    result = extapi->get_piece( arg_handle, 1, &arg, offset );
}

```

- **set\_value** Use this callback function to set the specified parameter's value. The following example sets the return value (parameter 0) for a RETURNS clause of a FUNCTION.

```

an_extfn_value    retval;
int ret = -1;

// set up the return value struct
retval.type = DT_INT;
retval.data = (void*) &ret;
retval.piece_len = retval.len.total_len =
    (a_sql_uint32) sizeof( int );
extapi->set_value( arg_handle, 0, &retval, 0 );

```

- **set\_cancel** Use this callback function to establish a pointer to a variable that can be set by the **extfn\_cancel** method. The following is example.

```

short             canceled = 0;
extapi->set_cancel( arg_handle, &canceled );

```

## Remarks

A pointer to the `an_extfn_api` structure is passed by the caller to your external function. Here is an example.

```
extern "C" __declspec( dllexport )
void my_external_proc( an_extfn_api *extapi, void *arg_handle )
{
    short          result;
    short          canceled;
    an_extfn_value arg;

    canceled = 0;
    extapi->set_cancel( arg_handle, &canceled );

    result = extapi->get_value( arg_handle, 1, &arg );
    if( canceled || result == 0 || arg.data == NULL )
    {
        return; // no parameter or parameter is NULL
    }
    :
    :
}
```

Whenever you use any of the callback functions, you must pass back the argument handle that was passed to your external function as the second parameter.

## See also

- [“an\\_extfn\\_value structure” on page 676](#)
- [“extfn\\_cancel method” on page 674](#)

## an\_extfn\_value structure

Used to access parameter data from the calling SQL environment.

### Syntax

```
typedef struct an_extfn_value {
    void *          data;
    a_sql_uint32   piece_len;
    union {
        a_sql_uint32 total_len;
        a_sql_uint32 remain_len;
    } len;
    a_sql_data_type type;
} an_extfn_value;
```

### Properties

- **data** A pointer to the data for this parameter.
- **piece\_len** The length of this segment of the parameter. This is less than or equal to **total\_len**.
- **total\_len** The total length of the parameter. For strings, this represents the length of the string and does not include a null terminator. This property is set after a call to the **get\_value** callback function. This property is no longer valid after a call to the **get\_piece** callback function.

- **remain\_len** When the parameter is obtained in segments, this is the length of the part that has not yet been obtained. This property is set after each call to the **get\_piece** callback function.
- **type** Indicates the type of the parameter. This is one of the Embedded SQL data types such as **DT\_INT**, **DT\_FIXCHAR**, or **DT\_BINARY**. See “[Embedded SQL data types](#)” on page 542.

### Remarks

Suppose that your external function interface was described using the following SQL statement.

```
CREATE FUNCTION mystring( IN instr LONG VARCHAR )
RETURNS LONG VARCHAR
EXTERNAL NAME 'mystring@c:\\project\\mystring.dll';
```

The following code fragment shows how to access the properties for objects of type **an\_extfn\_value**. In the example, the input parameter 1 (**instr**) to this function (**mystring**) is expected to be a SQL LONGVARCHAR string.

```
an_extfn_value      arg;

result = extapi->get_value( arg_handle, 1, &arg );
if( result == 0 || arg.data == NULL )
{
    return; // no parameter or parameter is NULL
}

if( arg.type != DT_LONGVARCHAR )
{
    return; // unexpected type of parameter
}

cmd = (char *)malloc( arg.len.total_len + 1 );
offset = 0;
for( ; result != 0; )
{
    if( arg.data == NULL ) break;
    memcpy( &cmd[offset], arg.data, arg.piece_len );
    offset += arg.piece_len;
    cmd[offset] = '\0';
    if( arg.piece_len == 0 ) break;
    result = extapi->get_piece( arg_handle, 1, &arg, offset );
}
}
```

### See also

- “[an\\_extfn\\_api structure](#)” on page 674

## an\_extfn\_result\_set\_info structure

Facilitates the return of result sets to the calling SQL environment.

### Syntax

```
typedef struct an_extfn_result_set_info {
    a_sql_uint32          number_of_columns;
    an_extfn_result_set_column_info *column_infos;
    an_extfn_result_set_column_data *column_data_values;
} an_extfn_result_set_info;
```

## Properties

- **number\_of\_columns** The number of columns in the result set.
- **column\_infos** Link to a description of the result set columns. See [“an\\_extfn\\_result\\_set\\_column\\_info structure” on page 678](#).
- **column\_data\_values** Link to a description of the result set column data. See [“an\\_extfn\\_result\\_set\\_column\\_data structure” on page 679](#).

## Remarks

The following code fragment shows how to set the properties for objects of this type.

```
int columns = 2;
an_extfn_result_set_info rs_info;

an_extfn_result_set_column_info *col_info =
    (an_extfn_result_set_column_info *)
    malloc( columns * sizeof(an_extfn_result_set_column_info) );

an_extfn_result_set_column_data *col_data =
    (an_extfn_result_set_column_data *)
    malloc( columns * sizeof(an_extfn_result_set_column_data) );

rs_info.number_of_columns = columns;
rs_info.column_infos = col_info;
rs_info.column_data_values = col_data;
```

## See also

- [“an\\_extfn\\_result\\_set\\_column\\_info structure” on page 678](#)
- [“an\\_extfn\\_result\\_set\\_column\\_data structure” on page 679](#)

## an\_extfn\_result\_set\_column\_info structure

Used to describe a result set.

## Syntax

```
typedef struct an_extfn_result_set_column_info {
    char *                column_name;
    a_sql_data_type      column_type;
    a_sql_uint32         column_width;
    a_sql_uint32         column_index;
    short int            column_can_be_null;
} an_extfn_result_set_column_info;
```

## Properties

- **column\_name** Points to the name of the column which is a null-terminated string.
- **column\_type** Indicates the type of the column. This is one of the Embedded SQL data types such as **DT\_INT**, **DT\_FIXCHAR**, or **DT\_BINARY**. See [“Embedded SQL data types” on page 542](#).
- **column\_width** Defines the maximum width for char(n), varchar(n) and binary(n) declarations and is set to 0 for all other types.



- **column\_index** The ordinal position of the column which starts at 1.
- **column\_can\_be\_null** Set to 1 if the column is nullable; otherwise it is set to 0.

### Remarks

The following code fragment shows how to set the properties for objects of this type and how to describe the result set to the calling SQL environment.

```
// set up column descriptions
// DepartmentID      INTEGER NOT NULL
col_info[0].column_name = "DepartmentID";
col_info[0].column_type = DT_INT;
col_info[0].column_width = 0;
col_info[0].column_index = 1;
col_info[0].column_can_be_null = 0;

// DepartmentName    CHAR(40) NOT NULL
col_info[1].column_name = "DepartmentName";
col_info[1].column_type = DT_FIXCHAR;
col_info[1].column_width = 40;
col_info[1].column_index = 2;
col_info[1].column_can_be_null = 0;

extapi->set_value( arg_handle,
                  EXTFN_RESULT_SET_ARG_NUM,
                  (an_extfn_value *)&rs_info,
                  EXTFN_RESULT_SET_DESCRIBE );
```

### See also

- [“an\\_extfn\\_result\\_set\\_info structure” on page 677](#)
- [“an\\_extfn\\_result\\_set\\_column\\_data structure” on page 679](#)

## an\_extfn\_result\_set\_column\_data structure

Used to return the data values for columns.

### Syntax

```
typedef struct an_extfn_result_set_column_data {
    a_sql_uint32      column_index;
    void *            column_data;
    a_sql_uint32      data_length;
    short             append;
} an_extfn_result_set_column_data;
```

### Properties

- **column\_index** The ordinal position of the column which starts at 1.
- **column\_data** Pointer to a buffer containing the column data.
- **data\_length** The actual length of the data.
- **append** Used to return the column value in chunks. Set to 1 when returning a partial column value; 0 otherwise.

### Remarks

The following code fragment shows how to set the properties for objects of this type and how to return the result set row to the calling SQL environment.

```
int DeptNumber = 400;
char * DeptName = "Marketing";

col_data[0].column_index = 1;
col_data[0].column_data = &DeptNumber;
col_data[0].data_length = sizeof( DeptNumber );
col_data[0].append = 0;

col_data[1].column_index = 2;
col_data[1].column_data = DeptName;
col_data[1].data_length = strlen(DeptName);
col_data[1].append = 0;

extapi->set_value( arg_handle,
                  EXTFN_RESULT_SET_ARG_NUM,
                  (an_extfn_value *)&rs_info,
                  EXTFN_RESULT_SET_NEW_ROW_FLUSH );
```

### See also

- [“an\\_extfn\\_result\\_set\\_info structure” on page 677](#)
- [“an\\_extfn\\_result\\_set\\_column\\_info structure” on page 678](#)

## Using the external function call API methods

### get\_value callback

```
short (SQL_CALLBACK *get_value)
(
    void *      arg_handle,
    a_sql_uint32 arg_num,
    an_extfn_value *value
);
```

The **get\_value** callback function can be used to obtain the value of a parameter that was passed to the stored procedure or function that acts as the interface to the external function. It returns 0 if not successful; otherwise it returns a non-zero result. After calling **get\_value**, the `total_len` field of the `an_extfn_value` structure contains the length of the entire value. The `piece_len` field contains the length of the portion that was obtained as a result of calling **get\_value**. Note that `piece_len` will always be less than or equal to `total_len`. When it is less than, a second function **get\_piece** can be called to obtain the remaining pieces. Note that the `total_len` field is only valid after the initial call to **get\_value**. This field is overlaid by the `remain_len` field which is altered by calls to **get\_piece**. It is important to preserve the value of the `total_len` field immediately after calling **get\_value** if you plan to use it later on.

### get\_piece callback

```
short (SQL_CALLBACK *get_piece)
(
    void *      arg_handle,
    a_sql_uint32 arg_num,
    an_extfn_value *value,
    a_sql_uint32 offset
);
```

If the entire parameter value cannot be returned in one piece, then the **get\_piece** function can be called iteratively to obtain the remaining pieces of the parameter value.

The sum of all the `piece_len` values returned by both calls to **get\_value** and **get\_piece** will add up to the initial value that was returned in the `total_len` field after calling **get\_value**. After calling **get\_piece**, the `remain_len` field, which overlays `total_len`, represents the amount not yet obtained.

### Using get\_value and get\_piece callbacks

The following example shows the use of **get\_value** and **get\_piece** to obtain the value of a string parameter such as a long varchar parameter.

Suppose that the wrapper to an external function was declared as follows:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE mystring( IN instr LONG VARCHAR )
EXTERNAL NAME 'mystring@mystring.dll';
```

To call the external function from SQL, we would use a statement like the following.

```
call mystring('Hello world!');
```

A sample implementation for the Windows operating system of the **mystring** function, written in C, follows:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
```

```
#include <string.h>
#include <windows.h>
#include "extfnapi.h"

BOOL APIENTRY DllMain( HMODULE hModule,
                      DWORD ul_reason_for_call,
                      LPVOID lpReserved
                      )
{
    return TRUE;
}

extern "C" __declspec( dllexport )
a_sql_uint32 extfn_use_new_api( void )
{
    return( EXTFN_API_VERSION );
}

extern "C" __declspec( dllexport )
void mystring( an_extfn_api *extapi, void *arg_handle )
{
    short          result;
    an_extfn_value arg;
    unsigned       offset;
    char           *string;

    result = extapi->get_value( arg_handle, 1, &arg );
    if( result == 0 || arg.data == NULL )
    {
        return; // no parameter or parameter is NULL
    }
    string = (char *)malloc( arg.len.total_len + 1 );
    offset = 0;
    for( ; result != 0; ) {
        if( arg.data == NULL ) break;
        memcpy( &string[offset], arg.data, arg.piece_len );
        offset += arg.piece_len;
        string[offset] = '\0';
        if( arg.piece_len == 0 ) break;
        result = extapi->get_piece( arg_handle, 1, &arg, offset );
    }
    MessageBoxA( NULL, string,
                "SQL Anywhere",
                MB_OK | MB_TASKMODAL );
    free( string );
    return;
}
```

### set\_value callback

```
short (SQL_CALLBACK *set_value)
(
    void *          arg_handle,
    a_sql_uint32   arg_num,
    an_extfn_value *value
    short          append
);
```

The `set_value` callback function can be used to set the values of OUT parameters and the RETURNS result of a stored function. Use an `arg_num` value of 0 to set the RETURNS value. The following is an example.

```

an_extfn_value      retval;

retval.type = DT_LONGVARCHAR;
retval.data = result;
retval.piece_len = retval.len.total_len = (a_sql_uint32) strlen( result );
extapi->set_value( arg_handle, 0, &retval, 0 );

```

The `append` argument of `set_value` determines whether the supplied data replaces (false) or appends to (true) the existing data. You must call `set_value` with `append=FALSE` before calling it with `append=TRUE` for the same argument. The `append` argument is ignored for fixed length data types.

To return NULL, set the data field of the `an_extfn_value` structure to NULL.

### set\_cancel callback

```

void (SQL_CALLBACK *set_cancel)
(
    void *arg_handle,
    void *cancel_handle
);

```

External functions can get the values of IN or INOUT parameters and set the values of OUT parameters and the RETURNS result of a stored function. There is a case, however, where the parameter values obtained may no longer be valid or the setting of values is no longer necessary. This occurs when an executing SQL statement is canceled. This may occur as the result of an application abruptly disconnecting from the database server. To handle this situation, you can define a special entry point in the library called `extfn_cancel`. When this function is defined, the server will call it whenever a running SQL statement is canceled.

The `extfn_cancel` function is called with a handle that can be used in any way you consider suitable. A typical use of the handle is to indirectly set a flag to indicate that the calling SQL statement has been canceled.

The value of the handle that is passed can be set by functions in the external library using the `set_cancel` callback function. This is illustrated by the following code fragment.

```

extern "C" __declspec( dllexport )
void extfn_cancel( void *cancel_handle )
{
    *(short *)cancel_handle = 1;
}

extern "C" __declspec( dllexport )
void mystring( an_extfn_api *api, void *arg_handle )
{
    .
    .
    .
    short canceled = 0;

    extapi->set_cancel( arg_handle, &canceled );

    .
    .
    .
    if( canceled )

```

Note that setting a static global "canceled" variable is inappropriate since that would be misinterpreted as all SQL statements on all connections being canceled which is usually not the case. This is why a `set_cancel` callback function is provided. Make sure to initialize the "canceled" variable before calling `set_cancel`.

It is important to check the setting of the "canceled" variable at strategic points in your external function. Strategic points would include before and after calling any of the external library call API functions like `get_value` and `set_value`. When the variable is set (as a result of `extfn_cancel` having been called), then the external function can take appropriate termination action. A code fragment based on the earlier example follows:

```
if( canceled )
{
    free( string );
    return;
}
```

## Notes

The `get_piece` function for any given argument can only be called immediately after the `get_value` function for the same argument.

Calling `get_value` on an OUT parameter returns the type field of the `an_extfn_value` structure set to the data type of the argument, and returns the data field of the `an_extfn_value` structure set to NULL.

The header file `extfnapi.h` in the SQL Anywhere installation `SDK\Include` folder contains some additional notes.

The following table shows the conditions under which the functions defined in `an_extfn_api` return false:

Function	Returns 0 when the following is true; else returns 1
<code>get_value()</code>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>arg_num</code> is invalid; for example, <code>arg_num</code> is greater than the number of arguments for the external function.</li> </ul>
<code>get_piece()</code>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>arg_num</code> is invalid; for example, <code>arg_num</code> does not correspond to the argument number used with the previous call to <code>get_value</code>.</li> <li>• The offset is greater than the total length of the value for the <code>arg_num</code> argument.</li> <li>• It is called before <code>get_value</code> has been called.</li> </ul>
<code>set_value()</code>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>arg_num</code> is invalid; for example, <code>arg_num</code> is greater than the number of arguments for the external function.</li> <li>• Argument <code>arg_num</code> is input only.</li> <li>• The type of value supplied does not match that of argument <code>arg_num</code>.</li> </ul>

## Handling data types

### Data types

The following SQL data types can be passed to an external library:

SQL data type	sqldef.h	C type
CHAR	DT_FIXCHAR	Character data, with a specified length
VARCHAR	DT_VARCHAR	Character data, with a specified length
LONG VARCHAR, TEXT	DT_LONG-VARCHAR	Character data, with a specified length
UNIQUEIDENTIFIERSTR	DT_FIXCHAR	Character data, with a specified length
XML	DT_LONG-VARCHAR	Character data, with a specified length
NCHAR	DT_NFIX-CHAR	UTF-8 character data, with a specified length
NVARCHAR	DT_NVARCH-AR	UTF-8 character data, with a specified length
LONG NVARCHAR, NTEXT	DT_LONG-NVARCHAR	UTF-8 character data, with a specified length
UNIQUEIDENTIFIER	DT_BINARY	Binary data, 16 bytes long
BINARY	DT_BINARY	Binary data, with a specified length
VARBINARY	DT_BINARY	Binary data, with a specified length
LONG BINARY	DT_LONGBI-NARY	Binary data, with a specified length
TINYINT	DT_TINYINT	1-byte integer
[ UNSIGNED ] SMALLINT	DT_SMALL-INT, DT_UN-SMALLINT	[ Unsigned ] 2-byte integer
[ UNSIGNED ] INT	DT_INT, DT_UN-SINT	[ Unsigned ] 4-byte integer

SQL data type	sqldef.h	C type
[ UNSIGNED ] BIGINT	DT_BIGINT, DT_UNSBIGINT	[ Unsigned ] 8-byte integer
REAL, FLOAT(1-24)	DT_FLOAT	Single precision floating point number
DOUBLE, FLOAT(25-53)	DT_DOUBLE	Double precision floating point number

You cannot use any of the date or time data types, and you cannot use the DECIMAL or NUMERIC data types (including the money types).

To provide values for INOUT or OUT parameters, use the `set_value` API function. To read IN and INOUT parameters, use the `get_value` API function.

### Determining data types of parameters

After a call to `get_value`, the `type` field of the `an_extfn_value` structure can be used to obtain data type information for the parameter. The following sample code fragment shows how to identify the type of the parameter.

```

an_extfn_value    arg;
a_sql_data_type   data_type;

extapi->get_value( arg_handle, 1, &arg );
data_type = arg.type & DT_TYPES;
switch( data_type )
{
case DT_FIXCHAR:
case DT_VARCHAR:
case DT_LONGVARCHAR:
    break;
default:
    return;
}

```

For more information on data types, see [“Using host variables” on page 546](#).

### UTF-8 types

The UTF-8 data types such as NCHAR, NVARCHAR, LONG NVARCHAR and NTEXT are passed as UTF-8 encoded strings. A function such as the Windows `MultiByteToWideChar` function can be used to convert a UTF-8 string to a wide-character (Unicode) string.

### Passing NULL

You can pass NULL as a valid value for all arguments. Functions in external libraries can supply NULL as a return value for any data type.

### Return values

To set a return value in an external function, call the `set_value` function with an `arg_num` parameter value of 0. If `set_value` is not called with `arg_num` set to 0, the function result is NULL.



It is also important to set the data type of a return value for a stored function call. The following code fragment shows how to set the return data type.

```
an_extfn_value      retval;

retval.type = DT_LONGVARCHAR;
retval.data = result;
retval.piece_len = retval.len.total_len = (a_sql_uint32) strlen( result );
extapi->set_value( arg_handle, 0, &retval, 0 );
```

## Unloading external libraries

The system procedure, `dbo.sa_external_library_unload`, can be used to unload an external library when the library is not in use. The procedure takes one optional parameter, a long varchar. The parameter specifies the name of the library to be unloaded. If no parameter is specified, all external libraries not in use will be unloaded.

The following example unloads an external function library.

```
call sa_external_library_unload('library.dll')
```

This function is useful when developing a set of external functions because you do not have to shut down the database server to install a newer version of the library.

---

# SQL Anywhere external environment support

## Contents

Overview of external environments .....	690
The CLR external environment .....	694
The ESQL and ODBC external environments .....	697
The Java external environment .....	706
The PERL external environment .....	711
The PHP external environment .....	715

---

## Overview of external environments

SQL Anywhere includes support for six external runtime environments. These include embedded SQL and ODBC applications written in C/C++, and applications written in Java, Perl, PHP, or languages such as C# and Visual Basic that are based on the Microsoft .NET Framework Common Language Runtime (CLR).

SQL Anywhere has had the ability to call compiled native functions written in C or C++ for some time. However, when these procedures are run by the database server, the dynamic link library or shared object has always been loaded by the database server and the calls out to the native functions have always been made by the database server. The risk here is that if the native function causes a fault, then the database server crashes. Running compiled native functions outside the database server, in an external environment, eliminates these risks to the server.

The following is an overview of the external environment support in SQL Anywhere.

### Catalog tables

A system catalog table stores the information needed to identify and launch each of the external environments. The definition for this table is:

```
SYS.SYSEXTERNENV (
  object_id      unsigned bigint not null,
  name           varchar(128)   not null,
  scope         char(1)        not null,
  supports_result_sets char(1)  not null,
  location      long varchar   not null,
  options       long varchar   not null,
  user_id       unsigned int
)
```

- **object\_id** A unique identifier that is generated by the database server.
- **name** The name column identifies the name of the external environment or language. It is one of **java**, **perl**, **php**, **clr**, **c\_esql32**, **c\_esql64**, **c\_odbc32**, or **c\_odbc64**.
- **scope** The scope column is either **C** for CONNECTION or **D** for DATABASE respectively. The scope column identifies if the external environment is launched as one-per-connection or one-per-database.

For one-per-connection external environments (like PERL, PHP, C\_ESQL32, C\_ESQL64, C\_ODBC32, and C\_ODBC64), there is one instance of the external environment for each connection using the external environment. In the case of one-per-connection, the external environment terminates when the connection terminates.

For one-per-database external environments (like JAVA and CLR), there is one instance of the external environment for each database using the external environment. In the case of one-per-database, the external environment terminates when the database is stopped.

- **supports\_result\_sets** The supports\_result\_sets column identifies those external environments that can return result sets. All external environments can return result sets except PERL and PHP.
- **location** The location column identifies the location on the database server computer where the executable/binary for the external environment can be found. It includes the executable/binary name.

This path can either be fully qualified or relative. If the path is relative, then the executable/binary must be in a location where the database server can find it.

- **options** The options column identifies any options required on the command line to launch the executable associated with the external environment. You should not modify this column.
- **user\_id** The user\_id column identifies a user ID in the database that has DBA authority. When the external environment is initially launched, it must make a connection back to the database to set things up for the external environment's usage. By default, this connection is made using the DBA user ID, but if the database administrator prefers to have the external environment use a different user ID with DBA authority, then the user\_id column in the SYS.SYSEXTERNENV table would indicate that different user ID instead. In most cases, though, this column in SYS.SYSEXTERNENV is NULL and the database server, by default, uses the DBA user ID.

Another system catalog table stores the non-Java external objects. The table definition for this table is:

```
SYS.SYSEXTERNENVOBJECT (
  object_id      unsigned bigint not null,
  extenv_id     unsigned bigint not null,
  owner         unsigned int   not null,
  name         long varchar   not null,
  contents     long binary    not null,
  update_time  timestamp     not null
)
```

- **object\_id** A unique identifier that is generated by the database server.
- **extenv\_id** The extenv\_id identifies the external environment type (as stored in SYS.SYSEXTERNENV).
- **owner** The owner column identifies the creator/owner of the external object.
- **name** The name column is the name of the external object as specified in the INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT statement.
- **contents** The contents column contains the contents of the external object.
- **update\_time** The update\_time column represents the last time the object was modified (or installed).

### Deprecated options

With the introduction of the SYS.SYSEXTERNENV table, some Java-specific options have now been deprecated. These deprecated options are:

```
java_location
java_main_userid
```

Applications that have been using these options to identify which specific Java VM to use or which user ID to use for installing classes and other Java-related administrative tasks should use the ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement instead to set the location and user\_id values in the SYS.SYSEXTERNENV table for Java.

### SQL statements

The following SQL syntax allows you to set or modify values in the SYS.SYSEXTERNENV table.

```
ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT environment-name
  [ USER user-name ]
  [ LOCATION location-string ]
```

- **environment-name** The environment name is an identifier representing the name of the environment in SYS.SYSEXTERNENV. It is one of PERL, PHP, JAVA, CLR, C\_ESQL32, C\_ESQL64, C\_ODBC32, or C\_ODBC64.
- **user-name** The user name string identifies a user in the database who has DBA authority. When the external environment is initially launched, it must make a connection back to the database to set things up for the external environment's usage. By default, this connection is made using the DBA user ID, but if the database administrator prefers to have the external environment use a different user ID with DBA authority, then user-name would indicate the different user ID to be used. In most cases, this option need not be specified.
- **location-string** The location string identifies the location on the database server computer where the executable/binary for the external environment can be found. It includes the executable/binary name. This path can either be fully qualified or relative. If the path is relative, then the executable/binary must be in a location where the database server can find it.

Once an external environment is set up to be used on the database server, you can then install objects into the database and create stored procedures and functions that make use of these objects within the external environment. Installation, creation, and usage of these objects, stored procedures, and stored functions is very similar to the current method of installing Java classes and creating and using Java stored procedures and functions.

To add a comment for an external environment, you can execute:

```
COMMENT ON EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT environment-name
  IS comment-string
```

To install an external object (for example, a Perl script) from a file or an expression into the database, you would need to execute an INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT statement similar to the following:

```
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT object-name-string
  [ update-mode ]
  FROM { FILE file-path | VALUE expression }
  ENVIRONMENT environment-name
```

- **object-name-string** The object name string is the name by which the installed object is identified within the database.
- **update-mode** The update mode is either NEW or UPDATE. If the update mode is omitted, then NEW is assumed.
- **file-path** The file path is the location on the database server computer from where the object is installed.
- **environment-name** The environment name is one of JAVA, PERL, PHP, CLR, C\_ESQL32, C\_ESQL64, C\_ODBC32, or C\_ODBC64.

To add a comment for an installed external object, you can execute:

```
COMMENT ON EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT OBJECT object-name-string
  IS comment-string
```

To remove an installed external object from the database, you would need to use a REMOVE EXTERNAL OBJECT statement:

```
REMOVE EXTERNAL OBJECT object-name-string
```

- **object-name-string** The object name string is the same string that was specified in the corresponding INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT statement.

Once the external objects are installed in the database, they can be used within external stored procedure and function definitions (similar to the current mechanism for creating Java stored procedures and functions).

```
CREATE PROCEDURE procedure-name(...)
  EXTERNAL NAME '...'
  LANGUAGE environment-name
```

```
CREATE FUNCTION function-name(...)
  RETURNS ...
  EXTERNAL NAME '...'
  LANGUAGE environment-name
```

- **environment-name** The environment name is one of JAVA, PERL, PHP, CLR, C\_ESQL32, C\_ESQL64, C\_ODBC32, or C\_ODBC64.

Once these stored procedures and functions are created, they can be used like any other stored procedure or function in the database. The database server, when encountering an external environment stored procedure or function, automatically launches the external environment (if it has not already been started), and sends over whatever information is needed to get the external environment to fetch the external object from the database and execute it. Any result sets or return values resulting from the execution are returned as needed.

If you want to start or stop an external environment on demand, you can use the START EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT and STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statements (similar to the current START JAVA and STOP JAVA statements):

```
START EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT environment-name
STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT environment-name
```

- **environment-name** Environment name is one of JAVA, PERL, PHP, CLR, C\_ESQL32, C\_ESQL64, C\_ODBC32, or C\_ODBC64.

For more information, see:

- “ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT statement” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “REMOVE EXTERNAL OBJECT statement” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “COMMENT statement” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “CREATE FUNCTION statement (web services)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “CREATE PROCEDURE statement (web services)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “START EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]

## The CLR external environment

SQL Anywhere includes support for CLR stored procedures and functions. A CLR stored procedure or function behaves the same as a SQL stored procedure or function with the exception that the code for the procedure or function is written in a .NET language such as C# or Visual Basic, and the execution of the procedure or function takes place outside the database server (that is, within a separate .NET executable). There is only one instance of this .NET executable per database. All connections executing CLR functions and stored procedures use the same .NET executable instance, but the namespaces for each connection are separate. Statics persist for the duration of the connection, but are not shareable across connections. Only .NET version 2.0 is supported.

To call an external CLR function or procedure, you define a corresponding stored procedure or function with an EXTERNAL NAME string defining which DLL to load and which function within the assembly to call. You must also specify LANGUAGE CLR when defining the stored procedure or function. An example declaration follows:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE clr_stored_proc(
    IN p1 INT,
    IN p2 UNSIGNED SMALLINT,
    OUT p3 LONG VARCHAR)
EXTERNAL NAME 'MyCLRTest.dll::MyCLRTest.Run( int, ushort, out string )'
LANGUAGE CLR;
```

In this example, the stored procedure called `clr_stored_proc`, when executed, loads the DLL `MyCLRTest.dll` and calls the function `MyCLRTest.Run`. The `clr_stored_proc` procedure takes three SQL parameters, two IN parameters, one of type INT and one of type UNSIGNED SMALLINT, and one OUT parameter of type LONG VARCHAR. On the .NET side, these three parameters translate to input arguments of type int and ushort and an output argument of type string. In addition to out arguments, the CLR function can also have ref arguments. A user must declare a ref CLR argument if the corresponding stored procedure has an INOUT parameter.

The following table lists the various CLR argument types and the corresponding suggested SQL datatype:

CLR type	Recommended SQL data type
bool	bit
byte	tinyint
short	smallint
ushort	unsigned smallint
int	int
uint	unsigned int
long	bigint
ulong	unsigned bigint



CLR type	Recommended SQL data type
decimal	numeric
float	real
double	double
DateTime	timestamp
string	long varchar
byte[]	long binary

The declaration of the DLL can be either a relative or absolute path. If the specified path is relative, then the external .NET executable searches the path, and other locations, for the DLL. The executable does not search the Global Assembly Cache (GAC) for the DLL.

Like the existing Java stored procedures and functions, CLR stored procedures and functions can make server-side requests back to the database, and they can return result sets. Also, like Java, any information output to Console.Out and Console.Error is automatically redirected to the database server messages window.

For more information about how to make server-side requests and how to return result sets from a CLR function or stored procedure, refer to the samples located in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ExternalEnvironments\CLR* directory.

To use CLR in the database, make sure the database server is able to locate and start the CLR executable. You can verify if the database server is able to locate and start the CLR executable by executing the following statement:

```
START EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT CLR;
```

If the database server fails to start CLR, then the database server is likely not able to locate the CLR executable. The CLR executable is *dbextclr11.exe*. Make sure that this file is present in the *install-dir\Bin32* or *install-dir\Bin64* folder, depending on which version of the database server you are using.

Note that the `START EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT CLR` statement is not necessary other than to verify that the database server can launch CLR executables. In general, making a CLR stored procedure or function call starts CLR automatically.

Similarly, the `STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT CLR` statement is not necessary to stop an instance of CLR since the instance automatically goes away when the connection terminates. However, if you are completely done with CLR and you want to free up some resources, then the `STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT CLR` statement releases the CLR instance for your connection.

Unlike the Perl, PHP, and Java external environments, the CLR environment does not require the installation of anything in the database. As a result, you do not need to execute any `INSTALL` statements prior to using of the CLR external environment.

Here is an example of a function written in C# that can be run within an external environment.

```
public class StaticTest
{
    private static int val = 0;

    public static int GetValue() {
        val += 1;
        return val;
    }
}
```

When compiled into a dynamic link library, this function can be called from an external environment. An executable image called *dbextclr11.exe* is started by the database server and it loads the dynamic link library for you. Different versions of this executable are included with SQL Anywhere. For example, on Windows you may have both 32-bit and 64-bit executables. One is for use with the 32-bit version of the database server and the other for the 64-bit version of the database server.

To build this application into a dynamic link library using the Microsoft C# compiler, use a command like the following. The source code for the above example is assumed to reside in a file called *StaticTest.cs*.

```
csc /target:library /out:clrtest.dll StaticTest.cs
```

This command places the compiled code in a DLL called *clrtest.dll*. To call the compiled C# function, *GetValue*, a wrapper is defined as follows using Interactive SQL:

```
CREATE FUNCTION stc_get_value()
RETURNS INT
EXTERNAL NAME 'clrtest.dll::StaticTest.GetValue() int'
LANGUAGE CLR;
```

For CLR, the EXTERNAL NAME string is specified in a single line of SQL. You may be required to include the path to the DLL as part of the EXTERNAL NAME string so that it can be located. In the case of dependent assemblies (for example, if *myLib.dll* has code that calls functions in, or in some way depends on, *myOtherLib.dll*) then it is up to the .NET Framework to load the dependencies. The CLR External Environment will take care of loading the specified assembly, but extra steps might be required to ensure that dependent assemblies are loaded. One solution is to register all dependencies in the Global Assembly Cache (**GAC**) by using the Microsoft **gacutil** utility installed with the .NET Framework. In the case of custom-developed libraries, **gacutil** requires that these be signed with a strong name key before they can be registered in the **GAC**.

To execute the sample compiled C# function, execute the following statement.

```
SELECT stc_get_value();
```

Each time the C# function is called, a new integer result is produced. The sequence of values returned is 1, 2, 3, and so on.

For additional information and examples on using the CLR in the database support, refer to the examples located in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ExternalEnvironments\CLR* directory.

## The ESQL and ODBC external environments

SQL Anywhere has had the ability to call compiled native functions written in C or C++ for some time. However, when these procedures are run by the database server, the dynamic link library or shared object has always been loaded by the database server and the calls out to the native functions have always been made by the database server. While having the database server make these native calls is most efficient, there can be serious consequences if the native function misbehaves. In particular, if the native function enters an infinite loop, then the database server can hang, and if the native function causes a fault, then the database server crashes. As a result, you now have the option of running compiled native functions outside the database server, in an external environment. There are some key benefits to running a compiled native function in an external environment:

1. The database server does not hang or crash if the compiled native function misbehaves.
2. The native function can be written to use ODBC, Embedded SQL (ESQL), or the SQL Anywhere C API and can make server-side calls back into the database server without having to make a connection.
3. The native function can return a result set to the database server.
4. In the external environment, a 32-bit database server can communicate with a 64-bit compiled native function and vice versa. Note that this is not possible when the compiled native functions are loaded directly into the address space of the database server. A 32-bit library can only be loaded by a 32-bit server and a 64-bit library can only be loaded by a 64-bit server.

Running a compiled native function in an external environment instead of within the database server results in a small performance penalty.

Also, the compiled native function must use the native function call API to pass information to and return information from the native function. This API is described in [“SQL Anywhere External Function API” on page 669](#).

To run a compiled native C function in an external environment instead of within the database server, the stored procedure or function is defined with the EXTERNAL NAME clause followed by the LANGUAGE attribute specifying one of C\_ESQL32, C\_ESQL64, C\_ODBC32, or C\_ODBC64.

Unlike the Perl, PHP, and Java external environments, you do not install any source code or compiled objects in the database. As a result, you do not need to execute any INSTALL statements prior to using the ESQL and ODBC external environments.

Here is an example of a function written in C++ that can be run within the database server or in an external environment.

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include "extfnapi.h"

BOOL APIENTRY DllMain( HMODULE hModule,
                      DWORD ul_reason_for_call,
                      LPVOID lpReserved
                      )
{
    return TRUE;
}
```

```
    }

    // Note: extfn_use_new_api used only for
    // execution in the database server

extern "C" __declspec( dllexport )
a_sql_uint32 extfn_use_new_api( void )
{
    return( EXTFN_API_VERSION );
}

extern "C" __declspec( dllexport )
void SimpleCFunction(
    an_extfn_api *api,
    void *arg_handle )
{
    short          result;
    an_extfn_value arg;
    an_extfn_value retval;
    int *          intp;
    int            i, j, k;

    j = 1000;
    k = 0;
    for( i = 1; i <= 4; i++ )
    {
        result = api->get_value( arg_handle, i, &arg );
        if( result == 0 || arg.data == NULL ) break;
        if( arg.type & DT_TYPES != DT_INT ) break;
        intp = (int *) arg.data;
        k += *intp * j;
        j = j / 10;
    }
    retval.type = DT_INT;
    retval.data = (void*)&k;
    retval.piece_len = retval.len.total_len =
        (a_sql_uint32) sizeof( int );
    api->set_value( arg_handle, 0, &retval, 0 );
    return;
}
```

When compiled into a dynamic link library or shared object, this function can be called from an external environment. An executable image called *dbexternc11* is started by the database server and this executable image loads the dynamic link library or shared object for you. Different versions of this executable are included with SQL Anywhere. For example, on Windows you may have both 32-bit and 64-bit executables.

Note that 32-bit or 64-bit versions of the database server can be used and either version can start 32-bit or 64-bit versions of *dbexternc11*. This is one of the advantages of using the external environment. Note that once *dbexternc11* is started by the database server, it does not terminate until the connection has been terminated or a STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement (with the correct environment name) is executed. Each connection that does an external environment call will get its own copy of *dbexternc11*.

To call the compiled native function, SimpleCFunction, a wrapper is defined as follows:

```
CREATE FUNCTION SimpleCDemo(
    IN arg1 INT,
    IN arg2 INT,
    IN arg3 INT,
    IN arg4 INT )
RETURNS INT
```

```
EXTERNAL NAME 'SimpleCFunction@c:\\c\\extdemo.dll'
LANGUAGE C_ODBC32;
```

This is almost identical to the way a compiled native function is described when it is to be loaded into the database server's address space. The one difference is the use of the LANGUAGE C\_ODBC32 clause. This clause indicates that SimpleCDemo is a function running in an external environment and that it is using 32-bit ODBC calls. The language specification of C\_ESQL32, C\_ESQL64, C\_ODBC32, or C\_ODBC64 tells the database server whether the external C function issues 32-bit or 64-bit ODBC, ESQL, or SQL Anywhere C API calls when making server-side requests.

When the native function uses none of the ODBC, ESQL, or SQL Anywhere C API calls to make server-side requests, then either C\_ODBC32 or C\_ESQL32 can be used for 32-bit applications and either C\_ODBC64 or C\_ESQL64 can be used for 64-bit applications. This is the case in the external C function shown above. It does not use any of these APIs.

To execute the sample compiled native function, execute the following statement.

```
SELECT SimpleCDemo(1,2,3,4);
```

To use server-side ODBC, the C/C++ code must use the default database connection. To get a handle to the database connection, call `get_value` with an `EXTFN_CONNECTION_HANDLE_ARG_NUM` argument. The argument tells the database server to return the current external environment connection rather than opening a new one.

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include "odbc.h"
#include "extfnapi.h"

BOOL APIENTRY DllMain( HMODULE hModule,
    DWORD ul_reason_for_call,
    LPVOID lpReserved
    )
{
    return TRUE;
}

extern "C" __declspec( dllexport )
void ServerSideFunction( an_extfn_api *api, void *arg_handle )
{
    short          result;
    an_extfn_value arg;
    an_extfn_value retval;
    SQLRETURN      ret;

    ret = -1;
    // set up the return value struct
    retval.type = DT_INT;
    retval.data = (void*) &ret;
    retval.piece_len = retval.len.total_len =
        (a_sql_uint32) sizeof( int );

    result = api->get_value( arg_handle,
        EXTFN_CONNECTION_HANDLE_ARG_NUM,
        &arg );
    if( result == 0 || arg.data == NULL )
    {
        api->set_value( arg_handle, 0, &retval, 0 );
        return;
    }
}
```

```
HDBC dbc = (HDBC)arg.data;
HSTMT stmt = SQL_NULL_HSTMT;
ret = SQLAllocHandle( SQL_HANDLE_STMT, dbc, &stmt );
if( ret != SQL_SUCCESS ) return;
ret = SQLExecDirect( stmt,
    (SQLCHAR *) "INSERT INTO odbcTab "
        "SELECT table_id, table_name "
        "FROM SYS.SYSTAB", SQL_NTS );
if( ret == SQL_SUCCESS )
{
    SQLExecDirect( stmt,
        (SQLCHAR *) "COMMIT", SQL_NTS );
}
SQLFreeHandle( SQL_HANDLE_STMT, stmt );

api->set_value( arg_handle, 0, &retval, 0 );
return;
}
```

If the above ODBC code is stored in the file *extodbc.cpp*, it can be built for Windows using the following commands (assuming that the SQL Anywhere software is installed in the folder *c:\sa11* and that Microsoft Visual C++ is installed).

```
cl extodbc.cpp /LD /Ic:\sa11\sdk\include odbc32.lib
```

The following example creates a table, defines the stored procedure wrapper to call the compiled native function, and then calls the native function to populate the table.

```
CREATE TABLE odbcTab(c1 int, c2 char(128));

CREATE FUNCTION ServerSideODBC( )
RETURNS INT
EXTERNAL NAME 'ServerSideFunction@extodbc.dll'
LANGUAGE C_ODBC32;

SELECT ServerSideODBC();

// The following statement should return two identical rows
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM odbcTab
UNION ALL
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM SYS.SYSTAB;
```

Similarly, to use server-side ESQL, the C/C++ code must use the default database connection. To get a handle to the database connection, call *get\_value* with an *EXTFN\_CONNECTION\_HANDLE\_ARG\_NUM* argument. The argument tells the database server to return the current external environment connection rather than opening a new one.

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>

#include "sqlca.h"
#include "sqlda.h"
#include "extfnapi.h"

BOOL APIENTRY DllMain( HMODULE hModule,
    DWORD ul_reason_for_call,
    LPVOID lpReserved
)
{
    return TRUE;
}
```

```

}

EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
static SQLCA *_sqlc;
EXEC SQL SET SQLCA "_sqlc";
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR { ret = _sqlc->sqlcode; };

extern "C" __declspec( dllexport )
void ServerSideFunction( an_extfn_api *api, void *arg_handle )
{
    short                result;
    an_extfn_value       arg;
    an_extfn_value       retval;

    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char *stmt_text =
        "INSERT INTO esqlTab "
        "SELECT table_id, table_name "
        "FROM SYS.SYSTAB";
    char *stmt_commit =
        "COMMIT";
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    int ret = -1;

    // set up the return value struct
    retval.type = DT_INT;
    retval.data = (void*) &ret;
    retval.piece_len = retval.len.total_len =
        (a_sql_uint32) sizeof( int );

    result = api->get_value( arg_handle,
        EXTFN_CONNECTION_HANDLE_ARG_NUM,
        &arg );
    if( result == 0 || arg.data == NULL )
    {
        api->set_value( arg_handle, 0, &retval, 0 );
        return;
    }
    ret = 0;
    _sqlc = (SQLCA *)arg.data;

    EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :stmt_text;
    EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :stmt_commit;

    api->set_value( arg_handle, 0, &retval, 0 );
}

```

If the above embedded SQL code is stored in the file *extesql.sql*, it can be built for Windows using the following commands (assuming that the SQL Anywhere software is installed in the folder *c:\sa11* and that Microsoft Visual C++ is installed).

```

sqlpp extesql.sql extesql.cpp
cl extesql.cpp /LD /Ic:\sa11\sdk\include c:\sa11\sdk\lib\x86\dblibtm.lib

```

The following example creates a table, defines the stored procedure wrapper to call the compiled native function, and then calls the native function to populate the table.

```

CREATE TABLE esqlTab(c1 int, c2 char(128));

CREATE FUNCTION ServerSideESQL( )
RETURNS INT

```

```
EXTERNAL NAME 'ServerSideFunction@extesql.dll'  
LANGUAGE C_ESQL32;  
  
SELECT ServerSideESQL();  
  
// The following statement should return two identical rows  
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM esqlTab  
UNION ALL  
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM SYS.SYSTAB;
```

As in the previous examples, to use server-side SQL Anywhere C API calls, the C/C++ code must use the default database connection. To get a handle to the database connection, call `get_value` with an `EXTFN_CONNECTION_HANDLE_ARG_NUM` argument. The argument tells the database server to return the current external environment connection rather than opening a new one. The following example shows the framework for obtaining the connection handle, initializing the C API environment, and transforming the connection handle into a connection object (**a `sqlany_connection`**) that can be used with the SQL Anywhere C API.

```
#include <windows.h>  
#include "sacapidll.h"  
#include "extfnapi.h"  
  
BOOL APIENTRY DllMain( HMODULE hModule,  
    DWORD ul_reason_for_call,  
    LPVOID lpReserved  
    )  
{  
    return TRUE;  
}  
  
extern "C" __declspec( dllexport )  
void ServerSideFunction( an_extfn_api *extapi, void *arg_handle )  
{  
    short          result;  
    an_extfn_value arg;  
    an_extfn_value retval;  
    unsigned       offset;  
    char           *cmd;  
  
    SQLAnywhereInterface capi;  
    a_sqlany_connection * sqlany_conn;  
    unsigned int       max_api_ver;  
  
    result = extapi->get_value( arg_handle,  
        EXTFN_CONNECTION_HANDLE_ARG_NUM,  
        &arg );  
  
    if( result == 0 || arg.data == NULL )  
    {  
        return;  
    }  
    if( !sqlany_initialize_interface( &capi, NULL ) )  
    {  
        return;  
    }  
    if( !capi.sqlany_init( "MyAPP",  
        SQLANY_CURRENT_API_VERSION,  
        &max_api_ver ) )  
    {  
        sqlany_finalize_interface( &capi );  
        return;  
    }  
}
```



```

    sqlany_conn = sqlany_make_connection( arg.data );

    // processing code goes here

    capi.sqlany_fini();

    sqlany_finalize_interface( &capi );
    return;
}

```

If the above C code is stored in the file *extcapi.c*, it can be built for Windows using the following commands (assuming that the SQL Anywhere software is installed in the folder *c:\sa11* and that Microsoft Visual C++ is installed).

```

cl /LD /Tp extcapi.c /Tp c:\sa11\SDK\C\sacapidll.c /Ic:\sa11\SDK\Include c:
\sall\SDK\Lib\X86\dbcapi.lib

```

The following example defines the stored procedure wrapper to call the compiled native function, and then calls the native function.

```

CREATE FUNCTION ServerSideC()
RETURNS INT
EXTERNAL NAME 'ServerSideFunction@extcapi.dll'
LANGUAGE C_ESQL32;

SELECT ServerSideC();

```

The LANGUAGE attribute in the above example specifies C\_ESQL32. For 64-bit applications, you would use C\_ESQL64. You must use the embedded SQL language attribute since the SQL Anywhere C API is built on the same layer (library) as ESQL.

As mentioned earlier, each connection that does an external environment call will start its own copy of *dbexternc11*. This executable application is loaded automatically by the server the first time an external environment call is made. However, you can use the START EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement to preload *dbexternc11*. This is useful if you want to avoid the slight delay that is incurred when an external environment call is executed for the first time. Here is an example of the statement.

```

START EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT C_ESQL64

```

Another case where preloading *dbexternc11* is useful is when you want to debug your external function. You can use the debugger to attach to the running *dbexternc11* process and set breakpoints in your external function.

The STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement is useful when updating a dynamic link library or shared object. It will terminate the native library loader, *dbexternc11*, for the current connection thereby releasing access to the dynamic link library or shared object. If multiple connections are using the same dynamic link library or shared object then each of their copies of *dbexternc11* must be terminated. The appropriate external environment name must be specified in the STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement. Here is an example of the statement.

```

STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT C_ESQL64

```

To return a result set from an external function, the compiled native function must use the native function call API. This API is fully described in [“SQL Anywhere External Function API” on page 669](#). The following are some of the highlights for returning result sets.

The following code fragment shows how to set up a result set information structure. It contains a column count, a pointer to an array of column information structures, and a pointer to an array of column data value structures. The example also uses the SQL Anywhere C API.

```
an_extfn_result_set_info    rs_info;

int columns = capi.sqlany_num_cols( sqlany_stmt );

an_extfn_result_set_column_info *col_info =
    (an_extfn_result_set_column_info *)
    malloc( columns * sizeof(an_extfn_result_set_column_info) );

an_extfn_result_set_column_data *col_data =
    (an_extfn_result_set_column_data *)
    malloc( columns * sizeof(an_extfn_result_set_column_data) );

rs_info.number_of_columns    = columns;
rs_info.column_infos         = col_info;
rs_info.column_data_values   = col_data;
```

The following code fragment shows how to describe the result set. It uses the SQL Anywhere C API to obtain column information for a SQL query that was executed previously by the C API. The information that is obtained from the SQL Anywhere C API for each column is transformed into a column name, type, width, index, and null value indicator that will be used to describe the result set.

```
a_sqlany_column_info    info;
for( int i = 0; i < columns; i++ )
{
    if( sqlany_get_column_info( sqlany_stmt, i, &info ) )
    {
        // set up a column description
        col_info[i].column_name = info.name;
        col_info[i].column_type = info.native_type;
        switch( info.native_type )
        {
            case DT_DATE:           // DATE is converted to string by C API
            case DT_TIME:           // TIME is converted to string by C API
            case DT_TIMESTAMP:      // TIMESTAMP is converted to string by C API
            case DT_DECIMAL:        // DECIMAL is converted to string by C API
                col_info[i].column_type = DT_FIXCHAR;
                break;
            case DT_FLOAT:          // FLOAT is converted to double by C API
                col_info[i].column_type = DT_DOUBLE;
                break;
            case DT_BIT:           // BIT is converted to tinyint by C API
                col_info[i].column_type = DT_TINYINT;
                break;
        }
        col_info[i].column_width = info.max_size;
        col_info[i].column_index = i + 1; // column indices are origin 1
        col_info[i].column_can_be_null = info.nullable;
    }
}
// send the result set description
if( extapi->set_value( arg_handle,
                    EXTFN_RESULT_SET_ARG_NUM,
                    (an_extfn_value *)&rs_info,
                    EXTFN_RESULT_SET_DESCRIBE ) == 0 )
{
    // failed
    free( col_info );
    free( col_data );
}
```

```

    }
    return;
}

```

Once the result set has been described, the result set rows can be returned. The following code fragment shows how to return the rows of the result set. It uses the SQL Anywhere C API to fetch the rows for a SQL query that was executed previously by the C API. The rows returned by the SQL Anywhere C API are sent back, one at a time, to the calling environment. The array of column data value structures must be filled in before returning each row. The column data value structure consists of a column index, a pointer to a data value, a data length, and an append flag.

```

a_sqlany_data_value *value = (a_sqlany_data_value *)
    malloc( columns * sizeof(a_sqlany_data_value) );

while( capi.sqlany_fetch_next( sqlany_stmt ) )
{
    for( int i = 0; i < columns; i++ )
    {
        if( capi.sqlany_get_column( sqlany_stmt, i, &value[i] ) )
        {
            col_data[i].column_index = i + 1;
            col_data[i].column_data = value[i].buffer;
            col_data[i].data_length = (a_sql_uint32)*(value[i].length);
            col_data[i].append = 0;
            if( *(value[i].is_null) )
            {
                // Received a NULL value
                col_data[i].column_data = NULL;
            }
        }
    }
    if( extapi->set_value( arg_handle,
        EXTFN_RESULT_SET_ARG_NUM,
        (an_extfn_value *)&rs_info,
        EXTFN_RESULT_SET_NEW_ROW_FLUSH ) == 0 )
    {
        // failed
        free( value );
        free( col_data );
        free( col_data );
        extapi->set_value( arg_handle, 0, &retval, 0 );
        return;
    }
}

```

For additional information, see [“SQL Anywhere External Function API” on page 669](#).

For more information on how to make server-side requests and how to return result sets from an external function, refer to the samples in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ExternalEnvironments\ExternC*.

## The Java external environment

SQL Anywhere includes support for Java stored procedures and functions. A Java stored procedure or function behaves the same as a SQL stored procedure or function with the exception that the code for the procedure or function is written in Java and the execution of the procedure or function takes place outside the database server (that is, within a Java Virtual Machine environment). It should be noted that there is once instance of the Java VM for each database rather than one instance per connection. Java stored procedures can return result sets.

There are a few prerequisites to using Java in the database support:

1. A copy of the Java Runtime Environment must be installed on the database server computer.
2. The SQL Anywhere database server must be able to locate the Java executable (the Java VM).

To use Java in the database, make sure that the database server is able to locate and start the Java executable. Verify that this can be done by executing:

```
START EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT JAVA;
```

If the database server fails to start Java then the problem probably occurs because the database server is not able to locate the Java executable. In this case, you should execute an ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement to explicitly set the location of the Java executable. Make sure to include the executable file name.

```
ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT JAVA  
  LOCATION 'java-path';
```

For example:

```
ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT JAVA  
  LOCATION 'c:\\jdk1.6.0\\jre\\bin\\java.exe';
```

Note that the START EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT JAVA statement is not necessary other than to verify that the database server can start the Java VM. In general, making a Java stored procedure or function call starts the Java VM automatically.

Similarly, the STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT JAVA statement is not necessary to stop an instance of Java since the instance automatically goes away when the all connections to the database have terminated. However, if you are completely done with Java and you want to make it possible to free up some resources, then the STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT JAVA statement decrements the usage count for the Java VM.

Once you have verified that the database server can start the Java VM executable, the next thing to do is to install the necessary Java class code into the database. Do this by using the INSTALL JAVA statement. For example, you can execute the following statement to install a Java class from a file into the database.

```
INSTALL JAVA  
NEW  
FROM FILE 'java-class-file';
```

You can also install a Java JAR file into the database.

```
INSTALL JAVA  
NEW
```

```
JAR 'jar-name'  
FROM FILE 'jar-file';
```

Java classes can be installed from a variable, as follows:

```
CREATE VARIABLE JavaClass LONG VARCHAR;  
SET JavaClass = xp_read_file('java-class-file')  
INSTALL JAVA  
NEW  
FROM JavaClass;
```

Java JAR files can be installed from a variable, as follows:

```
CREATE VARIABLE JavaJar LONG VARCHAR;  
SET JavaJar = xp_read_file('jar-file')  
INSTALL JAVA  
NEW  
JAR 'jar-name'  
FROM JavaJar;
```

To remove a Java class from the database, use the REMOVE JAVA statement, as follows:

```
REMOVE JAVA CLASS 'java-class'
```

To remove a Java JAR from the database, use the REMOVE JAVA statement, as follows:

```
REMOVE JAVA JAR 'jar-name'
```

To modify existing Java classes, you can use the UPDATE clause of the INSTALL JAVA statement, as follows:

```
INSTALL JAVA  
UPDATE  
FROM FILE 'java-class-file'
```

You can also update existing Java JAR files in the database.

```
INSTALL JAVA  
UPDATE  
JAR 'jar-name'  
FROM FILE 'jar-file';
```

Java classes can be updated from a variable, as follows:

```
CREATE VARIABLE JavaClass LONG VARCHAR;  
SET JavaClass = xp_read_file('java-class-file')  
INSTALL JAVA  
UPDATE  
FROM JavaClass;
```

Java JAR files can be updated from a variable, as follows:

```
CREATE VARIABLE JavaJar LONG VARCHAR;  
SET JavaJar = xp_read_file('jar-file')  
INSTALL JAVA  
UPDATE  
FROM JavaJar;
```

Once the Java class is installed in the database, you can then create stored procedures and functions to interface to the Java methods. The EXTERNAL NAME string contains the information needed to call the

Java method and to return OUT parameters and return values. The LANGUAGE attribute of the EXTERNAL NAME clause must specify JAVA. The format of the EXTERNAL NAME clause is:

EXTERNAL NAME '*java-call*' LANGUAGE JAVA

*java-call* :  
 [*package-name*].*class-name*.*method-name* *method-signature*

*method-signature* :  
 ([ *field-descriptor*, ... ] ) *return-descriptor*

*field-descriptor* and *return-descriptor* :

**Z**  
**| B**  
**| S**  
**| I**  
**| J**  
**| F**  
**| D**  
**| C**  
**| V**  
**| [descriptor**  
**| Lclass-name;**

A Java method signature is a compact character representation of the types of the parameters and the type of the return value. If the number of parameters is less than the number indicated in the method-signature then the difference must equal the number specified in DYNAMIC RESULT SETS, and each parameter in the method signature in excess of those in the procedure parameter list must have a method signature of [L*java/SQL/ResultSet* ; .

The *field-descriptor* and *return-descriptor* have the following meanings:

Field type	Java data type
B	byte
C	char
D	double
F	float
I	int
J	long
L <i>class-name</i> ;	an instance of the class <i>class-name</i> . The class name must be fully qualified, and any dot in the name must be replaced by a /. For example, <i>java/lang/String</i>
S	short
V	void

Field type	Java data type
Z	Boolean
[	use one for each dimension of an array

For example,

```
double some_method(
    boolean a,
    int b,
    java.math.BigDecimal c,
    byte [][] d,
    java.sql.ResultSet[] rs ) {
}
```

would have the following signature:

```
'(ZILjava/math/BigDecimal;[[B[Ljava/SQL/ResultSet;)D'
```

The following procedure creates an interface to a Java method. The Java method does not return any value (V).

```
CREATE PROCEDURE insertfix()
EXTERNAL NAME 'JDBCExample.InsertFixed()V'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

The following procedure creates an interface to a Java method that has a String ([Ljava/lang/String;) input argument. The Java method does not return any value (V).

```
CREATE PROCEDURE InvoiceMain( IN arg1 CHAR(50) )
EXTERNAL NAME 'Invoice.main([Ljava/lang/String;)V'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

The following procedure creates an interface to a Java method Invoice.init which takes a string argument (Ljava/lang/String;), a double (D), another string argument (Ljava/lang/String;), and another double (D), and returns no value (V).

```
CREATE PROCEDURE init( IN arg1 CHAR(50),
                      IN arg2 DOUBLE,
                      IN arg3 CHAR(50),
                      IN arg4 DOUBLE)
EXTERNAL NAME 'Invoice.init(Ljava/lang/String;DLjava/lang/String;D)V'
LANGUAGE JAVA
```

For more information about calling Java methods, see [“Accessing methods in the Java class” on page 95](#).

For more information on returning result sets, see [“Returning result sets from Java methods” on page 103](#).

The following Java example takes a string and writes it to the database server messages window:

```
import java.io.*;

public class Hello
{
    public static void main( String[] args )
    {
        System.out.print( "Hello" );
        for ( int i = 0; i < args.length; i++ )
```

```
        System.out.print( " " + args[i] );
        System.out.println();
    }
}
```

The Java code above is placed in the file *Hello.java* and compiled using the Java compiler. The class file that results is loaded into the database as follows.

```
INSTALL JAVA
NEW
FROM FILE 'Hello.class';
```

Using Interactive SQL, the stored procedure that will interface to the method `main` in the class `Hello` is created as follows:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE HelloDemo( IN name LONG VARCHAR )
EXTERNAL NAME 'Hello.main([Ljava/lang/String;)V'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

Note that the argument to `main` is described as an array of `java.lang.String`. Using Interactive SQL, test the interface by executing the following SQL statement.

```
CALL HelloDemo('SQL Anywhere');
```

If you check the database server messages window, you will find the message written there. All output to `System.out` is redirected to the server messages window.

For additional information and examples on using the Java in the database support, refer to [“Java support in SQL Anywhere” on page 77](#).



## The PERL external environment

SQL Anywhere includes support for Perl stored procedures and functions. A Perl stored procedure or function behaves the same as a SQL stored procedure or function with the exception that the code for the procedure or function is written in Perl and the execution of the procedure or function takes place outside the database server (that is, within a Perl executable instance). It should be noted that there is a separate instance of the Perl executable for each connection that uses Perl stored procedures and functions. This behavior is different from Java stored procedures and functions. In the case of Java, there is once instance of the Java VM for each database rather than one instance per connection. The other major difference between Perl and Java is that Perl stored procedures do not return result sets, whereas Java stored procedures can return result sets.

There are a few prerequisites to using Perl in the database support:

1. Perl must be installed on the database server computer and the SQL Anywhere database server must be able to locate the Perl executable.
2. The DBD::SQLAnywhere driver must be installed on the database server computer.
3. On Windows, Microsoft Visual Studio must also be installed. This is a prerequisite since it is necessary for installing the DBD::SQLAnywhere driver.

For more information about installing the DBD::SQLAnywhere driver, see [“SQL Anywhere Perl DBD::SQLAnywhere DBI module” on page 721](#).

In addition to the above prerequisites, the database administrator must also install the SQL Anywhere Perl External Environment module. To install the external environment module:

### To install the external environment module (Windows)

- Run the following commands from the *SDK\PerlEnv* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation:

```
perl Makefile.PL
nmake
nmake install
```

### To install the external environment module (Unix)

- Run the following commands from the *sdk/perlenv* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation:

```
perl Makefile.PL
make
make install
```

Once the Perl external environment module has been built and installed, the Perl in the database support can be used. Note that Perl in the database support is only available with SQL Anywhere version 11 or later databases. If a SQL Anywhere 10 database is loaded, then an error indicating that external environments are not supported is returned when you try to use the Perl in the database support.

To use Perl in the database, make sure that the database server is able to locate and start the Perl executable. Verify that this can be done by executing:

```
START EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT PERL;
```

If the database server fails to start Perl, then the problem probably occurs because the database server is not able to locate the Perl executable. In this case, you should execute an ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement to explicitly set the location of the Perl executable. Make sure to include the executable file name.

```
ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT PERL
LOCATION 'perl-path';
```

For example:

```
ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT PERL
LOCATION 'c:\\Perl\\bin\\perl.exe';
```

Note that the START EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT PERL statement is not necessary other than to verify that the database server can start Perl. In general, making a Perl stored procedure or function call starts Perl automatically.

Similarly, the STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT PERL statement is not necessary to stop an instance of Perl since the instance automatically goes away when the connection terminates. However, if you are completely done with Perl and you want to free up some resources, then the STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT PERL statement releases the Perl instance for your connection.

Once you have verified that the database server can start the Perl executable, the next thing to do is to install the necessary Perl code into the database. Do this by using the INSTALL statement. For example, you can execute the following statement to install a Perl script from a file into the database.

```
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'perl-script'
NEW
FROM FILE 'perl-file'
ENVIRONMENT PERL;
```

Perl code also can be built and installed from an expression, as follows:

```
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'perl-script'
NEW
FROM VALUE 'perl-statements'
ENVIRONMENT PERL;
```

Perl code also can be built and installed from a variable, as follows:

```
CREATE VARIABLE PerlVariable LONG VARCHAR;
SET PerlVariable = 'perl-statements';
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'perl-script'
NEW
FROM VALUE PerlVariable
ENVIRONMENT PERL;
```

To remove Perl code from the database, use the REMOVE statement, as follows:

```
REMOVE EXTERNAL OBJECT 'perl-script'
```

To modify existing Perl code, you can use the UPDATE clause of the INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT statement, as follows:

```
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'perl-script'
UPDATE
FROM FILE 'perl-file'
ENVIRONMENT PERL
```

```

INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'perl-script'
UPDATE
FROM VALUE 'perl-statements'
ENVIRONMENT PERL

SET PerlVariable = 'perl-statements';
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'perl-script'
UPDATE
FROM VALUE PerlVariable
ENVIRONMENT PERL

```

Once the Perl code is installed in the database, you can then create the necessary Perl stored procedures and functions. When creating Perl stored procedures and functions, the LANGUAGE is always PERL and the EXTERNAL NAME string contains the information needed to call the Perl subroutines and to return OUT parameters and return values. The following global variables are available to the Perl code on each call:

- **\$sa\_perl\_return** This is used to set the return value for a function call.
- **\$sa\_perl\_argN** where N is a positive integer [0 .. n]. This is used for passing the SQL arguments down to the Perl code. For example, \$sa\_perl\_arg0 refers to argument 0, \$sa\_perl\_arg1 refers to argument 1, and so on.
- **\$sa\_perl\_default\_connection** This is used for making server-side Perl calls.
- **\$sa\_output\_handle** This is used for sending output from the Perl code to the database server messages window.

A Perl stored procedure can be created with any set of data types for input and output arguments, and for the return value. However, all non-binary datatypes are mapped to strings when making the Perl call while binary data is mapped to an array of numbers. A simple Perl example follows:

```

INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'SimplePerlExample'
NEW
FROM VALUE 'sub SimplePerlSub{
    return( ($_[0] * 1000) +
            ($_[1] * 100) +
            ($_[2] * 10) +
            $_[3] );
}'
ENVIRONMENT PERL;

CREATE FUNCTION SimplePerlDemo(
    IN thousands INT,
    IN hundreds INT,
    IN tens INT,
    IN ones INT)
RETURNS INT
EXTERNAL NAME '<file=SimplePerlExample>'
    $sa_perl_return = SimplePerlSub(
        $sa_perl_arg0,
        $sa_perl_arg1,
        $sa_perl_arg2,
        $sa_perl_arg3)'
LANGUAGE PERL;

// The number 1234 should appear
SELECT SimplePerlDemo(1,2,3,4);

```

The following Perl example takes a string and writes it to the database server messages window:

```
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'PerlConsoleExample'  
NEW  
FROM VALUE 'sub WriteToServerConsole { print $sa_output_handle $_[0]; }'  
ENVIRONMENT PERL;  
  
CREATE PROCEDURE PerlWriteToConsole( IN str LONG VARCHAR)  
EXTERNAL NAME '<file=PerlConsoleExample>  
WriteToServerConsole( $sa_perl_arg0 )'  
LANGUAGE PERL;  
  
// 'Hello world' should appear in the database server messages window  
CALL PerlWriteToConsole( 'Hello world' );
```

To use server-side Perl, the Perl code must use the `$sa_perl_default_connection` variable. The following example creates a table and then calls a Perl stored procedure to populate the table:

```
CREATE TABLE perlTab(c1 int, c2 char(128));  
  
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'ServerSidePerlExample'  
NEW  
FROM VALUE 'sub ServerSidePerlSub  
{ $sa_perl_default_connection->do(  
  "INSERT INTO perlTab SELECT table_id, table_name FROM SYS.SYSTAB" );  
  $sa_perl_default_connection->do(  
    "COMMIT" );  
}'  
ENVIRONMENT PERL;  
  
CREATE PROCEDURE PerlPopulateTable()  
EXTERNAL NAME '<file=ServerSidePerlExample> ServerSidePerlSub()'  
LANGUAGE PERL;  
  
CALL PerlPopulateTable();  
  
// The following should return 2 identical rows  
SELECT count(*) FROM perlTab  
UNION ALL  
SELECT count(*) FROM SYS.SYSTAB;
```

For additional information and examples on using the Perl in the database support, refer to the examples located in the `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ExternalEnvironments\Perl` directory.

## The PHP external environment

SQL Anywhere includes support for PHP stored procedures and functions. A PHP stored procedure or function behaves the same as a SQL stored procedure or function with the exception that the code for the procedure or function is written in PHP and the execution of the procedure or function takes place outside the database server (that is, within a PHP executable instance). There is a separate instance of the PHP executable for each connection that uses PHP stored procedures and functions. This behavior is quite different from Java stored procedures and functions. In the case of Java, there is once instance of the Java VM for each database rather than one instance per connection. The other major difference between PHP and Java is that PHP stored procedures do not return result sets, whereas Java stored procedures can return result sets. PHP only returns an object of type LONG VARCHAR, which is the output of the PHP script.

There are two prerequisites to using PHP in the database support:

1. A copy of PHP must be installed on the database server computer and SQL Anywhere database server must be able to locate the PHP executable.
2. The SQL Anywhere PHP driver (shipped with SQL Anywhere) must be installed on the database server computer. See [“Installing and configuring SQL Anywhere PHP” on page 741](#).

In addition to the above two prerequisites, the database administrator must also install the SQL Anywhere PHP External Environment module. Prebuilt modules for several versions of PHP are included with the SQL Anywhere distribution. To install prebuilt modules, copy the appropriate driver module to your PHP extensions directory (which can be found in *php.ini*). On Unix, you can also use a symbolic link.

### To install the external environment module (Windows)

1. Locate the *php.ini* file for your PHP installation, and open it in a text editor. Locate the line that specifies the location of the **extension\_dir** directory. If **extension\_dir** is not set to any specific directory, it is a good idea to set it to point to an isolated directory for better system security.
2. Copy the desired external environment PHP module from the SQL Anywhere installation directory to your PHP extensions directory. The following is a model to use:

```
copy install-dir\Bin32\php-5.2.6_sqlanywhere_extenv11.dll
php-dir\ext
```

3. Make sure that you have also installed the SQL Anywhere PHP driver from the SQL Anywhere installation directory into your PHP extensions directory. This file name follows the pattern *php-5.x.y\_sqlanywhere.dll* where *x* and *y* are the version numbers. It should match the version numbers of the file that you copied in step 2.

### To install the external environment module (Unix)

1. Locate the *php.ini* file for your PHP installation, and open it in a text editor. Locate the line that specifies the location of the **extension\_dir** directory. If **extension\_dir** is not set to any specific directory, it is a good idea to set it to point to an isolated directory for better system security.
2. Copy the desired external environment PHP module from the SQL Anywhere installation directory to your PHP installation directory. The following is a model to use:

```
cp install-dir/bin32/php-5.2.6_sqlanywhere_extenv11.so
php-dir/ext
```

3. Make sure that you have also installed the SQL Anywhere PHP driver from the SQL Anywhere installation directory into your PHP extensions directory. This file name follows the pattern *php-5.x.y\_sqlanywhere.so* where x and y are the version numbers. It should match the version numbers of the file that you copied in step 2.

PHP in the database support is only available with SQL Anywhere version 11 or later databases. If a SQL Anywhere 10 database is loaded, then an error indicating that external environments are not supported is returned when you try to use the PHP in the database support.

To use PHP in the database, the database server must be able to locate and start the PHP executable. You can verify if the database server is able to locate and start the PHP executable by executing the following statement:

```
START EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT PHP;
```

If you see a message that states that 'external executable' could not be found, then the problem is that the database server is not able to locate the PHP executable. In this case, you should execute an ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement to explicitly set the location of the PHP executable including the executable name or you should ensure that the PATH environment variable includes the directory containing the PHP executable.

```
ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT PHP
LOCATION 'php-path';
```

For example:

```
ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT PHP
LOCATION 'c:\\php\\php-5.2.6-win32\\php.exe';
```

To restore the default setting, execute the following statement:

```
ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT PHP
LOCATION 'php';
```

If you see a message that states that 'main thread' could not be found, then check for the following:

- Make sure that both the *php-5.x.y\_sqlanywhere* and *php-5.x.y\_sqlanywhere\_extenv11* modules are located in the directory indicated by **extension\_dir**. Check the installation steps described above.
- Make sure that *phpenv.php* can be located. Check that the SQL Anywhere *bin32* folder is in your PATH.
- For Windows, make sure that the 32-bit DLLs (*dbcapi.dll*, *dblib11.dll*, *dbicu11.dll*, *dbicudt11.dll*, *dblgen11.dll*, and *dbxtenv11.dll*) can be located. Check that the SQL Anywhere *bin32* folder is in your PATH.
- For Linux, Unix, and Mac OS X make sure that the 32-bit shared objects (*libdbcapi\_r*, *libdblib11\_r*, *libdbicu11\_r*, *libdbicudt11*, *dblgen11.res*, and *libdbxtenv11\_r*) can be located. Check that the SQL Anywhere *bin32* folder is in your PATH.
- Make sure that the environment variable **PHPRC** is not set, or make sure that it points to the version of PHP that you intend to use.

The START EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT PHP statement is not necessary other than to verify that the database server can start PHP. In general, making a PHP stored procedure or function call starts PHP automatically.

Similarly, the STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT PHP statement is not necessary to stop an instance of PHP since the instance automatically goes away when the connection terminates. However, if you are completely done with PHP and you want to free up some resources, then the STOP EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT PHP statement releases the PHP instance for your connection.

Once you have verified that the database server can start the PHP executable, the next thing to do is to install the necessary PHP code into the database. Do this by using the INSTALL statement. For example, you can execute the following statement to install a particular PHP script into the database.

```
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'php-script'  
NEW  
FROM FILE 'php-file'  
ENVIRONMENT PHP;
```

PHP code can also be built and installed from an expression as follows:

```
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'php-script'  
NEW  
FROM VALUE 'php-statements'  
ENVIRONMENT PHP;
```

PHP code can also be built and installed from a variable as follows:

```
CREATE VARIABLE PHPVariable LONG VARCHAR;  
SET PHPVariable = 'php-statements';  
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'php-script'  
NEW  
FROM VALUE PHPVariable  
ENVIRONMENT PHP;
```

To remove PHP code from the database, use the REMOVE statement as follows:

```
REMOVE EXTERNAL OBJECT 'php-script';
```

To modify existing PHP code, you can use the UPDATE clause of the INSTALL statement as follows:

```
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'php-script'  
UPDATE  
FROM FILE 'php-file'  
ENVIRONMENT PHP;  
  
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'php-script'  
UPDATE  
FROM VALUE 'php-statements'  
ENVIRONMENT PHP;  
  
SET PHPVariable = 'php-statements';  
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'php-script'  
UPDATE  
FROM VALUE PHPVariable  
ENVIRONMENT PHP;
```

Once the PHP code is installed in the database, you can then go ahead and create the necessary PHP stored procedures and functions. When creating PHP stored procedures and functions, the LANGUAGE is always PHP and the EXTERNAL NAME string contains the information needed to call the PHP subroutines and for returning OUT parameters.

The arguments are passed to the PHP script in the \$argv array, similar to the way PHP would take arguments from the command line (that is, \$argv[1] is the first argument). To set an output parameter, assign it to the appropriate \$argv element. The return value is always the output from the script (as a LONG VARCHAR).

A PHP stored procedure can be created with any set of datatypes for input or output arguments. However, the parameters are converted to and from a boolean, integer, double, or string for use inside the PHP script. The return value is always an object of type LONG VARCHAR. A simple PHP example follows:

```
INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'SimplePHPExample'
NEW
FROM VALUE '<? function SimplePHPFunction(
    $arg1, $arg2, $arg3, $arg4 )
    { return ($arg1 * 1000) +
      ($arg2 * 100) +
      ($arg3 * 10) +
      $arg4;
    } ?>'
ENVIRONMENT PHP;

CREATE FUNCTION SimplePHPDemo(
    IN thousands INT,
    IN hundreds INT,
    IN tens INT,
    IN ones INT)
RETURNS LONG VARCHAR
EXTERNAL NAME '<file=SimplePHPExample> print SimplePHPFunction(
    $argv[1], $argv[2], $argv[3], $argv[4]);'
LANGUAGE PHP;

// The number 1234 should appear
SELECT SimplePHPDemo(1,2,3,4);
```

For PHP, the EXTERNAL NAME string is specified in a single line of SQL.

To use server-side PHP, the PHP code can use the default database connection. To get a handle to the database connection, call `sasql_pconnect` with an empty string argument (" or ""). The empty string argument tells the SQL Anywhere PHP driver to return the current external environment connection rather than opening a new one. The following example creates a table and then calls a PHP stored procedure to populate the table:

```
CREATE TABLE phpTab(c1 int, c2 char(128));

INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'ServerSidePHPExample'
NEW
FROM VALUE '<? function ServerSidePHPSub() {
    $conn = sasql_pconnect( '' );
    sasql_query( $conn,
    "INSERT INTO phpTab
    SELECT table_id, table_name FROM SYS.SYSTAB" );
    sasql_commit( $conn );
} ?>'
ENVIRONMENT PHP;

CREATE PROCEDURE PHPPopulateTable()
EXTERNAL NAME '<file=ServerSidePHPExample> ServerSidePHPSub()'
LANGUAGE PHP;

CALL PHPPopulateTable();

// The following should return 2 identical rows
SELECT count(*) FROM phpTab
UNION ALL
SELECT count(*) FROM SYS.SYSTAB;
```



For PHP, the EXTERNAL NAME string is specified in a single line of SQL. In the above example, note that the single quotes are doubled-up because of the way quotes are parsed in SQL. If the PHP source code was in a file, then the single quotes would not be doubled-up.

To return an error back to the database server, throw a PHP exception. The following example shows how to do this.

```
CREATE TABLE phpTab(c1 int, c2 char(128));

INSTALL EXTERNAL OBJECT 'ServerSidePHPExample'
NEW
FROM VALUE '<? function ServerSidePHPSub() {
    $conn = sasql_pconnect( '' );
    if( !sasql_query( $conn,
        "INSERT INTO phpTabNoExist
            SELECT table_id, table_name FROM SYS.SYSTAB" )
    ) throw new Exception(
        sasql_error( $conn ),
        sasql_errorcode( $conn )
    );
    sasql_commit( $conn );
} ?>'
ENVIRONMENT PHP;

CREATE PROCEDURE PHPPopulateTable()
EXTERNAL NAME
    '<file=ServerSidePHPExample> ServerSidePHPSub()'
LANGUAGE PHP;

CALL PHPPopulateTable();
```

The above example should terminate with error `SQLU_UNHANDLED_EXTENV_EXCEPTION` indicating that the table `phpTabNoExist` could not be found.

For additional information and examples on using the PHP in the database support, refer to the examples located in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\ExternalEnvironments\PHP* directory.

---

---

# SQL Anywhere Perl DBD::SQLAnywhere DBI module

## Contents

Introduction to DBD::SQLAnywhere .....	722
Installing DBD::SQLAnywhere on Windows .....	723
Installing DBD::SQLAnywhere on Unix and Mac OS X .....	725
Writing Perl scripts that use DBD::SQLAnywhere .....	727

---

## Introduction to DBD::SQLAnywhere

The DBD::SQLAnywhere interface provides access to SQL Anywhere databases from scripts written in Perl. DBD::SQLAnywhere is a driver for the Database Independent Interface for Perl (DBI) module written by Tim Bunce. Once you have installed the DBI module and DBD::SQLAnywhere, you can access and change the information in SQL Anywhere databases from Perl.

The DBD::SQLAnywhere driver is thread-safe when using Perl with ithreads.

### Requirements

The DBD::SQLAnywhere interface requires the following components.

- Perl 5.6.0 or newer. On Windows, ActivePerl 5.6.0 build 616 or later is required.
- DBI 1.34 or newer.
- A C compiler. On Windows, only the Microsoft Visual C++ compiler is supported.

The following sections provide assistance with installing Perl, DBI, and the DBD::SQLAnywhere driver software.

# Installing DBD::SQLAnywhere on Windows

## To prepare your computer

1. Install ActivePerl 5.6.0 or later. You can use the ActivePerl installer to install Perl and configure your computer. You do not need to recompile Perl.
2. Install Microsoft Visual Studio and configure your environment.

If you did not choose to configure your environment at install time, you must set your PATH, LIB, and INCLUDE environment variables correctly before proceeding. Microsoft provides a batch file for this purpose. For example, a batch file called *vcvars32.bat* is included in the *vc\bin* subdirectory of the Visual Studio 2005 or 2008 installation. Open a new system command prompt and run this batch file before continuing.

## To install the DBI Perl module on Windows

1. At a command prompt, change to the *bin* subdirectory of your ActivePerl installation directory.

The system command prompt is strongly recommended as the following steps may not work from alternative shells.

2. Using the Perl Module Manager, enter the following command.

```
ppm query dbi
```

If ppm fails to run, check that Perl is installed correctly.

This command should generate two lines of text similar to those shown below. In this case, the information indicates that ActivePerl version 5.8.1 build 807 is running and that DBI version 1.38 is installed.

```
Querying target 1 (ActivePerl 5.8.1.807)
  1. DBI [1.38] Database independent interface for Perl
```

Later versions of Perl may show instead a table similar to the following. In this case, the information indicates that DBI version 1.58 is installed.

name	version	abstract	area
DBI	1.58	Database independent interface for Perl	perl

If DBI is not installed, you must install it. To do so, enter the following command at the ppm prompt.

```
ppm install dbi
```

## To install DBD::SQLAnywhere on Windows

1. At a command prompt, change to the *SDK\Perl* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation.
2. Enter the following commands to build and test DBD::SQLAnywhere.

```
perl Makefile.PL
```

```
nmake
```

If for any reason you need to start over, you can run the command **nmake clean** to remove any partially built targets.

3. To test DBD::SQLAnywhere, copy the sample database file to your *SDK\Perl* directory and make the tests.

```
copy "samples-dir\demo.db" .
```

For information about the default location of *samples-dir*, see “[Samples directory](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

```
dbeng11 demo
```

```
nmake test
```

If the tests do not run, ensure that the *bin32* or *bin64* subdirectory of the SQL Anywhere installation is in your path.

4. To complete the installation, execute the following command at the same prompt.

```
nmake install
```

The DBD::SQLAnywhere interface is now ready to use.

# Installing DBD::SQLAnywhere on Unix and Mac OS X

The following procedure documents how to install the DBD::SQLAnywhere interface on the supported Unix platforms, including Mac OS X.

## To prepare your computer

1. Install ActivePerl 5.6.0 build 616 or later.
2. Install a C compiler.

## To install the DBI Perl module on Unix and Mac OS X

1. Download the DBI module source from [www.cpan.org](http://www.cpan.org).
2. Extract the contents of this file into a new directory.
3. At a command prompt, change to the new directory and execute the following commands to build the DBI module.

```
perl Makefile.PL
make
```

If for any reason you need to start over, you can use the command **make clean** to remove any partially built targets.

4. Use the following command to test the DBI module.

```
make test
```

5. To complete the installation, execute the following command at the same prompt.

```
make install
```

6. Optionally, you can now delete the DBI source tree. It is no longer required.

## To install DBD::SQLAnywhere on Unix and Mac OS X

1. Make sure the environment is set up for SQL Anywhere.

Depending on which shell you are using, enter the appropriate command to source the SQL Anywhere configuration script from the SQL Anywhere installation directory:

In this shell ...	... use this command
sh, ksh, or bash	<code>. bin/sa_config.sh</code>
csh or tcsh	<code>source bin/sa_config.csh</code>

2. At a shell prompt, change to the *sdk/perl* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation.
3. At a command prompt, run the following commands to build DBD::SQLAnywhere.

```
perl Makefile.PL
```

```
make
```

If for any reason you need to start over, you can use the command **make clean** to remove any partially built targets.

4. To test DBD::SQLAnywhere, copy the sample database file to your *sdk/perl* directory and make the tests.

```
cp samples-dir/demo.db .
```

```
dbeng11 demo
```

```
make test
```

If the tests do not run, ensure that the *bin32* or *bin64* subdirectory of the SQL Anywhere installation is in your path.

5. To complete the installation, execute the following command at the same prompt.

```
make install
```

The DBD::SQLAnywhere interface is now ready to use.



## Writing Perl scripts that use DBD::SQLAnywhere

This section provides an overview of how to write Perl scripts that use the DBD::SQLAnywhere interface. DBD::SQLAnywhere is a driver for the DBI module. Complete documentation for the DBI module is available online at [dbi.perl.org](http://dbi.perl.org).

### Loading the DBI module

To use the DBD::SQLAnywhere interface from a Perl script, you must first tell Perl that you plan to use the DBI module. To do so, include the following line at the top of the file.

```
use DBI;
```

In addition, it is highly recommended that you run Perl in strict mode. This statement, which for example makes explicit variable definitions mandatory, is likely to greatly reduce the chance that you will run into mysterious errors due to such common mistakes as typographical errors.

```
#!/usr/local/bin/perl -w
#
use DBI;
use strict;
```

The DBI module automatically loads the DBD drivers, including DBD::SQLAnywhere, as required.

### Opening and closing a connection

Generally, you open a single connection to a database and then perform all the required operations through it by executing a sequence of SQL statements. To open a connection, you use the connect method. The return value is a handle to the database connection that you use to perform subsequent operations on that connection.

The parameters to the connect method are as follows:

1. "DBI:SQLAnywhere:" and additional connection parameters separated by semicolons.
2. A user name. Unless this string is blank, ";UID=*value*" is appended to the connection string.
3. A password value. Unless this string is blank, ";PWD=*value*" is appended to the connection string.
4. A pointer to a hash of default values. Settings such as AutoCommit, RaiseError, and PrintError may be set in this manner.

The following code sample opens and closes a connection to the SQL Anywhere sample database. You must start the database server and sample database before running this script.

```
#!/usr/local/bin/perl -w
#
use DBI;
use strict;
my $database = "demo";
my $data_src = "DBI:SQLAnywhere:ENG=$database;DBN=$database";
my $uid      = "DBA";
my $pwd      = "sql";
my %defaults = (
```

```
        AutoCommit => 1, # Autocommit enabled.
        PrintError => 0 # Errors not automatically printed.
    );
my $dbh = DBI->connect($data_src, $uid, $pwd, \%defaults)
    or die "Cannot connect to $data_src: $DBI::errstr\n";
$dbh->disconnect;
exit(0);
__END__
```

Optionally, you can append the user name or password value to the data-source string instead of supplying them as separate parameters. If you do so, supply a blank string for the corresponding argument. For example, in the above script may be altered by replacing the statement that opens the connections with these statements:

```
$data_src .= ";UID=$uid";
$data_src .= ";PWD=$pwd";
my $dbh = DBI->connect($data_src, '', '', \%defaults)
    or die "Cannot connect to $data_src: $DBI::errstr\n";
```

## Selecting data

Once you have obtained a handle to an open connection, you can access and modify data stored in the database. Perhaps the simplest operation is to retrieve some rows and print them out.

SQL statements that return row sets must be prepared before being executed. The prepare method returns a handle to the statement. You use the handle to execute the statement, then retrieve meta information about the result set and the rows of the result set.

```
#!/usr/local/bin/perl -w
#
use DBI;
use strict;
my $database = "demo";
my $data_src = "DBI:SQLAnywhere:ENG=$database;DBN=$database";
my $uid      = "DBA";
my $pwd      = "sql";
my $sel_stmt = "SELECT ID, GivenName, Surname
              FROM Customers
              ORDER BY GivenName, Surname";

my %defaults = (
    AutoCommit => 0, # Require explicit commit or rollback.
    PrintError => 0
);
my $dbh = DBI->connect($data_src, $uid, $pwd, \%defaults)
    or die "Cannot connect to $data_src: $DBI::errstr\n";
$db_query($sel_stmt, $dbh);
$dbh->rollback;
$dbh->disconnect;
exit(0);

sub db_query {
    my($sel, $dbh) = @_;
    my($row, $sth) = undef;
    $sth = $dbh->prepare($sel);
    $sth->execute;
    print "Fields:      $sth->{NUM_OF_FIELDS}\n";
    print "Params:      $sth->{NUM_OF_PARAMS}\n\n";
    print join("\t\t", @{$sth->{NAME}}), "\n\n";
    while($row = $sth->fetchrow_arrayref) {
        print join("\t\t", @$row), "\n";
    }
}
```

```

        $sth = undef;
    }
    __END__

```

Prepared statements are not dropped from the database server until the Perl statement handle is destroyed. To destroy a statement handle, reuse the variable or set it to undef. Calling the finish method does not drop the handle. In fact, the finish method should not be called, except when you have decided not to finish reading a result set.

To detect handle leaks, the SQL Anywhere database server limits the number of cursors and prepared statements permitted to a maximum of 50 per connection by default. The resource governor automatically generates an error if these limits are exceeded. If you get this error, check for undestroyed statement handles. Use prepare\_cached sparingly, as the statement handles are not destroyed.

If necessary, you can alter these limits by setting the max\_cursor\_count and max\_statement\_count options. See “max\_cursor\_count option [database]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration](#)], and “max\_statement\_count option [database]” [[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration](#)].

## Inserting rows

Inserting rows requires a handle to an open connection. The simplest method is to use a parameterized INSERT statement, meaning that question marks are used as place holders for values. The statement is first prepared, and then executed once per new row. The new row values are supplied as parameters to the execute method.

The following sample program inserts two new customers. Although the row values appear as literal strings, you may want to read the values from a file.

```

#!/usr/local/bin/perl -w
#
use DBI;
use strict;
my $database = "demo";
my $data_src = "DBI:SQLAnywhere:ENG=$database;DBN=$database";
my $uid      = "DBA";
my $pwd     = "sql";
my $ins_stmt = "INSERT INTO Customers (ID, GivenName, Surname,
                                     Street, City, State, Country, PostalCode,
                                     Phone, CompanyName)
               VALUES (?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?)";

my %defaults = (
    AutoCommit => 0, # Require explicit commit or rollback.
    PrintError => 0
);

my $dbh = DBI->connect($data_src, $uid, $pwd, \%defaults)
    or die "Can't connect to $data_src: $DBI::errstr\n";
$dbh->insert($ins_stmt, $dbh);
$dbh->commit;
$dbh->disconnect;
exit(0);

sub db_insert {
    my($ins, $dbh) = @_;
    my($sth) = undef;
    my @rows = (
        "801,Alex,Alt,5 Blue Ave,New York,NY,USA,10012,5185553434,BXM",
        "802,Zach,Zed,82 Fair St,New York,NY,USA,10033,5185552234,Zap"
    );
}

```

```
);  
$sth = $dbh->prepare($ins);  
my $row = undef;  
foreach $row ( @rows ) {  
    my @values = split(/,/ , $row);  
    $sth->execute(@values);  
}  
} END
```

---

# SQL Anywhere Python Database support

## Contents

Introduction to sqlanydb ..... 732

Installing sqlanydb on Windows ..... 733

Installing sqlanydb on Unix and Mac OS X ..... 734

Writing Python scripts that use sqlanydb ..... 735

---

## Introduction to sqlanydb

The sqlanydb interface provides access to SQL Anywhere databases from scripts written in Python. The sqlanydb module implements, with extensions, the Python Database API specification v2.0 written by Marc-André Lemburg. Once you have installed the sqlanydb module, you can access and change the information in SQL Anywhere databases from Python.

For information about the Python Database API specification v2.0, visit [Python Database API specification v2.0](#).

The sqlanydb module is thread-safe when using Python with threads.

### Requirements

The sqlanydb module requires the following components.

- Python 2.4 or newer (2.5 or newer is recommended).
- The ctypes module is required. To test if the ctypes module is present, open a command prompt window and run Python.

At the Python prompt, enter the following statement.

```
import ctypes
```

If you see an error message, then ctypes is not present. The following is an example.

```
>>> import ctypes
Traceback (most recent call last):
  File "<stdin>", line 1, in ?
ImportError: No module named ctypes
```

If ctypes is not included in your Python installation, install it. Installs can be found in the SourceForge.net files section at [http://sourceforge.net/project/showfiles.php?group\\_id=71702](http://sourceforge.net/project/showfiles.php?group_id=71702), or can be automatically downloaded and installed with Peak EasyInstall. To download Peak EasyInstall, visit <http://peak.telecommunity.com/DevCenter/EasyInstall>.

The following sections provide assistance with installing Python and the sqlanydb module.

# Installing sqlanydb on Windows

## To prepare your computer

1. Install Python 2.4 or later.
2. Install the ctypes module if missing.

## To install the sqlanydb module on Windows

1. At a system command prompt, change to the *SDK\Python* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation.
2. Run the following command to install sqlanydb.

```
python setup.py install
```

3. To test sqlanydb, copy the sample database file to your *SDK\Python* directory and run a test.

```
copy "samples-dir\demo.db" .  
dbeng11 demo  
python Scripts\test.py
```

If the tests do not run, ensure that the *bin32* or *bin64* subdirectory of the SQL Anywhere installation is in your path.

The sqlanydb module is now ready to use.

## Installing sqlanydb on Unix and Mac OS X

The following procedure documents how to install the sqlanydb module on the supported Unix platforms, including Mac OS X.

### To prepare your computer

1. Install Python 2.4 or later.
2. Install the ctypes module if missing.

### To install the sqlanydb module on Unix and Mac OS X

1. Make sure the environment is set up for SQL Anywhere.

Depending on which shell you are using, enter the appropriate command to source the SQL Anywhere configuration script from the SQL Anywhere installation directory:

In this shell ...	... use this command
sh, ksh, or bash	<code>. bin/sa_config.sh</code>
csh or tcsh	<code>source bin/sa_config.csh</code>

2. At a shell prompt, change to the *sdk/python* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation.
3. Enter the following command to install sqlanydb.

```
python setup.py install
```

4. To test sqlanydb, copy the sample database file to your *sdk/python* directory and run a test.

```
cp samples-dir/demo.db .
dbeng11 demo
python scripts/test.py
```

If the tests do not run, ensure that the *bin32* or *bin64* subdirectory of the SQL Anywhere installation is in your path.

The sqlanydb module is now ready to use.



## Writing Python scripts that use sqlanydb

This section provides an overview of how to write Python scripts that use the sqlanydb interface. Complete documentation for the API is available online at [Python Database API specification v2.0](#).

### Loading the sqlanydb module

To use the sqlanydb module from a Python script, you must first load it by including the following line at the top of the file.

```
import sqlanydb
```

### Opening and closing a connection

Generally, you open a single connection to a database and then perform all the required operations through it by executing a sequence of SQL statements. To open a connection, you use the connect method. The return value is a handle to the database connection that you use to perform subsequent operations on that connection.

The parameters to the connect method are specified as a series of keyword=value pairs delimited by commas.

```
sqlanydb.connect( keyword=value, ... )
```

Some common connection parameters are as follows:

- **DataSourceName="dsn"** A short form for this connection parameter is **DSN="dsn"**. An example is DataSourceName="SQL Anywhere 11 Demo".
- **UserID="user-id"** A short form for this connection parameter is **UID="user-id"**. An example is UserID="DBA".
- **Password="passwd"** A short form for this connection parameter is **PWD="passwd"**. An example is Password="sql".
- **DatabaseFile="db-file"** A short form for this connection parameter is **DBF="db-file"**. An example is DatabaseFile="demo.db"

For the complete list of connection parameters, see [“Connection parameters and network protocol options” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

The following code sample opens and closes a connection to the SQL Anywhere sample database. You must start the database server and sample database before running this script.

```
import sqlanydb

# Create a connection object
con = sqlanydb.connect( userid="DBA",
                       password="sql" )

# Close the connection
con.close()
```

To avoid starting the database server manually, you could use a data source that is configured to start the server. This is shown in the following example.

```
import sqlanydb

# Create a connection object
con = sqlanydb.connect( DSN="SQL Anywhere 11 Demo" )

# Close the connection
con.close()
```

## Selecting data

Once you have obtained a handle to an open connection, you can access and modify data stored in the database. Perhaps the simplest operation is to retrieve some rows and print them out.

The cursor method is used to create a cursor on the open connection. The execute method is used to create a result set. The fetchall method is used to obtain the rows in this result set.

```
import sqlanydb

# Create a connection object, then use it to create a cursor
con = sqlanydb.connect( userid="DBA",
                       password="sql" )
cursor = con.cursor()

# Execute a SQL string
sql = "SELECT * FROM Employees"
cursor.execute(sql)

# Get a cursor description which contains column names
desc = cursor.description
print len(desc)

# Fetch all results from the cursor into a sequence,
# display the values as column name=value pairs,
# and then close the connection
rowset = cursor.fetchall()
for row in rowset:
    for col in range(len(desc)):
        print "%s=%s" % (desc[col][0], row[col] )
    print
cursor.close()
con.close()
```

## Inserting rows

The simplest way to insert rows into a table is to use a non-parameterized INSERT statement, meaning that values are specified as part of the SQL statement. A new statement is constructed and executed for each new row. As in the previous example, a cursor is required to execute SQL statements.

The following sample program inserts two new customers into the sample database. Before disconnecting, it commits the transactions to the database.

```
import sqlanydb

# Create a connection object, then use it to create a cursor
con = sqlanydb.connect( userid="DBA", pwd="sql" )
cursor = con.cursor()
```

```

cursor.execute("DELETE FROM Customers WHERE ID > 800")

rows = ((801,'Alex','Alt','5 Blue Ave','New York','NY',
        'USA','10012','5185553434','BXM'),
        (802,'Zach','Zed','82 Fair St','New York','NY',
        'USA','10033','5185552234','Zap'))

# Set up a SQL INSERT
parms = ("%s" * len(rows[0]))[:-1]
sql = "INSERT INTO Customers VALUES (%s)" % (parms)
print sql % rows[0]
cursor.execute(sql % rows[0])
print sql % rows[1]
cursor.execute(sql % rows[1])
cursor.close()
con.commit()
con.close()

```

An alternate technique is to use a parameterized INSERT statement, meaning that question marks are used as place holders for values. The executemany method is used to execute an INSERT statement for each member of the set of rows. The new row values are supplied as a single argument to the executemany method.

```

import sqlalchemy

# Create a connection object, then use it to create a cursor
con = sqlalchemy.connect( userid="DBA", pwd="sql" )
cursor = con.cursor()
cursor.execute("DELETE FROM Customers WHERE ID > 800")

rows = ((801,'Alex','Alt','5 Blue Ave','New York','NY',
        'USA','10012','5185553434','BXM'),
        (802,'Zach','Zed','82 Fair St','New York','NY',
        'USA','10033','5185552234','Zap'))

# Set up a parameterized SQL INSERT
parms = ("?", " * len(rows[0]))[:-1]
sql = "INSERT INTO Customers VALUES (%s)" % (parms)
print sql
cursor.executemany(sql, rows)
cursor.close()
con.commit()
con.close()

```

Although both examples may appear to be equally suitable techniques for inserting row data into a table, the latter example is superior for a couple of reasons. If the data values are obtained by prompts for input, then the first example is susceptible to injection of rogue data including SQL statements. In the first example, the execute method is called for each row to be inserted into the table. In the second example, the executemany method is called only once to insert all the rows into the table.

---

---

# SQL Anywhere PHP API

## Contents

Introduction to the SQL Anywhere PHP module .....	740
Installing and configuring SQL Anywhere PHP .....	741
Running PHP test scripts in your web pages .....	746
Writing PHP scripts .....	748
SQL Anywhere PHP API reference .....	754
Building the SQL Anywhere PHP module on Unix and Mac OS X .....	803

---

## Introduction to the SQL Anywhere PHP module

PHP, which stands for **PHP: Hypertext Preprocessor**, is an open source scripting language. Although it can be used as a general-purpose scripting language, it was designed to be a convenient language in which to write scripts that could be embedded with HTML documents. Unlike scripts written in JavaScript, which are frequently executed by the client, PHP scripts are processed by the web server, and the resulting HTML output sent to the clients. The syntax of PHP is derived from that of other popular languages, such as Java and Perl.

To make it a convenient language in which to develop dynamic web pages, PHP provides the ability to retrieve information from many popular databases, such as SQL Anywhere. Included with SQL Anywhere are two modules that provide access to SQL Anywhere databases from PHP. You can use these modules and the PHP language to write standalone scripts and create dynamic web pages that rely on information stored in SQL Anywhere databases.

Prebuilt versions of the PHP modules are provided for Windows, Linux, and Solaris and are installed in the operating-system-specific binaries subdirectories of your SQL Anywhere installation. Source code for the SQLAnywhere PHP module is installed in the *sdk\php* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation.

Additional information can also be found online at [The SQL Anywhere PHP Module](#).

### Requirements

Before you can use the SQL Anywhere PHP module, you must also install the following components:

- The PHP 5 binaries for your platform, which can be downloaded from <http://www.php.net>. SQL Anywhere provides prebuilt PHP modules for PHP versions 5.1.1 to 5.2.6. At the time of writing, PHP version 5.2.6 was the most recent stable release. For Windows platforms, the thread-safe version of PHP must be used with the SQL Anywhere PHP module.
- A web server, if you want to run PHP scripts within a web server. Note that SQL Anywhere can be used as a web server.

You can also use a different web server such as Apache HTTP Server. SQL Anywhere can be run on the same computer as the web server, or on a different computer.

- For Windows, the SQL Anywhere client software *dblib11.dll* and *dbcapi.dll*.
- For Linux/Unix, the SQL Anywhere client software *libdblib11.so* and *libdbcapi.so*.
- For Mac OS X, the SQL Anywhere client software *libdblib11.dylib* and *libdbapi.dylib*.

For additional information about installing PHP and the Apache HTTP Server, see [Serving Content from SQL Anywhere Databases Using Apache and PHP](#).

The following sections provide assistance with installing the SQL Anywhere PHP module.

# Installing and configuring SQL Anywhere PHP

The following sections describe how to install and configure the SQL Anywhere PHP module.

## Choosing which PHP module to use

On Windows, SQL Anywhere includes thread-safe modules for PHP versions 5.1.1 to 5.2.6. A thread-safe version of PHP must be used with the SQL Anywhere PHP module. The module file names for the supported PHP versions follow this pattern:

```
php-5.x.y_sqlanywhere.dll
```

On Linux and Solaris, SQL Anywhere includes both 64-bit and 32-bit versions of the modules for PHP versions 5.1.1 to 5.2.6. It also includes both threaded and non-threaded modules. If you are using the CGI version of PHP or if you are using Apache 1.x, use the non-threaded module. If you are using Apache 2.x, use the threaded module. The module file names for the supported PHP versions follow this pattern:

```
php-5.x.y_sqlanywhere[_r].so
```

The "5.x.y" represents the PHP version (for example, 5.2.6). For Linux and Solaris, the threaded version of the PHP module has `_r` appended to the file name. Windows versions are implemented as Dynamic Link Libraries and Linux/Solaris versions are implemented as Shared Objects.

## Installing the PHP module on Windows

To use the SQL Anywhere PHP module on Windows, you must copy the DLL from the SQL Anywhere installation directory and add it to your PHP installation. Optionally, you can add an entry to your PHP initialization file to load the module, so you do not need to load it manually in each script.

### To install the PHP module on Windows

1. Locate the *php.ini* file for your PHP installation, and open it in a text editor. Locate the line that specifies the location of the **extension\_dir** directory. If **extension\_dir** is not set to any specific directory, it is a good idea to set it to point to an isolated directory for better system security.
2. Copy the file *php-5.x.y\_sqlanywhere.dll* from the *Bin32* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation to the directory specified by the **extension\_dir** entry in the *php.ini* file.

**Note**

The string *5.x.y* is the PHP version number corresponding to the version that you have installed.

If your version of PHP is more recent than the SQL Anywhere PHP modules provided by SQL Anywhere, try using the most recent module provided. Note that a version 5.2.x SQL Anywhere PHP module will not work with a version 5.3.x PHP.

3. Add the following line to the Dynamic Extensions section of the *php.ini* file to load the SQL Anywhere PHP driver automatically.

```
extension=php-5.x.y_sqlanywhere.dll
```

where *5.x.y* reflects the version number of the SQL Anywhere PHP module copied in the previous step.

Save and close *php.ini*.

An alternative to automatically loading the PHP driver is to load it manually in each script that requires it. See [“Configuring the SQL Anywhere PHP module” on page 744](#).

4. Make sure that the *Bin32* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation is in your path. The SQL Anywhere PHP extension DLL requires the *Bin32* directory to be in your path.
5. At a command prompt, run the following command to start the SQL Anywhere sample database.

```
dbeng11 samples-dir\demo.db
```

The command starts a database server using the sample database.

6. At a command prompt, change to the *SDK\PHP\Examples* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation. Make sure that the **php** executable directory is included in your path. Enter the following command:

```
php test.php
```

Messages similar to the following should appear. If the PHP command is not recognized, verify that PHP is in your path.

```
Installation successful
Using php-5.2.6_sqlanywhere.dll
Connected successfully
```

If the SQL Anywhere PHP driver does not load, you can use the command "php -i" for helpful information about your PHP setup. Search for **extension\_dir** and **sqlanywhere** in the output from this command.

7. When you are done, stop the SQL Anywhere database server by clicking Shut Down in the database server messages window.

For more information, see [“Creating PHP test pages” on page 746](#).

## Installing the PHP module on Linux/Solaris

To use the SQL Anywhere PHP module on Linux or Solaris, you must copy the shared object from the SQL Anywhere installation directory and add it to your PHP installation. Optionally, you can add an entry to your PHP initialization file, *php.ini*, to load the module, so you do not need to load it manually in each script.

### To install the PHP module on Linux/Solaris

1. Locate the *php.ini* file of your PHP installation, and open it in a text editor. Locate the line that specifies the location of the **extension\_dir** directory. If **extension\_dir** is not set to any specific directory, it is a good idea to set it to point to an isolated directory for better system security.
2. Copy the shared object from the *lib32* or *lib64* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation to the directory specified by the **extension\_dir** entry in the *php.ini* file. Your choice of shared object will depend on the version of PHP that you have installed and whether it is a 32-bit or a 64-bit version.



**Note**

If your version of PHP is more recent than the shared object provided by SQL Anywhere, try using the most recent shared object provided. Note that a version 5.2.x SQL Anywhere PHP module will not work with a version 5.3.x PHP.

For information about which version of the shared object to use, see [“Choosing which PHP module to use” on page 741](#).

3. Add the following line to the Dynamic Extensions section of the *php.ini* file to load the SQL Anywhere PHP driver automatically. The entry must identify the shared object you copied, which is either

```
extension=php-5.x.y_sqlanywhere.so
```

or, for the thread-safe shared object,

```
extension=php-5.x.y_sqlanywhere_r.so
```

where 5.x.y is the version number of the PHP shared object copied in the previous step.

Save and close *php.ini*.

An alternative to automatically loading the PHP driver is to load it manually in each script that requires it. See [“Configuring the SQL Anywhere PHP module” on page 744](#).

4. Before attempting to use the PHP module, verify that your PHP execution environment is set up for SQL Anywhere. Depending on which shell you are using, you must edit the configuration script for your web server's environment and add the appropriate command to source the SQL Anywhere configuration script from the SQL Anywhere installation directory:

In this shell ...	... use this command
sh, ksh, or bash	<code>./bin32/sa_config.sh</code>
csh or tcsh	<code>source /bin32/sa_config.csh</code>

The 32-bit version of the SQL Anywhere PHP extension DLL requires the *bin32* directory to be in your path. The 64-bit version of the SQL Anywhere PHP extension DLL requires the *bin64* directory to be in your path.

The configuration file in which this line should be inserted is different for different web servers and on different Linux distributions. Here are some examples for the Apache server on the indicated distributions:

- **RedHat/Fedora/CentOS** `/etc/sysconfig/httpd`
- **Debian/Ubuntu** `/etc/apache2/envvars`

The web server must be restarted after editing its environment configuration.

5. At a command prompt, run the following command to start the SQL Anywhere sample database:

```
dbeng11 samples-dir/demo.db
```

6. At a command prompt, change to the *sdk/php/examples* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation. Enter the following command:

```
php test.php
```

Messages similar to the following should appear. If the php command is not recognized, verify that php is in your path.

```
Installation successful
Using php-5.2.6_sqlanywhere.so
Connected successfully
```

7. When you are done, stop the database server.

For more information, see [“Creating PHP test pages” on page 746](#).

## Building the PHP module on Unix and Mac OS X

To use the SQL Anywhere PHP module on other versions of Unix or Mac OS X, you must build the PHP module from the source code which is installed in the *sdk/php* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation. See [“Building the SQL Anywhere PHP module on Unix and Mac OS X” on page 803](#).

## Configuring the SQL Anywhere PHP module

The behavior of the SQL Anywhere PHP driver can be controlled by setting values in the PHP initialization file, *php.ini*. The following entries are supported:

- **extension** Causes PHP to load the SQL Anywhere PHP module automatically each time PHP starts. Adding this entry to your PHP initialization file is optional, but if you don't add it, each script you write must start with a few lines of code that ensure that this module is loaded. The following entry is used for Windows platforms.

```
extension=php-5.x.y_sqlanywhere.dll
```

On Linux platforms, use one of the following entries. The second entry is thread safe.

```
extension=php-5.x.y_sqlanywhere.so
extension=php-5.x.y_sqlanywhere_r.so
```

In these entries, 5.x.y identifies the PHP version.

If the SQL Anywhere module is not always automatically loaded when PHP starts, you must prefix each script you write with the following lines of code. This code ensures that the SQL Anywhere PHP module is loaded.

```
# Ensure that the SQL Anywhere PHP module is loaded
if( !extension_loaded('sqlanywhere') ) {
    # Find out which version of PHP is running
    $version = phpversion();
    $module_name = 'php-' . $version . '_sqlanywhere';
    if( strtoupper(substr(PHP_OS, 0, 3)) == 'WIN' ) {
        $module_ext = '.dll';
    } else {
        $module_ext = '.so';
    }
}
```

```
    dl( $module_name.$module_ext );  
}
```

- **allow\_persistent** Allows persistent connections when set to On. It does not allow them when set to Off. The default value is On.

```
sqlanywhere.allow_persistent=On
```

- **max\_persistent** Sets the maximum number of persistent connections. The default value is -1, which means no limit.

```
sqlanywhere.max_persistent=-1
```

- **max\_connections** Sets the maximum number of connections that can be opened at once through the SQL Anywhere PHP module. The default value is -1, which means no limit.

```
sqlanywhere.max_connections=-1
```

- **auto\_commit** Specifies whether the database server performs a commit operation automatically. The commit is performed immediately following the execution of each statement when set to On. When set to Off, transactions should be ended manually with either the `sasql_commit` or `sasql_rollback` functions, as appropriate. The default value is On.

```
sqlanywhere.auto_commit=On
```

- **row\_counts** Returns the exact number of rows affected by an operation when set to On or an estimate when set to Off. The default value is Off.

```
sqlanywhere.row_counts=Off
```

- **verbose\_errors** Returns verbose errors and warnings when set to On. Otherwise, you must call the `sasql_error` or `sasql_errorcode` functions to get further error information. The default value is On.

```
sqlanywhere.verbose_errors=On
```

For more information, see [“sasql\\_set\\_option”](#) on page 772.

## Running PHP test scripts in your web pages

This section describes how to write PHP test scripts that query the sample database and display information about PHP.

### Creating PHP test pages

The following instructions apply to all configurations.

To test whether PHP is set up properly, the following procedure describes how to create and run a web page that calls `phpinfo()`. The PHP function, `phpinfo()`, generates a page of system setup information. The output tells you whether PHP is working properly.

For information about installing PHP, see <http://us2.php.net/install>.

#### To create a PHP information test page

1. Create a file in your root web content directory named *info.php*.

If you are not sure which directory to use, check your web server's configuration file. In Apache installations, the content directory is often called *htdocs*. If you are using Mac OS X, the web content directory name may depend on which account you are using:

- If you are the System Administrator on a Mac OS X system, use */Library/WebServer/Documents*.
- If you are a Mac OS X user, place the file in */Users/your-user-name/Sites/*.

2. Insert the following code into this file:

```
<?php phpinfo(); ?>
```

Alternatively, once PHP is properly installed and configured, you can also create a test web page by issuing the following command at a command prompt.

```
php -i > info.html
```

This confirms that your installation of PHP and your web server are working together properly.

3. At a command prompt, run the following command to start the SQL Anywhere sample database (if you have not already done so):

```
dbeng11 samples-dir\demo.db
```

4. To test that PHP and your web server are working correctly with SQL Anywhere:
  - a. Copy the file *connect.php* from your PHP examples directory to your root web content directory.
  - b. From a web browser, access the *connect.php* page.

The message `Connected successfully` should appear.

#### To create the query page that uses the SQL Anywhere PHP module

1. Create a file containing the following PHP code in your root web content directory named *sa\_test.php*.

2. Insert the following PHP code into this file:

```
<?php
$conn = sasql_connect( "UID=DBA;PWD=sql" );
$result = sasql_query( $conn, "SELECT * FROM Employees" );
sasql_result_all( $result );
sasql_free_result( $result );
sasql_disconnect( $conn );
?>
```

## Accessing your test web pages

The following procedure describes how to view your test pages from a web browser, after installing and configuring PHP and the SQL Anywhere PHP module.

### To view your web pages

1. Restart your web server.

For example, to start the Apache web server, run the following command from the *bin* subdirectory of your Apache installation:

```
apachectl start
```

2. On Linux or Mac OS X, set the SQL Anywhere environment variables using one of the supplied scripts.

Depending on which shell you are using, enter the appropriate command to source the SQL Anywhere configuration script from your SQL Anywhere installation directory:

In this shell ...	... use this command
sh, ksh, or bash	. /bin32/sa_config.sh
csh or tcsh	source /bin32/sa_config.csh

3. Start the SQL Anywhere database server.

For example, to access the test web pages described above, use the following command to start the SQL Anywhere sample database.

```
dbeng11 samples-dir\demo.db
```

4. To access the test pages from a browser that is running on the same computer as the server, enter the following URLs:

For this test page ...	... use this URL
<i>info.php</i>	http://localhost/info.php
<i>sa_test.php</i>	http://localhost/sa_test.php

If everything is configured correctly, the *sa\_test* page displays the contents of the Employees table.

## Writing PHP scripts

This section describes how to write PHP scripts that use the SQL Anywhere PHP module to access SQL Anywhere databases.

The source code for these and other examples is located in the *SDK\PHP\Examples* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation.

## Connecting to a database

To make a connection to a database, pass a standard SQL Anywhere connection string to the database server as a parameter to the `sasql_connect` function. The `<?php` and `?>` tags tell the web server that it should let PHP execute the code that lies between them and replace it with the PHP output.

The source code for this example is contained in your SQL Anywhere installation in a file called *connect.php*.

```
<?php
# Connect using the default user ID and password
$conn = sasql_connect( "UID=DBA;PWD=sql" );
if( ! $conn ) {
    echo "Connection failed\n";
} else {
    echo "Connected successfully\n";
    sasql_close( $conn );
}??
```

The first block of code verifies that the PHP module is loaded. If you added the line to your PHP initialization file to load it automatically, this block of code is unnecessary. If you did not configure PHP to automatically load the SQL Anywhere PHP module at start time, you must add this code to the other sample scripts.

The second block attempts to make a connection. For this code to succeed, the SQL Anywhere sample database must be running.

## Retrieving data from a database

One use of PHP scripts in web pages is to retrieve and display information contained in a database. The following examples demonstrate some useful techniques.

### Simple select query

The following PHP code demonstrates a convenient way to include the result set of a `SELECT` statement in a web page. This sample is designed to connect to the SQL Anywhere sample database and return a list of customers.

This code can be embedded in a web page, provided your web server is configured to execute PHP scripts.

The source code for this sample is contained in your SQL Anywhere installation in a file called *query.php*.

```
<?php
# Connect using the default user ID and password
$conn = sasql_connect( "UID=DBA;PWD=sql" );
if( ! $conn ) {
```

```

        echo "sasql_connect failed\n";
    } else {
        echo "Connected successfully\n";
        # Execute a SELECT statement
        $result = sasql_query( $conn, "SELECT * FROM Customers" );
        if( ! $result ) {
            echo "sasql_query failed!";
        } else {
            echo "query completed successfully\n";
            # Generate HTML from the result set
            sasql_result_all( $result );
            sasql_free_result( $result );
        }
        sasql_close( $conn );
    }
?>

```

The `sasql_result_all` function fetches all the rows of the result set and generates an HTML output table to display them. The `sasql_free_result` function releases the resources used to store the result set.

### Fetching by column name

In certain cases, you may not want to display all the data from a result set, or you may want to display the data in a different manner. The following sample illustrates how you can exercise greater control over the output format of the result set. PHP allows you to display as much information as you want in whatever manner you choose.

The source code for this sample is contained in your SQL Anywhere installation in a file called *fetch.php*.

```

<?php
# Connect using the default user ID and password
$conn = sasql_connect( "UID=DBA;PWD=sql" );
if( ! $conn ) {
    die ("Connection failed");
} else {
    # Connected successfully.
}
# Execute a SELECT statement
$result = sasql_query( $conn, "SELECT * FROM Customers" );
if( ! $result ) {
    echo "sasql_query failed!";
    return 0;
} else {
    echo "query completed successfully\n";
}
# Retrieve meta information about the results
$num_cols = sasql_num_fields( $result );
$num_rows = sasql_num_rows( $result );
echo "Num of rows = $num_rows\n";
echo "Num of cols = $num_cols\n";
while( ($field = sasql_fetch_field( $result )) ) {
    echo "Field # : $field->id \n";
    echo "\tname   : $field->name \n";
    echo "\tlength : $field->length \n";
    echo "\ttype    : $field->type \n";
}
# Fetch all the rows
$curr_row = 0;
while( ($row = sasql_fetch_row( $result )) ) {
    $curr_row++;
    $curr_col = 0;
    while( $curr_col < $num_cols ) {

```

```
        echo "$row[$curr_col]\t|";
        $curr_col++;
    }
    echo "\n";
}
# Clean up.
sasql_free_result( $result );
sasql_disconnect( $conn );
?>
```

The `sasql_fetch_array` function returns a single row from the table. The data can be retrieved by column names and column indexes.

The `sasql_fetch_assoc` function returns a single row from the table as an associative array. The data can be retrieved by using the column names as indexes. The following is an example.

```
<?php
# Connect using the default user ID and password
$conn = sasql_connect("UID=DBA;PWD=sql");

/* check connection */
if( sasql_errorcode() ) {
    printf("Connect failed: %s\n", sasql_error());
    exit();
}

$query = "SELECT Surname, Phone FROM Employees ORDER by EmployeeID";

if( $result = sasql_query($conn, $query) ) {

    /* fetch associative array */
    while( $row = sasql_fetch_assoc($result) ) {
        printf ("%s (%s)\n", $row["Surname"], $row["Phone"]);
    }

    /* free result set */
    sasql_free_result($result);
}

/* close connection */
sasql_close($conn);
?>
```

Two other similar methods are provided in the PHP interface: `sasql_fetch_row` returns a row that can be searched by column indexes only, while `sasql_fetch_object` returns a row that can be searched by column names only.

For an example of the `sasql_fetch_object` function, see the *fetch\_object.php* example script.

### Nested result sets

When a `SELECT` statement is sent to the database, a result set is returned. The `sasql_fetch_row` and `sasql_fetch_array` functions retrieve data from the individual rows of a result set, returning each row as an array of columns that can be queried further.

The source code for this sample is contained in your SQL Anywhere installation in a file called *nested.php*.

```
<?php
# Connect using the default user ID and password
$conn = sasql_connect( "UID=DBA;PWD=sql" );
```



```

if( ! $conn ) {
    die ("Connection failed");
} else {
    # Connected successfully.
}
# Retrieve the data and output HTML
echo "<BR>\n";
$query1 = "SELECT table_id, table_name FROM SYSTAB";
$result = sasql_query( $conn, $query1 );
if( $result ) {
    $num_rows = sasql_num_rows( $result );
    echo "Returned : $num_rows <BR>\n";
    $I = 1;
    while( ($row = sasql_fetch_array( $result ))) {
        echo "$I: table_id:$row[table_id]" .
            " --- table_name:$row[table_name] <br>\n";
        $query2 = "SELECT table_id, column_name " .
            "FROM SYSTABCOL" .
            "WHERE table_id = '$row[table_id]'";
        echo " $query2 <br>\n";
        echo " Columns: ";
        $result2 = sasql_query( $conn, $query2 );
        if( $result2 ) {
            while(($detailed = sasql_fetch_array($result2))) {
                echo " $detailed[column_name]";
            }
            sasql_free_result( $result2 );
        } else {
            echo "*****FAILED*****";
        }
        echo "<br>\n";
        $I++;
    }
}
echo "<BR>\n";
sasql_disconnect( $conn );
?>

```

In the above sample, the SQL statement selects the table ID and name for each table from SYSTAB. The `sasql_query` function returns an array of rows. The script iterates through the rows using the `sasql_fetch_array` function to retrieve the rows from an array. An inner iteration goes through the columns of each row and prints their values.

## Web forms

PHP can take user input from a web form, pass it to the database server as a SQL query, and display the result that is returned. The following example demonstrates a simple web form that gives the user the ability to query the sample database using SQL statements and display the results in an HTML table.

The source code for this sample is contained in your SQL Anywhere installation in a file called *webisql.php*.

```

<?php
echo "<HTML>\n";
$name = $_POST["qname"];
$name = str_replace( "\\\" ", "", $name );
echo "<form method=post action=webisql.php>\n";
echo "<br>Query: <input type=text Size=80 name=qname value=\"\$name\">\n";
echo "<input type=submit>\n";

```

```
echo "</form>\n";
echo "<HR><br>\n";
if( ! $qname ) {
    echo "No Current Query\n";
    return;
}
# Connect to the database
$con_str = "UID=DBA;PWD=sql;ENG=demo;LINKS=tcPIP";
$conn = sasql_connect( $con_str );
if( ! $conn ) {
    echo "sasql_connect failed\n";
    echo "</html>\n";
    return 0;
}
$qname = str_replace( "\\\"", "", $qname );
$result = sasql_query( $conn, $qname );
if( ! $result ) {
    echo "sasql_query failed!";
} else {
    // echo "query completed successfully\n";
    sasql_result_all( $result, "border=1" );
    sasql_free_result( $result );
}
sasql_disconnect( $conn );
echo "</html>\n";
?>
```

This design could be extended to handle complex web forms by formulating customized SQL queries based on the values entered by the user.

## Working with BLOBs

SQL Anywhere databases can store any type of data as a binary large object (BLOB). If that data is of a type readable by a web browser, a PHP script can easily retrieve it from the database and display it on a dynamically generated page.

BLOB fields are often used for storing non-text data, such as images in GIF or JPG format. Numerous types of data can be passed to a web browser without any need for third-party software or data type conversion. The following sample illustrates the process of adding an image to the database and then retrieving it again to be displayed in a web browser.

This sample is similar to the sample code in the files *image\_insert.php* and *image\_retrieve.php* of your SQL Anywhere installation. These samples also illustrate the use of a BLOB column for storing images.

```
<?php
$conn = sasql_connect( "UID=DBA;PWD=sql" )
    or die("Can not connect to database");
$create_table = "CREATE TABLE images (ID INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, img IMAGE)";
sasql_query( $conn, $create_table);
$insert = "INSERT INTO images VALUES (99,
xp_read_file('iAnywhere_logo.gif'))";
sasql_query( $conn, $insert );
$query = "SELECT img FROM images WHERE ID = 99";
$result = sasql_query($conn, $query);
$data = sasql_fetch_row($result);
$img = $data[0];
header("Content-type: image/gif");
echo $img;
```

```
    sasql_disconnect($conn);  
?>
```

To be able to send the binary data from the database directly to a web browser, the script must set the data's MIME type using the header function. In this case, the browser is told to expect a GIF image so it can display it correctly.

# SQL Anywhere PHP API reference

The PHP API supports the following functions:

## Connections

- [“sasql\\_close” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_connect” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_disconnect” on page 758](#)
- [“sasql\\_error” on page 758](#)
- [“sasql\\_errorcode” on page 759](#)
- [“sasql\\_insert\\_id” on page 764](#)
- [“sasql\\_message” on page 765](#)
- [“sasql\\_pconnect” on page 767](#)
- [“sasql\\_set\\_option” on page 772](#)

## Queries

- [“sasql\\_affected\\_rows” on page 755](#)
- [“sasql\\_next\\_result” on page 766](#)
- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)
- [“sasql\\_real\\_query” on page 770](#)
- [“sasql\\_store\\_result” on page 783](#)
- [“sasql\\_use\\_result” on page 784](#)

## Result sets

- [“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_array” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_assoc” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_field\\_count” on page 763](#)
- [“sasql\\_free\\_result” on page 764](#)
- [“sasql\\_num\\_rows” on page 767](#)
- [“sasql\\_result\\_all” on page 771](#)

## Transactions

- [“sasql\\_commit” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_rollback” on page 772](#)

## Statements

- [“sasql\\_prepare” on page 768](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_affected\\_rows” on page 773](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_param” on page 773](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_param\\_ex” on page 774](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_result” on page 775](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_close” on page 775](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_data\\_seek” on page 776](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_execute” on page 777](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_fetch” on page 778](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_field\\_count” on page 778](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_free\\_result” on page 779](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_insert\\_id” on page 779](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_next\\_result” on page 780](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_num\\_rows” on page 780](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_param\\_count” on page 781](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_reset” on page 781](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_result\\_metadata” on page 781](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_send\\_long\\_data” on page 782](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_store\\_result” on page 782](#)

## Miscellaneous

- [“sasql\\_escape\\_string” on page 759](#)
- [“sasql\\_get\\_client\\_info” on page 764](#)

# sasql\_affected\_rows

## Prototype

```
int sasql_affected_rows( sasql_conn $conn )
```

## Description

Returns the number of rows affected by the last SQL statement. This function is typically used for INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE statements. For SELECT statements, use the `sasql_num_rows` function.

## Parameters

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

## Returns

The number of rows affected.

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_num\\_rows” on page 767](#)

## **sasql\_commit**

### **Prototype**

bool **sasql\_commit**( sasql\_conn \$conn )

### **Description**

Ends a transaction on the SQL Anywhere database and makes any changes made during the transaction permanent. Useful only when the auto\_commit option is Off.

### **Parameters**

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

### **Returns**

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

### **Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_rollback” on page 772](#)
- [“sasql\\_set\\_option” on page 772](#)
- [“sasql\\_pconnect” on page 767](#)
- [“sasql\\_disconnect” on page 758](#)

## **sasql\_close**

### **Prototype**

bool **sasql\_close**( sasql\_conn \$conn )

### **Description**

Closes a previously opened database connection.

### **Parameters**

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

### **Returns**

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

## **sasql\_connect**

### **Prototype**

sasql\_conn **sasql\_connect**( string \$con\_str )

**Description**

Establishes a connection to a SQL Anywhere database.

**Parameters**

**\$con\_str** A connection string as recognized by SQL Anywhere.

**Returns**

A positive SQL Anywhere connection resource on success, or an error and 0 on failure.

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_pconnect” on page 767](#)
- [“sasql\\_disconnect” on page 758](#)

**See also**

- [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)
- [“SQL Anywhere database connections” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)

## sasql\_data\_seek

**Prototype**

```
bool sasql_data_seek( sasql_result $result, int row_num )
```

**Description**

Positions the cursor on row *row\_num* on the *\$result* that was opened using *sasql\_query*.

**Parameters**

**\$result** The result resource returned by the *sasql\_query* function.

**row\_num** An integer that represents the new position of the cursor within the result resource. For example, specify 0 to move the cursor to the first row of the result set or 5 to move it to the sixth row. Negative numbers represent rows relative to the end of the result set. For example, -1 moves the cursor to the last row in the result set and -2 moves it to the second-last row.

**Returns**

TRUE on success or FALSE on error.

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_array” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_assoc” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)

## sasql\_disconnect

### Prototype

```
bool sasql_disconnect( sasql_conn $conn )
```

### Description

Closes a connection that has already been opened with `sasql_connect`.

### Parameters

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on error.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_connect” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_pconnect” on page 767](#)

## sasql\_error

### Prototype

```
string sasql_error( [ sasql_conn $conn ] )
```

### Description

Returns the error text of the most recently executed SQL Anywhere PHP function. Error messages are stored per connection. If no `$conn` is specified, then `sasql_error` returns the last error message where no connection was available. For example, if you call `sasql_connect` and the connection fails, then call `sasql_error` with no parameter for `$conn` to get the error message. If you want to obtain the corresponding SQL Anywhere error code value, use the `sasql_errorcode` function.

### Parameters

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

### Returns

A string describing the error. For a list of error messages, see [“SQL Anywhere error messages” \[Error Messages\]](#).

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_errorcode” on page 759](#)
- [“sasql\\_sqlstate” on page 783](#)
- [“sasql\\_set\\_option” on page 772](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_errno” on page 776](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_error” on page 777](#)



---

## sasql\_errorcode

### Prototype

```
int sasql_errorcode( [ sasql_conn $conn ] )
```

### Description

Returns the error code of the most-recently executed SQL Anywhere PHP function. Error codes are stored per connection. If no *\$conn* is specified, then `sasql_errorcode` returns the last error code where no connection was available. For example, if you are calling `sasql_connect` and the connection fails, then call `sasql_errorcode` with no parameter for the *\$conn* to get the error code. If you want to get the corresponding error message use the `sasql_error` function.

### Parameters

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

### Returns

An integer representing a SQL Anywhere error code. An error code of 0 means success. A positive error code indicates success with warnings. A negative error code indicates failure. For a list of error codes, see [“SQL Anywhere error messages sorted by SQLCODE” \[Error Messages\]](#).

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_connect” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_pconnect” on page 767](#)
- [“sasql\\_error” on page 758](#)
- [“sasql\\_sqlstate” on page 783](#)
- [“sasql\\_set\\_option” on page 772](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_errno” on page 776](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_error” on page 777](#)

## sasql\_escape\_string

### Prototype

```
string sasql_escape_string( sasql_conn $conn, string $str )
```

### Description

Escapes all special characters in the supplied string. The special characters that are escaped are `\r`, `\n`, `'`, `"`, `;`, `\`, and the NULL character. This function is an alias of `sasql_real_escape_string`.

### Parameters

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

**\$string** The string to be escaped.

**Returns**

The escaped string.

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_real\\_escape\\_string” on page 770](#)
- [“sasql\\_connect” on page 756](#)

## sasql\_fetch\_array

**Prototype**

```
array sasql_fetch_array( sasql_result $result [, int $result_type ])
```

**Description**

Fetches one row from the result set. This row is returned as an array that can be indexed by the column names or by the column indexes.

**Parameters**

**\$result** The result resource returned by the `sasql_query` function.

**\$result\_type** This optional parameter is a constant indicating what type of array should be produced from the current row data. The possible values for this parameter are the constants `SASQL_ASSOC`, `SASQL_NUM`, or `SASQL_BOTH`. It defaults to `SASQL_BOTH`.

By using the `SASQL_ASSOC` constant this function will behave identically to the `sasql_fetch_assoc` function, while `SASQL_NUM` will behave identically to the `sasql_fetch_row` function. The final option `SASQL_BOTH` will create a single array with the attributes of both.

**Returns**

An array that represents a row from the result set, or `FALSE` when no rows are available.

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_assoc” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762](#)

## sasql\_fetch\_assoc

**Prototype**

```
array sasql_fetch_assoc( sasql_result $result )
```

## Description

Fetches one row from the result set as an associative array.

## Parameters

**\$result** The result resource returned by the `sasql_query` function.

## Returns

An associative array of strings representing the fetched row in the result set, where each key in the array represents the name of one of the result set's columns or `FALSE` if there are no more rows in resultset.

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762](#)

# sasql\_fetch\_field

## Prototype

```
object sasql_fetch_field( sasql_result $result [, int $field_offset ] )
```

## Description

Returns an object that contains information about a specific column.

## Parameters

**\$result** The result resource returned by the `sasql_query` function.

**\$field\_offset** An integer representing the column/field on which you want to retrieve information. Columns are zero based; to get the first column, specify the value 0. If this parameter is omitted, then the next field object is returned.

## Returns

An object that has the following properties:

- **id** contains the field's number
- **name** contains the field's name
- **numeric** indicates whether the field is a numeric value
- **length** returns the field's native storage size.
- **type** returns the field's type
- **native\_type** returns the field's native type. These are values like `DT_FIXCHAR`, `DT_DECIMAL` or `DT_DATE`. See [“Embedded SQL data types” on page 542](#).

- **precision** returns the field's numeric precision. This property is only set for fields with `native_type` equal to `DT_DECIMAL`.
- **scale** returns the field's numeric scale. This property is only set for fields with `native_type` equal to `DT_DECIMAL`.

#### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_array” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_assoc” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762](#)

## sasql\_fetch\_object

#### Prototype

object **sasql\_fetch\_object**( sasql\_result *\$result* )

#### Description

Fetches one row from the result set as an object.

#### Parameters

**\$result** The result resource returned by the `sasql_query` function.

#### Returns

An object representing the fetched row in the result set where each property name matches one of the result set column names, or `FALSE` if there are no more rows in result set.

#### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_array” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_assoc” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#)

## sasql\_fetch\_row

#### Prototype

array **sasql\_fetch\_row**( sasql\_result *\$result* )

#### Description

Fetches one row from the result set. This row is returned as an array that can be indexed by the column indexes only.

**Parameters**

**\$result** The result resource returned by the `sasql_query` function.

**Returns**

An array that represents a row from the result set, or `FALSE` when no rows are available.

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_array” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_assoc” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762](#)

## sasql\_field\_count

**Prototype**

```
int sasql_field_count( sasql_conn $conn )
```

**Description**

Returns the number of columns (fields) the last result contains.

**Parameters**

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

**Returns**

A positive number of columns, or `FALSE` if `$conn` is not valid.

## sasql\_field\_seek

**Prototype**

```
bool sasql_field_seek( sasql_result $result, int $field_offset )
```

**Description**

Sets the field cursor to the given offset. The next call to `sasql_fetch_field` will retrieve the field definition of the column associated with that offset.

**Parameters**

**\$result** The result resource returned by the `sasql_query` function.

**\$field\_offset** An integer representing the column/field on which you want to retrieve information. Columns are zero based; to get the first column, specify the value 0. If this parameter is omitted, then the next field object is returned.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on error.

## sasql\_free\_result

### Prototype

bool **sasql\_free\_result**( sasql\_result *\$result* )

### Description

Frees database resources associated with a result resource returned from `sasql_query`.

### Parameters

**\$result** The result resource returned by the `sasql_query` function.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on error.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)

## sasql\_get\_client\_info

### Prototype

string **sasql\_get\_client\_info**( )

### Description

Returns the version information of the client.

### Parameters

None

### Returns

A string that represents the SQL Anywhere client software version. The returned string is of the form X.Y.Z.W where X is the major version number, Y is the minor version number, Z is the patch number, and W is the build number (for example, 10.0.1.3616).

## sasql\_insert\_id

### Prototype

int **sasql\_insert\_id**( sasql\_conn *\$conn* )

**Description**

Returns the last value inserted into an IDENTITY column or a DEFAULT AUTOINCREMENT column, or zero if the most recent insert was into a table that did not contain an IDENTITY or DEFAULT AUTOINCREMENT column.

The `sasql_insert_id` function is provided for compatibility with MySQL databases.

**Parameters**

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

**Returns**

The ID generated for an AUTOINCREMENT column by a previous INSERT statement or zero if last insert did not affect an AUTOINCREMENT column. The function can return FALSE if the *\$conn* is not valid.

## sasql\_message

**Prototype**

```
bool sasql_message( sasql_conn $conn, string $message )
```

**Description**

Writes a message to the server console.

**Parameters**

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

**\$message** A message to be written to the server console.

**Returns**

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

## sasql\_multi\_query

**Prototype**

```
bool sasql_multi_query( sasql_conn $conn, string $sql_str )
```

**Description**

Prepares and executes one or more SQL queries specified by *\$sql\_str* using the supplied connection resource. Each query is separated from the other using semicolons.

The first query result can be retrieved or stored using `sasql_use_result` or `sasql_store_result`. `sasql_field_count` can be used to check if the query returns a result set or not.

All subsequent query results can be processed using `sasql_next_result` and `sasql_use_result/sasql_store_result`.

### Parameters

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

**\$sql\_str** One or more SQL statements separated by semicolons.

For more information about SQL statements, see [“SQL statements” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_store\\_result” on page 783](#)
- [“sasql\\_use\\_result” on page 784](#)
- [“sasql\\_field\\_count” on page 763](#)

## sasql\_next\_result

### Prototype

```
bool sasql_next_result( sasql_conn $conn )
```

### Description

Prepares the next result set from the last query that executed on *\$conn*.

### Parameters

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

### Returns

FALSE if there is no other result set to be retrieved. TRUE if there is another result to be retrieved. Call `sasql_use_result` or `sasql_store_result` to retrieve the next result set.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_use\\_result” on page 784](#)
- [“sasql\\_store\\_result” on page 783](#)

## sasql\_num\_fields

### Prototype

```
int sasql_num_fields( sasql_result $result )
```



**Description**

Returns the number of fields that a row in the *\$result* contains.

**Parameters**

**\$result** The result resource returned by the `sasql_query` function.

**Returns**

Returns the number of fields in the specified result set.

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_num\\_rows” on page 767](#)
- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)

## sasql\_num\_rows

**Prototype**

```
int sasql_num_rows( sasql_result $result )
```

**Description**

Returns the number of rows that the *\$result* contains.

**Parameters**

**\$result** The result resource returned by the `sasql_query` function.

**Returns**

A positive number if the number of rows is exact, or a negative number if it is an estimate. To get the exact number of rows, the database option `row_counts` must be set permanently on the database, or temporarily on the connection. See [“sasql\\_set\\_option” on page 772](#).

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_num\\_fields” on page 766](#)
- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)

## sasql\_pconnect

**Prototype**

```
sasql_conn sasql_pconnect( string $con_str )
```

**Description**

Establishes a persistent connection to a SQL Anywhere database. Because of the way Apache creates child processes, you may observe a performance gain when using `sasql_pconnect` instead of `sasql_connect`.

Persistent connections may provide improved performance in a similar fashion to connection pooling. If your database server has a limited number of connections (for example, the personal database server is limited to 10 concurrent connections), caution should be exercised when using persistent connections. Persistent connections could be attached to each of the child processes, and if you have more child processes in Apache than there are available connections, you will receive connection errors.

### Parameters

**\$con\_str** A connection string as recognized by SQL Anywhere.

### Returns

A positive SQL Anywhere persistent connection resource on success, or an error and 0 on failure.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_connect” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_disconnect” on page 758](#)

### See also

- [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)
- [“SQL Anywhere database connections” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)

## sasql\_prepare

### Prototype

```
sasql_stmt sasql_prepare( sasql_conn $conn, string $sql_str )
```

### Description

Prepares the supplied SQL string.

### Parameters

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

**\$sql\_str** The SQL statement to be prepared. The string can include parameter markers by embedding question marks at the appropriate positions.

For more information about SQL statements, see [“SQL statements” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

### Returns

A statement object or FALSE on failure.

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_param\\_count” on page 781](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_param” on page 773](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_param\\_ex” on page 774](#)
- [“sasql\\_prepare” on page 768](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_execute” on page 777](#)
- [“sasql\\_connect” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_pconnect” on page 767](#)

## sasql\_query

### Prototype

mixed **sasql\_query**( sasql\_conn *\$conn*, string *\$sql\_str* [, int *\$result\_mode* ] )

### Description

Prepares and executes the SQL query *\$sql\_str* on the connection identified by *\$conn* that has already been opened using `sasql_connect` or `sasql_pconnect`.

The `sasql_query` function is equivalent to calling two functions, `sasql_real_query` and one of `sasql_store_result` or `sasql_use_result`.

### Parameters

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

**\$sql\_str** A SQL statement supported by SQL Anywhere.

**\$result\_mode** Either `SASQL_USE_RESULT`, or `SASQL_STORE_RESULT` (the default).

For more information about SQL statements, see [“SQL statements” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

### Returns

FALSE on failure; TRUE on success for INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, CREATE; `sasql_result` for SELECT.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_real\\_query” on page 770](#)
- [“sasql\\_free\\_result” on page 764](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_array” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#)

## sasql\_real\_escape\_string

### Prototype

```
string sasql_real_escape_string( sasql_conn $conn, string $str )
```

### Description

Escapes all special characters in the supplied string. The special characters that are escaped are \r, \n, ' , " , ; , \, and the NULL character.

### Parameters

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

**\$string** The string to be escaped.

### Returns

The escaped string or FALSE on error.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_escape\\_string” on page 759](#)
- [“sasql\\_connect” on page 756](#)

## sasql\_real\_query

### Prototype

```
bool sasql_real_query( sasql_conn $conn, string $sql_str )
```

### Description

Executes a query against the database using the supplied connection resource. The query result can be retrieved or stored using `sasql_store_result` or `sasql_use_result`. The `sasql_field_count` function can be used to check if the query returns a result set or not.

Note that the `sasql_query` function is equivalent to calling this function and one of `sasql_store_result` or `sasql_use_result`.

### Parameters

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

**\$sql\_str** A SQL statement supported by SQL Anywhere.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)
- [“sasql\\_store\\_result” on page 783](#)
- [“sasql\\_use\\_result” on page 784](#)
- [“sasql\\_field\\_count” on page 763](#)

# sasql\_result\_all

## Prototype

```
bool sasql_result_all( resource $result
[, $html_table_format_string
[, $html_table_header_format_string
[, $html_table_row_format_string
[, $html_table_cell_format_string
] ] ] ] )
```

## Description

Fetches all results of the *\$result* and generates an HTML output table with an optional formatting string.

## Parameters

**\$result** The result resource returned by the `sasql_query` function.

**\$html\_table\_format\_string** A format string that applies to HTML tables. For example, "**Border=1; Cellpadding=5**". The special value `none` does not create an HTML table. This is useful if you want to customize your column names or scripts. If you do not want to specify an explicit value for this parameter, use `NULL` for the parameter value.

**\$html\_table\_header\_format\_string** A format string that applies to column headings for HTML tables. For example, "**bgcolor=#FF9533**". The special value `none` does not create an HTML table. This is useful if you want to customize your column names or scripts. If you do not want to specify an explicit value for this parameter, use `NULL` for the parameter value.

**\$html\_table\_row\_format\_string** A format string that applies to rows within HTML tables. For example, "**onclick='alert('this')'**". If you would like different formats that alternate, use the special token `<>`. The left side of the token indicates which format to use on odd rows and the right side of the token is used to format even rows. If you do not place this token in your format string, all rows have the same format. If you do not want to specify an explicit value for this parameter, use `NULL` for the parameter value.

**\$html\_table\_cell\_format\_string** A format string that applies to cells within HTML table rows. For example, "**onclick='alert('this')'**". If you do not want to specify an explicit value for this parameter, use `NULL` for the parameter value.

## Returns

`TRUE` on success or `FALSE` on failure.

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)

## sasql\_rollback

### Prototype

bool **sasql\_rollback**( sasql\_conn \$conn )

### Description

Ends a transaction on the SQL Anywhere database and discards any changes made during the transaction. This function is only useful when the `auto_commit` option is Off.

### Parameters

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_commit” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_set\\_option” on page 772](#)

## sasql\_set\_option

### Prototype

bool **sasql\_set\_option**( sasql\_conn \$conn, string \$option, mixed \$value )

### Description

Sets the value of the specified option on the specified connection. You can set the value for the following options:

Name	Description	Default
auto_commit	When this option is set to on, the database server commits after executing each statement.	on
row_counts	When this option is set to FALSE, the <code>sasql_num_rows</code> function returns an estimate of the number of rows affected. If you want to obtain an exact count, set this option to TRUE.	FALSE
verbose_errors	When this option is set to TRUE, the PHP driver returns verbose errors. When this option is set to FALSE, you must call the <code>sasql_error</code> or <code>sasql_errorcode</code> functions to get further error information.	TRUE

You can change the default value for an option by including the following line in the `php.ini` file. In this example, the default value is set for the `auto_commit` option.

```
sqlanywhere.auto_commit=0
```

### Parameters

- \$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.
- \$option** The name of the option you want to set.
- \$value** The new option value.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_commit” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_error” on page 758](#)
- [“sasql\\_errorcode” on page 759](#)
- [“sasql\\_num\\_rows” on page 767](#)
- [“sasql\\_rollback” on page 772](#)

## sasql\_stmt\_affected\_rows

### Prototype

```
int sasql_stmt_affected_rows( sasql_stmt $stmt )
```

### Description

Returns the number of rows affected by executing the statement.

### Parameters

**\$stmt** A statement resource that was executed by sasql\_stmt\_execute.

### Returns

The number of rows affected or FALSE on failure.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_execute” on page 777](#)

## sasql\_stmt\_bind\_param

### Prototype

```
bool sasql_stmt_bind_param( sasql_stmt $stmt, string $types, mixed &$var_1 [, mixed &$var_2 .. ] )
```

### Description

Binds PHP variables to statement parameters.

## Parameters

**\$stmt** A prepared statement resource that was returned by the `sasql_prepare` function.

**\$types** A string that contains one or more characters specifying the types of the corresponding bind. This can be any of: **s** for string, **i** for integer, **d** for double, **b** for blobs. The length of the `$types` string must match the number of parameters that follow the `$types` parameter (`$var_1`, `$var_2`, ...). The number of characters should also match the number of parameter markers (question marks) in the prepared statement.

**\$var\_n** The variable references.

## Returns

TRUE if binding the variables was successful or FALSE otherwise.

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_prepare” on page 768](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_param\\_count” on page 781](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_param\\_ex” on page 774](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_execute” on page 777](#)

# sasql\_stmt\_bind\_param\_ex

## Prototype

```
bool sasql_stmt_bind_param_ex( sasql_stmt $stmt, int $param_number, mixed &$var, string $type [, bool $is_null [, int $direction ] ] )
```

## Description

Binds a PHP variable to a statement parameter.

## Parameters

**\$stmt** A prepared statement resource that was returned by the `sasql_prepare` function.

**\$param\_number** The parameter number. This should be a number between 1 and `sasql_stmt_param_count`.

**\$var** A PHP variable. Only references to PHP variables are allowed.

**\$type** Type of the variable. This can be one of: **s** for string, **i** for integer, **d** for double, **b** for blobs.

**\$is\_null** Whether the value of the variable is NULL or not.

**\$direction** Can be `SASQL_D_INPUT`, `SASQL_D_OUTPUT`, or `SASQL_INPUT_OUTPUT`.

## Returns

TRUE if binding the variable was successful or FALSE otherwise.



**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_prepare” on page 768](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_param\\_count” on page 781](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_param” on page 773](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_execute” on page 777](#)

## sasql\_stmt\_bind\_result

**Prototype**

bool **sasql\_stmt\_bind\_result**( sasql\_stmt *\$stmt*, mixed **&***\$var1* [, mixed **&***\$var2* .. ] )

**Description**

Binds one or more PHP variables to result columns of a statement that was executed, and returns a result set.

**Parameters**

**\$stmt** A statement resource that was executed by `sasql_stmt_execute`.

**\$var1** References to PHP variables that will be bound to result set columns returned by the `sasql_stmt_fetch`.

**Returns**

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_execute” on page 777](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_fetch” on page 778](#)

## sasql\_stmt\_close

**Prototype**

bool **sasql\_stmt\_close**( sasql\_stmt *\$stmt* )

**Description**

Closes the supplied statement resource and frees any resources associated with it. This function will also free any result objects that were returned by the `sasql_stmt_result_metadata`.

**Parameters**

**\$stmt** A prepared statement resource that was returned by the `sasql_prepare` function.

**Returns**

TRUE for success or FALSE on failure.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_result\\_metadata” on page 781](#)
- [“sasql\\_prepare” on page 768](#)

## sasql\_stmt\_data\_seek

### Prototype

bool **sasql\_stmt\_data\_seek**( sasql\_stmt *\$stmt*, int *\$offset* )

### Description

This function seeks to the specified offset in the result set.

### Parameters

**\$stmt** A statement resource.

**\$offset** The offset in the result set. This is a number between 0 and `sasql_stmt_num_rows` minus 1.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE failure.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_num\\_rows” on page 780](#)

## sasql\_stmt\_errno

### Prototype

int **sasql\_stmt\_errno**( sasql\_stmt *\$stmt* )

### Description

Returns the error code for the most recently executed statement function using the specified statement resource.

### Parameters

**\$stmt** A prepared statement resource that was returned by the `sasql_prepare` function.

### Returns

An integer error code. For a list of error codes, see [“SQL Anywhere error messages sorted by SQLCODE” \[Error Messages\]](#).

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_error” on page 777](#)
- [“sasql\\_error” on page 758](#)
- [“sasql\\_errorcode” on page 759](#)
- [“sasql\\_prepare” on page 768](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_result\\_metadata” on page 781](#)

## sasql\_stmt\_error

**Prototype**

string **sasql\_stmt\_error**( sasql\_stmt \$stmt )

**Description**

Returns the error text for the most recently executed statement function using the specified statement resource.

**Parameters**

**\$stmt** A prepared statement resource that was returned by the `sasql_prepare` function.

**Returns**

A string describing the error. For a list of error messages, see [“SQL Anywhere error messages” \[Error Messages\]](#).

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_erno” on page 776](#)
- [“sasql\\_error” on page 758](#)
- [“sasql\\_errorcode” on page 759](#)
- [“sasql\\_prepare” on page 768](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_result\\_metadata” on page 781](#)

## sasql\_stmt\_execute

**Prototype**

bool **sasql\_stmt\_execute**( sasql\_stmt \$stmt )

**Description**

Executes the prepared statement. The `sasql_stmt_result_metadata` can be used to check whether the statement returns a result set.

**Parameters**

**\$stmt** A prepared statement resource that was returned by the `sasql_prepare` function. Variables should be bound before calling `execute`.

## Returns

TRUE for success or FALSE on failure.

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_prepare” on page 768](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_param\\_count” on page 781](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_param” on page 773](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_param\\_ex” on page 774](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_result\\_metadata” on page 781](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_result” on page 775](#)

# sasql\_stmt\_fetch

## Prototype

```
bool sasql_stmt_fetch( sasql_stmt $stmt )
```

## Description

This function fetches one row out of the result for the statement and places the columns in the variables that were bound using `sasql_stmt_bind_result`.

## Parameters

**\$stmt** A statement resource.

## Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_result” on page 775](#)

# sasql\_stmt\_field\_count

## Prototype

```
int sasql_stmt_field_count( sasql_stmt $stmt )
```

## Description

This function returns the number of columns in the result set of the statement.

## Parameters

**\$stmt** A statement resource.

**Returns**

The number of columns in the result of the statement. If the statement does not return a result, it returns 0.

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_result\\_metadata” on page 781](#)

## sasql\_stmt\_free\_result

**Prototype**

```
bool sasql_stmt_free_result( sasql_stmt $stmt )
```

**Description**

This function frees cached result set of the statement.

**Parameters**

**\$stmt** A statement resource that was executed using `sasql_stmt_execute`.

**Returns**

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_execute” on page 777](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_store\\_result” on page 782](#)

## sasql\_stmt\_insert\_id

**Prototype**

```
int sasql_stmt_insert_id( sasql_stmt $stmt )
```

**Description**

Returns the last value inserted into an IDENTITY column or a DEFAULT AUTOINCREMENT column, or zero if the most recent insert was into a table that did not contain an IDENTITY or DEFAULT AUTOINCREMENT column.

**Parameters**

**\$stmt** A statement resource that was executed by `sasql_stmt_execute`.

**Returns**

The ID generated for an IDENTITY column or a DEFAULT AUTOINCREMENT column by a previous INSERT statement, or zero if the last insert did not affect an IDENTITY or DEFAULT AUTOINCREMENT column. The function can return FALSE (0) if \$stmt is not valid.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_execute” on page 777](#)

## sasql\_stmt\_next\_result

### Prototype

bool **sasql\_stmt\_next\_result**( sasql\_stmt *\$stmt* )

### Description

This function advances to the next result from the statement. If there is another result set, the currently cached results are discarded and the associated result set object deleted (as returned by `sasql_stmt_result_metadata`).

### Parameters

**\$stmt** A statement resource.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE failure.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_result\\_metadata” on page 781](#)

## sasql\_stmt\_num\_rows

### Prototype

int **sasql\_stmt\_num\_rows**( sasql\_stmt *\$stmt* )

### Description

Returns the number of rows in the result set. The actual number of rows in the result set can only be determined after the `sasql_stmt_store_result` function is called to buffer the entire result set. If the `sasql_stmt_store_result` function has not been called, 0 is returned.

### Parameters

**\$stmt** A statement resource that was executed by `sasql_stmt_execute` and `sasql_stmt_store_result` was called on.

### Returns

The number of rows available in the result or 0 on failure.

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_execute” on page 777](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_store\\_result” on page 782](#)

## **sasql\_stmt\_param\_count**

### **Prototype**

int **sasql\_stmt\_param\_count**( sasql\_stmt *\$stmt* )

### **Description**

Returns the number of parameters in the supplied prepared statement handle

### **Parameters**

**\$stmt** A statement resource returns by the `sasql_prepare` function.

### **Returns**

The number of parameters or FALSE on error.

### **Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_prepare” on page 768](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_param” on page 773](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_param\\_ex” on page 774](#)

## **sasql\_stmt\_reset**

### **Prototype**

bool **sasql\_stmt\_reset**( sasql\_stmt *\$stmt* )

### **Description**

This function resets the *\$stmt* object to the state just after the describe. Any variables that were bound are unbound and any data sent using `sasql_stmt_send_long_data` are dropped.

### **Parameters**

**\$stmt** A statement resource.

### **Returns**

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

### **Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_send\\_long\\_data” on page 782](#)

## **sasql\_stmt\_result\_metadata**

### **Prototype**

sasql\_result **sasql\_stmt\_result\_metadata**( sasql\_stmt *\$stmt* )

**Description**

Returns a result set object for the supplied statement.

**Parameters**

**\$stmt** A statement resource that was prepared and executed.

**Returns**

sasql\_result object or FALSE if the statement does not return any results.

## sasql\_stmt\_send\_long\_data

**Prototype**

```
bool sasql_stmt_send_long_data( sasql_stmt $stmt, int $param_number, string $data )
```

**Description**

Allows the user to send parameter data in chunks. The user must first call `sasql_stmt_bind_param` or `sasql_stmt_bind_param_ex` before attempting to send any data. The bind parameter must be of type string or blob. Repeatedly calling this function appends on to what was previously sent.

**Parameters**

**\$stmt** A statement resource that was prepared using `sasql_prepare`.

**\$param\_number** The parameter number. This must be a number between 0 and `(sasql_stmt_param_count() - 1)`.

**\$data** The data to be sent.

**Returns**

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_param” on page 773](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_bind\\_param\\_ex” on page 774](#)
- [“sasql\\_prepare” on page 768](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_param\\_count” on page 781](#)

## sasql\_stmt\_store\_result

**Prototype**

```
bool sasql_stmt_store_result( sasql_stmt $stmt )
```



**Description**

This function allows the client to cache the whole result set of the statement. You can use the function `sasql_stmt_free_result` to free the cached result.

**Parameters**

**\$stmt** A statement resource that was executed using `sasql_stmt_execute`.

**Returns**

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_free\\_result” on page 779](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_execute” on page 777](#)

## sasql\_store\_result

**Prototype**

```
sasql_result sasql_store_result( sasql_conn $conn )
```

**Description**

Transfers the result set from the last query on the database connection `$conn` to be used with the `sasql_data_seek` function.

**Parameters**

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

**Returns**

FALSE if the query does not return a result object, or a result set object, that contains all the rows of the result. The result is cached at the client.

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_execute” on page 777](#)

## sasql\_sqlstate

**Prototype**

```
string sasql_sqlstate( sasql_conn $conn )
```

**Description**

Returns the most recent SQLSTATE string. SQLSTATE indicates whether the most recently executed SQL statement resulted in a success, error, or warning condition. SQLSTATE codes consists of five characters with "00000" representing no error. The values are defined by the ISO/ANSI SQL standard.

**Parameters**

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

**Returns**

Returns a string of five characters containing the current SQLSTATE code. Note that "00000" means no error. For a list of SQLSTATE codes, see [“SQL Anywhere error messages sorted by SQLSTATE” \[Error Messages\]](#).

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_error” on page 758](#)
- [“sasql\\_errorcode” on page 759](#)

## sasql\_use\_result

**Prototype**

```
sasql_result sasql_use_result( sasql_conn $conn )
```

**Description**

Initiates a result set retrieval for the last query that executed on the connection.

**Parameters**

**\$conn** The connection resource returned by a connect function.

**Returns**

FALSE if the query does not return a result object or a result set object. The result is not cached on the client.

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#)
- [“sasql\\_stmt\\_execute” on page 777](#)

## Deprecated PHP functions

The following PHP functions are supported but deprecated. Each of these functions has a newer equivalent with a name starting with sasql\_ instead of sqlanywhere\_.

## sqlanywhere\_commit (deprecated)

### Prototype

bool **sqlanywhere\_commit**( resource *link\_identifier* )

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead:  
[“sasql\\_commit” on page 756.](#)

Ends a transaction on the SQL Anywhere database and makes any changes made during the transaction permanent. Useful only when the auto\_commit option is Off.

### Parameters

**link\_identifier** The link identifier returned by the sqlanywhere\_connect function.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

### Example

This example shows how sqlanywhere\_commit can be used to cause a commit on a specific connection.

```
$result = sqlanywhere_commit( $conn );
```

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_commit” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_pconnect” on page 767](#)
- [“sasql\\_disconnect” on page 758](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_pconnect \(deprecated\)” on page 797](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_disconnect \(deprecated\)” on page 787](#)

## sqlanywhere\_connect (deprecated)

### Prototype

resource **sqlanywhere\_connect**( string *con\_str* )

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead:  
[“sasql\\_connect” on page 756.](#)

Establishes a connection to a SQL Anywhere database.

### Parameters

**con\_str** A connection string as recognized by SQL Anywhere.

## Returns

A positive SQL Anywhere link identifier on success, or an error and 0 on failure.

## Example

This example passes the user ID and password for a SQL Anywhere database in the connection string.

```
$conn = sqlanywhere_connect( "UID=DBA;PWD=sql" );
```

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_connect” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_pconnect” on page 767](#)
- [“sasql\\_disconnect” on page 758](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_pconnect \(deprecated\)” on page 797](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_disconnect \(deprecated\)” on page 787](#)

## sqlanywhere\_data\_seek (deprecated)

### Prototype

```
bool sqlanywhere_data_seek( resource result_identifier, int row_num )
```

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead:  
[“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#).

Positions the cursor on row *row\_num* on the *result\_identifier* that was opened using `sqlanywhere_query`.

### Parameters

**result\_identifier** The result resource returned by the `sqlanywhere_query` function.

**row\_num** An integer that represents the new position of the cursor within the `result_identifier`. For example, specify 0 to move the cursor to the first row of the result set or 5 to move it to the sixth row. Negative numbers represent rows relative to the end of the result set. For example, -1 moves the cursor to the last row in the result set and -2 moves it to the second-last row.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on error.

### Example

This example shows how to seek to the sixth record in the result set.

```
sqlanywhere_data_seek( $result, 5 );
```

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_array” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_field \(deprecated\)” on page 791](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_array \(deprecated\)” on page 790](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_row \(deprecated\)” on page 793](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_object \(deprecated\)” on page 792](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_query \(deprecated\)” on page 798](#)

## sqlanywhere\_disconnect (deprecated)

### Prototype

bool **sqlanywhere\_disconnect**( resource *link\_identifier* )

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead: [“sasql\\_disconnect” on page 758](#).

Closes a connection that has already been opened with `sqlanywhere_connect`.

### Parameters

**link\_identifier** The link identifier returned by the `sqlanywhere_connect` function.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on error.

### Example

This example closes the connection to a database.

```
sqlanywhere_disconnect( $conn );
```

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_disconnect” on page 758](#)
- [“sasql\\_connect” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_pconnect” on page 767](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_connect \(deprecated\)” on page 785](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_pconnect \(deprecated\)” on page 797](#)

## sqlanywhere\_error (deprecated)

### Prototype

string **sqlanywhere\_error**( [ resource *link\_identifier* ] )

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead: [“sasql\\_error” on page 758](#).

Returns the error text of the most recently executed SQL Anywhere PHP function. Error messages are stored per connection. If no *link\_identifier* is specified, then `sqlanywhere_error` returns the last error message where no connection was available. For example, if you call `sqlanywhere_connect` and the connection fails, then call `sqlanywhere_error` with no parameter for *link\_identifier* to get the error message. If you want to obtain the corresponding SQL Anywhere error code value, use the `sqlanywhere_errorcode` function.

### Parameters

**link\_identifier** A link identifier that was returned by `sqlanywhere_connect` or `sqlanywhere_pconnect`.

### Returns

A string describing the error.

### Example

This example attempts to select from a table that does not exist. The `sqlanywhere_query` function returns FALSE and the `sqlanywhere_error` function returns the error message.

```
$result = sqlanywhere_query( $conn, "SELECT * FROM
table_that_does_not_exist" );
if( ! $result ) {
    $error_msg = sqlanywhere_error( $conn );
    echo "Query failed. Reason: $error_msg";
}
```

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_error” on page 758](#)
- [“sasql\\_errorcode” on page 759](#)
- [“sasql\\_set\\_option” on page 772](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_errorcode \(deprecated\)” on page 788](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_set\\_option \(deprecated\)” on page 800](#)

## sqlanywhere\_errorcode (deprecated)

### Prototype

bool **sqlanywhere\_errorcode**( [ resource *link\_identifier* ] )

## Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead: [“sasql\\_errorcode” on page 759](#).

Returns the error code of the most-recently executed SQL Anywhere PHP function. Error codes are stored per connection. If no *link\_identifier* is specified, then `sqlanywhere_errorcode` returns the last error code where no connection was available. For example, if you are calling `sqlanywhere_connect` and the connection fails, then call `sqlanywhere_errorcode` with no parameter for the *link\_identifier* to get the error code. If you want to get the corresponding error message use the `sqlanywhere_error` function.

## Parameters

**link\_identifier** A link identifier that was returned by `sqlanywhere_connect` or `sqlanywhere_pconnect`.

## Returns

An integer representing a SQL Anywhere error code. An error code of 0 means success. A positive error code indicates success with warnings. A negative error code indicates failure.

## Example

This example shows how you can retrieve the last error code from a failed SQL Anywhere PHP call.

```
$result = sqlanywhere_query( $conn, "SELECT * from
table_that_does_not_exist" );
if( ! $result ) {
    $error_code = sqlanywhere_errorcode( $conn );
    echo "Query failed: Error code: $error_code";
}
```

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_error” on page 758](#)
- [“sasql\\_set\\_option” on page 772](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_error \(deprecated\)” on page 788](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_set\\_option \(deprecated\)” on page 800](#)

## sqlanywhere\_execute (deprecated)

### Prototype

bool `sqlanywhere_execute`( resource *link\_identifier*, string *sql\_str* )

### Description

This function is deprecated.

Prepares and executes the SQL query *sql\_str* on the connection identified by the *link\_identifier* that has already been opened using `sqlanywhere_connect` or `sqlanywhere_pconnect`. This function returns TRUE or FALSE depending on the outcome of the query execution. This function is suitable for queries that do not return result sets. If you are expecting a result set, use the `sqlanywhere_query` function instead.

**Parameters**

**link\_identifier** A link identifier returned by `sqlanywhere_connect` or `sqlanywhere_pconnect`.

**sql\_str** A SQL statement supported by SQL Anywhere.

**Returns**

TRUE if the query executed successfully, otherwise, FALSE and an error message.

**Example**

This example shows how to execute a DDL statement using the `sqlanywhere_execute` function.

```
if( sqlanywhere_execute( $conn, "CREATE TABLE my_test_table( INT id )" ) ) {  
    // handle success  
} else {  
    // handle failure  
}
```

**Related functions**

- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_query \(deprecated\)” on page 798](#)

## sqlanywhere\_fetch\_array (deprecated)

**Prototype**

array `sqlanywhere_fetch_array`( resource *result\_identifier* )

**Description**

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead:

[“sasql\\_fetch\\_array” on page 760](#).

Fetches one row from the result set. This row is returned as an array that can be indexed by the column names or by the column indexes.

**Parameters**

**result\_identifier** The result resource returned by the `sqlanywhere_query` function.

**Returns**

An array that represents a row from the result set, or FALSE when no rows are available.

**Example**

This example shows how to retrieve all the rows in a result set. Each row is returned as an array.

```
$result = sqlanywhere_query( $conn, "SELECT GivenName, Surname FROM  
Employees" );  
While( ($row = sqlanywhere_fetch_array( $result )) ) {  
    echo " GivenName = " . $row["GivenName"] . " \n" ;  
    echo " Surname = $row[1] \n";  
}
```



## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_array” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_data\\_seek \(deprecated\)” on page 786](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_field \(deprecated\)” on page 791](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_row \(deprecated\)” on page 793](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_object \(deprecated\)” on page 792](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_query \(deprecated\)” on page 798](#)

## sqlanywhere\_fetch\_field (deprecated)

### Prototype

object **sqlanywhere\_fetch\_field**( resource *result\_identifier* [, *field\_offset* ] )

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead:  
[“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#).

Returns an object that contains information about a specific column.

### Parameters

**result\_identifier** The result resource returned by the `sqlanywhere_query` function.

**field\_offset** An integer representing the column/field on which you want to retrieve information. Columns are zero based; to get the first column, specify the value 0. If this parameter is omitted, then the next field object is returned.

### Returns

An object that has the following properties:

- **id** contains the field/column number
- **name** contains the field/column name
- **numeric** indicates whether the field is a numeric value
- **length** returns field length
- **type** returns field type

### Example

This example shows how to use `sqlanywhere_fetch_field` to retrieve all the column information for a result set.

```
$result = sqlanywhere_query($conn, "SELECT GivenName, Surname FROM
Employees");
while( ($field = sqlanywhere_fetch_field( $result )) ) {
    echo " Field ID = $field->id \n";
    echo " Field name = $field->name \n";
}
```

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_array” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_data\\_seek \(deprecated\)” on page 786](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_array \(deprecated\)” on page 790](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_row \(deprecated\)” on page 793](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_object \(deprecated\)” on page 792](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_query \(deprecated\)” on page 798](#)

## sqlanywhere\_fetch\_object (deprecated)

### Prototype

object **sqlanywhere\_fetch\_object**( resource *result\_identifier* )

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead:  
[“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762.](#)

Fetches one row from the result set. This row is returned as an object that can be indexed by the column name only.

### Parameters

**result\_identifier** The result resource returned by the `sqlanywhere_query` function.

### Returns

An object that represents a row from the result set, or FALSE when no rows are available.

### Example

This example shows how to retrieve one row at a time from a result set as an object. Column names can be used as object members to access the column value.

```
$result = sqlanywhere_query( $conn, "SELECT GivenName, Surname FROM
Employees" );
While( ($row = sqlanywhere_fetch_object( $result )) ) {
    echo "$row->GivenName \n";    # output the data in the first column
only.
}
```

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_array” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_query \(deprecated\)” on page 798](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_data\\_seek \(deprecated\)” on page 786](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_field \(deprecated\)” on page 791](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_array \(deprecated\)” on page 790](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_row \(deprecated\)” on page 793](#)

## sqlanywhere\_fetch\_row (deprecated)

### Prototype

array **sqlanywhere\_fetch\_row**( resource *result\_identifier* )

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead:  
[“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#).

Fetches one row from the result set. This row is returned as an array that can be indexed by the column indexes only.

### Parameters

**result\_identifier** The result resource returned by the `sqlanywhere_query` function.

### Returns

An array that represents a row from the result set, or `FALSE` when no rows are available.

### Example

This example shows how to retrieve one row at a time from a result set.

```
while( ($row = sqlanywhere_fetch_row( $result )) ) {  
    echo "$row[0] \n";      # output the data in the first column only.  
}
```

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_data\\_seek” on page 757](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_array” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_data\\_seek \(deprecated\)” on page 786](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_field \(deprecated\)” on page 791](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_array \(deprecated\)” on page 790](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_object \(deprecated\)” on page 792](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_query \(deprecated\)” on page 798](#)

## sqlanywhere\_free\_result (deprecated)

### Prototype

bool **sqlanywhere\_free\_result**( resource *result\_identifier* )

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead:  
[“sasql\\_free\\_result” on page 764.](#)

Frees database resources associated with a result resource returned from `sqlanywhere_query`.

### Parameters

**result\_identifier** The result resource returned by the `sqlanywhere_query` function.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on error.

### Example

This example shows how to free a result identifier's resources.

```
sqlanywhere_free_result( $result );
```

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)
- [“sasql\\_free\\_result” on page 764](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_query \(deprecated\)” on page 798](#)

## sqlanywhere\_identity (deprecated)

### Prototype

```
int sqlanywhere_identity( resource link_identifier )
```

```
int sqlanywhere_insert_id( resource link_identifier )
```

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead: [“sasql\\_insert\\_id” on page 764](#).

Returns the last value inserted into an IDENTITY column or a DEFAULT AUTOINCREMENT column, or zero if the most recent insert was into a table that did not contain an IDENTITY or DEFAULT AUTOINCREMENT column.

The sqlanywhere\_insert\_id function is provided for compatibility with MySQL databases.

### Parameters

**link\_identifier** A link identifier returned by sqlanywhere\_connect or sqlanywhere\_pconnect.

### Returns

The ID generated for an AUTOINCREMENT column by a previous INSERT statement or zero if last insert did not affect an AUTOINCREMENT column. The function can return FALSE if the *link\_identifier* is not valid.

### Example

This example shows how the sqlanywhere\_identity function can be used to retrieve the autoincrement value most recently inserted into a table by the specified connection.

```
if( sqlanywhere_execute( $conn, "INSERT INTO my_auto_increment_table VALUES
( 1 ) " ) ) {
    $insert_id = sqlanywhere_insert_id( $conn );
    echo "Last insert id = $insert_id";
}
```

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_insert\\_id” on page 764](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_execute \(deprecated\)” on page 789](#)

## sqlanywhere\_num\_fields (deprecated)

### Prototype

```
int sqlanywhere_num_fields( resource result_identifier )
```

## Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead: [“sasql\\_field\\_count” on page 763](#).

Returns the number of columns (fields) the *result\_identifier* contains.

## Parameters

**result\_identifier** The result resource returned by the `sqlanywhere_query` function.

## Returns

A positive number of columns, or an error if *result\_identifier* is not valid.

## Example

This example returns a value indicating how many columns are in the result set.

```
$num_columns = sqlanywhere_num_fields( $result );
```

## Related functions

- [“sasql\\_field\\_count” on page 763](#)
- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_query \(deprecated\)” on page 798](#)

## sqlanywhere\_num\_rows (deprecated)

### Prototype

```
int sqlanywhere_num_rows( resource result_identifier )
```

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead: [“sasql\\_num\\_rows” on page 767](#).

Returns the number of rows that the *result\_identifier* contains.

### Parameters

**result\_identifier** The result resource returned by the `sqlanywhere_query` function.

### Returns

A positive number if the number of rows is exact, or a negative number if it is an estimate. To get the exact number of rows, the database option `row_counts` must be set permanently on the database, or temporarily on the connection. See [“sasql\\_set\\_option” on page 772](#).

### Example

This example shows how to retrieve the estimated number of rows returned in a result set:

```
$num_rows = sqlanywhere_num_rows( $result );
    if( $num_rows < 0 ) {
        $num_rows = abs( $num_rows );    # take the absolute value as an
estimate
    }
```

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_num\\_rows” on page 767](#)
- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_query \(deprecated\)” on page 798](#)

## sqlanywhere\_pconnect (deprecated)

### Prototype

```
resource sqlanywhere_pconnect( string con_str )
```

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead: [“sasql\\_pconnect” on page 767](#).

Establishes a persistent connection to a SQL Anywhere database. Because of the way Apache creates child processes, you may observe a performance gain when using `sqlanywhere_pconnect` instead of `sqlanywhere_connect`. Persistent connections may provide improved performance in a similar fashion to connection pooling. If your database server has a limited number of connections (for example, the personal database server is limited to 10 concurrent connections), caution should be exercised when using persistent connections. Persistent connections could be attached to each of the child processes, and if you have more child processes in Apache than there are available connections, you will receive connection errors.

### Parameters

**con\_str** A connection string as recognized by SQL Anywhere.

### Returns

A positive SQL Anywhere persistent link identifier on success, or an error and 0 on failure.

### Example

This example shows how to retrieve all the rows in a result set. Each row is returned as an array.

```
$conn = sqlanywhere_pconnect( "UID=DBA;PWD=sql" );
```

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_pconnect” on page 767](#)
- [“sasql\\_connect” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_disconnect” on page 758](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_connect \(deprecated\)” on page 785](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_disconnect \(deprecated\)” on page 787](#)

## sqlanywhere\_query (deprecated)

### Prototype

resource **sqlanywhere\_query**( resource *link\_identifier*, string *sql\_str* )

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead: [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#).

Prepares and executes the SQL query *sql\_str* on the connection identified by *link\_identifier* that has already been opened using `sqlanywhere_connect` or `sqlanywhere_pconnect`. For queries that do not return result sets, you can use the `sqlanywhere_execute` function.

### Parameters

**link\_identifier** The link identifier returned by the `sqlanywhere_connect` function.

**sql\_str** A SQL statement supported by SQL Anywhere.

For more information about SQL statements, see [“SQL statements” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

### Returns

A positive value representing the result resource on success, or 0 and an error message on failure.

### Example

This example executes the query `SELECT * FROM SYSTAB` on the SQL Anywhere database.

```
$result = sqlanywhere_query( $conn, "SELECT * FROM SYSTAB" );
```

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)
- [“sasql\\_free\\_result” on page 764](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_array” on page 760](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_field” on page 761](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_object” on page 762](#)
- [“sasql\\_fetch\\_row” on page 762](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_execute \(deprecated\)” on page 789](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_free\\_result \(deprecated\)” on page 794](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_array \(deprecated\)” on page 790](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_field \(deprecated\)” on page 791](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_object \(deprecated\)” on page 792](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_fetch\\_row \(deprecated\)” on page 793](#)



## sqlanywhere\_result\_all (deprecated)

### Prototype

```
bool sqlanywhere_result_all( resource result_identifier [, html_table_format_string [,
html_table_header_format_string [, html_table_row_format_string [, html_table_cell_format_string ]]] ] ] ] )
```

### Description

This function is deprecated.

Fetches all results of the *result\_identifier* and generates an HTML output table with an optional formatting string.

### Parameters

**result\_identifier** The result resource returned by the `sqlanywhere_query` function.

**html\_table\_format\_string** A format string that applies to HTML tables. For example, "**Border=1; Cellpadding=5**". The special value `none` does not create an HTML table. This is useful if you want to customize your column names or scripts. If you do not want to specify an explicit value for this parameter, use `NULL` for the parameter value.

**html\_table\_header\_format\_string** A format string that applies to column headings for HTML tables. For example, "**bgcolor=#FF9533**". The special value `none` does not create an HTML table. This is useful if you want to customize your column names or scripts. If you do not want to specify an explicit value for this parameter, use `NULL` for the parameter value.

**html\_table\_row\_format\_string** A format string that applies to rows within HTML tables. For example, "**onclick='alert('this')'**". If you would like different formats that alternate, use the special token `><`. The left side of the token indicates which format to use on odd rows and the right side of the token is used to format even rows. If you do not place this token in your format string, all rows have the same format. If you do not want to specify an explicit value for this parameter, use `NULL` for the parameter value.

**html\_table\_cell\_format\_string** A format string that applies to cells within HTML table rows. For example, "**onclick='alert('this')'**". If you do not want to specify an explicit value for this parameter, use `NULL` for the parameter value.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

### Example

This example shows how to use `sqlanywhere_result_all` to generate an HTML table with all the rows from a result set.

```
$result = sqlanywhere_query( $conn, "SELECT GivenName, Surname FROM
Employees" );
sqlanywhere_result_all( $result );
```

This example shows how to use different formatting on alternate rows using a style sheet.

```
$result = sqlanywhere_query( $conn, "SELECT GivenName, Surname FROM
Employees" );
```

```
sqlanywhere_result_all( $result, "border=2", "bordercolor=#3F3986",  
"bgcolor=#3F3986 style=\"color=#FF9533\" ", 'class="even"><class="odd" ' );
```

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_query” on page 769](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_query \(deprecated\)” on page 798](#)

## sqlanywhere\_rollback (deprecated)

### Prototype

```
bool sqlanywhere_rollback( resource link_identifier )
```

### Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead:  
[“sasql\\_rollback” on page 772.](#)

Ends a transaction on the SQL Anywhere database and discards any changes made during the transaction. This function is only useful when the `auto_commit` option is Off.

### Parameters

**link\_identifier** The link identifier returned by the `sqlanywhere_connect` function.

### Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

### Example

This example uses `sqlanywhere_rollback` to roll back a connection.

```
$result = sqlanywhere_rollback( $conn );
```

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_rollback” on page 772](#)
- [“sasql\\_commit” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_set\\_option” on page 772](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_commit \(deprecated\)” on page 785](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_set\\_option \(deprecated\)” on page 800](#)

## sqlanywhere\_set\_option (deprecated)

### Prototype

```
bool sqlanywhere_set_option( resource link_identifier, string option, mixed value )
```

## Description

This function is deprecated. You should use the following PHP function instead: [“sasql\\_set\\_option” on page 772](#).

Sets the value of the specified option on the specified connection. You can set the value for the following options:

Name	Description	Default
auto_commit	When this option is set to on, the database server commits after executing each statement.	on
row_counts	When this option is set to FALSE, the <code>sqlanywhere_num_rows</code> function returns an estimate of the number of rows affected. If you want to obtain an exact count, set this option to TRUE.	FALSE
verbose_errors	When this option is set to TRUE, the PHP driver returns verbose errors. When this option is set to FALSE, you must call the <code>sqlanywhere_error</code> or <code>sqlanywhere_errorcode</code> functions to get further error information.	TRUE

You can change the default value for an option by including the following line in the `php.ini` file. In this example, the default value is set for the `auto_commit` option.

```
sqlanywhere.auto_commit=0
```

## Parameters

**link\_identifier** The link identifier returned by the `sqlanywhere_connect` function.

**option** The name of the option you want to set.

**value** The new option value.

## Returns

TRUE on success or FALSE on failure.

## Example

The following examples show the different ways you can set the value of the `auto_commit` option.

```
$result = sqlanywhere_set_option( $conn, "auto_commit", "Off" );
$result = sqlanywhere_set_option( $conn, "auto_commit", 0 );
$result = sqlanywhere_set_option( $conn, "auto_commit", False );
```

### Related functions

- [“sasql\\_set\\_option” on page 772](#)
- [“sasql\\_commit” on page 756](#)
- [“sasql\\_error” on page 758](#)
- [“sasql\\_errorcode” on page 759](#)
- [“sasql\\_num\\_rows” on page 767](#)
- [“sasql\\_rollback” on page 772](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_commit \(deprecated\)” on page 785](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_error \(deprecated\)” on page 788](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_errorcode \(deprecated\)” on page 788](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_num\\_rows \(deprecated\)” on page 796](#)
- [“sqlanywhere\\_rollback \(deprecated\)” on page 800](#)

# Building the SQL Anywhere PHP module on Unix and Mac OS X

To connect PHP to SQL Anywhere using the SQL Anywhere PHP module on Unix and Mac OS X, you must add the SQL Anywhere PHP module's files to PHP's source tree, and then re-compile PHP.

## Requirements

The following is a list of software you need to have on your system to complete the steps detailed in this document:

- You must have a SQL Anywhere installation which may run on the same computer as the Apache web server, or on a different computer.
- The source code for the SQL Anywhere PHP module is available for download at [http://download.sybase.com/ianywhere/php/2.0.3/src/sasql\\_php.zip](http://download.sybase.com/ianywhere/php/2.0.3/src/sasql_php.zip).

You also need **sqlpp** and *libdblib11.so* (Unix) or *libdblib11.dylib* (Mac OS X) installed (check your SQL Anywhere *lib32* directory).

- You will require the PHP source code, which can be downloaded from <http://www.php.net>. Version 5.2.6 of PHP is a recent stable release.
- You will require the Apache web server source code, which can be downloaded from <http://httpd.apache.org>. If you are going to use a pre-built version of Apache, make sure that you have **apache** and **apache-devel** installed.
- If you plan to use the Unified ODBC PHP module, you need to have *libdbodbc11.so* (Unix) or *libdbodbc11.dylib* (Mac OS X) installed (check your SQL Anywhere *lib32* directory).

The following binaries should be installed from your Unix installation disk if they are not already installed, and can be found as RPMs:

- make
- automake
- autoconf
- libtool (glibtool for Mac OS X)
- makeinfo
- bison
- gcc
- cpp
- glibc-devel
- kernel-headers
- flex

You must have the same access privileges as the person who installed PHP to perform certain steps of the installation. Most Unix-based systems offer a **sudo** command that allows users with insufficient permissions to execute certain commands as a user with the right to execute them.

## Adding the SQL Anywhere PHP module files to the PHP source tree

1. Download the SQL Anywhere PHP module from [http://download.sybase.com/iAnywhere/php/2.0.3/src/sasql\\_php.zip](http://download.sybase.com/iAnywhere/php/2.0.3/src/sasql_php.zip).
2. From the directory where you saved the SQL Anywhere PHP module, extract the files to the *ext* subdirectory of the PHP source tree (Mac OS X users should replace **tar** with **gnutar**):

```
$ tar -xzf sasql_php.zip -C PHP-source-directory/ext/
```

For example:

```
$ tar -xzf sqlanywhere_php-1.0.8.tar.gz -C ~/php-5.2.6/ext
```

3. Make PHP aware of the module:

```
$ cd PHP-source-directory/ext/sqlanywhere
$ touch *
$ cd ~/PHP-source-directory
$ ./buildconf
```

The following example is for PHP version 5.2.6. You must change **php-5.2.6** to the version of PHP you are using.

```
$ cd ~/php-5.2.6/ext/sqlanywhere
$ touch *
$ cd ~/php-5.2.6
$ ./buildconf
```

4. Verify that PHP is aware of the module:

```
$ ./configure -help | egrep sqlanywhere
```

If you were successful in making PHP aware of the SQL Anywhere module, you should see the following text:

```
--with-sqlanywhere=[DIR]
```

If you are unsuccessful, keep track of the output of this command and post it to the **sybase.public.sqlanywhere.linux** newsgroup for assistance.

## Compiling Apache and PHP

PHP can be compiled as a shared module of a web server (such as Apache) or as a CGI executable. If you are using a web server that is not supported by PHP, or if you want to execute PHP scripts in your command shell rather than on a web page, you should compile PHP as a CGI executable. Otherwise, if you want to install PHP to operate in conjunction with Apache, compile it as an Apache module.

For information about compiling PHP as an Apache module, see [“Compiling PHP as an Apache module” on page 805](#).

For information about compiling PHP as a CGI executable, see [“Compiling PHP as a CGI executable” on page 807](#).

## Compiling PHP as an Apache module

The first two steps in the following instructions configure Apache so that it recognizes shared modules. If you have a compiled version of Apache already installed on your system, proceed to step 3. Note that Mac OS X comes with a preinstalled Apache web server.

### To compile PHP as an Apache module

1. Configure Apache to recognize shared modules.

Execute the following command (entered all on one line) from the directory where your Apache files were extracted:

```
$ cd Apache-source-directory
$ ./configure --enabled-shared=max --enable-module=most --
prefix=/Apache-installation-directory
```

The following example is for Apache version 2.2.9. You must change **apache\_2.2.9** to the version of Apache you are using.

```
$ cd ~/apache_2.2.9
$ ./configure --enabled-shared=max --enable-module=most --
prefix=/usr/local/web/apache
```

2. Recompile and install the relevant components:

```
$ make
$ make install
```

Now you are ready to compile PHP to operate as an Apache module.

3. Make sure the environment is set up for SQL Anywhere.

Depending on which shell you are using, enter the appropriate command from the directory where SQL Anywhere is installed (by default, this is */opt/sqlanywhere11*). On Mac OS X, the default directory is */Applications/SQLAnywhere11/System*.

If you are using this shell...	...use this command
sh, ksh, bash	<code>./bin32/sa_config.sh</code>
csh, tcsh	<code>source ./bin32/sa_config.csh</code>

4. Configure PHP as an Apache module to include the SQL Anywhere PHP module.

Execute the following commands:

```
$ cd PHP-source-directory
$ ./configure --with-sqlanywhere --with-apxs=/Apache-installation-
directory/bin/apxs
```

The following example is for PHP version 5.2.6. You must change **php-5.2.6** to the version of PHP you are using.

```
$ cd ~/php-5.2.6
$ ./configure --with-sqlanywhere --with-apxs=/usr/local/web/apache/bin/
apxs
```

The *configure* script will try to determine the version and location of your SQL Anywhere installation. In the output from the command, you should see lines similar to the following:

```
checking for SQL Anywhere support... yes
checking      SQL Anywhere install dir... /opt/sqlanywhere11
checking      SQL Anywhere version... 11
```

5. Recompile the relevant components:

```
$ make
```

6. Check that the libraries are properly linked.

- Linux users (the following example assumes you are using PHP version 5):

```
ldd ../libs/libphp5.so
```

- Mac OS X users:

Refer to your *httpd.conf* configuration file to determine where *libphp5.so* is on your computer. Perform the check with the following command:

```
otool -L $LIBPHP5_DIR/libphp5.so
```

*\$LIBPHP5\_DIR* is the directory where *libphp5.so* is located, according to your server configuration.

This command outputs a list of the libraries that *libphp5.so* uses. Verify that *libdblib11.so* is in the list.

7. Install the PHP binaries in Apache's *lib* directory:

```
$ make install
```

8. Perform verification. PHP does this automatically. All you need is to make sure that your *httpd.conf* configuration file is verified so that Apache will recognize *.php* files as PHP scripts.

*httpd.conf* is stored in the *conf* subdirectory of the *Apache* directory:

```
$ cd Apache-installation-directory/conf
```

For example:

```
$ cd /usr/local/web/apache/conf
```

Make a backup copy of *httpd.conf* before editing the file (you can replace **pico** with the text editor of your choice):



```
$ cp httpd.conf httpd.conf.backup
$ pico httpd.conf
```

Add or uncomment the following lines in *httpd.conf* (they are not located together in the file):

```
LoadModule php5_module    libexec/libphp5.so
AddModule mod_php5.c
AddType application/x-httpd-php .php
AddType application/x-httpd-php-source .phps
```

#### Note

On Mac OS X, the last two lines should be added or uncommented in *httpd\_macosxserver.conf*.

The first two lines point Apache to the files that are used for interpreting PHP code, while the other two lines declare file types for files whose extension is *.php* or *.phps* so Apache can recognize and deal with them appropriately.

For information about testing and using your setup, see [“Running PHP test scripts in your web pages”](#) on page 746.

## Compiling PHP as a CGI executable

### To compile PHP as a CGI executable

1. Make sure the environment is set up for SQL Anywhere.

For instructions on setting up the environment for SQL Anywhere, follow the instructions in step 4 of [“Compiling PHP as an Apache module”](#) on page 805.

2. Configure PHP as a CGI executable and with the SQL Anywhere PHP module.

Execute the following command from the directory where your PHP files were extracted:

```
$ cd PHP-source-directory
$ ./configure --with-sqlanywhere
```

For example:

```
$ cd ~/php-5.2.6/
$ ./configure --with-sqlanywhere
```

The configuration script will try to determine the version and location of your SQL Anywhere installation. If you examine the output of this command, you should see lines similar to the following:

```
checking for SQL Anywhere support... yes
checking    SQL Anywhere install dir... /opt/sqlanywhere10
checking    SQL Anywhere version... 9
```

3. Compile the executable:

```
$ make
```

4. Install the components.

```
$ make install
```

For information about testing and using PHP, see [“Running PHP test scripts in your web pages”](#) on page 746.

---

# SQL Anywhere for Ruby

## Contents

Ruby support in SQL Anywhere .....	810
Rails support in SQL Anywhere .....	812
Ruby-DBI Driver for SQL Anywhere .....	814
SQL Anywhere Ruby API .....	818

---

## Ruby support in SQL Anywhere

There are three separate packages available in the SQL Anywhere for Ruby project. The simplest way to install any of these packages is to use **RubyGems**. To obtain RubyGems, please visit the following site: <http://rubyforge.org/projects/rubygems/>. We recommend that you install version 1.3.1 or later.

The home for the SQL Anywhere Ruby project is <http://sqlanywhere.rubyforge.org/>.

### SQL Anywhere Native Ruby Driver

**sqlanywhere** This package is a low-level driver that allows Ruby code to interface with SQL Anywhere databases. This package provides a Ruby wrapping over the interface exposed by the SQL Anywhere C API. This package is written in C and is available as source, or as pre-compiled gems, for Windows and Linux. If you have **RubyGems** installed, this package can be obtained by running the following command:

```
gem install sqlanywhere
```

Note that this package is a prerequisite for any of the other SQL Anywhere Ruby packages. For more information, see:

- “SQL Anywhere Ruby API” on page 818
- Download source (<http://rubyforge.org/projects/sqlanywhere>)
- RDocs (<http://sqlanywhere.rubyforge.org/sqlanywhere/>)
- Ruby Programming Language (<http://www.ruby-lang.org>)
- RubyForge / Ruby Central (<http://rubyforge.org/>)

### SQL Anywhere ActiveRecord Adapter

**activerecord-sqlanywhere-adapter** This package is an adapter that allows ActiveRecord to communicate with SQL Anywhere. ActiveRecord is an object-relational mapper, popularized by being part of the Ruby on Rails web development framework. This package is written in pure Ruby, and available in source, or gem format. This adapter uses (and has a dependency on) the **sqlanywhere** gem. If you have **RubyGems** installed, this package and its dependencies can be installed by running the following command:

```
gem install activerecord-sqlanywhere-adapter
```

For more information, see:

- “Rails support in SQL Anywhere” on page 812
- Download source (<http://rubyforge.org/projects/sqlanywhere>)
- RDocs (<http://sqlanywhere.rubyforge.org/activerecord-sqlanywhere-adapter>)
- Ruby on Rails (<http://www.rubyonrails.org/>)

### SQL Anywhere Ruby/DBI Driver

**dbi** This package is a DBI driver for Ruby. If you have **RubyGems** installed, this package and its dependencies can be installed by running the following command:

```
gem install dbi
```

**dbd-sqlanywhere** This package is a driver that allows Ruby/DBI to communicate with SQL Anywhere. Ruby/DBI is a generic database interface modeled after Perl's popular DBI module. This package is written

in pure Ruby, and available in source, or gem format. This driver uses (and has a dependency on) the **sqlanywhere** gem. If you have **RubyGems** installed, this package and its dependencies can be installed by running the following command:

```
gem install dbd-sqlanywhere
```

For more information, see:

- “Ruby-DBI Driver for SQL Anywhere” on page 814
- Download source (<http://rubyforge.org/projects/sqlanywhere>)
- RDocs (<http://sqlanywhere.rubyforge.org/dbd-sqlanywhere>)
- Ruby/DBI - Direct database access layer for Ruby (<http://ruby-dbi.rubyforge.org/>)

For feedback on any of these packages, please use the [sqlanywhere-users@rubyforge.com](mailto:sqlanywhere-users@rubyforge.com) mailing list. For general questions about using SQL Anywhere in a web environment, please use the [SQL Anywhere Web Development](#) forum. For general questions on SQL Anywhere and its usage, please use the [sybase.public.sqlanywhere.general](mailto:sybase.public.sqlanywhere.general) newsgroup.

## Rails support in SQL Anywhere

Rails is a web development framework written in the Ruby language. Its strength is in web application development. A familiarity with the Ruby programming language is highly recommended before you attempt Rails development. You might consider including the “[SQL Anywhere Ruby API](#)” on page 818 as part of your familiarization with Ruby.

If you are ready to jump into Rails development, there are a few things you need to do.

### Prerequisites

- **RubyGems** You should install RubyGems. It makes installation of Ruby packages so much easier. At the time of writing, version 1.3.1 was required for Rails development. The [Ruby on Rails \(http://www.rubyonrails.org/\)](http://www.rubyonrails.org/) web site will direct you to the correct version to install.
- **Ruby** You will need to install the Ruby interpreter on your system. The [Ruby on Rails \(http://www.rubyonrails.org/\)](http://www.rubyonrails.org/) web site recommends which version to install.
- **Rails** With RubyGems, you can install all of Rails and its dependencies with a single command line:
- **activerecord-sqlanywhere-adapter** If you have not already done so, you must install the SQL Anywhere ActiveRecord support to do Rails development using SQL Anywhere. With RubyGems, you can install all of SQL Anywhere ActiveRecord support and its dependencies with a single command line:

```
gem install rails
```

```
gem install activerecord-sqlanywhere-adapter
```

### Before you begin

Once you have installed the requisite components, there are a few final steps that you must undertake before you can begin Rails development using SQL Anywhere. These steps are required to add SQL Anywhere to the set of database management systems supported by Rails.

1. You must create a *sqlanywhere.yml* file in the Rails *configs\databases* directory. If you have installed Ruby in the path *\Ruby* and you have installed version 2.2.2 of Rails, then the path to this file would be *\Ruby\lib\ruby\gems\1.8\gems\rails-2.2.2\configs\databases*. The contents of this file should be:

```
#
# SQL Anywhere database configuration
#
# This configuration file defines the patten used for
# database filenames. If your application is called "blog",
# then the database names will be blog_development,
# blog_test, blog_production. The specified username and
# password should permit DBA access to the database.
#
development:
  adapter: sqlanywhere
  database: <%= app_name %>_development
  username: DBA
  password: sql

# Warning: The database defined as "test" will be erased and
# re-generated from your development database when you run "rake".
```

```
# Do not set this db to the same as development or production.
test:
  adapter: sqlanywhere
  database: <%= app_name %>_test
  username: DBA
  password: sql

production:
  adapter: sqlanywhere
  database: <%= app_name %>_production
  username: DBA
  password: sql
```

2. You must update the Rails `app_generator.rb` file. Using the same assumptions in step 1 above, this file is located in the path `\Ruby\lib\ruby\gems\1.8\gems\rails-2.2.2\lib\rails_generator\generators\applications\app`. Edit the `app_generator.rb` file and locate the following line:

```
DATABASES = %w(mysql oracle postgresql sqlite2 sqlite3 frontbase ibm_db)
```

Add **sqlanywhere** to the list as follows.

```
DATABASES = %w(sqlanywhere mysql oracle postgresql sqlite2 sqlite3
frontbase ibm_db)
```

If you want, you can also change the **DEFAULT\_DATABASE** setting (on the next line) to read as follows:

```
DEFAULT_DATABASE = 'sqlanywhere'
```

Now save the file and exit.

## Learning Rails

We recommend that you start with the excellent [Getting Started With Rails](#) tutorial on the Ruby on Rails website. In the tutorial, you are shown the command to initialize the **blog** project. Here is the command to initialize the **blog** project for use with SQL Anywhere.

```
rails blog -d sqlanywhere
```

If you changed the **DEFAULT\_DATABASE** setting, then the `-d sqlanywhere` option is not required

Also, note that the **blog** tutorial requires that you set up three databases. After you have initialized the project, you can change to the root directory of the project and create three databases as follows.

```
dbinit blog_development
dbinit blog_test
dbinit blog_production
```

Before you continue, you must start the database server and the three databases as follows.

```
dsrv11 blog_development.db blog_production.db blog_test.db
```

You are now ready to explore Ruby on Rails web development using the tutorial.

For more information about the Ruby on Rails web development framework, visit the [Ruby on Rails \(http://www.rubyonrails.org/\)](http://www.rubyonrails.org/) web site.

## Ruby-DBI Driver for SQL Anywhere

This section provides an overview of how to write Ruby applications that use the SQL Anywhere DBI driver. Complete documentation for the DBI module is available online at <http://ruby-dbi.rubyforge.org/>.

### Loading the DBI module

To use the DBI:SQLAnywhere interface from a Ruby application, you must first tell Ruby that you plan to use the Ruby DBI module. To do so, include the following line near the top of the Ruby source file.

```
require 'dbi'
```

The DBI module automatically loads the SQL Anywhere database driver (DBD) interface as required.

### Opening and closing a connection

Generally, you open a single connection to a database and then perform all the required operations through it by executing a sequence of SQL statements. To open a connection, you use the connect function. The return value is a handle to the database connection that you use to perform subsequent operations on that connection.

The call to the connect function takes the general form:

```
dbh = DBI.connect('DBI:SQLAnywhere:server-name', user-id, password, options)
```

- **server-name** is the name of the database server that you wish to connect to. Alternately, you can specify a connection string in the format "option1=value1;option2=value2;...".
- **user-id** is a valid user ID. Unless this string is empty, ";UID=value" is appended to the connection string.
- **password** is the corresponding password for the user ID. Unless this string is empty, ";PWD=value" is appended to the connection string.
- **options** is a hash of additional connection parameters such as DatabaseName, DatabaseFile, and ConnectionName. These are appended to the connection string in the format "option1=value1;option2=value2;...".

To demonstrate the connect function, start the database server and sample database before running the sample Ruby scripts.

```
dbeng11 samples-dir\demo.db
```

The following code sample opens and closes a connection to the SQL Anywhere sample database. The string "demo" in the example below is the server name.

```
require 'dbi'
DBI.connect('DBI:SQLAnywhere:demo', 'DBA', 'sql') do |dbh|
  if dbh.ping
    print "Successfully Connected\n"
    dbh.disconnect()
  end
end
```

Optionally, you can specify a connection string in place of the server name. For example, in the above script may be altered by replacing the first parameter to the connect function as follows:



```

require 'dbi'
DBI.connect('DBI:SQLAnywhere:ENG=demo;DBN=demo;UID=DBA;PWD=sql') do |dbh|
  if dbh.ping
    print "Successfully Connected\n"
    dbh.disconnect()
  end
end

```

Because the user ID and password are specified in the connection string, it is not necessary to specify parameters 2 and 3 to the connect function. However, if you pass a hash of additional connection parameters, then specify an empty string ( ' ' ) for the user ID and password parameters.

The following example shows how additional connection parameters can be passed to the connect function as a hash of key/value pairs.

```

require 'dbi'
DBI.connect('DBI:SQLAnywhere:demo', 'DBA', 'sql',
  { :ConnectionName => "RubyDemo",
    :DatabaseFile => "demo.db",
    :DatabaseName => "demo" }
) do |dbh|
  if dbh.ping
    print "Successfully Connected\n"
    dbh.disconnect()
  end
end

```

## Selecting data

Once you have obtained a handle to an open connection, you can access and modify data stored in the database. Perhaps the simplest operation is to retrieve some rows and print them out.

A SQL statement must be executed first. If the statement returns a result set, you use the resulting statement handle to retrieve meta information about the result set and the rows of the result set. The following example obtains the column names from the metadata and displays the column names and values for each row fetched.

```

require 'dbi'

def db_query( dbh, sql )
  sth = dbh.execute(sql)
  print "# of Fields: #{sth.column_names.size}\n"
  sth.fetch do |row|
    print "\n"
    sth.column_info.each_with_index do |info, i|
      unless info["type_name"] == "LONG VARBINARY"
        print "#{info["name"]}#{row[i]}\n"
      end
    end
  end
  sth.finish
end

begin
  dbh = DBI.connect('DBI:SQLAnywhere:demo', 'DBA', 'sql')
  db_query(dbh, "SELECT * FROM Products")
rescue DBI::DatabaseError => e
  puts "An error occurred"
  puts "Error code: #{e.err}"
  puts "Error message: #{e.errstr}"
  puts "Error SQLSTATE: #{e.state}"
ensure

```

```
        dbh.disconnect if dbh
    end
```

The first few lines of output that appear are reproduced below.

```
# of Fields:  8

ID=300
Name=Tee Shirt
Description=Tank Top
Size=Small
Color=White
Quantity=28
UnitPrice=9.00

ID=301
Name=Tee Shirt
Description=V-neck
Size=Medium
Color=Orange
Quantity=54
UnitPrice=14.00
```

It is important to call `finish` to release the statement handle when you are done. If you do not, then you may get an error like the following:

```
Resource governor for 'prepared statements' exceeded
```

To detect handle leaks, the SQL Anywhere database server limits the number of cursors and prepared statements permitted to a maximum of 50 per connection by default. The resource governor automatically generates an error if these limits are exceeded. If you get this error, check for undestroyed statement handles. Use `prepare_cached` sparingly, as the statement handles are not destroyed.

If necessary, you can alter these limits by setting the `max_cursor_count` and `max_statement_count` options. See [“max\\_cursor\\_count option \[database\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#), and [“max\\_statement\\_count option \[database\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### Inserting rows

Inserting rows requires a handle to an open connection. The simplest way to insert rows is to use a parameterized INSERT statement, meaning that question marks are used as place holders for values. The statement is first prepared, and then executed once per new row. The new row values are supplied as parameters to the `execute` method.

```
require 'dbi'

def db_query( dbh, sql )
  sth = dbh.execute(sql)
  print "# of Fields:  #{sth.column_names.size}\n"
  sth.fetch do |row|
    print "\n"
    sth.column_info.each_with_index do |info, i|
      unless info["type_name"] == "LONG VARBINARY"
        print "#{info["name"]}={row[i]}\n"
      end
    end
  end
  sth.finish
end
```

```
def db_insert( dbh, rows )
  sql = "INSERT INTO Customers (ID, GivenName, Surname,
    Street, City, State, Country, PostalCode,
    Phone, CompanyName)
    VALUES (?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?)"
  sth = dbh.prepare(sql);
  rows.each do |row|
    sth.execute(row[0],row[1],row[2],row[3],row[4],
      row[5],row[6],row[7],row[8],row[9])
  end
end

begin
  dbh = DBI.connect('DBI:SQLAnywhere:demo', 'DBA', 'sql')
  rows = [
    [801,'Alex','Alt','5 Blue Ave','New York','NY','USA',
      '10012','5185553434','BXM'],
    [802,'Zach','Zed','82 Fair St','New York','NY','USA',
      '10033','5185552234','Zap']
  ]
  db_insert(dbh, rows)
  dbh.commit
  db_query(dbh, "SELECT * FROM Customers WHERE ID > 800")
rescue DBI::DatabaseError => e
  puts "An error occurred"
  puts "Error code: #{e.err}"
  puts "Error message: #{e.errstr}"
  puts "Error SQLSTATE: #{e.state}"
ensure
  dbh.disconnect if dbh
end
```

## SQL Anywhere Ruby API

SQL Anywhere provides a low-level interface to the SQL Anywhere C API. The API described in the following sections permits the rapid development of SQL applications. To demonstrate the power of Ruby application development, consider the following sample Ruby program. It loads the SQL Anywhere Ruby extension, connects to the demo database, lists column values from the Products table, disconnects, and terminates.

```
begin
  require 'rubygems'
  gem 'sqlanywhere'
  unless defined? SQLAnywhere
    require 'sqlanywhere'
  end
end
api = SQLAnywhere::SQLAnywhereInterface.new()
SQLAnywhere::API.sqlany_initialize_interface( api )
api.sqlany_init()
conn = api.sqlany_new_connection()
api.sqlany_connect( conn, "DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo" )
stmt = api.sqlany_execute_direct( conn, "SELECT * FROM Products" )
num_rows = api.sqlany_num_rows( stmt )
num_rows.times {
  api.sqlany_fetch_next( stmt )
  num_cols = api.sqlany_num_cols( stmt )
  for col in 1..num_cols do
    info = api.sqlany_get_column_info( stmt, col - 1 )
    unless info[3]==1 # Don't do binary
      rc, value = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, col - 1 )
      print "#{info[2]}=#{value}\n"
    end
  end
  print "\n"
}
api.sqlany_free_stmt( stmt )
api.sqlany_disconnect(conn)
api.sqlany_free_connection(conn)
api.sqlany_fini()
SQLAnywhere::API.sqlany_finalize_interface( api )
```

The first two rows of the result set output from this Ruby program are shown below:

```
ID=300
Name=Tee Shirt
Description=Tank Top
Size=Small
Color=White
Quantity=28
UnitPrice=9.00

ID=301
Name=Tee Shirt
Description=V-neck
Size=Medium
Color=Orange
Quantity=54
UnitPrice=14.00
```

The following sections describe each of the supported functions.

## sqlany\_affected\_rows

Returns the number of rows affected by execution of the prepared statement.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_affected_rows ( $stmt )
```

### Parameters

- **\$stmt** A statement that was prepared and executed successfully in which no result set was returned. For example, an INSERT, UPDATE or DELETE statement was executed.

### Returns

Returns a scalar value that is the number of rows affected, or -1 on failure.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_execute” on page 823](#)

### Example

```
affected = api.sqlany_affected( stmt )
```

## sqlany\_bind\_param

Binds a user-supplied buffer as a parameter to the prepared statement.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_bind_param ( $stmt, $index, $param )
```

### Parameters

- **\$stmt** A statement object returned by the successful execution of sqlany\_prepare.
- **\$index** The index of the parameter. The number must be between 0 and sqlany\_num\_params() - 1.
- **\$param** A filled bind object retrieved from sqlany\_describe\_bind\_param.

### Returns

Returns a scalar value that is 1 when successful or 0 when unsuccessful.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_describe\\_bind\\_param” on page 822](#)

### Example

```
stmt = api.sqlany_prepare(conn, "UPDATE Contacts  
SET Contacts.ID = Contacts.ID + 1000  
WHERE Contacts.ID >= ?" )  
rc, param = api.sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 0 )  
print "Param name = ", param.get_name(), "\n"
```

```
print "Param dir = ", param.get_direction(), "\n"
param.set_value(50)
rc = api.sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 0, param )
```

## sqlany\_clear\_error

Clears the last stored error code.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_clear_error ( $conn )
```

### Parameters

- **\$conn** A connection object returned from `sqlany_new_connection`.

### Returns

Returns nil.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_new\\_connection” on page 832](#)

### Example

```
api.sqlany_clear_error( conn )
```

## sqlany\_client\_version

Returns the current client version.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_client_version ( )
```

### Returns

Returns a scalar value that is the client version string.

### Example

```
buffer = api.sqlany_client_version()
```

## sqlany\_commit

Commits the current transaction.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_commit ( $conn )
```

**Parameters**

- **\$conn** The connection object on which the commit operation is to be performed.

**Returns**

Returns a scalar value that is 1 when successful or 0 when unsuccessful.

**See also**

- [“sqlany\\_rollback” on page 835](#)

**Example**

```
rc = api.sqlany_commit( conn )
```

## sqlany\_connect

Creates a connection to a SQL Anywhere database server using the specified connection object and connection string.

**Syntax**

```
sqlany_connect ( $conn, $str )
```

**Parameters**

- **\$conn** The connection object created by `sqlany_new_connection`.
- **\$str** A SQL Anywhere connection string.

**Returns**

Returns a scalar value that is 1 if the connection is established successfully or 0 when the connection fails. Use `sqlany_error` to retrieve the error code and message.

**See also**

- [“sqlany\\_new\\_connection” on page 832](#)
- [“sqlany\\_error” on page 823](#)
- [“Connection parameters” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)
- [“SQL Anywhere database connections” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)

**Example**

```
# Create a connection
conn = api.sqlany_new_connection()

# Establish a connection
status = api.sqlany_connect( conn, "UID=DBA;PWD=sql" )
print "Connection status = #{status}\n"
```

## sqlany\_describe\_bind\_param

Describes the bind parameters of a prepared statement.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_describe_bind_param ( $stmt, $index )
```

### Parameters

- **\$stmt** A statement prepared successfully using `sqlany_prepare`.
- **\$index** The index of the parameter. The number must be between 0 and `sqlany_num_params()` - 1.

### Returns

Returns a 2-element array that contains 1 on success or 0 on failure as the first element and a described parameter as the second element.

### Remarks

This function allows the caller to determine information about prepared statement parameters. The type of prepared statement (stored procedure or a DML), determines the amount of information provided. The direction of the parameters (input, output, or input-output) are always provided.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_bind\\_param” on page 819](#)
- [“sqlany\\_prepare” on page 834](#)

### Example

```
stmt = api.sqlany_prepare(conn, "UPDATE Contacts
SET Contacts.ID = Contacts.ID + 1000
WHERE Contacts.ID >= ?" )
rc, param = api.sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 0 )
print "Param name = ", param.get_name(), "\n"
print "Param dir = ", param.get_direction(), "\n"
param.set_value(50)
rc = api.sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 0, param )
```

## sqlany\_disconnect

Disconnects a SQL Anywhere connection. All uncommitted transactions are rolled back.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_disconnect ( $conn )
```

### Parameters

- **\$conn** A connection object with a connection established using `sqlany_connect`.



## Returns

Returns a scalar value that is 1 on success or 0 on failure.

## See also

- [“sqlany\\_connect” on page 821](#)
- [“sqlany\\_new\\_connection” on page 832](#)

## Example

```
# Disconnect from the database
status = api.sqlany_disconnect( conn )
print "Disconnect status = #{status}\n"
```

## sqlany\_error

Returns the last error code and message stored in the connection object.

## Syntax

```
sqlany_error ( $conn )
```

## Parameters

- **\$conn** A connection object returned from `sqlany_new_connection`.

## Returns

Returns a 2-element array that contains the SQL error code as the first element and an error message string as the second element.

For the error code, positive values are warnings, negative values are errors, and 0 is success.

## See also

- [“sqlany\\_connect” on page 821](#)
- [“SQL Anywhere error messages sorted by SQLCODE”](#) [*Error Messages*]

## Example

```
code, msg = api.sqlany_error( conn )
print "Code=#{code} Message=#{msg}\n"
```

## sqlany\_execute

Executes a prepared statement.

## Syntax

```
sqlany_execute ( $stmt )
```

### Parameters

- **\$stmt** A statement prepared successfully using `sqlany_prepare`.

### Returns

Returns a scalar value that is 1 on success or 0 on failure.

### Remarks

You can use `sqlany_num_cols` to verify if the statement returned a result set.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_prepare” on page 834](#)

### Example

```
stmt = api.sqlany_prepare(conn, "UPDATE Contacts
    SET Contacts.ID = Contacts.ID + 1000
    WHERE Contacts.ID >= ?" )
rc, param = api.sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 0 )
param.set_value(50)
rc = api.sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 0, param )
rc = api.sqlany_execute( stmt )
```

## sqlany\_execute\_direct

Executes the SQL statement specified by the string argument.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_execute_direct ( $conn, $sql )
```

### Parameters

- **\$conn** A connection object with a connection established using `sqlany_connect`.
- **\$sql** A SQL string. The SQL string should not have parameters such as `?`.

### Returns

Returns a statement object or nil on failure.

### Remarks

Use this function if you want to prepare and execute a statement in one step. Do not use this function to execute a SQL statement with parameters.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_absolute” on page 825](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_next” on page 826](#)
- [“sqlany\\_num\\_cols” on page 832](#)
- [“sqlany\\_get\\_column” on page 829](#)

## Example

```
stmt = api.sqlany_execute_direct( conn, "SELECT * FROM Employees" )
rc = api.sqlany_fetch_next( stmt )
rc, employeeID = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 0 )
rc, managerID = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 1 )
rc, surname = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 2 )
rc, givenName = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 3 )
rc, departmentID = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 4 )
print employeeID, ", ", managerID, ", ",
      surname, ", ", givenName, ", ", departmentID, "\n"
```

## sqlany\_execute\_immediate

Executes the specified SQL statement immediately without returning a result set. It is useful for statements that do not return result sets.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_execute_immediate ( $conn, $sql )
```

### Parameters

- **\$conn** A connection object with a connection established using `sqlany_connect`.
- **\$sql** A SQL string. The SQL string should not have parameters such as `?`.

### Returns

Returns a scalar value that is 1 on success or 0 on failure.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_error” on page 823](#)

## Example

```
rc = api.sqlany_execute_immediate(conn, "UPDATE Contacts
SET Contacts.ID = Contacts.ID + 1000
WHERE Contacts.ID >= 50" )
```

## sqlany\_fetch\_absolute

Moves the current row in the result set to the row number specified and then fetches the data at that row.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_fetch_absolute ( $stmt, $row_num )
```

### Parameters

- **\$stmt** A statement object that was executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.
- **\$row\_num** The row number to be fetched. The first row is 1, the last row is -1.

## Returns

Returns a scalar value that is 1 on success or 0 on failure.

## See also

- [“sqlany\\_error” on page 823](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute” on page 823](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct” on page 824](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_next” on page 826](#)

## Example

```
stmt = api.sqlany_execute_direct( conn, "SELECT * FROM Employees" )
# Fetch the second row
rc = api.sqlany_fetch_absolute( stmt, 2 )
rc, employeeID = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 0 )
rc, managerID = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 1 )
rc, surname = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 2 )
rc, givenName = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 3 )
rc, departmentID = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 4 )
print employeeID, ",", managerID, ",",
      surname, ",", givenName, ",", departmentID, "\n"
```

## sqlany\_fetch\_next

Returns the next row from the result set. This function first advances the row pointer and then fetches the data at the new row.

## Syntax

```
sqlany_fetch_next ( $stmt )
```

## Parameters

- **\$stmt** A statement object that was executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.

## Returns

Returns a scalar value that is 1 on success or 0 on failure.

## See also

- [“sqlany\\_error” on page 823](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute” on page 823](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct” on page 824](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_absolute” on page 825](#)

## Example

```
stmt = api.sqlany_execute_direct( conn, "SELECT * FROM Employees" )
# Fetch the second row
rc = api.sqlany_fetch_next( stmt )
rc, employeeID = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 0 )
rc, managerID = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 1 )
rc, surname = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 2 )
rc, givenName = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 3 )
```

```
rc, departmentID = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 4 )
print employeeID, ", ", managerID, ", ",
      surname, ", ", givenName, ", ", departmentID, "\n"
```

## sqlany\_fini

Frees resources allocated by the API.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_fini ( )
```

### Returns

Returns nil.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_init” on page 831](#)

### Example

```
# Disconnect from the database
api.sqlany_disconnect( conn )

# Free the connection resources
api.sqlany_free_connection( conn )

# Free resources the api object uses
api.sqlany_fini()

# Close the interface
SQLAnywhere::API.sqlany_finalize_interface( api )
```

## sqlany\_free\_connection

Frees the resources associated with a connection object.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_free_connection ( $conn )
```

### Parameters

- **\$conn** A connection object created by `sqlany_new_connection`.

### Returns

Returns nil.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_new\\_connection” on page 832](#)

### Example

```
# Disconnect from the database
api.sqlany_disconnect( conn )

# Free the connection resources
api.sqlany_free_connection( conn )

# Free resources the api object uses
api.sqlany_fini()

# Close the interface
SQLAnywhere::API.sqlany_finalize_interface( api )
```

## sqlany\_free\_stmt

Frees resources associated with a statement object.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_free_stmt ( $stmt )
```

### Parameters

- **\$stmt** A statement object returned by the successful execution of `sqlany_prepare` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.

### Returns

Returns nil.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_prepare” on page 834](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct” on page 824](#)

### Example

```
stmt = api.sqlany_prepare(conn, "UPDATE Contacts
SET Contacts.ID = Contacts.ID + 1000
WHERE Contacts.ID >= ?" )
rc, param = api.sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 0 )
param.set_value(50)
rc = api.sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 0, param )
rc = api.sqlany_execute( stmt )
rc = api.sqlany_free_stmt( stmt )
```

## sqlany\_get\_bind\_param\_info

Retrieves information about the parameters that were bound using `sqlany_bind_param`.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_get_bind_param_info ( $stmt, $index )
```

### Parameters

- **\$stmt** A statement successfully prepared using `sqlany_prepare`.
- **\$index** The index of the parameter. The number must be between 0 and `sqlany_num_params() - 1`.

### Returns

Returns a 2-element array that contains 1 on success or 0 on failure as the first element and a described parameter as the second element.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_bind\\_param” on page 819](#)
- [“sqlany\\_describe\\_bind\\_param” on page 822](#)
- [“sqlany\\_prepare” on page 834](#)

### Example

```
# Get information on first parameter (0)
rc, param_info = api.sqlany_get_bind_param_info( stmt, 0 )
print "Param_info direction = ", param_info.get_direction(), "\n"
print "Param_info output = ", param_info.get_output(), "\n"
```

## sqlany\_get\_column

Returns the value fetched for the specified column.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_get_column ( $stmt, $col_index )
```

### Parameters

- **\$stmt** A statement object that was executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.
- **\$col\_index** The number of the column to be retrieved. A column number is between 0 and `sqlany_num_cols() - 1`.

### Returns

Returns a 2-element array that contains 1 on success or 0 on failure as the first element and the column value as the second element.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_execute” on page 823](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct” on page 824](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_absolute” on page 825](#)
- [“sqlany\\_fetch\\_next” on page 826](#)

### Example

```
stmt = api.sqlany_execute_direct( conn, "SELECT * FROM Employees" )
# Fetch the second row
rc = api.sqlany_fetch_next( stmt )
```

```
rc, employeeID = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 0 )
rc, managerID  = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 1 )
rc, surname    = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 2 )
rc, givenName  = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 3 )
rc, departmentID = api.sqlany_get_column( stmt, 4 )
print employeeID, ", ", managerID, ", ",
      surname, ", ", givenName, ", ", departmentID, "\n"
```

## sqlany\_get\_column\_info

Gets column information for the specified result set column.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_get_column_info ( $stmt, $col_index )
```

### Parameters

- **\$stmt** A statement object that was executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.
- **\$col\_index** The column number between 0 and `sqlany_num_cols()` - 1.

### Returns

Returns a 9-element array of information describing a column in a result set. The first element contains 1 on success or 0 on failure. The array elements are described in the following table.

Element number	Type	Description
0	Integer	1 on success or 0 on failure.
1	Integer	Column index (0 to <code>sqlany_num_cols()</code> - 1).
2	String	Column name.
3	Integer	Column type. See <a href="#">“Column types” on page 836</a> .
4	Integer	Column native type. See <a href="#">“Native column types” on page 836</a> .
5	Integer	Column precision (for numeric types).
6	Integer	Column scale (for numeric types).
7	Integer	Column size.
8	Integer	Column nullable (1=nullable, 0=not nullable).

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_execute” on page 823](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct” on page 824](#)
- [“sqlany\\_prepare” on page 834](#)



**Example**

```
# Get column info for first column (0)
rc, col_num, col_name, col_type, col_native_type, col_precision, col_scale,
  col_size, col_nullable = api.sqlany_get_column_info( stmt, 0 )
```

## sqlany\_get\_next\_result

Advances to the next result set in a multiple result set query.

**Syntax**

```
sqlany_get_next_result ( $stmt )
```

**Parameters**

- **\$stmt** A statement object executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.

**Returns**

Returns a scalar value that is 1 on success or 0 on failure.

**See also**

- [“sqlany\\_execute” on page 823](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct” on page 824](#)

**Example**

```
stmt = api.sqlany_prepare(conn, "call two_results()" )
rc = api.sqlany_execute( stmt )
# Fetch from first result set
rc = api.sqlany_fetch_absolute( stmt, 3 )
# Go to next result set
rc = api.sqlany_get_next_result( stmt )
# Fetch from second result set
rc = api.sqlany_fetch_absolute( stmt, 2 )
```

## sqlany\_init

Initializes the interface.

**Syntax**

```
sqlany_init ( )
```

**Returns**

Returns a 2-element array that contains 1 on success or 0 on failure as the first element and the Ruby interface version as the second element.

**See also**

- [“sqlany\\_fini” on page 827](#)

### Example

```
# Load the SQLAnywhere gem
begin
  require 'rubygems'
  gem 'sqlanywhere'
  unless defined? SQLAnywhere
    require 'sqlanywhere'
  end
end
# Create an interface
api = SQLAnywhere::SQLAnywhereInterface.new()
# Initialize the interface (loads the DLL/SO)
SQLAnywhere::API.sqlany_initialize_interface( api )
# Initialize our api object
api.sqlany_init()
```

## sqlany\_new\_connection

Creates a connection object.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_new_connection ()
```

### Returns

Returns a scalar value that is a connection object.

### Remarks

A connection object must be created before a database connection is established. Errors can be retrieved from the connection object. Only one request can be processed on a connection at a time.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_connect” on page 821](#)
- [“sqlany\\_disconnect” on page 822](#)

### Example

```
# Create a connection
conn = api.sqlany_new_connection()

# Establish a connection
status = api.sqlany_connect( conn, "UID=DBA;PWD=sql" )
print "Status=#{status}\n"
```

## sqlany\_num\_cols

Returns number of columns in the result set.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_num_cols ( $stmt )
```

### Parameters

- **\$stmt** A statement object executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.

### Returns

Returns a scalar value that is the number of columns in the result set, or -1 on a failure.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_execute” on page 823](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct” on page 824](#)
- [“sqlany\\_prepare” on page 834](#)

### Example

```
stmt = api.sqlany_execute_direct( conn, "SELECT * FROM Employees" )
# Get number of result set columns
num_cols = api.sqlany_num_cols( stmt )
```

## sqlany\_num\_params

Returns the number of parameters that are expected for a prepared statement.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_num_params ( $stmt )
```

### Parameters

- **\$stmt** A statement object returned by the successful execution of `sqlany_prepare`.

### Returns

Returns a scalar value that is the number of parameters in a prepared statement, or -1 on a failure.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_prepare” on page 834](#)

### Example

```
stmt = api.sqlany_prepare(conn, "UPDATE Contacts
SET Contacts.ID = Contacts.ID + 1000
WHERE Contacts.ID >= ?" )
num_params = api.sqlany_num_params( stmt )
```

## sqlany\_num\_rows

Returns the number of rows in the result set.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_num_rows ( $stmt )
```

**Parameters**

- **\$stmt** A statement object executed by `sqlany_execute` or `sqlany_execute_direct`.

**Returns**

Returns a scalar value that is the number of rows in the result set. If the number of rows is an estimate, the number returned is negative and the estimate is the absolute value of the returned integer. The value returned is positive if the number of rows is exact.

**Remarks**

By default, this function only returns an estimate. To return an exact count, set the `ROW_COUNTS` option on the connection. For more information, see [“row\\_counts option \[database\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

A count of the number of rows in a result set can be returned only for the first result set in a statement that returns multiple result sets. If `sqlany_get_next_result` is used to move to the next result set, `sqlany_num_rows` will still return the number of rows in the first result set.

**See also**

- [“sqlany\\_execute” on page 823](#)
- [“sqlany\\_execute\\_direct” on page 824](#)

**Example**

```
stmt = api.sqlany_execute_direct( conn, "SELECT * FROM Employees" )
# Get number of rows in result set
num_rows = api.sqlany_num_rows( stmt )
```

## sqlany\_prepare

Prepares the supplied SQL string

**Syntax**

```
sqlany_prepare ( $conn, $sql )
```

**Parameters**

- **\$conn** A connection object with a connection established using `sqlany_connect`.
- **\$sql** The SQL statement to be prepared.

**Returns**

Returns a scalar value that is the statement object, or nil on failure.

**Remarks**

The statement associated with the statement object is executed by `sqlany_execute`. You can use `sqlany_free_stmt` to free the resources associated with the statement object.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_execute” on page 823](#)
- [“sqlany\\_free\\_stmt” on page 828](#)
- [“sqlany\\_num\\_params” on page 833](#)
- [“sqlany\\_describe\\_bind\\_param” on page 822](#)
- [“sqlany\\_bind\\_param” on page 819](#)

### Example

```
stmt = api.sqlany_prepare(conn, "UPDATE Contacts
SET Contacts.ID = Contacts.ID + 1000
WHERE Contacts.ID >= ?" )
rc, param = api.sqlany_describe_bind_param( stmt, 0 )
param.set_value(50)
rc = api.sqlany_bind_param( stmt, 0, param )
rc = api.sqlany_execute( stmt )
```

## sqlany\_rollback

Rolls back the current transaction.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_rollback ( $conn )
```

### Parameters

- **\$conn** The connection object on which the rollback operation is to be performed.

### Returns

Returns a scalar value that is 1 on success, 0 on failure.

### See also

- [“sqlany\\_commit” on page 820](#)

### Example

```
rc = api.sqlany_rollback( conn )
```

## sqlany\_sqlstate

Retrieves the current SQL state.

### Syntax

```
sqlany_sqlstate ( $conn )
```

### Parameters

- **\$conn** A connection object returned from `sqlany_new_connection`.

## Returns

Returns a scalar value that is the current 5-character SQL state.

## See also

- [“sqlany\\_error” on page 823](#)
- [“SQL Anywhere error messages sorted by SQLSTATE” \[Error Messages\]](#)

## Example

```
sql_state = api.sqlany_sqlstate( conn )
```

## Column types

The following Ruby class defines the column types returned by some SQL Anywhere Ruby functions.

```
class Types
  A_INVALID_TYPE = 0
  A_BINARY       = 1
  A_STRING       = 2
  A_DOUBLE       = 3
  A_VAL64        = 4
  A_UVAL64       = 5
  A_VAL32        = 6
  A_UVAL32       = 7
  A_VAL16        = 8
  A_UVAL16       = 9
  A_VAL8         = 10
  A_UVAL8        = 11
end
```

## Native column types

The following table defines the native column types returned by some SQL Anywhere functions.

Native Type Value	Native Type
384	DT_DATE
388	DT_TIME
390	DT_TIMESTAMP_STRUCT
392	DT_TIMESTAMP
448	DT_VARCHAR
452	DT_FIXCHAR
456	DT_LONGVARCHAR
460	DT_STRING

<b>Native Type Value</b>	<b>Native Type</b>
480	DT_DOUBLE
482	DT_FLOAT
484	DT_DECIMAL
496	DT_INT
500	DT_SMALLINT
524	DT_BINARY
528	DT_LONGBINARY
600	DT_VARIABLE
604	DT_TINYINT
608	DT_BIGINT,
612	DT_UNSENT
616	DT_UNSSMALLINT
620	DT_UNSBIGINT
624	DT_BIT
628	DT_NSTRING
632	DT_NFIXCHAR
636	DT_NVARCHAR
640	DT_LONGNVARCHAR

---



---

# Sybase Open Client API

## Contents

Open Client architecture .....	840
What you need to build Open Client applications .....	841
Data type mappings .....	842
Using SQL in Open Client applications .....	844
Known Open Client limitations of SQL Anywhere .....	847

---

## Open Client architecture

**Note**

This chapter describes the Sybase Open Client programming interface for SQL Anywhere. The primary documentation for Sybase Open Client application development is the Open Client documentation, available from Sybase. This chapter describes features specific to SQL Anywhere, but it is not an exhaustive guide to Sybase Open Client application programming.

Sybase Open Client has two components: programming interfaces and network services.

### DB-Library and Client Library

Sybase Open Client provides two core programming interfaces for writing client applications: DB-Library and Client-Library.

Open Client DB-Library provides support for older Open Client applications, and is a completely separate programming interface from Client-Library. DB-Library is documented in the *Open Client DB-Library/C Reference Manual*, provided with the Sybase Open Client product.

Client-Library programs also depend on CS-Library, which provides routines that are used in both Client-Library and Server-Library applications. Client-Library applications can also use routines from Bulk-Library to help high-speed data transfer.

Both CS-Library and Bulk-Library are included in the Sybase Open Client, which is available separately.

### Network services

Open Client network services include Sybase Net-Library, which provides support for specific network protocols such as TCP/IP and DECnet. The Net-Library interface is invisible to application programmers. However, on some platforms, an application may need a different Net-Library driver for different system network configurations. Depending on your host platform, the Net-Library driver is specified either by the system's Sybase configuration or when you compile and link your programs.

Instructions for driver configuration can be found in the *Open Client/Server Configuration Guide*.

Instructions for building Client-Library programs can be found in the *Open Client/Server Programmer's Supplement*.

## What you need to build Open Client applications

To run Open Client applications, you must install and configure Sybase Open Client components on the computer where the application is running. You may have these components present as part of your installation of other Sybase products or you can optionally install these libraries with SQL Anywhere, subject to the terms of your license agreement.

Open Client applications do not need any Open Client components on the computer where the database server is running.

To build Open Client applications, you need the development version of Open Client, available from Sybase.

By default, SQL Anywhere databases are created as case-insensitive, while Adaptive Server Enterprise databases are case sensitive.

For more information about running Open Client applications with SQL Anywhere, see [“Using SQL Anywhere as an Open Server”](#) [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

## Data type mappings

Sybase Open Client has its own internal data types, which differ in some details from those available in SQL Anywhere. For this reason, SQL Anywhere internally maps some data types between those used by Open Client applications and those available in SQL Anywhere.

To build Open Client applications, you need the development version of Open Client. To use Open Client applications, the Open Client runtimes must be installed and configured on the computer where the application runs.

The SQL Anywhere server does not require any external communications runtime to support Open Client applications.

Each Open Client data type is mapped onto the equivalent SQL Anywhere data type. All Open Client data types are supported

### SQL Anywhere data types with no direct counterpart in Open Client

The following table lists the mappings of data types supported in SQL Anywhere that have no direct counterpart in Open Client.

SQL Anywhere data type	Open Client data type
unsigned short	int
unsigned int	bigint
unsigned bigint	numeric(20,0)
date	smalldatetime
time	smalldatetime
string	varchar
timestamp	datetime

## Range limitations in data type mapping

Some data types have different ranges in SQL Anywhere than in Open Client. In such cases, overflow errors can occur during retrieval or insertion of data.

The following table lists Open Client application data types that can be mapped to SQL Anywhere data types, but with some restriction in the range of possible values.

In most cases, the Open Client data type is mapped to a SQL Anywhere data type that has a greater range of possible values. As a result, it is possible to pass a value to SQL Anywhere that will be accepted and stored in a database, but that is too large to be fetched by an Open Client application.

Data type	Open Client lower range	Open Client upper range	SQL Anywhere lower range	SQL Anywhere upper range
MONEY	-922 377 203 685 477.5808	922 377 203 685 477.5807	-1e15 + 0.0001	1e15 - 0.0001
SMALLMONEY	-214 748.3648	214 748.3647	-214 748.3648	214 748.3647
DATETIME	Jan 1, 1753	Dec 31, 9999	Jan 1, 0001	Dec 31, 9999
SMALLDATETIME	Jan 1, 1900	June 6, 2079	March 1, 1600	Dec 31, 7910

### Example

For example, the Open Client MONEY and SMALLMONEY data types do not span the entire numeric range of their underlying SQL Anywhere implementations. Therefore, it is possible to have a value in a SQL Anywhere column which exceeds the boundaries of the Open Client data type MONEY. When the client fetches any such offending values via SQL Anywhere, an error is generated.

### Timestamps

The SQL Anywhere implementation of the Open Client TIMESTAMP data type, when such a value is passed in SQL Anywhere, is different from that of Adaptive Server Enterprise. In SQL Anywhere, the value is mapped to the SQL Anywhere DATETIME data type. The default value is NULL in SQL Anywhere and no guarantee is made of its uniqueness. By contrast, Adaptive Server Enterprise ensures that the value is monotonically increasing in value, and so, is unique.

By contrast, the SQL Anywhere TIMESTAMP data type contains year, month, day, hour, minute, second, and fraction of second information. In addition, the DATETIME data type has a greater range of possible values than the Open Client data types that are mapped to it by SQL Anywhere.

## Using SQL in Open Client applications

This section provides a very brief introduction to using SQL in Open Client applications, with a particular focus on SQL Anywhere-specific issues.

For an introduction to the concepts, see [“Using SQL in applications” on page 23](#). For a complete description, see your [Open Client](#) documentation.

## Executing SQL statements

You send SQL statements to a database by including them in Client Library function calls. For example, the following pair of calls executes a DELETE statement:

```
ret = ct_command(cmd, CS_LANG_CMD,
                 "DELETE FROM Employees
                 WHERE EmployeeID=105"
                 CS_NULLTERM,
                 CS_UNUSED);
ret = ct_send(cmd);
```

For more information on Open Client functions, see [Open Client 15.0 Client-Library/C Reference Manual](#).

## Using prepared statements

The `ct_dynamic` function is used to manage prepared statements. This function takes a *type* parameter that describes the action you are taking.

### To use a prepared statement in Open Client

1. Prepare the statement using the `ct_dynamic` function, with a `CS_PREPARE` *type* parameter.
2. Set statement parameters using `ct_param`.
3. Execute the statement using `ct_dynamic` with a `CS_EXECUTE` *type* parameter.
4. Free the resources associated with the statement using `ct_dynamic` with a `CS_DEALLOC` *type* parameter.

For more information about using prepared statements in Open Client, see your Open Client documentation

## Using cursors

The `ct_cursor` function is used to manage cursors. This function takes a *type* parameter that describes the action you are taking.

### Supported cursor types

Not all the types of cursor that SQL Anywhere supports are available through the Open Client interface. You cannot use scroll cursors, dynamic scroll cursors, or insensitive cursors through Open Client.

Uniqueness and updatability are two properties of cursors. Cursors can be unique (each row carries primary key or uniqueness information, regardless of whether it is used by the application) or not. Cursors can be read only or updatable. If a cursor is updatable and not unique, performance may suffer, as no prefetching of rows is done in this case, regardless of the `CS_CURSOR_ROWS` setting.

### The steps in using cursors

In contrast to some other interfaces, such as embedded SQL, Open Client associates a cursor with a SQL statement expressed as a string. Embedded SQL first prepares a statement and then the cursor is declared using the statement handle.

#### To use cursors in Open Client

1. To declare a cursor in Open Client, use `ct_cursor` with `CS_CURSOR_DECLARE` as the *type* parameter.
2. After declaring a cursor, you can control how many rows are prefetched to the client side each time a row is fetched from the server by using `ct_cursor` with `CS_CURSOR_ROWS` as the *type* parameter.

Storing prefetched rows at the client side reduces the number of calls to the server and this improves overall throughput and turnaround time. Prefetched rows are not immediately passed on to the application; they are stored in a buffer at the client side ready for use.

The setting of the prefetch database option controls prefetching of rows for other interfaces. It is ignored by Open Client connections. The `CS_CURSOR_ROWS` setting is ignored for non-unique, updatable cursors.

3. To open a cursor in Open Client, use `ct_cursor` with `CS_CURSOR_OPEN` as the *type* parameter.
4. To fetch each row in to the application, use `ct_fetch`.
5. To close a cursor, you use `ct_cursor` with `CS_CURSOR_CLOSE`.
6. In Open Client, you also need to deallocate the resources associated with a cursor. You do this by using `ct_cursor` with `CS_CURSOR_DEALLOC`. You can also use `CS_CURSOR_CLOSE` with the additional parameter `CS_DEALLOC` to perform these operations in a single step.

## Modifying rows through a cursor

With Open Client, you can delete or update rows in a cursor, as long as the cursor is for a single table. The user must have permissions to update the table and the cursor must be marked for update.

#### To modify rows through a cursor

- Instead of carrying out a fetch, you can delete or update the current row of the cursor using `ct_cursor` with `CS_CURSOR_DELETE` or `CS_CURSOR_UPDATE`, respectively.

You cannot insert rows through a cursor in Open Client applications.

## Describing query results in Open Client

Open Client handles result sets in a different way than some other SQL Anywhere interfaces.

In embedded SQL and ODBC, you **describe** a query or stored procedure to set up the proper number and types of variables to receive the results. The description is done on the statement itself.

In Open Client, you do not need to describe a statement. Instead, each row returned from the server can carry a description of its contents. If you use `ct_command` and `ct_send` to execute statements, you can use the `ct_results` function to handle all aspects of rows returned in queries.

If you do not want to use this row-by-row method of handling result sets, you can use `ct_dynamic` to prepare a SQL statement and use `ct_describe` to describe its result set. This corresponds more closely to the describing of SQL statements in other interfaces.



## Known Open Client limitations of SQL Anywhere

Using the Open Client interface, you can use a SQL Anywhere database in much the same way as you would an Adaptive Server Enterprise database. There are some limitations, including the following:

- SQL Anywhere does not support the Adaptive Server Enterprise Commit Service.
- A client/server connection's **capabilities** determine the types of client requests and server responses permitted for that connection. The following capabilities are not supported:
  - CS\_CSR\_ABS
  - CS\_CSR\_FIRST
  - CS\_CSR\_LAST
  - CS\_CSR\_PREV
  - CS\_CSR\_REL
  - CS\_DATA\_BOUNDARY
  - CS\_DATA\_SENSITIVITY
  - CS\_OPT\_FORMATONLY
  - CS\_PROTO\_DYNPROC
  - CS\_REG\_NOTIF
  - CS\_REQ\_BCP
- Security options, such as SSL, are not supported. However, password encryption is supported.
- Open Client applications can connect to SQL Anywhere using TCP/IP.

For more information about capabilities, see the *Open Server Server-Library C Reference Manual*.
- When the CS\_DATAFMT is used with the CS\_DESCRIBE\_INPUT, it does not return the data type of a column when a parameterized variable is sent to SQL Anywhere as input.

---

---

# SQL Anywhere web services

## Contents

Introduction to web services .....	850
Quick start to web services .....	851
Creating web services .....	856
Starting a database server that listens for web requests .....	859
Understanding how URLs are interpreted .....	861
Creating SOAP and DISH web services .....	865
Tutorial: Accessing web services from Microsoft .NET .....	868
Tutorial: Accessing web services from JAX-WS .....	871
Using procedures that provide HTML documents .....	877
Working with data types .....	880
Tutorial: Using data types with Microsoft .NET .....	887
Tutorial: Using data types with JAX-WS .....	892
Using the iAnywhere WSDL compiler .....	898
Creating web service client functions and procedures .....	900
Working with return values and result sets .....	905
Selecting from result sets .....	907
Using parameters .....	908
Working with structured data types .....	911
Working with variables .....	917
Working with HTTP headers .....	919
Using SOAP services .....	922
Working with SOAP headers .....	925
Working with MIME types .....	932
Using HTTP sessions .....	935
Using automatic character set conversion .....	941
Handling errors .....	942

## Introduction to web services

SQL Anywhere contains a built-in HTTP server that allows you to provide web services, and access web services in other SQL Anywhere databases and standard web services available over the Internet. SOAP is the standard used for this purpose, but the built-in HTTP server in SQL Anywhere also lets you handle standard HTTP and HTTPS requests from client applications.

The term web service has been used to mean a variety of things. Commonly, it refers to software that assists inter-computer data transfer and interoperability. Essentially, web services make segments of business logic available over the Internet. **Simple Object Access Protocol** (SOAP) is a simple XML-based protocol to let applications exchange information over HTTP.

SOAP provides a method for communication, using the Internet, between applications such as those written in Java or a Microsoft .NET language like Visual C#. SOAP messages define the services that a server provides. Actual data transfer generally takes place using HTTP to exchange XML documents structured in a manner that efficiently encodes the relevant information. Any application, such as a client or server, that participates in SOAP communication is called a SOAP node or SOAP endpoint. Such applications can transmit, receive, or process SOAP messages. You can create SOAP nodes with SQL Anywhere.

For more information about the SOAP standards, see <http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/NOTE-SOAP-20000508/>.

### Web services and SQL Anywhere

In the context of SQL Anywhere, the term web services means that SQL Anywhere has the ability to listen for and handle standard SOAP requests. Web services in SQL Anywhere provide client applications an alternative to such traditional interfaces as JDBC and ODBC. Web services can be accessed from client applications written in a variety of languages and running on a variety of platforms. Even common scripting languages such as Perl and Python provide access to web services. You create web services in a database using the CREATE SERVICE statement.

SQL Anywhere can also function as a SOAP or HTTP client, permitting applications running within the database to access standard web services available over the Internet, or provided by other SQL Anywhere databases. This client functionality is accessed through stored functions and procedures.

In addition, the term web services also refers to applications that use the built-in web server to handle HTTP requests from clients. These applications generally function like traditional database-backed web applications, but can be more compact and are easier to write as the data and the entire application can reside within a database. In this type of application, the web service typically returns documents in HTML format. The GET, HEAD, and POST methods are supported.

The collection of web services within your database together define the available URLs. Each service provides a set of web pages. Typically, the content of these pages is generated by procedures that you write and store in your database, although they can be a single statement or, optionally, allow users to execute statements of their own. These web services become available when you start the database server with options that enable it to listen for HTTP requests.

Since the HTTP server that handles web service requests is embedded in the database, performance is good. Applications that use web services are easily deployed, since no additional components are needed, beyond the database and database server.

## Quick start to web services

The following procedure describes how to create a new database, start a SQL Anywhere database with the HTTP server enabled, and access this database using any popular web browser.

### To create and access a simple HTML web service

1. At a command prompt, run the following command to start a personal web server. Replace *samples-dir* with the actual location of the sample database. The `-xs http(port=80)` option tells the database server to listen for HTTP requests. If you already have a web server running on port 80, use another port number such as 8080 for this demonstration.

```
dbeng11 -xs http(port=80) samples-dir\demo.db
```

Many properties of the HTTP communication link are controlled by parameters to the `-xs` option. See “[-xs server option](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

2. Start the database server with the appropriate `-xs` option parameters and use the `CREATE SERVICE` statement to create web services to respond to incoming requests.

Start Interactive SQL. Connect to the SQL Anywhere sample database as the DBA. Execute the following statement.

```
CREATE SERVICE HTMLtable
TYPE 'HTML'
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS SELECT * FROM Customers;
```

This statement creates a web service named `HTMLtable`. This simple web service returns the results of the statement `SELECT * FROM Customers`, automatically converting the output into HTML format. Because authorization is off, no permissions are required to access the table from a web browser. See “[Creating web services](#)” on page 856 and “[CREATE SERVICE statement](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

3. Start a web browser.
4. Browse to the URL <http://localhost:80/demo/HTMLtable>. Use the port number you specified when starting the database server.

Your web browser shows you the body of the HTML document returned by the database server. By default, the result set is formatted into an HTML table.

### To create and access a simple XML web service

1. At a command prompt, run the following command to start a personal web server. Replace *samples-dir* with the actual location of the sample database. The `-xs http(port=80)` option tells the database server to listen for HTTP requests. If you already have a web server running on port 80, use another port number such as 8080 for this demonstration.

```
dbeng11 -xs http(port=80) samples-dir\demo.db
```

Many properties of the HTTP communication link are controlled by parameters to the `-xs` option. See “`-xs server option`” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

2. Start the database server with the appropriate `-xs` option parameters and use the `CREATE SERVICE` statement to create web services to respond to incoming requests.

Start Interactive SQL. Connect to the SQL Anywhere sample database as the DBA. Execute the following statement:

```
CREATE SERVICE XMLtable
TYPE 'XML'
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS SELECT * FROM Customers;
```

This statement creates a web service named `XMLtable`. This simple web service returns the results of the statement `SELECT * FROM Customers`, automatically converting the output into XML format. Because authorization is off, no permissions are required to access the table from a web browser. See “`Creating web services`” on page 856 and “`CREATE SERVICE statement`” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

3. Start a web browser.
4. Browse to the URL <http://localhost:80/demo/XMLtable>. Use the port number you specified when starting the database server.
  - **localhost:80** Defines the web host name and port number to use.
  - **demo** Defines the database name to use. You are using *demo.db*.
  - **XMLtable** Defines the service name to use.

Your web browser shows you the body of the XML document returned by the database server. As no formatting information has been included, you see the raw XML, including tags and attributes.

5. You can also access the `XMLtable` service from common programming languages. For example, the following short C# program uses the `XMLtable` web service:

```
using System.Xml;

static void Main(string[] args)
{
    XmlTextReader reader =
        new XmlTextReader( "http://localhost:80/demo/XMLtable" );

    while( reader.Read() )
    {
        switch( reader.NodeType )
        {
            case XmlNodeType.Element:
                if( reader.Name == "row" )
                {
                    Console.Write(reader.GetAttribute("ID")+ " ");
                    Console.WriteLine(reader.GetAttribute("Surname"));
                }
                break;
        }
    }
    reader.Close();
}
```

6. In addition, you can access the same web service from Python, as in the following example:

```
import xml.sax

class DocHandler( xml.sax.ContentHandler ):
    def startElement( self, name, attrs ):
        if name == 'row':
            table_id = attrs.getValue( 'ID' )
            table_name = attrs.getValue( 'Surname' )
            print '%s %s' % ( table_id, table_name )

parser = xml.sax.make_parser()
parser.setContentHandler( DocHandler() )
parser.parse( 'http://localhost:80/demo/XMLtable' )
```

Save this code in a file called *DocHandler.py*. To run the application, enter a command like the following:

```
python DocHandler.py
```

### To create and access a simple JSON web service

1. At a command prompt, run the following command to start a personal web server. Replace *samples-dir* with the actual location of the sample database. The `-xs http(port=80)` option tells the database server to listen for HTTP requests. If you already have a web server running on port 80, use another port number such as 8080 for this demonstration.

```
dbeng11 -xs http(port=80) samples-dir\demo.db
```

Many properties of the HTTP communication link are controlled by parameters to the `-xs` option. See “[-xs server option](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration](#)].

2. Start the database server with the appropriate `-xs` option parameters, and use the CREATE SERVICE statement to create web services to respond to incoming requests.

Start Interactive SQL. Connect to the SQL Anywhere sample database as the DBA. Execute the following statement:

```
CREATE SERVICE JSONtable
TYPE 'JSON'
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS SELECT * FROM Customers;
```

This statement creates a web service named JSONtable. This simple web service returns the results of the statement `SELECT * FROM Customers`, automatically converting the output into JavaScript Object Notation format. Because authorization is off, no permissions are required to access the table from a web browser. See “[Creating web services](#)” on page 856 and “[CREATE SERVICE statement](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)].

3. Start a web browser.
4. Browse to the URL <http://localhost:80/demo/JSONtable>. Use the port number you specified when starting the database server.
  - **localhost:80** Defines the web host name and port number to use.
  - **demo** Defines the database name to use. You are using *demo.db*.

- **JSONtable** Defines the service name to use.

Your web browser should permit you to save the JSON response document returned by the database server. Save the response to a file.

5. If you use a text editor to view the file containing the response, you will see the following array notation for the result set.

```
[
  {
    "ID": 101,
    "Surname": "Devlin",
    "GivenName": "Michaels",
    "Street": "114 Pioneer Avenue",
    "City": "Kingston",
    "State": "NJ",
    "Country": "USA",
    "PostalCode": "07070",
    "Phone": "2015558966",
    "CompanyName": "The Power Group"
  },
  {
    "ID": 102,
    "Surname": "Reiser",
    "GivenName": "Beth",
    "Street": "33 Whippany Road",
    "City": "Rockwood",
    "State": "NY",
    "Country": "USA",
    "PostalCode": "10154",
    "Phone": "2125558725",
    "CompanyName": "AMF Corp."
  },
  .
  .
  .
  {
    "ID": 665,
    "Surname": "Thompson",
    "GivenName": "William",
    "Street": "19 Washington Street",
    "City": "Bancroft",
    "State": "NY",
    "Country": "USA",
    "PostalCode": "11700",
    "Phone": "5165552549",
    "CompanyName": "The Apple Farm"
  }
]
```

### Other resources for getting started

Samples are included in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\HTTP* directory.

Other examples might be available on CodeXchange at <http://www.sybase.com/developer/codexchange>.



**See also**

- [“HTML\\_DECODE function \[Miscellaneous\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“HTML\\_ENCODE function \[Miscellaneous\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“HTTP\\_DECODE function \[HTTP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“HTTP\\_ENCODE function \[HTTP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“HTTP\\_HEADER function \[HTTP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“HTTP\\_VARIABLE function \[HTTP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“NEXT\\_HTTP\\_HEADER function \[HTTP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“NEXT\\_HTTP\\_VARIABLE function \[HTTP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“NEXT\\_SOAP\\_HEADER function \[SOAP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“SOAP\\_HEADER function \[SOAP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“sa\\_http\\_header\\_info system procedure” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“sa\\_http\\_variable\\_info system procedure” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“sa\\_set\\_http\\_header system procedure” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“sa\\_set\\_http\\_option system procedure” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“sa\\_set\\_soap\\_header system procedure” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)

## Creating web services

Web services, created and stored in databases, define which URLs are valid and what they do. A single database can define multiple web services. It is possible to define web services in different databases so that they appear to be part of a single web site.

The following statements permit you to create, alter, and delete web services:

- CREATE SERVICE
- ALTER SERVICE
- DROP SERVICE
- COMMENT ON SERVICE

The general syntax of the CREATE SERVICE statement is as follows:

```
CREATE SERVICE service-name TYPE 'service-type' [ attributes ] [ AS statement ]
```

### Service names

Since service names form part of the URL used to access them, they are flexible in terms of what characters they can contain. In addition to the standard alpha-numeric characters, the following characters are permitted:  
- \_ . ! \* ' ( )

In addition, service names other than those used in naming DISH services can contain a slash, "/", but some restrictions apply because this character is a standard URL delimiter and affects how SQL Anywhere interprets your URLs. It cannot be the first character of a service name. In addition, service names cannot contain two consecutive slashes.

The characters permitted in service names are also permitted in GROUP names, which apply to DISH services only.

### Service types

The following service types are supported:

- **'SOAP'** The result set is returned as a SOAP response. The format of the data is determined by the FORMAT clause. A request to a SOAP service must be a valid SOAP request, not just a simple HTTP request.
- **'DISH'** A DISH service (Determine SOAP Handler) acts as a proxy for those SOAP services identified by the GROUP clause, and generates a WSDL (Web Services Description Language) document for each of these SOAP services.
- **'HTML'** The result set of a statement or procedure is automatically formatted into an HTML document that contains a table.
- **'XML'** The result set is returned as XML. If the result set is already XML, no additional formatting is applied. If it is not already XML, it is automatically formatted as XML. The effect is similar to that of using the FOR XML RAW clause in a SELECT statement.

- **'JSON'** The result set is returned in JavaScript Object Notation (JSON). JSON is more compact than XML and has a similar structure. For more information about JSON, visit <http://www.json.org>.
- **'RAW'** The result set is sent to the client without any further formatting. You can produce formatted documents by generating the required tags explicitly within your procedure.

Of all the service types, RAW gives you the most control over the output. However, it does require that you do more work as you must explicitly output all the necessary tags. The output of XML services can be adjusted by applying the FOR XML clause to the service's statement. The output of SOAP services can be adjusted using the FORMAT attribute of the CREATE or ALTER SERVICE statement. See “[CREATE SERVICE statement](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

### Statements

The statement is the command, usually a stored procedure, that is called when someone accesses the service. If you define a statement, this is the only statement that can be run through this service. The statement is mandatory for SOAP services, and ignored for DISH services. The default is NULL, which means no statement.

You can create services that do not include statements. The statement is taken from the URL. Services configured in this way can be useful when you are testing a service, or want a general way of accessing information. To do so, either omit the statement entirely or use the phrase AS NULL in place of the statement.

Services without statements are a serious security risk because they permit web clients to execute arbitrary commands. When creating such services, you must enable authorization, which forces all clients to provide a valid user name and password. Even so, only services that define statements should be run in a production system.

### Attributes

In general, all attributes are optional. However, some are interdependent. The following attributes are available:

- **AUTHORIZATION** This attribute controls which users can use the service. The default setting is ON. Authorization must be ON if no statement is provided. In addition, the authorization setting affects how user names, defined by the USER attribute, are interpreted.
- **SECURE** When set to ON, only secure connections are permitted. All connections received on the HTTP port are automatically redirected to the HTTPS port. The default is OFF, which enables both HTTP and HTTPS requests, provided these ports are enabled using the appropriate options when the database server is started. See “[-xs server option](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].
- **USER** The USER clause controls which database user accounts can be used to process service requests. However, the interpretation of this setting depends on whether authorization is ON or OFF.

When authorization is set to ON, all clients must provide a valid user name and password when they connect. When authorization is ON, the USER option can be NULL, a database user name, or the name of a database group. If it is NULL, any database user can connect and make requests. Requests are run using the account and permissions of that user. If a group name is specified, only those users who belong to the group can run requests. All other database users are denied permission to use the service.

If authorization is OFF, a statement must be provided. In addition, a user name must be provided. All requests are run using that user's account and permissions. So, if the server is connected to a public

network, the permissions of the named user account should be minimal to limit the damage that could be caused through malicious use.

- **GROUP** The GROUP clause, which applies to DISH services only, determines which SOAP services are exposed by the DISH service. Only SOAP services whose names begin with the name of the group name of a DISH service are exposed by that DISH service. So, the group name is a common prefix among the exposed SOAP services. For example, specifying GROUP *xyz* exposes only SOAP services *xyz/aaaa*, *xyz/bbbb*, or *xyz/cccc*, but does not expose *abc/aaaa* or *xyzaaaa*. If no group name is specified, the DISH service exposes all the SOAP services in the database. The same characters are permitted in group names as in service names.

SOAP services can be exposed by more than one DISH service. In particular, this feature permits a single SOAP service to supply data in multiple formats. The service type, unless specified in a SOAP service, is inherited from the DISH service. So, you can create a SOAP service that declares no format type, then include it in multiple DISH services, each of which specifies a different format.

- **FORMAT** The FORMAT clause, which applies to DISH and SOAP services only, controls the output format of the SOAP or DISH response. Output formats compatible with various types of SOAP clients, such as .NET or JAX-WS, are available. If the format of a SOAP service is not specified, the format is inherited from the service's DISH service declaration. If the DISH service also does not declare a format, it defaults to DNET, which is compatible with .NET clients. A SOAP service that does not declare a format can be used with different types of SOAP clients by defining multiple DISH services, each having a different FORMAT type.
- **URL [PATH]** The URL or URL PATH clause controls the interpretation of URLs and applies to XML, HTML, and RAW service types only. In particular, it determines whether URL paths are accepted and, if so, how they are processed. If the service name ends with the character "/", URL must be set to OFF. See [“CREATE SERVICE statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

## Starting a database server that listens for web requests

When you want a database server to listen for web service requests over HTTP or HTTPS, you must specify the types of web requests it is to listen on the command line when you start the server. By default, database servers do not listen for web service requests, leaving no way for clients to access any services that may be defined in your database.

You can also specify various properties of an HTTP or HTTPS service on the command line, such as on which port they are to listen.

You must also create web services within the database. See [“Creating web services” on page 856](#).

You use the `-xs` option to enable protocols. The two available web service protocols are HTTP and HTTPS. Optional parameters, placed within parentheses after the protocol name, let you customize access to each type of web service.

The general syntax of the option is as follows:

```
-xs { protocol [ (option=value; ... ) ], ... }
```

### Starting multiple web servers

If you want to start multiple web servers at the same time, then you must change the port for additional web servers since they all have the same default port.

### Protocols

The following web service protocol values are available:

- **http** Listen for HTTP connections.
- **https** Listen for HTTPS connections. HTTPS connections using SSL version 3.0 and TLS version 1.0 are supported.
- **none** Do not listen for web service requests. This is the default setting.

### Options

The following are some of the options that are available:

- **FIPS** Specify **FIPS=Y** to listen for HTTPS FIPS connections.
- **ServerPort [PORT]** The port on which to listen for web requests. By default, SQL Anywhere listens on port 80 for HTTP requests and on port 443 for secure HTTP (HTTPS) requests. The default port for FIPS-approved HTTPS connections is the same as for HTTPS.

For example, if you already have a web server running on port 80, you could use the following options to start a database server that listens for web requests on port 8080:

```
dbeng11 mywebapp.db -xs http(port=8080)
```

As another example, the following command starts a secure web server using the sample identity file included with SQL Anywhere (you must have installed RSA or FIPS-approved RSA encryption to have this file). It should be entered on a single line.

```
dbeng11 -xs https(identity=rsaserver.id;  
identity_password=test)
```

**Caution**

The sample identity file is intended for use only during testing and development. It provides no protection because it is a standard part of SQL Anywhere. Replace it with your own certificate before deploying your application.

- **DatabaseName [DBN]** Specifies the name of a database to use when processing web requests, or uses the REQUIRED or AUTO keyword to specify whether database names are required as part of the URL.

If this parameter is set to REQUIRED, the URL must specify the database name.

If this parameter is set to AUTO, the URL may specify a database name, but does not need to do so. If the URL contains no database name, the default database on the server is used to process web requests.

If this parameter is set to the name of a database, that database is used to process all web requests. The URL must not contain a database name.

- **LocalOnly [LOCAL]** When set to YES, this parameter causes a network database server to reject all connections from clients running on different computers. This option has no effect on personal database servers, which never accept web service requests from other computers. The default value is NO, which means accept requests from clients no matter where they are located.
- **LogFile [LOG]** The name of the file to which the database server is to write information about web service requests.
- **LogFormat [LF]** Controls the format of messages written to the log file and which fields appear in them. If they appear in the string, current values are substituted for the codes, such as @T, when each message is written.

The default value is @T - @W - @I - @P - "@M @U @V" - @R - @L - @E, which produces messages such as the following:

```
06/15 01:30:08.114 - 0.686 - 127.0.0.1 - 80  
- "GET /web/ShowTable HTTP/1.1" - 200 OK - 55133 -
```

The format of the log file is compatible with Apache, so the same tools can be used to analyze it.

For more information about field codes, see [“LogFormat protocol option \[LF\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

- **LogOptions [LOPT]** Allows you to specify keyword and error numbers that control which messages, or types of messages, are written to the log file. See [“LogOptions protocol option \[LOPT\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

For a complete list of the available options and details about them, see [“Network protocol options” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

---

## Understanding how URLs are interpreted

Universal Resource Locators, or URLs, identify documents, such as HTML pages, available from SOAP or HTTP web services. The URLs used in SQL Anywhere follow the patterns familiar to you from browsing the web. Users browsing through a database server need not be aware that their requests are not being handled by a traditional standalone web server.

Although standard in format, SQL Anywhere database servers interpret URLs differently than standard web servers. The options you specify when you start the database server also affect their interpretation.

The general syntax of the URL is as follows:

```
{ http | https }://[ user:password@ ]host[ :port ][ /dbn ]/service-name[ path | ?searchpart ]
```

The following is an example URL: `http://localhost:80/demo/XMLtable`.

### User and password

When a web service requires authentication, the user name and password can be passed directly as part of the URL by separating them with a colon and prepending them to the host name, much like an email address.

### Host and port

Like all standard HTTP requests, the start of the URL contains the host name or IP number and, optionally, a port number. The IP address or host name, and port, should be the one on which your server is listening. The IP address is the address of a network card in the computer running SQL Anywhere. The port number will be the port number you specified using the `-xs` option when you started the database server. If you did not specify a port number, the default port number for that type of service is used. For example, the server listens by default on port 80 for HTTP requests. See “[-xs server option](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

### Database name

The next token, between the slashes, is usually the name of a database. This database must be running on the server and must contain web services.

The default database is used if no database name appears in the URL and the database name was not specified using the DBN connection parameter to the `-xs` server option.

The database name can be omitted only if the database server is running only one database, or if the database name was specified using the DBN connection parameter to the `-xs` option.

### Service name

The next portion of the URL is the service name. This service must exist in the specified database. The service name can extend beyond the next slash character because web service names can contain slash characters. SQL Anywhere matches the remainder of the URL with the defined services.

If the URL provides no service name, then the database server looks for a service named **root**. If the named service, or the root service, is not defined, then the server returns a 404 `NOT FOUND` error.

## Parameters

Depending on the type of the target service, parameters can be supplied in different ways. Parameters to HTML, XML, and RAW services can be passed in any of the following ways:

- appended to the URL using slashes
- supplied as an explicit URL parameters list
- supplied as POST data in a POST request

Parameters to SOAP services must be included as part of a standard SOAP request. Values supplied in other ways are ignored.

## URL path

To access parameter values, parameters must be given names. These host variable names, prefixed with a colon (:), can be included in the statement that forms part of the web service definition.

For example, suppose you define the following stored procedure:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE Display (IN ident INT )
BEGIN
    SELECT ID, GivenName, Surname FROM Customers
    WHERE ID = ident;
END;
```

A statement that calls the stored procedure requires a customer identification number. Define the service as follows:

```
CREATE SERVICE DisplayCustomer
TYPE 'HTML'
URL PATH ELEMENTS
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS CALL Display( :url1 );
```

An example of a URL for this is: <http://localhost:80/demo/DisplayCustomer/105>.

The parameter 105 is passed as `url1` to the service. The clause `URL PATH ELEMENTS` indicates that parameters separated by slashes should be passed as parameters `url1`, `url2`, `url3`, and so on. Up to 10 parameters can be passed in this way.

Since there is only one parameter to the `Display` procedure, the service could have been defined like this:

```
CREATE SERVICE DisplayCustomer
TYPE 'HTML'
URL PATH ON
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS CALL Display( :url );
```

In this case, the parameter 105 would be passed as `url` to the service. The clause `URL PATH ON` indicates that everything after the service name should be passed as a single parameter called `url`. So in the following URL, the string 105/106 would be passed as `url` (and a SQL error would result since the `Display` stored procedure requires an integer value).

<http://localhost:80/demo/DisplayCustomer/105/106>



For more information about variables, see [“Working with variables” on page 917](#).

Parameters can also be accessed using the HTTP\_VARIABLE function. See [“HTTP\\_VARIABLE function \[HTTP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

## URL searchpart

Another method for passing parameters is through the URL searchpart mechanism. A URL searchpart consists of a question mark (?) followed by *name=value* pairs separated by ampersands (&). The searchpart is appended to the end of a URL. The following example shows the general format:

```
http://server/path/document?name1=value1&name2=value2
```

GET requests are formatted in this manner. If present, the named variables are defined and assigned the corresponding values.

For example, a statement that calls the stored procedure ShowSalesOrderDetail requires both a customer identification number and a product identification number:

```
CREATE SERVICE ShowSalesOrderDetail
TYPE 'HTML'
URL PATH OFF
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS CALL ShowSalesOrderDetail( :customer_id, :product_id );
```

An example of a URL for this is: [http://localhost:80/demo/ShowSalesOrderDetail?customer\\_id=101&product\\_id=300](http://localhost:80/demo/ShowSalesOrderDetail?customer_id=101&product_id=300).

If you have URL PATH set to ON or ELEMENTS, additional variables are defined. However, the two are usually otherwise independent. You can allow variables to be used in requested URLs by setting URL PATH to ON or ELEMENTS. The following example illustrates how the two can be mixed:

```
CREATE SERVICE ShowSalesOrderDetail2
TYPE 'HTML'
URL PATH ON
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS CALL ShowSalesOrderDetail( :customer_id, :url );
```

In the following example, both searchpart and URL path are used. The value 300 is assigned to `url` and 101 is assigned to `customer_id`.

[http://localhost:80/demo/ShowSalesOrderDetail2/300?customer\\_id=101](http://localhost:80/demo/ShowSalesOrderDetail2/300?customer_id=101)

This can also be expressed using searchpart only in the following manner.

[http://localhost:80/demo/ShowSalesOrderDetail2/?customer\\_id=101&url=300](http://localhost:80/demo/ShowSalesOrderDetail2/?customer_id=101&url=300)

This then leads to the question of what happens when both are specified for the same variable. In the following example, first 300 and then 302 are assigned to `url` in sequence and it is the last assignment that takes precedence.

[http://localhost:80/demo/ShowSalesOrderDetail2/300?customer\\_id=101&url=302](http://localhost:80/demo/ShowSalesOrderDetail2/300?customer_id=101&url=302)

For more information about variables, see [“Working with variables” on page 917](#).

Parameters can also be accessed using the HTTP\_VARIABLE function. See [“HTTP\\_VARIABLE function \[HTTP\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

## Creating SOAP and DISH web services

SOAP and DISH web services are the means by which you create standard SOAP web services that can be accessed by standard SOAP clients, such as those written with Microsoft .NET or JAX-WS.

### SOAP services

SOAP services are the mechanism for constructing web services in SQL Anywhere that accept and process standard SOAP requests.

To declare a SOAP service, specify that the service is to be of type SOAP. The body of a standard SOAP request is SOAP envelope, meaning an XML document with a specific format. SQL Anywhere parses and processes these requests using the procedures you provide. The response is automatically formatted in the form of a standard SOAP response, which is also a SOAP envelope, and returned to the client.

The syntax of the statement used to create SOAP services is as follows:

```
CREATE SERVICE service-name
TYPE 'SOAP'
[ FORMAT { 'DNET' | 'CONCRETE' | 'XML' | NULL } ]
[ common-attributes ]
AS statement
```

### DISH services

DISH services act as proxies for groups of SOAP services. In addition, they automatically construct WSDL (Web Services Description Language) documents for their clients that describe the SOAP services that they currently expose.

When you create a DISH service, the name given in the GROUP clause determines which SOAP services the DISH service exposes. Every SOAP service whose name is prefixed with the name of the DISH service is exposed. For example, specifying GROUP xyz exposes SOAP services xyz/aaaa, xyz/bbbb, or xyz/cccc. It does not expose SOAP services named abc/aaaa or xyzaaaa. SOAP services can be exposed by more than one DISH service. If no group name is specified, the DISH service exposes all the SOAP services in the database. The same characters are permitted in DISH group names as in SOAP service names.

The syntax of the statement used to create DISH services is as follows:

```
CREATE SERVICE service-name
TYPE 'DISH'
[ GROUP { group-name | NULL } ]
[ FORMAT { 'DNET' | 'CONCRETE' | 'XML' | NULL } ]
[ common-attributes ]
```

### SOAP and DISH service formats

The FORMAT clause of the CREATE SERVICE statement customizes the SOAP service data payload to best suit the various types of SOAP clients, such as .NET and JAX-WS. The FORMAT clause affects the content of the WSDL document returned by a DISH service and the format of data payloads returned in SOAP responses.

The default format, DNET, is a native format for use with .NET SOAP client applications, which expect a .NET DataSet format.

The CONCRETE format is for use with clients such as JAX-WS and .NET that automatically generate interfaces based on the format of the returned data structures. When you specify this format, the WSDL document returned by SQL Anywhere exposes a SimpleDataset element that describes a result set in concrete terms. This element is a containment hierarchy of a rowset composed of an array of rows, each containing an array of column elements.

The XML format is for use with SOAP clients that accept the SOAP response as one large string, and use an XML parser to locate and extract the required elements and values. This format is generally the most portable between different types of SOAP clients.

If the format of a SOAP service is not specified, the format is inherited from the service's DISH service declaration. If the DISH service also does not declare a format, it defaults to DNET, which is compatible with .NET clients. A SOAP service that does not declare a format can be used with different types of SOAP clients by defining multiple DISH services, each having a different FORMAT type.

### Creating homogeneous DISH services

SOAP services need not specify a format type—you can set the format type to NULL. In this case, the format is inherited from the DISH services that act as proxies for them. More than one DISH service can act as a proxy for each SOAP service, and these DISH services need not be of the same type. These facts mean that it is possible to use a single SOAP service with different types of SOAP clients, such as .NET and JAX-WS, by using multiple DISH services, each of a different type. Such DISH services are said to be **homogeneous** because they expose the same data payloads for the same SOAP services, but in different formats.

For example, consider the following two SOAP services, neither of which specifies a format:

```
CREATE SERVICE "abc/hello"  
TYPE 'SOAP'  
AS CALL hello(:student);  
  
CREATE SERVICE "abc/goodbye"  
TYPE 'SOAP'  
AS CALL goodbye(:student);
```

Since neither of these services includes a FORMAT clause, the format, by default, is NULL; it is inherited from the DISH service that is acting as a proxy. Now, consider the following two DISH services:

```
CREATE SERVICE "abc_xml"  
TYPE 'DISH'  
GROUP "abc"  
FORMAT 'XML';  
  
CREATE SERVICE "abc_concrete"  
TYPE 'DISH'  
GROUP "abc"  
FORMAT 'CONCRETE';
```

Since both DISH services specify the same group name abc, they act as proxies for the same SOAP services, namely all SOAP services whose names have the prefix "abc/".

However, when either of the two SOAP services is accessed through the abc\_xml DISH service, the SOAP service inherits the XML format; when accessed through the abc\_concrete SOAP service, the SOAP service inherits the CONCRETE format.

Homogeneous DISH services provide a means of avoiding duplicate services whenever you want to give different types of SOAP clients access to the SOAP web services you create.

## Tutorial: Accessing web services from Microsoft .NET

The following tutorial demonstrates how to access web services from Microsoft .NET using Visual C#.

### To create SOAP and DISH services

1. At a command prompt, run the following command to start a personal web server. Replace *samples-dir* with the actual location of the sample database. The `-xs http(port=80)` option tells the database server to accept HTTP requests on port 80. If you already have a web server running on port 80, use another port number such as 8080 for this tutorial and use 8080 instead of 80 in all port references.

```
dbeng11 -xs http(port=80) samples-dir\demo.db
```

2. Start Interactive SQL. Connect to the SQL Anywhere sample database as the DBA. Execute the following statements:
  - a. Define a SOAP service that lists the Employees table.

```
CREATE SERVICE "SASoapTest/EmployeeList"  
TYPE 'SOAP'  
AUTHORIZATION OFF  
SECURE OFF  
USER DBA  
AS SELECT * FROM Employees;
```

Because authorization has been turned off, anyone can use this service without supplying a user name and password. The commands run under user DBA. This arrangement is simple, but insecure.

- b. Create a DISH service to act as a proxy for the SOAP service and to generate the WSDL document.

```
CREATE SERVICE "SASoapTest_DNET"  
TYPE 'DISH'  
GROUP "SASoapTest"  
FORMAT 'DNET'  
AUTHORIZATION OFF  
SECURE OFF  
USER DBA;
```

The SOAP and DISH service must be of format DNET. In this example, the FORMAT clause was omitted when the SOAP service was created. As a result, the SOAP service inherits the DNET format from the DISH service.

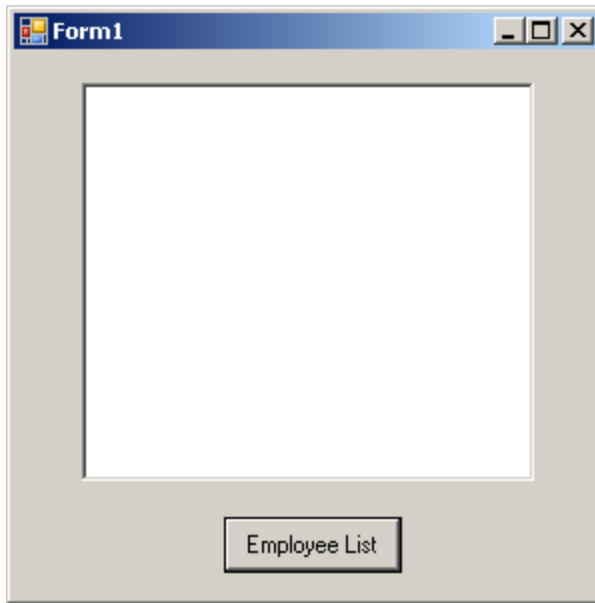
3. Start Microsoft Visual Studio. Note that this example uses functions from the .NET Framework 2.0.
  - a. Create a new Windows application project using Visual C#. An empty form appears.
  - b. From the **Project** menu, choose **Add Web Reference**.
  - c. In the **URL** field of the **Add Web Reference** page, enter the following URL: **http://localhost:80/demo/SASoapTest\_DNET**.
  - d. Click **Go**.

You are presented with a list of the methods available for SASoapTest\_DNET. You should see the EmployeeList method.

- e. Click **Add Reference** to finish.

The **Solution Explorer** window shows the new web reference.

- f. From the Visual Studio **Toolbox**, add a listbox and a button to the form as shown in the following diagram.



- g. Rename the button text to **Employee List**.

- h. Double-click **Employee List** and add the following code for the button click event.

```
int sqlCode;

listBox1.Items.Clear();

localhost.SASoapTest_DNET proxy = new localhost.SASoapTest_DNET();

DataSet results = proxy.EmployeeList(out sqlCode);
DataTableReader dr = results.CreateDataReader();
while (dr.Read())
{
    for (int i = 0; i < dr.FieldCount; i++)
    {
        string columnName = dr.GetName(i);
        try
        {
            string value = dr.GetString(i);
            listBox1.Items.Add(columnName + "=" + value);
        }
        catch ( InvalidCastException )
        {
            listBox1.Items.Add(columnName + "=(null)");
        }
    }
}
```

```
        listBox1.Items.Add("");  
    }  
    dr.Close();
```

- i. Build and run the program.

The listbox will display the EmployeeList result set as column name=value pairs.

A try/catch block is included to handle NULL column values such as those found in the TerminationDate column of the Employees table.



## Tutorial: Accessing web services from JAX-WS

The following tutorial demonstrates how to access web services using the Java API for XML Web Services (JAX-WS).

Before you begin, you will need the JAX-WS tools available from Sun. If you do not have this package installed on your system, you must download the JAX-WS tools and install them. To download the JAX-WS tools, visit <http://java.sun.com/webservices/>. Click the link for JAX-WS. This should take you to the [Java API for XML Web Services](#) page. Click the **Download Now** link. After you have downloaded the software package, install it on your system.

This example was developed with JAX-WS 2.1.3 for Windows.

SQL Anywhere SOAP web services that are accessed from JAX-WS should be declared to be of format CONCRETE.

### To create SOAP and DISH services

1. At a command prompt, run the following command to start a personal web server. Replace *samples-dir* with the actual location of the sample database. The `-xs http(port=80)` option tells the database server to accept HTTP requests on port 80. If you already have a web server running on port 80, use another port number such as 8080 for this tutorial and use 8080 instead of 80 in all port references.

```
dbeng11 -xs http(port=80) samples-dir\demo.db
```

2. Start Interactive SQL and connect to the SQL Anywhere sample database as the DBA. Execute the following statements:
  - a. Define a stored procedure that lists some columns of the Employees table.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE ListEmployees()
RESULT (
  EmployeeID      INTEGER,
  Surname          CHAR(20),
  GivenName       CHAR(20),
  StartDate       DATE,
  TerminationDate DATE )
BEGIN
  SELECT EmployeeID, Surname, GivenName,
         StartDate, TerminationDate
  FROM Employees;
END;
```

- b. Define a SOAP service that calls this stored procedure.

```
CREATE SERVICE "WS/EmployeeList"
TYPE 'SOAP'
FORMAT 'CONCRETE' EXPLICIT OFF
DATATYPE OUT
AUTHORIZATION OFF
SECURE OFF
USER DBA
AS CALL ListEmployees();
```

The EXPLICIT clause can only be used with a SOAP or DISH service of type CONCRETE. In this example, EXPLICIT OFF indicates that the corresponding DISH service should generate XML Schema that describes the generic SimpleDataset object. This option only affects the WSDL

document that is generated. Later on, we will look at an example that uses EXPLICIT ON. See [“Tutorial: Using data types with JAX-WS” on page 892](#).

DATATYPE OUT indicates that explicit data type information is generated in the XML result set response. If DATATYPE OFF had been specified, then all data would be typed as string. This option does not affect the WSDL document that is generated.

Because authorization has been turned off, anyone can use this service without supplying a user name and password. The commands run under user DBA. This arrangement is simple, but not secure.

- c. Create a DISH service to act as a proxy for the SOAP service and to generate the WSDL document.

```
CREATE SERVICE "WSDish"  
TYPE 'DISH'  
FORMAT 'CONCRETE'  
GROUP "WS"  
AUTHORIZATION OFF  
SECURE OFF  
USER DBA;
```

The SOAP and DISH service must both be format CONCRETE. Since the EmployeeList service is in the WS group, a GROUP clause is included.

3. Take a look at the WSDL that the DISH service automatically creates. To do so, open a web browser and browse to the following URL: <http://localhost:80/demo/WSDish>. The DISH service automatically generates a WSDL document that appears in the browser window.

In particular, observe the SimpleDataset object that is exposed because the format of this service is CONCRETE and EXPLICIT is OFF. In a later step, the **wsimport** application uses this information to generate a SOAP 1.1 client interface for this service.

```
<s:complexType name="SimpleDataset">  
<s:sequence>  
<s:element name="rowset">  
  <s:complexType>  
    <s:sequence>  
      <s:element name="row" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">  
        <s:complexType>  
          <s:sequence>  
            <s:any minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded" />  
          </s:sequence>  
        </s:complexType>  
      </s:element>  
    </s:sequence>  
  </s:complexType>  
</s:element>  
</s:sequence>  
</s:complexType>
```

### To generate a JAX-WS interface for these web services

1. In this example, the Java API for XML Web Services (JAX-WS) and the Sun Java 1.6.0 JDK are installed on drive C:. Set your PATH environment variable so that it includes the JAX-WS binaries and the JDK binaries. The binaries are located in the following directories:

```
c:\Sun\jaxws-ri\bin  
c:\Sun\SDK\jdk\bin
```

2. At a command prompt, set your CLASSPATH environment variable.

```
SET classpath=.;C:\Sun\jaxws-ri\lib\jaxb-api.jar
;C:\Sun\jaxws-ri\lib\jaxws-rt.jar
```

3. The next step is to generate the interface needed to call the web service.

At the same command prompt, create a new project directory and make this directory your current directory. Execute the following command in this directory.

```
wsimport -keep -Xendorsed "http://localhost:80/demo/WSDish"
```

The `wsimport` tool retrieves the WSDL document from the given URL, generates the Java files that define the interface for it, and then compiles the Java files.

The **keep** option tells `wsimport` not to delete the `.java` files. Without this option, these files are deleted after the corresponding `.class` files have been generated. Saving these files makes it easier to examine the makeup of the interface.

The **Xendorsed** option allows you to use the JAX-WS 2.1 API with JDK6.

Once this command completes, you should have a new subdirectory structure named `localhost\demo\ws` in your current directory that contains the following Java files, along with the compiled `.class` versions of each Java file.

```
EmployeeList.java
EmployeeListResponse.java
FaultMessage.java
ObjectFactory.java
package-info.java
SimpleDataset.java
WSDish.java
WSDishSoapPort.java
```

## To use the generated JAX-WS interface

1. Save the following Java source code into `SASoapDemo.java`. Make sure that this file is located in the same directory containing the `localhost` subdirectory that was generated by the `wsimport` tool.

```
// SASoapDemo.java illustrates a web service client that
// calls the WSDish service and prints out the data.

import java.util.*;
import javax.xml.ws.*;
import org.w3c.dom.Element;
import org.w3c.dom.Node;
import localhost.demo.ws.*;

public class SASoapDemo
{
    @WebServiceRef( wsdlLocation= "http://localhost:8080/demo/WSDish" )
    public static void main( String[] args )
    {
        try {
            WSDish service = new WSDish();

            Holder<SimpleDataset> response = new Holder<SimpleDataset>();
            Holder<Integer> sqlcode = new Holder<Integer>();

            WSDishSoapPort port = service.getWSDishSoap();
```

```
// This is the SOAP service call to EmployeeList
port.employeeList( response, sqlcode );

localhost.demo.ws.SimpleDataset result = response.value;
SimpleDataset.Rowset rowset = result.getRowset();

List<SimpleDataset.Rowset.Row> rows = rowset.getRow();

for ( int i = 0; i < rows.size(); i++ ) {
    SimpleDataset.Rowset.Row row = rows.get( i );
    List<Object> cols = row.getAny();

    System.out.println( "Number of columns=" + cols.size() );

    for ( int j = 0; j < cols.size(); j++ ) {
        // Column data is contained as a SOAPElement
        Element col = (Element)cols.get(j);
        System.out.print(col.getLocalName() + "=" );
        Node node = col.getFirstChild();
        if( node == null ) {
            System.out.println( "(null)" );
        } else {
            System.out.println( node.getNodeValue() );
        }
    }
    System.out.println();
}

}
}
}
}
}
```

If you chose to start the web server using a different port number such as 8080, then you will have to alter the `import localhost` source line to something like the following:

```
import localhost._8080.demo.ws.*;
```

2. Compile *SASoapDemo.java*.

```
javac SASoapDemo.java
```

3. Run the compiled class file.

```
java SASoapDemo
```

When the application sends its request to the web server, it receives an XML result set response that consists of an `EmployeeListResult` with a rowset containing several row entries. Also included in the response is the `sqlcode` result from executing the query. An example of the response is shown next.

```
<tns:EmployeeListResponse>
  <tns:EmployeeListResult xsi:type='tns:SimpleDataset'>
    <tns:rowset>
      <tns:row>...</tns:row>
      .
      .
      .
    <tns:row>...</tns:row>
  </tns:EmployeeListResult>
  <tns:sqlcode>...</tns:sqlcode>
</tns:EmployeeListResponse>
```

```

    </tns:rowset>
  </tns:EmployeeListResult>
  <tns:sqlcode>0</tns:sqlcode>
</tns:EmployeeListResponse>

```

Each row in the rowset is sent in a format similar to the following.

```

<tns:row>
  <tns:EmployeeID xsi:type="xsd:int">1751</tns:EmployeeID>
  <tns:Surname xsi:type="xsd:string">Ahmed</tns:Surname>
  <tns:GivenName xsi:type="xsd:string">Alex</tns:GivenName>
  <tns:StartDate xsi:type="xsd:date">1994-07-12-04:00</tns:StartDate>
  <tns:TerminationDate xsi:type="xsd:date">2008-04-18-04:00
    </tns:TerminationDate>
</tns:row>

```

Note that the column name and data type are included.

### Using a proxy

You can observe the response shown above through the use of proxy software that logs the XML message traffic. The proxy inserts itself between your client application and the web server.

The EmployeeList result set is displayed as (type)column name=value pairs by the SASoapDemo application. Several lines of output similar to the following should be generated.

The EmployeeList result set is displayed as column name=value pairs. Several lines of output similar to the following should be generated.

```

Number of columns=4
EmployeeID=102
Surname=Whitney
GivenName=Fran
StartDate=1984-08-28-04:00

Number of columns=4
EmployeeID=105
Surname=Cobb
GivenName=Matthew
StartDate=1985-01-01-05:00
.
.
.
Number of columns=4
EmployeeID=1740
Surname=Nielsen
GivenName=Robert
StartDate=1994-06-24-04:00

Number of columns=5
EmployeeID=1751
Surname=Ahmed
GivenName=Alex
StartDate=1994-07-12-04:00
TerminationDate=2008-04-18-04:00

```

Note that the TerminationDate column is only sent when its value is not NULL. For this example, the last row in the Employees table was altered such that a non-NULL termination date was set.

Also note that date values include an offset from UTC time. In the above sample data, the server is located in the North American Eastern time zone. This is 5 hours earlier than UTC time (-05:00) for dates when

daylight savings is not in effect and 4 hours earlier than UTC time (-04:00) for dates when daylight savings is in effect.

## Using procedures that provide HTML documents

Generally, it is easiest to write a procedure that handles the requests sent to a particular service. Such a procedure should return a web page. Optionally the procedure can accept arguments, passed as part of the URL, to customize its output.

The following example, however, is much simpler. It demonstrates how simple a service can be. This web service simply returns the phrase "Hello world!".

```
CREATE SERVICE hello
TYPE 'RAW'
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS SELECT 'Hello world!';
```

Start a database server with the `-xs` option to enable handling of web requests, and then request the URL <http://localhost/hello> from any web browser. The words Hello world! appear on an otherwise plain page.

### HTML pages

The above page appears in your browser in plain text. This happens because the default HTTP Content-Type is `text/plain`. To create a more normal web page, formatted in HTML, you must do two things:

- Set the HTTP Content-Type header field to `text/html` so that the browsers expect HTML.
- Include HTML tags in the output.

You can write tags to the output in two ways. One way is to use the phrase `TYPE 'HTML'` in the `CREATE SERVICE` statement. Doing so instructs the SQL Anywhere database server to add HTML tags for you. This can work quite well if, for example, you are returning a table.

The other way is to use `TYPE 'RAW'` and write out all the necessary tags yourself. This second method provides the most control over the output. Note that specifying type `RAW` does not necessarily mean the output is not in HTML or XML format. It only tells SQL Anywhere that it can pass the return value directly to the client without adding tags itself.

The following procedure generates a fancier version of Hello world. For convenience, the body of the work is done in the following procedure, which formats the web page.

The built-in procedure `sa_set_http_header` is used to set the HTTP header type so browsers interpret the result correctly. If you omit this statement, your browser displays all the HTML codes, rather than using them to format the document.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE hello_pretty_world ()
RESULT (html_doc XML)
BEGIN
  CALL dbo.sa_set_http_header( 'Content-Type', 'text/html' );
  SELECT HTML_DECODE(
    XMLCONCAT(
      '<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01//EN">',
      XMLELEMENT('HTML',
        XMLELEMENT('HEAD',
          XMLELEMENT('TITLE', 'Hello Pretty World')
        ),
        XMLELEMENT('BODY',
          XMLELEMENT('H1', 'Hello Pretty World!')
        )
      )
    )
```

```
        XMLELEMENT('P',
            '(If you see the tags in your browser, check that '
            || 'the Content-Type header is set to text/html.)'
        )
    )
)
);
END
```

The following statement creates a service that uses this procedure. The statement calls the above procedure, which generates the Hello Pretty World web page.

```
CREATE SERVICE hello_pretty_world
TYPE 'RAW'
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS CALL hello_pretty_world();
```

Once you have created the procedure and the service, you are ready to access the web page. Ensure that your database server was started with the correct `-xs` option values, and then open the URL [http://localhost/hello\\_pretty\\_world](http://localhost/hello_pretty_world) in a web browser.

You see the results formatted in a simple HTML page, with the title Hello Pretty World. You can make the web page as elaborate as you want by including more content, using more tags, using style sheets, or including scripts that run in the browser. In all cases, you create the necessary services to handle the browser's requests.

For more information about built-in stored procedures, see [“Alphabetical list of system procedures” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

## Root services

When no service name is included in a URL, SQL Anywhere looks for a web service named **root**. The role of root pages is analogous to the role of *index.html* pages in many traditional web servers.

Root services are handy for creating home pages because they can handle URL requests that contain only the address of your web site. They are also handy for handling URL paths that do not exist. For example, the following procedure and service implement a simple web page that appears when you browse to the URL <http://localhost>. It also handles the case where you browse to a page that does not exist.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE HomePage( IN url LONG VARCHAR )
RESULT (html_doc XML)
BEGIN
    CALL dbo.sa_set_http_header( 'Content-Type', 'text/html' );
    IF url IS NULL THEN
        SELECT HTML_DECODE(
            XMLCONCAT(
                '<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01//EN">',
                XMLELEMENT('HTML',
                    XMLELEMENT('HEAD',
                        XMLELEMENT('TITLE', 'My Home Page')
                    ),
                    XMLELEMENT('BODY',
                        XMLELEMENT('H1', 'My home on the web'),
                        XMLELEMENT('P',
                            'Thank you for visiting my web site!'
                        )
                    )
                )
            )
        )
    )
END
```



```
    )
  )
ELSE
  CALL dbo.sa_set_http_header('Status','404');
  SELECT '<H1>Status 404 - Document ' || url || ' not found</H1>'
END IF
END
```

Now create a service that uses this procedure:

```
CREATE SERVICE root
TYPE 'RAW'
AUTHORIZATION OFF
SECURE OFF
URL PATH ON
USER DBA
AS CALL HomePage(:url);
```

You can access this web page by browsing to the URL <http://localhost>, as long as you do not specify that database names are mandatory when you start the database server. See [“Starting a database server that listens for web requests” on page 859](#). By specifying **URL PATH ON**, you ensure that non-existent URL paths are directed to this service.

## Examples

More extensive examples are included in the *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\HTTP* directory.

## Working with data types

By default, the XML encoding of parameter input is string and the result set output for SOAP service formats contains no information that specifically describes the data type of the columns in the result set. For all formats, parameter data types are string. For the DNET format, within the schema section of the response, all columns are typed as string. CONCRETE and XML formats contain no data type information in the response. This default behavior can be manipulated using the DATATYPE clause.

SQL Anywhere enables data typing using the DATATYPE clause. Data type information can be included in the XML encoding of parameter input and result set output or responses for all SOAP service formats. This simplifies parameter passing from SOAP toolkits by not requiring client code to explicitly convert parameters to Strings. For example, an integer can be passed as an int. XML encoded data types enable a SOAP toolkit to parse and cast the data to the appropriate type.

When using string data types exclusively, the application needs to implicitly know the data type for every column within the result set. This is not necessary when data typing is requested of the web server. To control whether data type information is included, the DATATYPE clause can be used when the web service is defined.

**DATATYPE { OFF | ON | IN | OUT }**

- **OFF** This is the default behavior when the DATATYPE option is not used. For DNET output format, SQL Anywhere data types are translated to and from XML Schema string types. For CONCRETE and XML formats, no data type information is emitted.
- **ON** Data type information is emitted for both input parameters and result set responses. SQL Anywhere data types are translated to and from XML Schema data types.
- **IN** Data type information is emitted for input parameters only.
- **OUT** Data type information is emitted for result set responses only.

Here is an example of a web service definition that enlists data typing for the result set response.

```
CREATE SERVICE "SASoapTest/EmployeeList"  
TYPE 'SOAP'  
AUTHORIZATION OFF  
SECURE OFF  
USER DBA  
DATATYPE OUT  
AS SELECT * FROM Employees;
```

In this example, data type information is requested for result set responses only since this service does not have parameters.

Data typing is applicable to all SQL Anywhere web services defined as type 'SOAP'.

### Data typing of input parameters

Data typing of input parameters is supported by simply exposing the parameter data types as their true data types in the WSDL generated by the DISH service.

A typical string parameter definition (or a non-typed parameter) would look like the following:

```
<s:element minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1" name="a_varchar" nillable="true"
type="s:string" />
```

The String parameter may be nillable, that is, it may or may not occur.

For a typed parameter such as an integer, the parameter must occur and is not nillable. The following is an example.

```
<s:element minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1" name="an_int" nillable="false"
type="s:int" />
```

## Data typing of output parameters

All SQL Anywhere web services of type 'SOAP' may expose data type information within the response data. The data types are exposed as attributes within the rowset column element.

The following is an example of a typed SimpleDataSet response from a SOAP FORMAT 'CONCRETE' web service.

```
<SOAP-ENV:Body>
  <tns:test_types_concrete_onResponse>
    <tns:test_types_concrete_onResult xsi:type='tns:SimpleDataset'>
      <tns:rowset>
        <tns:row>
          <tns:lvc xsi:type="xsd:string">Hello World</tns:lvc>
          <tns:i xsi:type="xsd:int">99</tns:i>
          <tns:ii xsi:type="xsd:long">99999999</tns:ii>
          <tns:f xsi:type="xsd:float">3.25</tns:f>
          <tns:d xsi:type="xsd:double">.55555555555555582</tns:d>
          <tns:bin xsi:type="xsd:base64Binary">AAAAZg==</tns:bin>
          <tns:date xsi:type="xsd:date">2006-05-29-04:00</tns:date>
        </tns:row>
      </tns:rowset>
    </tns:test_types_concrete_onResult>
    <tns:sqlcode>0</tns:sqlcode>
  </tns:test_types_concrete_onResponse>
</SOAP-ENV:Body>
```

The following is an example of a response from a SOAP FORMAT 'XML' web service returning the XML data as a string. The interior rowset consists of encoded XML and is presented here in its decoded form for legibility.

```
<SOAP-ENV:Body>
  <tns:test_types_XML_onResponse>
    <tns:test_types_XML_onResult xsi:type='xsd:string'>
      <tns:rowset
        xmlns:tns="http://localhost/satest/dish"
        xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
        xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
      <tns:row>
        <tns:lvc xsi:type="xsd:string">Hello World</tns:lvc>
        <tns:i xsi:type="xsd:int">99</tns:i>
        <tns:ii xsi:type="xsd:long">99999999</tns:ii>
        <tns:f xsi:type="xsd:float">3.25</tns:f>
        <tns:d xsi:type="xsd:double">.55555555555555582</tns:d>
        <tns:bin xsi:type="xsd:base64Binary">AAAAZg==</tns:bin>
        <tns:date xsi:type="xsd:date">2006-05-29-04:00</tns:date>
      </tns:row>
    </tns:rowset>
  </tns:test_types_XML_onResult>
  <tns:sqlcode>0</tns:sqlcode>
```

```

    </tns:test_types_XML_onResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>

```

Note that, in addition to the data type information, the namespace for the elements and the XML schema provides all the information necessary for post processing by an XML parser. When no data type information exists in the result set (DATATYPE OFF or IN) then the xsi:type and the XML schema namespace declarations are omitted.

An example of a SOAP FORMAT 'DNET' web service returning a typed SimpleDataSet follows:

```

<SOAP-ENV:Body>
  <tns:test_types_dnet_outResponse>
    <tns:test_types_dnet_outResult xsi:type='sqlresultstream:SqlRowSet'>
      <xsd:schema id='Schema2'
        xmlns:xsd='http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema'
        xmlns:msdata='urn:schemas-microsoft.com:xml-msdata'>
        <xsd:element name='rowset' msdata:IsDataSet='true'>
          <xsd:complexType>
            <xsd:sequence>
              <xsd:element name='row' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='unbounded'>
                <xsd:complexType>
                  <xsd:sequence>
                    <xsd:element name='lvc' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:string' />
                    <xsd:element name='ub' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:unsignedByte' />
                    <xsd:element name='s' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:short' />
                    <xsd:element name='us' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:unsignedShort' />
                    <xsd:element name='i' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:int' />
                    <xsd:element name='ui' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:unsignedInt' />
                    <xsd:element name='l' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:long' />
                    <xsd:element name='ul' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:unsignedLong' />
                    <xsd:element name='f' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:float' />
                    <xsd:element name='d' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:double' />
                    <xsd:element name='bin' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:base64Binary' />
                    <xsd:element name='bool' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:boolean' />
                    <xsd:element name='num' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:decimal' />
                    <xsd:element name='dc' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:decimal' />
                    <xsd:element name='date' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:date' />
                  </xsd:sequence>
                </xsd:complexType>
              </xsd:element>
            </xsd:sequence>
          </xsd:complexType>
        </xsd:element>
      </xsd:schema>
      <diffgr:diffgram xmlns:msdata='urn:schemas-microsoft-com:xml-msdata'
        xmlns:diffgr='urn:schemas-microsoft-com:xml-diffgram-v1'>
        <rowset>
          <row>
            <lvc>Hello World</lvc>
            <ub>128</ub>
            <s>-99</s>
            <us>33000</us>
            <i>-2147483640</i>
            <ui>4294967295</ui>
            <l>-9223372036854775807</l>
            <ul>18446744073709551615</ul>
            <f>3.25</f>
            <d>.555555555555555582</d>
            <bin>QUJD</bin>
            <bool>1</bool>
            <num>123456.123457</num>
            <dc>-1.756000</dc>
            <date>2006-05-29-04:00</date>
          </row>
        </rowset>
      </tns:test_types_dnet_outResult>
    </tns:test_types_dnet_outResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>

```

```

    </row>
  </rowset>
</diffgr:diffgram>
</tns:test_types_dnet_outResult>
<tns:sqlcode>0</tns:sqlcode>
</tns:test_types_dnet_outResponse>
</SOAP-ENV:Body>

```

**Mapping SQL Anywhere types to XML Schema types**

SQL Anywhere type	XML Schema type	XML Example
CHAR	string	Hello World
VARCHAR	string	Hello World
LONG VARCHAR	string	Hello World
TEXT	string	Hello World
NCHAR	string	Hello World
NVARCHAR	string	Hello World
LONG NVARCHAR	string	Hello World
NTEXT	string	Hello World
UNIQUEIDENTIFIER	string	12345678-1234-5678-9012-123456789012
UNIQUEIDENTIFIERSTR	string	12345678-1234-5678-9012-123456789012
XML	This is user defined. A parameter is assumed to be valid XML representing a complex type (for example, base64Binary, SOAP array, struct).	<inputHexBinary xsi:type="xsd:hexBinary"> 414243 </inputHexBinary> (interpreted as 'ABC')
BIGINT	long	-9223372036854775807
UNSIGNED BIGINT	unsignedLong	18446744073709551615
BIT	boolean	1
VARBIT	string	11111111
LONG VARBIT	string	00000000000000001000000000000000
DECIMAL	decimal	-1.756000

SQL Anywhere type	XML Schema type	XML Example
DOUBLE	double	.55555555555555582
FLOAT	float	12.3456792831420898
INTEGER	int	-2147483640
UNSIGNED INTEGER	unsignedInt	4294967295
NUMERIC	decimal	123456.123457
REAL	float	3.25
SMALLINT	short	-99
UNSIGNED SMALLINT	unsignedShort	33000
TINYINT	unsignedByte	128
MONEY	decimal	12345678.9900
SMALLMONEY	decimal	12.3400
DATE	date	2006-11-21-05:00
DATETIME	dateTime	2006-05-21T09:00:00.000-08:00
SMALLDATETIME	dateTime	2007-01-15T09:00:00.000-08:00
TIME	time	14:14:48.980-05:00
TIMESTAMP	dateTime	2007-01-12T21:02:14.420-06:00
BINARY	base64Binary	AAAAZg==
IMAGE	base64Binary	AAAAZg==
LONG BINARY	base64Binary	AAAAZg==
VARBINARY	base64Binary	AAAAZg==

When one or more parameters are of type NCHAR, NVARCHAR, LONG NVARCHAR, or NTEXT then the response output is in UTF8. If the client database uses the UTF-8 character encoding, there is no change in behavior (since NCHAR and CHAR data types are the same). However, if the database does not use the UTF-8 character encoding, then all parameters that are not an NCHAR data type are converted to UTF8. The value of the XML declaration encoding and Content-Type HTTP header will correspond to the character encoding used.

**Mapping XML Schema types to Java types**

<b>XML Schema Type</b>	<b>Java Data Type</b>
xsd:string	java.lang.String
xsd:integer	java.math.BigInteger
xsd:int	int
xsd:long	long
xsd:short	short
xsd:decimal	java.math.BigDecimal
xsd:float	float
xsd:double	double
xsd:boolean	boolean
xsd:byte	byte
xsd:QName	javax.xml.namespace.QName
xsd:dateTime	javax.xml.datatype.XMLGregorianCalendar
xsd:base64Binary	byte[]
xsd:hexBinary	byte[]
xsd:unsignedInt	long
xsd:unsignedShort	int
xsd:unsignedByte	short
xsd:time	javax.xml.datatype.XMLGregorianCalendar
xsd:date	javax.xml.datatype.XMLGregorianCalendar
xsd:g	javax.xml.datatype.XMLGregorianCalendar
xsd:anySimpleType	java.lang.Object
xsd:anySimpleType	java.lang.String
xsd:duration	javax.xml.datatype.Duration

<b>XML Schema Type</b>	<b>Java Data Type</b>
xsd:NOTATION	javax.xml.namespace.QName



## Tutorial: Using data types with Microsoft .NET

The following tutorial demonstrates how to use the SQL Anywhere web service datatype support from within Microsoft .NET using Visual C#.

### To create SOAP and DISH services

1. At a command prompt, run the following command to start a personal web server. Replace *samples-dir* with the actual location of the sample database. The `-xs http(port=80)` option tells the database server to accept HTTP requests on port 80. If you already have a web server running on port 80, use another port number such as 8080 for this tutorial.

```
dbeng11 -xs http(port=80) samples-dir\demo.db
```

2. Start Interactive SQL. Connect to the SQL Anywhere sample database as the DBA. Execute the following statements:
  - a. Define a SOAP service that lists the Employees table.

```
CREATE SERVICE "SASoapTest/EmployeeList"
TYPE 'SOAP'
AUTHORIZATION OFF
SECURE OFF
USER DBA
DATATYPE OUT
AS SELECT * FROM Employees;
```

In this example, DATATYPE OUT is specified to generate datatype information in the XML result set response. A fragment of the response from the web server is shown below. Note that the type information matches the data type of the database columns.

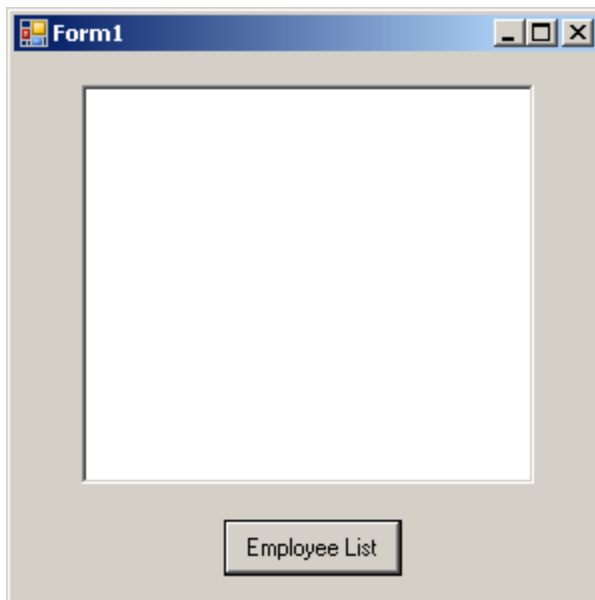
```
<xsd:element name='EmployeeID' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:int' />
<xsd:element name='ManagerID' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:int' />
<xsd:element name='Surname' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:string' />
<xsd:element name='GivenName' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:string' />
<xsd:element name='DepartmentID' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:int' />
<xsd:element name='Street' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:string' />
<xsd:element name='City' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:string' />
<xsd:element name='State' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:string' />
<xsd:element name='Country' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:string' />
<xsd:element name='PostalCode' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:string' />
<xsd:element name='Phone' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:string' />
<xsd:element name='Status' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:string' />
<xsd:element name='SocialSecurityNumber' minOccurs='0'
type='xsd:string' />
<xsd:element name='Salary' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:decimal' />
<xsd:element name='StartDate' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:date' />
<xsd:element name='TerminationDate' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:date' />
<xsd:element name='BirthDate' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:date' />
<xsd:element name='BenefitHealthInsurance' minOccurs='0'
type='xsd:boolean' />
<xsd:element name='BenefitLifeInsurance' minOccurs='0'
type='xsd:boolean' />
<xsd:element name='BenefitDayCare' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:boolean' />
<xsd:element name='Sex' minOccurs='0' type='xsd:string' />
```

- b. Create a DISH service to act as a proxy for the SOAP service and to generate the WSDL document.

```
CREATE SERVICE "SASoapTest_DNET"  
TYPE 'DISH'  
GROUP "SASoapTest"  
FORMAT 'DNET'  
AUTHORIZATION OFF  
SECURE OFF  
USER DBA;
```

The SOAP and DISH service must be of format DNET. In this example, the FORMAT clause was omitted when the SOAP service was created. As a result, the SOAP service inherits the DNET format from the DISH service.

3. Start Microsoft Visual Studio. Note that this example uses functions from the .NET Framework 2.0.
  - a. Create a new Windows Application project using Visual C#. An empty form appears.
  - b. From the **Project** menu, choose **Add Web Reference**.
  - c. In the **URL** field of the **Add Web Reference** page, enter the following URL: **http://localhost:80/demo/SASoapTest\_DNET**.
  - d. Click **Go**.  
You are presented with a list of the methods available for SASoapTest\_DNET. You should see the EmployeeList method.
  - e. Click **Add Reference** to finish.  
The **Solution Explorer** window shows the new web reference.
  - f. From the Visual Studio **Toolbox**, add a listbox and a button to the form as shown in the following diagram.



- g. Rename the button text to **Employee List**.

- h. Double-click **Employee List** and add the following code for the button click event.

```

int sqlCode;

listBox1.Items.Clear();

localhost.SASoapTest_DNET proxy = new localhost.SASoapTest_DNET();

DataSet results = proxy.EmployeeList(out sqlCode);
DataTableReader dr = results.CreateDataReader();
while (dr.Read())
{
    for (int i = 0; i < dr.FieldCount; i++)
    {
        string columnName = "(" + dr.GetDataTypeName(i)
                            + ")"
                            + dr.GetName(i);

        if (dr.IsDBNull(i))
        {
            listBox1.Items.Add(columnName + "=(null)");
        }
        else {
            System.TypeCode typeCode =
                System.Type.GetTypeCode(dr.GetFieldType(i));
            switch (typeCode)
            {
                case System.TypeCode.Int32:
                    Int32 intValue = dr.GetInt32(i);
                    listBox1.Items.Add(columnName + "="
                                        + intValue);
                    break;
                case System.TypeCode.Decimal:
                    Decimal decValue = dr.GetDecimal(i);
                    listBox1.Items.Add(columnName + "="
                                        + decValue.ToString("c"));
                    break;
                case System.TypeCode.String:
                    string stringValue = dr.GetString(i);
                    listBox1.Items.Add(columnName + "="
                                        + stringValue);
                    break;
                case System.TypeCode.DateTime:
                    DateTime dateValue = dr.GetDateTime(i);
                    listBox1.Items.Add(columnName + "="
                                        + dateValue);
                    break;
                case System.TypeCode.Boolean:
                    Boolean boolValue = dr.GetBoolean(i);
                    listBox1.Items.Add(columnName + "="
                                        + boolValue);
                    break;
                case System.TypeCode.DBNull:
                    listBox1.Items.Add(columnName
                                        + "=(null)");
                    break;
                default:
                    listBox1.Items.Add(columnName
                                        + "=(unsupported)");
                    break;
            }
        }
    }
}
listBox1.Items.Add("");

```

```
}  
dr.Close();
```

This example is designed to illustrate the fine control the application developer can have over the datatype information that is available.

- i. Build and run the program.

The XML response from the web server includes a formatted result set. The first row of the formatted result set is shown below.

```
<row>  
<EmployeeID>102</EmployeeID>  
<ManagerID>501</ManagerID>  
<Surname>Whitney</Surname>  
<GivenName>Fran</GivenName>  
<DepartmentID>100</DepartmentID>  
<Street>9 East Washington Street</Street>  
<City>Cornwall</City>  
<State>NY</State>  
<Country>USA</Country>  
<PostalCode>02192</PostalCode>  
<Phone>6175553985</Phone>  
<Status>A</Status>  
<SocialSecurityNumber>017349033</SocialSecurityNumber>  
<Salary>45700.000</Salary>  
<StartDate>1984-08-28-05:00</StartDate>  
<TerminationDate xsi:nil="true" />  
<BirthDate>1958-06-05-05:00</BirthDate>  
<BenefitHealthInsurance>1</BenefitHealthInsurance>  
<BenefitLifeInsurance>1</BenefitLifeInsurance>  
<BenefitDayCare>0</BenefitDayCare>  
<Sex>F</Sex>  
</row>
```

There are a few things to note about the XML result set response.

- All column data is converted to a string representation of the data.
- Columns that contain date and/or time information include the offset from UTC of the web server. In this example, the offset is -05:00 which is 5 hours to the west of UTC (in this case, North American Eastern Standard Time).
- Columns containing date only are formatted as follows:yyyy-mm-dd-HH:MM or yyyy-mm-dd+HH:MM. A zone offset (-HH:MM or +HH:MM) is suffixed to the string.
- Columns containing time only are formatted as follows:hh:mm:ss.nnn-HH:MM or hh:mm:ss.nnn+HH:MM. A zone offset (-HH:MM or +HH:MM) is suffixed to the string.
- Columns containing date and time are formatted as follows:yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss.nnn-HH:MM or yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss.nnn+HH:MM. Note that the date is separated from the time using the letter 'T'. A zone offset (-HH:MM or +HH:MM) is suffixed to the string.

The listbox will display the EmployeeList result set as (type)column name=value pairs. The result from processing the first row of the result set is shown below.

```
(Int32)EmployeeID=102  
(Int32)ManagerID=501  
(String)Surname=Whitney  
(String)GivenName=Fran  
(Int32)DepartmentID=100
```

```
(String)Street=9 East Washington Street
(String)City=Cornwall
(String)State=New York
(String)Country=USA
(String)PostalCode=02192
(String)Phone=6175553985
(String)Status=A
(String)SocialSecurityNumber=017349033
(String)Salary=$45,700.00
(DateTime)StartDate=28/08/1984 0:00:00 AM
(DateTime)TerminationDate=(null)
(DateTime)BirthDate=05/06/1958 0:00:00 AM
(Boolean)BenefitHealthInsurance=True
(Boolean)BenefitLifeInsurance=True
(Boolean)BenefitDayCare=False
(String)Sex=F
```

There are a couple of things to note about the results.

- Columns that contain nulls are returned as type DBNull.
- The Salary amount has been converted to the client's currency format.
- Columns that contain date but no time values assume a time of 00:00:00 or midnight.

## Tutorial: Using data types with JAX-WS

The following tutorial demonstrates how to access web services using the Java API for XML Web Services (JAX-WS).

If you have done the earlier JAX-WS tutorial, then some of these steps will already have been performed.

Before you begin, you will need the JAX-WS tools available from Sun. If you do not have this package installed on your system, you must download the JAX-WS tools and install them. To download the JAX-WS tools, visit <http://java.sun.com/webservices/>. Click the link for JAX-WS. This should take you to the [Java API for XML Web Services](#) page. Click the **Download Now** link. After you have downloaded the software package, install it on your system.

This example was developed with JAX-WS 2.1.3 for Windows.

SQL Anywhere SOAP web services that are accessed from JAX-WS should be declared to be of format CONCRETE.

### To create SOAP and DISH services

1. At a command prompt, run the following command to start a personal web server. Replace *samples-dir* with the actual location of the sample database. The `-xs http(port=80)` option tells the database server to accept HTTP requests on port 80. If you already have a web server running on port 80, use another port number such as 8080 for this tutorial.

```
dbeng11 -xs http(port=80) samples-dir\demo.db
```

2. Start Interactive SQL and connect to the SQL Anywhere sample database as the DBA. Execute the following statements:
  - a. Define a stored procedure that lists some columns of the Employees table.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE ListEmployees()  
RESULT (  
  EmployeeID          INTEGER,  
  Surname              CHAR(20),  
  GivenName           CHAR(20),  
  StartDate           DATE,  
  TerminationDate    DATE )  
BEGIN  
  SELECT EmployeeID, Surname, GivenName,  
         StartDate, TerminationDate  
  FROM Employees;  
END;
```

- b. Define a SOAP service that calls this stored procedure.

```
CREATE SERVICE "WS/EmployeeList2"  
TYPE 'SOAP'  
FORMAT 'CONCRETE' EXPLICIT ON  
DATATYPE OUT  
AUTHORIZATION OFF  
SECURE OFF  
USER DBA  
AS CALL ListEmployees();
```

The EXPLICIT clause can only be used with a SOAP or DISH service of type CONCRETE. In this example, EXPLICIT ON indicates that the corresponding DISH service should generate XML Schema that describes the EmployeeList2Dataset object. This option only affects the WSDL document that is generated. In an earlier JAX-WS tutorial, we looked at an example that used EXPLICIT OFF. See [“Tutorial: Accessing web services from JAX-WS” on page 871](#).

DATATYPE OUT indicates that explicit data type information is generated in the XML result set response. If DATATYPE OFF had been specified, then all data would be typed as string. This option does not affect the WSDL document that is generated.

Because authorization has been turned off, anyone can use this service without supplying a user name and password. The commands run under user DBA. This arrangement is simple, but not secure.

- c. Create a DISH service to act as a proxy for the SOAP service and to generate the WSDL document.

```
CREATE SERVICE "WSDish"
TYPE 'DISH'
FORMAT 'CONCRETE'
GROUP "WS"
AUTHORIZATION OFF
SECURE OFF
USER DBA;
```

The SOAP and DISH service must both be format CONCRETE. Since the EmployeeList2 service is in the WS group, a GROUP clause is included.

3. Take a look at the WSDL that the DISH service automatically creates. To do so, open a web browser and browse to the following URL: <http://localhost:80/demo/WSDish>. The DISH service automatically generates a WSDL document that appears in the browser window.

In particular, observe the EmployeeList2Dataset object that is exposed because the format of this service is CONCRETE and EXPLICIT is ON. In a later step, the **wsimport** application uses this information to generate a SOAP 1.1 client interface for this service.

```
<s:complexType name="EmployeeList2Dataset">
<s:sequence>
<s:element name="rowset">
<s:complexType>
<s:sequence>
<s:element name="row" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<s:complexType>
<s:sequence>
<s:element minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1" name="EmployeeID"
nillable="true" type="s:int" />
<s:element minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1" name="Surname"
nillable="true" type="s:string" />
<s:element minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1" name="GivenName"
nillable="true" type="s:string" />
<s:element minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1" name="StartDate"
nillable="true" type="s:date" />
<s:element minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1" name="TerminationDate"
nillable="true" type="s:date" />
</s:sequence>
</s:complexType>
</s:element>
</s:sequence>
</s:complexType>
</s:element>
```

```
</s:sequence>  
</s:complexType>
```

### To generate a JAX-WS interface for these web services

1. In this example, the Java API for XML Web Services (JAX-WS) and the Sun Java 1.6.0 JDK are installed on drive C:. Set your PATH environment variable so that it includes the JAX-WS binaries and the JDK binaries. The binaries are located in the following directories:

```
c:\Sun\jaxws-ri\bin  
c:\Sun\SDK\jdk\bin
```

2. At a command prompt, set your CLASSPATH environment variable.

```
SET classpath=.;C:\Sun\jaxws-ri\lib\jaxb-api.jar  
;C:\Sun\jaxws-ri\lib\jaxws-rt.jar
```

3. The next step is to generate the interface needed to call the web service.

At the same command prompt, create a new project directory and make this directory your current directory. Execute the following command in this directory.

```
wsimport -keep -Xendorsed "http://localhost:80/demo/WSDish"
```

The `wsimport` tool retrieves the WSDL document from the given URL, generates the Java files that define the interface for it, and then compiles the Java files.

The **keep** option tells `wsimport` not to delete the `.java` files. Without this option, these files are deleted after the corresponding `.class` files have been generated. Saving these files makes it easier to examine the makeup of the interface.

The **Xendorsed** option allows you to use the JAX-WS 2.1 API with JDK6.

Once this command completes, you should have a new subdirectory structure named `localhost\demo\ws` in your current directory that contains the following Java files, along with the compiled `.class` versions of each Java file.

```
EmployeeList2.java  
EmployeeList2Dataset.java  
EmployeeList2Response.java  
FaultMessage.java  
ObjectFactory.java  
package-info.java  
WSDish.java  
WSDishSoapPort.java
```

### To use the generated JAX-WS interface

1. Save the following Java source code into `SASoapDemo2.java`. Make sure that this file is located in the same directory containing the `localhost` subdirectory that was generated by the `wsimport` tool.

```
// SASoapDemo2.java illustrates a web service client that  
// calls the WSDish service and prints out the data.  
  
import java.util.*;  
import javax.xml.ws.*;  
import org.w3c.dom.Element;  
import org.w3c.dom.Node;
```



```

import javax.xml.datatype.*;
import localhost.demo.ws.*;

public class SASoapDemo2
{
    public static void main( String[] args )
    {
        try {
            WSDish service = new WSDish();

            Holder<EmployeeList2Dataset> response =
                new Holder<EmployeeList2Dataset>();
            Holder<Integer> sqlcode = new Holder<Integer>();

            WSDishSoapPort port = service.getWSDishSoap();

            // This is the SOAP service call to EmployeeList2
            port.employeeList2( response, sqlcode );

            EmployeeList2Dataset result = response.value;
            EmployeeList2Dataset.Rowset rowset = result.getRowset();

            List<EmployeeList2Dataset.Rowset.Row> rows = rowset.getRow();

            String fieldType;
            String fieldName;
            String fieldValue;
            Integer fieldInt;
            XMLGregorianCalendar fieldDate;

            for ( int i = 0; i < rows.size(); i++ ) {
                EmployeeList2Dataset.Rowset.Row row = rows.get( i );

                fieldType = row.getEmployeeID().getDeclaredType().getSimpleName();
                fieldName = row.getEmployeeID().getName().getLocalPart();
                fieldInt = row.getEmployeeID().getValue();
                System.out.println( "(" + fieldType + ")" + fieldName +
                    "=" + fieldInt );

                fieldType = row.getSurname().getDeclaredType().getSimpleName();
                fieldName = row.getSurname().getName().getLocalPart();
                fieldValue = row.getSurname().getValue();
                System.out.println( "(" + fieldType + ")" + fieldName +
                    "=" + fieldValue );

                fieldType = row.getGivenName().getDeclaredType().getSimpleName();
                fieldName = row.getGivenName().getName().getLocalPart();
                fieldValue = row.getGivenName().getValue();
                System.out.println( "(" + fieldType + ")" + fieldName +
                    "=" + fieldValue );

                fieldType = row.getStartDate().getDeclaredType().getSimpleName();
                fieldName = row.getStartDate().getName().getLocalPart();
                fieldDate = row.getStartDate().getValue();
                System.out.println( "(" + fieldType + ")" + fieldName +
                    "=" + fieldDate );

                if ( row.getTerminationDate() == null ) {
                    fieldType = "unknown";
                    fieldName = "TerminationDate";
                    fieldDate = null;
                } else {
                    fieldType =
                        row.getTerminationDate().getDeclaredType().getSimpleName();

```

```
        fieldName = row.getTerminationDate().getName().getLocalPart();
        fieldDate = row.getTerminationDate().getValue();
    }
    System.out.println( "(" + fieldType + ")" + fieldName +
                        "=" + fieldDate );
    System.out.println();
}
}
}
}
}
}
}
}
}
}
```

If you chose to start the web server using a different port number such as 8080, then you will have to alter the `import localhost` source line to something like the following:

```
import localhost._8080.demo.ws.*;
```

2. Compile *SASoapDemo2.java*.

```
javac SASoapDemo2.java
```

3. Run the compiled class file.

```
java SASoapDemo2
```

When the application sends its request to the web server, it receives an XML result set response that consists of an `EmployeeList2Result` with a rowset containing several row entries. Also included in the response is the `sqlcode` result from executing the query. An example of the response is shown next.

```
<tns:EmployeeList2Response>
  <tns:EmployeeList2Result xsi:type='tns:EmployeeList2Dataset'>
    <tns:rowset>
      <tns:row>...</tns:row>
      .
      .
      .
      <tns:row>...</tns:row>
    </tns:rowset>
  </tns:EmployeeList2Result>
  <tns:sqlcode>0</tns:sqlcode>
</tns:EmployeeList2Response>
```

Each row in the rowset is sent in a format similar to the following.

```
<tns:row>
  <tns:EmployeeID xsi:type="xsd:int">1751</tns:EmployeeID>
  <tns:Surname xsi:type="xsd:string">Ahmed</tns:Surname>
  <tns:GivenName xsi:type="xsd:string">Alex</tns:GivenName>
  <tns:StartDate xsi:type="xsd:date">1994-07-12-04:00</tns:StartDate>
  <tns:TerminationDate xsi:type="xsd:date">2008-04-18-04:00
    </tns:TerminationDate>
</tns:row>
```

Note that the column name and data type are included.

#### Using a proxy

You can observe the response shown above through the use of proxy software that logs the XML message traffic. The proxy inserts itself between your client application and the web server.

The EmployeeList2 result set is displayed as (type)column name=value pairs by the SASoapDemo2 application. Several lines of output similar to the following should be generated.

```
( Integer ) EmployeeID=102
( String ) Surname=Whitney
( String ) GivenName=Fran
( XMLGregorianCalendar ) StartDate=1984-08-28-04:00
( unknown ) TerminationDate=null

( Integer ) EmployeeID=105
( String ) Surname=Cobb
( String ) GivenName=Matthew
( XMLGregorianCalendar ) StartDate=1985-01-01-05:00
( unknown ) TerminationDate=null
.
.
( Integer ) EmployeeID=1740
( String ) Surname=Nielsen
( String ) GivenName=Robert
( XMLGregorianCalendar ) StartDate=1994-06-24-04:00
( unknown ) TerminationDate=null

( Integer ) EmployeeID=1751
( String ) Surname=Ahmed
( String ) GivenName=Alex
( XMLGregorianCalendar ) StartDate=1994-07-12-04:00
( XMLGregorianCalendar ) TerminationDate=2008-04-18-04:00
```

Note that the TerminationDate column is only sent when its value is not NULL. The Java application is designed to detect when the TerminationDate column is not present. For this example, the last row in the Employees table was altered such that a non-NULL termination date was set.

Also note that date values include an offset from UTC time. In the above sample data, the server is located in the North American Eastern time zone. This is 5 hours earlier than UTC time (-05:00) for dates when daylight savings is not in effect and 4 hours earlier than UTC time (-04:00) for dates when daylight savings is in effect.

For further understanding of the Java methods used in the SASoapDemo2 application, it is worthwhile investigating the javax.xml.bind.JAXBElement class documentation on the java.sun.com web site (<http://java.sun.com/javase/5/docs/api/>).

## Using the iAnywhere WSDL compiler

Given a WSDL source that describes a web service, the iAnywhere WSDL compiler generates a set of Java proxy classes, C# proxy classes, or SQL SOAP client procedures for SQL Anywhere that you include in your application.

The Java or C# classes generated by the WSDL compiler are intended for use with QAnywhere. These classes expose web service operations as method calls. The classes that are generated are:

- The main service binding class (this class inherits from `ianywhere.qanywhere.ws.WSBase` in the mobile web services runtime).
- A proxy class for each complex type specified in the WSDL file.

For information about the generated proxy classes, see:

- .NET: “[QAnywhere .NET API for web services \(.NET 2.0\)](#)” [[QAnywhere](#)]
- Java: “[QAnywhere Java API for web services](#)” [[QAnywhere](#)]

The WSDL compiler supports WSDL 1.1 and SOAP 1.1 over HTTP and HTTPS.

### Syntax

```
wSDLc [options] wSDL-uri
```

### wSDL-uri:

This is the specification for the WSDL (Web Services Description Language) source (a URL or file).

### Options:

- **-h** Display help text.
- **-v** Display verbose information.
- **-o *output-directory*** Specify an output directory for generated files.
- **-l *language*** Specify a language for the generated files. This is one of **java**, **cs** (for C#), or **sql**. These options must be specified in lowercase letters.
- **-d** Display debug information that may be helpful when contacting iAnywhere customer support.

### Java-specific options:

- **-p *package*** Specify a package name. This permits you to override the default package name.

### C#-specific options:

- **-n *namespace*** Specify a namespace. This permits you to wrap the generated classes in a namespace of your choosing.

### SQL-specific options:

- **-f *filename*** (Required) Specify the name of the output SQL file to which the SQL statements are written. This operation overwrites any existing file of the same name.

- **-p=prefix** Specify a prefix for the generated function or procedure names. The default prefix is the service name followed by a period (for example, "WSDish.").
- **-x** Generate procedure definitions rather than function definitions.

This is the name of the WSDL file that describes a web service.

WSDLC does not expand complex parameters representing structures or arrays. Such parameters are commented out to allow the database server to automatically create the given procedure or function without modification. However, in order for the SOAP operation to work, such parameters must be analyzed and manually composed. The process may require using the SQL Anywhere XMLELEMENT function with the XMLATTRIBUTES parameter to generate complex XML representations of structures.

## Creating web service client functions and procedures

A SQL Anywhere database can provide and consume web services. These can be standard web services available over the Internet, or these can be provided by SQL Anywhere databases, as long as the web service is not in the same database as the client procedure or function.

SQL Anywhere can act as both HTTP and SOAP web service clients. This functionality is provided through stored functions and stored procedures.

Client functions and procedures are created and manipulated using the following SQL statements:

- “CREATE FUNCTION statement (web services)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “CREATE PROCEDURE statement (web services)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “ALTER FUNCTION statement” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “ALTER PROCEDURE statement” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “DROP FUNCTION statement” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]
- “DROP PROCEDURE statement” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]

For example, the syntax of the CREATE FUNCTION and CREATE PROCEDURE statements, as used to create web service client functions, are as follows:

```
CREATE FUNCTION [ owner.]procedure-name ( [ parameter, ... ] )  
RETURNS data-type  
URL url-string  
[ proc-attributes ]
```

```
CREATE PROCEDURE [ owner.]procedure-name ( [ parameter, ... ] )  
URL url-string  
[ proc-attributes ]
```

Key to this syntax is the URL clause, which is used to provide the URL of the web service that you want the procedure to access. The basic syntax of the URL clause is as follows:

```
url-string :  
'{ HTTP | HTTPS | HTTPS_FIPS }:// [ user:password@ ]hostname[ :port ][ /path ]'
```

The optional user and password information permits you to access web services that require authentication. The hostname can be the name or the IP address of the computer providing the web service.

The port number is required only if the server is listening on a port number other than the default. The default port numbers are 80 for HTTP services and 443 for HTTPS services.

The path identifies the resource or web service on the server.

A request can be sent to any web service, whether it is provided by another SQL Anywhere database or available over the Internet. If the web service is provided by the same database server, it cannot reside in the same database as the client function. Attempting to access a web service in the same database results in the error 403 Forbidden.

Because it is used for parameter substitution, exclamation marks that appear in strings anywhere in the procedure definition must be escaped. See [“Escaping the ! character” on page 910](#).

## Common clauses

The additional clauses that enable you to supply more details about the procedure call are as follows:

```
proc-attributes :
[ TYPE { 'HTTP' [:{ GET | POST[:MIME-type] | PUT[:MIME-type] | DELETE | HEAD }]' |
          'SOAP'[:{ RPC | DOC }]' } ]
[ NAMESPACE namespace-string ]
[ CERTIFICATE certificate-string ]
[ CLIENTPORT clientport-string ]
[ PROXY proxy-string ]
[ SET protocol-option-string ]
```

The TYPE clause is important because it tells SQL Anywhere how to format the request to the web service provider. Standard SOAP types RPC and DOC are available. The standard HTTP methods of GET and POST are available, specified as HTTP:GET and HTTP:POST, respectively. Specifying HTTP implies HTTP:POST.

If type SOAP is chosen, SQL Anywhere automatically formats the request as an XML document in the standard format necessary for SOAP requests. Since a SOAP request is always an XML document, an HTTP POST request is always implicitly used to send the SOAP request document to the server when type SOAP is chosen. Specifying SOAP implies SOAP:RPC.

## Names for web service client functions and procedures

The procedure name is used as the SOAP operation name when building the outgoing SOAP request. In addition, the names of any parameters also appear in tagnames in the SOAP request envelope. Since the SOAP server expects to see these names, specifying them correctly is an important part of defining a SOAP stored procedure. This fact places restrictions on the name of SOAP procedures and functions, beyond the general rules that apply to procedure and function names in SQL Anywhere.

The following statement creates a SOAP stored procedure named MyOperation:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE MyOperation ( a INTEGER, b CHAR(128) )
URL 'HTTP://localhost'
TYPE 'SOAP:DOC';
```

When this procedure is called, such as by the following statement, a SOAP request is generated:

```
CALL MyOperation( 123, 'abc' );
```

The procedure name appears in the <m:MyOperation> tag within the request body. The two parameters to the procedure, a and b, become <m:a> and <m:b>, respectively.

```
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope
  xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:m="http://localhost">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <m:MyOperation>
      <m:a>123</m:a>
      <m:b>abc</m:b>
    </m:MyOperation>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>
```

## Namespace URIs

All SOAP requests require a method namespace URI. The SOAP processor on the server side uses this URI to understand the names of the various entities in the message body of the request.

When creating a SOAP function or procedure, of either SOAP:DOC or SOAP:RPC, you may be required to specify a namespace URI before the call succeeds. You can obtain the required namespace value from the WSDL description document, or from other available documentation for the service. The NAMESPACE clause applies only to SOAP functions and procedures. The default namespace value is the procedure's URI, up to, but not including, the optional path component and excluding any user and password values.

## HTTPS requests

To issue a secure HTTPS request, the client must have access to the server's certificate, or the certificate used to sign the server's certificate. This certificate tells SQL Anywhere how to encrypt the request. Certificate values are also required when a request directed to an insecure server might be redirected to a secure one.

There are two ways to provide the certificate information. You can either place the certificate in a file and provide the file name, or you can provide the entire certificate as a string value. You cannot do both.

The certificate attributes are supplied as a string value constructed as key=value pairs separated by semicolons:

*certificate-string* :  
 { **file**=filename | **certificate**=string } ; **company**=company ; **unit**=company-unit ; **name**= common-name

The following keys are available:

Key	Abbreviation	Description
file		The file name of the certificate.
certificate	cert	The certificate itself, Base64 encoded.
company	co	The company specified in the certificate.
unit		The company unit specified in the certificate.
name		The common name specified in the certificate.

For example, the following statement creates a procedure that makes a secure request to a web service located on the same computer as the client:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE test()
  URL 'HTTPS://localhost/myService'
  CERTIFICATE 'file=C:\srv_cert.id;co=iAnywhere;
              unit=SA;name=JohnSmith';
```

Since no TYPE clause was provided, the request is assumed to be of type SOAP:RPC. The server's public certificate is located in the file *C:\srv\_cert.id*.



## Client ports

When accessing web services through a firewall, it is sometimes necessary to tell SQL Anywhere which ports to use when opening a connection to the server. Ordinarily, port numbers are obtained dynamically, and you should rely on the default behavior unless your firewall restricts access to a particular range of ports.

The ClientPort option designates the port number on which the client application communicates using TCP/IP. You can specify a single port number, or a combination of individual port numbers, and ranges of port numbers, as demonstrated in the following example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE test ()
URL 'HTTPS://localhost/mysevice'
CLIENTPORT '5040,5050-5060,5070';
```

It is best to specify a list or a range of port numbers. If you specify a single port number, then only one connection is maintained at a time. In fact, even after closing the one connection, there is a timeout period of several minutes during which no new connection can be made to the same remote server and port. When you specify a list and/or range of port numbers, the application keeps trying port numbers until it finds one to which it can successfully bind.

This feature is similar to the ClientPort network protocol option. See “[ClientPort protocol option \[CPORT\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

## Using proxies

Some web service requests may need to be made through a proxy server. When this is the case, the URL of the proxy server must be supplied using the PROXY clause.

The format of the value is the same as for the URL clause, although any user, password, or path values are ignored:

```
proxy-string :
'{ HTTP | HTTPS }://[ user:password@ ]hostname[ :port ][ /path ]'
```

When a proxy server is specified, SQL Anywhere formats the request and sends it to the proxy server using the supplied proxy URL. The proxy server forwards the request to the final destination, obtains the response, and forwards the response back to SQL Anywhere.

## Logging web service client procedures

Information from web service clients, including HTTP requests and transport data, can be logged to the **web service client log file**. You enable logging to this file by starting the database server with the -zoc server option or by setting the WebClientLogging server property using the sa\_server\_option system procedure. See “[-zoc server option](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*], and “[sa\\_server\\_option system procedure](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

## Modifying HTTP headers

When creating a web service procedure using the CREATE PROCEDURE statement, if you specify an HTTP HEADER name with no colon (:) and no value, the HTTP client application suppresses the header. If you include a colon but do not provide a value, the HTTP client application includes the header name, but no value. For example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE suds(...)
TYPE 'SOAP:RPC'
URL '...'
HEADER 'SOAPAction\nDate\nFrom: ';
```

In this example, the Action and Date HTTP headers, which are automatically generated by SQL Anywhere, are suppressed, and the From header is included but with no value.

Modifying automatically generated headers, can have unexpected results. The following HTTP headers are typically automatically generated and should not be modified without very careful consideration.

HTTP header	Description
Accept-Charset	Always automatically generated. If changed or deleted, may result in unexpected data conversion errors.
ASA-Id	Always automatically generated. Ensures client does not connect to itself (that is to the same server) which may result in deadlock.
Authorization	Automatically generated when URL contains credentials. If changed or deleted, may result in failure of the request. Only BASIC authorization is supported. User and password information should only be included when connecting via HTTPS.
Connection	Connection: close, is always automatically generated. Client does not support persistent connections. Should not be changed or connection may hang.
Host	Always automatically generated. HTTP/1.1 servers are required to respond with 400 Bad Request if an HTTP/1.1 client does not provide a Host header.
Transfer-Encoding	Automatically generated when posting a request in chunk mode. Removing this header or deleting the chunked value will result in failure when the client is using CHUNK mode.
Content-Length	Automatically generated when posting a request and not in chunk mode. This header is required to tell the server the content length of the body. If the content length is wrong the connection may hang or data loss could occur.

## Working with return values and result sets

Web service client calls can be made with either stored functions, or stored procedures. If made from a function, the return type of the function must be of a character data type, such as CHAR, VARCHAR, or LONG VARCHAR. The value returned is the body of the HTTP response. No header information is included. Additional information about the request, including the HTTP status information, is returned by procedures. So, procedures are preferred when access to this additional information is wanted.

### SOAP procedures

The response from a SOAP function is an XML document that contains the SOAP response.

Since SOAP responses are structured XML documents, SQL Anywhere by default attempts to exploit this information and construct a more useful result set. Each of the top-level tags within the returned response document is extracted and used as a column name. The contents of the subtree below each of these tags is used as the row value for that column.

For example, given the SOAP response shown below, SQL Anywhere would construct the shown data set:

```
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope
  xmlns:SOAPSDK1="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns:SOAPSDK2="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:SOAPSDK3="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/"
  xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <ElizaResponse xmlns:SOAPSDK4="SoapInterop">
      <Eliza>Hi, I'm Eliza. Nice to meet you.</Eliza>
    </ElizaResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>
```

<b>Eliza</b>
Hi, I'm Eliza. Nice to meet you.

In this example, the response document is delimited by the ElizaResponse tags that appear within the SOAP-ENV:Body tags.

Result sets have as many columns as there are top-level tags. This result set has only one column because there is only one top-level tag in the SOAP response. This single top-level tag, Eliza, becomes the name of the column.

### XML processing facilities

Information within XML result sets, including SOAP responses, can also be accessed using the built-in Open XML processing capabilities.

The following example uses the OPENXML procedure to extract portions of a SOAP response. This example uses a web service to expose the contents of the SYSWEBSERVICE table as a SOAP service:

```
CREATE SERVICE get_webservices
TYPE 'SOAP'
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS SELECT * FROM SYSWEBSERVICE;
```

The following stored function, which must be created in a second SQL Anywhere database, issues a call to this web service. The return value of this function is the entire SOAP response document. The response is in the .NET DataSet format, as DNET is the default SOAP service format.

```
CREATE FUNCTION get_webservices()
RETURNS LONG VARCHAR
URL 'HTTP://localhost/get_webservices'
TYPE 'SOAP:DOC';
```

The following statement demonstrates how you can use the OPENXML procedure to extract two columns of the result set. The *service\_name* and *secure\_required* columns indicate which SOAP services are secure and where HTTPS is required.

```
SELECT *
FROM openxml( get_webservices(), '//row' )
WITH ( "Name"      char(128) 'service_name',
      "Secure?"   char(1)   'secure_required' );
```

This statement works by selecting the decedents of the *row* node. The WITH clause constructs the result set based on the two elements of interest. Assuming only the *get\_webservices* service exists, this function returns the following result set:

Name	Secure?
get_webservices	N

For more information about the XML processing facilities available in SQL Anywhere, see [“Using XML in the database” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Usage\]](#).

**Other types of procedures**

Procedures of other types return all the information about a response in a two-column result set. This result set includes the response status, header information and body. The first column, is named Attribute and the second Value. Both are of data type LONG VARCHAR.

The result set has one row for each of the response header fields, and a row for the HTTP status line (Status attribute) and a row for the response body (Body attribute).

The following example represents a typical response:

Attribute	Value
Status	HTTP /1.0 200 OK
Body	<!DOCTYPE HTML ... ><HTML> ... </HTML>
Content-Type	text/html
Server	GWS/2.1
Content-Length	2234
Date	Mon, 18 Oct 2004, 16:00:00 GMT

## Selecting from result sets

The SELECT statement is used to retrieve values from results sets. Once retrieved, these values can be stored in tables or used to set variables.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE test( INOUT parm CHAR(128) )
URL 'HTTP://localhost/test'
TYPE 'HTTP';
```

Because it is of type HTTP, this procedure returns the two-column result set described in the previous section. In the first column is an attribute name; in the second column the attribute value. The keywords are as in the HTTP response header fields. A Body attribute contains the body of the message, which is typically an HTML document.

One approach is to insert the result sets into a table, such as the following one:

```
CREATE TABLE StoredResults(
    Attribute LONG VARCHAR,
    Value      LONG VARCHAR
);
```

Result sets can be inserted into this table as follows:

```
INSERT INTO StoredResults SELECT *
FROM test('Storing into a table')
WITH (Attribute LONG VARCHAR, Value LONG VARCHAR);
```

You can add clauses according to the usual syntax of the SELECT statement. For example, if you want only a specific row of the result set you can add a WHERE clause to limit the results of the select to only one row:

```
SELECT Value
FROM test('Calling test for the Status Code')
WITH (Attribute LONG VARCHAR, Value LONG VARCHAR)
WHERE Attribute = 'Status';
```

This statement selects only the status information from the result set. It can be used to verify that the call was successful.

## Using parameters

Stored functions and stored procedures that act as web service clients can be declared with parameters, just like other types of function or procedures. These parameter values, unless used during parameter substitution, are passed as part of the HTTP or SOAP request.

In addition, parameters can be used to replace placeholders within the body of the stored function or stored procedure at the time the function or procedure is called. If no placeholders for a particular variable exist, the parameter and its value are passed as part of the request. Parameters and values used for substitution in this manner are not passed as part of the web service request.

## Passed parameters

All parameters to a function or procedure, unless used during parameter substitution, are passed as part of the web service request. The format in which they are passed depends on the type of the web service request.

### HTTP requests

Parameters to requests of type HTTP:GET are encoded in the URL. For example, the following procedure declares two parameters:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE test ( a INTEGER, b CHAR(128) )
URL 'HTTP://localhost/mybservice'
TYPE 'HTTP:GET';
```

If this procedure is invoked with the two values 123 and 'xyz', then the URL used for the request is equivalent to that shown below:

```
HTTP://localhost/mybservice?a=123&b=xyz
```

If the type is HTTP:POST, the parameters and their values instead become part of the body of the request. In the case of the two parameter and values, the following text appears, after the headers, in the body of the HTTP request:

```
a=123&b=xyz
```

### SOAP requests

Parameters passed to SOAP requests are bundled as part of the request body, as required by the SOAP specification:

```
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope
  xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:m="http://localhost">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <m:test>
      <m:a>123</m:a>
      <m:b>abc</m:b>
    </m:test>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>
```

## Parameter substitution

Declared parameters to the stored procedure or stored function are automatically substituted for placeholders within the stored function or stored procedure definition each time the procedure or function is executed. Any substrings that contain an exclamation mark (!) followed by the name of one of the declared parameters are replaced by that parameter's value.

For example, the following procedure definition permits the entire URL to be passed as a parameter. Different values can be used each time this procedure is called.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE test ( url CHAR(128) )
URL '!url'
TYPE 'HTTP:POST';
```

For example, you could then use the procedure as follows:

```
CALL test ( 'HTTP://localhost/myservice' );
```

### Hiding user and password values

One useful application of parameter substitution is to avoid making sensitive values, such as user names and passwords, part of a web service client function or procedure definition. When such values are specified as literals in the procedure or function definition, they are stored in the system tables, making them readily accessible to all users of the database. Passing these values as parameters circumvents this problem.

For example, the following procedure definition includes the user name and password as plain text as part of the procedure definition:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE test
URL 'HTTP://dba:sql@localhost/myservice';
```

To avoid this problem, you can declare user and password as parameters. Doing so permits the user and password values to be supplied only when the procedure is invoked. For example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE test ( uid CHAR(128), pwd CHAR(128) )
URL 'HTTP://!uid:!pwd@localhost/myservice';
```

This procedure is called as follows:

```
CALL test ( 'dba', 'sql' );
```

As another example, you can use parameter substitution to pass encryption certificates from a file and pass them to a stored procedure or stored function:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE secure( cert LONG VARCHAR )
URL 'https://localhost/secure'
TYPE 'HTTP:GET'
CERTIFICATE 'cert=!cert;company=test;unit=test;name=RSA Server';
```

When you call this procedure, you supply the certificate as a string. In the following example call, the certificate is read from a file. This is done for illustration only, as the certificate can be read directly from a file using the **file=** keyword for the CERTIFICATE clause.

```
CALL secure( xp_read_file('install-dir\bin32\rsaserver.id') );
```

## Escaping the ! character

Because the exclamation mark (!) is used to identify placeholders for parameter substitution in the context of web service client stored functions and stored procedures, it must be escaped whenever you want to include this character as part of any of the procedure attribute strings string. To do so, prefix the exclamation mark with a second exclamation mark. So, all occurrences of !! in strings within a web service client or web service function definition are replaced by !.

Parameter names used as placeholders must contain only alphanumeric characters. In addition, placeholders must be followed by a non-alphanumeric character to avoid ambiguity. Placeholders with no matching parameter name are automatically deleted. For example, the parameter size would not be substituted for the placeholder in the following procedure:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE orderitem ( size CHAR(18) )
URL 'HTTP://salesserver/order?size=!sizeXL'
TYPE 'SOAP:RPC';
```

Instead, !sizeXL is always deleted because it is a valid placeholder for which there is no matching parameter.

## Parameter data type conversion

Parameter values that are not of character or binary data types are converted to a string representation before being added to the request. This process is equivalent to casting the value to a character type. The conversion is done in accordance with the data type formatting option settings at the time the function or procedure is invoked. In particular, the conversion can be affected by such options as precision, scale, and timestamp\_format.



## Working with structured data types

### XML return values

The SQL Anywhere server as a web service client may interface to a web service using a function or a procedure.

For simple return data types, a string representation within a result set may suffice. In such a case, the use of a stored procedure may be warranted.

The use of web service functions are a better choice when returning complex data such as arrays or structures. For function declarations, the RETURN clause can specify an XML data type. The returned XML can be parsed using OPENXML to extract the elements of interest.

Note that a return of XML data such as dateTime will be rendered within the result set verbatim. For example, if a TIMESTAMP column was included within a result set, it would be formatted as an XML dateTime string (2006-12-25T12:00:00.000-05:00) not as a string (2006-12-25 12:00:00.000).

### XML parameter values

The SQL Anywhere XML data type is supported for use as a parameter within web service functions and procedures. For simple types, the parameter element is automatically constructed when generating the SOAP request body. However, for parameters of type XML, this cannot be done since the XML representation of the element may require attributes that provide additional data. Therefore, when generating the XML for a parameter whose data type is XML, the root element name must correspond to the parameter name.

```
<inputHexBinary xsi:type="xsd:hexBinary">414243</inputHexBinary>
```

The XML type demonstrates how to send a parameter as a hexBinary XML type. The SOAP endpoint expects that the parameter name (or in XML terms, the root element name) is "inputHexBinary".

### Cookbook constants

Knowledge of how SQL Anywhere references namespaces is required to construct complex structures and arrays. The prefixes listed here correspond to the namespace declarations generated for a SQL Anywhere SOAP request envelope.

SQL Anywhere XML Prefix	Namespace
xsd	http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema
xsi	http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance
SOAP-ENC	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/
m	namespace as defined in the NAMESPACE clause

### Complex data type examples

The following three examples demonstrate how to create web service client functions taking parameters that represent an array, a structure, and an array of structures. The examples are designed to issue requests to the Microsoft SOAP Toolkit 3.0 Round 2 Interoperability test server (<http://mssoapinterop.org/stkV3>). The web

service functions will communicate to SOAP operations (or RPC function names) named echoFloatArray, echoStruct, and echoStructArray respectively. The common namespace used for Interoperability testing is "http://soapinterop.org/", allowing a given function to test against alternative Interoperability servers simply by changing the URL clause to the chosen SOAP endpoint.

All three examples use a table to generate the XML data. The following shows how to set up that table.

```
CREATE LOCAL TEMPORARY TABLE SoapData
(
    seqno INT DEFAULT AUTOINCREMENT,
    i INT,
    f FLOAT,
    s LONG VARCHAR
) ON COMMIT PRESERVE ROWS;

INSERT INTO SoapData (i,f,s)
VALUES (99,99.999,'Ninety-Nine');

INSERT INTO SoapData (i,f,s)
VALUES (199,199.999,'Hundred and Ninety-Nine');
```

The following three functions send SOAP requests to the Interoperability server. Note that this sample issues requests to the Microsoft Interop server:

```
CALL sa_make_object('function', 'echoFloatArray');
ALTER FUNCTION echoFloatArray( inputFloatArray XML )
RETURNS XML
URL 'http://msoapinterop.org/stkV3/Interop.wsdl'
HEADER 'SOAPAction:"http://soapinterop.org/'
NAMESPACE 'http://soapinterop.org/';

CALL sa_make_object('function', 'echoStruct');
ALTER FUNCTION echoStruct( inputStruct XML )
RETURNS XML
URL 'http://msoapinterop.org/stkV3/Interop.wsdl'
HEADER 'SOAPAction:"http://soapinterop.org/'
NAMESPACE 'http://soapinterop.org/';

CALL sa_make_object('function', 'echoStructArray');
ALTER FUNCTION echoStructArray( inputStructArray XML )
RETURNS XML
URL 'http://msoapinterop.org/stkV3/Interop.wsdl'
HEADER 'SOAPAction:"http://soapinterop.org/'
NAMESPACE 'http://soapinterop.org/';
```

Finally, the three example statements along with the XML representation of their parameters are presented:

1. The parameters in the following example represent an array.

```
SELECT echoFloatArray(
    XMLELEMENT( 'inputFloatArray',
        XMLATTRIBUTES( 'xsd:float[]' as "SOAP-ENC:arrayType" ),
        (
            SELECT XMLAGG( XMLELEMENT( 'number', f ) ORDER BY seqno )
            FROM SoapData
        )
    )
);
```

The stored procedure echoFloatArray will send the following XML to the Interoperability server.

```
<inputFloatArray SOAP-ENC:arrayType="xsd:float[2]">
<number>99.9990005493164</number>
<number>199.998992919922</number>
</inputFloatArray>
```

The response from the Interoperability server is shown below.

```
'<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="no"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope
  xmlns:SOAPSDK1="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns:SOAPSDK2="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:SOAPSDK3="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/"
  xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body
    SOAP-ENV:encodingStyle="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/">
    <SOAPSDK4:echoFloatArrayResponse
      xmlns:SOAPSDK4="http://soapinterop.org/">
      <Result SOAPSDK3:arrayType="SOAPSDK1:float[2]"
        SOAPSDK3:offset="[0]"
        SOAPSDK2:type="SOAPSDK3:Array">
        <SOAPSDK3:float>99.9990005493164</SOAPSDK3:float>
        <SOAPSDK3:float>199.998992919922</SOAPSDK3:float>
      </Result>
    </SOAPSDK4:echoFloatArrayResponse>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>'
```

If the response was stored in a variable, then it can be parsed using OPENXML.

```
SELECT * FROM openxml( resp,'//*:Result/*' )
WITH ( varFloat FLOAT 'text()' );
```

varFloat
99.9990005493
199.9989929199

- The parameters in the following example represent a structure.

```
SELECT echoStruct(
  XMLELEMENT('inputStruct',
    (
      SELECT XMLFOREST( s as varString,
                       i as varInt,
                       f as varFloat )
      FROM SoapData
      WHERE seqno=1
    )
  );
```

The stored procedure echoStruct will send the following XML to the Interoperability server.

```
<inputStruct>
  <varString>Ninety-Nine</varString>
  <varInt>99</varInt>
  <varFloat>99.9990005493164</varFloat>
</inputStruct>
```

The response from the Interoperability server is shown below.

```
'<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="no"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope
  xmlns:SOAPSDK1="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns:SOAPSDK2="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:SOAPSDK3="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/"
  xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body
    SOAP-ENV:encodingStyle="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/"
    <SOAPSDK4:echoStructResponse
      xmlns:SOAPSDK4="http://soapinterop.org/"
      <Result href="#idl"/>
    </SOAPSDK4:echoStructResponse>
    <SOAPSDK5:SOAPStruct
      xmlns:SOAPSDK5="http://soapinterop.org/xsd"
      id="idl"
      SOAPSDK3:root="0"
      SOAPSDK2:type="SOAPSDK5:SOAPStruct">
      <varString>Ninety-Nine</varString>
      <varInt>99</varInt>
      <varFloat>99.9990005493164</varFloat>
    </SOAPSDK5:SOAPStruct>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>'
```

If the response was stored in a variable, then it can be parsed using OPENXML.

```
SELECT * FROM openxml( resp, '/*:Body/*:SOAPStruct' )
WITH (
  varString LONG VARCHAR 'varString',
  varInt INT 'varInt',
  varFloat FLOAT 'varFloat' );
```

varString	varInt	varFloat
Ninety-Nine	99	99.9990005493

3. The parameters in the following example represent an array of structures.

```
SELECT echoStructArray(
  XMLELEMENT( 'inputStructArray',
    XMLATTRIBUTES( 'http://soapinterop.org/xsd' AS "xmlns:q2",
      'q2:SOAPStruct[2]' AS "SOAP-ENC:arrayType" ),
    (
      SELECT XMLAGG(
        XMLElement( 'q2:SOAPStruct',
          XMLFOREST( s as varString,
            i as varInt,
            f as varFloat )
        )
      )
    ORDER BY seqno
  )
  FROM SoapData
);
```

The stored procedure echoFloatArray will send the following XML to the Interoperability server.

```
<inputStructArray xmlns:q2="http://soapinterop.org/xsd"
  SOAP-ENC:arrayType="q2:SOAPStruct[2]">
  <q2:SOAPStruct>
    <varString>Ninety-Nine</varString>
```

```

    <varInt>99</varInt>
    <varFloat>99.9990005493164</varFloat>
  </q2:SOAPStruct>
<q2:SOAPStruct>
  <varString>Hundred and Ninety-Nine</varString>
  <varInt>199</varInt>
  <varFloat>199.998992919922</varFloat>
</q2:SOAPStruct>
</inputStructArray>

```

The response from the Interoperability server is shown below.

```

'<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="no"?>
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope
  xmlns:SOAPSDK1="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns:SOAPSDK2="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:SOAPSDK3="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/"
  xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body
    SOAP-ENV:encodingStyle="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/">
    <SOAPSDK4:echoStructArrayResponse
      xmlns:SOAPSDK4="http://soapinterop.org/"
      <Result xmlns:SOAPSDK5="http://soapinterop.org/xsd"
        SOAPSDK3:arrayType="SOAPSDK5:SOAPStruct[2]"
        SOAPSDK3:offset="[0]" SOAPSDK2:type="SOAPSDK3:Array">
        <SOAPSDK5:SOAPStruct href="#id1"/>
        <SOAPSDK5:SOAPStruct href="#id2"/>
      </Result>
    </SOAPSDK4:echoStructArrayResponse>
    <SOAPSDK6:SOAPStruct
      xmlns:SOAPSDK6="http://soapinterop.org/xsd"
      id="id1"
      SOAPSDK3:root="0"
      SOAPSDK2:type="SOAPSDK6:SOAPStruct">
      <varString>Ninety-Nine</varString>
      <varInt>99</varInt>
      <varFloat>99.9990005493164</varFloat>
    </SOAPSDK6:SOAPStruct>
    <SOAPSDK7:SOAPStruct
      xmlns:SOAPSDK7="http://soapinterop.org/xsd"
      id="id2"
      SOAPSDK3:root="0"
      SOAPSDK2:type="SOAPSDK7:SOAPStruct">
      <varString>Hundred and Ninety-Nine</varString>
      <varInt>199</varInt>
      <varFloat>199.998992919922</varFloat>
    </SOAPSDK7:SOAPStruct>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>'

```

If the response was stored in a variable, then it can be parsed using OPENXML.

```

SELECT * FROM openxml( resp,'//*:Body/*:SOAPStruct' )
WITH (
  varString LONG VARCHAR 'varString',
  varInt INT 'varInt',
  varFloat FLOAT 'varFloat' );

```

varString	varInt	varFloat
Ninety-Nine	99	99.9990005493

<b>varString</b>	<b>varInt</b>	<b>varFloat</b>
Hundred and Ninety-Nine	199	199.9989929199

## Working with variables

Variables in HTTP requests come from one of two sources. First, the URL can include a query string, which includes various name=value pairs. HTTP GET requests are formatted in this manner. Here is an example of a URL that contains a query string.

```
http://localhost/gallery?picture=sunset.jpg
```

The second way is through the URL path. Setting URL PATH to either ON or ELEMENTS causes the portion of the path following the service name to be interpreted as variable values. This option allows URLs to appear to be requesting a file in a particular directory, as would be the case on a traditional file-based web site, rather than something stored inside a database. The following is an example.

```
http://localhost/gallery/sunset.jpg
```

This URL appears to request the file *sunset.jpg* from a directory named gallery. In fact, the gallery service receives this string as a parameter (using it, perhaps, to retrieve a picture from a database table).

The parameter passed in HTTP requests depends on the setting of URL PATH.

- **OFF** No path parameters are permitted after the service name.
- **ON** All path elements after the service name are assigned to the variable URL.
- **ELEMENTS** The remainder of the URL path is split at the slash characters into a list of up to 10 elements. These values are assigned the variables URL1, URL2, URL3, ..., URL10. If there are fewer than 10 values, the remaining variables are set to NULL. Specifying more than ten variables causes an error.

Apart from the location in which they are defined, there is no difference between variables. You access and use all HTTP variables the same way. For example, the values of variables such as url1 are accessed in the same way as parameters that appear as part of a query, such as **?picture=sunset.jpg**.

### Accessing variables

There are two main ways to access variables. The first is to mention variables in the statement of the service declaration. For example, the following statement passes the value of multiple variables to the ShowTable stored procedure:

```
CREATE SERVICE ShowTable
  TYPE 'RAW'
  AUTHORIZATION ON
  AS CALL ShowTable( :user_name, :table_name, :limit, :start );
```

The other way is to use the built-in functions NEXT\_HTTP\_VARIABLE and HTTP\_VARIABLE within the stored procedure that handles the request. If you do not know which variables are defined, you can use the NEXT\_HTTP\_VARIABLE to find out. The HTTP\_VARIABLE function returns the variable values.

The NEXT\_HTTP\_VARIABLE function allows you to iterate through the names of the defined variables. The first time you call it, you pass in the NULL value. This returns the name of one variable. Calling it subsequent times, each time passing in the name of the previous variable, returns the next variable name. When the name of the last variable is passed to this function, it returns NULL.

Iterating through the variable names in this manner guarantees that each variable name is returned exactly once. However, the order that the values are returned may not be the same as the order that they appear in the request. In addition, if you iterate through the names a second time, they can be returned in a different order.

To get the value of each variable, use the HTTP\_VARIABLE function. The first parameter is the name of the variable. Additional parameters are optional. In the case that multiple values were supplied for a variable, the function returns the first value if supplied with only one parameter. Supplying an integer as the second parameter allows you to retrieve additional values.

The third parameter allows you to retrieve variable header-field values from multi-part requests. Supply the name of a header field to retrieve its value. For example, the following SQL statements retrieve three variable values, then retrieve the header-field values of the image variable.

```
SET v_id = HTTP_VARIABLE( 'ID' );
SET v_title = HTTP_VARIABLE( 'Title' );
SET v_descr = HTTP_VARIABLE( 'descr' );

SET v_name = HTTP_VARIABLE( 'image', NULL, 'Content-Disposition' );
SET v_type = HTTP_VARIABLE( 'image', NULL, 'Content-Type' );
SET v_image = HTTP_VARIABLE( 'image', NULL, '@BINARY' );
```

Here is an example that uses the HTTP\_VARIABLE function to retrieve the values associated with the variables. It is a modified version of the ShowSalesOrderDetail service described in an earlier section.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE ShowDetail()
BEGIN
  DECLARE v_customer_id LONG VARCHAR;
  DECLARE v_product_id LONG VARCHAR;
  SET v_customer_id = HTTP_VARIABLE( 'customer_id' );
  SET v_product_id = HTTP_VARIABLE( 'product_id' );
  CALL ShowSalesOrderDetail( v_customer_id, v_product_id );
END;
```

The service that invokes the stored procedure follows:

```
CREATE SERVICE ShowDetail
TYPE 'HTML'
URL PATH OFF
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS CALL ShowDetail();
```

To test the service, open a web browser and supply the following URL:

[http://localhost:80/demo/ShowDetail?product\\_id=300&customer\\_id=101](http://localhost:80/demo/ShowDetail?product_id=300&customer_id=101)

For more information about parameter passing, see “Understanding how URLs are interpreted” on page 861 and “Web services functions” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].



# Working with HTTP headers

## Server side

When creating HTTP web service client procedures, use this clause to add, modify, or delete HTTP request header entries. The specification of headers closely resembles the format specified in RFC2616 Hypertext Transfer Protocol — HTTP/1.1, and RFC822 Standard for ARPA Internet Text Messages, including the fact that only printable ASCII characters can be specified for HTTP headers, and they are case-insensitive. Following are a few key points regarding HTTP header specification:

- Header/value pairs can be delimited by `\n` or `\x0d\n`, specifying Line Feed (<LF>), or Carriage Return and Line Feed(<CR><LF>), respectively.
- A header is delimited from its value using a colon (:), and therefore cannot contain a colon.
- A header followed by `:\n`, or an end of line, specifies a header with no value, as does a header with no colon or value after it. For example, `HEADER 'Date '`, specifies that the Date header should not be included. Suppressing headers, or their values, can cause unexpected results. See [“Modifying HTTP headers” on page 903](#).
- Folding of long header values is supported, provided one or more white spaces immediately follow the `\n`. For example, the following HEADER specification, and resulting HTTP output, are semantically equivalent:

```
HEADER 'heading1: This long value\n is a really long value for heading1\n
heading2:shortvalue'
```

```
HEADER 'heading1:This long value is a really long value for
heading1<CR><LF>
heading2:shortvalue<CR><LF>'
```

- Multiple contiguous white spaces, including folding, results in a single white space.
- Parameter substitution is supported for this clause.

This example shows how to add static user-defined headers:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE http_client()
  URL 'http://localhost/getdata'
  TYPE 'http:get'
  HEADER 'UserHeader1:value1\nUserHeader2:value2';
```

This example shows how to add parameter-substituted user-defined headers:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE http_client( headers LONG VARCHAR )
  URL 'http://localhost/getdata'
  TYPE 'http:get'
  HEADER '!headers';

CALL http_client( 'NewHeader1:value1\nNewHeader2:value2' );
```

## Client side

Headers in HTTP requests can be obtained using a combination of the `NEXT_HTTP_HEADER` and `HTTP_HEADER` functions. The `NEXT_HTTP_HEADER` function iterates through the HTTP headers included within a request and returns the next HTTP header name. Calling it with `NULL` causes it to return

the name of the first header. Subsequent headers are retrieved by passing the function the name of the previous header. This function returns NULL when called with the name of the last header.

Calling this function repeatedly returns all the header fields exactly once, but not necessarily in the order that they appear in the HTTP request.

The HTTP\_HEADER function returns the value of the named HTTP header field, or NULL if not called from an HTTP service. It is used when processing an HTTP request via a web service. If a header for the given field name does not exist, the return value is NULL.

Here is a table of some typical HTTP headers and values.

Header Name	Header Value
Accept	image/gif, image/x-xbitmap, image/jpeg, image/pjpeg, application/x-shockwave-flash, application/vnd.ms-excel, application/vnd.ms-powerpoint, application/msword, */*
Accept-Language	en-us
UA-CPU	x86
Accept-Encoding	gzip, deflate
User-Agent	Mozilla/4.0 (compatible; MSIE 7.0; Windows NT 5.2; WOW64; SV1; .NET CLR 2.0.50727)
Host	localhost
Connection	Keep-Alive
@HttpMethod	GET
@HttpURI	/demo/ShowHTTPHeaders
@HttpVersion	HTTP/1.1

To get the value of each header, use the NEXT\_HTTP\_HEADER function to get the name of the header and then use the HTTP\_HEADER function to get its value. The following example illustrates how to do this.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE HTTPHeaderExample()
RESULT ( html_string LONG VARCHAR )
BEGIN
  declare header_name long varchar;
  declare header_value long varchar;
  declare table_rows XML;
  set header_name = NULL;
  set table_rows = NULL;
header_loop:
  LOOP
    SET header_name = NEXT_HTTP_HEADER( header_name );
    IF header_name IS NULL THEN
      LEAVE header_loop
```

```

END IF;
SET header_value = HTTP_HEADER( header_name );
-- Format header name and value into an HTML table row
SET table_rows = table_rows ||
    XMLELEMENT( name "tr",
        XMLATTRIBUTES( 'left' AS "align",
            'top' AS "valign" ),
        XMLELEMENT( name "td", header_name ),
        XMLELEMENT( name "td", header_value ) );

END LOOP;
SELECT XMLELEMENT( name "table",
    XMLATTRIBUTES( '' AS "BORDER",
        '10' AS "CELLPADDING",
        '0' AS "CELLSPACING" ),
    XMLELEMENT( name "th",
        XMLATTRIBUTES( 'left' AS "align",
            'top' AS "valign" ),
            'Header Name' ),
    XMLELEMENT( name "th",
        XMLATTRIBUTES( 'left' AS "align",
            'top' AS "valign" ),
            'Header Value' ),
    table_rows );

END;

```

This example formats the header names and values into an HTML table. The following service can be defined to show how this sample procedure works.

```

CREATE SERVICE ShowHTTPHeaders
TYPE 'RAW'
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS CALL HTTPHeaderExample();

```

To test the service, open a web browser and supply the following URL:

<http://localhost:80/demo/ShowHTTPHeaders>

To set the status code (or response code) of the request being processed, use the @HttpStatus special header. See “[sa\\_set\\_http\\_header system procedure](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

For more information about header processing, see “[Web services functions](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

## Using SOAP services

To illustrate many of the features of web services, start with a simple Fahrenheit to Celsius temperature convertor as a sample service.

### To set up a simple web service server

1. Create a database.

```
dbinit ftc
```

2. Start a server using this database.

```
dbsrvll -xs http(port=8082) -n ftc ftc.db
```

3. Connect to the server using Interactive SQL.

```
dbisql -c "UID=DBA;PWD=sql;ENG=ftc"
```

4. Using Interactive SQL, create a web service.

```
CREATE SERVICE FtoCService
TYPE 'SOAP'
FORMAT 'XML'
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS CALL FToCConvertor( :temperature );
```

5. Define the stored procedure that this service is to call to perform the calculation needed to convert from a temperature expressed in degrees Fahrenheit to a temperature expressed in degrees Celsius:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE FToCConvertor( temperature FLOAT )
BEGIN
    SELECT ROUND((temperature - 32.0) * 5.0 / 9.0, 5)
    AS answer;
END;
```

At this point, you now have a SQL Anywhere web service server running and ready to handle requests. The server is listening for SOAP requests on port 8082.

So how can you test this SOAP request server? The simplest way to do this is to use another SQL Anywhere database server to communicate the SOAP request and retrieve the response.

### To send and receive SOAP requests

1. Create another database for use with a second server.

```
dbinit ftc_client
```

2. Start the personal server using this database.

```
dbengll ftc_client.db
```

3. Connect to the personal server using another instance of Interactive SQL.

```
dbisql -c "UID=DBA;PWD=sql;ENG=ftc_client"
```

4. Using Interactive SQL, create a stored procedure.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE FtoC( temperature FLOAT )
  URL 'http://localhost:8082/FtoCService'
  TYPE 'SOAP:DOC';
```

The URL clause is used to reference the SOAP web service. The string 'http://localhost:8082/FtoCService' specifies the URI of the web service that is going to be used. This is a reference to the web server that is listening on port 8082.

The default format used when making a web service request is 'SOAP:RPC'. The format chosen in this example is 'SOAP:DOC', which is similar to 'SOAP:RPC' but allows for a richer set of data types. SOAP requests are always sent as XML documents. The mechanism for sending SOAP requests is 'HTTP:POST'.

5. You need a wrapper for the FtoC stored procedure, so create a second stored procedure.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE FahrenheitToCelsius( temperature FLOAT )
BEGIN
  DECLARE result LONG VARCHAR;
  DECLARE err INTEGER;
  DECLARE crsr CURSOR FOR
    CALL FtoC( temperature );

  OPEN crsr;
  FETCH crsr INTO result, err;
  CLOSE crsr;

  SELECT temperature, Celsius
  FROM OPENXML(result, '//tns:answer', 1, result)
  WITH ("Celsius" FLOAT 'text()');
END;
```

This stored procedure acts as a cover procedure for the call to the web service. The FtoC stored procedure returns a result set that this stored procedure processes. The result set is a single XML string that looks like the following.

```
<tns:rowset xmlns:tns="http://localhost/ftc/FtoCService">
  <tns:row>
    <tns:answer>100</tns:answer>
  </tns:row>
</tns:rowset>
```

The OPENXML function is used to parse the XML that is returned, extracting the value that is the temperature in degrees Celsius.

6. Call the stored procedure to send the request and obtain the response.

```
CALL FahrenheitToCelsius(212);
```

The Fahrenheit temperature and the Celsius equivalent appear.

temperature	Celsius
212	100

At this point, a simple web service running on a SQL Anywhere web server has been demonstrated. As you have seen, other SQL Anywhere servers can communicate with this web server. There has been little control

over the content of the SOAP requests and responses that have traveled between these servers. In the next section, you will see how this simple web service can be extended by adding your own SOAP headers.

**Note**

The web service can be provided by the same database server, but must not reside in the same database as the client function. Attempting to access a web service in the same database results in the error 403 Forbidden.

For information about SOAP header processing, see [“Working with SOAP headers”](#) on page 925.

## Working with SOAP headers

In this section, the simple web service that was introduced in “Using SOAP services” on page 922 is extended to handle SOAP headers.

If you have followed the steps outlined in the previous section, you can skip steps 1 through 4 and go directly to step 5.

### To create a web service server

1. Create a database.

```
dbinit ftc
```

2. Start a server using this database.

```
dsrvll -xs http(port=8082) -n ftc ftc.db
```

3. Connect to the server using Interactive SQL.

```
dbisql -c "UID=DBA;PWD=sql;ENG=ftc"
```

4. Using Interactive SQL, create a web service.

```
CREATE SERVICE FtoCService
TYPE 'SOAP'
FORMAT 'XML'
AUTHORIZATION OFF
USER DBA
AS CALL FToCConvertor( :temperature );
```

5. Define the stored procedure that this service is to call to perform the calculation needed to convert from a temperature expressed in degrees Fahrenheit to a temperature expressed in degrees Celsius. Unlike the example in the previous section, this one includes additional statements to process a special SOAP header. If you have already worked through the example in the previous section, change the CREATE below to ALTER since you are now going to modify the stored procedure.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE FToCConvertor( temperature FLOAT )
BEGIN
  DECLARE hd_key LONG VARCHAR;
  DECLARE hd_entry LONG VARCHAR;
  DECLARE alias LONG VARCHAR;
  DECLARE first_name LONG VARCHAR;
  DECLARE last_name LONG VARCHAR;
  DECLARE xpath LONG VARCHAR;
  DECLARE authinfo LONG VARCHAR;
  DECLARE namespace LONG VARCHAR;
  DECLARE mustUnderstand LONG VARCHAR;
  header_loop:
  LOOP
    SET hd_key = NEXT_SOAP_HEADER( hd_key );
    IF hd_key IS NULL THEN
      -- no more header entries
      LEAVE header_loop;
    END IF;
    IF hd_key = 'Authentication' THEN
      SET hd_entry = SOAP_HEADER( hd_key );
      SET xpath = '/*:' || hd_key || '/*:userName';
      SET namespace = SOAP_HEADER( hd_key, 1,
```

```

        '@namespace' );
SET mustUnderstand = SOAP_HEADER( hd_key, 1,
        'mustUnderstand' );
BEGIN
    -- parse the XML returned in the SOAP header
    DECLARE crsr CURSOR FOR
        SELECT *
        FROM OPENXML( hd_entry, xpath )
            WITH ( alias LONG VARCHAR '@*:alias',
                first_name LONG VARCHAR '*:first/text()',
                last_name LONG VARCHAR '*:last/text()' );
    OPEN crsr;
    FETCH crsr INTO alias, first_name, last_name;
    CLOSE crsr;
END;
-- build a response header
-- based on the pieces from the request header
SET authinfo =
    XMLELEMENT( 'Authentication',
        XMLATTRIBUTES(
            namespace as xmlns,
            alias,
            mustUnderstand ),
        XMLELEMENT( 'first', first_name ),
        XMLELEMENT( 'last', last_name ) );
CALL SA_SET_SOAP_HEADER( 'authinfo', authinfo );
END IF;
END LOOP header_loop;
SELECT ROUND((temperature - 32.0) * 5.0 / 9.0, 5)
AS answer;
END;

```

Headers in SOAP requests can be obtained using a combination of the NEXT\_SOAP\_HEADER and SOAP\_HEADER functions. The NEXT\_SOAP\_HEADER function iterates through the SOAP headers included within a request and returns the next SOAP header name. Calling it with NULL causes it to return the name of the first header. Subsequent headers are retrieved by passing the name of the previous header to the NEXT\_SOAP\_HEADER function. This function returns NULL when called with the name of the last header. The SQL code that does the SOAP header retrieval in the example is this. It exits the loop when NULL is finally returned.

```

SET hd_key = NEXT_SOAP_HEADER( hd_key );
IF hd_key IS NULL THEN
    -- no more header entries
    LEAVE header_loop;
END IF;

```

Calling this function repeatedly returns all the header fields exactly once, but not necessarily in the order they appear in the SOAP request.

The SOAP\_HEADER function returns the value of the named SOAP header field, or NULL if not called from an SOAP service. It is used when processing an SOAP request via a web service. If a header for the given field-name does not exist, the return value is NULL.

The example searches for a SOAP header named Authentication. When it finds this header, it extracts the value for entire SOAP header and the values of the @namespace and mustUnderstand attributes. The SOAP header value might look something like this XML string:

```

<Authentication xmlns="SecretAgent" mustUnderstand="1">
  <userName alias="99">

```



```

    <first>Susan</first>
    <last>Hilton</last>
  </userName>
</Authentication>

```

For this header, the @namespace attribute value would be:SecretAgent

Also, the mustUnderstand attribute value would be:1

The interior of this XML string is parsed with the OPENXML function using an XPath string set to / \*:Authentication/\*:userName.

```

SELECT *
FROM OPENXML( hd_entry, xpath )
WITH ( alias LONG VARCHAR '@*:alias',
      first_name LONG VARCHAR '*:first/text()',
      last_name LONG VARCHAR '*:last/text()' );

```

Using the sample SOAP header value shown above, the SELECT statement would create a result set as follows:

alias	first_name	last_name
99	Susan	Hilton

A cursor is declared on this result set and the three column values are fetched into three variables. At this point, you have all the information of interest that was passed to the web service. You have the temperature in Fahrenheit degrees and you have some additional attributes that were passed to the web service in a SOAP header. So what could you do with this information?

You could look up the name and alias that were provided to see if the person is authorized to use the web service. However, this exercise is not shown in the example.

The next step in the stored procedure is to create a response in the SOAP format. You can build the XML response as follows:

```

SET authinfo =
  XMLELEMENT( 'Authentication',
    XMLATTRIBUTES(
      namespace as xmlns,
      alias,
      mustUnderstand ),
    XMLELEMENT( 'first', first_name ),
    XMLELEMENT( 'last', last_name ) );

```

This builds the following XML string:

```

<Authentication xmlns="SecretAgent" alias="99"
                mustUnderstand="1">
  <first>Susan</first>
  <last>Hilton</last>
</Authentication>

```

Finally, to return the SOAP response to the caller, the SA\_SET\_SOAP\_HEADER stored procedure is used:

```

CALL SA_SET_SOAP_HEADER( 'authinfo', authinfo );

```

As in the example in the previous section, the last step is the calculation that converts from degrees Fahrenheit to degrees Celsius.

At this point, you now have a SQL Anywhere web service server running that can convert temperatures from degrees Fahrenheit to degrees Celsius as in the previous section. The major difference, however, is that it can also process a SOAP header from the caller and send a SOAP response back to the caller.

This is only half of the picture. The next step is to develop an example client that can send SOAP requests and receive SOAP responses.

If you have followed the steps outlined in the previous section, you can skip steps 1 through 3 and go directly to step 4.

### To send and receive SOAP headers

1. Create another database for use with a second server.

```
dbinit ftc_client
```

2. Start the personal server using this database.

```
dbeng11 ftc_client.db
```

3. Connect to the personal server using another instance of Interactive SQL.

```
dbisql -c "UID=DBA;PWD=sql;ENG=ftc_client"
```

4. Using Interactive SQL, create a stored procedure.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE FtoC( temperature FLOAT,  
    INOUT inoutheader LONG VARCHAR,  
    IN inheader LONG VARCHAR )  
    URL 'http://localhost:8082/FtoCService'  
    TYPE 'SOAP:DOC'  
    SOAPHEADER '!inoutheader!inheader';
```

The URL clause is used to reference the SOAP web service. The string 'http://localhost:8082/FtoCService' specifies the URI of the web service that is going to be used. This is a reference to the web server that is listening on port 8082.

The default format used when making a web service request is 'SOAP:RPC'. The format chosen in this example is 'SOAP:DOC', which is similar to 'SOAP:RPC' but allows for a richer set of datatypes. SOAP requests are always sent as XML documents. The mechanism for sending SOAP requests is 'HTTP:POST'.

The substitution variables in a SQL Anywhere client procedure (inoutheader, inheader) must be alphanumeric. If the web service client is declared as a function, all its parameters are IN mode only (they cannot be assigned by the called function). Therefore, OPENXML or other string functions will have to be used to extract the SOAP response header information.

5. You need a wrapper for the FtoC stored procedure so create a second stored procedure as follows. Unlike the example in the previous section, this one includes additional statements to create a special SOAP header, send it in a web service call, and process a response from the web server. If you have already worked through the example in the previous section, change the CREATE below to ALTER since you are now going to modify the stored procedure.

```

CREATE PROCEDURE FahrenheitToCelsius( temperature FLOAT )
BEGIN
  DECLARE io_header LONG VARCHAR;
  DECLARE in_header LONG VARCHAR;
  DECLARE result LONG VARCHAR;
  DECLARE err INTEGER;
  DECLARE crsr CURSOR FOR
    CALL FtoC( temperature, io_header, in_header );
  SET io_header =
    '<Authentication xmlns="SecretAgent" ' ||
      'mustUnderstand="1">' ||
    '<userName alias="99">' ||
    '<first>Susan</first><last>Hilton</last>' ||
    '</userName>' ||
    '</Authentication>';
  SET in_header =
    '<Session xmlns="SomeSession">' ||
    '123456789' ||
    '</Session>';

  MESSAGE 'send, soapheader=' || io_header || in_header;
  OPEN crsr;
  FETCH crsr INTO result, err;
  CLOSE crsr;
  MESSAGE 'receive, soapheader=' || io_header;
  SELECT temperature, Celsius
  FROM OPENXML(result, '//tns:answer', 1, result)
  WITH ("Celsius" FLOAT 'text()');
END;

```

This stored procedure acts as a cover procedure for the call to the web service. The stored procedure has been enhanced from the example in the previous section. It creates two SOAP headers. The first one is this.

```

<Authentication xmlns="SecretAgent"
                  mustUnderstand="1">
  <userName alias="99">
    <first>Susan</first>
    <last>Hilton</last>
  </userName></Authentication>

```

The second one is this.

```

<Session xmlns="SomeSession">123456789</Session>

```

When the cursor is opened, the SOAP request is sent to the web service.

```

<Authentication xmlns="SecretAgent" alias="99"
                  mustUnderstand="1">
  <first>Susan</first>
  <last>Hilton</last>
</Authentication>

```

The FtoC stored procedure returns a result set that this stored procedure will process. The result set will look something like this.

```

<tns:rowset xmlns:tns="http://localhost/ftc/FtoCService">
  <tns:row>
    <tns:answer>100</tns:answer>
  </tns:row>
</tns:rowset>

```

The OPENXML function is used to parse the XML that is returned, extracting the value that is the temperature in degrees Celsius.

6. Call the stored procedure to send the request and obtain the response:

```
CALL FahrenheitToCelsius(212);
```

The Fahrenheit temperature and the Celsius equivalent appears.

temperature	Celsius
212.0	100.0

A SQL Anywhere web service client can be declared as either a function or a procedure. A SQL Anywhere client function declaration effectively restricts all parameters to in mode only (parameters cannot be assigned by the called function). Calling a SQL Anywhere web service function will return the raw SOAP envelope response whereas a procedure returns a result set.

A SOAPHEADER clause has been added to the create/alter procedure/function statements. A SOAP header can be declared as a static constant or can be dynamically set using the parameter substitution mechanism. A web service client function can define one or more in mode substitution parameters whereas a web service client procedure can also define a single inout or out substitution parameter. Therefore a web service client procedure can return the response SOAP header within an out (or inout) substitution parameter. A web service function must parse the response SOAP envelope to obtain the header entries.

The following example illustrates how a client can specify the sending of several header entries with parameters and receiving the response SOAP header data.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE SoapClient(  
    INOUT hd1 VARCHAR,  
    IN hd2 VARCHAR,  
    IN hd3 VARCHAR )  
    URL 'localhost/some_endpoint'  
    SOAPHEADER '!hd1!hd2!hd3';
```

## Notes

- hd1, hd2, and hd3 all specify request header entries. hd1 also returns the aggregate of all response header entries.
- When the SOAP client is called with a SOAP header, it will generate the enclosing SOAP header element. If the SOAPHEADER value is NULL then no SOAP header element is generated.
- If no SOAP header is received, then hd1 is set to NULL.
- The INOUT mode specification of hd1 is redundant since the default mode of a parameter is INOUT.
- The following runtime error results if more than one substitution parameter is specified as an OUT (or INOUT) type: 'Expression has unsupported data type' SQLCODE=-624, ODBC 3 State- "HY000"
- Only a single substitution parameter explicitly used for a SOAPHEADER can be declared as OUT.

## Limitations

- Server side SOAP services cannot currently define input and output SOAP header requirements. Therefore SOAP header metadata is not available in the WSDL output of a DISH service. This means

that a SOAP client toolkit cannot automatically generate SOAP header interfaces for a SQL Anywhere SOAP service endpoint.

- Soap header faults are not supported.

## Working with MIME types

The TYPE clause for a SQL Anywhere web service client procedure or function definition allows the specification of a MIME type. The value of the MIME type specification is used to set the Content-Type request header and set the mode of operation to allow only a single call parameter to populate the body of the request. Only zero or one parameter may remain when making a web service stored procedure (or function) call after parameter substitutions have been processed. Calling a web service procedure with a null or no parameter (after substitutions) will result in a request with no body and a content-length of zero. The behavior has not changed if a MIME type is not specified. Parameter names and values (multiple parameters are permitted) are URL encoded within the body of the HTTP request.

Some typical MIME types include:

- text/plain
- text/html
- text/xml

The following steps illustrate the setting of a MIME type. The first part sets up a web service that can be used to test the setting of MIME type. The second part demonstrates how to set a MIME type.

### Create a web service server

1. Create a database.

```
dbinit echo
```

2. Start a server using this database.

```
dbsrv11 -xs http(port=8082) -n echo echo.db
```

3. Connect to the server using Interactive SQL.

```
dbisql -c "UID=DBA;PWD=sql;ENG=echo"
```

4. Using Interactive SQL, create a web service.

```
CREATE SERVICE EchoService
TYPE 'RAW'
USER DBA
AUTHORIZATION OFF
SECURE OFF
AS CALL Echo(:valueAsXML);
```

5. Define the stored procedure that this service is to call.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE Echo( parm LONG VARCHAR )
BEGIN
    SELECT parm;
END;
```

At this point, you now have a SQL Anywhere web service server running and ready to handle requests. The server is listening for HTTP requests on port 8082.

To use this web server for testing, create another SQL Anywhere database, start it, and connect to it. The following steps show how to do this.

## To send an HTTP request

1. Using the database creation utility, create another database for use with a web service client.

```
dbinit echo_client
```

2. Continuing with Interactive SQL, start this database using the following statement.

```
START DATABASE 'echo_client.db'
AS echo_client;
```

3. Now, connect to the database that has been started on the server echo using the following statement.

```
CONNECT TO 'echo'
DATABASE 'echo_client'
USER 'DBA'
IDENTIFIED BY 'sql';
```

4. Create a stored procedure that will communicate with the EchoService web service.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE setMIME(
  value LONG VARCHAR,
  mimeType LONG VARCHAR,
  urlSpec LONG VARCHAR
)
URL '!urlSpec'
HEADER 'ASA-Id'
TYPE 'HTTP:POST:!mimeType';
```

The URL clause is used to reference the web service. For illustration purposes, the URL will be passed as a parameter to the setMIME procedure.

The TYPE clause indicates that the MIME type will be passed as a parameter to the setMIME procedure. The default format used when making a web service request is 'SOAP:RPC'. The format chosen for making this web service request is 'HTTP:POST'.

5. Call the stored procedure to send the request and obtain the response. The value parameter that is passed is a URL-encoded form of <hello>this is xml</hello>. The media type is application/x-www-form-urlencoded since form-urlencoded is understood by the SQL Anywhere web server. The URL for the web service is included as the final parameter in the call.

```
CALL setMIME('valueAsXML=%3Chello%3Ethis%20is%20xml%3C/hello%3E',
  'application/x-www-form-urlencoded',
  'http://localhost:8082/EchoService');
```

The final parameter specifies the URI of the web service that is listening on port 8082.

The following is representative of the HTTP packet that is sent to the web server.

```
POST /EchoService HTTP/1.0
Date: Sun, 28 Jan 2007 04:04:44 GMT
Host: localhost
Accept-Charset: windows-1252, UTF-8, *
User-Agent: SQLAnywhere/11.0.0.1297
Content-Type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded; charset=windows-1252
Content-Length: 49
ASA-Id: 1055532613:echo_client:echo:968000
Connection: close

valueAsXML=%3Chello%3Ethis%20is%20xml%3C/hello%3E
```

The following is the response from the web server.

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Server: SQLAnywhere/11.0.0.1297
Date: Sun, 28 Jan 2007 04:04:44 GMT
Expires: Sun, 28 Jan 2007 04:04:44 GMT
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=windows-1252
Connection: close
```

```
<hello>this is xml</hello>
```

The result set that is displayed by Interactive SQL is shown next.

Attribute	Value
Status	HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Body	<hello>this is xml</hello>
Server	SQLAnywhere/11.0.0.1297
Date	Sun, 16 Dec 2007 04:04:44 GMT
Expires	Sun, 16 Dec 2007 04:04:44 GMT
Content-Type	text/plain; charset=windows-1252
Connection	close



## Using HTTP sessions

HTTP connections can create an HTTP session to maintain state between HTTP requests.

An **HTTP session** provides the means for persisting the client (typically a web-browser) state with minimal SQL application code. A database connection under a session context is held for the duration of the session's lifetime. Each new HTTP request that is marked with a session ID is serialized (queued) so that each request with the same session ID is sequentially processed using the same database connection. Reusing the database connection provides the means of maintaining state information between HTTP requests. In contrast, sessionless HTTP requests create a new database connection for each request and data from temporary tables and connection variables cannot be shared across requests.

HTTP session management provides support for both URL and cookie state management techniques.

A working example of the HTTP session features is provided in *samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\HTTP\session.sql*.

## Creating an HTTP session

A session is created within a web application using the HTTP option SessionID by calling the `sa_set_http_option` system procedure. A session ID can be any non-null string. Internally, a session key composed of the session ID and database name is generated so that the session key is unique across databases in the event that multiple databases are loaded. The entire session key is limited to 128 characters in length. In this example, a unique session ID is generated and passed to `sa_set_http_option`.

```
DECLARE session_id VARCHAR(64);
DECLARE tm TIMESTAMP;
SET tm=now(*);
SET session_id = 'session_' ||
  CONVERT( VARCHAR, SECONDS(tm)*1000+DATEPART(millisecond,tm));
CALL sa_set_http_option('SessionID', session_id);
```

A web application can obtain the session ID through the SessionID connection property. This property is an empty string if no session ID is defined for the connection (that is, the connection is sessionless).

```
DECLARE session_id VARCHAR(64);
SELECT CONNECTION_PROPERTY( 'SessionID' ) INTO session_id;
```

Once the session is created with the `sa_set_http_option` procedure, a localhost client can access the session with the specified session ID (for example, `session_63315422814117`) running within the database `dbname` running the service `session_service` with the following URL.

```
http://localhost/dbname/session_service?sessionid=session_63315422814117
```

If only one database is connected, then the database name can be omitted.

```
http://localhost/session_service?sessionid=session_63315422814117
```

## Session management with cookies

Cookie state management is supported using the `sa_set_http_header` system procedure with 'Set-Cookie' as the field name. Utilizing cookies for state management negates the need to include the session ID within the URL. Instead, the client provides the session ID within its HTTP cookie header. The downside to using cookies for state management is that cookie support cannot be depended upon in an unregulated environment where clients may have disabled cookies. So, a web application should support both URL and cookie session state management. A URL session ID, as described in the previous section, takes precedence in the event that a client provides both a URL and cookie session ID. It is the web application's responsibility to delete the SessionID cookie in the event that the session expires or that the session is explicitly deleted (for example, `sa_set_http_option('SessionID', NULL)`).

```
DECLARE session_id VARCHAR(64);
DECLARE tm TIMESTAMP;
SET tm=now(*);
SET session_id = 'session_' ||
    CONVERT( VARCHAR, SECONDS(tm)*1000+DATEPART(millisecond,tm));
CALL sa_set_http_option('SessionID', session_id);
CALL sa_set_http_header( 'Set-Cookie',
    'sessionid=' || session_id || ';' ||
    'max-age=60;' ||
    'path=/session;' );
```

## Detection of stale sessions

The SessionID and SessionCreateTime connection properties are useful for determining whether the current connection is within a session context. If either connection property query returns an empty string, then the session does not exist. The SessionCreateTime property provides a metric of when a given session was created. It is immediately defined when the `sa_set_http_option` call is made. The SessionLastTime property provides the time that the session was last used. More specifically, it is the time when the last processed request for the session released the database connection upon termination of that previous request. The SessionLastTime connection property is returned as an empty string when the session is first created until the request (that created the session) releases the connection.

## Deleting or changing the session ID

The session ID can be reset to another value by calling the `sa_set_http_option` system procedure with a new SessionID value. Changing the session ID has the effect of deleting the old session and creating a new session, but it reuses the current database connection so that state information is not lost. A SessionID can be set to NULL (or the empty string) which deletes the session. A SessionID cannot be set to an ID of an existing session (other than its own session ID in which case nothing happens). Trying to set a SessionID to an existing session's session ID will result in an "Invalid setting for HTTP option 'SessionID' SQLCODE=-939" error.

A server receiving a burst of multiple HTTP requests specifying the same session context queues (serializes) the requests on its session queue. In the event that the SessionID is changed or deleted by one (or more) of the requests, any pending requests in the session queue are queued as individual HTTP requests. Each HTTP request will fail to obtain the session because it no longer exists. An HTTP request failing to obtain a session will default to sessionless operation and create a new database connection. The web application

can verify that a request is operating within a session context by checking for a non-empty string value for the `SessionID` or `SessionCreateTime` connection properties. Of course, the web application can check the state of any application specific variables or temporary tables that it uses. Here is an example:

```
IF VAREXISTS( 'state' ) = 0 THEN
    // first invocation by this connection
    CREATE VARIABLE state LONG VARCHAR;
END IF;
```

## Session semantics

An HTTP request can create an HTTP session context. A session created by the request is always immediately instantiated so that any subsequent HTTP requests requiring that session context is queued by the session.

An HTTP request that begins with no session but has created its session context is the creator of its session. The creator request can change or delete its session context where any change or deletion occurs immediately. An HTTP request that begins within a session context can also change or delete its session. A change made to its session immediately creates a pending session that is fully functional with the exception that another HTTP request cannot take ownership (an incoming request requiring the pending session would instead be queued on the session). To summarize, changing or deleting a session of a creator request modifies the current session context immediately, while a request only changing its session modifies its pending session. When an HTTP request finishes, it checks to see if it has a pending session. If a pending session exists, it deletes its current session and replaces it with the pending session. The database connection cached by the session is effectively moved to the new session context and all state data, such as temporary tables and created variables, are preserved.

In all cases, whenever an HTTP session is deleted, any requests within its queue are released and allowed to execute without a session context. Application code expecting that a request is running within a session context must attempt to acquire a valid session context by calling `CONNECTION_PROPERTY('SessionID')`.

```
DECLARE ses_id LONG VARCHAR;
SELECT CONNECTION_PROPERTY( 'SessionID' ) INTO ses_id;
```

If an HTTP request is canceled either intentionally or because of network failure, an existing pending session is deleted preserving the original session context. A creator HTTP request, whether canceled or having terminated normally, changes session state immediately.

## Dropping a connection and server shutdown

Explicitly dropping a database connection that is cached within a session context causes the session to be deleted. Deletion of the session in this manner is considered a cancel operation, and any HTTP requests released from the session queue are in a canceled state. This ensures that the HTTP requests are terminated quickly and signal the user appropriately.

Similarly, a server or database shutdown cancels its appropriate database connections possibly causing canceled HTTP requests.

## Session timeout

The `http_session_timeout` public database option provides variable session timeout control. The option setting is in units of minutes. By default the public setting is 30 minutes. The minimum value is 1 minute and the maximum value is 525600 minutes (365 days). Web applications can change the timeout criteria from within any request that owns the session. A new timeout criteria may impact subsequent requests queued should the session timeout. It is up to the web application to provide the logic to detect if a client is attempting to access a non-existent session. It can do this by examining the `SessionCreateTime` connection property to determine if it is a valid timestamp. The `SessionCreateTime` value will be an empty string if the HTTP request is not associated with an existing session.

## Session scope

Sessions are not persisted across server restarts.

## Licensing

Since the connection associated with a session maintains its hold on a database connection for the life of the connection, it also holds one license seat as well. Web applications should take this into consideration and therefore ensure that stale sessions are deleted appropriately or have an appropriate timeout value set.

For more information about licensing in SQL Anywhere, visit <http://www.sybase.com/detail?id=1056242>.

## Session errors

The error 503 `Service Unavailable` occurs when a new request tries to access a session where more than 16 requests are pending on that session, or an error occurred while queuing the session.

The error 403 `Forbidden` occurs if the client IP address or hostname does not match that of the creator of the session.

A request stipulating a session that does not exist does not implicitly generate an error. It is up to the web application to detect this condition (by checking `SessionID`, `SessionCreateTime`, or `SessionLastTime` connection properties) and do the appropriate action.

## Summary of session connection properties and options

### Connection properties

- **SessionID**

```
SELECT CONNECTION_PROPERTY('SessionID') INTO ses_id;
```

Provides the current session ID within the current database context.

- **SessionCreateTime**

```
SELECT CONNECTION_PROPERTY('SessionCreateTime') INTO ses_create;
```

Provides the timestamp of when the session was created.

- **SessionLastTime**

```
SELECT CONNECTION_PROPERTY('SessionLastTime') INTO ses_last;
```

Provides timestamp of when the session was released by the last request.

- **http\_session\_timeout**

```
SELECT CONNECTION_PROPERTY('http_session_timeout') INTO ses_timeout;
```

Fetches the current session timeout in units of minutes.

## HTTP options

- **'SessionID','value'**

```
CALL sa_set_http_option( 'SessionID', 'my_app_session_1' );
```

Create or change a session context for the current HTTP request. Returns an error if my\_app\_session\_1 is owned by another HTTP request.

- **'SessionID', NULL**

```
CALL sa_set_http_option('SessionID', NULL );
```

If the request comes from the session creator, the current session is deleted immediately; otherwise, the session is marked for deletion. Deleting a session when the request has no session is not an error and has no effect.

Changing a session to a SessionID of the current session (has no pending session) is not an error and has no substantial effect.

Changing a session to a SessionID in use by another HTTP request is an error.

Changing a session when a change is already pending results in the pending session being deleted and new pending session being created.

Changing a session with a pending session back to its original SessionID results in the pending session being deleted.

## HTTP session timeout

- **http\_session\_timeout**

```
SET TEMPORARY OPTION PUBLIC.http_session_timeout=100;
```

Sets the current HTTP session timeout (in minutes). The default is 30 and the range is 1 to 525600 minutes (365 days). See “[http\\_session\\_timeout option \[database\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

## Administration

A web application may require a means by which it can track active session usage within the database server. Session data can be found using the `NEXT_CONNECTION` function call to iterate through the active database connections and checking for session related properties such as `SessionID`. The following SQL code demonstrates this approach:

```
CREATE VARIABLE conn_id LONG VARCHAR;
CREATE VARIABLE the_sessionID LONG VARCHAR;
SELECT NEXT_CONNECTION( NULL, NULL ) INTO conn_id;
conn_loop:
LOOP
  IF conn_id IS NULL THEN
    LEAVE conn_loop;
  END IF;
  SELECT CONNECTION_PROPERTY( 'SessionID', conn_id )
    INTO the_sessionID;
  IF the_sessionID != '' THEN
    PRINT 'conn_id = %1!, SessionID = %2!', conn_id, the_sessionID;
  ELSE
    PRINT 'conn_id = %1!', conn_id;
  END IF;
  SELECT NEXT_CONNECTION( conn_id, NULL ) INTO conn_id;
END LOOP conn_loop;
PRINT '\n';
```

If you examine the database server messages window, you might see output similar to the following.

```
conn_id = 30
conn_id = 29, SessionID = session_63315442223323
conn_id = 28, SessionID = session_63315442220088
conn_id = 25, SessionID = session_63315441867629
```

Explicitly dropping a connection that belongs to a session causes the connection to be closed and the session to be deleted. If the connection being dropped is currently active in servicing an HTTP request, the request is marked for deletion and sent a cancel signal to terminate the request. When the request terminates, the session is deleted and the connection closed. Deleting the session causes any pending requests on that session's queue to be requeued as discussed in [“Deleting or changing the session ID” on page 936](#). In the event the connection is currently inactive, the session is marked for deletion and requeued to the beginning of the session timeout queue. The session and the connection are deleted in the next timeout cycle (normally within 5 seconds). Any session marked for deletion cannot be used by a new HTTP request.

When stopping a database unconditionally, each database connection is dropped, causing all sessions under that database context to be deleted. This is guaranteed since one valid database connection must exist for one session context and a database connection can only be associated with one session at a time. Both the session and database connection must be within the same database context.

For more information about sessions in a database context, see the description of session key in [“Creating an HTTP session” on page 935](#).

## Using automatic character set conversion

By default, character set conversion is performed automatically on outgoing result sets of type text. Result sets of other types, such as binary objects, are not translated. The character set of the request is converted to the database character set, and the result set is converted from the database character set to the client character set, as required, except on binary columns in the result set. When the request lists multiple character sets that it can handle, the server takes the first suitable one from the list.

Character-set conversion can be enabled or disabled by setting the HTTP option `CharsetConversion`. The allowed values are `ON` and `OFF`. The default value is `ON`. The following statement turns automatic character-set conversion off:

```
CALL sa_set_http_option( 'CharsetConversion', 'OFF' );
```

For more information about built-in stored procedures, see “[Alphabetical list of system procedures](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference*].

## Handling errors

When web service requests fail, the database server generates standard errors that appear in your browser. These errors are assigned numbers consistent with the protocol standards.

If the service is a SOAP service, faults are returned to the client as SOAP faults as defined in the SOAP version 1.1 standard:

- When an error in the application handling the request generates a `SQLCODE`, a SOAP Fault is returned with a faultcode of `Client`, possibly with a sub-category, such as `Procedure`. The faultstring element within the SOAP Fault is set to a detailed explanation of the error and a detail element contains the numeric `SQLCODE` value.
- In the event of a transport protocol error, the faultcode is set to either `Client` or `Server`, depending on the error, faultstring is set to the HTTP transport message, such as `404 Not Found`, and the detail element contains the numeric HTTP error value.
- SOAP Fault messages generated due to application errors that return a `SQLCODE` value are returned with an HTTP status of `200 OK`.

If the client cannot be identified as a SOAP client, then the appropriate HTTP error is returned in a generated HTML document.

The following are some of the typical errors that you may encounter:

Number	Name	SOAP fault	Description
301	Moved permanently	Server	The requested page has been permanently moved. The server automatically redirects the request to the new location.
304	Not Modified	Server	The server has decided, based on information in the request, that the requested data has not been modified since the last request and so it does not need to be sent again.
307	Temporary Redirect	Server	The requested page has been moved, but this change may not be permanent. The server automatically redirects the request to the new location.
400	Bad Request	Client.BadRequest	The HTTP request is incomplete or malformed.
401	Authorization Required	Client.Authorization	Authorization is required to use the service, but a valid user name and password were not supplied.
403	Forbidden	Client.Forbidden	You do not have permission to access the database.



Number	Name	SOAP fault	Description
404	Not Found	Client.NotFound	The named database is not running on the server, or the named web service does not exist.
408	Request Timeout	Server.RequestTime-out	The maximum connection idle time was exceeded while receiving the request.
411	HTTP Length Required	Client.LengthRe-quired	The server requires that the client include a Content-Length specification in the request. This typically occurs when uploading data to the server.
413	Entity Too Large	Server	The request exceeds the maximum permitted size.
414	URI Too Large	Server	The length of the URI exceeds the maximum allowed length.
500	Internal Server Error	Server	An internal error occurred. The request could not be processed.
501	Not Implemented	Server	The HTTP request method is not GET, HEAD, or POST.
502	Bad Gateway	Server	The document requested resides on a third-party server and the server received an error from the third-party server.
503	Service Unavail-able	Server	The number of connections exceeds the allowed maximum.

---

# SQL Anywhere Database Tools Interface

This section describes the database tools programming interface for SQL Anywhere.

---

Database tools interface .....	947
Exit codes .....	1013



---

# Database tools interface

## Contents

Introduction to the database tools interface .....	948
Using the database tools interface .....	950
DBTools functions .....	957
DBTools structures .....	967
DBTools enumeration types .....	1007

---

## Introduction to the database tools interface

SQL Anywhere includes Sybase Central and a set of utilities for managing databases. These database management utilities perform tasks such as backing up databases, creating databases, translating transaction logs to SQL, and so on.

### Supported platforms

All the database management utilities use a shared library called the **database tools library**. It is supplied for Windows operating systems and for Linux, Unix, and Mac OS X. For Windows, the name of this library is *dbtool11.dll*. For Linux and Unix, the name of this library is *libdbtool11\_r.so*. For Mac OS X, the name of this library is *libdbtool11\_r.dylib*.

You can develop your own database management utilities or incorporate database management features into your applications by calling the database tools library. This chapter describes the interface to the database tools library. This chapter assumes you are familiar with how to call library routines from the development environment you are using.

The database tools library has functions, or entry points, for each of the database management utilities. In addition, functions must be called before use of other database tools functions and when you have finished using other database tools functions.

### Windows Mobile

The *dbtool11.dll* library is supplied for Windows Mobile, but includes only entry points for DBToolsInit, DBToolsFini, DBRemoteSQL, and DBSynchronizeLog. Other entry points are not provided for Windows Mobile.

### The dbtools.h header file

The dbtools header file included with SQL Anywhere lists the entry points to the DBTools library and also the structures used to pass information to and from the library. The *dbtools.h* file is installed into the *SDK\Include* subdirectory under your SQL Anywhere installation directory. You should consult the *dbtools.h* file for the latest information about the entry points and structure members.

The *dbtools.h* header file includes other files such as:

- **sqlca.h** This is included for resolution of various macros, not for the SQLCA itself.
- **dllapi.h** Defines preprocessor macros for operating-system dependent and language-dependent macros.
- **dbtlvers.h** Defines the `DB_TOOLS_VERSION_NUMBER` preprocessor macro and other version specific macros.

### The sqldef.h header file

The *sqldef.h* header file includes error return values.

### **The dbrmt.h header file**

The *dbrmt.h* header file included with SQL Anywhere describes the DBRemoteSQL entry point in the DBTools library and also the structure used to pass information to and from the DBRemoteSQL entry point. The *dbrmt.h* file is installed into the *SDK\Include* subdirectory under your SQL Anywhere installation directory. You should consult the *dbrmt.h* file for the latest information about the DBRemoteSQL entry point and structure members.

## Using the database tools interface

This section provides an overview of how to develop applications that use the DBTools interface for managing databases.

### Using the import libraries

To use the DBTools functions, you must link your application against a DBTools **import library** that contains the required function definitions.

For Unix systems, no import library is required. Link directly against *libdbtool11.so* (non-threaded) or *libdbtool11\_r.so* (threaded).

#### Import libraries

Import libraries for the DBTools interface are provided with SQL Anywhere for Windows and Windows Mobile. For Windows, they can be found in the *SDK\Lib\x86* and *SDK\Lib\x64* subdirectories under your SQL Anywhere installation directory. For Windows Mobile, the import library can be found in the *SDK\Lib\CE\Arm.50* subdirectory under your SQL Anywhere installation directory. The provided DBTools import libraries are as follows:

Compiler	Library
Microsoft Windows	<i>dbt1stm.lib</i>
Microsoft Windows Mobile	<i>dbtool11.lib</i>

### Starting and finishing the DBTools library

Before using any other DBTools functions, you must call `DBToolsInit`. When you are finished using the DBTools library, you must call `DBToolsFini`.

The primary purpose of the `DBToolsInit` and `DBToolsFini` functions is to allow the DBTools library to load the SQL Anywhere message library. The messages library contains localized versions of all error messages and prompts that DBTools uses internally. If `DBToolsFini` is not called, the reference count of the messages library is not decremented and it will not be unloaded, so be careful to ensure there is a matched pair of `DBToolsInit/DBToolsFini` calls.

The following code fragment illustrates how to initialize and clean up DBTools:

```
// Declarations
a_dbtools_info  info;
short          ret;

//Initialize the a_dbtools_info structure
memset( &info, 0, sizeof( a_dbtools_info) );
info.errorrtn = (MSG_CALLBACK)MyErrorRtn;

// initialize the DBTools library
```



```

ret = DBToolsInit( &info );
if( ret != EXIT_OKAY ) {
    // library initialization failed
    ...
}
// call some DBTools routines ...
...
// finalize the DBTools library
DBToolsFini( &info );

```

## Calling the DBTools functions

All the tools are run by first filling out a structure, and then calling a function (or **entry point**) in the DBTools library. Each entry point takes a pointer to a single structure as argument.

The following example shows how to use the DBBackup function on a Windows operating system.

```

// Initialize the structure
a_backup_db backup_info;
memset( &backup_info, 0, sizeof( backup_info ) );

// Fill out the structure
backup_info.version = DB_TOOLS_VERSION_NUMBER;
backup_info.output_dir = "c:\\\\backup";
backup_info.connectparms = "UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=demo.db";

backup_info.confirmrtn = (MSG_CALLBACK) ConfirmRtn ;
backup_info.errorrtn = (MSG_CALLBACK) ErrorRtn ;
backup_info.msgrtn = (MSG_CALLBACK) MessageRtn ;
backup_info.statusrtn = (MSG_CALLBACK) StatusRtn ;
backup_info.backup_database = TRUE;

// start the backup
DBBackup( &backup_info );

```

For information about the members of the DBTools structures, see [“DBTools structures” on page 967](#).

## Using callback functions

Several elements in DBTools structures are of type MSG\_CALLBACK. These are pointers to callback functions.

### Uses of callback functions

Callback functions allow DBTools functions to return control of operation to the user's calling application. The DBTools library uses callback functions to handle messages sent to the user by the DBTools functions for four purposes:

- **Confirmation** Called when an action needs to be confirmed by the user. For example, if the backup directory does not exist, the tools library asks if it needs to be created.
- **Error message** Called to handle a message when an error occurs, such as when an operation is out of disk space.

- **Information message** Called for the tools to display some message to the user (such as the name of the current table being unloaded).
- **Status information** Called for the tools to display the status of an operation (such as the percentage done when unloading a table).

### Assigning a callback function to a structure

You can directly assign a callback routine to the structure. The following statement is an example using a backup structure:

```
backup_info.errorrtn = (MSG_CALLBACK) MyFunction
```

MSG\_CALLBACK is defined in the *dllapi.h* header file supplied with SQL Anywhere. Tools routines can call back to the calling application with messages that should appear in the appropriate user interface, whether that be a windowing environment, standard output on a character-based system, or other user interface.

### Confirmation callback function example

The following example confirmation routine asks the user to answer YES or NO to a prompt and returns the user's selection:

```
extern short _callback ConfirmRtn(
    char * question )
{
    int ret = IDNO;
    if( question != NULL ) {
        ret = MessageBox( HwndParent, question,
            "Confirm", MB_ICONEXCLAMATION|MB_YESNO );
    }
    return( ret == IDYES );
}
```

### Error callback function example

The following is an example of an error message handling routine, which displays the error message in a window.

```
extern short _callback ErrorRtn(
    char * errorstr )
{
    if( errorstr != NULL ) {
        MessageBox( HwndParent, errorstr, "Backup Error", MB_ICONSTOP|
            MB_OK );
    }
    return( 0 );
}
```

### Message callback function example

A common implementation of a message callback function outputs the message to the screen:

```
extern short _callback MessageRtn(
    char * messagestr )
{
    if( messagestr != NULL ) {
        OutputMessageToWindow( messagestr );
    }
    return( 0 );
}
```

### Status callback function example

A status callback routine is called when a tool needs to display the status of an operation (like the percentage done unloading a table). A common implementation would just output the message to the screen:

```
extern short _callback StatusRtn(
    char * statusstr )
{
    if( statusstr != NULL ) {
        OutputMessageToWindow( statusstr );
        return( 0 );
    }
}
```

## Version numbers and compatibility

Each structure has a member that indicates the version number. You should use this version member to hold the version of the DBTools library that your application was developed against. The current version of the DBTools library is defined when you include the *dbtools.h* header file.

### To assign the current version number to a structure

- Assign the version constant to the version member of the structure before calling the DBTools function. The following line assigns the current version to a backup structure:

```
backup_info.version = DB_TOOLS_VERSION_NUMBER;
```

### Compatibility

The version number allows your application to continue working against newer versions of the DBTools library. The DBTools functions use the version number supplied by your application to allow the application to work, even if new members have been added to the DBTools structure.

When any of the DBTools structures are updated, or when a newer version of the software is released, the version number is augmented. If you use `DB_TOOLS_VERSION_NUMBER` and you rebuild your application with a new version of the DBTools header file, then you must deploy a new version of the DBTools library. If the functionality of your application doesn't change, then you may want to use one of the version-specific macros defined in *dbtivers.h*, so that a library version mismatch does not occur.

## Using bit fields

Many of the DBTools structures use bit fields to hold Boolean information in a compact manner. For example, the backup structure includes the following bit fields:

```
a_bit_field    backup_database : 1;
a_bit_field    backup_logfile  : 1;
a_bit_field    no_confirm     : 1;
a_bit_field    quiet          : 1;
a_bit_field    rename_log     : 1;
a_bit_field    truncate_log   : 1;
a_bit_field    rename_local_log: 1;
a_bit_field    server_backup  : 1;
```

Each bit field is one bit long, indicated by the 1 to the right of the colon in the structure declaration. The specific data type used depends on the value assigned to `a_bit_field`, which is set at the top of `dbtools.h`, and is operating system-dependent.

You assign a value of 0 or 1 to a bit field to pass Boolean information in the structure.

## A DBTools example

You can find this sample and instructions for compiling it in the `samples-dir\SQLAnywhere\DBTools` directory. The sample program itself is in `main.cpp`. The sample illustrates how to use the DBTools library to perform a backup of a database.

```
#define WIN32

#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include "windows.h"
#include "sqldef.h"
#include "dbtools.h"
extern short _callback ConfirmCallback( char * str )
{
    if( MessageBox( NULL, str, "Backup",
        MB_YESNO|MB_ICONQUESTION ) == IDYES )
    {
        return 1;
    }
    return 0;
}
extern short _callback MessageCallback( char * str )
{
    if( str != NULL )
    {
        fprintf( stdout, "%s\n", str );
    }
    return 0;
}
extern short _callback StatusCallback( char * str )
{
    if( str != NULL )
    {
        fprintf( stdout, "%s\n", str );
    }
    return 0;
}
extern short _callback ErrorCallback( char * str )
{
    if( str != NULL )
    {
        fprintf( stdout, "%s\n", str );
    }
    return 0;
}
typedef void (CALLBACK *DBTOOLSPROC)( void * );
typedef short (CALLBACK *DBTOOLSFUNC)( void * );

// Main entry point into the program.
int main( int argc, char * argv[] )
{
    a_dbtools_info dbt_info;
```

```

a_backup_db      backup_info;
char             dir_name[ _MAX_PATH + 1];
char            connect[ 256 ];
HINSTANCE        hinst;
DBTOOLSFUNC     dbbackup;
DBTOOLSFUNC     dbtoolsinit;
DBTOOLSPROC     dbtoolsfini;
short           ret_code;

// Always initialize to 0 so new versions
// of the structure will be compatible.
memset( &dbt_info, 0, sizeof( a_dbtools_info ) );
dbt_info.errorrtn = (MSG_CALLBACK)MessageCallBack;

memset( &backup_info, 0, sizeof( a_backup_db ) );
backup_info.version = DB_TOOLS_VERSION_NUMBER;
backup_info.quiet = 0;
backup_info.no_confirm = 0;
backup_info.confirmrtn = (MSG_CALLBACK)ConfirmCallBack;
backup_info.errorrtn = (MSG_CALLBACK)ErrorCallBack;
backup_info.msgrtn = (MSG_CALLBACK)MessageCallBack;
backup_info.statusrtn = (MSG_CALLBACK)StatusCallBack;
if( argc > 1 )
{
    strncpy( dir_name, argv[1], _MAX_PATH );
}
else
{
    // DBTools does not expect (or like) a trailing slash
    strcpy( dir_name, "c:\\temp" );
}
backup_info.output_dir = dir_name;
if( argc > 2 )
{
    strncpy( connect, argv[2], 255 );
}
else
{
    strcpy( connect, "DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo" );
}
backup_info.connectparms = connect;
backup_info.quiet = 0;
backup_info.no_confirm = 0;
backup_info.backup_database = 1;
backup_info.backup_logfile = 1;
backup_info.rename_log = 0;
backup_info.truncate_log = 0;
hinst = LoadLibrary( "dbtool11.dll" );
if( hinst == NULL )
{
    // Failed
    return EXIT_FAIL;
}
dbbackup = (DBTOOLSFUNC) GetProcAddress( (HMODULE)hinst,
    "_DBBackup@4" );
dbtoolsinit = (DBTOOLSFUNC) GetProcAddress( (HMODULE)hinst,
    "_DBToolsInit@4" );
dbtoolsfini = (DBTOOLSPROC) GetProcAddress( (HMODULE)hinst,
    "_DBToolsFini@4" );
ret_code = (*dbtoolsinit)( &dbt_info );
if( ret_code != EXIT_OKAY ) {
    return ret_code;
}
ret_code = (*dbbackup)( &backup_info );

```

```
    (*dbtoolsfini)( &dbt_info );  
    FreeLibrary( hinst );  
    return ret_code;  
}
```

## DBTools functions

### DBBackup function

Backs up a database. This function is used by the dbbackup utility.

#### Prototype

```
short DBBackup ( const a_backup_db * );
```

#### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_backup\\_db structure” on page 967](#).

#### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

#### Remarks

The DBBackup function manages all client-side database backup tasks.

For a description of these tasks, see [“Backup utility \(dbbackup\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

To perform a server-side backup, use the BACKUP DATABASE statement. See [“BACKUP statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#).

### DBChangeLogName function

Changes the name of the transaction log file. This function is used by the dblog utility.

#### Prototype

```
short DBChangeLogName ( const a_change_log * );
```

#### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_change\\_log structure” on page 969](#).

#### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

#### Remarks

The -t option of the Transaction Log utility (dblog) changes the name of the transaction log. DBChangeLogName provides a programmatic interface to this function.

For a description of the dblog utility, see [“Transaction Log utility \(dblog\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### See also

- [“ALTER DATABASE statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)

## DBCreate function

Creates a database. This function is used by the dbinit utility.

### Prototype

```
short DBCreate ( const a_create_db * );
```

### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_create\\_db structure” on page 971](#).

### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

### Remarks

For information about the dbinit utility, see [“Initialization utility \(dbinit\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### See also

- [“CREATE DATABASE statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)

## DBCreatedVersion function

Determines the version of SQL Anywhere that was used to create a database file, without attempting to start the database. Currently, this function only differentiates between version 10 or 11 and pre-10 databases.

### Prototype

```
short DBCreatedVersion ( a_db_version_info * );
```

### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_db\\_version\\_info structure” on page 975](#).

### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

### Remarks

If the return code indicates success, then the created\_version field of the a\_db\_version\_info structure contains a value of type a\_db\_version indicating which version of SQL Anywhere created the database. For the definition of the possible values, see [“a\\_db\\_version enumeration” on page 1008](#).

Version information is not set if a failing code is returned.



**See also**

- [“CREATE DATABASE statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“a\\_db\\_version\\_info structure” on page 975](#)
- [“a\\_db\\_version enumeration” on page 1008](#)

## DBErase function

Erases a database file and/or transaction log file. This function is used by the dberase utility.

**Prototype**

```
short DBErase ( const an_erase_db * );
```

**Parameters**

A pointer to a structure. See [“an\\_erase\\_db structure” on page 978](#).

**Return value**

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

**Remarks**

For information about the Erase utility and its features, see [“Erase utility \(dberase\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## DBInfo function

Returns information about a database file. This function is used by the dbinfo utility.

**Prototype**

```
short DBInfo ( const a_db_info * );
```

**Parameters**

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_db\\_info structure” on page 973](#).

**Return value**

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

**Remarks**

For information about the Information utility and its features, see [“Information utility \(dbinfo\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

**See also**

- [“DBInfoDump function” on page 960](#)
- [“DBInfoFree function” on page 960](#)
- [“DB\\_PROPERTY function \[System\]” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)

## DBInfoDump function

Returns information about a database file. This function is used by the dbinfo utility when the -u option is used.

### Prototype

```
short DBInfoDump ( const a_db_info * );
```

### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_db\\_info structure” on page 973](#).

### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

### Remarks

For information about the Information utility and its features, see [“Information utility \(dbinfo\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### See also

- [“DBInfo function” on page 959](#)
- [“DBInfoFree function” on page 960](#)
- [“sa\\_table\\_page\\_usage system procedure” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)

## DBInfoFree function

Frees resources after the DBInfoDump function is called.

### Prototype

```
short DBInfoFree ( const a_db_info * );
```

### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_db\\_info structure” on page 973](#).

### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

### Remarks

For information about the Information utility and its features, see [“Information utility \(dbinfo\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### See also

- [“DBInfo function” on page 959](#)
- [“DBInfoDump function” on page 960](#)

## DBLicense function

Modifies or reports the licensing information of the database server.

### Prototype

```
short DBLicense ( const a_db_lic_info * );
```

### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_dblic\\_info structure” on page 976](#).

### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

### Remarks

For information about the Server Licensing utility and its features, see [“Server Licensing utility \(dblic\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## DBRemoteSQL function

Accesses the SQL Remote Message Agent.

### Prototype

```
short DBRemoteSQL( const a_remote_sql * );
```

### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_remote\\_sql structure” on page 979](#).

### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

### Remarks

For information about the features you can access, see [“Message Agent \(dbremote\)” \[SQL Remote\]](#).

### See also

- [“SQL Remote introduction” \[SQL Remote\]](#)

## DBSynchronizeLog function

Synchronize a database with a MobiLink server.

### Prototype

```
short DBSynchronizeLog( const a_sync_db * );
```

### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_sync\\_db structure” on page 985](#).

### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

### Remarks

For information about the features you can access, see [“Initiating synchronization” \[MobiLink - Client Administration\]](#).

### See also

- [“DBTools interface for dbmlsync” \[MobiLink - Client Administration\]](#)

## DBToolsFini function

Decrements the counter and frees resources when an application is finished with the DBTools library.

### Prototype

```
short DBToolsFini ( const a_dbtools_info * );
```

### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_dbtools\\_info structure” on page 977](#).

### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

### Remarks

The DBToolsFini function must be called at the end of any application that uses the DBTools interface. Failure to do so can lead to lost memory resources.

### See also

- [“DBToolsInit function” on page 962](#)

## DBToolsInit function

Prepares the DBTools library for use.

### Prototype

```
short DBToolsInit( const a_dbtools_info * );
```

### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_dbtools\\_info structure” on page 977](#).

**Return value**

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

**Remarks**

The primary purpose of the DBToolsInit function is to load the SQL Anywhere messages library. The messages library contains localized versions of error messages and prompts that DBTools uses internally.

The DBToolsInit function must be called at the start of any application that uses the DBTools interface, before any other DBTools functions. For an example, see [“A DBTools example” on page 954](#).

**See also**

- [“DBToolsFini function” on page 962](#)

## DBToolsVersion function

Returns the version number of the DBTools library.

**Prototype**

```
short DBToolsVersion ( void );
```

**Return value**

A short integer indicating the version number of the DBTools library.

**Remarks**

Use the DBToolsVersion function to check that the DBTools library is not older than one against which your application is developed. While applications can run against newer versions of DBTools, they cannot run against older versions.

**See also**

- [“Version numbers and compatibility” on page 953](#)

## DBTranslateLog function

Translates a transaction log file to SQL. This function is used by the dbtran utility.

**Prototype**

```
short DBTranslateLog ( const a_translate_log * );
```

**Parameters**

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_translate\\_log structure” on page 995](#).

**Return value**

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

### Remarks

For information about the Log Translation utility, see [“Log Translation utility \(dbtran\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## DBTruncateLog function

Truncates a transaction log file. This function is used by the dbbackup utility.

### Prototype

```
short DBTruncateLog ( const a_truncate_log * );
```

### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_truncate\\_log structure” on page 999](#).

### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

### Remarks

For information about the Backup utility, see [“Backup utility \(dbbackup\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### See also

- [“BACKUP statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)

## DBUnload function

Unloads a database. This function is used by the dbunload and dbxtract utilities.

### Prototype

```
short DBUnload ( const an_unload_db * );
```

### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“an\\_unload\\_db structure” on page 1000](#).

### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

### Remarks

For information about the Unload utility, see [“Unload utility \(dbunload\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

For information about the Extraction utility, see [“Extraction utility \(dbxtract\)” \[SQL Remote\]](#).

---

## DBUpgrade function

Upgrades a database file. This function is used by the dbupgrad utility.

### Prototype

```
short DBUpgrade ( const an_upgrade_db * );
```

### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“an\\_upgrade\\_db structure” on page 1004](#).

### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

### Remarks

For information about the Upgrade utility, see [“Upgrade utility \(dbupgrad\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### See also

- [“ALTER DATABASE statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)

## DBValidate function

Validates all or part of a database. This function is used by the dbvalid utility.

### Prototype

```
short DBValidate ( const a_validate_db * );
```

### Parameters

A pointer to a structure. See [“a\\_validate\\_db structure” on page 1005](#).

### Return value

A return code, as listed in [“Software component exit codes” on page 1014](#).

### Remarks

For information about the Validation utility, see [“Validation utility \(dbvalid\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

#### Caution

Validating a table or an entire database should be performed while no connections are making changes to the database; otherwise, spurious errors may be reported indicating some form of database corruption even though no corruption actually exists.

**See also**

- [“VALIDATE statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“sa\\_validate system procedure” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)



## DBTools structures

This section lists the structures that are used to exchange information with the DBTools library. The structures are listed alphabetically. With the exception of the `a_remote_sql` structure, all of these structures are defined in `dbtools.h`. The `a_remote_sql` structure is defined in `dbrmt.h`.

Many of the structure elements correspond to command line options on the corresponding utility. For example, several structures have a member named `quiet`, which can take on values of 0 or 1. This member corresponds to the quiet operation (`-q`) option used by many of the utilities.

### a\_backup\_db structure

Holds the information needed to perform backup tasks using the DBTools library.

#### Syntax

```
typedef struct a_backup_db {
    unsigned short    version;
    const char *      output_dir;
    const char *      connectparms;
    MSG_CALLBACK      confirmrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      errorrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      msggrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      statusrtn;
    a_bit_field       backup_database : 1;
    a_bit_field       backup_logfile : 1;
    a_bit_field       no_confirm : 1;
    a_bit_field       quiet : 1;
    a_bit_field       rename_log : 1;
    a_bit_field       truncate_log : 1;
    a_bit_field       rename_local_log : 1;
    a_bit_field       server_backup : 1;
    const char *      hotlog_filename;
    char              backup_interrupted;
    a_chkpt_log_type  chkpt_log_type;
    a_sql_uint32      page_blocksize;
} a_backup_db;
```

#### Members

Member	Description
Version	DBTools version number.
output_dir	Path to the output directory. For example: <code>"c:\backup"</code>

Member	Description
connectparms	<p>Parameters needed to connect to the database. They take the form of connection strings, such as the following:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db"</pre> <p>The database server would be started by the connection string START parameter. For example:</p> <pre>"START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>A full example connection string including the START parameter:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db;START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>For a list of connection parameters, see <a href="#">“Connection parameters” [SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration]</a>.</p>
confirmrtn	Callback routine for confirming an action.
errorrtn	Callback routine for handling an error message.
msgsrtn	Callback routine for handling an information message.
statusrtn	Callback routine for handling a status message.
backup_database	Back up the database file (1) or not (0).
backup_logfile	Back up the transaction log file (1) or not (0).
no_confirm	Operate with (0) or without (1) confirmation.
quiet	Operate without printing messages (1), or print messages (0).
rename_log	Rename the transaction log.
truncate_log	Delete the transaction log.
rename_local_log	Rename the local backup of the transaction log.
server_backup	When set to 1, indicates backup on server using BACKUP DATABASE. Equivalent to dbbackup -s option.
hotlog_filename	File name for the live backup file.
backup_interrupted	Indicates that the operation was interrupted.

Member	Description
chkpt_log_type	Control copying of checkpoint log. Must be one of BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_COPY, BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_NOCOPY, BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_RECOVER, BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_AUTO, or BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_DEFAULT.
page_blocksize	Number of pages in data blocks. Equivalent to dbbackup -b option. If set to 0, then the default is 128.

**See also**

- [“DBBackup function” on page 957](#)
- [“a\\_db\\_version enumeration” on page 1008](#)
- [“Using callback functions” on page 951](#)

## a\_change\_log structure

Holds the information needed to perform dblog tasks using the DBTools library.

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct a_change_log {
    unsigned short    version;
    const char *      dbname;
    const char *      logname;
    MSG_CALLBACK      errorrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      msggrtn;
    a_bit_field       query_only           : 1;
    a_bit_field       quiet                 : 1;
    a_bit_field       change_mirrorname    : 1;
    a_bit_field       change_logname       : 1;
    a_bit_field       ignore_ltm_trunc     : 1;
    a_bit_field       ignore_remote_trunc  : 1;
    a_bit_field       set_generation_number : 1;
    a_bit_field       ignore_dbsync_trunc  : 1;
    const char *      mirrorname;
    unsigned short    generation_number;
    char *            zap_current_offset;
    char *            zap_starting_offset;
    char *            encryption_key;
} a_change_log;
```

**Members**

Member	Description
version	DBTools version number.
dbname	Database file name.
logname	The name of the transaction log. If set to NULL, there is no log.

Member	Description
errorrtn	Callback routine for handling an error message.
msgsrtn	Callback routine for handling an information message.
query_only	If 1, just display the name of the transaction log. If 0, permit changing of the log name.
quiet	Operate without printing messages (1), or print messages (0).
change_mirrorname	If 1, permit changing of the log mirror name.
change_logname	If 1, permit changing of the transaction log name.
ignore_ltm_trunc	When using the Log Transfer Manager, performs the same function as the dbcc settrunc( 'ltm', 'gen_id', n ) Replication Server function. For information about dbcc, see your Replication Server documentation.
ignore_remote_trunc	For SQL Remote. Resets the offset kept for the purposes of the delete_old_logs option, allowing transaction logs to be deleted when they are no longer needed.
set_generation_number	When using the Log Transfer Manager, used after a backup is restored to set the generation number.
ignore_dbsync_trunc	When using dbmsync, resets the offset kept for the purposes of the delete_old_logs option, allowing transaction logs to be deleted when they are no longer needed.
mirrorname	The new name of the transaction log mirror file.
generation_number	The new generation number. Used together with set_generation_number.
zap_current_offset	Change the current offset to the specified value. This is for use only in resetting a transaction log after an unload and reload to match dbremote or dbmsync settings.
zap_starting_offset	Change the starting offset to the specified value. This is for use only in resetting a transaction log after an unload and reload to match dbremote or dbmsync settings.
encryption_key	The encryption key for the database file.

**See also**

- “DBChangeLogName function” on page 957
- “Using callback functions” on page 951

**a\_create\_db structure**

Holds the information needed to create a database using the DBTools library.

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct a_create_db {
    unsigned short    version;
    const char        *dbname;
    const char        *logname;
    const char        *startline;
    unsigned short    page_size;
    const char        *default_collation;
    const char        *nchar_collation;
    const char        *encoding;
    MSG_CALLBACK      errorrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      msgrtn;

    a_bit_field       blank_pad           : 2;
    a_bit_field       respect_case        : 1;
    a_bit_field       encrypt             : 1;
    a_bit_field       avoid_view_collisions : 1;
    a_bit_field       jconnect            : 1;
    a_bit_field       checksum            : 1;
    a_bit_field       encrypted_tables     : 1;
    a_bit_field       case_sensitivity_use_default : 1;
    char              verbose;
    char              accent_sensitivity;
    const char        *mirrorname;
    const char        *data_store_type;
    const char        *encryption_key;
    const char        *encryption_algorithm;
    char              *dba_uid;
    char              *dba_pwd;
    unsigned int      db_size;
    int               db_size_unit;
} a_create_db;
```

**Members**

Member	Description
version	DBTools version number.
dbname	Database file name.
logname	New transaction log name.

Member	Description
startline	The command line used to start the database server. For example: <pre>"d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>The default start line is used if this member is NULL</p> <p>The following is the default START parameter:  <pre>"dbeng11 -gp page_size -c 10M"</pre></p>
page_size	The page size of the database.
default_collation	The collation for the database.
nchar_collation	If not NULL, use to generate the NCHAR COLLATION clause with specified string.
errortrn	Callback routine for handling an error message.
msgtrn	Callback routine for handling an information message.
blank_pad	Must be one of NO_BLANK_PADDING or BLANK_PADDING. Treat blanks as significant in string comparisons and hold index information to reflect this. See <a href="#">“Blank padding enumeration” on page 1007</a> .
respect_case	Make string comparisons case sensitive and hold index information to reflect this.
encrypt	When set, generates the ENCRYPTED ON or, when encrypted_tables is also set, the ENCRYPTED TABLES ON clause.
avoid_view_collisions	Omit the generation of Watcom SQL compatibility views SYS.SYSCOLUMNS and SYS.SYSINDEXES.
jconnect	Include system procedures needed for jConnect.
checksum	Set to 1 for ON or 0 for OFF. Generates one of CHECKSUM ON or CHECKSUM OFF clauses.
encrypted_tables	Set to 1 for encrypted tables. Used with encrypt, generates the ENCRYPTED TABLE ON clause instead of the ENCRYPTED ON clause.
case_sensitivity_use_default	If set, use the default case sensitivity for the locale. This only affects UCA. When set, do not add the CASE RESPECT clause to the CREATE DATABASE statement.
verbose	See <a href="#">“Verbosity enumeration” on page 1011</a> .

Member	Description
accent_sensitivity	One of y, n, or f (yes, no, french). Generates one of the ACCENT RESPECT, ACCENT IGNORE or ACCENT FRENCH clauses.
mirrorname	Transaction log mirror name.
data_store_type	Reserved. Use NULL.
encryption_key	The encryption key for the database file. Used with encrypt, it generates the KEY clause.
encryption_algorithm	The encryption algorithm (AES, AES256, AES_FIPS, or AES256_FIPS). Used with encrypt and encryption_key, it generates the ALGORITHM clause.
dba_uid	When not NULL, generates the DBA USER xxx clause.
dba_pwd	When not NULL, generates the DBA PASSWORD xxx clause.
db_size	When not 0, generates the DATABASE SIZE clause.
db_size_unit	Used with db_size, must be one of DBSP_UNIT_NONE, DBSP_UNIT_PAGES, DBSP_UNIT_BYTES, DBSP_UNIT_KILOBYTES, DBSP_UNIT_MEGABYTES, DBSP_UNIT_GIGABYTES, DBSP_UNIT_TERABYTES. When not DBSP_UNIT_NONE, it generates the corresponding keyword (for example, DATABASE SIZE 10 MB is generated when db_size is 10 and db_size_unit is DBSP_UNIT_MEGABYTES). See <a href="#">“Database size unit enumeration”</a> on page 1008.

**See also**

- [“DBCreate function”](#) on page 958
- [“Using callback functions”](#) on page 951

## a\_db\_info structure

Holds the information needed to return dbinfo information using the DBTools library.

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct a_db_info {
    unsigned short    version;
    MSG_CALLBACK     errorrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK     msgrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK     statusrtn;
    unsigned short   dbbufsize;
    char *           dbnamebuffer;
    unsigned short   logbufsize;
    char *           lognamebuffer;
```

```

    unsigned short      mirrorbufsize;
    char *              mirrornamebuffer;
    unsigned short     collationnamebufsize;
    char *              collationnamebuffer;
    const char *       connectparms;
    a_bit_field         quiet      : 1;
    a_bit_field         page_usage : 1;
    a_sysinfo           sysinfo;
    a_table_info *     totals;
    a_sql_uint32        file_size;
    a_sql_uint32        free_pages;
    a_sql_uint32        bit_map_pages;
    a_sql_uint32        other_pages;
    a_bit_field         checksum   : 1;
    a_bit_field         encrypted_tables : 1;
} a_db_info;

```

**Members**

Member	Description
version	DBTools version number.
errorrtn	Callback routine for handling an error message.
msggrtn	Callback routine for handling an information message.
statusrtn	Callback routine for handling a status message.
dbbufsize	Set the length of the database file name buffer (for example, _MAX_PATH).
dbnamebuffer	Set the pointer to database file name buffer.
logbufsize	Set the length of the transaction log file name buffer (for example, _MAX_PATH).
lognamebuffer	Set the pointer to the transaction log file name buffer.
mirrorbufsize	Set the length of the mirror file name buffer (for example, _MAX_PATH).
mirrornamebuffer	Set the pointer to the mirror file name buffer.
collationnamebufsize	Set the length of the database collation name and label buffer (the maximum size is 129 including space for the null character).
collationnamebuffer	Set the pointer to the database collation name and label buffer.



Member	Description
connectparms	<p>Parameters needed to connect to the database. They take the form of connection strings, such as the following:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db"</pre> <p>The database server would be started by the connection string START parameter. For example:</p> <pre>"START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>A full example connection string including the START parameter:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db;START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>For a list of connection parameters, see <a href="#">“Connection parameters” [SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration]</a>.</p>
quiet	Operate without confirming messages.
page_usage	1 to report page usage statistics, otherwise 0.
sysinfo	a_sysinfo structure (see <a href="#">“a_sysinfo structure” on page 993</a> ).
totals	Pointer to a_table_info structure (see <a href="#">“a_table_info structure” on page 994</a> ).
file_size	Size of database file.
free_pages	Number of free pages.
bit_map_pages	Number of bitmap pages in the database.
other_pages	Number of pages that are not table pages, index pages, free pages, or bitmap pages.
checksum	Database page checksums enabled if 1, disabled if 0.
encrypted_tables	Encrypted tables are supported if 1, disabled if 0.

**See also**

- [“DBInfo function” on page 959](#)
- [“Using callback functions” on page 951](#)

**a\_db\_version\_info structure**

Holds information regarding which version of SQL Anywhere was used to create the database.

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct a_db_version_info {
    unsigned short    version;
    const char       *filename;
    a_db_version      created_version;
    MSG_CALLBACK      errorrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      msgrtn;
} a_db_version_info;
```

**Members**

Member	Description
version	DBTools version number.
filename	Name of the database file to check.
created_version	Set to a value of type a_db_version indicating the server version that create the database file. See <a href="#">“a_db_version enumeration” on page 1008</a> .
errorrtn	Callback routine for handling an error message.
msgrtn	Callback routine for handling an information message.

**See also**

- [“DBCreatedVersion function” on page 958](#)
- [“a\\_db\\_version enumeration” on page 1008](#)
- [“Using callback functions” on page 951](#)

## a\_dblic\_info structure

Holds information containing licensing information. You must use this information only in a manner consistent with your license agreement.

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct a_dblic_info {
    unsigned short    version;
    char              *exename;
    char              *username;
    char              *compname;
    a_sql_int32       nodecount;
    a_sql_int32       conncount;
    a_license_type    type;
    MSG_CALLBACK      errorrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      msgrtn;
    a_bit_field       quiet           : 1;
    a_bit_field       query_only      : 1;
    char              *installkey;
} a_dblic_info;
```

**Members**

Member	Description
version	DBTools version number.
exename	Name of the server executable or license file.
username	User name for licensing.
compname	Company name for licensing.
nodecount	Number of nodes licensed.
conncount	Must be 1000000L.
type	See <i>lictype.h</i> for values.
errortrn	Callback routine for handling an error message.
msgtrn	Callback routine for handling an information message.
quiet	Operate without printing messages (1), or print messages (0).
query_only	If 1, just display the license information. If 0, permit changing the information.
installkey	Internal use only. Set to NULL.

**a\_dbtools\_info structure**

Holds the information needed to start and finish working with the DBTools library.

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct a_dbtools_info {
    MSG_CALLBACK      errortrn;
} a_dbtools_info;
```

**Members**

Member	Description
errortrn	Callback routine for handling an error message.

**See also**

- [“DBToolsFini function” on page 962](#)
- [“DBToolsInit function” on page 962](#)
- [“Using callback functions” on page 951](#)

## an\_erase\_db structure

Holds information needed to erase a database using the DBTools library.

### Syntax

```
typedef struct an_erase_db {
    unsigned short    version;
    const char *      dbname;
    MSG_CALLBACK      confirmrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      errorrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      msgrtn;
    a_bit_field       quiet : 1;
    a_bit_field       erase : 1;
    const char *      encryption_key;
} an_erase_db;
```

### Members

Member	Description
version	DBTools version number.
dbname	Database file name to erase.
confirmrtn	Callback routine for confirming an action.
errorrtn	Callback routine for handling an error message.
msgrtn	Callback routine for handling an information message.
quiet	Operate without printing messages (1), or print messages (0).
erase	Erase without confirmation (1) or with confirmation (0).
encryption_key	The encryption key for the database file.

### See also

- [“DBErase function” on page 959](#)
- [“Using callback functions” on page 951](#)

## a\_name structure

Holds a linked list of names. This is used by other structures requiring lists of names.

### Syntax

```
typedef struct a_name {
    struct a_name *next;
    char name[1];
} a_name, * p_name;
```

**Members**

Member	Description
next	Pointer to the next a_name structure in the list.
name	The name.

**See also**

- [“a\\_translate\\_log structure” on page 995](#)
- [“a\\_validate\\_db structure” on page 1005](#)
- [“an\\_unload\\_db structure” on page 1000](#)

**a\_remote\_sql structure**

Holds information needed for the dbremote utility using the DBTools library.

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct a_remote_sql {
    short                version;
    MSG_CALLBACK         confirmrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK         errorrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK         msgrtn;
    MSG_QUEUE_CALLBACK  msgqueuertn;
    char *               connectparms;
    char *               transaction_logs;
    a_bit_field          receive : 1;
    a_bit_field          send : 1;
    a_bit_field          verbose : 1;
    a_bit_field          deleted : 1;
    a_bit_field          apply : 1;
    a_bit_field          batch : 1;
    a_bit_field          more : 1;
    a_bit_field          triggers : 1;
    a_bit_field          debug : 1;
    a_bit_field          rename_log : 1;
    a_bit_field          latest_backup : 1;
    a_bit_field          scan_log : 1;
    a_bit_field          link_debug : 1;
    a_bit_field          full_q_scan : 1;
    a_bit_field          no_user_interaction : 1;
    a_bit_field          _unused1 : 1;
    a_sql_uint32         max_length;
    a_sql_uint32         memory;
    a_sql_uint32         frequency;
    a_sql_uint32         threads;
    a_sql_uint32         operations;
    char *               queueparms;
    char *               locale;
    a_sql_uint32         receive_delay;
    a_sql_uint32         patience_retry;
    MSG_CALLBACK         logrtn;
    a_bit_field          use_hex_offsets : 1;
    a_bit_field          use_relative_offsets : 1;
    a_bit_field          debug_page_offsets : 1;
};
```

```

a_sql_uint32      debug_dump_size;
a_sql_uint32      send_delay;
a_sql_uint32      resend_urgency;
char *            include_scan_range;
SET_WINDOW_TITLE_CALLBACK set_window_title_rtn;
char *            default_window_title;
MSG_CALLBACK      progress_msg_rtn;
SET_PROGRESS_CALLBACK progress_index_rtn;
char **           argv;
a_sql_uint32      log_size;
char *            encryption_key;
const char *      log_file_name;
a_bit_field       truncate_remote_output_file:1;
char *            remote_output_file_name;
MSG_CALLBACK      warning_rtn;
char *            mirror_logs;
} a_remote_sql;
    
```

**Members**

Member	Description
version	DBTools version number.
confirm_rtn	Pointer to a function that prints the given message and accepts a yes or no response returning TRUE if yes and FALSE if no.
error_rtn	Pointer to a function that prints the given error message.
msg_rtn	Pointer to a function that prints the given informational (non-error) message.
msgqueue_rtn	Pointer to a function that should sleep for the number of milliseconds passed to it. This function is called with 0 when DBRemoteSQL is busy, but wants to allow the upper layer to process messages. This routine should return MSGQ_SLEEP_THROUGH normally, or MSGQ_SHUTDOWN_REQUESTED to stop SQL Remote processing.

Member	Description
connectparms	<p>Parameters needed to connect to the database. Corresponds to the dbremote -c option. They take the form of connection strings, such as the following:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db"</pre> <p>The database server would be started by the connection string START parameter. For example:</p> <pre>"START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>A full example connection string including the START parameter:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db;START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>For a list of connection parameters, see <a href="#">"Connection parameters" [SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration]</a>.</p>
transaction_logs	<p>Pointer to a string naming the directory with offline transaction logs. Corresponds to the transaction_logs_directory argument of dbremote.</p>
receive	<p>If receive is true, messages are received. Corresponds to the dbremote -r option.</p> <p>If receive and send are both false then both are assumed true. It is recommended that you set both to false.</p>
send	<p>If send is true, messages are sent. Corresponds to the dbremote -s option.</p> <p>If receive and send are both false then both are assumed true. It is recommended that you set both to false.</p>
verbose	<p>When true, extra information is printed. Corresponds to the dbremote -v option.</p>
deleted	<p>Should be set to true. If false, messages are not deleted after they are applied. Corresponds to dbremote -p option.</p>
apply	<p>Should be set to true. If false, messages are scanned, but not applied. Corresponds to dbremote -a option.</p>
batch	<p>If true, force exit after applying messages and scanning log. Same as at least one user having 'always' send time. If false, allow run mode to be determined by remote users' send times.</p>
more	<p>Should be set to true.</p>

Member	Description
triggers	Should be set to false in most cases; otherwise, true means DBRemoteSQL replicates trigger actions. Corresponds to the dbremote -t option.
debug	Include debugging output if set true.
rename_log	If set to true, logs are renamed and restarted.
latest_backup	If set to true, only process logs that are backed up. Don't send operations from a live log. Corresponds to the dbremote -u option.
scan_log	Reserved; set to false.
link_debug	If set to true, debugging is turned on for links.
full_q_scan	Reserved; set to false.
no_user_interaction	If set to true, no user interaction is requested.
max_length	Set to the maximum length (in bytes) a message can have. This affects sending and receiving. The recommended value is 50000. Corresponds to the dbremote -l option.
memory	Set to the maximum size (in bytes) of memory buffers to use while building messages to send. The recommended value is at least $2 * 1024 * 1024$ . Corresponds to the dbremote -m option.
frequency	Set the polling frequency for incoming messages. This value should be set to the $\max(1, \text{receive\_delay}/60)$ . See receive_delay below.
threads	Set the number of worker threads that should be used to apply messages. This value must not exceed 50. Corresponds to the dbremote -w option.
operations	This value is used when applying messages. Commits are ignored until DBRemoteSQL has at least this number of operations (inserts, deletes, updates) that are uncommitted. Corresponds to the dbremote -g option.
queueparms	Reserved; set to NULL.
locale	Reserved; set to NULL.
receive_delay	Set this to the time (in seconds) to wait between polls for new incoming messages. The recommended value is 60. Corresponds to the dbremote -rd option.



Member	Description
patience_retry	Set this to the number of polls for incoming messages that DBRemoteSQL should wait before assuming that a message it is expecting is lost. For example, if <code>patience_retry</code> is 3 then DBRemoteSQL tries up to three times to receive the missing message. Afterwards, it sends a resend request. The recommended value is 1. Corresponds to the <code>dbremote -rp</code> option.
logrtn	Pointer to a function that prints the given message to a log file. These messages do not need to be seen by the user.
use_hex_offsets	Set to true if you want log offsets to be shown in hexadecimal notation; otherwise decimal notation will be used.
use_relative_offsets	Set to true if you want log offsets to be displayed as relative to the start of the current log file. Set to false if you want log offsets from the beginning of time to be displayed.
debug_page_offsets	Reserved; set to false.
debug_dump_size	Reserved; set to 0.
send_delay	Set the time (in seconds) between scans of the log file for new operations to send. Set to zero to allow DBRemoteSQL to choose a good value based on user send times. Corresponds to the <code>dbremote -sd</code> option.
resend_urgency	Set the time (in seconds) that DBRemoteSQL waits after seeing that a user needs a rescan before performing a full scan of the log. Set to zero to allow DBRemoteSQL to choose a good value based on user send times and other information it has collected. Corresponds to the <code>dbremote -ru</code> option.
include_scan_range	Reserved; set to NULL.
set_window_title_rtn	Pointer to a function that resets the title of the window (Windows only). The title could be " <i>database_name</i> (receiving, scanning, or sending) - <i>default_window_title</i> ".
default_window_title	A pointer to the default window title string.
progress_msg_rtn	Pointer to a function that displays a progress message.

Member	Description
progress_index_rtn	Pointer to a function that updates the state of the progress bar. This function takes two unsigned integer arguments <i>index</i> and <i>max</i> . On the first call, the values are the minimum and maximum values (for example, 0, 100). On subsequent calls, the first argument is the current index value (for example, between 0 and 100) and the second argument is always 0.
argv	Pointer to a parsed command line (a vector of pointers to strings). If not NULL, then DBRemoteSQL will call a message routine to display each command line argument except those prefixed with -c, -cq, or -ek.
log_size	DBRemoteSQL renames and restarts the online transaction log when the size of the online transaction log is greater than this value. Corresponds to the dbremote -x option.
encryption_key	Pointer to an encryption key. Corresponds to the dbremote -ek option.
log_file_name	Pointer to the name of the DBRemoteSQL output log to which the message callbacks print their output. If <i>send</i> is true, the error log is sent to the consolidated (unless this pointer is NULL).
truncate_remote_output_file	Set to true to cause the remote output file to be truncated rather than appended to. See below. Corresponds to the dbremote -rt option.
remote_output_file_name	Pointer to the name of the DBRemoteSQL remote output file. Corresponds to the dbremote -ro or -rt option.
warningrtn	Pointer to a function that prints the given warning message. If NULL, the <i>errorrtn</i> function is called instead.
mirror_logs	Pointer to the name of the directory containing offline mirror transaction logs. Corresponds to the dbremote -ml option.

The dbremote tool sets the following defaults before processing any command-line options:

- version = DB\_TOOLS\_VERSION\_NUMBER
- argv = (argument vector passed to application)
- deleted = TRUE
- apply = TRUE
- more = TRUE
- link\_debug = FALSE
- max\_length = 50000
- memory = 2 \* 1024 \* 1024
- frequency = 1
- threads = 0
- receive\_delay = 60
- send\_delay = 0
- log\_size = 0
- patience\_retry = 1
- resend\_urgency = 0
- log\_file\_name = (set from command line)
- truncate\_remote\_output\_file = FALSE
- remote\_output\_file\_name = NULL
- no\_user\_interaction = TRUE (if user interface is not available)
- errorrtn = (address of an appropriate routine)
- msggrtn = (address of an appropriate routine)
- confirmrtn = (address of an appropriate routine)
- msgqueuertn = (address of an appropriate routine)
- logrtn = (address of an appropriate routine)
- warngrtn = (address of an appropriate routine)
- set\_window\_title\_rtn = (address of an appropriate routine)
- progress\_msg\_rtn = (address of an appropriate routine)
- progress\_index\_rtn = (address of an appropriate routine)

### See also

- [“DBRemoteSQL function” on page 961](#)
- [“DBTools interface for dbmlsync” \[MobiLink - Client Administration\]](#)

## a\_sync\_db structure

Holds information needed for the dbmlsync utility using the DBTools library.

### Syntax

```
typedef struct a_sync_db {
    unsigned short    version;
    char *            connectparms;
    char *            publication;
    const char *      offline_dir;
    char *            extended_options;
    char *            script_full_path;
    const char *      include_scan_range;
```

```

const char *      raw_file;
MSG_CALLBACK     confirmrtn;
MSG_CALLBACK     errorrtn;
MSG_CALLBACK     msgrtn;
MSG_CALLBACK     logrtn;
a_sql_uint32     debug_dump_size;
a_sql_uint32     dl_insert_width;
a_bit_field      verbose           : 1;
a_bit_field      debug             : 1;
a_bit_field      debug_dump_hex    : 1;
a_bit_field      debug_dump_char   : 1;
a_bit_field      debug_page_offsets : 1;
a_bit_field      use_hex_offsets    : 1;
a_bit_field      use_relative_offsets : 1;
a_bit_field      output_to_file     : 1;
a_bit_field      output_to_mobile_link : 1;
a_bit_field      dl_use_put         : 1;
a_bit_field      kill_other_connections : 1;
a_bit_field      retry_remote_behind : 1;
a_bit_field      ignore_debug_interrupt : 1;
SET_WINDOW_TITLE_CALLBACK set_window_title_rtn;
char *           default_window_title;
MSG_QUEUE_CALLBACK msgqueue_rtn;
MSG_CALLBACK     progress_msg_rtn;
SET_PROGRESS_CALLBACK progress_index_rtn;
char **          argv;
char **          ce_argv;
a_bit_field      connectparms_allocated : 1;
a_bit_field      entered_dialog         : 1;
a_bit_field      used_dialog_allocation : 1;
a_bit_field      ignore_scheduling      : 1;
a_bit_field      ignore_hook_errors     : 1;
a_bit_field      changing_pwd           : 1;
a_bit_field      prompt_again           : 1;
a_bit_field      retry_remote_ahead     : 1;
a_bit_field      rename_log             : 1;
a_bit_field      hide_conn_str          : 1;
a_bit_field      hide_ml_pwd            : 1;
a_sql_uint32     dlg_launch_focus;
char *           mlpasword;
char *           new_mlpasword;
char *           verify_mlpasword;
a_sql_uint32     pub_name_cnt;
char **          pub_name_list;
USAGE_CALLBACK   usage_rtn;
a_sql_uint32     log_size;
a_sql_uint32     hovering_frequency;
a_bit_short      ignore_hovering       : 1;
a_bit_short      verbose_upload        : 1;
a_bit_short      verbose_upload_data   : 1;
a_bit_short      verbose_download      : 1;
a_bit_short      verbose_download_data : 1;
a_bit_short      autoclose             : 1;
a_bit_short      ping                  : 1;
a_bit_short      _unused                : 9;
char *           encryption_key;
a_syncpub *      upload_defs;
const char *     log_file_name;
char *           user_name;
a_bit_short      verbose_minimum       : 1;
a_bit_short      verbose_hook          : 1;
a_bit_short      verbose_row_data      : 1;
a_bit_short      verbose_row_cnts      : 1;
a_bit_short      verbose_option_info   : 1;

```

```

a_bit_short      strictly_ignore_trigger_ops : 1;
a_bit_short      _unused2                  : 10;
a_sql_uint32     est_upld_row_cnt;
STATUS_CALLBACK  status_rtn;
MSG_CALLBACK     warningrtn;
char **          ce_reproc_argv;
a_bit_short      upload_only                : 1;
a_bit_short      download_only              : 1;
a_bit_short      allow_schema_change        : 1;
a_bit_short      dnld_gen_num               : 1;
a_bit_short      _unused3                  :12;
const char *     apply_dnld_file;
const char *     create_dnld_file;
char *           sync_params;
const char *     dnld_file_extra;
COMServer *      com_server;
a_bit_short      trans_upload               : 1;
a_bit_short      continue_download          : 1;
a_bit_short      lite_blob_handling         : 1;
a_sql_uint32     dnld_read_size;
a_sql_uint32     dnld_fail_len;
a_sql_uint32     upld_fail_len;
a_bit_short      persist_connection         :1;
a_bit_short      verbose_protocol           :1;
a_bit_short      no_stream_compress         :1;
a_bit_short      _unused4                  :13;
const char *     encrypted_stream_opts;
a_sql_uint32     no_offline_logscan;
a_bit_short      server_mode :1;
a_bit_short      allow_outside_connect :1;
a_bit_short      prompt_for_encrypt_key:1;
a_bit_short      com_server_mode:1;
a_bit_short      verbose_server:1;
a_bit_short      _unused5 :11;
a_sql_uint32     server_port;
char *           preload_dlls;
char *           sync_profile;
char *           sync_opt;
a_syncpub *      last_upload_def;
} a_sync_db;

```

## Members

Member	Description
version	DBTools version number.

Member	Description
connectparms	<p>Parameters needed to connect to the database. They take the form of connection strings, such as the following:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db"</pre> <p>The database server would be started by the connection string START parameter. For example:</p> <pre>"START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>A full example connection string including the START parameter:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db;START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>For a list of connection parameters, see <a href="#">“Connection parameters” [SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration]</a>.</p>
publication	Deprecated; use NULL.
offline_dir	Log directory, as specified on the command line after the options.
extended_options	Extended options, as specified with -e.
script_full_path	Deprecated; use NULL.
include_scan_range	Reserved; use NULL.
raw_file	Reserved; use NULL.
confirmrtn	Reserved; use NULL.
errorrtn	Function to display error messages.
msgrtn	Function to write messages to the user interface and, optionally, to the log file.
logrtn	Function to write messages only to the log file.
debug_dump_size	Reserved; use 0.
dl_insert_width	Reserved; use 0.
verbose	Deprecated; use 0.
debug	Reserved; use 0.
debug_dump_hex	Reserved; use 0.

Member	Description
debug_dump_char	Reserved; use 0.
debug_page_offsets	Reserved; use 0.
use_hex_offsets	Reserved; use 0.
use_relative_offsets	Reserved; use 0.
output_to_file	Reserved; use 0.
output_to_mobile_link	Reserved; use 1.
dl_use_put	Reserved; use 0.
kill_other_connections	TRUE if -d option is specified.
retry_remote_behind	TRUE if -r or -rb is specified.
ignore_debug_interrupt	Reserved; use 0.
set_window_title_rtn	Function to call to change the title of the dbmlsync window (Windows only).
default_window_title	Name of the program to display in the window caption (for example, DBMLSync).
msgqueuertn	<p>Function called by DBMLSync when it wants to sleep. The parameter specifies the sleep period in milliseconds. The function should return the following, as defined in <i>dllapi.h</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>MSGQ_SLEEP_THROUGH</b> indicates that the routine slept for the requested number of milliseconds. In most cases this is the value you should return.</li> <li>• <b>MSGQ_SHUTDOWN_REQUESTED</b> indicates that you would like the synchronization to terminate as soon as possible.</li> <li>• <b>MSGQ_SYNC_REQUESTED</b> indicates that the routine slept for less than the requested number of milliseconds and that the next synchronization should begin immediately if a synchronization is not currently in progress.</li> </ul>
progress_msg_rtn	Function to change the text in the status window, above the progress bar.
progress_index_rtn	Function to update the state of the progress bar.

Member	Description
argv	argv array for this run; the last element of the array must be NULL.
ce_argv	Reserved; use NULL.
connectparms_allocated	Reserved; use 0.
entered_dialog	Reserved; use 0.
used_dialog_allocation	Reserved; use 0.
ignore_scheduling	TRUE if -is was specified.
ignore_hook_errors	TRUE if -eh was specified.
changing_pwd	TRUE if -mn was specified.
prompt_again	Reserved—use 0.
retry_remote_ahead	TRUE if -ra was specified.
rename_log	TRUE if -x was specified, in which case the log file is renamed and restarted.
hide_conn_str	TRUE unless -vc was specified.
hide_ml_pwd	TRUE unless -vp was specified.
dlg_launch_focus	Reserved; use 0.
mlpassword	MobiLink password specified with -mp; NULL otherwise.
new_mlpassword	New MobiLink password specified with -mn; NULL otherwise.
verify_mlpassword	Reserved; use NULL.
pub_name_cnt	Deprecated; use 0.
pub_name_list	Deprecated; use NULL.
usage_rtn	Reserved; use NULL.
log_size	Log size in bytes, as specified with -x; otherwise 0.
hovering_frequency	Hovering frequency in seconds; as set with -pp.
ignore_hovering	True if -p was specified.
verbose_upload	True if -vu was specified.



<b>Member</b>	<b>Description</b>
verbose_upload_data	Reserved; use 0.
verbose_download	Reserved; use 0.
verbose_download_data	Reserved; use 0.
autoclose	TRUE if -k was specified.
ping	TRUE if -pi was specified.
encryption_key	Database key, as specified with -ek.
upload_defs	Linked list of publications to be uploaded together—see a_syn- cpub.
log_file_name	Database server message log file name specified with -o or -ot.
user_name	MobiLink user name, specified with -u.
verbose_minimum	TRUE if -v was specified.
verbose_hook	TRUE if -vs was specified.
verbose_row_data	TRUE if -vr was specified.
verbose_row_cnts	TRUE if -vn was specified.
verbose_option_info	TRUE if -vo was specified.
strictly_ignore_trigger_ops	Reserved; use 0.
est_upld_row_cnt	Estimated number of rows to upload, specified with -urc.
status_rtn	Reserved; use NULL.
warningrtn	Function to display warning messages.
ce_reproc_argv	Reserved, use NULL.
upload_only	True if -uo was specified.
download_only	TRUE if -ds was specified.
allow_schema_change	TRUE if -sc was specified.
dnld_gen_num	TRUE if -bg was specified.
apply_dnld_file	File specified with -ba; otherwise NULL.

Member	Description
create_dnld_file	File specified with -bc; otherwise NULL.
sync_params	User authentication parameters—specified with -ap.
dnld_file_extra	String specified with -be.
com_server	Reserved; use NULL.
trans_upload	TRUE if -tu was specified.
continue_download	TRUE if -dc is specified.
dnld_read_size	Value specified by -drs option.
dnld_fail_len	Reserved; use 0.
upld_fail_len	Reserved; use 0.
persist_connection	TRUE if -pp is specified on command line.
verbose_protocol	Reserved; use 0.
no_stream_compress	Reserved; use 0.
encrypted_stream_opts	Reserved; use NULL.
no_offline_logscan	TRUE if -do is specified
server_mode	TRUE if -sm specified
allow_outside_connect	Reserved; use 0.
prompt_for_encrypt_key	Reserved; use 0.
com_server_mode	Reserved; use 0.
verbose_server	Reserved; use 0.
server_port	Value from -sp option.
preload_dlls	Reserved; use NULL.
sync_profile	Value specified with -sp option.
sync_opt	Reserved; use NULL.
last_upload_def	Reserved; use NULL.

Some members correspond to features accessible from the `dbmlsync` command line utility. Unused members should be assigned the value 0, FALSE, or NULL, depending on data type.

See the `dbtools.h` header file for additional comments.

For more information, see “[dbmlsync syntax](#)” [*MobiLink - Client Administration*].

### See also

- “[DBTools interface for dbmlsync](#)” [*MobiLink - Client Administration*]
- “[DBSynchronizeLog function](#)” on page 961

## a\_syncpub structure

Holds information needed for the `dbmlsync` utility.

### Syntax

```
typedef struct a_syncpub {
    struct a_syncpub * next;
    char * pub_name;
    char * ext_opt;
    a_bit_field allocated_by_dbsync: 1;
} a_syncpub;
```

### Members

Member	Description
<code>a_syncpub</code>	Pointer to the next node in the list, NULL for the last node.
<code>pub_name</code>	Publication name(s) specified for this <code>-n</code> option. This is the exact string following <code>-n</code> on the command line.
<code>ext_opt</code>	Extended options specified using the <code>-eu</code> option.
<code>allocated_by_dbsync</code>	Reserved; use FALSE.

### See also

- “[DBTools interface for dbmlsync](#)” [*MobiLink - Client Administration*]

## a\_sysinfo structure

Holds information needed for `dbinfo` and `dbunload` utilities using the DBTools library.

```
typedef struct a_sysinfo {
    a_bit_field valid_data : 1;
    a_bit_field blank_padding : 1;
    a_bit_field case_sensitivity : 1;
    a_bit_field encryption : 1;
    char default_collation[11];
}
```

```

        unsigned short  page_size;
    } a_sysinfo;

```

**Members**

Member	Description
valid_date	Bit-field indicating whether the following values are set.
blank_padding	1 if blank padding is used in this database, 0 otherwise.
case_sensitivity	1 if the database is case sensitive, 0 otherwise.
encryption	1 if the database is encrypted, 0 otherwise.
default_collation	The collation sequence for the database.
page_size	The page size for the database.

**See also**

- [“a\\_db\\_info structure” on page 973](#)

## a\_table\_info structure

Holds information about a table needed as part of the a\_db\_info structure.

**Syntax**

```

typedef struct a_table_info {
    struct a_table_info *next;
    a_sql_uint32      table_id;
    a_sql_uint32      table_pages;
    a_sql_uint32      index_pages;
    a_sql_uint32      table_used;
    a_sql_uint32      index_used;
    char *            table_name;
    a_sql_uint32      table_used_pct;
    a_sql_uint32      index_used_pct;
} a_table_info;

```

**Members**

Member	Description
next	Next table in the list.
table_id	ID number for this table.
table_pages	Number of table pages.
index_pages	Number of index pages.

Member	Description
table_used	Number of bytes used in table pages.
index_used	Number of bytes used in index pages.
table_name	Name of the table.
table_used_pct	Table space utilization as a percentage.
index_used_pct	Index space utilization as a percentage.

**See also**

- [“a\\_db\\_info structure” on page 973](#)

## a\_translate\_log structure

Holds information needed for transaction log translation using the DBTools library.

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct a_translate_log {
    unsigned short    version;
    const char *      connectparms;
    const char *      logname;
    const char *      sqlname;
    const char *      encryption_key;
    const char *      logs_dir;
    p_name            userlist;
    a_sql_uint32      since_time;
    MSG_CALLBACK      confirmrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      errorrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      msgrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      logrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      statusrtn;
    char              userlisttype;
    a_bit_field       quiet                : 1;
    a_bit_field       remove_rollback      : 1;
    a_bit_field       ansi_sql             : 1;
    a_bit_field       since_checkpoint     : 1;
    a_bit_field       replace              : 1;
    a_bit_field       include_trigger_trans : 1;
    a_bit_field       comment_trigger_trans : 1;
    a_bit_field       debug                : 1;
    a_bit_field       debug_sql_remote     : 1;
    a_bit_field       debug_dump_hex      : 1;
    a_bit_field       debug_dump_char     : 1;
    a_bit_field       debug_page_offsets   : 1;
    a_bit_field       omit_comments        : 1;
    a_bit_field       use_hex_offsets      : 1;
    a_bit_field       use_relative_offsets : 1;
    a_bit_field       include_audit        : 1;
    a_bit_field       chronological_order  : 1;
    a_bit_field       force_recovery       : 1;
    a_bit_field       include_subsets      : 1;
};
```

```

a_bit_field      force_chaining      : 1;
a_bit_field      generate_reciprocals  : 1;
a_bit_field      match_mode           : 1;
a_bit_field      show_undo            : 1;
a_bit_field      extra_audit          : 1;
a_sql_uint32     debug_dump_size;
a_sql_uint32     recovery_ops;
a_sql_uint32     recovery_bytes;
const char *     include_source_sets;
const char *     include_destination_sets;
const char *     include_scan_range;
const char *     repserver_users;
const char *     include_tables;
const char *     include_publications;
const char *     queueparms;
const char *     match_pos;
a_bit_field      leave_output_on_error : 1;
} a_translate_log;

```

**Members**

Member	Description
version	DBTools version number.
connectparms	<p>Parameters needed to connect to the database. They take the form of connection strings, such as the following:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db"</pre> <p>The database server would be started by the connection string START parameter. For example:</p> <pre>"START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>A full example connection string including the START parameter:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db;START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>For a list of connection parameters, see <a href="#">"Connection parameters" [SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration]</a>.</p>
logname	Name of the transaction log file. If NULL, there is no log.
sqlname	Name of the SQL output file. If NULL, then name is based on transaction log file name (-n sets this string).
encryption_key	Specify database encryption key (-ek sets string).
logs_dir	Transaction logs directory (-m dir sets string); sqlname must be set and connect_parms must be NULL.
userlist	A linked list of user names. Equivalent to -u user1,... or -x user1,... Select or omit transactions for listed users.

Member	Description
since_time	Output from most recent checkpoint prior to time (-j <time> sets this). The number of minutes since January 1, 0001.
confirmrtn	Callback routine for confirming an action.
errorrtn	Callback routine for handling an error message.
msgrtn	Callback routine for handling an information message.
logrtn	Callback routine to write messages only to the log file.
statusrtn	Callback routine for handling a status message.
userlisttype	Set to DBTRAN_INCLUDE_ALL unless you want to include or exclude a list of users. DBTRAN_INCLUDE_SOME for -u, or DBTRAN_EXCLUDE_SOME for -x.
quiet	Set to TRUE to operate without printing messages (-y).
remove_rollback	Normally set to TRUE; Set to FALSE if you want to include rollback transactions in output (equivalent to -a).
ansi_sql	Set to TRUE if you want to produce ANSI standard SQL transactions (equivalent to -s).
since_checkpoint	Set to TRUE if you want output from most recent checkpoint (equivalent to -f).
replace	Replace existing SQL file without confirmation (equivalent to -y).
include_trigger_trans	Set TRUE to include trigger-generated transactions (equivalent to -g, -sr or -t).
comment_trigger_trans	Set TRUE to include trigger-generated transactions as comments (equivalent to -z).
debug	Reserved; set to FALSE.
debug_sql_remote	Reserved, use FALSE.
debug_dump_hex	Reserved, use FALSE.
debug_dump_char	Reserved, use FALSE.
debug_page_offsets	Reserved, use FALSE.
use_hex_offsets	Reserved, use FALSE.

<b>Member</b>	<b>Description</b>
use_relative_offsets	Reserved, use FALSE.
include_audit	Reserved, use FALSE.
chronological_order	Reserved, use FALSE.
force_recovery	Reserved, use FALSE.
include_subsets	Reserved, use FALSE.
force_chaining	Reserved, use FALSE.
generate_reciprocals	Reserved, use FALSE.
match_mode	Reserved, use FALSE.
show_undo	Reserved, use FALSE.
debug_dump_size	Reserved, use 0.
recovery_ops	Reserved, use 0.
recovery_bytes	Reserved, use 0.
include_source_sets	Reserved, use NULL.
include_destination_sets	Reserved, use NULL.
include_scan_range	Reserved, use NULL.
repservers_users	Reserved, use NULL.
include_tables	Reserved, use NULL.
include_publications	Reserved, use NULL.
queparms	Reserved, use NULL.
match_pos	Reserved, use NULL.
leave_output_on_error	Set to TRUE if you want to leave the generated .SQL file if corruption detected (equivalent to -k)

The members correspond to features accessible from the dbtran utility.

See the *dbtools.h* header file for additional comments.



**See also**

- “DBTranslateLog function” on page 963
- “a\_name structure” on page 978
- “dbtran\_userlist\_type enumeration” on page 1009
- “Using callback functions” on page 951

## a\_truncate\_log structure

Holds information needed for transaction log truncation using the DBTools library.

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct a_truncate_log {
    unsigned short    version;
    const char *      connectparms;
    MSG_CALLBACK      errorrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      msgrtn;
    a_bit_field       quiet          : 1;
    a_bit_field       server_backup  : 1;
    char              truncate_interrupted;
} a_truncate_log;
```

**Members**

Member	Description
version	DBTools version number.
connectparms	<p>Parameters needed to connect to the database. They take the form of connection strings, such as the following:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db"</pre> <p>The database server would be started by the connection string START parameter. For example:</p> <pre>"START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>A full example connection string including the START parameter:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db;START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>For a list of connection parameters, see “<a href="#">Connection parameters</a>” [<i>SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration</i>].</p>
errorrtn	Callback routine for handling an error message.
msgrtn	Callback routine for handling an information message.
quiet	Operate without printing messages (1), or print messages (0).

Member	Description
server_backup	When set to 1, indicates backup on server using BACKUP DATABASE. Equivalent to dbbackup -s option.
truncate_interrupted	Indicates that the operation was interrupted.

**See also**

- [“DBTruncateLog function” on page 964](#)
- [“Using callback functions” on page 951](#)

## an\_unload\_db structure

Holds information needed to unload a database using the DBTools library or extract a remote database for SQL Remote. Those fields used by the dbextract SQL Remote Extraction utility are indicated.

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct an_unload_db {
    unsigned short    version;
    const char *      connectparms;
    const char *      temp_dir;
    const char *      reload_filename;
    char *            reload_connectparms;
    char *            reload_db_filename;
    MSG_CALLBACK      errorrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      msgrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      statusrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      confirmrtn;
    char              unload_type;
    char              verbose;
    char              escape_char;
    char              unload_interrupted;
    a_bit_field       unordered           : 1;
    a_bit_field       no_confirm          : 1;
    a_bit_field       use_internal_unload : 1;
    a_bit_field       refresh_mat_view    : 1;
    a_bit_field       table_list_provided : 1;
    a_bit_field       exclude_tables      : 1;
    a_bit_field       preserve_ids        : 1;
    a_bit_field       replace_db          : 1;
    a_bit_short       escape_char_present : 1;
    a_bit_short       use_internal_reload : 1;
    a_bit_field       recompute           : 1;
    a_bit_field       make_auxiliary      : 1;
    a_bit_field       encrypted_tables    : 1;
    a_bit_field       remove_encrypted_tables : 1;
    a_bit_field       extract             : 1;
    a_bit_field       start_subscriptions : 1;
    a_bit_field       exclude_foreign_keys : 1;
    a_bit_field       exclude_procedures : 1;
    a_bit_field       exclude_triggers    : 1;
    a_bit_field       exclude_views       : 1;
    a_bit_field       isolation_set       : 1;
    a_bit_field       include_where_subscribe : 1;
    a_bit_field       exclude_hooks       : 1;
};
```

```

a_bit_field      startline_name      : 1;
a_bit_field      debug                : 1;
a_bit_field      compress_output      : 1;
a_bit_field      schema_reload        : 1;
a_bit_field      genscript            : 1;
a_bit_field      runscript            : 1;
a_bit_field      display_create       : 1;
a_bit_field      display_create_dbinit : 1;
a_bit_field      preserve_identity_values: 1;
const char *     ms_filename;
int              ms_reserve;
int              ms_size;
long             notemp_size;
p_name           table_list;
a_sysinfo        sysinfo;
const char *     remote_dir;
const char *     subscriber_username;
unsigned short   isolation_level;
const char *     site_name;
const char *     template_name;
char *           reload_db_logname;
const char *     encryption_key;
const char *     encryption_algorithm;
unsigned short   reload_page_size;
const char *     locale;
const char *     startline;
const char *     startline_old;
} an_unload_db;

```

## Members

Members	Description
version	DBTools version number.
connectparms	<p>Parameters needed to connect to the database. They take the form of connection strings, such as the following:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db"</pre> <p>The database server would be started by the connection string START parameter. For example:</p> <pre>"START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>A full example connection string including the START parameter:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db;START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>For a list of connection parameters, see <a href="#">“Connection parameters” [SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration]</a>.</p>
temp_dir	Directory for unloading data files.
reload_filename	The dbunload -r option, something like <i>reload.sql</i> .
reload_connectparms	User ID, password, database for reload database.

Members	Description
reload_db_filename	The file name of reload database to create.
errorrtn	Callback routine for handling an error message.
msggrtn	Callback routine for handling an information message.
statusrtn	Callback routine for handling a status message.
confirmrtn	Callback routine for confirming an action.
unload_type	See <a href="#">“dbunload type enumeration” on page 1010</a> .
verbose	See <a href="#">“Verbosity enumeration” on page 1011</a> .
escape_char	Used when escape_char_present is TRUE.
unload_interrupted	Set if unload interrupted.
unordered	dbunload -u sets TRUE.
no_confirm	dbunload -y sets TRUE.
use_internal_unload	dbunload -ii/-ix sets TRUE. dbunload -xi/-xx sets FALSE.
refresh_mat_view	dbunload -g sets TRUE.
table_list_provided	dbunload -e <i>list</i> or -i sets TRUE.
exclude_tables	dbunload -e sets TRUE. dbunload -i (undocumented) sets FALSE.
preserve_ids	dbunload sets TRUE/-m sets FALSE.
replace_db	dbunload -ar sets TRUE.
escape_char_present	dbunload -p sets TRUE. Note that escape_char must be set.
use_internal_reload	Usually set TRUE; -ix/-xx sets FALSE; -ii/-xi sets TRUE.
recompute	dbunload -dc sets TRUE. Re-compute all computed columns.
make_auxiliary	dbunload -k sets TRUE. Make auxiliary catalog (for use with diagnostic tracing).
encrypted_tables	dbunload -et sets TRUE. Enable encrypted tables in new database (used with -an or -ar).
remove_encrypted_tables	dbunload -er sets TRUE. Remove encryption from encrypted tables.

<b>Members</b>	<b>Description</b>
extract	TRUE if dbxtract, otherwise FALSE.
start_subscriptions	dbxtract TRUE by default, -b sets FALSE.
exclude_foreign_keys	dbxtract -xf sets TRUE.
exclude_procedures	dbxtract -xp sets TRUE.
exclude_triggers	dbxtract -xt sets TRUE.
exclude_views	dbxtract -xv sets TRUE.
isolation_set	dbxtract -l sets TRUE.
include_where_subscribe	dbxtract -f sets TRUE.
exclude_hooks	dbxtract -hx sets TRUE.
startline_name	(internal use)
debug	(internal use)
compress_output	dbunload -cp sets TRUE.
schema_reload	(internal use)
genscript	(internal use)
runscript	(internal use)
display_create	-cm sets TRUE
display_create_dbinit	-cm dbinit sets TRUE
preserve_identity_values	dbunload -l sets TRUE
ms_filename	(internal use)
ms_reserve	(internal use)
ms_size	(internal use)
notemp_size	(internal use)
table_list	Selective table list
sysinfo	(internal use)

Members	Description
remote_dir	(like temp_dir) but for internal unloads on server side.
subscriber_username	Argument to dbxtract.
isolation_level	dbxtract -l sets value.
site_name	For dbxtract: specify a site name.
template_name	For dbxtract: specify a template name.
reload_db_logname	Log file name for the reload database.
encryption_key	-ek sets string.
encryption_algorithm	-ea sets one of "AES", "AES256", "AES_FIPS", or "AES256_FIPS".
reload_page_size	dbunload -ap sets value. Set page size of rebuilt database.
locale	(internal use) locale (language and charset).
startline	(internal use)
startline_old	(internal use)

The members correspond to features accessible from the dbunload and dbxtract utilities.

See the *dbtools.h* header file for additional comments.

### See also

- [“DBUnload function” on page 964](#)
- [“a\\_name structure” on page 978](#)
- [“dbunload type enumeration” on page 1010](#)
- [“Verbosity enumeration” on page 1011](#)
- [“Using callback functions” on page 951](#)

## an\_upgrade\_db structure

Holds information needed to upgrade a database using the DBTools library.

### Syntax

```
typedef struct an_upgrade_db {
    unsigned short    version;
    const char *      connectparms;
    MSG_CALLBACK      errorrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      msgrtn;
    MSG_CALLBACK      statusrtn;
    a_bit_field       quiet          : 1;
};
```

```

    a_bit_field      jconnect      : 1;
} an_upgrade_db;

```

## Members

Member	Description
version	DBTools version number.
connectparms	<p>Parameters needed to connect to the database. They take the form of connection strings, such as the following:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db"</pre> <p>The database server would be started by the connection string START parameter. For example:</p> <pre>"START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>A full example connection string including the START parameter:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db;START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>For a list of connection parameters, see <a href="#">“Connection parameters” [SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration]</a>.</p>
errorrtn	Callback routine for handling an error message.
msgsrtn	Callback routine for handling an information message.
statusrtn	Callback routine for handling a status message.
quiet	Operate without printing messages (1), or print messages (0).
jconnect	Upgrade the database to include jConnect procedures.

## See also

- [“DBUpgrade function” on page 965](#)
- [“Using callback functions” on page 951](#)

## a\_validate\_db structure

Holds information needed for database validation using the DBTools library.

## Syntax

```

typedef struct a_validate_db {
    unsigned short    version;
    const char *      connectparms;
    p_name            tables;
    MSG_CALLBACK      errorrtn;
}

```

```

MSG_CALLBACK      msg rtn;
MSG_CALLBACK      status rtn;
a_bit_field       quiet : 1;
a_bit_field       index : 1;
a_validate_type   type;
} a_validate_db;

```

## Members

Member	Description
version	DBTools version number.
connectparms	<p>Parameters needed to connect to the database. They take the form of connection strings, such as the following:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db"</pre> <p>The database server would be started by the connection string START parameter. For example:</p> <pre>"START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>A full example connection string including the START parameter:</p> <pre>"UID=DBA;PWD=sql;DBF=samples-dir\demo.db;START=d:\sqlany11\bin32\dbeng11.exe"</pre> <p>For a list of connection parameters, see <a href="#">“Connection parameters” [SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration]</a>.</p>
tables	Pointer to a linked list of table names.
errortrn	Callback routine for handling an error message.
msg rtn	Callback routine for handling an information message.
status rtn	Callback routine for handling a status message.
quiet	Operate without printing messages (1), or print messages (0).
index	Validate indexes.
type	See <a href="#">“a_validate_type enumeration” on page 1010</a> .

## See also

- [“DBValidate function” on page 965](#)
- [“a\\_name structure” on page 978](#)
- [“a\\_validate\\_type enumeration” on page 1010](#)
- For more information about callback functions, see [“Using callback functions” on page 951](#).



## DBTools enumeration types

This section lists the enumeration types that are used by the DBTools library. The enumerations are listed alphabetically.

### Blank padding enumeration

Used in the “[a\\_create\\_db structure](#)” on page 971, to specify the value of blank\_pad.

#### Syntax

```
enum {
    NO_BLANK_PADDING,
    BLANK_PADDING
};
```

#### Parameters

Value	Description
NO_BLANK_PADDING	Does not use blank padding.
BLANK_PADDING	Uses blank padding.

#### See also

- “[a\\_create\\_db structure](#)” on page 971

### a\_chkpt\_log\_type enumeration

Used in the “[a\\_backup\\_db structure](#)” on page 967, to control copying of checkpoint log.

#### Syntax

```
typedef enum {
    BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_COPY = 0,
    BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_NOCOPY,
    BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_RECOVER,
    BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_AUTO,
    BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_DEFAULT
} a_chkpt_log_type;
```

#### Parameters

Value	Description
BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_COPY	Use to generate WITH CHECKPOINT LOG COPY clause.
BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_NOCOPY	Use to generate WITH CHECKPOINT LOG NOCOPY clause.

Value	Description
BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_RECOVER	Use to generate WITH CHECKPOINT LOG RECOVER clause.
BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_AUTO	Use to generate WITH CHECKPOINT LOG AUTO clause.
BACKUP_CHKPT_LOG_DEFAULT	Use to omit WITH CHECKPOINT clause.

**See also**

- [“a\\_backup\\_db structure” on page 967](#)

## a\_db\_version enumeration

Used in the [“a\\_db\\_version\\_info structure” on page 975](#), to indicate the version of SQL Anywhere that initially created the database.

**Syntax**

```
enum {
    VERSION_UNKNOWN,
    VERSION_PRE_10,
    VERSION_10,
    VERSION_11
};
```

**Parameters**

Value	Description
VERSION_UNKNOWN	Unable to determine the version of SQL Anywhere that created the database.
VERSION_PRE_10	Database was created using a pre-10 version of SQL Anywhere.
VERSION_10	Database was created using SQL Anywhere 10.
VERSION_11	Database was created using SQL Anywhere 11.

**See also**

- [“DBCreatedVersion function” on page 958](#)
- [“a\\_db\\_version\\_info structure” on page 975](#)

## Database size unit enumeration

Used in the [“a\\_create\\_db structure” on page 971](#), to specify the value of db\_size\_unit.

**Syntax**

```
enum {
    DBSP_UNIT_NONE,
    DBSP_UNIT_PAGES,
    DBSP_UNIT_BYTES,
    DBSP_UNIT_KILOBYTES,
    DBSP_UNIT_MEGABYTES,
    DBSP_UNIT_GIGABYTES,
    DBSP_UNIT_TERABYTES
};
```

**Parameters**

Value	Description
DBSP_UNIT_NONE	Units not specified.
DBSP_UNIT_PAGES	Size is specified in pages.
DBSP_UNIT_BYTES	Size is specified in bytes.
DBSP_UNIT_KILOBYTES	Size is specified in kilobytes.
DBSP_UNIT_MEGABYTES	Size is specified in megabytes.
DBSP_UNIT_GIGAYTES	Size is specified in gigabytes.
DBSP_UNIT_TERABYTES	Size is specified in terabytes.

**See also**

- [“a\\_create\\_db structure” on page 971](#)

**dbtran\_userlist\_type enumeration**

The type of a user list, as used by an [“a\\_translate\\_log structure” on page 995](#).

**Syntax**

```
typedef enum dbtran_userlist_type {
    DBTRAN_INCLUDE_ALL,
    DBTRAN_INCLUDE_SOME,
    DBTRAN_EXCLUDE_SOME
} dbtran_userlist_type;
```

**Parameters**

Value	Description
DBTRAN_INCLUDE_ALL	Include operations from all users.

Value	Description
DBTRAN_INCLUDE_SOME	Include operations only from the users listed in the supplied user list.
DBTRAN_EXCLUDE_SOME	Exclude operations from the users listed in the supplied user list.

**See also**

- [“a\\_translate\\_log structure” on page 995](#)

## dbunload type enumeration

The type of unload being performed, as used by the [“an\\_unload\\_db structure” on page 1000](#).

**Syntax**

```
enum {
    UNLOAD_ALL,
    UNLOAD_DATA_ONLY,
    UNLOAD_NO_DATA,
    UNLOAD_NO_DATA_FULL_SCRIPT
};
```

**Parameters**

Value	Description
UNLOAD_ALL	Unload both data and schema.
UNLOAD_DATA_ONLY	Unload data. Do not unload schema. Equivalent to dbunload -d option.
UNLOAD_NO_DATA	No data. Unload schema only. Equivalent to dbunload -n option.
UNLOAD_NO_DATA_FULL_SCRIPT	No data. Include LOAD/INPUT statements in reload script. Equivalent to dbunload -nl option.

**See also**

- [“an\\_unload\\_db structure” on page 1000](#)

## a\_validate\_type enumeration

The type of validation being performed, as used by the [“a\\_validate\\_db structure” on page 1005](#).

**Syntax**

```
typedef enum {
    VALIDATE_NORMAL = 0,
    VALIDATE_DATA,
    VALIDATE_INDEX,
    VALIDATE_EXPRESS,
    VALIDATE_FULL,
    VALIDATE_CHECKSUM,
    VALIDATE_DATABASE,
    VALIDATE_COMPLETE
} a_validate_type;
```

**Parameters**

Value	Description
VALIDATE_NORMAL	Validate with the default check only.
VALIDATE_DATA	(obsolete)
VALIDATE_INDEX	(obsolete)
VALIDATE_EXPRESS	Validate with express check. Equivalent to dbvalid -fx option.
VALIDATE_FULL	(obsolete)
VALIDATE_CHECKSUM	Validate database checksums. Equivalent to dbvalid -s option.
VALIDATE_DATABASE	Validate database. Equivalent to dbvalid -d option.
VALIDATE_COMPLETE	Perform all possible validation activities.

**See also**

- “a\_validate\_db structure” on page 1005
- “Validation utility (dbvalid)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration](#)]
- “VALIDATE statement” [[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference](#)]

## Verbosity enumeration

Specifies the volume of output.

**Syntax**

```
enum {
    VB_QUIET,
    VB_NORMAL,
    VB_VERBOSE
};
```

### Parameters

Value	Description
VB_QUIET	No output.
VB_NORMAL	Normal amount of output.
VB_VERBOSE	Verbose output, useful for debugging.

### See also

- [“a\\_create\\_db structure” on page 971](#)
- [“an\\_unload\\_db structure” on page 1000](#)

---

# Exit codes

## Contents

Software component exit codes ..... 1014

---

## Software component exit codes

All database tools are provided as entry points in a DLL. These entry points use the following exit codes. The SQL Anywhere utilities (dbbackup, dbspawn, dbeng11, and so on) also use these exit codes.

Code	Status	Explanation
0	EXIT_OKAY	Success
1	EXIT_FAIL	General failure
2	EXIT_BAD_DATA	Invalid file format
3	EXIT_FILE_ERROR	File not found, unable to open
4	EXIT_OUT_OF_MEMORY	Out of memory
5	EXIT_BREAK	Terminated by the user
6	EXIT_COMMUNICATIONS_FAIL	Failed communications
7	EXIT_MISSING_DATABASE	Missing a required database name
8	EXIT_PROTOCOL_MISMATCH	Client/server protocol mismatch
9	EXIT_UNABLE_TO_CONNECT	Unable to connect to the database server
10	EXIT_ENGINE_NOT_RUNNING	Database server not running
11	EXIT_SERVER_NOT_FOUND	Database server not found
12	EXIT_BAD_ENCRYPT_KEY	Missing or bad encryption key
13	EXIT_DB_VER_NEWER	Server must be upgraded to run database
14	EXIT_FILE_INVALID_DB	File is not a database
15	EXIT_LOG_FILE_ERROR	Log file was missing or other error
16	EXIT_FILE_IN_USE	File in use
17	EXIT_FATAL_ERROR	Fatal error or assertion occurred
255	EXIT_USAGE	Invalid parameters on the command line

These exit codes are contained in the *install-dir\sdk\include\sqldef.h* file.



# Deploying SQL Anywhere

This section introduces you to deployment strategies for SQL Anywhere.

---

Deploying databases and applications ..... 1017



---

# Deploying databases and applications

## Contents

Introduction to deployment .....	1018
Understanding installation directories and file names .....	1020
Using the <b>Deployment Wizard</b> .....	1023
Using a silent install for deployment .....	1027
Deploying client applications .....	1029
Deploying administration tools .....	1048
Deploying database servers .....	1074
Deploying external environment support .....	1079
Deploying security .....	1081
Deploying embedded database applications .....	1082

---

## Introduction to deployment

When you have completed a database application, you must deploy the application to your end users. Depending on the way in which your application uses SQL Anywhere (as an embedded database, in a client/server fashion, and so on) you may have to deploy components of the SQL Anywhere software along with your application. You may also have to deploy configuration information, such as data source names, that enable your application to communicate with SQL Anywhere.

### Check your license agreement

Redistribution of files is subject to your license agreement with Sybase. No statements in this document override anything in your license agreement. Check your license agreement before considering deployment.

The following deployment steps are examined in this chapter:

- Determining required files based on the choice of application platform and architecture.
- Configuring client applications.

Much of the chapter deals with individual files and where they need to be placed. However, the recommended way of deploying SQL Anywhere components is to use the **Deployment Wizard** or to use a silent install. For information, see [“Using the Deployment Wizard” on page 1023](#) and [“Using a silent install for deployment” on page 1027](#).

## Types of deployment

The files you need to deploy depend on the type of deployment you choose. Here are some possible deployment models:

- **Client deployment** You may deploy only the client portions of SQL Anywhere to your end users, so that they can connect to a centrally located network database server.
- **Network server deployment** You may deploy network servers to offices, and then deploy clients to each of the users within those offices.
- **Embedded database deployment** You may deploy an application that runs with the personal database server. In this case, both client and personal server need to be installed on the end-user's computer.
- **SQL Remote deployment** Deploying a SQL Remote application is an extension of the embedded database deployment model.
- **MobiLink deployment** For information about deploying MobiLink servers, see [“Deploying MobiLink applications” \[MobiLink - Server Administration\]](#).
- **Administration tools deployment** You may deploy Interactive SQL, Sybase Central and other management tools.

## Ways to distribute files

There are two ways to deploy SQL Anywhere:

- **Use the SQL Anywhere installer** You can make the installer available to your end users. By selecting the proper option, each end user is guaranteed to receive the files they need.

This is the simplest solution for many deployment cases. In this case, you must still provide your end users with a method for connecting to the database server (such as an ODBC data source).

For more information, see [“Using the Deployment Wizard” on page 1023](#) or [“Using a silent install for deployment” on page 1027](#).

- **Develop your own installation** There may be reasons for you to develop your own installation program that includes SQL Anywhere files. This is a more complicated option, and most of this chapter addresses the needs of those who are developing their own installation.

If SQL Anywhere has already been installed for the server type and operating system required by the client application architecture, the required files can be found in the appropriately-named subdirectory, located in the SQL Anywhere installation directory. For example, the *bin32* subdirectory of your installation directory contains the files required to run the server for 32-bit Windows operating systems.

Whichever option you choose, you must not violate the terms of your license agreement.

## Understanding installation directories and file names

For a deployed application to work properly, the database server and client applications must each be able to locate the files they need. The deployed files should be located relative to each other in the same fashion as your SQL Anywhere installation.

In practice, this means that on Windows, most files belong in a single directory. For example, on Windows both client and database server required files are installed in a single directory, which is the *bin32* subdirectory of the SQL Anywhere installation directory.

For a full description of the places where the software looks for files, see “[How SQL Anywhere locates files](#)” [[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration](#)].

## Linux, Unix, and Mac OS X deployment issues

Unix deployments are different from Windows deployments in some ways:

- **Directory structure** For Linux, Unix, and Mac OS X installations, the directory structure is as follows:

Directory	Contents
<i>/opt/sqlanywhere11/bin32</i> and <i>/opt/sqlanywhere11/bin64</i>	Executable files, License files
<i>/opt/sqlanywhere11/lib32</i> and <i>/opt/sqlanywhere11/lib64</i>	Shared objects and libraries
<i>/opt/sqlanywhere11/res</i>	String files

On AIX, the default root directory is */usr/lpp/sqlanywhere11* instead of */opt/sqlanywhere11*.

On Mac OS X, the default root directory is */Applications/SQLAnywhere11/System* instead of */opt/sqlanywhere11*.

- **File suffixes** In the tables in this chapter, the shared objects are listed with a suffix of *.so* or *.so.1*. The version number, 1, could be higher as updates are released. For simplicity, the version number is often not listed.

For AIX, the suffix does not contain a version number so it is simply *.so*.

- **Symbolic links** Each shared object is installed as a symbolic link (symlink) to a file of the same name with the additional suffix *.1* (one). For example, *libdblib11.so* is a symbolic link to the file *libdblib11.so.1* in the same directory.

The version suffix *.1* could be higher as updates are released and the symbolic link must be redirected.

On Mac OS X, you should create a jnilib symbolic link for any dylib that you want to load directly from your Java client application.

- **Threaded and non-threaded applications** Most shared objects are provided in two forms, one of which has the additional characters *\_r* before the file suffix. For example, in addition to *libdblib11.so.1*, there is a file named *libdblib11\_r.so.1*. In this case, threaded applications must be linked to the shared object whose name has the *\_r* suffix, while non-threaded applications must be linked to the shared object whose name does not have the *\_r* suffix. Occasionally, there is a third form of shared object with *\_n* before the file suffix. This is a version of the shared object that is used with non-threaded applications.
- **Character set conversion** If you want to use database server character set conversion, you need to include the following files:
  - *libdbicu11.so.1*
  - *libdbicu11\_r.so.1*
  - *libdbicudt11.so.1*
  - *sqlany.cvf*
- **Environment variables** On Linux and Unix, environment variables must be set for the system to be able to locate SQL Anywhere applications and libraries. It is recommended that you use the appropriate file for your shell, either *sa\_config.sh* or *sa\_config.csh* (located in the directories */opt/sqlanywhere11/bin32* and */opt/sqlanywhere11/bin64*) as a template for setting the required environment variables. Some of the environment variables set by these files include *PATH*, *LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH*, and *SQLANY11*.

For a description of how SQL Anywhere looks for files, see [“How SQL Anywhere locates files” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## File naming conventions

SQL Anywhere uses consistent file naming conventions to help identify and group system components.

These conventions include:

- **Version number** The SQL Anywhere version number is indicated in the file name of the main server components (executable files, dynamic link libraries, shared objects, license files, and so on).

For example, the file *dbeng11.exe* is a version 11 executable for Windows.

- **Language** The language used in a language resource library is indicated by a two-letter code within its file name. The two characters before the version number indicate the language used in the library. For example, *dblgen11.dll* is the message resource library for the English language. These two-letter codes are specified by ISO standard 639-1.

For more information about language labels, see [“Language Selection utility \(dblang\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

For a list of the languages available in SQL Anywhere, see [“Localized versions of SQL Anywhere” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### Identifying other file types

The following table identifies the platform and function of SQL Anywhere files according to their file extension. SQL Anywhere follows standard file extension conventions where possible.

File extension	Platform	File type
<i>.bat, .cmd</i>	Windows	Batch command files
<i>.chm, .chw</i>	Windows	Help system file
<i>.dll</i>	Windows	Dynamic Link Library
<i>.exe</i>	Windows	Executable file
<i>.ini</i>	All	Initialization file
<i>.lic</i>	All	License file
<i>.lib</i>	Varies by development tool	Static runtime libraries for the creation of embedded SQL executables
<i>.res</i>	Linux, Unix, Mac OS X	Language resource file for non-Windows environments
<i>.so</i>	Linux, Unix	Shared object or shared library file. The equivalent of a Windows DLL
<i>.bundle, .dylib</i>	Mac OS X	Shared object file. The equivalent of a Windows DLL

### Database file names

SQL Anywhere databases are composed of two elements:

- **Database file** This is used to store information in an organized format. By default, this file uses a *.db* file extension. There may also be additional dbspace files. These files could have any file extension including none.
- **Transaction log file** This is used to record all changes made to data stored in the database file. By default, this file uses a *.log* file extension, and is generated by SQL Anywhere if no such file exists and a log file is specified to be used. A transaction log mirror has the default extension of *.mlg*.

These files are updated, maintained and managed by the SQL Anywhere relational database management system.



## Using the Deployment Wizard

The SQL Anywhere **Deployment Wizard** is the preferred tool for creating 32-bit deployments of SQL Anywhere for Windows. The **Deployment Wizard** can create installer files that include some or all the following components:

- Client interfaces such as ODBC
- SQL Anywhere server, including remote data access, database tools, and encryption
- UltraLite relational database
- MobiLink server, client, and encryption
- QAnywhere messaging
- Administration tools such as Interactive SQL and Sybase Central

The **Deployment Wizard** does not include support for creating deployments of the 64-bit software components.

You can use the **Deployment Wizard** to create a Microsoft Windows Installer Package file or a Microsoft Windows Installer Merge Module file:

- **Microsoft Windows Installer Package file** A storage file containing the instructions and data required to install an application. An Installer Package file has the extension *.msi*.
- **Microsoft Windows Installer Merge Module file** A simplified type of Microsoft Installer Package file that includes all files, resources, registry entries, and setup logic to install a shared component. A merge module has the extension *.msm*.

A merge module cannot be installed alone because it lacks some vital database tables that are present in an installer package file. Merge modules also contain additional tables that are unique to themselves. To install the information delivered by a merge module with an application, the module must first be merged into the application's Installer Package (*.msi*) file. A merge module consists of the following parts:

- A merge module database containing the installation properties and setup logic being delivered by the merge module.
- A merge module Summary Information Stream describing the module.
- A *MergeModule.CAB* cabinet file stored as a stream inside the merge module. This cabinet contains all the files required by the components delivered by the merge module. Every file delivered by the merge module must be stored inside of a cabinet file that is embedded as a stream in the merge module's structured storage. In a standard merge module, the name of this cabinet is always: *MergeModule.CAB*.

**Note**

Redistribution of files is subject to your license agreement. You must acknowledge that you are properly licensed to redistribute SQL Anywhere files. Check your license agreement before proceeding.

### To create a deployment file

1. Start the **Deployment Wizard**:

- From the **Start** menu, choose **Programs » SQL Anywhere 11 » Deploy SQL Anywhere For Windows**.

or

- From the *Deployment* subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation, run *DeploymentWizard.exe*.

2. Follow the instructions in the wizard.

The **Deployment Wizard** allows you to select subsets of the components included in SQL Anywhere. Each component has dependencies on other components so the files that are selected by the wizard may include files from other categories.

In **Select Features**, the available categories are **Databases**, **Synchronization**, and **Administration Tools**.

### Databases

Use to select or deselect all of its subcategories.

- **SQL Anywhere (32-bit)** Use to select or deselect all of its subcategories.

The following subcategories are available:

- **Client Interface** Use to select or deselect all of its subcategories.
  - **ODBC** The SQL Anywhere ODBC driver.
  - **Embedded SQL** The SQL Anywhere Embedded SQL library.
  - **OLEDB** The SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider.
  - **ADO.NET** The SQL Anywhere .NET provider.
  - **JDBC** The SQL Anywhere JDBC driver.
  - **Client Tools** The SQL Anywhere client libraries like *dblib11*, *dbtool11* and client utilities like *dblocate*, *dbping*, *dbisqlc*, and *dbdsn*.
  - **Client Resources** The SQL Anywhere language resource files like *dblgen11*, *dblgde11*, and *dblges11* and the *dblang* language selection tool.
- **SQL Anywhere Server** Use to select or deselect all of its subcategories.
  - **Personal Server** The SQL Anywhere personal server and license file.
  - **Network Server** The SQL Anywhere network server and license file.
  - **Server Tools** The SQL Anywhere server utilities like *dbbackup*, *dberase*, *dbinit*, *dblog*, *dbsvc*, *dbunload* and so on.
  - **Unload Support** Support for unloading version 9 and earlier databases.
- **UltraLite** Use to select or deselect all of its subcategories.

The following subcategory is available:

- **UltraLite Engine** The UltraLite engine, utilities, and libraries such as uleng11, ulcond11, ulcreate, ulerase, ullgen11, ullgde11, ulrt11, and ulunload.

## Synchronization

Use to select or deselect all of its subcategories.

- **MobiLink** Use to select or deselect all of its subcategories.
  - **MobiLink Client** The MobiLink Client tools and libraries such as dblsn, dbmlsync, mlasinst, dbmlsynccli11, and the MobiLink .NET client provider.
  - **MobiLink Server** The MobiLink server, tools and libraries such as the server, ODBC driver, JDBC driver, and the MobiLink .NET provider.
- **QAnywhere** The QAnywhere application-to-application messaging tools.
- **SQL Remote** The SQL Remote tools and libraries including dbremote, dbextract, and the message transport libraries such as dbsmtp11.

## Administration Tools

Use to select or deselect all of its subcategories.

- **Sybase Central** The Sybase Central database manager and plugins. Use to select or deselect all of its subcategories.
  - **SQL Anywhere Plugin** The SQL Anywhere plugin.
  - **MobiLink Plugin** The MobiLink plugin.
  - **UltraLite Plugin** The UltraLite plugin.
  - **QAnywhere Plugin** The QAnywhere plugin.
- **ISQL** The Interactive SQL tool.
- **DBConsole** The administration and monitoring tool for database server connections.

If you would like to determine what files are included in each selectable component, create an MSI installer image selecting all components. A log file is created that details what files are included in every component. This text file can be examined with a text editor. You will see headings like "Feature: SERVER32\_TOOLS" and "Feature: CLIENT32\_TOOLS". The headings closely correspond to the Deployment Wizard components. This will give you an idea of what is included in each group.

## To install a deployment file

- Use the Microsoft Windows Installer to install the deployment file. Here is a sample command:

```
msiexec /package sqlany11.msi
```

A silent install can be performed using a command like the following:

```
msiexec /qn /package sqlany11.msi SQLANYDIR=c:\sa11
```

- **/package <package-name>** This parameter tells the Microsoft Windows Installer to install the specified package (in this case, *sqlany11.msi*).
- **/qn** This parameter tells the Microsoft Windows Installer to operate in the background with no user interaction.
- **SQLANYDIR** The value of this parameter is the path to where the software is to be installed.

### To uninstall a deployment

- It is also possible to perform a silent uninstall. The following is an example of a command line that would do this.

```
msiexec /uninstall sqlany11.msi
```

Alternately, a product code can be specified.

```
msiexec.exe /qn /uninstall {19972A31-72EF-126F-31C7-5CF249B8593F}
```

- **/qn** This parameter tells the Microsoft Windows Installer to operate in the background with no user interaction.
- **/uninstall <package-name> | <product-code>** This parameter tells the Microsoft Windows Installer to uninstall the product associated with the specified MSI file or product code.

For more tips on how to do silent installs, see [“Using a silent install for deployment” on page 1027](#).

## Using a silent install for deployment

Silent installs run without user input and with no indication to the user that an install is occurring. On Windows operating systems, you can call the SQL Anywhere installer from your own install program in such a way that the SQL Anywhere install is silent.

The options for the SQL Anywhere install program *setup.exe* are:

- **/L:language\_id** The language identifier is a locale number that represents the language for the install. For example, locale ID 1033 identifies U.S. English, locale ID 1031 identifies German, locale ID 1036 identifies French, locale ID 1041 identifies Japanese, and locale ID 2052 identifies Simplified Chinese.
- **/S** This option hides the initialization dialogue. Use this option in conjunction with **/V**.
- **/V** Specify parameters to MSIEXEC, the Microsoft Windows Installer tool.

The following command line example assumes that the install image directory is in the *software* \SQLAnywhere directory on the disk in drive *d*:

```
d:\software\sqlanywhere\setup.exe /l:1033 /s "/v:/qn
REGKEY=PEPEV-E96QE-A4000-00000-00000 INSTALLDIR=c:\sa11 DIR_SAMPLES=c:
\sa11\Samples"
```

### Note

The *setup.exe* in the command above is the one located in the same directory as the *SQLANY32.msi* and *SQLANY64.msi* files. The *setup.exe* in the parent directory of those files does NOT support silent installs.

The following options may be specified on the command line.

- **REGKEY** The value of this parameter must be a valid software installation key.
- **INSTALLDIR** The value of this parameter is the path to where the software is installed.
- **DIR\_SAMPLES** The value of this parameter is the path to where the sample programs are installed.
- **USERNAME** The value of this parameter is the user name to record for this installation (for example, `USERNAME="John Smith"`).
- **COMPANYNAME** The value of this parameter is the company name to record for this installation (for example, `COMPANYNAME="Smith Holdings"`).

The following example includes all the options:

```
d:\software\sqlanywhere\setup.exe /l:1033 /s "/v:/qn
REGKEY=PEPEV-E96QE-A4000-00000-00000
INSTALLDIR=c:\sa11
DIR_SAMPLES=c:\sa11\Samples
USERNAME="John Smith"
COMPANYNAME="Smith Holdings"
```

Although the above text is shown over several lines for reasons of length, it would be specified as a single line of text. Note the use of the backslash character to escape the interior quotation marks.

You can also install the documentation using a silent install. The *setup.exe* for this is in *d:\software* \Documentation. An example of a command line that installs the documentation is:

```
d:\software\documentation\setup.exe /l:1033 /s "/v:/qn"
```

To generate an MSI log add the following to the command line after the `/v`:

```
/l*v! logfile
```

In the above example, `logfile` is the full path and file name of the log file. The path must already exist. Note that this switch will generate an extremely verbose log and will significantly lengthen the time required to execute the install. See the MSI documentation for details on how to reduce the output to the log file (<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa367988.aspx>).

In addition to a silent install, it is also possible to perform a silent uninstall. The following is an example of a command line that would do this.

```
msiexec.exe /qn /uninstall {ECE263B0-6C8B-404C-B4AC-8FAB1C87AB4A}
```

In the above example, you call the Microsoft Windows Installer tool directly.

- **/qn** This parameter tells the Microsoft Windows Installer to operate in the background with no user interaction.
- **/uninstall <product-code>** This parameter tells the Microsoft Windows Installer to uninstall the product associated with the specified product code. The code shown above is for the SQL Anywhere software.

The product codes for SQL Anywhere are:

- **{ECE263B0-6C8B-404C-B4AC-8FAB1C87AB4A}** SQL Anywhere software
- **{10964A7D-722B-4FE5-A16D-4977DCECEE95}** SQL Anywhere documentation

The silent install described above does not address how you would select a subset of the components to install. This topic is better addressed by the **Deployment Wizard**. For information on component selection, see [“Using the Deployment Wizard” on page 1023](#).

## Deploying client applications

To deploy a client application that runs against a network database server, you must provide each end user with the following items:

- **Client application** The application software itself is independent of the database software, and so is not described here.
- **Database interface files** The client application requires the files for the database interface it uses (.NET, ADO, OLE DB, ODBC, JDBC, embedded SQL, or Open Client).
- **Connection information** Each client application needs database connection information.

The interface files and connection information required varies with the interface your application is using. Each interface is described separately in the following sections.

The simplest way to deploy clients is to use the **Deployment Wizard**. For more information, see [“Using the Deployment Wizard” on page 1023](#).

## Deploying .NET clients

The simplest way to deploy .NET assemblies is to use the **Deployment Wizard**. For more information, see [“Using the Deployment Wizard” on page 1023](#).

If your end users will be developing .NET applications, then consider integrating the SQL Anywhere .NET tools into Microsoft Visual Studio. On the client computer, you must do the following.

- Ensure Visual Studio is not running.
- Run `install-dir\Assembly\v2\SetupVSPackage.exe /install`.

If you want to create your own installation, this section describes the files to deploy to the end users.

Each .NET client computer must have the following:

- **A working .NET 2.0 (or later) installation** Microsoft .NET assemblies and instructions for their redistribution are available from Microsoft Corporation. They are not described in detail here.
- **The SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider** The following table shows the files needed for a working SQL Anywhere .NET data provider. These files should be placed in a single directory.

The SQL Anywhere installation places the Windows assembly for the .NET Framework in the `Assembly\v2` subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation directory. The other files are placed in the operating-system subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation directory (for example, `bin32` or `bin64`).

The SQL Anywhere installation places the Windows Mobile assemblies for the .NET Compact Framework in `ce\Assembly\v2`. The other file is placed in the Windows Mobile subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation directory (for example, `ce\arm.50`).

Description	Windows	Windows Mobile
.NET driver file	<i>iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll</i>	<i>iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll</i>
.NET Global Assembly Cache	N/A	<i>iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.gac</i>
Language-resource library	<i>dblg[xx]11.dll</i>	<i>dblg[xx]11.dll</i>
Connect window	<i>dbcon11.dll</i>	N/A

The table above shows files with the designation [xx]. There are several message files each supporting a different language. If you want to install support for different languages, you have to add the resource files for these languages.

For more information about deploying the SQL Anywhere .NET provider, see [“Deploying the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider” on page 139](#).

## Deploying OLE DB and ADO clients

The simplest way to deploy OLE DB client libraries is to use the **Deployment Wizard**. For more information, see [“Using the Deployment Wizard” on page 1023](#).

If you want to create your own installation, this section describes the files to deploy to the end users.

Each OLE DB client computer must have the following:

- **A working OLE DB installation** OLE DB files and instructions for their redistribution are available from Microsoft Corporation. They are not described in detail here.
- **The SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider** The following table shows the files needed for a working SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider. These files should be placed in a single directory. The SQL Anywhere installation places them all in the operating-system subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation directory (for example, *bin32* or *bin64*). For Windows, there are two provider DLLs. The second DLL (*dboledba11*) is an assist DLL used to provide schema support.

Description	Windows
OLE DB driver file	<i>dboledb11.dll</i>
OLE DB driver file	<i>dboledba11.dll</i>
Language-resource library	<i>dblg[xx]11.dll</i>
Connect window	<i>dbcon11.dll</i>
Elevated operations agent	<i>dbelevate11.exe</i> (Vista only)



The table above shows a file with the designation [xx]. There are several message files each supporting a different language. If you want to install support for different languages, you have to add the resource files for these languages.

OLE DB providers require many registry entries. You can make these by self-registering the *dboledb11.dll* and *dboledba11.dll* DLLs using the *regsvr32* utility.

Note that for Windows Vista or later versions of Windows, you must include the SQL Anywhere elevated operations agent which supports the privilege elevation required when DLLs are registered or unregistered. This file is only required as part of the OLE DB provider install or uninstall procedure.

For Windows clients, it is recommended that you use Microsoft MDAC 2.7 or later.

## Customizing the OLE DB provider

When installing the OLE DB provider, the Windows Registry must be modified. Typically, this is done using the self-registration capability built into the OLE DB provider. For example, you would use the Windows *regsvr32* tool to do this. A standard set of registry entries are created by the provider.

In a typical connection string, one of the components is the Provider attribute. To indicate that the SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider is to be used, you specify the name of the provider. Here is a Visual Basic example:

```
connectString = "Provider=SAOLEDB;DSN=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo"
```

With ADO and/or OLE DB, there are many other ways to reference the provider by name. Here is a C++ example in which you specify not only the provider name but also the version to use.

```
hr = db.Open(_T("SAOLEDB.11"), &dbinit);
```

The provider name is looked up in the registry. If you were to examine the registry on your computer system, you would find an entry in `HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT` for SAOLEDB.

```
[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SAOLEDB]
@="SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider"
```

It has two subkeys that contain a class identifier (ClsId) and current version (CurVer) for the provider. Here is an example.

```
[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SAOLEDB\Clsid]
@="{41dfe9f3-db91-11d2-8c43-006008d26a6f}"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SAOLEDB\CurVer]
@="SAOLEDB.11"
```

There are several more similar entries. They are used to identify a specific instance of an OLE DB provider. If you look up the ClsId in the registry under `HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID` and examine the subkeys, you see that one of the entries identifies the location of the provider DLL.

```
[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\
{41dfe9f3-db91-11d2-8c43-006008d26a6f}\
InprocServer32]

@="c:\sa11\bin64\dboledb11.dll"
"ThreadingModel"="Both"
```

The problem here is that the structure is very monolithic. If you were to uninstall the SQL Anywhere software from your system, the OLE DB provider registry entries would be removed from your registry and then the provider DLL would be removed from your hard drive. Any applications that depend on the provider would no longer work.

Similarly, if applications from different vendors all use the same OLE DB provider, then each installation of the same provider would overwrite the common registry settings. The version of the provider that you intended your application to work with would be supplanted by another newer (or older!) version of the provider.

Clearly, the instability that could arise from this situation is undesirable. To address this problem, the SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider can be customized.

In the following exercise, you generate a unique set of GUIDs, choose a unique provider name and unique DLL names. These three things will help you create a unique OLE DB provider which you can deploy with your application.

Here are the steps involved in creating a custom version of the OLE DB provider.

### To customize the OLE DB provider

1. Make a copy of the sample registration file shown below. It is listed after these steps because it is quite lengthy. The file name should have a *.reg* suffix. The names of the registry values are case sensitive.
2. Use the Microsoft Visual Studio `uuidgen` utility to create 4 sequential UUIDs (GUIDs).

```
uuidgen -n4 -s -x >oledbguids.txt
```

3. The 4 UUIDs or GUIDs are assigned in the following sequence:
  - a. The Provider class ID (GUID1 below).
  - b. The Enum class ID (GUID2 below).
  - c. The ErrorLookup class ID (GUID3 below).
  - d. The Provider Assist class ID (GUID4 below). This last GUID is not used in Windows Mobile deployments.

It is important that they be sequential (that is what `-x` in the `uuidgen` command line does for you). Each GUID should appear similar to the following.

Name	GUID
GUID1	41dfe9f3-db92-11d2-8c43-006008d26a6f
GUID2	41dfe9f4-db92-11d2-8c43-006008d26a6f
GUID3	41dfe9f5-db92-11d2-8c43-006008d26a6f
GUID4	41dfe9f6-db92-11d2-8c43-006008d26a6f

Note that it is the first part of the GUID (for example, 41dfe9f3) that is incrementing.

- Use the search/replace capability of an editor to change all the GUID1, GUID2, GUID3, and GUID4 in the text to the corresponding GUID (for example, GUID1 would be replaced by 41dfe9f3-db92-11d2-8c43-006008d26a6f if that was the GUID generated for you by uuidgen).
- Decide on your Provider name. This is the name that you will use in your application in connection strings, and so on (for example, Provider=SQLAny). Do not use any of the following names. These names are used by SQL Anywhere.

Version 10 or later	Version 9 or earlier
SAOLEDB	ASAProv
SAErrorLookup	SAErrorLookup
SAEnum	SAEnum
SAOLEDBA	ASAProvA

- Use the search/replace capability of an editor to change all the occurrences of the string SQLAny to the provider name that you have chosen. This includes all those places where SQLAny may be a substring of a longer string (for example, SQLAnyEnum).

Suppose you chose Acme for your provider name. The names that will appear in the HKEY\_CLASSES\_ROOT registry hive are shown in the following table along with the SQL Anywhere names (for comparison).

SQL Anywhere provider	Your custom provider
SAOLEDB	Acme
SAErrorLookup	AcmeErrorLookup
SAEnum	AcmeEnum
SAOLEDBA	AcmeA

- Make copies of the SQL Anywhere provider DLLs (*dboledb11.dll* and *dboledba11.dll*) under different names. Note that there is no *dboledba11.dll* for Windows Mobile.

```
copy dboledb11.dll myoledb11.dll
copy dboledba11.dll myoledba11.dll
```

A special registry key will be created by the script that is based on the DLL name that you choose. It is important that the name be different from the standard DLL names (such as *dboledb11.dll* or *dboledba11.dll*). If you name the provider DLL *myoledb11* then the provider will look up a registry entry in HKEY\_CLASSES\_ROOT with that same name. The same is true of the provider schema assist DLL. If you name the DLL *myoledba11* then the provider will look up a registry entry in HKEY\_CLASSES\_ROOT with that same name. It is important that the name you choose is unique and is unlikely to be chosen by anyone else. Here are some examples.

DLL name(s) chosen	Corresponding HKEY_CLASSES_ROOTname
<i>myoledb11.dll</i>	HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\myoledb11
<i>myoledba11.dll</i>	HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\myoledba11
<i>acmeOledb.dll</i>	HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\acmeOledb
<i>acmeOledba.dll</i>	HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\acmeOledba
<i>SAcustom.dll</i>	HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SAcustom
<i>SAcustomA.dll</i>	HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SAcustomA

8. Use the search/replace capability of an editor to change all the occurrences of *myoledb11* and *myoledba11* in the registry script to the two DLL names you have chosen.
9. Use the search/replace capability of an editor to change all the occurrences of *d:\myopath\bin32\* in the registry script to the installed location for the DLLs. Be sure to use a pair of slashes to represent a single slash. This step will have to be customized at the time of your application install.
10. Save the registry script to disk and run it.
11. Give your new provider a try. Do not forget to change your ADO / OLE DB application to use the new provider name.

Here is the listing of the registry script that is to be modified.

```

REGEDIT4
; Special registry entries for a private OLE DB provider.

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\myoledb11]
@"Custom SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider 11.0"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\myoledb11\Clsid]
@="{GUID1}"

; Data1 of the following GUID must be 3 greater than the
; previous, for example, 41dfe9f3 + 3 => 41dfe9ee.

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\myoledba11]
@"Custom SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider 11.0"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\myoledba11\Clsid]
@="{GUID4}"

; Current version (or version independent prog ID)
; entries (what you get when you have "SQLAny"
; instead of "SQLAny.11")

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAny]
@"SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAny\Clsid]
@="{GUID1}"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAny\CurVer]
@"SQLAny.11"

```

```

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyEnum]
@="SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider Enumerator"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyEnum\Clsid]
@="{GUID2}"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyEnum\CurVer]
@="SQLAnyEnum.11"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyErrorLookup]
@="SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider Extended Error Support"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyErrorLookup\Clsid]
@="{GUID3}"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyErrorLookup\CurVer]
@="SQLAnyErrorLookup.11"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyA]
@="SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider Assist"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyA\Clsid]
@="{GUID4}"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyA\CurVer]
@="SQLAnyA.11"

; Standard entries (Provider=SQLAny.11)

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAny.11]
@="Sybase SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider 11.0"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAny.11\Clsid]
@="{GUID1}"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyEnum.11]
@="Sybase SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider Enumerator 11.0"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyEnum.11\Clsid]
@="{GUID2}"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyErrorLookup.11]
@="Sybase SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider Extended Error Support 11.0"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyErrorLookup.11\Clsid]
@="{GUID3}"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyA.11]
@="Sybase SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider Assist 11.0"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\SQLAnyA.11\Clsid]
@="{GUID4}"

; SQLAny (Provider=SQLAny.11)

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID1}]
@="SQLAny.11"
"OLEDB_SERVICES"=dword:ffffffff

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID1}\ExtendedErrors]
@="Extended Error Service"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID1}\ExtendedErrors\{GUID3}]

```

```
@="Sybase SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider Error Lookup"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID1}\InprocServer32]
@="d:\mypath\bin32\myoledb11.dll"
"ThreadingModel"="Both"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID1}\OLE DB Provider]
@="Sybase SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider 11.0"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID1}\ProgID]
@="SQLAny.11"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID1}\VersionIndependentProgID]
@="SQLAny"

; SQLAnyErrorLookup

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID3}]
@="Sybase SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider Error Lookup 11.0"
@="SQLAnyErrorLookup.11"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID3}\InprocServer32]
@="d:\mypath\bin32\myoledb11.dll"
"ThreadingModel"="Both"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID3}\ProgID]
@="SQLAnyErrorLookup.11"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID3}\VersionIndependentProgID]
@="SQLAnyErrorLookup"

; SQLAnyEnum

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID2}]
@="SQLAnyEnum.11"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID2}\InprocServer32]
@="d:\mypath\bin32\myoledb11.dll"
"ThreadingModel"="Both"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID2}\OLE DB Enumerator]
@="Sybase SQL Anywhere OLE DB Provider Enumerator"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID2}\ProgID]
@="SQLAnyEnum.11"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID2}\VersionIndependentProgID]
@="SQLAnyEnum"

; SQLAnyA

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID4}]
@="SQLAnyA.11"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID4}\InprocServer32]
@="d:\mypath\bin32\myoledball.dll"
"ThreadingModel"="Both"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID4}\ProgID]
@="SQLAnyA.11"

[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID\{GUID4}\VersionIndependentProgID]
@="SQLAnyA"
```

## Deploying ODBC clients

The simplest way to deploy ODBC clients is to use the **Deployment Wizard**. For more information, see [“Using the Deployment Wizard” on page 1023](#).

Each ODBC client computer must have the following:

- **ODBC Driver Manager** Microsoft provides an ODBC Driver Manager for Windows operating systems. SQL Anywhere includes an ODBC Driver Manager for Linux, Unix, and Mac OS X. There is no ODBC Driver Manager for Windows Mobile. ODBC applications can run without a driver manager but, on platforms for which an ODBC driver manager is available, this is not recommended.
- **Connection information** The client application must have access to the information needed to connect to the server. This information is typically included in an ODBC data source.
- **The SQL Anywhere ODBC driver** The files that must be included in a deployment of an ODBC client application are described next in [ODBC driver required files](#).

### ODBC driver required files

The following table shows the files needed for a working SQL Anywhere ODBC driver. These files should be placed in a single directory. The SQL Anywhere installation places them all in the operating-system subdirectory of your SQL Anywhere installation directory (for example, *bin32* or *bin64*).

The multithreaded version of the ODBC driver for Linux, Unix, and Mac OS X platforms is indicated by "MT".

Platform	Required files
Windows	<i>dbodbc11.dll</i> <i>dbcon11.dll</i> <i>dbicu11.dll</i> <i>dbicudt11.dll</i> <i>dblg[xx]11.dll</i> <i>dbelevate11.exe</i>
Windows Mobile	<i>dbodbc11.dll</i> <i>dbicu11.dll</i> (optional) <i>dbicudt11.dat</i> (optional) <i>dblg[xx]11.dll</i>

Platform	Required files
Linux, Solaris, HP-UX	<i>libdbodbc11.so.1</i> <i>libdbodbc11_n.so.1</i> <i>libdbodm11.so.1</i> <i>libdbtasks11.so.1</i> <i>libdbicu11.so.1</i> <i>libdbicudt11.so.1</i> <i>dblg[xx]11.res</i>
Linux, Solaris, HP-UX MT	<i>libdbodbc11.so.1</i> <i>libdbodbc11_r.so.1</i> <i>libdbodm11.so.1</i> <i>libdbtasks11_r.so.1</i> <i>libdbicu11_r.so.1</i> <i>libdbicudt11.so.1</i> <i>dblg[xx]11.res</i>
AIX	<i>libdbodbc11.so</i> <i>libdbodbc11_n.so</i> <i>libdbodm11.so</i> <i>libdbtasks11.so</i> <i>libdbicu11.so</i> <i>libdbicudt11.so</i> <i>dblg[xx]11.res</i>
AIX MT	<i>libdbodbc11.so</i> <i>libdbodbc11_r.so</i> <i>libdbodm11.so</i> <i>libdbtasks11_r.so</i> <i>libdbicu11_r.so</i> <i>libdbicudt11.so</i> <i>dblg[xx]11.res</i>



Platform	Required files
Mac OS X	<i>dbodbc11.bundle</i> <i>libdbodbc11.dylib</i> <i>libdbodbc11_n.dylib</i> <i>libdbodm11.dylib</i> <i>libdbtasks11.dylib</i> <i>libdbicu11.dylib</i> <i>libdbicudt11.dylib</i> <i>dblg[xx]11.res</i>
Mac OS X MT	<i>dbodbc11_r.bundle</i> <i>libdbodbc11.dylib</i> <i>libdbodbc11_r.dylib</i> <i>libdbodm11.dylib</i> <i>libdbtasks11_r.dylib</i> <i>libdbicu11_r.dylib</i> <i>libdbicudt11.dylib</i> <i>dblg[xx]11.res</i>

### Notes

- For Linux and Solaris platforms, you should create a link to the *.so.1* files. The link name should match the file name with the ".1" version suffix removed.
- There are multithreaded (MT) versions of the ODBC driver for Linux, Unix, and Mac OS X platforms. The file names contain the "\_r" suffix. Deploy these files if your application requires them.
- For Windows, a driver manager is included with the operating system. For Linux, Unix, and Mac OS X, SQL Anywhere provides a driver manager. The file name begins with *libdbodm11*.
- Note that for Windows Vista or later versions of Windows, you must include the SQL Anywhere elevated operations agent (*dbelevate11.exe*) which supports the privilege elevation required to register or unregister the ODBC driver. This file is only required as part of the ODBC driver install or uninstall procedure.
- A language resource library file should also be included. The table above shows files with the designation [xx]. There are several message files each supporting a different language. If you want to install support for different languages, you have to add the resource files for these languages.
- For Windows, the Connect window support code (*dbcon11.dll*) is needed if your end users will create their own data sources, if they need to enter user IDs and passwords when connecting to the database, or if they need to display the Connect window for any other purpose.

## Configuring the ODBC driver

In addition to copying the ODBC driver files onto disk, your installation program must also make a set of registry entries to install the ODBC driver properly.

### Windows

The SQL Anywhere installer makes changes to the Windows Registry to identify and configure the ODBC driver. If you are building an installation program for your end users, you should make the same registry settings.

The simplest way to do this is to use the self-registering capability of the ODBC driver. You use the `regsvr32` utility on Windows or the `regsvrce` utility on Windows Mobile. Note that for 64-bit versions of Windows, you can register both the 64-bit and 32-bit versions of the ODBC driver. By using the self-registering feature of the ODBC driver, you are ensured that the proper registry entries are created. To register the 32-bit and 64-bit versions of the ODBC driver, open up a command prompt and issue the following commands.

```
regsvr32 install-dir\bin32\dbodbc11.dll
regsvr32 install-dir\bin64\dbodbc11.dll
```

You can use the `regedit` utility to inspect the registry entries created by the ODBC driver.

The SQL Anywhere ODBC driver is identified to the system by a set of registry values in the following registry key:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\
SOFTWARE\
ODBC\
ODBCINST.INI\
SQL Anywhere 11
```

Sample values for 32-bit Windows are shown below:

Value name	Value type	Value data
Driver	String	<i>install-dir\bin32\dbodbc11.dll</i>
Setup	String	<i>install-dir\bin32\dbodbc11.dll</i>

There is also a registry value in the following key:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\
SOFTWARE\
ODBC\
ODBCINST.INI\
ODBC Drivers
```

The value is as follows:

Value name	Value type	Value data
SQL Anywhere 11	String	Installed

## 64-bit Windows

For 64-bit Windows, the 32-bit ODBC driver registry entries ("SQL Anywhere 11" and "ODBC Drivers") will be located under the following key:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\  
SOFTWARE\  
Wow6432Node\  
ODBC\  
ODBCINST.INI
```

To view these entries, you must be using a 64-bit version of regedit. If you cannot locate Wow6432Node on 64-bit Windows, then you are using the 32-bit version of regedit.

## Third party ODBC drivers

If you are using a third-party ODBC driver on an operating system other than Windows, consult the documentation for that driver on how to configure the ODBC driver.

## Deploying connection information

ODBC client connection information is generally deployed as an ODBC data source. You can deploy an ODBC data source in one of the following ways:

- **Programmatically** Add a data source description to your end-user's registry or ODBC initialization files.
- **Manually** Provide your end users with instructions, so that they can create an appropriate data source on their own computer.

On Windows, you create a data source manually using the ODBC Administrator, from the User DSN tab or the System DSN tab. The SQL Anywhere ODBC driver displays the configuration window for entering settings. Data source settings include the location of the database file, the name of the database server, and any start up parameters and other options.

On Unix platforms, you can create a data source manually using the SQL Anywhere dbdsn utility. Data source settings include the location of the database file, the name of the database server, and any start up parameters and other options.

This section provides you with the information you need to know for either approach.

## Types of data source (Windows)

There are three kinds of data sources: User data sources, System data sources, and File data sources.

User data source definitions are stored in the part of the registry containing settings for the specific user currently logged on to the system. System data sources, however, are available to all users and to Windows services, which run regardless of whether a user is logged onto the system or not. Given a correctly configured System data source named MyApp, any user can use that ODBC connection by providing DSN=MyApp in the ODBC connection string.

File data sources are not held in the registry, but are held in a special directory. A connection string must provide a FileDSN connection parameter to use a File data source.

### Data source registry entries (Windows)

Each user data source is identified to the system by registry entries. The simplest way to ensure the correct creation of registry entries for data source definitions is to use the SQL Anywhere dbdsn utility to create them.

Otherwise, you must create a set of registry values in a particular registry key.

For User data sources, the key is as follows:

```
HKEY_CURRENT_USER\
  SOFTWARE\
    ODBC\
      ODBC.INI\
        user-data-source-name
```

For System data sources, the key is as follows:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\
  SOFTWARE\
    ODBC\
      ODBC.INI\
        system-data-source-name
```

The key contains a set of registry values, each of which corresponds to a connection parameter. For example, the SQL Anywhere 11 Demo key corresponding to the SQL Anywhere 11 Demo system Data Source Name (DSN) contains the following settings for 32-bit Windows:

Value name	Value type	Value data
Autostop	String	YES
DatabaseFile	String	<i>samples-dir\demo.db</i>
Description	String	SQL Anywhere 11 Sample Database
Driver	String	<i>install-dir\bin32\dbodbc11.dll</i>
Password	String	sql
ServerName	String	demo11
StartLine	String	<i>install-dir\bin32\dbeng11.exe</i>
UserID	String	DBA

**Note**  
 It is recommended that you include the ServerName parameter in connection strings for deployed applications. This ensures that the application connects to the correct server in the event that a computer is running multiple SQL Anywhere database servers and can help prevent timing-dependent connection failures.

In these entries, *install-dir* is the SQL Anywhere installation directory. For 64-bit Windows, *bin32* would be replaced by *bin64*.

In addition, you must add the data source name to the list of data sources in the registry. For user data sources, you use the following key:

```
HKEY_CURRENT_USER\  
  SOFTWARE\  
    ODBC\  
      ODBC.INI\  
        ODBC Data Sources
```

For system data sources, use the following key:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\  
  SOFTWARE\  
    ODBC\  
      ODBC.INI\  
        ODBC Data Sources
```

The value associates each data source with an ODBC driver. The value name is the data source name, and the value data is the ODBC driver name. For example, the system data source installed by SQL Anywhere is named SQL Anywhere 11 Demo, and has the following value:

Value name	Value type	Value data
SQL Anywhere 11 Demo	String	SQL Anywhere 11

**Caution: ODBC settings are easily viewed**

User data source configurations can contain sensitive database settings such as a user's ID and password. These settings are stored in the registry in plain text, and can be viewed using the Windows Registry editors *regedit.exe* or *regedt32.exe*, which are provided by Microsoft with the operating system. You can choose to encrypt passwords, or require users to enter them when connecting.

## Required and optional connection parameters

You can identify the data source name in an ODBC connection string in this manner,

```
DSN=UserDataSourceName
```

On Windows, when a DSN parameter is provided in the connection string, the Current User data source definitions in the Windows Registry are searched, followed by System data sources. File data sources are searched only when FileDSN is provided in the ODBC connection string.

The following table illustrates the implications to the user and developer when a data source exists and is included in the application's connection string as a DSN or FileDSN parameter.

When the data source ...	The connection string must also identify ...	The user must supply ...
Contains the ODBC driver name and location; the name of the database file/server; startup parameters; and the user ID and password.	No additional information	No additional information.
Contains the ODBC driver name and location; the name of the database file/server; startup parameters.	No additional information	User ID and password if not provided in the DSN.
Contains only the name and location of the ODBC driver.	The name of the database file (DBF=) and/or the database server (ENG=). Optionally, it may contain other connection parameters such as Userid (UID=) and PASSWORD (PWD=).	User ID and password if not provided in the DSN or ODBC connection string.
Does not exist	The name of the ODBC driver to be used (Driver=) and the database name (DBN=), the database file (DBF=), and/or the database server (ENG=). Optionally, it may contain other connection parameters such as Userid (UID=) and PASSWORD (PWD=).	User ID and password if not provided in the ODBC connection string.

For more information about ODBC connections and configurations, see the following:

- [“SQL Anywhere database connections” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).
- The Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) SDK, available from Microsoft.

## Deploying embedded SQL clients

The simplest way to deploy embedded SQL clients is to use the **Deployment Wizard**. For more information, see [“Using the Deployment Wizard” on page 1023](#).

Deploying embedded SQL clients involves the following:

- **Installed files** Each client computer must have the files required for a SQL Anywhere embedded SQL client application.
- **Connection information** The client application must have access to the information needed to connect to the server. This information may be included in an ODBC data source.

## Installing files for embedded SQL clients

The following table shows which files are needed for embedded SQL clients.

Description	Windows	Linux / Unix	Mac OS X
Interface library	<i>dblib11.dll</i>	<i>libdblib11_r.so</i>	<i>libdblib11_r.dylib</i>
Thread support library	N/A	<i>libdbtasks11_r.so</i>	<i>libdbtasks11_r.dylib</i>
Language resource library	<i>dblg[xx]11.dll</i>	<i>dblg[xx]11.res</i>	<i>dblg[xx]11.res</i>
Connect window	<i>dbcon11.dll</i>	N/A	N/A

### Notes

- The table above shows files with the designation [xx]. There are several message files each supporting a different language. If you want to install support for different languages, you have to add the resource files for these languages.
- For non-multi-threaded applications on Linux/Unix, use *libdblib11.so* and *libdbtasks11.so*.
- For non-multi-threaded applications on Mac OS X, use *libdblib11.dylib* and *libdbtasks11.dylib*.
- If the client application uses encryption then the appropriate encryption support (*dbecc11.dll*, *dbfips11.dll*, or *dbrsa11.dll*) should also be included.
- If the client application uses an ODBC data source to hold the connection parameters, your end user must have a working ODBC installation. Instructions for deploying ODBC are included in the Microsoft ODBC SDK.  
For more information about deploying ODBC information, see [“Deploying ODBC clients” on page 1037](#).
- The Connect window support (*dbcon11.dll*) is needed if your end users will be creating their own data sources, if they will need to enter user IDs and passwords when connecting to the database, or if they need to display the Connect window for any other purpose.

## Connection information

You can deploy embedded SQL connection information in one of the following ways:

- **Manual** Provide your end users with instructions for creating an appropriate data source on their computer.
- **File** Distribute a file that contains connection information in a format that your application can read.
- **ODBC data source** You can use an ODBC data source to hold connection information.

## Deploying JDBC clients

You must install a Java Runtime Environment to use JDBC. Version 1.6.0 or later is recommended.

In addition to a Java Runtime Environment, each JDBC client requires the iAnywhere JDBC driver or jConnect.

### iAnywhere JDBC driver

To deploy the iAnywhere JDBC driver, you must deploy the following files:

- *jodbc.jar* This must be in the application's classpath. This file is located in the SQL Anywhere installation *java* folder.
- *dbjodbc11.dll* This must be locatable in the system path. On Linux and Unix environments, the file is a shared library called *libdbjodbc11.so*. On Mac OS X, the file is a shared library called *libdbjodbc11.dylib*.
- The ODBC driver files. For more information, see [“ODBC driver required files” on page 1037](#).

### jConnect JDBC driver

To deploy the jConnect JDBC driver, you must deploy the following files:

- The jConnect driver files. For a version of the jConnect software and the jConnect documentation, see [jConnect for JDBC](#).
- When you use a TDS client (either Open Client or jConnect based), you have the option of sending the connection password in clear text or in encrypted form. The latter is done by performing a TDS encrypted password handshake. The handshake involves using private/public key encryption. The support for generating the RSA private/public key pair and for decrypting the encrypted password is included in a special library. The library file must be locatable by the SQL Anywhere server in its system path. For Windows, this file is called *dbrsakp11.dll*. There are both 64-bit and 32-bit versions of the DLL. On Linux and Unix environments, the file is a shared library called *libdbrsakp11.so*. On Mac OS X, the file is a shared library called *libdbrsakp11.dylib*. The file is not necessary if you do not use this feature.

### JDBC database connection URL

Your Java application needs a URL to connect to the database. This URL specifies the driver, the computer to use, and the port on which the database server is listening.

For more information about URLs, see [“Supplying a URL to the driver” on page 509](#).

## Deploying Open Client applications

To deploy Open Client applications, each client computer needs the Sybase Open Client product. You must purchase the Open Client software separately from Sybase. It contains its own installation instructions.

When you use a TDS client (either Open Client or jConnect based), you have the option of sending the connection password in clear text or in encrypted form. The latter is done by performing a TDS encrypted password handshake. The handshake involves using private/public key encryption. The support for



generating the RSA private/public key pair and for decrypting the encrypted password is included in a special library. The library file must be locatable by the SQL Anywhere server in its system path. For Windows, this file is called *dbrsakp11.dll*. There are both 64-bit and 32-bit versions of the DLL. On Linux and Unix environments, the file is a shared library called *libdbrsakp11.so*. On Mac OS X, the file is a shared library called *libdbrsakp11\_r.dylib*. The file is not necessary if you do not use this feature.

Connection information for Open Client clients is held in the interfaces file. For information about the interfaces file, see the Open Client documentation and [“Configuring Open Servers” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

## Deploying administration tools

Subject to your license agreement, you can deploy a set of administration tools including Interactive SQL, Sybase Central, and the SQL Anywhere Console utility.

The simplest way to deploy the administration tools is to use the **Deployment Wizard**. For more information, see [“Using the Deployment Wizard” on page 1023](#).

For information about system requirements for administration tools, see <http://www.sybase.com/detail?id=1002288>.

Initialization files can simplify the deployment of the administration tools. Each of the launcher executables for the administration tools (Sybase Central, Interactive SQL, and the Console utility) can have a corresponding *.ini* file. This eliminates the need for registry entries and a fixed directory structure for the location of the JAR files. These *.ini* files are located in the same directory and with the same file name as the executable file.

- **dbconsole.ini** This is the name of the Console utility initialization file.
- **dbisql.ini** This is the name of the Interactive SQL initialization file.
- **scjview.ini** This is the name of the Sybase Central initialization file.

The initialization file will contain the details on how to load the database administration tool. For example, the initialization file can contain the following lines:

- **JRE\_DIRECTORY=<path>** This is the location of the required JRE. The **JRE\_DIRECTORY** specification is required.
- **VM\_ARGUMENTS=<any required VM arguments>** VM arguments are separated by semicolons (;). Any path values that contain blanks should be enclosed in quotation marks. VM arguments can be discovered by using the `-batch` option of the administration tool (for example, `scjview -batch`) and examining the file that is created. The **VM\_ARGUMENTS** specification is optional.
- **JAR\_PATHS=<path1;path2;...>** A delimited list of directories which contain the JAR files for the program. They are separated by semicolons (;). The **JAR\_PATHS** specification is optional.
- **ADDITIONAL\_CLASSPATH=<path1;path2;...>** Classpath values are separated by semicolons (;). The **ADDITIONAL\_CLASSPATH** specification is optional.
- **LIBRARY\_PATHS=<path1;path2;...>** These are paths to the DLLs/shared objects. They are separated by semicolons (;). The **LIBRARY\_PATHS** specification is optional.
- **APPLICATION\_ARGUMENTS=<arg1;arg2;...>** These are any application arguments. They are separated by semicolons (;). Application arguments can be discovered by using the `-batch` option of the administration tool (for example, `scjview -batch`) and examining the file that is created. The **APPLICATION\_ARGUMENTS** specification is optional.

Here are the contents of a sample initialization file for Sybase Central.

```
JRE_DIRECTORY=c:\Sun\JRE160_x86
VM_ARGUMENTS=-Xmx200m
JAR_PATHS=c:\scj\jars;c:\scj\jhelp
ADDITIONAL_CLASSPATH=
```

```
LIBRARY_PATHS=c:\scj\bin
APPLICATION_ARGUMENTS=-screpository=C:\Documents and Settings\All Users
\Application Data\Sybase Central 6.0.0;-installdir=c:\scj
```

This scenario assumes that a copy of the 32-bit Sun JRE is located in *c:\Sun\JRE160\_x86*. As well, the Sybase Central executable and shared libraries (DLLs) like *jsyblib600* are stored in *c:\scj\bin*. The SQL Anywhere JAR files are stored in *c:\scj\jars*. The Sun JavaHelp 2.0 JAR files are stored in *c:\scj\jhelp*.

**Note**

When you are deploying applications, the personal database server (dbeng11) is required for creating databases using the dbinit utility. It is also required if you are creating databases from Sybase Central on the local computer when no other database servers are running.

## Deploying administration tools on Windows without InstallShield

This section explains how to install Interactive SQL (dbisql), Sybase Central (including the SQL Anywhere, MobiLink, QAnywhere and UltraLite plug-ins), and the SQL Anywhere Console utility (dbconsole) on a Windows computer without using InstallShield. It is intended for those who want to create an installer for these administration tools.

This information applies to all Windows platforms except Windows Mobile. The instructions given here are specific to version 11.0.1 and cannot be applied to earlier or later versions of the software.

**Check your license agreement**

Redistribution of files is subject to your license agreement. No statements in this document override anything in your license agreement. Check your license agreement before considering deployment.

### Before you begin

Before reading this section, you should have an understanding of the Windows Registry, including the REGEDIT application. The names of the registry values are case sensitive.

**Modifying your registry is dangerous**

Modify your registry at your own risk. It is recommended that you back up your system before modifying the registry.

The following steps are required to deploy the administration tools:

1. Decide what you want to deploy.
2. Copy the required files.
3. Register the administration tools with Windows.
4. Update the system path.
5. Register the plug-ins with Sybase Central.

6. Register the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver with Windows.
7. Register the online help files with Windows.

Each of these steps is explained in detail in the following sections.

## Step 1: Deciding what software to deploy

You can install any combination of the following software bundles:

- Interactive SQL
- Sybase Central with the SQL Anywhere plug-in
- Sybase Central with the MobiLink plug-in
- Sybase Central with the QAnywhere plug-in
- Sybase Central with the UltraLite plug-in
- SQL Anywhere Console utility (dbconsole)

The following components are also required when installing any of the above software bundles:

- The SQL Anywhere ODBC Driver
- The Java Runtime Environment (JRE) version 1.6.0

### Note

To check your JRE version on Mac OS X, to go to the **Apple** menu, and then choose **System Preferences » Software Updates**. Click **Installed Updates** for a list of updates that have been applied. If Java 1.6.0 is not in the list, go to [developer.apple.com/java/download/](http://developer.apple.com/java/download/).

The instructions in the following sections are structured so that you can install any (or all) of these six bundles without conflicts.

## Step 2: Copying the required files

The administration tools require a specific directory structure. You are free to put the directory tree in any directory, on any drive. Throughout the following discussion, *c:\sa11* is used as the example installation folder. The software must be installed into a directory tree structure having the following layout:

Directory	Description
<i>sa11</i>	The root folder. While the following steps assume you are installing into <i>c:\sa11</i> , you are free to put the directory anywhere (for example, <i>C:\Program Files\SQLAny11</i> ).

Directory	Description
<i>sa11\java</i>	Holds Java program JAR files.
<i>sa11\bin32</i>	Holds the native 32-bit Windows components used by the program, including the programs that launch the applications.
<i>sa11\Sun\JavaHelp-2_0</i>	The JavaHelp runtime library.
<i>sa11\Sun\jre160_x86</i>	The 32-bit Java Runtime Environment.

**x64**

On most platforms, the Java-based administration tools are 32-bit applications. Except for Mac OS X, there are no 64-bit versions. The 32-bit administration tools can be deployed on x64-based platforms where the 32-bit JRE is available.

**Itanium 64**

There are no Java-based administration tools available for deployment on the Itanium (ia64) platform. However, there is a native version of Interactive SQL that is not as feature-rich as the Java version. See [“Deploying dbisqlc” on page 1072](#).

The following table lists the files required for each of the software bundles. Make a list of the files you need, and then copy them into the directory structure outlined above. In general, you should take the files from an already-installed copy of SQL Anywhere.

File	Inter- active SQL	Sybase Central with the SQL Any- where plug-in	Sybase Central with the Mobi- Link plug-in	Sybase Central with the QAny- where plug-in	Sybase Central with the UltraLite plug-in	SQL Any- where Con- sole
<i>documentation\[xx]\htmlhelp\sqla-nywhere_[xx]11.chm</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>documentation\sqlanywhere_[xx]11.map</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>c:\windows\system32\keyHH.exe<sup>1</sup></i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>java\jodbc.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>java\JComponents1101.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>java\jlogon.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X

File	Inter-active SQL	Sybase Central with the SQL Anywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the Mobi-Link plug-in	Sybase Central with the QAnywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the UltraLite plug-in	SQL Anywhere Console
<i>java\SCEditor600.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>java\jsyblib600.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>Sun\JavaHelp-2_0\jh.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>Sun\jre160_x86\...</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>bin32\jsyblib600.dll</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>bin32\dblib11.dll</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>bin32\dbjodbc11.dll</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>bin32\dbodbc11.dll</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>bin32\dbcon11.dll</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>bin32\dblg[xx]11.dll</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>bin32\dbtool11.dll</i>	X	X	X			
<i>bin32\dbelevate11.exe</i> (Vista and later)	X	X				X
<i>bin32\dbisql.com</i>	X					
<i>bin32\dbisql.exe</i>	X					
<i>java\isql.jar</i>	X	X	X		X	
<i>java\saip11.jar</i>	X	X	X		X	
<i>bin32\scjview.exe</i>		X	X	X	X	
<i>bin32\scvw[xx]600.jar</i>		X	X	X	X	
<i>java\sybasecentral600.jar</i>		X	X	X	X	
<i>java\splib.jar</i>		X	X	X	X	
<i>java\saplugin.jar</i>		X				

File	Inter-active SQL	Sybase Central with the SQL Anywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the Mobi-Link plug-in	Sybase Central with the QAny-where plug-in	Sybase Central with the UltraLite plug-in	SQL Any-where Console
<i>java\debugger.jar</i>		X				
<i>bin32\dbput11.dll</i>		X	X			
<i>java\apache_files.txt</i>			X	X		
<i>java\apache_license_1.1.txt</i>			X	X		
<i>java\apache_license_2.0.txt</i>			X	X		
<i>java\log4j.jar</i>			X	X		
<i>java\mlplugin.jar</i>			X			
<i>java\mldesign.jar</i>			X	X		
<i>java\stax-api-1.0.jar</i>			X			
<i>java\wstx-asl-3.2.6.jar</i>			X			
<i>java\velocity.jar</i>			X			
<i>java\velocity-dep.jar</i>			X			
<i>java\qaplugin.jar</i>				X		
<i>java\qaconnector.jar</i>				X		
<i>java\mlstream.jar</i>				X		
<i>bin32\qaagent.exe</i>				X		
<i>bin32\dbicu11.dll</i>				X		
<i>bin32\dbicudt11.dll</i>				X		
<i>bin32\dbghelp.dll</i>				X		
<i>bin32\dbinit.exe</i>				X		
<i>java\ulplugin.jar</i>					X	

File	Inter-active SQL	Sybase Central with the SQL Anywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the Mobi-Link plug-in	Sybase Central with the QAnywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the UltraLite plug-in	SQL Anywhere Console
<i>bin32\dbconsole.exe</i>						X
<i>java\DBCConsole.jar</i>						X

<sup>1</sup> The exact name of the Windows system directory differs depending on which operating system you are using.

The table above shows files with the designation [xx]. There are several message files each supporting a different language. If you want to install support for different languages, you have to add the resource files for these languages. For more information, see the following section [International message and context-sensitive help files](#).

Some file paths above end with "...". This indicates that the entire tree, including subdirectories, should be copied.

The administration tools require JRE 1.6.0. You should not substitute a later patch version of the JRE unless you have a specific need to do so. Copy the 32-bit version of the JRE files from the *install-dir\Sun\jre160\_x86* directory. Copy the entire *jre160\_x86* tree, including subdirectories.

For reference, the *sqlanywhere.jpr* file contains a list of the jar files for the SQL Anywhere plug-in of Sybase Central.

The *mobilink.jpr* file contains a list of the jar files for the MobiLink plug-in of Sybase Central.

The *qanywhere.jpr* file contains a list of the jar files for the QAnywhere plug-in of Sybase Central. When deploying the QAnywhere plug-in, dbinit is required. For information about deploying database tools, see [“Deploying database utilities” on page 1082](#).

The *ultralite.jpr* file contains a list of the jar files for the UltraLite plug-in of Sybase Central.

### International message and context-sensitive help files

All displayed text and context-sensitive help for the administration tools is translated from English into French, German, Japanese, and Simplified Chinese. The resources for each language are held in separate files. The English files contain **en** in the file names. French files have similar names, but use **fr** instead of **en**. German file names contain **de**, Japanese file names contain **ja**, and Chinese file names contain **zh**.

If you want to install support for different languages, you have to add the message files for those other languages. The translated files are as follows:

<i>dblggen11.dll</i>	English
<i>dblgde11.dll</i>	German



<i>dblgfr11.dll</i>	French
<i>dblgja11.dll</i>	Japanese
<i>dblgzh11.dll</i>	Simplified Chinese

You must also add the context-sensitive help files for those other languages. The available translated files are as follows:

<i>scvwen600.jar</i>	English
<i>scvwde600.jar</i>	German
<i>scvwfr600.jar</i>	French
<i>scvwja600.jar</i>	Japanese
<i>scvwzh600.jar</i>	Simplified Chinese

These files are included with localized versions of SQL Anywhere.

### Step 3: Registering the administration tools with Windows

You must set the following registry values for the administration tools. The names of the registry values are case sensitive.

- In **HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Sybase\Sybase Central\6.0.0**
  - **Language** The two-letter code for the language used by Sybase Central. This must be one of the following: **EN, DE, FR, JA, or ZH** for English, German, French, Japanese, and Simplified Chinese, respectively.
- In **HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Sybase\SQL Anywhere\11.0**
  - **Location** The fully-qualified path to the root of the installation folder (*C:\Program Files\SQL Anywhere 11* by default) containing the Sybase Central files.
  - **Language** The two-letter code for the language used by SQL Anywhere. This must be one of the following: **EN, DE, FR, JA, or ZH** for English, German, French, Japanese, and Simplified Chinese, respectively.

On 64-bit Windows, these registry entries are in the 32-bit registry (**SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\Sybase**).

Paths should *not* end in a backslash.

Your installer can encapsulate all this information by creating a *.reg* file and then executing it. Using our example installation folder of *c:\sa11*, the following is a sample *.reg* file:

```
REGEDIT4
```

```
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Sybase\Sybase Central\6.0.0]
"Language"="EN"

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Sybase\SQL Anywhere\11.0]
"Location"="c:\\sa11"
"Language"="EN"
```

Backslashes in file paths must be escaped by another backslash in a *.reg* file.

## Step 4: Updating the system path

To run the administration tools, the directories with *.exe* and *.dll* files must be included in the path. You must add the *c:\sa11\bin32* directory to the system path.

On Windows, the system path is stored in the following registry key:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\
  SYSTEM\
    CurrentControlSet\
      Control\
        Session Manager\
          Environment\
            Path
```

When you deploy Interactive SQL or Sybase Central, add the following directory to the existing path:

```
c:\sa11\bin32
```

## Step 5: Registering the Sybase Central plug-ins

This step involves the configuration of Sybase Central. If you are not installing Sybase Central, you can skip it.

Sybase Central requires a configuration file that lists the installed plug-ins. Your installer must create this file. Note that it contains full paths to several JAR files that may change depending on where the software is installed.

The file is called *.scRepository600*. On Windows XP/200x, it resides in the *%allusersprofile%\application data\Sybase Central 6.0.0* folder. On Windows Vista, it resides in the *%ProgramData%\Sybase Central 6.0.0* folder. It is a plain text file that contains some basic information about the plug-ins that Sybase Central should load.

On Windows Vista, all users should have read access to the directory that contains the *.scRepository600* file. This can be done using the following command. To do this manually, open an administrator command prompt window (right-click Command Prompt and click Run As Administrator).

```
icacls "%ProgramData%\Sybase Central 6.0.0" /grant everyone:F
```

The provider information for SQL Anywhere is created in the repository file using the following commands.

```
scjview.exe -register "C:\Program Files\SQL Anywhere 11\java\sqlanywhere.jpr"
```

The contents of the *sqlanywhere.jpr* file looks like this (some entries have been split across multiple lines for display purposes). The **AdditionalClasspath** lines must be entered on a single line in the *.jpr* file.

```

PluginName=SQL Anywhere 11
PluginId=sqlanywhere1100
PluginClass=ianywhere.sa.plugin.SAPugin
PluginFile=C:\Program Files\SQL Anywhere 11\java\saplugin.jar
AdditionalClasspath=
    C:\Program Files\SQL Anywhere 11\java\isql.jar;
    C:\Program Files\SQL Anywhere 11\java\salib.jar;
    C:\Program Files\SQL Anywhere 11\java\JComponents1101.jar;
    C:\Program Files\SQL Anywhere 11\java\jlogon.jar;
    C:\Program Files\SQL Anywhere 11\java\debugger.jar;
    C:\Program Files\SQL Anywhere 11\java\jodbc.jar
ClassLoaderId=SA1100
InitialLoadOrder=0

```

The *sqlanywhere.jpr* file was created in the *java* folder of the SQL Anywhere installation when you originally installed SQL Anywhere. Use it as the model for the *.jpr* file that you must create as part of the install process. There are also versions of this file for MobiLink, QAnywhere, and UltraLite called *mobilink.jpr*, *qanywhere.jpr*, and *ultralite.jpr* respectively. They are also located in the *java* folder.

Here is a portion of the *.scRepository600* file that was created using the process described above. Some entries have been split across multiple lines for display purposes. In the file, each entry appears on a single line:

```

# Version: 6.0.0.1154
# Fri Feb 22 10:22:20 EST 2008
#
SCRepositoryInfo/Version=4
#
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/Version=11.0.1.1297
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/UseClassLoader=true
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/ClassLoaderId=SA1100
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/Classpath=
    C:\\Program Files\\SQL Anywhere 11\\java\\saplugin.jar
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/Name=SQL Anywhere 11
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/AdditionalClasspath=
    C:\\Program Files\\SQL Anywhere 11\\java\\isql.jar;
    C:\\Program Files\\SQL Anywhere 11\\java\\salib.jar;
    C:\\Program Files\\SQL Anywhere 11\\java\\JComponents1101.jar;
    C:\\Program Files\\SQL Anywhere 11\\java\\jlogon.jar;
    C:\\Program Files\\SQL Anywhere 11\\java\\debugger.jar;
    C:\\Program Files\\SQL Anywhere 11\\java\\jodbc.jar
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/Provider=ianywhere.sa.plugin.SAPugin
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/ProviderId=sqlanywhere1100
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/InitialLoadOrder=0
#

```

## Notes

- Your installer should create a file similar to this one using the techniques described above. The only changes required are the fully-qualified paths to the JAR files in the Classpath and AdditionalClasspath lines.
- The AdditionalClasspath lines shown above have wrapped to take up additional lines. They must be on a single line in the *.scRepository600* file.
- Backslash characters (\) are represented with an escape sequence of \\ in the *.scRepository600* file.
- The first line indicates the version of the *.scRepository600* file.
- The lines beginning with # are comments.

## Step 6: Creating connection profiles for Sybase Central

This step involves the configuration of Sybase Central. If you are not installing Sybase Central, you can skip it.

When Sybase Central is installed on your system, a connection profile for **SQL Anywhere 11 Demo** is created in the *.scRepository600* file. If you do not want to create one or more connection profiles, then you can skip this step.

The following commands were used to create the **SQL Anywhere 11 Demo** connection profile. Use this as a model for creating your own connection profiles.

```
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Name" "SQL Anywhere
11 Demo"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/FirstTimeStart"
"false"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Description"
"Suitable Description"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/ProviderId"
"sqlanywhere1100"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Provider" "SQL
Anywhere 11"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Data/
ConnectionProfileSettings" "DSN\eSQL^0020Anywhere^002011^0020Demo;UID
\eDBA;PWD\e35c624d517fb"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Data/
ConnectionProfileName" "SQL Anywhere 11 Demo"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Data/
ConnectionProfileType" "SQL Anywhere"
```

The connection profile strings and values can be extracted from the *.scRepository600* file. Define a connection profile using Sybase Central and then look at the *.scRepository600* file for the corresponding lines.

Here is a portion of the *.scRepository600* file that was created using the process described above. Some entries have been split across multiple lines for display purposes. In the file, each entry appears on a single line:

```
# Version: 6.0.0.1154
# Fri Feb 23 13:09:14 EST 2007
#
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Name=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/FirstTimeStart=false
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Description=Suitable Description
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/ProviderId=sqlanywhere1100
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Provider=SQL Anywhere 11
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Data/ConnectionProfileSettings=
DSN\eSQL^0020Anywhere^002011^0020Demo;
UID\eDBA;
PWD\e35c624d517fb
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Data/ConnectionProfileName=
SQL Anywhere 11 Demo
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Data/ConnectionProfileType=
SQL Anywhere
```

## Step 7: Registering the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver

You must install the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver before it can be used by the iAnywhere JDBC Driver in the administration tools.

For more information, see [“Configuring the ODBC driver” on page 1040](#).

## Deploying administration tools on Linux, Solaris, and Mac OS X

This section explains how to install Interactive SQL (dbisql), Sybase Central (including the SQL Anywhere, MobiLink and QAnywhere plug-ins), and the SQL Anywhere Console utility (dbconsole) on Linux, Solaris, and Mac OS X computers. It is intended for those who want to create an installer for these administration tools.

The instructions given here are specific to version 11.0.1 and may not be applicable to earlier or later versions of the software.

Note also that the dbisqlc command line utility is supported on Linux, Solaris, Mac OS X, HP-UX, and AIX. See [“Deploying dbisqlc” on page 1072](#).

### Check your license agreement

Redistribution of files is subject to your license agreement. No statements in this document override anything in your license agreement. Check your license agreement before considering deployment.

### Before you begin

Before you begin, you must install SQL Anywhere on one computer as a source for program files. This is the **reference installation** for your deployment.

The general steps involved are as follows:

1. Decide which programs you want to deploy.
2. Copy the required files.
3. Set environment variables.
4. Register the Sybase Central plug-ins.

Each of these steps is explained in detail in the following sections.

## Step 1: Deciding what you want to deploy

You can install any combination of the following software bundles:

- Interactive SQL
- Sybase Central with the SQL Anywhere plug-in
- Sybase Central with the MobiLink plug-in

- Sybase Central with the QAnywhere plug-in
- SQL Anywhere Console utility (dbconsole)

The following components are also required when installing any of the above software bundles:

- The SQL Anywhere ODBC Driver
- The Java Runtime Environment (JRE) version 1.6.0. On Linux/Solaris, this would be the 32-bit version of the JRE. On Mac OS X, this would be the 64-bit version of the JRE.

The instructions in the next section are structured so that you can install any (or all) of these five bundles without conflicts.

## Step 2: Copying the required files

Your installer should copy a subset of the files that are installed by the SQL Anywhere installer. You must keep the same directory structure. All files must be installed below the `/opt/sqlanywhere11/` directory.

You should preserve the permissions on the files when you copy them from your reference SQL Anywhere installation. In general, all users and groups are allowed to read and execute all files.

The following table lists the files required for each of the software bundles on Linux and Sun Solaris. Make a list of the files you need, and then copy them into the directory structure outlined above. In general, you should take the files from an already-installed copy of SQL Anywhere.

File	Inter-active SQL	Sybase Central with the SQL Anywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the Mobi-Link plug-in	Sybase Central with the QAnywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the UltraLite plug-in [1]	SQL Anywhere Console
<i>java/jodbc.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>java/JComponents1101.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>java/jlogon.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>java/SCEditor600.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>java/jsyblib600.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib32/libjsyblib600_r.so.1</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>sun/javahelp-2_0/jh.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>jre_1.6.0_linux_sun_i586/... (Linux only)</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X

File	Inter-active SQL	Sybase Central with the SQL Anywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the Mobi-Link plug-in	Sybase Central with the QAnywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the UltraLite plug-in [1]	SQL Anywhere Console
<i>jre_1.6.0_solaris_sun_sparc/...</i> (Solaris only)	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib32/libdblib11_r.so.1</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib32/libdbjodbc11.so.1</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib32/libdbodbc11_r.so.1</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib32/libdbodm11.so.1</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib32/libdbtasks11_r.so.1</i>	X	X	X	X		X
<i>res/dblg[xx]11.res</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib32/libdbtool11_r.so.1</i>	X	X	X			
<i>bin32/dbisql</i>	X	X			X	
<i>java/isql.jar</i>	X	X	X		X	
<i>bin32/scjview</i>		X	X	X	X	
<i>bin32/scvw[xx]600.jar</i>		X	X	X	X	
<i>java/sybasecentral600.jar</i>		X	X	X	X	
<i>java/salib.jar</i>		X	X	X	X	
<i>java/saplugin.jar</i>		X			X	
<i>java/debugger.jar</i>		X				
<i>lib32/libdbput11_r.so.1</i>		X				
<i>lib32/libmljodbc11.so.1</i>			X			
<i>java/apache_files.txt</i>			X	X		
<i>java/apache_license_1.1.txt</i>			X	X		
<i>java/apache_license_2.0.txt</i>			X	X		

File	Inter-active SQL	Sybase Central with the SQL Anywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the Mobi-Link plug-in	Sybase Central with the QAnywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the UltraLite plug-in [1]	SQL Anywhere Console
<i>java/log4j.jar</i>			X	X		
<i>java/mlplugin.jar</i>			X			
<i>java/mldesign.jar</i>			X	X		
<i>java/stax-api-1.0.jar</i>			X			
<i>java/wstx-asl-3.2.6.jar</i>			X			
<i>java/velocity.jar</i>			X			
<i>java/velocity-dep.jar</i>			X			
<i>java/qaplugin.jar</i>				X		
<i>java/qaconnector.jar</i>				X		
<i>java/mlstream.jar</i>				X		
<i>lib32/libdbicu11_r.so</i>				X		
<i>lib32/libdbicudt11.so</i>				X		
<i>bin32/dbinit</i>				X		
<i>java/ulplugin.jar</i>					X	
<i>lib32/libulscpl11_r.so.1</i>					X	
<i>lib32/libulhltool11_r.so.1</i>					X	
<i>res/ulg[xx]11.res</i>					X	
<i>bin32/uleng11</i>					X	
<i>bin32/ulcreate</i>					X	
<i>bin32/ulload</i>					X	
<i>bin32/ulunload</i>					X	



File	Inter-active SQL	Sybase Central with the SQL Anywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the Mobi-Link plug-in	Sybase Central with the QAnywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the UltraLite plug-in [1]	SQL Anywhere Console
<i>bin32/ulsync</i>					X	
<i>bin32/ulinit</i>					X	
<i>bin32/ulvalid</i>					X	
<i>bin32/ulerase</i>					X	
<i>bin32/dbconsole</i>						X
<i>java/DBConsole.jar</i>						X

[1] UltraLite is only supported on Linux.

The table above shows files with the designation [xx]. For Linux only, there are several message files each supporting a different language. If you want to install support for different languages, you have to add the resource files for these languages. For more information, see the following section [“International message and context-sensitive help files” on page 1067](#).

The following table lists the files required for each of the software bundles on Mac OS X. Make a list of the files you need, and then copy them into the directory structure outlined above. In general, you should take the files from an already-installed copy of SQL Anywhere.

File	Interac-tive SQL	Sybase Central with the SQL Anywhere plug-in	Sybase Central with the MobiLink plug-in	Sybase Central with the QAnywhere plug-in	SQL Anywhere Console
<i>java/jodbc.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X
<i>java/JComponents1101.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X
<i>java/jlogon.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X
<i>java/SCEditor600.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X
<i>java/jsyblib600.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib64/libjsyblib600_r.dylib</i>	X	X	X	X	X

<b>File</b>	<b>Interac- tive SQL</b>	<b>Sybase Central with the SQL Any- where plug-in</b>	<b>Sybase Central with the MobiLink plug-in</b>	<b>Sybase Central with the QAny- where plug-in</b>	<b>SQL Any- where Console</b>
<i>sun/javahelp-2_0/jh.jar</i>	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib64/libdblib11_r.dylib</i>	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib64/libdbjodbc11.dylib</i>	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib64/libdbodbc11_r.dylib</i>	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib64/libdbodm11.dylib</i>	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib64/libdbtasks11_r.dylib</i>	X	X	X	X	X
<i>res/dblgen11.res</i>	X	X	X	X	X
<i>lib64/libdbtool11_r.dylib</i>	X	X	X		
<i>bin64/dbisql</i>	X	X			
<i>java/isql.jar</i>	X	X	X		
<i>bin64/scjview</i>		X	X	X	
<i>bin64/scvwen600.jar</i>		X	X	X	
<i>java/sybasecentral600.jar</i>		X	X	X	
<i>java/salib.jar</i>		X	X	X	
<i>java/saplugin.jar</i>		X			
<i>java/debugger.jar</i>		X			
<i>lib64/libdbput11_r.dylib</i>		X			
<i>libmljodbc11.dylib</i>			X		
<i>java/apache_files.txt</i>			X	X	
<i>java/apache_license_1.1.txt</i>			X	X	
<i>java/apache_license_2.0.txt</i>			X	X	
<i>java/log4j.jar</i>			X	X	

File	Interac- tive SQL	Sybase Central with the SQL Any- where plug-in	Sybase Central with the MobiLink plug-in	Sybase Central with the QAny- where plug-in	SQL Any- where Console
<i>java/mlplugin.jar</i>			X		
<i>java/mldesign.jar</i>			X	X	
<i>java/stax-api-1.0.jar</i>			X		
<i>java/wstx-asl-3.2.6.jar</i>			X		
<i>java/velocity.jar</i>			X		
<i>java/velocity-dep.jar</i>			X		
<i>java/qaplugin.jar</i>				X	
<i>java/qaconnector.jar</i>				X	
<i>java/mlstream.jar</i>				X	
<i>lib64/libdbicu11_r.dylib</i>				X	
<i>lib64/libdbicudt11.dylib</i>				X	
<i>bin32/dbinit</i>				X	
<i>bin64/dbconsole</i>					X
<i>java/DBConsole.jar</i>					X

For Linux/Solaris, the administration tools require the 32-bit version of JRE 1.6.0. The Mobilink server requires the 64-bit version of JRE 1.6.0. For Mac OS X, the administration tools require the 64-bit version. You should not substitute a later patch version of the JRE unless you have a specific need to do so. Not all platform versions of the JRE are bundled with SQL Anywhere. The platforms that are included with SQL Anywhere support Linux on x86/x64 and Solaris SPARC. Other platforms versions must be obtained from the appropriate vendor. For example, if you are working with a Linux install, copy the entire *jre\_1.6.0\_linux\_sun\_i586* tree, including subdirectories.

If the platform that you require is included with SQL Anywhere, copy the JRE files from an installed copy of SQL Anywhere 11. Copy the entire tree, including subdirectories.

The *sqlanywhere.jpr* file contains a list of the jar files for the SQL Anywhere plug-in of Sybase Central.

The *mobilink.jpr* file contains a list of the jar files for the MobiLink plug-in of Sybase Central.

The *qanywhere.jpr* file contains a list of the jar files for the QAnywhere plug-in of Sybase Central. When deploying the QAnywhere plug-in, dbinit is required. For information about deploying database tools, see [“Deploying database utilities” on page 1082](#).

The *ultralite.jpr* file contains a list of the jar files for the UltraLite plug-in of Sybase Central.

The creation of several links is required for the bundles in the tables above. The following sections provide details.

### Mac OS X

Note that on Mac OS X, shared objects have a *.dylib* extension. Symlink (symbolic link) creation is necessary for the following dylibs:

```
libdbjodbc11.jnilib -> libdbjodbc11.dylib
libdblib11_r.jnilib -> libdblib11_r.dylib
libdbput11_r.jnilib -> libdbput11_r.dylib
libmljodbc11.jnilib -> libmljodbc11.dylib
```

### Linux/Solaris Base component files

All bundles require the links listed in this section.

Create the following symbolic links in */opt/sqlanywhere11/lib32*:

```
libdbicu11_r.so -> libdbicu11_r.so.1
libdbicudt11.so -> libdbicudt11.so.1
libdbjodbc11.so -> libdbjodbc11.so.1
libjsyblib600_r.so -> libjsyblib600_r.so.1
libdbodbc11_r.so -> libdbodbc11_r.so.1
libdbodm11.so -> libdbodm11.so.1
libdbtasks11_r.so -> libdbtasks11_r.so.1
```

Create a symbolic link in */opt/sqlanywhere11/sun*. The symbolic link for Linux is *jre160\_x86* for the 32-bit JRE. The symbolic link for other systems is *jre\_160*.

```
jre160_x86 -> /opt/sqlanywhere11/sun/jre_1.6.0_linux_sun_i586 (Linux)
jre160 -> /opt/sqlanywhere11/sun/jre_1.6.0_solaris_sun_sparc (Solaris)
```

### Linux/Solaris Interactive SQL files

Create the following symbolic links in */opt/sqlanywhere11/lib32*:

```
libdblib11_r.so -> libdblib11_r.so.1
libdbtool11_r.so -> libdbtool11_r.so.1
```

### Linux/Solaris Sybase Central with the SQL Anywhere plug-in

Create the following symbolic links in */opt/sqlanywhere11/lib32*:

```
libdblib11_r.so -> libdblib11_r.so.1
libdbput11_r.so -> libdbput11_r.so.1
libdbtool11_r.so -> libdbtool11_r.so.1
```

### Linux/Solaris Sybase Central with the MobiLink plug-in

Create the following symbolic links in */opt/sqlanywhere11/lib32*:

```
libdblib11_r.so -> libdblib11_r.so.1
libdbmlput11_r.so -> libdbmlput11_r.so.1
libdbtool11_r.so -> libdbtool11_r.so.1
```

Create an additional symbolic link in `/opt/sqlanywhere11/sun` for 64-bit Linux. The symbolic link for Linux is `jre160_x64` for the 64-bit JRE.

```
jre160_x64 -> /opt/sqlanywhere11/sun/jre_1.6.0_linux_sun_x64 (Linux)
```

### Linux/Solaris Sybase Central with the QAnywhere plug-in

Create the following symbolic link in `/opt/sqlanywhere11/lib32`:

```
libdblib11_r.so -> libdblib11_r.so.1
```

### Linux/Solaris The SQL Anywhere Console

Create the following symbolic link in `/opt/sqlanywhere11/lib32`:

```
libdblib11_r.so -> libdblib11_r.so.1
```

### International message and context-sensitive help files

For Linux systems only, all displayed text and context-sensitive help for the administration tools have been translated from English into German, French, Japanese, and Simplified Chinese. The resources for each language are in separate files. The English files contain **en** in the file names. German file names contain **de**, French file names contain **fr**, Japanese file names contain **ja**, and Chinese files contain **zh**.

If you want to install support for different languages, you have to add the message files for those other languages. The translated files are as follows:

<i>dblgen11.res</i>	English
<i>dblgde11_iso_1.res, dblgde11_utf8.res</i>	German (Linux only)
<i>dblgja11_eucjis.res, dblgja11_sjis.res, dblgja11_utf8.res</i>	Japanese (Linux only)
<i>dblgzh11_cp936.res, dblgzh11_eucgb.res, dblgzh11_utf8.res</i>	Simplified Chinese (Linux only)

You must also add the context-sensitive help files for those other languages. The available translated files are as follows:

<i>scvwen600.jar</i>	English
<i>scvwde600.jar</i>	German
<i>scvwfr600.jar</i>	French
<i>scvwja600.jar</i>	Japanese
<i>scvwzh600.jar</i>	Simplified Chinese

These files are included with localized versions of SQL Anywhere.

## Step 3: Setting environment variables

To run the administration tools, several environment variables must be defined or modified. This is usually done in the *sa\_config.sh* file, which is created by the SQL Anywhere installer, but you have the flexibility to do this however is most appropriate for your application.

1. Set the PATH to include the following:

```
/opt/sqlanywhere11/bin32
```

(whichever is appropriate).

2. Set LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH to include the following:

For Linux:

```
/opt/sqlanywhere11/jre_1.6.0_linux_sun_i586/lib/i386/client  
/opt/sqlanywhere11/jre_1.6.0_linux_sun_i586/lib/i386  
/opt/sqlanywhere11/jre_1.6.0_linux_sun_i586/lib/i386/native_threads
```

For Solaris:

```
/opt/sqlanywhere11/jre_1.6.0_solaris_sun_sparc/lib/sparc/client  
/opt/sqlanywhere11/jre_1.6.0_solaris_sun_sparc/lib/sparc  
/opt/sqlanywhere11/jre_1.6.0_solaris_sun_sparc/lib/sparc/native_threads
```

3. Set the following environment variable:

```
SQLANY11="/opt/sqlanywhere11"
```

## Step 4: Registering the Sybase Central plug-ins

This step involves the configuration of Sybase Central. If you are not installing Sybase Central, you can skip it.

Sybase Central requires a configuration file that lists the installed plug-ins. Your installer must create this file. Note that it contains full paths to several JAR files that may change depending on where the software is installed.

The file is called *.scRepository600*. For most Linux and Unix systems, it resides in the */opt/sqlanywhere11/bin32* directory. For Mac OS X, it resides in the */opt/sqlanywhere11/bin64* directory. It is a plain text file that contains some basic information about the plug-ins that Sybase Central should load.

The provider information for SQL Anywhere is created in the repository file using the following commands.

```
scjview -register "/opt/sqlanywhere11/java/sqlanywhere.jpr"
```

The contents of the *sqlanywhere.jpr* file looks like this (some entries have been split across multiple lines for display purposes). The **AdditionalClasspath** lines must be entered on a single line in the *.jpr* file.

```
PluginName=SQL Anywhere 11  
PluginId=sqlanywhere1100  
PluginClass=ianywhere.sa.plugin.SAPlugin  
PluginFile=\_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_saplugin.jar  
AdditionalClasspath=\_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_isql.jar:  
    \_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_salib.jar:  
    \_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_JComponents1101.jar:
```

```

    \_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_jlogon.jar:
    \_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_debugger.jar:
    \_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_jodbc.jar
ClassloaderId=SA1100

```

The *sqlanywhere.jpr* file was created in the *java* folder of the SQL Anywhere installation when you originally installed SQL Anywhere. Use it as the model for the *.jpr* file that you must create as part of the install process. There are also versions of this file for MobiLink and QAnywhere called *mobilink.jpr* and *qanywhere.jpr* respectively. They are also located in the *java* folder.

Here is a sample *.scRepository600* file that was created using the process described above. Some entries have been split across multiple lines for display purposes. In the file, each entry appears on a single line:

```

# Version: 6.0.0.1154
# Fri Feb 23 13:09:14 EST 2007
#
SCRepositoryInfo/Version=4
#
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/Version=11.0.1.1297
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/UseClassloader=true
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/ClassloaderId=SA1100
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/Classpath=
    \_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_sapplugin.jar
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/Name=SQL Anywhere 11
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/AdditionalClasspath=
    \_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_isql.jar:
    \_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_salib.jar:
    \_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_JComponents1101.jar:
    \_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_jlogon.jar:
    \_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_debugger.jar:
    \_opt\_sqlanywhere11\_java\_jodbc.jar
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/Provider=ianywhere.sa.plugin.SAPugin
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/ProviderId=sqlanywhere1100
Providers/sqlanywhere1100/InitialLoadOrder=0
#

```

## Notes

- Your installer should create a file similar to this one using the techniques described above. The only changes required are the fully-qualified paths to the JAR files in the *Classpath* and *AdditionalClasspath* lines.
- The *AdditionalClasspath* lines shown above have wrapped to take up additional lines. They must be on a single line in the *.scRepository600* file.
- Forward slash characters (*/*) are represented with an escape sequence of *\\_* in the *.scRepository600* file.
- The first line indicates the version of the *.scRepository600* file.
- The lines beginning with *#* are comments.

For more information about deploying databases and database applications, see [“Deploying databases and applications” on page 1017](#).

## Step 5: Creating connection profiles for Sybase Central

This step involves the configuration of Sybase Central. If you are not installing Sybase Central, you can skip it.

When Sybase Central is installed on your system, a connection profile for **SQL Anywhere 11 Demo** is created in the `.scRepository600` file. If you do not want to create one or more connection profiles, then you can skip this step.

The following commands were used to create the **SQL Anywhere 11 Demo** connection profile. Use this as a model for creating your own connection profiles.

```
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Name" "SQL Anywhere
11 Demo"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/FirstTimeStart"
"false"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Description"
"Suitable Description"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/ProviderId"
"sqlanywhere1100"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Provider" "SQL
Anywhere 11"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Data/
ConnectionProfileSettings" "DSN\eSQL^0020Anywhere^002011^0020Demo;UID
\eDBA;PWD\e35c624d517fb"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Data/
ConnectionProfileName" "SQL Anywhere 11 Demo"
scjview -write "ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Data/
ConnectionProfileType" "SQL Anywhere"
```

The connection profile strings and values can be extracted from the `.scRepository600` file. Define a connection profile using Sybase Central and then look at the `.scRepository600` file for the corresponding lines.

Here is a portion of the `.scRepository600` file that was created using the process described above. Some entries have been split across multiple lines for display purposes. In the file, each entry appears on a single line:

```
# Version: 6.0.0.1154
# Fri Feb 23 13:09:14 EST 2007
#
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Name=SQL Anywhere 11 Demo
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/FirstTimeStart=false
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Description=Suitable Description
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/ProviderId=sqlanywhere1100
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Provider=SQL Anywhere 11
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Data/ConnectionProfileSettings=
DSN\eSQL^0020Anywhere^002011^0020Demo;
UID\eDBA;
PWD\e35c624d517fb
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Data/ConnectionProfileName=
SQL Anywhere 11 Demo
ConnectionProfiles/SQL Anywhere 11 Demo/Data/ConnectionProfileType=
SQL Anywhere
```



## Configuring the administration tools

You can control which features are shown or enabled by the administration tools. Control is done through an initialization file named *OEM.ini*. This file must be in the same directory as the JAR files used by the administration tools (for example, *C:\Program Files\SQL Anywhere 11\java*). If the file is not found, default values are used. Also, defaults are used for values that are missing from *OEM.ini*.

Here is a sample *OEM.ini* file:

```
[errors]
# reportErrors type is boolean, default = true
reportErrors=true

[updates]
# checkForUpdates type is boolean, default = true
checkForUpdates=true

[dbisql]
disableExecuteAll=false
# lockedPreferences is assigned a comma-separated
# list of one or more of the following option names:
#   autoCommit
#   autoRefetch
#   commitOnExit
#   disableResultsEditing
#   executeToolBarButtonSemantics
#   fastLauncherEnabled
#   maximumDisplayedRows
#   showMultipleResultSets
#   showResultsForAllStatements
lockedPreferences=showMultipleResultSets,commitOnExit
```

Any line beginning with the # character is a comment line and is ignored. The specified option names and values are case-sensitive.

If **reportErrors** is false, the administration tool does not present a window to the user inviting them to submit error information to iAnywhere if the software crashes. Instead, the standard window appears.

If **checkForUpdates** is false, the administration tool does not check for SQL Anywhere software updates automatically, nor does it give the user the option to do it at their discretion.

If **disableExecuteAll** is true, then the **SQL » Execute** menu item and the F5 accelerator key are disabled in Interactive SQL. If the Execute toolbar button is configured for **Execute All Statement(s)**, then it is disabled also. Therefore, you might want to set the Execute toolbar button to **Execute Selected Statement(s)** in Interactive SQL, and then set the `executeToolBarButtonSemantics` option in the *OEM.ini* file to prevent users from changing the Execute toolbar button. See [“Configuring the Execute Statements toolbar button” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

### Preventing users from changing Interactive SQL option settings

In the `[dbisql]` section of the *OEM.ini* file, you can lock the settings of Interactive SQL options so that users cannot change them. The option names are case sensitive. For some options, you can specify whether the setting is locked for SQL Anywhere databases or UltraLite databases. If you do not specify the database type, then the setting is locked for all databases. The following is an example:

```
[dbisql]
lockedPreferences=autoCommit
```

To lock the option setting for only one type of database, prefix **lockedPreferences** with the name of the database type (**SQLAnywhere** or **UltraLite**) followed by a period.

For example, if you want to lock **autoCommit** for SQL Anywhere databases, but not UltraLite, you would add the following line:

```
[dbisql]
SQLAnywhere.lockedPreferences=autoCommit
```

You can prevent users from changing the following Interactive SQL option settings (**SQLAnywhere/ UltraLite** indicates that these options can be locked for a specific database type):

- **autoCommit (SQLAnywhere/UltraLite)** Prevents the user from customizing the **Commit After Every Statement** option. See “[auto\\_commit option \[Interactive SQL\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].
- **autoRefetch (SQLAnywhere/UltraLite)** Prevents the user from customizing the **Automatically Refetch Results** option. See “[auto\\_refetch option \[Interactive SQL\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].
- **commitOnExit (SQLAnywhere/UltraLite)** Prevents the user from customizing the **Commit On Exit Or Disconnect** option. See “[commit\\_on\\_exit option \[Interactive SQL\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].
- **disableResultsEditing (SQLAnywhere/UltraLite)** Prevents the user from customizing the **Disable Editing** option.
- **executeToolBarButtonSemantics** Prevents the user from customizing the behavior of the **Execute** toolbar button. See “[Configuring the Execute Statements toolbar button](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].
- **fastLauncherEnabled** Prevents the user from customizing the fast launcher option.
- **maximumDisplayedRows (SQLAnywhere/UltraLite)** Prevents the user from customizing the **Maximum Number Of Rows To Display** option. “[isql\\_maximum\\_displayed\\_rows option \[Interactive SQL\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].
- **showMultipleResultSets (SQLAnywhere/UltraLite)** Prevents the user from customizing the **Show Only The First Result Set** or **Show All Result Sets** options. See “[isql\\_show\\_multiple\\_result\\_sets \[Interactive SQL\]](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].
- **showResultsForAllStatements (SQLAnywhere/UltraLite)** Prevents the user from customizing the **Show Results From The Last Statement** or **Show Results From Each Statement** options.

## Deploying dbisqlc

If your customer application is running on computers with limited resources, you may want to deploy the dbisqlc executable instead of Interactive SQL (dbisql). However, you should note that dbisqlc does not contain all the features of Interactive SQL and compatibility between the two is not guaranteed. Also, dbisqlc is deprecated because no new features are being added to it; there are currently no plans to remove it from the product.

The dbisqlc executable requires the standard embedded SQL client-side libraries.

For more information about dbisqlc, see “[dbisqlc utility \(deprecated\)](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

For more information about Interactive SQL (dbisql), see “[Interactive SQL utility \(dbisql\)](#)” [*SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration*].

## Deploying database servers

You can deploy a database server by making the SQL Anywhere installer available to your end users. By selecting the proper option, each end user is guaranteed of getting the files they need.

The simplest way to deploy a personal database server or a network database server is to use the **Deployment Wizard**. For more information, see [“Using the Deployment Wizard” on page 1023](#).

To run a database server, you need to install a set of files. The files are listed in the following table. All redistribution of these files is governed by the terms of your license agreement. You must confirm whether you have the right to redistribute the database server files before doing so.

Windows	Linux / Unix	Mac OS X
<i>dbeng11.exe</i>	<i>dbeng11</i>	<i>dbeng11</i>
<i>dbeng11.lic</i>	<i>dbeng11.lic</i>	<i>dbeng11.lic</i>
<i>dsrv11.exe</i>	<i>dsrv11</i>	<i>dsrv11</i>
<i>dsrv11.lic</i>	<i>dsrv11.lic</i>	<i>dsrv11.lic</i>
<i>dserv11.dll</i>	<i>libdserv11_r.so</i> , <i>libdb-tasks11_r.so</i>	<i>libdserv11_r.dylib</i> , <i>libdb-tasks11_r.dylib</i>
<i>dbscript11.dll</i>	<i>libdbscript11_r.so</i>	<i>libdbscript11_r.dylib</i>
<i>dblg[xx]11.dll</i>	<i>dblg[xx]11.res</i>	<i>dblg11.res</i>
<i>dbghelp.dll</i>	N/A	N/A
<i>dbctrs11.dll</i>	N/A	N/A
<i>dbextf.dll</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>libdbextf.so</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>libdbextf.dylib</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>dbicu11.dll</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>libdbicu11_r.so</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>libdbicu11_r.dylib</i> <sup>2</sup>
<i>dbicudt11.dll</i> <sup>2 3</sup>	<i>libdbicudt11.so</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>libdbicudt11.dylib</i> <sup>2</sup>
<i>sqlany.cvf</i>	<i>sqlany.cvf</i>	<i>sqlany.cvf</i>
<i>dbrsakup11.dll</i> <sup>4</sup>	<i>libdbrsakup11_r.so</i> <sup>4</sup>	<i>libdbrsakup11_r.dylib</i> <sup>4</sup>
<i>dbodbc11.dll</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>libdbodbc11.so</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>libdbodbc11.dylib</i> <sup>5</sup>
N/A	<i>libdbodbc11_n.so</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>libdbodbc11_n.dylib</i> <sup>5</sup>
N/A	<i>libdbodbc11_r.so</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>libdbodbc11_r.dylib</i> <sup>5</sup>
<i>dbjodbc11.dll</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>libdbjodbc11.so</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>libdbjodbc11.dylib</i> <sup>5</sup>

Windows	Linux / Unix	Mac OS X
<i>java\jconn3.jar</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>java/jconn3.jar</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>java/jconn3.jar</i> <sup>5</sup>
<i>java\jodbc.jar</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>java/jodbc.jar</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>java/jodbc.jar</i> <sup>5</sup>
<i>java\sajvm.jar</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>java/sajvm.jar</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>java/sajvm.jar</i> <sup>5</sup>
<i>java\cis.zip</i> <sup>6</sup>	<i>java/cis.zip</i> <sup>6</sup>	<i>java/cis.zip</i> <sup>6</sup>
<i>dbcis11.dll</i> <sup>7</sup>	<i>libdbcis11.so</i> <sup>7</sup>	<i>libdbcis11.dylib</i> <sup>7</sup>
<i>libsybbr.dll</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>libsybbr.so</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>libsybbr.dylib</i> <sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Required only if using system extended stored procedures and functions (xp\_\*).

<sup>2</sup> Required only if the database character set is multi-byte or if the UCA collation sequence is used.

<sup>3</sup> On Windows Mobile, the file name to deploy is called *dbicudt11.dat*.

<sup>4</sup> Required only for encrypted TDS connections.

<sup>5</sup> Required only if using Java in the database.

<sup>6</sup> Required only if using Java in the database and remote data access.

<sup>7</sup> Required only if using remote data access.

<sup>8</sup> Required only for archive backups.

## Notes

- Depending on your situation, you should choose whether to deploy the personal database server (dbeng11) or the network database server (dbsrv11).
- You must include the separate corresponding license file (*dbeng11.lic* or *dbsrv11.lic*) when deploying a database server. The license files are located in the same directory as the server executables.
- The table above shows files with the designation [xx]. There are several message files each supporting a different language. If you want to install support for different languages, you have to add the resource files for these languages.
- The Java VM jar file (*sajvm.jar*) is required only if the database server is to use the Java in the Database functionality.
- The table does not include files needed to run utilities such as dbbackup.

For information about deploying utilities, see [“Deploying administration tools” on page 1048](#).

## Windows Registry entries

To ensure that messages written by the server to the Event Log on Windows are formatted correctly, create the following registry key.

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\
SYSTEM\
```

```
CurrentControlSet\  
  Services\  
    Eventlog\  
      Application\  
        SQLANY 11.0
```

Within this key, add a REG\_SZ value named EventMessageFile and assign it the data value of the fully qualified location of *dblgen11.dll*, for example, *C:\Program Files\SQL Anywhere 11\bin32\dblgen11.dll*. The English language DLL, *dblgen11.dll*, can be specified regardless of the deployment language. Here is a sample registry change file.

```
REGEDIT4  
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Eventlog\Application  
\SQLANY 11.0]  
"EventMessageFile"="c:\\sa11\\bin32\\dblgen11.dll"
```

For the 64-bit version of the server, the registry key is SQLANY64 11.0.

To ensure that messages written by MESSAGE ... TO EVENT LOG statements to the Event Log on Windows are formatted correctly, create the following registry key.

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\  
  SYSTEM\  
    CurrentControlSet\  
      Services\  
        Eventlog\  
          Application\  
            SQLANY 11.0 Admin
```

Within this key, add a REG\_SZ value named EventMessageFile and assign it the data value of the fully qualified location of *dblgen11.dll*, for example, *C:\Program Files\SQL Anywhere 11\bin32\dblgen11.dll*. The English language DLL, *dblgen11.dll*, can be specified regardless of the deployment language. Here is a sample registry change file.

```
REGEDIT4  
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Eventlog\Application  
\SQLANY 11.0 Admin]  
"EventMessageFile"="c:\\sa11\\bin32\\dblgen11.dll"
```

For the 64-bit version of the server, the registry key is SQLANY64 11.0 Admin.

You can suppress Windows event log entries by setting up a registry key. The registry key is:

```
Software\Sybase\SQL Anywhere\11.0\EventLogMask
```

and it can be placed in either the HKEY\_CURRENT\_USER or HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE hive. To control event log entries, create a REG\_DWORD value named EventLogMask and assign it a bit mask containing the internal bit values for the different Windows event types. The three types supported by the SQL Anywhere database server are:

```
EVENTLOG_ERROR_TYPE      0x0001  
EVENTLOG_WARNING_TYPE    0x0002  
EVENTLOG_INFORMATION_TYPE 0x0004
```

For example, if the EventLogMask key is set to zero, no messages appear at all. A better setting would be 1, so that informational and warning messages don't appear, but errors do. The default setting (no entry present) is for all message types to appear. Here is a sample registry change file.

```
REGEDIT4
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Sybase\SQL Anywhere\11.0]
"EventLogMask"=dword:00000007
```

## Registering DLLs on Windows

When deploying SQL Anywhere, there are DLL files that must be registered for SQL Anywhere to function properly. Note that for Windows Vista or later versions of Windows, you must include the SQL Anywhere elevated operations agent (*dbelevate11.exe*) which supports the privilege elevation required when DLLs are registered or unregistered.

There are many ways you can register these DLLs, including in an install script or using the regsvr32 utility on Windows or the regsvrce utility on Windows Mobile. You could also include a command, like the one in the following procedure, in a batch file.

### To register a DLL

1. Open a command prompt.
2. Change to the directory where the DLL provider is installed.
3. Enter the following command to register the provider (in this example, the OLE DB provider is registered):

```
regsvr32 dboledb11.dll
```

The following table lists the DLLs that must be registered when deploying SQL Anywhere:

File	Description
<i>dbctrs11.dll</i>	The SQL Anywhere Performance Monitor counters.
<i>dbmlsynccom.dll</i>	The Dbmlsync Integration Component (non-visual component).
<i>dbmlsynccomg.dll</i>	The Dbmlsync Integration Component (visual component).
<i>dbodbc11.dll</i>	The SQL Anywhere ODBC driver.
<i>dboledb11.dll</i>	The SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider.
<i>dboledba11.dll</i>	The SQL Anywhere OLE DB provider schema assist module.
<i>Windows\system32\msxml4.dll</i>	The Microsoft XML Parser.

## Deploying databases

You deploy a database file by installing the database file onto your end-user's disk.

As long as the database server shuts down cleanly, you do not need to deploy a transaction log file with your database file. When your end user starts running the database, a new transaction log is created.

For SQL Remote applications, the database should be created in a properly synchronized state, in which case no transaction log is needed. You can use the Extraction utility for this purpose.

For information about extracting databases, see [“Extracting remote databases” \[SQL Remote\]](#).

## International considerations

When you are deploying a database worldwide, you should consider the locales in which the database is to be used. Different locales may have different sort orders or text comparison rules. For example, the database that you are going to deploy maybe have been created using the 1252LATIN1 collation and this may not be suitable for some of the environments in which it is to be used.

Since the collation of a database cannot be changed after it has been created, you might consider creating the database during the install phase and then populating the database with the schema and data that you want it to have. The database can be created during the install either by using the dbinit utility, or by starting the database server with the utility database and issuing a CREATE DATABASE statement. Then, you can use SQL statements to create the schema and do whatever else is necessary to set up your initial database.

If you decide to use the UCA collation, you can specify additional collation tailoring options for finer control over the sorting and comparing of characters using the dbinit utility or the CREATE DATABASE statement. These options take the form of *keyword=value* pairs, assembled in parentheses, following the collation name. Using the CREATE DATABASE statement, for example, a collation tailoring can be specified using syntax like the following:

```
CHAR COLLATION 'UCA( locale=es;case=respect;accent=respect )'
```

As an alternative, you could create multiple database templates, one for each of the locales in which the database is to be used. This may be suitable if the set of locales you are deploying the database to is relatively small. You can have the installer choose which database to install.

### See also

- [“CREATE DATABASE statement” \[SQL Anywhere Server - SQL Reference\]](#)
- [“Initialization utility \(dbinit\)” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)
- [“Choosing collations” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#)

## Deploying databases on read-only media

You can distribute databases on read-only media, such as a CD-ROM, as long as you run them in read-only mode.

For more information about running databases in read-only mode, see [“-r server option” \[SQL Anywhere Server - Database Administration\]](#).

If you need to make changes to the database, you must copy the database from the CD-ROM to a location where it can be modified, such as a hard drive.



## Deploying external environment support

The following tables summarize the components that must be deployed to support external calls in SQL Anywhere.

### ESQL/ODBC external calls

Component	Windows	Linux / Unix	Mac OS X
ESQL and ODBC launcher	<i>dbexternc11.exe</i>	<i>dbexternc11</i>	<i>dbexternc11</i>
Bridge	<i>dbxtenv11.dll</i>	<i>libdbx- tenv11_r.so</i>	<i>libdbx- tenv11_r.dylib</i>
SQL Anywhere C API runtime	<i>dbcapi.dll</i>	<i>libdbcapi_r.so</i>	<i>libdbcapi_r.dylib</i>

For additional files required by embedded SQL applications, see [“Deploying embedded SQL clients” on page 1044](#).

For additional files required by ODBC applications, see [“Deploying ODBC clients” on page 1037](#).

### Java external calls

Component	Windows	Linux / Unix	Mac OS X
Java installation (third-party)	<i>java.exe</i>	<i>java</i>	<i>java</i>
Launcher	<i>sajvm.jar</i>	<i>sajvm.jar</i>	<i>sajvm.jar</i>
iAnywhere JDBC driver (server-side calls)	<i>dbjodbc11.dll</i>	<i>libdbjodbc11.so</i>	<i>libdbjodbc11.dylib</i>

For additional files required by JDBC applications, see [“Deploying JDBC clients” on page 1046](#).

### .NET CLR external calls

Component	Windows	Linux / Unix	Mac OS X
.NET 2.0 or higher	(from Microsoft)	N/A	N/A
.NET CLR bridge	<i>dbextclr11.exe</i>	N/A	N/A
Bridge	<i>dbxtenv11.dll</i>	<i>libdbx- tenv11_r.so</i>	<i>libdbx- tenv11_r.dylib</i>
.NET CLR support	<i>dbclrenv11.dll</i>	N/A	N/A

**Perl external calls**

Component	Windows	Linux / Unix	Mac OS X
Perl installation (third-party)	<i>perl.exe</i>	<i>perl</i>	<i>perl</i>
Perl launcher	<i>perlenv.pl</i>	<i>perlenv.pl</i>	<i>perlenv.pl</i>
Bridge	<i>dbxextenv11.dll</i>	<i>libdbxextenv11_r.so</i>	<i>libdbxextenv11_r.dylib</i>
SQL Anywhere C API runtime	<i>dbcapi.dll</i>	<i>libdbcapi_r.so</i>	<i>libdbcapi_r.dylib</i>

For additional files required by Perl applications, also [“Introduction to DBD::SQLAnywhere”](#) on page 722.

**PHP external calls**

Component	Windows	Linux / Unix	Mac OS X
PHP installation (third-party)	<i>php.exe</i>	<i>php</i>	<i>php</i>
PHP launcher	<i>phpenv.php</i>	<i>phpenv.php</i>	<i>phpenv.php</i>
Bridge	<i>dbxextenv11.dll</i>	<i>libdbxextenv11_r.so</i>	<i>libdbxextenv11_r.dylib</i>
PHP 5.1.x external calls	<i>php-5.1.[1-6]_sqlanywhere_extenv11.dll</i>	<i>php-5.1.[1-6]_sqlanywhere_extenv11_r.so</i> or build from source code	Build from source code
PHP 5.2.x external calls	<i>php-5.2.[0-6]_sqlanywhere_extenv11.dll</i>	<i>php-5.2.[0-6]_sqlanywhere_extenv11_r.so</i> or build from source code	Build from source code
SQL Anywhere C API runtime	<i>dbcapi.dll</i>	<i>libdbcapi_r.so</i>	<i>libdbcapi_r.dylib</i>
DBLIB (threaded)	<i>dblib11.dll</i>	<i>libdblib11_r.so</i>	<i>libdblib11_r.dylib</i>

For additional files required by PHP applications, see [“Introduction to the SQL Anywhere PHP module”](#) on page 740.

## Deploying security

The following table summarizes the components that support security features in SQL Anywhere.

Security option	Security type	Included in module	Licensable
Database encryption	AES	<i>dbserv11.dll</i> <i>libdbserv11_r.so</i>	included <sup>1</sup>
Database encryption	FIPS-approved AES	<i>dbfips11.dll</i>	separately licensed <sup>2</sup>
Transport layer security	RSA	<i>dbrsa11.dll</i> <i>libdbrsa11.so</i> <i>libdbrsa11.dylib</i> <i>libdbrsa11_r.dylib</i>	included <sup>1</sup>
Transport layer security	FIPS-approved RSA	<i>dbfips11.dll, sbgse2.dll</i>	separately licensed <sup>2</sup>
Transport layer security	ECC	<i>dbecc11.dll</i> <i>libdbecc11.so</i>	separately licensed <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> AES and RSA strong encryption are included with SQL Anywhere and do not require a separate license, but these libraries are not FIPS-certified.

<sup>2</sup> The software for strong encryption using ECC or FIPS-certified technology must be ordered separately.

## Deploying embedded database applications

This section provides information on deploying embedded database applications, where the application and the database both reside on the same computer.

An embedded database application includes the following:

- **Client application** This includes the SQL Anywhere client requirements.  
For information about deploying client applications, see [“Deploying client applications” on page 1029](#).
- **Database server** The SQL Anywhere personal database server.  
For information about deploying database servers, see [“Deploying database servers” on page 1074](#).
- **SQL Remote** If your application uses SQL Remote replication, you must deploy the SQL Remote Message Agent.
- **The database** You must deploy a database file holding the data the application uses.

## Deploying personal servers

When you deploy an application that uses the personal server, you need to deploy both the client application components and the database server components.

The language resource library (*dblg[xx]11.dll*) is shared between the client and the server. You need only one copy of this file.

It is recommended that you follow the SQL Anywhere installation behavior, and install the client and server files in the same directory.

Remember to provide the Java zip files and the Java DLL if your application takes advantage of Java in the Database.

## Deploying database utilities

If you need to deploy database utilities (such as dbbackup) along with your application, then you need the utility executable together with the following additional files:

Description	Windows	Linux / Unix	Mac OS X
Database tools library	<i>dbtool11.dll</i>	<i>libdbtool11_r.so, libdbtasks11_r.so</i>	<i>libdbtool11_r.dylib, libdbtasks11_r.dylib</i>
Interface Library	<i>dblib11.dll</i>	<i>libdblib11_r.so</i>	<i>libdblib11_r.dylib</i>
Language resource library	<i>dblg[xx]11.dll</i>	<i>dblg[xx]11.res</i>	<i>dblg[xx]en11.res</i>

Description	Windows	Linux / Unix	Mac OS X
Connect window	<i>dbcon11.dll</i>		
Pre-10 physical store library	<i>dboftsp.dll</i>	<i>libdboftsp_r.so</i>	N/A

## Notes

- The table above shows files with the designation [xx]. There are several message files each supporting a different language. If you want to install support for different languages, you have to add the resource files for these languages.
- For non-multi-threaded applications on Linux and Unix, you can use *libdbtasks11.so* and *libdblib11.so*.
- For non-multi-threaded applications on Mac OS X, you can use *libdbtasks11.dylib* and *libdblib11.dylib*.
- The pre-10 physical store library is required by some utilities (dblog, dbtran, dberase) to access pre-version 10.0.0 log files. If you are not deploying these utilities, then you do not require this library.
- The personal database server (dbeng11) is required for creating databases using the dbinit utility. It is also required if you are creating databases from Sybase Central on the local computer when no other database servers are running. See [“Deploying database servers” on page 1074](#).
- The dbunload utility may require the contents of the *scripts* directory to be present.

## Deploying unload support for pre 10.0.0 databases

If, in your application, you need the ability to convert older databases to the version 11 format, then you need the database unload utility, dbunload, together with the following additional files:

Description	Windows	Linux / Unix	Mac OS X
Unload support for pre-10.0 databases	<i>dbunlspt.exe</i>	<i>dbunlspt</i>	<i>dbunlspt</i>
Message resource library	<i>dbus[xx].dll</i>	<i>dbus[xx].res</i>	<i>dbus[xx].res</i>

The table above shows files with the designation [xx]. There are several message files each supporting a different language. If you want to install support for different languages, you have to add the resource files for these languages. The message files are as follows.

### Windows message files

<i>dbusde.dll</i>	German
-------------------	--------

<i>dbusen.dll</i>	English
<i>dbuses.dll</i>	Spanish
<i>dbusfr.dll</i>	French
<i>dbusit.dll</i>	Italian
<i>dbusja.dll</i>	Japanese
<i>dbusko.dll</i>	Korean
<i>dbuslt.dll</i>	Lithuanian
<i>dbuspl.dll</i>	Polish
<i>dbuspt.dll</i>	Portuguese
<i>dbusru.dll</i>	Russian
<i>dbustw.dll</i>	Traditional Chinese
<i>dbusuk.dll</i>	Ukrainian
<i>dbuszh.dll</i>	Simplified Chinese

### Linux message files

<i>dbusde_iso_1.res, dbusde_utf8.res, dbusen.res</i>	German
<i>dbusen.res</i>	English
<i>dbusja_eucjis.res, dbusja_sjis.res, dbusja_utf8.res</i>	Japanese
<i>dbuszh_cp936.res, dbuszh_eucgb.res, dbuszh_utf8.res</i>	Chinese

These files are included with localized versions of SQL Anywhere.

In addition to these files, you also need the files described in [“Deploying database utilities” on page 1082](#).

## Deploying SQL Remote

If you are deploying the SQL Remote Message Agent, you need to include the following files:

Description	Windows	Linux / Solaris	Mac OS X
Message Agent	<i>dbremote.exe</i>	<i>dbremote</i>	<i>dbremote</i>

<b>Description</b>	<b>Windows</b>	<b>Linux / Solaris</b>	<b>Mac OS X</b>
Encoding/de-coding library	<i>dbencod11.dll</i>	<i>libdbencod11_r.so.1</i>	<i>libdbencod11_r.dylib</i>
FILE message link library <sup>1</sup>	<i>dbfile11.dll</i>	<i>libdbfile11_r.so.1</i>	<i>libdbfile11_r.dylib</i>
FTP message link library <sup>1</sup>	<i>dbftp11.dll</i>	<i>libdbftp11_r.so.1</i>	<i>libdbftp11_r.dylib</i>
Language resource library	<i>dblg[xx]11.dll</i>	<i>dblg[xx]11.res</i>	<i>dblg[xx]11.res</i>
Interface Library	<i>dblib11.dll</i>	<i>libdblib11_r.so.1</i>	<i>libdblib11_r.dylib</i>
SMTP message link library <sup>1</sup>	<i>dbsmtp11.dll</i>	<i>libdbsmtp11_r.so.1</i>	<i>libdbsmtp11_r.dylib</i>
Database tools library	<i>dbtool11.dll</i>	<i>libdbtool11_r.so.1</i>	<i>libdbtool11_r.dylib</i>
Thread support library	N/A	<i>libdbtasks11_r.so.1</i>	<i>libdbtasks11_r.dylib</i>

<sup>1</sup> Only deploy the library for the message link you are using.

The table above shows files with the designation [xx]. There are several message files each supporting a different language. If you want to install support for different languages, you have to add the resource files for these languages.

It is recommended that you follow the SQL Anywhere installation behavior, and install the SQL Remote files in the same directory as the SQL Anywhere files.

---



# Glossary

---

Glossary ..... 1089



---

# Glossary

---

## **Adaptive Server Anywhere (ASA)**

The relational database server component of SQL Anywhere Studio, intended for use in mobile and embedded environments or as a server for small and medium-sized businesses. In version 10.0.0, Adaptive Server Anywhere was renamed SQL Anywhere Server, and SQL Anywhere Studio was renamed SQL Anywhere.

See also: [“SQL Anywhere” on page 1113](#).

## **agent ID**

See also: [“client message store ID” on page 1091](#).

## **article**

In MobiLink or SQL Remote, an article is a database object that represents a whole table, or a subset of the columns and rows in a table. Articles are grouped together in a publication.

See also:

- [“replication” on page 1111](#)
- [“publication” on page 1108](#)

## **atomic transaction**

A transaction that is guaranteed to complete successfully or not at all. If an error prevents part of an atomic transaction from completing, the transaction is rolled back to prevent the database from being left in an inconsistent state.

## **base table**

Permanent tables for data. Tables are sometimes called **base tables** to distinguish them from temporary tables and views.

See also:

- [“temporary table” on page 1115](#)
- [“view” on page 1117](#)

### **bit array**

A bit array is a type of array data structure that is used for efficient storage of a sequence of bits. A bit array is similar to a character string, except that the individual pieces are 0s (zeros) and 1s (ones) instead of characters. Bit arrays are typically used to hold a string of Boolean values.

### **business rule**

A guideline based on real-world requirements. Business rules are typically implemented through check constraints, user-defined data types, and the appropriate use of transactions.

See also:

- [“constraint” on page 1093](#)
- [“user-defined data type” on page 1117](#)

### **carrier**

A MobiLink object, stored in MobiLink system tables or a Notifier properties file, that contains information about a public carrier for use by server-initiated synchronization.

See also: [“server-initiated synchronization” on page 1112](#).

### **character set**

A character set is a set of symbols, including letters, digits, spaces, and other symbols. An example of a character set is ISO-8859-1, also known as Latin1.

See also:

- [“code page” on page 1091](#)
- [“encoding” on page 1097](#)
- [“collation” on page 1091](#)

### **check constraint**

A restriction that enforces specified conditions on a column or set of columns.

See also:

- [“constraint” on page 1093](#)
- [“foreign key constraint” on page 1098](#)
- [“primary key constraint” on page 1108](#)
- [“unique constraint” on page 1116](#)

### **checkpoint**

The point at which all changes to the database are saved to the database file. At other times, committed changes are saved only to the transaction log.

---

## checksum

The calculated number of bits of a database page that is recorded with the database page itself. The checksum allows the database management system to validate the integrity of the page by ensuring that the numbers match as the page is being written to disk. If the counts match, it's assumed that page was successfully written.

## client message store

In QAnywhere, a SQL Anywhere database on the remote device that stores messages.

## client message store ID

In QAnywhere, a MobiLink remote ID that uniquely identifies a client message store.

## client/server

A software architecture where one application (the client) obtains information from and sends information to another application (the server). The two applications often reside on different computers connected by a network.

## code page

A code page is an encoding that maps characters of a character set to numeric representations, typically an integer between 0 and 255. An example of a code page is Windows code page 1252. For the purposes of this documentation, code page and encoding are interchangeable terms.

See also:

- [“character set” on page 1090](#)
- [“encoding” on page 1097](#)
- [“collation” on page 1091](#)

## collation

A combination of a character set and a sort order that defines the properties of text in the database. For SQL Anywhere databases, the default collation is determined by the operating system and language on which the server is running; for example, the default collation on English Windows systems is 1252LATIN1. A collation, also called a collating sequence, is used for comparing and sorting strings.

See also:

- [“character set” on page 1090](#)
- [“code page” on page 1091](#)
- [“encoding” on page 1097](#)

## command file

A text file containing SQL statements. Command files can be built manually, or they can be built automatically by database utilities. The dbunload utility, for example, creates a command file consisting of the SQL statements necessary to recreate a given database.

### **communication stream**

In MobiLink, the network protocol used for communication between the MobiLink client and the MobiLink server.

### **concurrency**

The simultaneous execution of two or more independent, and possibly competing, processes. SQL Anywhere automatically uses locking to isolate transactions and ensure that each concurrent application sees a consistent set of data.

See also:

- [“transaction” on page 1115](#)
- [“isolation level” on page 1101](#)

### **conflict resolution**

In MobiLink, conflict resolution is logic that specifies what to do when two users modify the same row on different remote databases.

### **connection ID**

A unique number that identifies a given connection between a client application and the database. You can determine the current connection ID using the following SQL statement:

```
SELECT CONNECTION_PROPERTY( 'Number' );
```

### **connection-initiated synchronization**

A form of MobiLink server-initiated synchronization in which synchronization is initiated when there are changes to connectivity.

See also: [“server-initiated synchronization” on page 1112](#).

### **connection profile**

A set of parameters that are required to connect to a database, such as user name, password, and server name, that is stored and used as a convenience.

### **consolidated database**

In distributed database environments, a database that stores the master copy of the data. In case of conflict or discrepancy, the consolidated database is considered to have the primary copy of the data.

See also:

- [“synchronization” on page 1115](#)
- [“replication” on page 1111](#)

---

## constraint

A restriction on the values contained in a particular database object, such as a table or column. For example, a column may have a uniqueness constraint, which requires that all values in the column be different. A table may have a foreign key constraint, which specifies how the information in the table relates to data in some other table.

See also:

- [“check constraint” on page 1090](#)
- [“foreign key constraint” on page 1098](#)
- [“primary key constraint” on page 1108](#)
- [“unique constraint” on page 1116](#)

## contention

The act of competing for resources. For example, in database terms, two or more users trying to edit the same row of a database contend for the rights to edit that row.

## correlation name

The name of a table or view that is used in the FROM clause of a query—either its original name, or an alternate name, that is defined in the FROM clause.

## creator ID

In UltraLite Palm OS applications, an ID that is assigned when the application is created.

## cursor

A named linkage to a result set, used to access and update rows from a programming interface. In SQL Anywhere, cursors support forward and backward movement through the query results. Cursors consist of two parts: the cursor result set, typically defined by a SELECT statement; and the cursor position.

See also:

- [“cursor result set” on page 1093](#)
- [“cursor position” on page 1093](#)

## cursor position

A pointer to one row within the cursor result set.

See also:

- [“cursor” on page 1093](#)
- [“cursor result set” on page 1093](#)

## cursor result set

The set of rows resulting from a query that is associated with a cursor.

See also:

- [“cursor” on page 1093](#)
- [“cursor position” on page 1093](#)

### **data cube**

A multi-dimensional result set with each dimension reflecting a different way to group and sort the same results. Data cubes provide complex information about data that would otherwise require self-join queries and correlated subqueries. Data cubes are a part of OLAP functionality.

### **data definition language (DDL)**

The subset of SQL statements for defining the structure of data in the database. DDL statements create, modify, and remove database objects, such as tables and users.

### **data manipulation language (DML)**

The subset of SQL statements for manipulating data in the database. DML statements retrieve, insert, update, and delete data in the database.

### **data type**

The format of data, such as CHAR or NUMERIC. In the ANSI SQL standard, data types can also include a restriction on size, character set, and collation.

See also: [“domain” on page 1096](#).

### **database**

A collection of tables that are related by primary and foreign keys. The tables hold the information in the database. The tables and keys together define the structure of the database. A database management system accesses this information.

See also:

- [“foreign key” on page 1098](#)
- [“primary key” on page 1108](#)
- [“database management system \(DBMS\)” on page 1095](#)
- [“relational database management system \(RDBMS\)” on page 1110](#)

### **database administrator (DBA)**

The user with the permissions required to maintain the database. The DBA is generally responsible for all changes to a database schema, and for managing users and groups. The role of database administrator is automatically built into databases as user ID DBA with password sql.



---

## database connection

A communication channel between a client application and the database. A valid user ID and password are required to establish a connection. The privileges granted to the user ID determine the actions that can be carried out during the connection.

## database file

A database is held in one or more database files. There is an initial file, and subsequent files are called dbspaces. Each table, including its indexes, must be contained within a single database file.

See also: [“dbspace” on page 1096](#).

## database management system (DBMS)

A collection of programs that allow you to create and use databases.

See also: [“relational database management system \(RDBMS\)” on page 1110](#).

## database name

The name given to a database when it is loaded by a server. The default database name is the root of the initial database file.

See also: [“database file” on page 1095](#).

## database object

A component of a database that contains or receives information. Tables, indexes, views, procedures, and triggers are database objects.

## database owner (dbo)

A special user that owns the system objects not owned by SYS.

See also:

- [“database administrator \(DBA\)” on page 1094](#)
- [“SYS” on page 1115](#)

## database server

A computer program that regulates all access to information in a database. SQL Anywhere provides two types of servers: network servers and personal servers.

## DBA authority

The level of permission that enables a user to do administrative activity in the database. The DBA user has DBA authority by default.

See also: [“database administrator \(DBA\)” on page 1094](#).

## **dbspace**

An additional database file that creates more space for data. A database can be held in up to 13 separate files (an initial file and 12 dbspaces). Each table, together with its indexes, must be contained in a single database file. The SQL command CREATE DBSPACE adds a new file to the database.

See also: [“database file” on page 1095](#).

## **deadlock**

A state where a set of transactions arrives at a place where none can proceed.

## **device tracking**

In MobiLink server-initiated synchronization, functionality that allows you to address messages using the MobiLink user name that identifies a device.

See also: [“server-initiated synchronization” on page 1112](#).

## **direct row handling**

In MobiLink, a way to synchronize table data to sources other than the MobiLink-supported consolidated databases. You can implement both uploads and downloads with direct row handling.

See also:

- [“consolidated database” on page 1092](#)
- [“SQL-based synchronization” on page 1113](#)

## **domain**

Aliases for built-in data types, including precision and scale values where applicable, and optionally including DEFAULT values and CHECK conditions. Some domains, such as the monetary data types, are pre-defined in SQL Anywhere. Also called user-defined data type.

See also: [“data type” on page 1094](#).

## **download**

The stage in synchronization where data is transferred from the consolidated database to a remote database.

## **dynamic SQL**

SQL that is generated programmatically by your program before it is executed. UltraLite dynamic SQL is a variant designed for small-footprint devices.

## **EBF**

Express Bug Fix. An express bug fix is a subset of the software with one or more bug fixes. The bug fixes are listed in the release notes for the update. Bug fix updates may only be applied to installed software with the same version number. Some testing has been performed on the software, but the software has not

---

undergone full testing. You should not distribute these files with your application unless you have verified the suitability of the software yourself.

## **embedded SQL**

A programming interface for C programs. SQL Anywhere embedded SQL is an implementation of the ANSI and IBM standard.

## **encoding**

Also known as character encoding, an encoding is a method by which each character in a character set is mapped onto one or more bytes of information, typically represented as a hexadecimal number. An example of an encoding is UTF-8.

See also:

- [“character set” on page 1090](#)
- [“code page” on page 1091](#)
- [“collation” on page 1091](#)

## **event model**

In MobiLink, the sequence of events that make up a synchronization, such as `begin_synchronization` and `download_cursor`. Events are invoked if a script is created for them.

## **external login**

An alternate login name and password used when communicating with a remote server. By default, SQL Anywhere uses the names and passwords of its clients whenever it connects to a remote server on behalf of those clients. However, this default can be overridden by creating external logins. External logins are alternate login names and passwords used when communicating with a remote server.

## **extraction**

In SQL Remote replication, the act of unloading the appropriate structure and data from the consolidated database. This information is used to initialize the remote database.

See also: [“replication” on page 1111](#).

## **failover**

Switching to a redundant or standby server, system, or network on failure or unplanned termination of the active server, system, or network. Failover happens automatically.

## **FILE**

In SQL Remote replication, a message system that uses shared files for exchanging replication messages. This is useful for testing and for installations without an explicit message-transport system.

See also: [“replication” on page 1111](#).

### **file-based download**

In MobiLink, a way to synchronize data in which downloads are distributed as files, allowing offline distribution of synchronization changes.

### **file-definition database**

In MobiLink, a SQL Anywhere database that is used for creating download files.

See also: [“file-based download” on page 1098](#).

### **foreign key**

One or more columns in a table that duplicate the primary key values in another table. Foreign keys establish relationships between tables.

See also:

- [“primary key” on page 1108](#)
- [“foreign table” on page 1098](#)

### **foreign key constraint**

A restriction on a column or set of columns that specifies how the data in the table relates to the data in some other table. Imposing a foreign key constraint on a set of columns makes those columns the foreign key.

See also:

- [“constraint” on page 1093](#)
- [“check constraint” on page 1090](#)
- [“primary key constraint” on page 1108](#)
- [“unique constraint” on page 1116](#)

### **foreign table**

The table containing the foreign key.

See also: [“foreign key” on page 1098](#).

### **full backup**

A backup of the entire database, and optionally, the transaction log. A full backup contains all the information in the database and provides protection in the event of a system or media failure.

See also: [“incremental backup” on page 1100](#).

### **gateway**

A MobiLink object, stored in MobiLink system tables or a Notifier properties file, that contains information about how to send messages for server-initiated synchronization.

See also: [“server-initiated synchronization” on page 1112](#).

---

## generated join condition

A restriction on join results that is automatically generated. There are two types: key and natural. Key joins are generated when you specify `KEY JOIN` or when you specify the keyword `JOIN` but do not use the keywords `CROSS`, `NATURAL`, or `ON`. For a key join, the generated join condition is based on foreign key relationships between tables. Natural joins are generated when you specify `NATURAL JOIN`; the generated join condition is based on common column names in the two tables.

See also:

- [“join” on page 1102](#)
- [“join condition” on page 1102](#)

## generation number

In MobiLink, a mechanism for forcing remote databases to upload data before applying any more download files.

See also: [“file-based download” on page 1098](#).

## global temporary table

A type of temporary table for which data definitions are visible to all users until explicitly dropped. Global temporary tables let each user open their own identical instance of a table. By default, rows are deleted on commit, and rows are always deleted when the connection is ended.

See also:

- [“temporary table” on page 1115](#)
- [“local temporary table” on page 1102](#)

## grant option

The level of permission that allows a user to grant permissions to other users.

## hash

A hash is an index optimization that transforms index entries into keys. An index hash aims to avoid the expensive operation of finding, loading, and then unpacking the rows to determine the indexed value, by including enough of the actual row data with its row ID.

## histogram

The most important component of column statistics, histograms are a representation of data distribution. SQL Anywhere maintains histograms to provide the optimizer with statistical information about the distribution of values in columns.

### **iAnywhere JDBC driver**

The iAnywhere JDBC driver provides a JDBC driver that has some performance benefits and feature benefits compared to the pure Java jConnect JDBC driver, but which is not a pure-Java solution. The iAnywhere JDBC driver is recommended in most cases.

See also:

- [“JDBC” on page 1101](#)
- [“jConnect” on page 1101](#)

### **identifier**

A string of characters used to reference a database object, such as a table or column. An identifier may contain any character from A through Z, a through z, 0 through 9, underscore (\_), at sign (@), number sign (#), or dollar sign (\$).

### **incremental backup**

A backup of the transaction log only, typically used between full backups.

See also: [“transaction log” on page 1115](#).

### **index**

A sorted set of keys and pointers associated with one or more columns in a base table. An index on one or more columns of a table can improve performance.

### **InfoMaker**

A reporting and data maintenance tool that lets you create sophisticated forms, reports, graphs, cross-tabs, and tables, and applications that use these reports as building blocks.

### **inner join**

A join in which rows appear in the result set only if both tables satisfy the join condition. Inner joins are the default.

See also:

- [“join” on page 1102](#)
- [“outer join” on page 1106](#)

### **integrated login**

A login feature that allows the same single user ID and password to be used for operating system logins, network logins, and database connections.

---

## integrity

Adherence to rules that ensure that data is correct and accurate, and that the relational structure of the database is intact.

See also: [“referential integrity” on page 1110](#).

## Interactive SQL

A SQL Anywhere application that allows you to query and alter data in your database, and modify the structure of your database. Interactive SQL provides a pane for you to enter SQL statements, and panes that return information about how the query was processed and the result set.

## isolation level

The degree to which operations in one transaction are visible to operations in other concurrent transactions. There are four isolation levels, numbered 0 through 3. Level 3 provides the highest level of isolation. Level 0 is the default setting. SQL Anywhere also supports three snapshot isolation levels: snapshot, statement-snapshot, and readonly-statement-snapshot.

See also: [“snapshot isolation” on page 1113](#).

## JAR file

Java archive file. A compressed file format consisting of a collection of one or more packages used for Java applications. It includes all the resources necessary to install and run a Java program in a single compressed file.

## Java class

The main structural unit of code in Java. It is a collection of procedures and variables grouped together because they all relate to a specific, identifiable category.

## jConnect

A Java implementation of the JavaSoft JDBC standard. It provides Java developers with native database access in multi-tier and heterogeneous environments. However, the iAnywhere JDBC driver is the preferred JDBC driver for most cases.

See also:

- [“JDBC” on page 1101](#)
- [“iAnywhere JDBC driver” on page 1100](#)

## JDBC

Java Database Connectivity. A SQL-language programming interface that allows Java applications to access relational data. The preferred JDBC driver is the iAnywhere JDBC driver.

See also:

- [“jConnect” on page 1101](#)
- [“iAnywhere JDBC driver” on page 1100](#)

### **join**

A basic operation in a relational system that links the rows in two or more tables by comparing the values in specified columns.

### **join condition**

A restriction that affects join results. You specify a join condition by inserting an ON clause or WHERE clause immediately after the join. In the case of natural and key joins, SQL Anywhere generates a join condition.

See also:

- [“join” on page 1102](#)
- [“generated join condition” on page 1099](#)

### **join type**

SQL Anywhere provides four types of joins: cross join, key join, natural join, and joins using an ON clause.

See also: [“join” on page 1102](#).

### **light weight poller**

In MobiLink server-initiated synchronization, a device application that polls for push notifications from a MobiLink server.

See also: [“server-initiated synchronization” on page 1112](#).

### **Listener**

A program, dblsn, that is used for MobiLink server-initiated synchronization. Listeners are installed on remote devices and configured to initiate actions on the device when they receive push notifications.

See also: [“server-initiated synchronization” on page 1112](#).

### **local temporary table**

A type of temporary table that exists only for the duration of a compound statement or until the end of the connection. Local temporary tables are useful when you need to load a set of data only once. By default, rows are deleted on commit.

See also:

- [“temporary table” on page 1115](#)
- [“global temporary table” on page 1099](#)



---

## lock

A concurrency control mechanism that protects the integrity of data during the simultaneous execution of multiple transactions. SQL Anywhere automatically applies locks to prevent two connections from changing the same data at the same time, and to prevent other connections from reading data that is in the process of being changed.

You control locking by setting the isolation level.

See also:

- [“isolation level” on page 1101](#)
- [“concurrency” on page 1092](#)
- [“integrity” on page 1101](#)

## log file

A log of transactions maintained by SQL Anywhere. The log file is used to ensure that the database is recoverable in the event of a system or media failure, to improve database performance, and to allow data replication using SQL Remote.

See also:

- [“transaction log” on page 1115](#)
- [“transaction log mirror” on page 1116](#)
- [“full backup” on page 1098](#)

## logical index

A reference (pointer) to a physical index. There is no indexing structure stored on disk for a logical index.

## LTM

Log Transfer Manager (LTM) also called Replication Agent. Used with Replication Server, the LTM is the program that reads a database transaction log and sends committed changes to Sybase Replication Server.

See: [“Replication Server” on page 1111](#).

## maintenance release

A maintenance release is a complete set of software that upgrades installed software from an older version with the same major version number (version number format is *major.minor.patch.build*). Bug fixes and other changes are listed in the release notes for the upgrade.

## materialized view

A materialized view is a view that has been computed and stored on disk. Materialized views have characteristics of both views (they are defined using a query specification), and of tables (they allow most table operations to be performed on them).

See also:

- [“base table” on page 1089](#)
- [“view” on page 1117](#)

### **message log**

A log where messages from an application such as a database server or MobiLink server can be stored. This information can also appear in a messages window or be logged to a file. The message log includes informational messages, errors, warnings, and messages from the MESSAGE statement.

### **message store**

In QAnywhere, databases on the client and server device that store messages.

See also:

- [“client message store” on page 1091](#)
- [“server message store” on page 1113](#)

### **message system**

In SQL Remote replication, a protocol for exchanging messages between the consolidated database and a remote database. SQL Anywhere includes support for the following message systems: FILE, FTP, and SMTP.

See also:

- [“replication” on page 1111](#)
- [“FILE” on page 1097](#)

### **message type**

In SQL Remote replication, a database object that specifies how remote users communicate with the publisher of a consolidated database. A consolidated database may have several message types defined for it; this allows different remote users to communicate with it using different message systems.

See also:

- [“replication” on page 1111](#)
- [“consolidated database” on page 1092](#)

### **metadata**

Data about data. Metadata describes the nature and content of other data.

See also: [“schema” on page 1112](#).

### **mirror log**

See also: [“transaction log mirror” on page 1116](#).

---

## **MobiLink**

A session-based synchronization technology designed to synchronize UltraLite and SQL Anywhere remote databases with a consolidated database.

See also:

- [“consolidated database” on page 1092](#)
- [“synchronization” on page 1115](#)
- [“UltraLite” on page 1116](#)

## **MobiLink client**

There are two kinds of MobiLink clients. For SQL Anywhere remote databases, the MobiLink client is the dbmlsync command line utility. For UltraLite remote databases, the MobiLink client is built in to the UltraLite runtime library.

## **MobiLink Monitor**

A graphical tool for monitoring MobiLink synchronizations.

## **MobiLink server**

The computer program that runs MobiLink synchronization, mlsrv11.

## **MobiLink system table**

System tables that are required by MobiLink synchronization. They are installed by MobiLink setup scripts into the MobiLink consolidated database.

## **MobiLink user**

A MobiLink user is used to connect to the MobiLink server. You create the MobiLink user on the remote database and register it in the consolidated database. MobiLink user names are entirely independent of database user names.

## **network protocol**

The type of communication, such as TCP/IP or HTTP.

## **network server**

A database server that accepts connections from computers sharing a common network.

See also: [“personal server” on page 1107](#).

## **normalization**

The refinement of a database schema to eliminate redundancy and improve organization according to rules based on relational database theory.

## Notifier

A program that is used by MobiLink server-initiated synchronization. Notifiers are integrated into the MobiLink server. They check the consolidated database for push requests, and send push notifications.

See also:

- [“server-initiated synchronization” on page 1112](#)
- [“Listener” on page 1102](#)

## object tree

In Sybase Central, the hierarchy of database objects. The top level of the object tree shows all products that your version of Sybase Central supports. Each product expands to reveal its own sub-tree of objects.

See also: [“Sybase Central” on page 1114](#).

## ODBC

Open Database Connectivity. A standard Windows interface to database management systems. ODBC is one of several interfaces supported by SQL Anywhere.

## ODBC Administrator

A Microsoft program included with Windows operating systems for setting up ODBC data sources.

## ODBC data source

A specification of the data a user wants to access via ODBC, and the information needed to get to that data.

## outer join

A join that preserves all the rows in a table. SQL Anywhere supports left, right, and full outer joins. A left outer join preserves the rows in the table to the left of the join operator, and returns a null when a row in the right table does not satisfy the join condition. A full outer join preserves all the rows from both tables.

See also:

- [“join” on page 1102](#)
- [“inner join” on page 1100](#)

## package

In Java, a collection of related classes.

## parse tree

An algebraic representation of a query.

## PDB

A Palm database file.

---

## **performance statistic**

A value reflecting the performance of the database system. The CURRREAD statistic, for example, represents the number of file reads issued by the database server that have not yet completed.

## **personal server**

A database server that runs on the same computer as the client application. A personal database server is typically used by a single user on a single computer, but it can support several concurrent connections from that user.

## **physical index**

The actual indexing structure of an index, as it is stored on disk.

## **plug-in module**

In Sybase Central, a way to access and administer a product. Plug-ins are usually installed and registered automatically with Sybase Central when you install the respective product. Typically, a plug-in appears as a top-level container, in the Sybase Central main window, using the name of the product itself; for example, SQL Anywhere.

See also: [“Sybase Central” on page 1114](#).

## **policy**

In QAnywhere, the way you specify when message transmission should occur.

## **polling**

In MobiLink server-initiated synchronization, the way a light weight poller, such as the MobiLink Listener, requests push notifications from a Notifier.

See also: [“server-initiated synchronization” on page 1112](#).

## **PowerDesigner**

A database modeling application. PowerDesigner provides a structured approach to designing a database or data warehouse. SQL Anywhere includes the Physical Data Model component of PowerDesigner.

## **PowerJ**

A Sybase product for developing Java applications.

## **predicate**

A conditional expression that is optionally combined with the logical operators AND and OR to make up the set of conditions in a WHERE or HAVING clause. In SQL, a predicate that evaluates to UNKNOWN is interpreted as FALSE.

### **primary key**

A column or list of columns whose values uniquely identify every row in the table.

See also: [“foreign key” on page 1098](#).

### **primary key constraint**

A uniqueness constraint on the primary key columns. A table can have only one primary key constraint.

See also:

- [“constraint” on page 1093](#)
- [“check constraint” on page 1090](#)
- [“foreign key constraint” on page 1098](#)
- [“unique constraint” on page 1116](#)
- [“integrity” on page 1101](#)

### **primary table**

The table containing the primary key in a foreign key relationship.

### **proxy table**

A local table containing metadata used to access a table on a remote database server as if it were a local table.

See also: [“metadata” on page 1104](#).

### **publication**

In MobiLink or SQL Remote, a database object that identifies data that is to be synchronized. In MobiLink, publications exist only on the clients. A publication consists of articles. SQL Remote users can receive a publication by subscribing to it. MobiLink users can synchronize a publication by creating a synchronization subscription to it.

See also:

- [“replication” on page 1111](#)
- [“article” on page 1089](#)
- [“publication update” on page 1108](#)

### **publication update**

In SQL Remote replication, a list of changes made to one or more publications in one database. A publication update is sent periodically as part of a replication message to the remote database(s).

See also:

- [“replication” on page 1111](#)
- [“publication” on page 1108](#)

---

## **publisher**

In SQL Remote replication, the single user in a database who can exchange replication messages with other replicating databases.

See also: [“replication” on page 1111](#).

## **push notification**

In QAnywhere, a special message delivered from the server to a QAnywhere client that prompts the client to initiate a message transmission. In MobiLink server-initiated synchronization, a special message delivered from a Notifer to a device that contains push request data and internal information.

See also:

- [“QAnywhere” on page 1109](#)
- [“server-initiated synchronization” on page 1112](#)

## **push request**

In MobiLink server-initiated synchronization, a row of values in a result set that a Notifier checks to determine if push notifications need to be sent to a device.

See also: [“server-initiated synchronization” on page 1112](#).

## **QAnywhere**

Application-to-application messaging, including mobile device to mobile device and mobile device to and from the enterprise, that permits communication between custom programs running on mobile or wireless devices and a centrally located server application.

## **QAnywhere agent**

In QAnywhere, a process running on the client device that monitors the client message store and determines when message transmission should occur.

## **query**

A SQL statement or group of SQL statements that access and/or manipulate data in a database.

See also: [“SQL” on page 1113](#).

## **Redirector**

A web server plug-in that routes requests and responses between a client and the MobiLink server. This plug-in also implements load-balancing and failover mechanisms.

## **reference database**

In MobiLink, a SQL Anywhere database used in the development of UltraLite clients. You can use a single SQL Anywhere database as both reference and consolidated database during development. Databases made with other products cannot be used as reference databases.

### **referencing object**

An object, such as a view, whose definition directly references another object in the database, such as a table.

See also: [“foreign key” on page 1098](#).

### **referenced object**

An object, such as a table, that is directly referenced in the definition of another object, such as a view.

See also: [“primary key” on page 1108](#).

### **referential integrity**

Adherence to rules governing data consistency, specifically the relationships between the primary and foreign key values in different tables. To have referential integrity, the values in each foreign key must correspond to the primary key values of a row in the referenced table.

See also:

- [“primary key” on page 1108](#)
- [“foreign key” on page 1098](#)

### **regular expression**

A regular expression is a sequence of characters, wildcards, and operators that defines a pattern to search for within a string.

### **relational database management system (RDBMS)**

A type of database management system that stores data in the form of related tables.

See also: [“database management system \(DBMS\)” on page 1095](#).

### **remote database**

In MobiLink or SQL Remote, a database that exchanges data with a consolidated database. Remote databases may share all or some of the data in the consolidated database.

See also:

- [“synchronization” on page 1115](#)
- [“consolidated database” on page 1092](#)

### **REMOTE DBA authority**

In SQL Remote, a level of permission required by the Message Agent (dbremote). In MobiLink, a level of permission required by the SQL Anywhere synchronization client (dbmlsync). When the Message Agent (dbremote) or synchronization client connects as a user who has this authority, it has full DBA access. The user ID has no additional permissions when not connected through the Message Agent (dbremote) or synchronization client (dbmlsync).

See also: [“DBA authority” on page 1095](#).



---

## remote ID

A unique identifier in SQL Anywhere and UltraLite databases that is used by MobiLink. The remote ID is initially set to NULL and is set to a GUID during a database's first synchronization.

## replication

The sharing of data among physically distinct databases. Sybase has three replication technologies: MobiLink, SQL Remote, and Replication Server.

## Replication Agent

See: [“LTM” on page 1103](#).

## replication frequency

In SQL Remote replication, a setting for each remote user that determines how often the publisher's message agent should send replication messages to that remote user.

See also: [“replication” on page 1111](#).

## replication message

In SQL Remote or Replication Server, a communication sent between a publishing database and a subscribing database. Messages contain data, passthrough statements, and information required by the replication system.

See also:

- [“replication” on page 1111](#)
- [“publication update” on page 1108](#)

## Replication Server

A Sybase connection-based replication technology that works with SQL Anywhere and Adaptive Server Enterprise. It is intended for near-real time replication between a few databases.

See also: [“LTM” on page 1103](#).

## role

In conceptual database modeling, a verb or phrase that describes a relationship from one point of view. You can describe each relationship with two roles. Examples of roles are "contains" and "is a member of."

## role name

The name of a foreign key. This is called a role name because it names the relationship between the foreign table and primary table. By default, the role name is the table name, unless another foreign key is already using that name, in which case the default role name is the table name followed by a three-digit unique number. You can also create the role name yourself.

See also: [“foreign key” on page 1098](#).

### **rollback log**

A record of the changes made during each uncommitted transaction. In the event of a ROLLBACK request or a system failure, uncommitted transactions are reversed out of the database, returning the database to its former state. Each transaction has a separate rollback log, which is deleted when the transaction is complete.

See also: [“transaction” on page 1115](#).

### **row-level trigger**

A trigger that executes once for each row that is changed.

See also:

- [“trigger” on page 1116](#)
- [“statement-level trigger” on page 1114](#)

### **schema**

The structure of a database, including tables, columns, and indexes, and the relationships between them.

### **script**

In MobiLink, code written to handle MobiLink events. Scripts programmatically control data exchange to meet business needs.

See also: [“event model” on page 1097](#).

### **script-based upload**

In MobiLink, a way to customize the upload process as an alternative to using the log file.

### **script version**

In MobiLink, a set of synchronization scripts that are applied together to create a synchronization.

### **secured feature**

A feature specified by the -sf option when a database server is started, so it is not available for any database running on that database server.

### **server-initiated synchronization**

A way to initiate MobiLink synchronization from the MobiLink server.

### **server management request**

A QAnywhere message that is formatted as XML and sent to the QAnywhere system queue as a way to administer the server message store or monitor QAnywhere applications.

---

## server message store

In QAnywhere, a relational database on the server that temporarily stores messages until they are transmitted to a client message store or JMS system. Messages are exchanged between clients via the server message store.

## service

In Windows operating systems, a way of running applications when the user ID running the application is not logged on.

## session-based synchronization

A type of synchronization where synchronization results in consistent data representation across both the consolidated and remote databases. MobiLink is session-based.

## snapshot isolation

A type of isolation level that returns a committed version of the data for transactions that issue read requests. SQL Anywhere provides three snapshot isolation levels: snapshot, statement-snapshot, and readonly-statement-snapshot. When using snapshot isolation, read operations do not block write operations.

See also: [“isolation level” on page 1101](#).

## SQL

The language used to communicate with relational databases. ANSI has defined standards for SQL, the latest of which is SQL-2003. SQL stands, unofficially, for Structured Query Language.

## SQL Anywhere

The relational database server component of SQL Anywhere that is intended for use in mobile and embedded environments or as a server for small and medium-sized businesses. SQL Anywhere is also the name of the package that contains the SQL Anywhere RDBMS, the UltraLite RDBMS, MobiLink synchronization software, and other components.

## SQL-based synchronization

In MobiLink, a way to synchronize table data to MobiLink-supported consolidated databases using MobiLink events. For SQL-based synchronization, you can use SQL directly or you can return SQL using the MobiLink server APIs for Java and .NET.

## SQL Remote

A message-based data replication technology for two-way replication between consolidated and remote databases. The consolidated and remote databases must be SQL Anywhere.

## SQL statement

A string containing SQL keywords designed for passing instructions to a DBMS.

See also:

- [“schema” on page 1112](#)
- [“SQL” on page 1113](#)
- [“database management system \(DBMS\)” on page 1095](#)

### **statement-level trigger**

A trigger that executes after the entire triggering statement is completed.

See also:

- [“trigger” on page 1116](#)
- [“row-level trigger” on page 1112](#)

### **stored procedure**

A stored procedure is a group of SQL instructions stored in the database and used to execute a set of operations or queries on a database server

### **string literal**

A string literal is a sequence of characters enclosed in single quotes.

### **subquery**

A SELECT statement that is nested inside another SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE statement, or another subquery.

There are two types of subquery: correlated and nested.

### **subscription**

In MobiLink synchronization, a link in a client database between a publication and a MobiLink user, allowing the data described by the publication to be synchronized.

In SQL Remote replication, a link between a publication and a remote user, allowing the user to exchange updates on that publication with the consolidated database.

See also:

- [“publication” on page 1108](#)
- [“MobiLink user” on page 1105](#)

### **Sybase Central**

A database management tool that provides SQL Anywhere database settings, properties, and utilities in a graphical user interface. Sybase Central can also be used for managing other Sybase products, including MobiLink.

---

## **synchronization**

The process of replicating data between databases using MobiLink technology.

In SQL Remote, synchronization is used exclusively to denote the process of initializing a remote database with an initial set of data.

See also:

- [“MobiLink” on page 1105](#)
- [“SQL Remote” on page 1113](#)

## **SYS**

A special user that owns most of the system objects. You cannot log in as SYS.

## **system object**

Database objects owned by SYS or dbo.

## **system table**

A table, owned by SYS or dbo, that holds metadata. System tables, also known as data dictionary tables, are created and maintained by the database server.

## **system view**

A type of view, included in every database, that presents the information held in the system tables in an easily understood format.

## **temporary table**

A table that is created for the temporary storage of data. There are two types: global and local.

See also:

- [“local temporary table” on page 1102](#)
- [“global temporary table” on page 1099](#)

## **transaction**

A sequence of SQL statements that comprise a logical unit of work. A transaction is processed in its entirety or not at all. SQL Anywhere supports transaction processing, with locking features built in to allow concurrent transactions to access the database without corrupting the data. Transactions end either with a COMMIT statement, which makes the changes to the data permanent, or a ROLLBACK statement, which undoes all the changes made during the transaction.

## **transaction log**

A file storing all changes made to a database, in the order in which they are made. It improves performance and allows data recovery in the event the database file is damaged.

### **transaction log mirror**

An optional identical copy of the transaction log file, maintained simultaneously. Every time a database change is written to the transaction log file, it is also written to the transaction log mirror file.

A mirror file should be kept on a separate device from the transaction log, so that if either device fails, the other copy of the log keeps the data safe for recovery.

See also: [“transaction log” on page 1115](#).

### **transactional integrity**

In MobiLink, the guaranteed maintenance of transactions across the synchronization system. Either a complete transaction is synchronized, or no part of the transaction is synchronized.

### **transmission rule**

In QAnywhere, logic that determines when message transmission is to occur, which messages to transmit, and when messages should be deleted.

### **trigger**

A special form of stored procedure that is executed automatically when a user runs a query that modifies the data.

See also:

- [“row-level trigger” on page 1112](#)
- [“statement-level trigger” on page 1114](#)
- [“integrity” on page 1101](#)

### **UltraLite**

A database optimized for small, mobile, and embedded devices. Intended platforms include cell phones, pagers, and personal organizers.

### **UltraLite runtime**

An in-process relational database management system that includes a built-in MobiLink synchronization client. The UltraLite runtime is included in the libraries used by each of the UltraLite programming interfaces, and in the UltraLite engine.

### **unique constraint**

A restriction on a column or set of columns requiring that all non-null values are different. A table can have multiple unique constraints.

See also:

- [“foreign key constraint” on page 1098](#)
- [“primary key constraint” on page 1108](#)
- [“constraint” on page 1093](#)

---

**unload**

Unloading a database exports the structure and/or data of the database to text files (SQL command files for the structure, and ASCII comma-separated files for the data). You unload a database with the Unload utility.

In addition, you can unload selected portions of your data using the UNLOAD statement.

**upload**

The stage in synchronization where data is transferred from a remote database to a consolidated database.

**user-defined data type**

See [“domain” on page 1096](#).

**validate**

To test for particular types of file corruption of a database, table, or index.

**view**

A SELECT statement that is stored in the database as an object. It allows users to see a subset of rows or columns from one or more tables. Each time a user uses a view of a particular table, or combination of tables, it is recomputed from the information stored in those tables. Views are useful for security purposes, and to tailor the appearance of database information to make data access straightforward.

**window**

The group of rows over which an analytic function is performed. A window may contain one, many, or all rows of data that has been partitioned according to the grouping specifications provided in the window definition. The window moves to include the number or range of rows needed to perform the calculations for the current row in the input. The main benefit of the window construct is that it allows additional opportunities for grouping and analysis of results, without having to perform additional queries.

**Windows**

The Microsoft Windows family of operating systems, such as Windows Vista, Windows XP, and Windows 200x.

**Windows CE**

See [“Windows Mobile” on page 1117](#).

**Windows Mobile**

A family of operating systems produced by Microsoft for mobile devices.

**work table**

An internal storage area for interim results during query optimization.

---



---

# Index

## Symbols

- d option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- e option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- gn option
  - threads, 102
- h option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- k option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- m option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- n option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- o option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- q option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- r option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- s option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- u option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- w option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- x option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- z option
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- .NET
  - (*see also* ADO.NET)
  - data control, 168
  - deploying, 1029
  - using the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider, 109
- .NET API
  - about, 109
- .NET Data Provider
  - about, 109
  - accessing data, 117
  - adding a reference to the DLL in a C# project, 112
  - adding a reference to the DLL in a Visual Basic project, 112
  - connecting to a database, 114
  - connection pooling, 115
  - deleting data, 117
  - deploying, 139
  - error handling, 138
  - executing stored procedures, 134
  - features, 110
  - files required for deployment, 139
  - inserting data, 117
  - obtaining time values, 132
  - POOLING option, 115
  - referencing the provider classes in your source code, 112
  - registering, 139
  - running the sample projects, 111
  - supported languages, 4
  - system requirements, 139
  - tracing support, 141
  - transaction processing, 136
  - updating data, 117
  - using the Simple code sample, 147
  - using the Table Viewer code sample, 150
  - versions supported, 109
- .NET database programming interfaces
  - tutorial, 167
- .scRepository600
  - deploying administration tools on Linux/Unix/Mac OS X, 1068
  - deploying administration tools on Windows, 1056

## A

- a\_backup\_db structure
  - a\_chkpt\_log\_type, 1007
  - syntax, 967
- a\_change\_log structure
  - syntax, 969
- a\_chkpt\_log\_type
  - syntax, 1007
- a\_create\_db structure
  - syntax, 971
- a\_db\_info structure
  - syntax, 973
- a\_db\_version\_info structure
  - syntax, 975
- a\_dblic\_info structure
  - syntax, 976
- a\_dbtools\_info structure

- syntax, 977
  - a\_name structure
    - syntax, 978
  - a\_remote\_sql structure
    - syntax, 979
  - a\_sqlany\_bind\_param struct
    - C API, 639
  - a\_sqlany\_bind\_param\_info struct
    - C API, 640, 641
  - a\_sqlany\_data\_direction enumeration
    - SQL Anywhere C API, 647
  - a\_sqlany\_data\_info struct
    - C API, 642
  - a\_sqlany\_data\_type enumeration
    - SQL Anywhere C API, 648
  - a\_sqlany\_data\_value struct
    - C API, 643
  - a\_sqlany\_native\_type enumeration
    - SQL Anywhere C API, 650
  - a\_sync\_db structure
    - syntax, 985
  - a\_syncpub structure
    - syntax, 993
  - a\_sysinfo structure
    - syntax, 993
  - a\_table\_info structure
    - syntax, 994
  - a\_translate\_log structure
    - syntax, 995
  - a\_truncate\_log structure
    - syntax, 999
  - a\_validate\_db structure
    - syntax, 1005
  - a\_validate\_type enumeration
    - syntax, 1010
  - Abort property [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 421
  - accessing fields and methods
    - Java in the database, 96
  - accessing Java methods
    - Java in the database, 95
  - accessing web services from JAX-WS
    - tutorial, 892
  - ActiveX Data Objects
    - about, 449
  - Add methods [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 198, 401
  - Add(Int32, Int32) method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 199
  - Add(Int32, String) method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 200
  - Add(Object) method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 401
  - Add(SABulkCopyColumnMapping) method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 198
  - Add(SAParameter) method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 402
  - Add(String, Int32) method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 201
  - Add(String, Object) method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 403
  - Add(String, SADBType) method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 403
  - Add(String, SADBType, Int32) method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 404
  - Add(String, SADBType, Int32, String) method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 405
  - Add(String, String) method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 201
- adding
  - JAR files, 99
  - Java in the database classes, 98
- AddRange methods [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 406
- AddRange(Array) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 406
- AddRange(SAParameter[]) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 407
- AddWithValue method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 407
- administration tools
  - dbtools, 947
- ADO
  - about, 449
  - Command object, 450
  - commands, 450
  - Connection object, 449
  - connections, 449
  - cursor types, 39
  - cursors, 55
  - introduction to programming, 5
  - queries, 451
  - Recordset object, 451, 452

---

- transactions, 454
- updates, 453
- updating data through a cursor, 453
- using SQL statements in applications, 24
- ADO.NET
  - about, 4
  - autocommit mode, 60
  - controlling autocommit behavior, 60
  - cursor support, 55
  - deploying, 1029
  - prepared statements, 27
  - SQL Anywhere Explorer, 17
  - using SQL statements in applications, 24
- ADO.NET API
  - about, 109
- agent IDs
  - glossary definition, 1089
- alignment of data
  - ODBC, 489
- All property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 243
- alloc\_sqlda function
  - about, 593
- alloc\_sqlda\_noind function
  - about, 593
- allusersprofile
  - deploying administration tools on Windows, 1056
- ALTER EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT statement
  - using, 91
- an\_erase\_db structure
  - syntax, 978
- an\_extfn\_api
  - external function call API, 674
- an\_extfn\_result\_set\_column\_data
  - external function call API, 679
- an\_extfn\_result\_set\_column\_info
  - external function call API, 678
- an\_extfn\_result\_set\_info
  - external function call API, 677
- an\_extfn\_value
  - external function call API, 676
- an\_unload\_db structure
  - syntax, 1000
- an\_upgrade\_db structure
  - syntax, 1004
- Apache
  - choosing a PHP module, 741
  - installing, 740
- apache\_files.txt
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- apache\_license\_1.1.txt
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- apache\_license\_2.0.txt
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- APIs
  - ADO API, 5
  - ADO.NET, 4
  - C API, 9
  - data access APIs, 3
  - JDBC API, 7
  - ODBC API, 6
  - OLE DB API, 5
  - Perl DBD::SQLAnywhere API, 10
  - PHP, 754
  - Python Database API, 11
  - Ruby APIs, 13
  - SQL Anywhere C API, 617
  - Sybase Open Client API, 15
- AppInfo property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 275
- application programming interfaces
  - (*see also* APIs)
- applications
  - deploying, 1017
  - deploying .NET clients, 1029
  - deploying client applications, 1029
  - deploying embedded SQL, 1044
  - deploying JDBC clients, 1046
  - deploying ODBC, 1037
  - deploying OLE DB, 1030
  - deploying Open Client, 1046
  - SQL, 24
- ARRAY clause
  - using the FETCH statement, 577
- array fetches
  - ESQL, 577
- articles
  - glossary definition, 1089
- asensitive cursors
  - about, 48

- delete example, 42
- introduction, 42
- update example, 44
- ASP.NET
  - adding the provider schema to the database, 157
  - registering the connection string, 158
  - registering the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers, 159
  - using the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers, 155
- ASP.NET providers
  - about, 155
- atomic transactions
  - glossary definition, 1089
- autocommit
  - controlling, 60
  - implementation, 62
  - JDBC, 516
  - ODBC, 474
  - setting for transactions, 60
- autoCommit option
  - configurable option , 1071
- AUTOINCREMENT
  - finding most recent row inserted, 36
- autoRefetch
  - configurable option , 1071
- AutoStart property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 275
- AutoStop property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 275
- B**
- background processing
  - callback functions, 589
- backups
  - DBBackup DBTools function, 957
  - DBTools example, 954
  - embedded SQL functions, 589
- base tables
  - glossary definition, 1089
- BatchSize property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 182
- BeginExecuteNonQuery methods [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 215
- BeginExecuteNonQuery() method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 215
- BeginExecuteNonQuery(AsyncCallback, Object) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 216
- BeginExecuteReader methods [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 217
- BeginExecuteReader() method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 217
- BeginExecuteReader(AsyncCallback, Object) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 218
- BeginExecuteReader(AsyncCallback, Object, CommandBehavior) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 219
- BeginExecuteReader(CommandBehavior) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 217
- BeginTransaction methods [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 254
- BeginTransaction() method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 254
- BeginTransaction(IsolationLevel) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 255
- BeginTransaction(SAIsolationLevel) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 256
- benefits of using cursors
  - about, 30
- BIGINT data type
  - embedded SQL, 547
- BINARY data type
  - embedded SQL, 547
- bind parameters
  - prepared statements, 27
- bind variables
  - about, 561
- bit arrays
  - glossary definition, 1090
- BIT data type
  - embedded SQL, 547
- bit fields
  - using, 953
- blank padding
  - strings in embedded SQL, 542
- blank padding enumeration
  - syntax, 1007
- BLOBs
  - embedded SQL, 582
  - retrieving in embedded SQL, 583
  - sending in embedded SQL, 584

---

block cursors  
     about, 35  
     ODBC, 40

bookmarks  
     about, 40  
     ODBC cursors, 494

Borland C++  
     embedded SQL support, 533

Broadcast property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 433

BroadcastListener property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 434

bugs  
     providing feedback, xvii

Bulk-Library  
     about, 840

BulkCopyTimeout property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 183

business rules  
     glossary definition, 1090

byte code  
     Java classes, 80

**C**

C API (*see* SQL Anywhere C API)  
     introduction to programming, 9

C programming language  
     data types, 547  
     embedded SQL applications, 531  
     SQL Anywhere C API, 617

C#  
     accessing web services tutorial, 868  
     support in .NET Data Provider, 4  
     using data types tutorial , 887

C++ APIs  
     SQL Anywhere C API, 617

C++ applications  
     dbtools, 947  
     embedded SQL, 531

C\_ESQL32 keyword  
     external environment, 697

C\_ESQL64 keyword  
     external environment, 697

C\_ODBC32 keyword  
     external environment, 697

C\_ODBC64 keyword  
     external environment, 697

CALL statement  
     embedded SQL, 586

callback functions  
     embedded SQL, 589  
     registering, 604

callbacks  
     DB\_CALLBACK\_CONN\_DROPPED, 605  
     DB\_CALLBACK\_DEBUG\_MESSAGE, 604  
     DB\_CALLBACK\_FINISH, 605  
     DB\_CALLBACK\_MESSAGE, 605  
     DB\_CALLBACK\_START, 605  
     DB\_CALLBACK\_VALIDATE\_FILE\_TRANSFE  
     R, 606  
     DB\_CALLBACK\_WAIT, 605

calling external libraries from procedures  
     about, 670

Cancel method [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 220

cancel processing  
     in external functions, 683

canceling requests  
     embedded SQL, 589

CanCreateDataSourceEnumerator property [SA .NET  
 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 362

capabilities  
     supported, 847

carriers  
     glossary definition, 1090

case sensitivity  
     Java in the database and SQL, 86

CD-ROM  
     deploying databases on, 1078

chained mode  
     controlling, 60  
     implementation, 62  
     transactions, 60

chained option  
     JDBC, 516

ChangeDatabase method [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 256

ChangePassword method [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 257

character data  
     character sets in Embedded SQL, 549  
     length in Embedded SQL, 550

character sets  
     glossary definition, 1090

- HTTP requests, 941
  - setting CHAR character set, 598
  - setting NCHAR character set, 598
- character strings
  - embedded SQL, 590
- Charset property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 276
- CHECK constraints
  - glossary definition, 1090
- checkForUpdates
  - configurable option , 1071
- checkpoints
  - glossary definition, 1090
- checksums
  - glossary definition, 1091
- cis.zip
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- Class.forName method
  - loading iAnywhere JDBC driver, 505
  - loading jConnect, 508
- classes
  - creating, 98
  - installing, 98
  - runtime, 85
  - updating, 100
  - versions, 100
- CLASSPATH environment variable
  - Java in the database, 94
  - jConnect, 507
  - setting, 513
- clauses
  - WITH HOLD, 34
- Clear method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 408
- ClearAllPools method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 258
- ClearPool method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 258
- client
  - time change, 611
- client message store IDs
  - glossary definition, 1091
- client message stores
  - glossary definition, 1091
- client side autocommit
  - about, 62
- Client-Library
  - Sybase Open Client, 840
- client/server
  - glossary definition, 1091
- ClientPort property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 434
- close method
  - Python, 735
- Close method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 185, 258, 317
- CLOSE statement
  - using cursors in embedded SQL, 575
- CLR keyword
  - external environment, 694
- code pages
  - glossary definition, 1091
- CodeXchange
  - samples, 854
- collations
  - glossary definition, 1091
- ColumnMappings property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 183
- Columns field [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 374
- Command ADO object
  - ADO, 450
- command files
  - glossary definition, 1091
- command line utilities
  - deploying, 1082
- command prompts
  - conventions, xv
  - curly braces, xv
  - environment variables, xv
  - parentheses, xv
  - quotes, xv
- Command property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 425, 428
- command shells
  - conventions, xv
  - curly braces, xv
  - environment variables, xv
  - parentheses, xv
  - quotes, xv
- commands
  - ADO Command object, 450
- CommandText property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 211

---

CommandTimeout property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 211  
 CommandType property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 212  
 CommBufferSize property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 276  
 commit method  
     Python, 736  
 Commit method [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 443  
 COMMIT statement  
     cursors, 62  
     JDBC, 516  
 commitOnExit  
     configurable option , 1071  
 committing  
     transactions from ODBC, 474  
 CommitTrans ADO method  
     ADO programming, 454  
     updating data, 454  
 CommLinks property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 276  
 communication streams  
     glossary definition, 1092  
 compile and link process  
     about, 532  
 compilers  
     supported, 533  
 components  
     transaction attribute, 72  
 Compress property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 277  
 CompressionThreshold property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 277  
 concurrency  
     glossary definition, 1092  
 concurrency values  
     SQL\_CONCUR\_LOCK, 492  
     SQL\_CONCUR\_READ\_ONLY, 492  
     SQL\_CONCUR\_ROWVER, 492  
     SQL\_CONCUR\_VALUES, 492  
 configuring  
     administration tools for deployment, 1071  
     Interactive SQL for deployment, 1071  
     Sybase Central for deployment, 1071  
 configuring the SQL Anywhere Explorer  
     about, 20  
 conflict resolution  
     glossary definition, 1092  
 conformance  
     ODBC, 464  
 connect method  
     Python, 735  
 Connection ADO object  
     ADO, 449  
     ADO programming, 454  
 connection handles  
     ODBC, 473  
 connection IDs  
     glossary definition, 1092  
 connection pooling  
     .NET Data Provider, 115  
 connection profiles  
     glossary definition, 1092  
 Connection property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 212, 441  
 connection state  
     .NET Data Provider, 115  
 connection-initiated synchronization  
     glossary definition, 1092  
 CONNECTION\_PROPERTY function  
     example, 940  
 ConnectionLifetime property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 278  
 ConnectionName property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 278  
 ConnectionReset property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 278  
 connections  
     ADO Connection object, 449  
     connecting to a database using the .NET Data Provider, 114  
     functions, 610  
     iAnywhere JDBC driver URL, 505  
     jConnect, 509  
     jConnect URL, 509  
     JDBC, 504  
     JDBC client applications, 511  
     JDBC defaults, 516  
     JDBC example, 511, 514  
     JDBC in the server, 514  
     licensing web applications, 938  
     ODBC functions, 476  
     ODBC getting attributes, 478  
     ODBC programming, 476

- ODBC setting attributes, 477
- SQL Anywhere Explorer, 19
- ConnectionString property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 243, 250
- ConnectionTimeout property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 251, 279
- console utility [dbconsole]
  - deploying, 1048
  - deploying on Linux and Unix, 1059
  - deploying on Windows without InstallShield, 1049
- consolidated databases
  - glossary definition, 1092
- constraints
  - glossary definition, 1093
- Contains method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 202
- Contains methods [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 408
- Contains(Object) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 408
- Contains(String) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 409
- ContainsKey method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 294
- contention
  - glossary definition, 1093
- conventions
  - command prompts, xv
  - command shells, xv
  - documentation, xiv
  - file names, 1021
  - file names in documentation, xiv
- conversion
  - data types, 553
- cookie session ID
  - HTTP session, 936
- copying
  - database objects in Visual Studio, 20
- CopyTo method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 203, 354, 410
- correlation names
  - glossary definition, 1093
- Count property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 353, 398
- create database wizard
  - deployment considerations, 1049
- create Java class wizard
  - using, 98
- CREATE PROCEDURE statement
  - embedded SQL, 586
- CREATE SERVICE statement
  - JAX-WS tutorial, 871
  - Microsoft .NET tutorial, 868
  - using, 849
- CreateCommand method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 259, 362
- CreateCommandBuilder method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 362
- CreateConnection method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 363
- CreateConnectionStringBuilder method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 363
- CreateDataAdapter method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 364
- CreateDataSourceEnumerator method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 364
- CreateParameter method
  - using, 27
- CreateParameter method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 220, 365
- CreatePermission method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 365, 419
- creating
  - procedures and functions with external calls, 671
- creator ID
  - glossary definition, 1093
- CS-Library
  - about, 840
- CS\_CSR\_ABS
  - not supported with Open Client, 847
- CS\_CSR\_FIRST
  - not supported with Open Client, 847
- CS\_CSR\_LAST
  - not supported with Open Client, 847
- CS\_CSR\_PREV
  - not supported with Open Client, 847
- CS\_CSR\_REL
  - not supported with Open Client, 847
- CS\_DATA\_BOUNDARY



---

not supported with Open Client, 847

CS\_DATA\_SENSITIVITY

- not supported with Open Client, 847

CS\_PROTO\_DYNPROC

- not supported with Open Client, 847

CS\_REG\_NOTIF

- not supported with Open Client, 847

CS\_REQ\_BCP

- not supported with Open Client, 847

ct\_command function

- Open Client, 844, 846

ct\_cursor function

- Open Client, 844

ct\_dynamic function

- Open Client, 844

ct\_results function

- Open Client, 846

ct\_send function

- Open Client, 846

cursor positioning

- troubleshooting, 34

cursor positions

- glossary definition, 1093

cursor result sets

- glossary definition, 1093

cursor sensitivity and performance

- about, 50

cursors

- about, 29
- ADO, 55
- ADO.NET, 55
- asensitive, 48
- availability, 39
- benefits, 30
- block cursors, 40
- canceling, 38
- choosing ODBC cursor characteristics, 492
- db\_cancel\_request function, 597
- delete, 845
- describing result sets, 58
- dynamic, 46
- DYNAMIC SCROLL and asensitive cursors, 48
- DYNAMIC SCROLL and cursor positioning, 34
- embedded SQL supported types, 56
- embedded SQL usage, 575
- example C code, 538
- fat, 35
- fetching multiple rows, 35
- fetching rows, 33, 34
- glossary definition, 1093
- insensitive, 39, 46
- inserting multiple rows, 36
- inserting rows, 36
- internals, 41
- introduction, 29
- isolation level, 34
- keyset-driven, 49
- membership, 41
- NO SCROLL, 39
- ODBC, 55, 491
- ODBC bookmarks, 494
- ODBC deletes, 494
- ODBC result sets, 493
- ODBC updates, 494
- OLE DB, 55
- Open Client, 844
- order, 41
- performance, 50, 51
- platforms, 39
- positioning, 33
- prepared statements, 32
- properties, 39
- Python, 736
- read-only, 39, 46
- requesting, 55
- result sets, 29
- savepoints, 63
- SCROLL, 39, 49
- scrollable, 35
- sensitive, 46
- sensitivity, 41, 42
- sensitivity and isolation levels, 54
- sensitivity examples, 42, 44
- static, 46
- step-by-step, 32
- stored procedures, 586
- transactions, 62
- unique, 39
- unspecified sensitivity, 48
- update, 845
- updating, 453
- updating and deleting rows, 36
- uses, 29
- using, 32
- value-sensitive, 49
- values, 41

- visible changes, 41
- work tables, 50

cursors and bookmarks

- about, 40

## D

### data

- accessing with the .NET Data Provider, 117
- manipulating with the .NET Data Provider, 117

### data connection

- Visual Studio, 168

### data cube

- glossary definition, 1094

### data manipulation language

- glossary definition, 1094

### data type conversion

- indicator variables, 553

### data types

- C data types, 547

- dynamic SQL, 565

- embedded SQL, 542

- glossary definition, 1094

- host variables, 547

- in web services handlers, 880

- mapping, 842

- Open Client, 842

- ranges, 842

- SQL and C, 685

- SQLDA, 566

### DataAdapter

- about, 117

- deleting data, 124

- inserting data, 124

- obtaining primary key values, 129

- obtaining result set schema information, 128

- retrieving data, 123

- updating data, 124

- using, 123

### DataAdapter property [SA .NET 2.0]

- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 232

### database administrator

- glossary definition, 1094

### database connections

- glossary definition, 1095

### database files

- glossary definition, 1095

### database management

- dbtools, 947

### database names

- glossary definition, 1095

### database objects

- glossary definition, 1095

### database options

- set for jConnect, 510

### database owner

- glossary definition, 1095

### database properties

- db\_get\_property function, 600

### Database property [SA .NET 2.0]

- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 252

### database servers

- deploying, 1074

- functions, 610

- glossary definition, 1095

### database size enumeration

- syntax, 1008

### database tools interface

- a\_backup\_db structure, 967

- a\_change\_log structure, 969

- a\_chkpt\_log\_type enumeration, 1007

- a\_create\_db structure, 971

- a\_db\_info structure, 973

- a\_db\_version\_info structure, 975

- a\_dblic\_info structure, 976

- a\_dbtools\_info structure, 977

- a\_name structure, 978

- a\_remote\_sql structure, 979

- a\_sync\_db structure, 985

- a\_syncpub structure, 993

- a\_sysinfo structure, 993

- a\_table\_info structure, 994

- a\_translate\_log structure, 995

- a\_truncate\_log structure, 999

- a\_validate\_db structure, 1005

- a\_validate\_type enumeration, 1010

- about, 947

- an\_erase\_db structure, 978

- an\_unload\_db structure, 1000

- an\_upgrade\_db structure, 1004

- Blank padding enumeration, 1007

- database size enumeration, 1008

- Database version enumeration, 1008

- DBBackup function, 957

- DBChangeLogName function, 957

- DBCCreate function, 958

---

DBCreatedVersion function, 958  
 DBErase function, 959  
 DBInfo function, 959  
 DBInfoDump function, 960  
 DBInfoFree function, 960  
 DBLicense function, 961  
 dbrmt.h, 967  
 dbtools.h, 967  
 DBToolsFini function, 962  
 DBToolsInit function, 962  
 DBToolsVersion function, 963  
 dbtran\_userlist\_type enumeration, 1009  
 DBTranslateLog function, 963  
 DBTruncateLog function, 964  
 DBUnload function, 964  
 dbunload type enumeration, 1010  
 DBUpgrade function, 965  
 DBValidate function, 965  
 dbxtract, 964  
   verbosity enumeration, 1011  
 database tools library  
   about, 948  
 database version enumeration  
   syntax, 1008  
 DatabaseFile property [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 280  
 DatabaseKey property [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 280  
 DatabaseName property [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 280  
 databases  
   deploying, 1077  
   glossary definition, 1094  
   installing jConnect metadata support, 507  
   storing Java classes, 80  
   URL, 509  
 DatabaseSwitches property [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 281  
 datagrid control  
   Visual Studio, 172  
 DataSet  
   .NET Data Provider, 124  
 DataSource property [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 252  
 DataSourceInformation field [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 374  
 DataSourceName property [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 279  
 DataTypes field [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 375  
 DATETIME data type  
   embedded SQL, 547  
 DB-Library  
   about, 840  
 DB\_ACTIVE\_CONNECTION  
   db\_find\_engine function, 599  
 db\_backup function  
   about, 589, 593  
 DB\_BACKUP\_CLOSE\_FILE parameter  
   about, 593  
 DB\_BACKUP\_END parameter  
   about, 593  
 DB\_BACKUP\_INFO parameter  
   about, 593  
 DB\_BACKUP\_INFO\_CHKPT\_LOG parameter  
   about, 593  
 DB\_BACKUP\_INFO\_PAGES\_IN\_BLOCK  
 parameter  
   about, 593  
 DB\_BACKUP\_OPEN\_FILE parameter  
   about, 593  
 DB\_BACKUP\_PARALLEL\_READ parameter  
   about, 593  
 DB\_BACKUP\_PARALLEL\_START parameter  
   about, 593  
 DB\_BACKUP\_READ\_PAGE parameter  
   about, 593  
 DB\_BACKUP\_READ\_RENAME\_LOG parameter  
   about, 593  
 DB\_BACKUP\_START parameter  
   about, 593  
 DB\_CALLBACK\_CONN\_DROPPED callback  
 parameter  
   about, 605  
 DB\_CALLBACK\_DEBUG\_MESSAGE callback  
 parameter  
   about, 604  
 DB\_CALLBACK\_FINISH callback parameter  
   about, 605  
 DB\_CALLBACK\_MESSAGE callback parameter  
   about, 605  
 DB\_CALLBACK\_START callback parameter  
   about, 605  
 DB\_CALLBACK\_VALIDATE\_FILE\_TRANSFER  
 callback parameter  
   about, 606

- DB\_CALLBACK\_WAIT callback parameter
  - about, 605
- DB\_CAN\_MULTI\_CONNECT
  - db\_find\_engine function, 599
- DB\_CAN\_MULTI\_DB\_NAME
  - db\_find\_engine function, 599
- db\_cancel\_request function
  - about, 597
  - request management, 589
- db\_change\_char\_charset function
  - about, 598
- db\_change\_nchar\_charset function
  - about, 598
- DB\_CLIENT
  - db\_find\_engine function, 599
- DB\_CONNECTION\_DIRTY
  - db\_find\_engine function, 599
- DB\_DATABASE\_SPECIFIED
  - db\_find\_engine function, 599
- db\_delete\_file function
  - about, 599
- DB\_ENGINE
  - db\_find\_engine function, 599
- db\_find\_engine function
  - about, 599
- db\_fini function
  - about, 600
- db\_fini\_dll
  - calling, 536
- db\_get\_property function
  - about, 600
- db\_init function
  - about, 601
- db\_init\_dll
  - calling, 536
- db\_is\_working function
  - about, 601
  - request management, 589
- db\_locate\_servers function
  - about, 602
- db\_locate\_servers\_ex function
  - about, 603
- DB\_LOOKUP\_FLAG\_ADDRESS\_INCLUDES\_PORT
  - about, 603
- DB\_LOOKUP\_FLAG\_DATABASES
  - about, 603
- DB\_LOOKUP\_FLAG\_NUMERIC
  - about, 603
- DB\_NO\_DATABASES
  - db\_find\_engine function, 599
- DB\_PROP\_CLIENT\_CHARSET
  - usage, 601
- DB\_PROP\_DBLIB\_VERSION
  - usage, 601
- DB\_PROP\_SERVER\_ADDRESS
  - usage, 601
- db\_register\_a\_callback function
  - about, 604
  - request management, 589
- db\_start\_database function
  - about, 607
- db\_start\_engine function
  - about, 607
- db\_stop\_database function
  - about, 608
- db\_stop\_engine function
  - about, 609
- db\_string\_connect function
  - about, 610
- db\_string\_disconnect function
  - about, 610
- db\_string\_ping\_server function
  - about, 611
- db\_time\_change function
  - about, 611
- DBA authority
  - glossary definition, 1095
- DBBackup function
  - about, 957
- dbcapi.dll
  - deploying, 1079
  - PHP support module, 716
- DBChangeLogName function
  - about, 957
- dbcis11.dll
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- dbclrenv11.dll
  - deploying, 1079
- dbcon11.dll
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
  - deploying embedded SQL clients, 1045
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
  - deploying OLE DB clients, 1030
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- dbconsole utility

---

deploying, 1048  
deploying on Linux and Unix, 1059  
deploying on Mac OS X, 1063  
deploying on Unix, 1060  
deploying on Windows without InstallShield, 1049

dbconsole.exe  
deploying on Windows, 1051

dbconsole.ini  
deploying administration tools, 1048

DBConsole.jar  
deploying on Mac OS X, 1063  
deploying on Unix, 1060  
deploying on Windows, 1051

DBCreate function  
about, 958

DBCreatedVersion function  
about, 958

dbctrs11.dll  
deploying database servers, 1074  
deploying SQL Anywhere, 1077

DBD::SQLAnywhere  
about, 721  
installing on Unix and Mac OS X, 725  
installing on Windows, 723  
writing Perl scripts, 727

dbecc11.dll  
deploying embedded SQL clients, 1045  
ECC encryption, 1081

dbelevate11.exe  
deploying on Windows, 1051  
registering DLLs, 1077

dbencod11.dll  
deploying SQL Remote, 1084

dbeng11  
deploying database servers, 1074

dbeng11.exe  
deploying database servers, 1074

dbeng11.lic  
deploying database servers, 1074

DBErase function  
about, 959

dbextclr11.exe  
deploying, 1079

dbextenv11.dll  
deploying, 1079  
PHP support module, 716

dbexternc11  
deploying, 1079  
external calls, 698

dbexternc11.exe  
deploying, 1079

dbextf.dll  
deploying database servers, 1074

dbfile11.dll  
deploying SQL Remote, 1084

dbfips11.dll  
deploying embedded SQL clients, 1045  
FIPS-approved AES encryption, 1081  
FIPS-approved RSA encryption, 1081

dbftp11.dll  
deploying SQL Remote, 1084

dbghelp.dll  
deploying database servers, 1074  
deploying on Windows, 1051

DBI module (*see* DBD::SQLAnywhere)

dbicu11.dll  
deploying database servers, 1074  
deploying ODBC clients, 1037  
deploying on Windows, 1051

dbicudt11.dat  
deploying database servers, 1074  
deploying ODBC clients, 1037

dbicudt11.dll  
deploying database servers, 1074  
deploying ODBC clients, 1037  
deploying on Windows, 1051

DBInfo function  
about, 959

DBInfoDump function  
about, 960

DBInfoFree function  
about, 960

dbinit utility  
deploying on Mac OS X, 1063  
deploying on Unix, 1060  
deployment considerations, 1083

dbinit.exe  
deploying on Windows, 1051

dbisql  
deploying on Mac OS X, 1063  
deploying on Unix, 1060

dbisql.com  
deploying on Windows, 1051

dbisql.exe  
deploying on Windows, 1051

dbisql.ini

- deploying administration tools, 1048
- dbisqlc utility
  - deploying, 1072
  - limited functionality, 1072
  - Unix supported deployment platforms, 1059
- dbjodbc11.dll
  - deploying, 1079
  - deploying database servers, 1074
  - deploying JDBC clients, 1046
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- dblgen11.dll
  - deploying database servers, 1074
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
  - deploying embedded SQL clients, 1045
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
  - deploying OLE DB clients, 1030
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
  - deploying SQL Remote, 1084
- dblgen11.dll registry entry
  - about, 1075
- dblgen11.res
  - deploying database servers, 1074
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying SQL Remote, 1084
- DBLIB
  - dynamic loading, 536
  - interface library, 532
- dblib11.dll
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
  - deploying embedded SQL clients, 1045
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
  - deploying SQL Remote, 1084
- DBLicense function
  - about, 961
- dbmlsync utility
  - building your own, 985
  - C API for, 985
- dbmlsynccom.dll
  - deploying SQL Anywhere, 1077
- dbmlsynccomg.dll
  - deploying SQL Anywhere, 1077
- DBMS
  - glossary definition, 1095
- dbodbc11.bundle
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
  - Mac OS X ODBC driver, 469
- dbodbc11.dll
  - deploying database servers, 1074
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
  - deploying SQL Anywhere, 1077
  - linking, 466
- dbodbc11.lib
  - Windows Mobile ODBC import library, 467
- dbodbc11\_r.bundle
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
- dboftsp.dll
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
- dboledb11.dll
  - deploying OLE DB clients, 1030
  - deploying SQL Anywhere, 1077
- dboledba11.dll
  - deploying OLE DB clients, 1030
  - deploying SQL Anywhere, 1077
- dbput11.dll
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- dbremote
  - deploying SQL Remote, 1084
- DBRemoteSQL function
  - about, 961
- dbrmt.h
  - about, 948
  - database tools interface, 967
- dbrsa11.dll
  - RSA encryption, 1081
- dbrsakp11.dll
  - deploying database servers, 1074
  - deploying JDBC clients, 1046
  - deploying Open Client, 1046
- dbscript11.dll
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- dbserv11.dll
  - AES encryption, 1081
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- dbsmtp11.dll
  - deploying SQL Remote, 1084
- dbspaces
  - glossary definition, 1096
- dbsrv11
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- dbsrv11.exe
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- dbsrv11.lic

---

- deploying database servers, 1074
- DBSynchronizeLog function
  - about, 961
- dbtool11.dll
  - about, 948
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
  - deploying SQL Remote, 1084
  - Windows Mobile, 948
- DBTools interface
  - about, 947
  - alphabetical list of functions, 957
  - calling DBTools functions, 951
  - enumerations, 1007
  - example program, 954
  - finishing, 950
  - introduction, 948
  - return codes, 1014
  - starting, 950
  - using, 950
- dbtools.h
  - about, 948
  - database tools interface, 967
- DBToolsFini function
  - about, 962
- DBToolsInit function
  - about, 962
- DBToolsVersion function
  - about, 963
- dbtran\_userlist\_type enumeration
  - syntax, 1009
- DBTranslateLog function
  - about, 963
- DBTruncateLog function
  - about, 964
- DbType property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 388
- DBUnload function
  - about, 964
- dbunload type enumeration
  - syntax, 1010
- dbunload utility
  - building your own, 1000
  - deployment considerations, 1083
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
  - header file, 1000
- dbunlspt
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbupgrad utility
  - installing jConnect metadata support, 507
- DBUpgrade function
  - about, 965
- dbusde.dll
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbusde.res
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbusen.dll
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbusen.res
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbuses.dll
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbusfr.dll
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbusfr.res
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbusit.dll
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbusja.dll
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbusja.res
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbusko.dll
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbuslt.dll
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbuspl.dll
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbuspt.dll
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbusr.dll
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbustw.dll
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbusu.dll
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- dbuszh.res
  - deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083
- DBValidate function
  - about, 965
- dbxtract utility
  - building your own, 1000
  - database tools interface, 964
  - header file, 1000
- DCX
  - about, xii

- DDL
  - glossary definition, 1094
- deadlocks
  - glossary definition, 1096
- debugger.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- DECIMAL data type
  - embedded SQL, 547
- DECL\_BIGINT macro
  - about, 547
- DECL\_BINARY macro
  - about, 547
- DECL\_BIT macro
  - about, 547
- DECL\_DATETIME macro
  - about, 547
- DECL\_DECIMAL macro
  - about, 547
- DECL\_FIXCHAR macro
  - about, 547
- DECL\_LONGBINARY macro
  - about, 547
- DECL\_LONGNVARCHAR macro
  - about, 547
- DECL\_LONGVARCHAR macro
  - about, 547
- DECL\_NCHAR macro
  - about, 547
- DECL\_NFIXCHAR macro
  - about, 547
- DECL\_NVARCHAR macro
  - about, 547
- DECL\_UNSIGNED\_BIGINT macro
  - about, 547
- DECL\_VARCHAR macro
  - about, 547
- declaration section
  - about, 546
- DECLARE statement
  - using cursors in embedded SQL, 575
- declaring
  - embedded SQL data types, 542
  - host variables, 546
- DELETE statement
  - JDBC, 517
  - positioned, 36
- DeleteCommand property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 304
- DeleteDynamic method
  - JDBCExample, 520
- DeleteStatic method
  - JDBCExample, 518
- deploying
  - .NET data provider, 1029
  - .NET Data Provider applications, 139
  - about, 1017
  - administration tools, 1048
  - administration tools on Linux and Unix, 1059
  - administration tools on Windows without InstallShield, 1049
  - ADO.NET data provider, 1029
  - applications and databases, 1017
  - client applications, 1029
  - console utility [dbconsole], 1048
  - console utility [dbconsole] on Linux and Unix, 1059
  - console utility [dbconsole] on Windows without InstallShield, 1049
  - database servers, 1074
  - databases, 1077
  - databases on CD-ROM, 1078
  - deployment wizard, 1023
  - embedded databases, 1082
  - embedded SQL, 1044
  - file locations, 1020
  - iAnywhere JDBC driver, 1046
  - Interactive SQL, 1048
  - Interactive SQL (dbisqlc), 1072
  - Interactive SQL on Linux and Unix, 1059
  - Interactive SQL on Windows without InstallShield, 1049
  - international considerations, 1078
  - Java in the database, 1074
  - jConnect, 1046
  - JDBC clients, 1046
  - localizing databases, 1078
  - MobiLink plug-in, 1049
  - ODBC, 1037
  - ODBC data sources, 1041
  - OLE DB provider, 1030
  - Open Client, 1046
  - overview, 1018
  - personal database server, 1082
  - QAnywhere plug-in, 1049



---

- read-only databases, 1078
- registering DLLs, 1077
- registry settings, 1075
- silent install, 1027
- SQL Anywhere, 1017
- SQL Anywhere components on Windows, 1023
- SQL Anywhere plug-in, 1049
- SQL Remote, 1084
- Sybase Central, 1048
- Sybase Central on Linux and Unix, 1059
- Sybase Central on Windows without InstallShield, 1049
- UltraLite plug-in, 1049
- Unix issues, 1020
- wizard, 1023
- deploying on Linux and Unix
  - SQL Anywhere Console [dbconsole] utility, 1059
- deploying the SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider
  - about, 139
- deployment wizard
  - about, 1023
- Depth property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 313
- DeriveParameters method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 233
- DESCRIBE statement
  - about, 563
  - multiple result sets, 588
  - SQLDA fields, 566
  - sqlen field, 568
  - sqltype field, 568
- describing
  - NCHAR columns in Embedded SQL, 568
  - result sets, 58
- descriptors
  - describing result sets, 58
- DesignTimeVisible property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 213
- DestinationColumn property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 194
- DestinationOrdinal property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 194
- DestinationTableName property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 184
- developer community
  - newsgroups, xvii
- developing applications with the .NET Data Provider
  - about, 109
  - developing applications with the ASP.NET providers
    - about, 155
  - device tracking
    - glossary definition, 1096
  - direct row handling
    - glossary definition, 1096
  - Direction property [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 388
  - directory structure
    - Unix, 1020
  - disableExecuteAll
    - configurable option , 1071
  - DisableMultiRowFetch property [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 281
  - disableResultsEditing
    - configurable option , 1071
  - DISH services
    - about, 849
    - creating, 856, 865
    - JAX-WS tutorial, 871, 892
    - Microsoft .NET tutorial, 868, 887
  - Dispose method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 186
  - Distributed Transaction Coordinator
    - three-tier computing, 68
  - distributed transaction processing
    - using the .NET Data Provider, 137
  - distributed transactions
    - about, 66
    - architecture, 69
    - EAServer, 72
    - enlistment, 68
    - recovery, 71
    - restrictions, 70
    - three-tier computing, 67
  - DLL entry points
    - about, 593
  - DLLs
    - calling from stored procedures, 670
    - deployment, 1077
    - external procedure calls, 672
    - multiple SQLCAs, 559
    - registering for deployment, 1077
  - DML
    - glossary definition, 1094
  - DoBroadcast property [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 434
  - DocCommentXchange (DCX)

- about, xii
  - documentation
    - conventions, xiv
    - SQL Anywhere, xii
  - domains
    - glossary definition, 1096
  - downloads
    - glossary definition, 1096
  - drivers
    - deploying the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver, 1037
    - iAnywhere JDBC driver, 502
    - jConnect JDBC driver, 502
    - linking the SQL Anywhere ODBC driver on Windows, 466
  - DSN-less connections
    - using ODBC, 1044
  - DT\_BIGINT embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_BINARY embedded SQL data type
    - about, 543
  - DT\_BIT embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_DATE embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_DECIMAL embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_DOUBLE embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_FIXCHAR embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_FLOAT embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_INT embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_LONGBINARY embedded SQL data type
    - about, 544
  - DT\_LONGNVARCHAR embedded SQL data type
    - about, 543
  - DT\_LONGVARCHAR embedded SQL data type
    - about, 543
  - DT\_NFIXCHAR embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_NSTRING embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_NVARCHAR embedded SQL data type
    - about, 543
  - DT\_SMALLINT embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_STRING data type
    - about, 614
  - DT\_STRING embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_TIME embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_TIMESTAMP embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_TIMESTAMP\_STRUCT embedded SQL data type
    - about, 544
  - DT\_TINYINT embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_UNSBIGINT embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_UNSENT embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_UNSSMALLINT embedded SQL data type
    - about, 542
  - DT\_VARCHAR embedded SQL data type
    - about, 543
  - DT\_VARIABLE embedded SQL data type
    - about, 544
  - DTC
    - isolation levels, 70
    - three-tier computing, 68
  - DTC isolation levels
    - about, 70
  - dynamic cursors
    - about, 46
    - ODBC, 55
    - sample, 540
  - DYNAMIC SCROLL cursors
    - asensitive cursors, 48
    - embedded SQL, 56
    - troubleshooting, 34
  - dynamic SQL
    - about, 561
    - glossary definition, 1096
    - SQLDA, 565
- E**
- EAServer
    - component transaction attribute, 72
    - distributed transactions, 72
    - three-tier computing, 68
    - transaction coordinator, 72

---

EBFs  
 glossary definition, 1096

Elevate property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 281

embedded databases  
 deploying, 1082

embedded SQL  
 about, 531  
 authorization, 590  
 autocommit mode, 60  
 character strings, 590  
 compile and link process, 532  
 controlling autocommit behavior, 60  
 cursor types, 39  
 cursors, 56, 538, 575  
 deploying clients, 1044  
 development, 532  
 dynamic cursors, 540  
 dynamic statements, 561  
 example program, 535  
 FETCH FOR UPDATE, 54  
 fetching data, 574  
 functions, 593  
 glossary definition, 1097  
 header files, 534  
 host variables, 546  
 import libraries, 534  
 introduction to programming, 8  
 line numbers, 590  
 SQL statements, 24  
 statement summary, 615  
 static statements, 561

encoding  
 glossary definition, 1097

EncryptedPassword property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 282

Encryption property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 282

EndExecuteNonQuery method [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 221

EndExecuteReader method [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 223

Enlist property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 283

EnlistDistributedTransaction method [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 259

enlistment  
 distributed transactions, 68

EnlistTransaction method [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 260

Enterprise Application Server (*see* EAServer)

entry points  
 calling DBTools functions, 951

enumerations  
 DBTools interface, 1007

environment handles  
 ODBC, 473

environment variables  
 command prompts, xv  
 command shells, xv  
 for Java in the database, 91

error codes  
 SQL Anywhere exit codes, 1013

error handling  
 .NET Data Provider, 138  
 Java, 84  
 ODBC, 498

error messages  
 embedded SQL function, 614

errors  
 HTTP codes, 942  
 SOAP faults, 942  
 sqlcode SQLCA field, 555

Errors property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 357, 367

escape characters  
 Java in the database, 87  
 SQL, 87

escape syntax  
 Interactive SQL, 526

esqldll.c  
 about, 536

event log  
 EventLogMask, 1076  
 registry entry, 1075

event model  
 glossary definition, 1097

exceptions  
 Java, 84

EXEC SQL  
 embedded SQL development, 536

execute method  
 Python, 736

EXECUTE statement  
 about, 561

- stored procedures in embedded SQL, 586
  - executemany method
    - Python, 737
  - ExecuteNonQuery method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 225
  - ExecuteReader method
    - SACommand class, 149, 153
    - using, 27, 118
  - ExecuteReader methods [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 226
  - ExecuteReader() method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 226
  - ExecuteReader(CommandBehavior) method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 226
  - ExecuteScalar method
    - using, 119
  - ExecuteScalar method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 227
  - executeToolBarButtonSemantics
    - configurable option , 1071
  - executeUpdate JDBC method
    - about, 517
    - using, 28
  - executing SQL statements
    - in applications, 24
  - exit codes
    - about, 1013
  - Explorer (*see* SQL Anywhere Explorer )
  - external calls
    - creating procedures and functions, 671
  - external environments
    - about, 690
    - C API, 697
    - CLR, 694
    - embedded SQL, 697
    - JAVA, 706
    - ODBC, 697
    - PERL, 711
    - PHP, 715
  - external function call API
    - an\_extfn\_api, 674
    - an\_extfn\_result\_set\_column\_data, 679
    - an\_extfn\_result\_set\_column\_info, 678
    - an\_extfn\_result\_set\_info, 677
    - an\_extfn\_value, 676
    - extfn\_cancel method, 674
    - extfn\_use\_new\_api method, 673
    - get\_piece callback, 681
    - get\_value callback, 681
    - prototype, 673
    - set\_cancel callback, 683
    - set\_value callback, 682
  - external function calls
    - about, 669, 689
  - external functions
    - canceling, 683
    - passing parameters, 681
    - prototypes, 673
    - return types, 686
    - unloading libraries, 688
  - external logins
    - glossary definition, 1097
  - external objects
    - about, 692
    - comment, 692
    - system table, 691
  - external procedure calls
    - about, 669, 689
  - extfn\_cancel
    - external function call API, 674
  - extfn\_use\_new\_api
    - external function call API, 673
  - extraction
    - glossary definition, 1097
- ## F
- failover
    - glossary definition, 1097
  - fastLauncherEnabled
    - configurable option , 1071
  - fat cursors
    - about, 35
  - feedback
    - documentation, xvii
    - providing, xvii
    - reporting an error, xvii
    - requesting an update, xvii
  - FETCH FOR UPDATE
    - embedded SQL, 54
    - ODBC, 54
  - fetch operation
    - cursors, 34
    - multiple rows, 35
    - scrollable cursors, 35

---

**FETCH** statement  
     about, 574  
     dynamic queries, 563  
     multi-row, 577  
     using cursors in embedded SQL, 575  
     wide, 577

**fetchall** method  
     Python, 736

**fetching**  
     embedded SQL, 574  
     limits, 33  
     ODBC, 493

**FieldCount** property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 314

**fields**  
     public, 88

**FILE**  
     glossary definition, 1097

**FILE** message type  
     glossary definition, 1097

**file names**  
     .db file extension, 1022  
     .log file extension, 1022  
     conventions, 1021  
     language, 1021  
     SQL Anywhere, 1022  
     version number, 1021

**file naming conventions**  
     about, 1021

**file transfer**  
     callback, 606

**file-based downloads**  
     glossary definition, 1098

**file-definition database**  
     glossary definition, 1098

**FileDataSourceName** property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 283

**files**  
     deployment location, 1020  
     naming conventions, 1021

**fill\_s\_sqlda** function  
     about, 612

**fill\_sqlda** function  
     about, 612

**FillSchema** method  
     using, 128

**finding out more and requesting technical assistance**  
     technical support, xvii

**FIXCHAR** data type  
     embedded SQL, 547

**ForceStart** connection parameter  
     db\_start\_engine, 608

**ForceStart** property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 283

**foreign key constraints**  
     glossary definition, 1098

**foreign keys**  
     glossary definition, 1098

**foreign tables**  
     glossary definition, 1098

**ForeignKeys** field [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 375

**free\_filled\_sqlda** function  
     about, 613

**free\_sqlda** function  
     about, 613

**free\_sqlda\_noind** function  
     about, 613

**full backups**  
     glossary definition, 1098

**functions**  
     calling DBTools functions, 951  
     DBTools, 957  
     embedded SQL, 593  
     external, 670  
     parameters to web service clients, 908  
     refreshing from SQL Anywhere Explorer, 21  
     SQL Anywhere PHP module, 754

**G**

**gateways**  
     glossary definition, 1098

**generated join conditions**  
     glossary definition, 1099

**generation numbers**  
     glossary definition, 1099

**get\_piece**  
     about, 681

**get\_value** function  
     about, 681  
     using, 686

**getAutoCommit** method  
     JDBC, 516

**GetBoolean** method [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 317

- GetByte method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 318
- GetBytes method
  - using, 132
- GetBytes method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 319
- GetChar method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 320
- GetChars method
  - using, 132
- GetChars method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 321
- getConnection method
  - instances, 516
- GetData method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 322
- GetDataSources method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 342
- GetDataTypeName method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 322
- GetDateTime method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 323
- GetDecimal method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 323
- GetDeleteCommand methods [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 233
- GetDeleteCommand() method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 234
- GetDeleteCommand(Boolean) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 233
- GetDouble method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 324
- GetEnumerator method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 325, 355, 410
- GetFieldType method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 325
- GetFillParameters method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 308
- GetFloat method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 326
- GetGuid method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 327
- GetInsertCommand methods [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 235
- GetInsertCommand() method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 236
- GetInsertCommand(Boolean) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 235
- GetInt16 method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 328
- GetInt32 method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 328
- GetInt64 method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 329
- GetKeyword method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 295
- GetName method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 330
- GetObjectData method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 359
- GetOrdinal method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 330
- GetSchema methods [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 260
- GetSchema() method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 261
- GetSchema(String) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 261
- GetSchema(String, String[]) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 262
- GetSchemaTable method
  - using, 122
- GetSchemaTable method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 331
- GetString method
  - SADeveloper class, 149
- GetString method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 333
- GetTimeSpan method
  - using, 132
- GetTimeSpan method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 334
- getting help
  - technical support, xvii
- GetUInt16 method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 335
- GetUInt32 method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 335
- GetUInt64 method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 336
- GetUpdateCommand methods [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 237
- GetUpdateCommand() method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 238
- GetUpdateCommand(Boolean) method [SA .NET 2.0]

---

- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 237
- GetUseLongNameAsKeyword method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 245, 296
- GetValue methods [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 337
- GetValue(Int32) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 337
- GetValue(Int32, Int64, Int32) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 337
- GetValues method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 338
- global temporary tables
  - glossary definition, 1099
- glossary
  - list of SQL Anywhere terminology, 1089
- GNU compiler
  - embedded SQL support, 533
- grant options
  - glossary definition, 1099
- GRANT statement
  - JDBC, 525

## H

- handles
  - about ODBC, 473
  - allocating ODBC, 473
- hash
  - glossary definition, 1099
- HasRows property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 314
- header files
  - embedded SQL, 534
  - ODBC, 466
- help
  - technical support, xvii
- histograms
  - glossary definition, 1099
- Host property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 435
- host variables
  - about, 546
  - data types, 547
  - declaring, 546
  - not supported in batches, 546
  - SQLDA, 566
  - uses, 550

- HTML web server
  - quick start, 851
- HTML\_DECODE
  - example, 877
- HTTP
  - default services, 878
- HTTP headers
  - in web services handlers, 919
  - modifying, 903
  - suppressing, 903
- HTTP server
  - about, 849
  - character sets, 941
  - creating web services, 856
  - data types, 880
  - errors, 942
  - HTTP headers, 919
  - HTTP session, 935
  - interpreting URLs, 861
  - quick start, 851
  - request handlers, 877
  - variables, 917
- HTTP services
  - listening for SOAP HTTP requests, 859
- HTTP session
  - about, 935
  - connections, 937
  - errors, 938
  - semantics, 937
  - timeout, 938
- HTTP\_HEADER function
  - web services, 919
- http\_session\_timeout option
  - web services, 938
- HTTP\_VARIABLE function
  - web services, 917

## I

- iAnywhere developer community
  - newsgroups, xvii
- iAnywhere JDBC driver
  - choosing a JDBC driver, 502
  - connecting, 505
  - deploying JDBC clients, 1046
  - glossary definition, 1100
  - loading, 505
  - required files, 505

- URL, 505
  - using, 505
- iAnywhere ODBC Driver Manager
  - Unix, 469
- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 178
- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll
  - adding a reference to a C# project, 112
  - adding a reference to a Visual Studio project, 112
  - deploying .NET clients, 1029
- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll.config
  - deploying .NET clients, 1029
- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.gac
  - deploying .NET clients, 1029
- icons
  - used in this Help, xvi
- identifiers
  - glossary definition, 1100
  - needing quotes, 613
- IdleTimeout property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 284
- import libraries
  - alternatives, 536
  - DBTools, 950
  - embedded SQL, 534
  - introduction, 532
  - ODBC, 466
  - Windows Mobile ODBC, 467
- import statement
  - Java in the database, 87
  - jConnect, 507
- INCLUDE statement
  - SQLCA, 555
- incremental backups
  - glossary definition, 1100
- IndexColumns field [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 376
- indexes
  - glossary definition, 1100
- Indexes field [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 376
- IndexOf method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 203
- IndexOf methods [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 411
- IndexOf(Object) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 411
- IndexOf(String) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 411
- indicator
  - wide fetch, 577
- indicator variables
  - about, 551
  - data type conversion, 553
  - NULL, 552
  - SQLDA, 566
  - summary of values, 553
  - truncation, 553
- InfoMaker
  - glossary definition, 1100
- InfoMessage event [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 267
- initialization utility [dbinit]
  - deployment considerations, 1083
- InitString property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 253
- inner joins
  - glossary definition, 1100
- INOUT parameters
  - Java in the database, 104
- InProcess option
  - Linked Server, 456
- insensitive cursors
  - about, 39, 46
  - delete example, 42
  - embedded SQL, 56
  - introduction, 42
  - update example, 44
- Insert method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 412
- INSERT statement
  - JDBC, 517
  - multi-row, 577
  - performance, 26
  - wide, 577
  - writing Python scripts, 736
- InsertCommand property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 305
- InsertDynamic method
  - JDBCExample, 520
- InsertStatic method
  - JDBCExample, 518
- INSTALL JAVA statement
  - using when installing a class, 98
  - using when installing a JAR, 99



---

install-dir  
 documentation usage, xiv

installation  
 silent install, 1027

installation programs  
 deploying, 1019

installer  
 silent install, 1027

installing  
 JAR files into a database, 99  
 Java classes into a database, 98  
 jConnect metadata support, 507  
 SQL Anywhere Explorer, 19

Instance field [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 361

Instance property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 342

integrated logins  
 glossary definition, 1100

Integrated property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 284

integrity  
 glossary definition, 1101

Interactive SQL  
 deploying, 1048, 1071  
 deploying dbisql, 1072  
 deploying on Linux and Unix, 1059  
 deploying on Windows without InstallShield, 1049  
 glossary definition, 1101  
 JDBC escape syntax, 526  
 oem configurations, 1071  
 opening from Visual Studio, 19  
 option settings in deployed applications, 1071  
 Unix supported deployment platforms, 1059

Interactive SQL options  
 locking settings in deployed applications, 1071

Interactive SQL utility [dbisql]  
 Unix supported deployment platforms, 1059

interface libraries  
 DBLIB, 532  
 dynamic loading, 536  
 SQL Anywhere C API, 618

interfaces  
 (*see also* APIs)  
 SQL Anywhere embedded SQL, 8  
 SQL Anywhere web services, 14

IPV6 property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 435

IsClosed property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 314

IsDBNull method [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 339

IsFixedSize property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 398

IsNullable property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 389

isolation level  
 readonly-statement-snapshot, 63  
 snapshot, 63  
 statement-snapshot, 63

isolation levels  
 ADO programming, 454  
 applications, 62  
 cursor sensitivity, 54  
 cursors, 34  
 DTC, 70  
 glossary definition, 1101  
 lost updates, 53  
 SA\_SQL\_TXN\_READONLY\_STATEMENT\_SNAPSHOT, 491  
 SA\_SQL\_TXN\_SNAPSHOT, 491  
 SA\_SQL\_TXN\_STATEMENT\_SNAPSHOT, 491  
 setting for the SATransaction object, 136  
 SQL\_TXN\_READ\_COMMITTED, 491  
 SQL\_TXN\_READ\_UNCOMMITTED, 491  
 SQL\_TXN\_REPEATABLE\_READ, 491  
 SQL\_TXN\_SERIALIZABLE, 491

IsolationLevel property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 441

ISOLATIONLEVEL\_BROWSE  
 about, 70

ISOLATIONLEVEL\_CHAOS  
 about, 70

ISOLATIONLEVEL\_CURSORSTABILITY  
 about, 70

ISOLATIONLEVEL\_ISOLATED  
 about, 70

ISOLATIONLEVEL\_READCOMMITTED  
 about, 70

ISOLATIONLEVEL\_READUNCOMMITTED  
 about, 70

ISOLATIONLEVEL\_REPEATABLE\_READ  
 about, 70

ISOLATIONLEVEL\_SERIALIZABLE  
 about, 70

ISOLATIONLEVEL\_UNSPECIFIED

- about, 70
- isql.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- IsReadOnly property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 398
- IsSynchronized property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 399
- Item properties [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 315, 399
- Item property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 198, 293, 354
- Item(Int32) property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 315, 399
- Item(String) property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 316, 400
- J**
- Jaguar (*see* EAServer)
- JAR and ZIP file creation wizard
  - using, 99
- JAR files
  - adding, 99
  - glossary definition, 1101
  - installing, 98, 99
  - updating, 100
  - versions, 100
- Java
  - JDBC, 501
  - storing classes, 80
- Java API for XML Web Services
  - about, 871
- Java class creation wizard
  - using, 515
- Java classes
  - adding, 98
  - glossary definition, 1101
  - installing, 98
- Java in the database
  - about, 77
  - API, 85
  - choosing a Java VM, 91
  - deploying, 1074
  - environment variables, 91
  - error handling, 84
  - escape characters, 87
  - installing classes, 98
  - key features, 80
  - main method, 87, 102
  - NoSuchMethodException, 102
  - persistence, 87
  - returning result sets, 103
  - runtime environment, 85
  - security management, 105
  - starting the VM, 106
  - stopping the VM, 106
  - supported platforms, 81
  - virtual machine, 80
- JAVA keyword
  - external environment, 706
- Java Runtime Environment
  - using Java in the database, 91
- Java signatures
  - CREATE PROCEDURE statement [user defined], 707
- Java stored procedures
  - about, 103
  - example, 103
- Java VM
  - JAVA\_HOME environment variable, 91
  - JAVAHOME environment variable, 91
  - selecting, 91
  - starting, 106
  - stopping, 106
- JAVA\_HOME environment variable
  - starting the Java VM, 91
- java\_location option
  - deprecated, 91
- java\_main\_userid option
  - deprecated, 91
- java\_vm\_options option
  - using, 91
- JAVAHOME environment variable
  - starting the Java VM, 91
- JAX-WS
  - about, 871
  - accessing web services tutorial, 871
  - using data types tutorial, 892
- JComponents1101.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063

---

- deploying on Unix, 1060
- deploying on Windows, 1051
- jconn3.jar
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- jConnect 6.0.5, 507
- loading jConnect 6.0.5, 508
- loading jConnect JDBC driver, 513
- jConnect
  - about, 507
  - choosing a JDBC driver, 502
  - CLASSPATH environment variable, 507
  - connecting, 509
  - connections, 511, 514
  - database setup, 507
  - deploying JDBC clients, 1046
  - download, 507
  - glossary definition, 1101
  - installing metadata support, 507
  - jconn3.jar, 507
  - loading, 508
  - packages, 507
  - system objects, 507
  - URL, 509
  - versions supplied, 507
- JDBC
  - about, 501
  - applications overview, 503
  - autocommit, 516
  - autocommit mode, 60
  - batched inserts, 519
  - client connections, 511
  - client-side, 504
  - connecting to a database, 509
  - connection code, 511
  - connection defaults, 516
  - connections, 504
  - controlling autocommit behavior, 60
  - cursor types, 39
  - data access, 517
  - deploying JDBC clients, 1046
  - escape syntax in Interactive SQL, 526
  - examples, 502, 511
  - glossary definition, 1101
  - iAnywhere JDBC driver, 505
  - INSERT statement, 517
  - introduction to programming, 7
  - jConnect, 507
  - permissions, 525
  - prepared statements, 519
  - requirements, 502
  - result sets, 523
  - server-side, 504
  - server-side connections, 514
  - setMaxFieldSize, 518
  - SQL statements, 24
  - ways to use, 502
  - wide inserts, 521
- JDBC drivers
  - choosing, 502
  - compatibility, 502
  - performance, 502
- JDBC escape syntax
  - using in Interactive SQL, 526
- JDBC-ODBC bridge
  - iAnywhere JDBC driver, 502
- jdbcdrv.zip
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- JDBCExample class
  - about, 517
- JDBCExample.java file
  - about, 517
- jh.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- jlogon.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- jodbc.jar
  - deploying database servers, 1074
  - deploying JDBC clients, 1046
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
  - loading iAnywhere JDBC driver, 513
- join conditions
  - glossary definition, 1102
- join types
  - glossary definition, 1102
- joins
  - glossary definition, 1102
- JRE
  - checking version on Mac OS X, 1050
  - using Java in the database, 91
- jre160\_x86

- 32-bit Java Runtime Environment, 1050
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- jre\_1.6.0\_linux\_sun\_i586
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- jre\_1.6.0\_solaris\_sun\_sparc
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- JSON server
  - creating web services, 856
- JSON web server
  - quick start, 851
- jsyblib600.dll
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- jsyblib600.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- K**
- keep-alive request-header field
  - HTTP headers, 919
- Kerberos property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 284
- key joins
  - glossary definition, 1099
- keyHH.exe
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- Keys property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 294
- keyset-driven cursors
  - about, 49
  - ODBC, 55
- L**
- Language property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 285
- languages
  - file names, 1021
- LazyClose property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 285
- LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH
  - deployment, 1021
- LDAP property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 436
- length SQLDA field
  - about, 566, 568
- libdbcapi.dylib
  - PHP support module, 716
- libdbcapi.so
  - PHP support module, 716
- libdbcapi\_r.dylib
  - deploying, 1079
  - PHP support module, 716
- libdbcapi\_r.so
  - deploying, 1079
  - PHP support module, 716
- libdbcis11.dylib
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbcis11.so
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbecc11.so
  - ECC encryption, 1081
- libdbencod11\_r
  - deploying SQL Remote, 1084
- libdbextenv11\_r.dylib
  - deploying, 1079
  - PHP support module, 716
- libdbextenv11\_r.so
  - deploying, 1079
  - PHP support module, 716
- libdbextf.dylib
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbextf.so
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbfile11\_r
  - deploying SQL Remote, 1084
- libdbftp11\_r
  - deploying SQL Remote, 1084
- libdbicu11
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
- libdbicu11\_r
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
- libdbicu11\_r.dylib
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbicu11\_r.so
  - deploying database servers, 1074
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- libdbicudt11
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
- libdbicudt11.dylib
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbicudt11.so
  - deploying database servers, 1074

---

- deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- libdbjodbc11.dylib
  - deploying, 1079
  - deploying database servers, 1074
  - deploying JDBC clients, 1046
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
- libdbjodbc11.so
  - deploying, 1079
  - deploying database servers, 1074
  - deploying JDBC clients, 1046
- libdbjodbc11.so.1
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- libdblib11.dylib
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
- libdblib11.so
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
  - deploying embedded SQL clients, 1045
- libdblib11\_r
  - deploying SQL Remote, 1084
- libdblib11\_r.dylib
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
- libdblib11\_r.so
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
- libdblib11\_r.so.1
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- libdbodbc11
  - Unix ODBC driver, 468
- libdbodbc11.
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
- libdbodbc11.dylib
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbodbc11.so
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbodbc11\_n
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
- libdbodbc11\_n.dylib
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbodbc11\_n.so
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbodbc11\_r
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
- libdbodbc11\_r.dylib
  - deploying database servers, 1074
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
- libdbodbc11\_r.so
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbodbc11\_r.so.1
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- libdbodm11
  - about, 469
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
  - Unix ODBC driver manager, 469
- libdbodm11.dylib
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
- libdbodm11.so.1
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- libdboftsp\_r.so
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
- libdbput11\_r.dylib
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
- libdbput11\_r.so.1
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- libdbrsa11.dylib
  - RSA encryption, 1081
- libdbrsa11.so
  - RSA encryption, 1081
- libdbrsa11\_r.dylib
  - RSA encryption, 1081
- libdbrsakp11.dylib
  - deploying JDBC clients, 1046
  - deploying Open Client, 1046
- libdbrsakp11.so
  - deploying JDBC clients, 1046
  - deploying Open Client, 1046
- libdbrsakp11\_r.dll
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbrsakp11\_r.dylib
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbscript11\_r.dylib
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbscript11\_r.so
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbserv11\_r.dylib
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbserv11\_r.so
  - AES encryption, 1081
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libdbsmtp11\_r
  - deploying SQL Remote, 1084
- libdbtasks11
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
- libdbtasks11.dylib
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
- libdbtasks11.so

- deploying database utilities, 1082
- deploying embedded SQL clients, 1045
- libdbtasks11\_r
  - deploying ODBC clients, 1037
  - deploying SQL Remote, 1084
- libdbtasks11\_r.dylib
  - deploying database servers, 1074
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
- libdbtasks11\_r.so
  - deploying database servers, 1074
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
- libdbtasks11\_r.so.1
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- libdbtool11\_r
  - about, 948
  - deploying SQL Remote, 1084
- libdbtool11\_r.dylib
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
- libdbtool11\_r.so
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
- libdbtool11\_r.so.1
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- libjsyblib600\_r.dylib
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
- libjsyblib600\_r.so.1
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- libmljodbc.dylib
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
- libmljodbc.so.1
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- libraries
  - calling external libraries from stored procedures or functions, 670
  - dbt1stm.lib, 950
  - dbtools11.lib, 950
  - embedded SQL, 534
  - using the import libraries, 950
- library
  - dblib11.lib, 534
  - dblibtm.lib, 534
  - libdblib11.so, 534
  - libdblib11\_r.so, 534
  - libdbtasks11.so, 534
  - libdbtasks11\_r.so, 534
- library functions
  - embedded SQL, 593
- libsybbr.dll
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libsybbr.dylib
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- libsybbr.so
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- licensing
  - DBLicense function, 961
  - web servers, 938
- line length
  - SQL preprocessor output, 590
- line numbers
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- Linked Servers
  - InProcess option, 456
  - OLE DB, 456
  - RPC option, 456
  - RPC Out option, 456
- Linux
  - deployment issues, 1020
  - directory structure, 1020
- Listeners
  - glossary definition, 1102
- liveness
  - connections, 605
- LivenessTimeout property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 286
- local temporary tables
  - glossary definition, 1102
- LocalOnly property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 436
- lockedPreferences
  - configurable option , 1071
- locks
  - glossary definition, 1103
- log files
  - glossary definition, 1103
- log4j.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- LogFile property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 286
- logical indexes
  - glossary definition, 1103
- LONG BINARY data type
  - embedded SQL, 582
  - retrieving in embedded SQL, 583

---

- sending in embedded SQL, 584
- LONG NVARCHAR data type
  - embedded SQL, 582
  - retrieving in embedded SQL, 583
  - sending in embedded SQL, 584
- LONG VARCHAR data type
  - embedded SQL, 582
  - retrieving in embedded SQL, 583
  - sending in embedded SQL, 584
- LONGBINARARY data type
  - embedded SQL, 547
- LONGNVARCHAR data type
  - embedded SQL, 547
- LONGVARCHAR data type
  - embedded SQL, 547
- lost updates
  - about, 52
- LTM
  - glossary definition, 1103

**M**

- Mac OS X
  - checking JRE version, 1050
  - deployment issues, 1020
  - directory structure, 1020
- macros
  - \_SQL\_OS\_WINDOWS, 536
- main method
  - Java in the database, 87, 102
- maintenance releases
  - glossary definition, 1103
- management tools
  - dbtools, 947
- manual commit mode
  - controlling, 60
  - implementation, 62
  - transactions, 60
- materialized views
  - glossary definition, 1103
- maximumDisplayedRows
  - configurable option , 1071
- MaxPoolSize property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 286
- MDAC
  - deploying, 1031
  - version, 1031
- membership
  - result sets, 41
- MergeModule.CABinet
  - deployment wizard, 1023
- message log
  - glossary definition, 1104
- Message property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 350, 357, 367
- message stores
  - glossary definition, 1104
- message systems
  - glossary definition, 1104
- message types
  - glossary definition, 1104
- messages
  - callback, 605
  - server, 605
- MessageType property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 368
- metadata
  - glossary definition, 1104
- metadata support
  - installing for jConnect, 507
- MetaDataCollections field [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 377
- method signatures
  - Java, 707
- Microsoft .NET
  - accessing web services tutorial, 868
  - using data types tutorial, 887
- Microsoft Transaction Server
  - three-tier computing, 68
- Microsoft Visual C++
  - embedded SQL support, 533
- MIME type
  - web service, 932
- MinPoolSize property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 287
- mirror logs
  - glossary definition, 1104
- mixed cursors
  - ODBC, 55
- mldesign.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- mlmon.ini
  - deploying administration tools, 1048

- mlplugin.jar
    - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
    - deploying on Unix, 1060
    - deploying on Windows, 1051
  - mlstream.jar
    - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
    - deploying on Unix, 1060
    - deploying on Windows, 1051
  - MobiLink
    - glossary definition, 1105
  - MobiLink clients
    - glossary definition, 1105
  - MobiLink Monitor
    - glossary definition, 1105
  - MobiLink server
    - glossary definition, 1105
  - MobiLink system tables
    - glossary definition, 1105
  - MobiLink users
    - glossary definition, 1105
  - mobilink.jpr
    - deploying administration tools on Linux/Unix/Mac OS X, 1065, 1069
    - deploying administration tools on Windows, 1054, 1057
  - MSDASQL
    - OLE DB provider, 448
  - msiexec
    - deployment wizard, 1023
    - silent install, 1027
  - msxml4.dll
    - deploying SQL Anywhere, 1077
  - multi-row fetches
    - ESQL, 577
  - multi-row inserts
    - ESQL, 577
  - multi-row puts
    - ESQL, 577
  - multi-row queries
    - cursors, 575
  - multi-threaded applications
    - embedded SQL, 557, 559
    - Java in the database, 102
    - ODBC, 464, 478
    - Unix, 468
  - multiple result sets
    - DESCRIBE statement, 588
    - ODBC, 496
  - myDispose method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 341
  - MyIP property [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 436
- ## N
- name SQLDA field
    - about, 566
  - NativeError property [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 350, 358, 368
  - natural joins
    - glossary definition, 1099
  - NCHAR data type
    - embedded SQL, 547
  - network protocols
    - glossary definition, 1105
  - network server
    - glossary definition, 1105
  - NewPassword property [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 287
  - newsgroups
    - technical support, xvii
  - NEXT\_CONNECTION function
    - example, 940
  - NEXT\_HTTP\_HEADER function
    - web services, 919
  - NEXT\_HTTP\_VARIABLE function
    - web services, 917
  - NEXT\_SOAP\_HEADER function
    - web services, 925
  - NextResult method [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 340
  - NFIXCHAR data type
    - embedded SQL, 547
  - NO SCROLL cursors
    - about, 39, 46
    - embedded SQL, 56
  - normalization
    - glossary definition, 1105
  - Notifiers
    - glossary definition, 1106
  - NotifyAfter property [SA .NET 2.0]
    - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 185
  - ntodbc.h
    - about, 466
    - compilation platform, 485



---

NULL  
     dynamic SQL, 565  
     indicator variables, 551  
 null-terminated string  
     embedded SQL data type, 542  
 NVARCHAR data type  
     embedded SQL, 547

**O**

object trees  
     glossary definition, 1106  
 object-oriented programming  
     style, 88  
 objects  
     storage format, 100  
 obtaining time values  
     about, 132  
 ODBC  
     64-bit considerations, 485  
     autocommit mode, 60  
     backward compatibility, 465  
     compatibility, 465  
     conformance, 464  
     connecting with no data source, 1044  
     controlling autocommit behavior, 60  
     cursor types, 39  
     cursors, 55, 491  
     data alignment, 489  
     data sources, 1042  
     driver deployment, 1037  
     error checking, 498  
     FETCH FOR UPDATE, 54  
     glossary definition, 1106  
     handles, 473  
     header files, 466  
     import libraries, 466  
     introduction, 464  
     introduction to programming, 6  
     linking, 466  
     multi-threaded applications, 478  
     multiple result sets, 496  
     prepared statements, 483  
     programming, 463  
     registry entries, 1042  
     result sets, 496  
     sample application, 474  
     sample program, 471  
     SQL statements, 24  
     SQLSetConnectAttr, 479  
     stored procedures, 496  
     Unix development, 468  
     version supported, 464  
     Windows Mobile, 467  
 ODBC Administrator  
     glossary definition, 1106  
 ODBC API  
     about, 463  
 ODBC client  
     deploying, 1037  
     install, 1037  
 ODBC data sources  
     deploying, 1041  
     glossary definition, 1106  
 ODBC driver  
     components, 1037  
     defining data sources, 1041  
     deploying, 1037  
     install, 1037  
     registry settings, 1040  
 ODBC driver managers  
     Unix, 469  
 ODBC drivers  
     Unix, 468  
 ODBC programming interface  
     introduction, 6  
 odbcc.h  
     about, 466  
 OEM.ini  
     administration tools , 1071  
 Offset property [SA .NET 2.0]  
     iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 389  
 OLE DB  
     about, 448  
     autocommit mode, 60  
     controlling autocommit behavior, 60  
     cursor types, 39  
     cursors, 55  
     deploying, 1030  
     Microsoft Linked Server setup, 456  
     ODBC and, 448  
     provider deployment, 1030  
     supported interfaces, 457  
     supported platforms, 448  
     updates, 453  
     updating data through a cursor, 453

- OLE DB and ADO programming interface
  - about, 447
  - introduction, 5
- OLE transactions
  - three-tier computing, 67, 68
- online backups
  - embedded SQL, 589
- online books
  - PDF, xii
- Open Client
  - architecture, 840
  - autocommit mode, 60
  - controlling autocommit behavior, 60
  - cursor types, 39
  - data type ranges, 842
  - data types, 842
  - data types compatibility, 842
  - deploying Open Client applications, 1046
  - encrypting passwords, 847
  - interface, 839
  - introduction, 15
  - limitations, 847
  - requirements, 841
  - SQL, 844
  - SQL Anywhere limitations, 847
  - SQL statements, 24
- Open method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 267
- OPEN statement
  - using cursors in embedded SQL, 575
- operating systems
  - file names, 1021
- options window
  - SQL Anywhere Explorer, 20
- OUT parameters
  - Java in the database, 104
- outer joins
  - glossary definition, 1106
- overflow errors
  - data type conversion, 842
- P**
- packages
  - glossary definition, 1106
  - installing, 99
  - Java in the database, 87
  - jConnect, 507
- parallel backups
  - db\_backup function, 593
- parameter size considerations
  - ODBC, 485
- ParameterName property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 390
- Parameters property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 213
- parse trees
  - glossary definition, 1106
- passing parameters
  - to external functions, 681
- Password property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 287
- passwords
  - encrypting in jConnect, 507
  - encrypting in Open Client, 847
- PDB
  - glossary definition, 1106
- PDF
  - documentation, xii
- performance
  - cursors, 50, 51
  - JDBC, 519
  - JDBC drivers, 502
  - prepared statements, 26, 483
- performance statistics
  - glossary definition, 1107
- Perl
  - DBD::SQLAnywhere, 721
  - installing DBD::SQLAnywhere on Unix and Mac OS X, 725
  - installing DBD::SQLAnywhere on Windows, 723
  - writing DBD::SQLAnywhere scripts, 727
- Perl DBD::SQLAnywhere
  - about, 721
  - introduction to programming, 10
- Perl DBI module
  - about, 721
- PERL keyword
  - external environment, 711
- perlenv.pl
  - deploying, 1079
- permissions
  - JDBC, 525
  - procedures calling external functions, 671
- persistence
  - Java in the database classes, 87

---

PersistSecurityInfo property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 288

personal server  
 deploying, 1082  
 glossary definition, 1107

PHP  
 installing, 740

PHP functions  
 sasql\_affected\_rows, 755  
 sasql\_close, 756  
 sasql\_commit, 756  
 sasql\_connect, 756  
 sasql\_data\_seek, 757  
 sasql\_disconnect, 758  
 sasql\_error, 758  
 sasql\_errorcode, 759  
 sasql\_escape\_string, 759  
 sasql\_fetch\_array, 760  
 sasql\_fetch\_assoc, 760  
 sasql\_fetch\_field, 761  
 sasql\_fetch\_object, 762  
 sasql\_fetch\_row, 762  
 sasql\_field\_count, 763  
 sasql\_field\_seek, 763  
 sasql\_free\_result, 764  
 sasql\_get\_client\_info, 764  
 sasql\_insert\_id, 764  
 sasql\_message, 765  
 sasql\_multi\_query, 765  
 sasql\_next\_result, 766  
 sasql\_num\_fields, 766  
 sasql\_num\_rows, 767  
 sasql\_pconnect, 767  
 sasql\_prepare, 768  
 sasql\_query, 769  
 sasql\_real\_escape\_string, 770  
 sasql\_real\_query, 770  
 sasql\_result\_all, 771  
 sasql\_rollback, 772  
 sasql\_set\_option, 772  
 sasql\_sqlstate, 783  
 sasql\_stmt\_affected\_rows, 773  
 sasql\_stmt\_bind\_param, 773  
 sasql\_stmt\_bind\_param\_ex, 774  
 sasql\_stmt\_bind\_result, 775  
 sasql\_stmt\_close, 775  
 sasql\_stmt\_data\_seek, 776  
 sasql\_stmt\_errno, 776  
 sasql\_stmt\_error, 777  
 sasql\_stmt\_execute, 777  
 sasql\_stmt\_fetch, 778  
 sasql\_stmt\_field\_count, 778  
 sasql\_stmt\_free\_result, 779  
 sasql\_stmt\_insert\_id, 779  
 sasql\_stmt\_next\_result, 780  
 sasql\_stmt\_num\_rows, 780  
 sasql\_stmt\_param\_count, 781  
 sasql\_stmt\_reset, 781  
 sasql\_stmt\_result\_metadata, 781  
 sasql\_stmt\_send\_long\_data, 782  
 sasql\_stmt\_store\_result, 782  
 sasql\_store\_result, 783  
 sasql\_use\_result, 784

PHP hypertext preprocessor  
 about, 739

PHP keyword  
 external environment, 715

PHP module  
 about, 739  
 API reference, 754  
 configuring SQL Anywhere module, 744  
 installing SQL Anywhere module, 741  
 introduction to programming, 12  
 running PHP scripts in web pages, 747  
 versions, 741  
 writing scripts, 748  
 writing web pages, 746

php-5.1.[1-6]\_sqlanywhere\_extenv11.dll  
 deploying, 1079

php-5.1.[1-6]\_sqlanywhere\_extenv11.so  
 deploying, 1079

php-5.2.[0-6]\_sqlanywhere\_extenv11.dll  
 deploying, 1079

php-5.2.[0-6]\_sqlanywhere\_extenv11.so  
 deploying, 1079

phpenv.php  
 deploying, 1079  
 PHP support module, 716

PHPRC  
 environment variable, 716

physical indexes  
 glossary definition, 1107

place holders  
 dynamic SQL, 561

platforms  
 cursors, 39

- Java in the database support, 81
- plug-in modules
  - glossary definition, 1107
- plug-ins
  - deploying, 1049
- policies
  - glossary definition, 1107
- policy.11.0.iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere.dll
  - deploying .NET clients, 1029
- polling
  - glossary definition, 1107
- pooling
  - connections with .NET Data Provider, 115
- POOLING option
  - .NET Data Provider, 115
- Pooling property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 288
- positioned DELETE statement
  - about, 36
- positioned UPDATE statement
  - about, 36
- positioned updates
  - about, 34
- PowerDesigner
  - glossary definition, 1107
- PowerJ
  - glossary definition, 1107
- Precision property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 390
- predicates
  - glossary definition, 1107
- prefetch
  - cursor performance, 50
  - cursors, 51
  - fetching multiple rows, 35
- prefetch option
  - cursors, 51
- PrefetchBuffer property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 289
- PrefetchRows property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 289
- Prepare method
  - using, 27
- Prepare method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 228
- PREPARE statement
  - about, 561
- PREPARE TRANSACTION statement
  - and Open Client, 847
- prepared statements
  - ADO.NET overview, 27
  - bind parameters, 27
  - cursors, 32
  - dropping, 27
  - JDBC, 519
  - ODBC, 483
  - Open Client, 844
  - using, 26
- PreparedStatement interface
  - about, 519
- prepareStatement method
  - JDBC, 28
- preparing
  - statements, 26
  - to commit, 68
- preprocessor
  - about, 532
  - running, 533
- primary key constraints
  - glossary definition, 1108
- primary keys
  - glossary definition, 1108
  - obtaining values for, 129
- primary tables
  - glossary definition, 1108
- println method
  - Java in the database, 86
- ProcedureParameters field [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 377
- procedures
  - embedded SQL, 586
  - ODBC, 496
  - parameters to web service clients, 908
  - refreshing from SQL Anywhere Explorer, 21
  - result sets, 586
- Procedures field [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 378
- program structure
  - embedded SQL, 536
- ProgramData
  - deploying administration tools on Windows, 1056
- programming interfaces
  - (*see also* APIs)
  - C API, 9
  - JDBC API, 7
  - ODBC API, 6

---

- Perl DBD::SQLAnywhere API, 10
- Python Database API, 11
- Ruby APIs, 13
- SQL Anywhere .NET API, 4
- SQL Anywhere embedded SQL, 8
- SQL Anywhere OLE DB and ADO APIs, 5
- SQL Anywhere PHP DBI, 12
- SQL Anywhere web services, 14
- Sybase Open Client API, 15
- properties
  - db\_get\_property function, 600
- prototype
  - external functions, 673
- providers
  - SQL Anywhere ASP.NET Health Monitoring Provider, 155
  - SQL Anywhere ASP.NET Membership Provider, 155
  - SQL Anywhere ASP.NET Profiles Provider, 155
  - SQL Anywhere ASP.NET Roles Provider, 155
  - SQL Anywhere ASP.NET Web Parts Personalization Provider , 155
  - supported in .NET, 110
  - supported in ASP.NET, 155
- proxy tables
  - glossary definition, 1108
- public fields
  - issues, 88
- publication updates
  - glossary definition, 1108
- publications
  - glossary definition, 1108
- publisher
  - glossary definition, 1109
- push notifications
  - glossary definition, 1109
- push requests
  - glossary definition, 1109
- PUT statement
  - modifying rows through a cursor, 36
  - multi-row, 577
  - wide, 577
- Python
  - closing connections, 735
  - commit method, 736
  - creating connections, 735
  - creating cursors, 736
  - executing SQL statements, 736

- inserting into tables, 736
- installing sqlanydb on Unix and Mac OS X, 734
- installing sqlanydb on Windows, 733
- multiple inserts, 737
- sqlanydb, 731
- writing sqlanydb scripts, 735

- Python Database API
  - introduction to programming, 11
- Python Database support
  - about, 731

## Q

- qaagent.exe
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- qaconnector.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- QAnywhere
  - glossary definition, 1109
- QAnywhere Agent
  - glossary definition, 1109
- qanywhere.jpr
  - deploying administration tools on Linux/Unix/Mac OS X, 1066, 1069
  - deploying administration tools on Windows, 1054, 1057
- qaplugin.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- queries
  - ADO Recordset object, 451, 452
  - glossary definition, 1109
  - single-row, 574
- quick start
  - web services, 851
- quotation marks
  - Java in the database strings, 86
- quoted identifiers
  - sql\_needs\_quotes function, 613
- QuoteIdentifier method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 239

## R

- Rails
  - about, 812

- installing ActiveRecord adapter, 810
  - tutorial, 813
- RDBMS
  - glossary definition, 1110
- Read method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 340
- read only
  - cursors, 39
  - deploying databases, 1078
- read only cursors
  - about, 39
- ReceiveBufferSize property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 437
- record sets
  - ADO programming, 453
- RecordsAffected property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 316, 425
- Recordset ADO object
  - ADO, 451
  - ADO programming, 454
  - updating data, 453
- Recordset object
  - ADO, 452
- recovery
  - distributed transactions, 71
- Redirector
  - glossary definition, 1109
- reentrant code
  - multi-threaded embedded SQL example, 557
- reference databases
  - glossary definition, 1109
- referenced object
  - glossary definition, 1110
- referencing object
  - glossary definition, 1110
- referential integrity
  - glossary definition, 1110
- registering
  - .NET Data Provider, 139
  - DLLs for deployment, 1077
  - SQL Anywhere ASP.NET connection string, 158
  - SQL Anywhere ASP.NET providers, 159
- registry
  - deploying, 1075
  - deploying administration tools on Windows, 1055
  - ODBC, 1042
  - Wow6432Node, 1055
  - registry settings
    - ODBC driver, 1040
- regular expressions
  - glossary definition, 1110
- remote databases
  - glossary definition, 1110
- REMOTE DBA authority
  - glossary definition, 1110
- remote IDs
  - glossary definition, 1111
- REMOTEPWD
  - using, 509
- Remove method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 204, 296, 413
- RemoveAt method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 204
- RemoveAt methods [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 413
- RemoveAt(Int32) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 413
- RemoveAt(String) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 414
- replication
  - glossary definition, 1111
- Replication Agent
  - glossary definition, 1111
- replication frequency
  - glossary definition, 1111
- replication messages
  - glossary definition, 1111
- Replication Server
  - glossary definition, 1111
- reportErrors
  - configurable option , 1071
- request processing
  - embedded SQL, 589
- requests
  - aborting, 597
- requirements
  - Open Client applications, 841
- ReservedWords field [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 378
- ResetCommandTimeout method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 229
- ResetDbType method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 395
- resource dispensers

---

- three-tier computing, 68
- resource managers
  - about, 66
  - three-tier computing, 68
- Restrictions field [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 379
- result sets
  - ADO Recordset object, 451, 452
  - cursors, 29
  - Java in the database stored procedures, 103
  - JDBC, 523
  - metadata, 58
  - multiple ODBC, 496
  - ODBC, 491, 496
  - Open Client, 846
  - retrieving ODBC, 493
  - stored procedures, 586
  - using, 32
  - web services, 905
- Results method
  - JDBCExample, 523
- retrieving
  - ODBC, 493
  - SQLDA, 571
- RetryConnectionTimeout property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 289
- return codes
  - about, 1013
  - ODBC, 498
- return types
  - external functions, 686
- return values and result sets
  - web clients, 905
- role names
  - glossary definition, 1111
- roles
  - glossary definition, 1111
- rollback logs
  - glossary definition, 1112
- Rollback methods [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 443
- ROLLBACK statement
  - cursors, 62
- ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT statement
  - cursors, 63
- Rollback() method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 443
- Rollback(String) method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 444
- RollbackTrans ADO method
  - ADO programming, 454
  - updating data, 454
- root
  - default service name, 861
  - service name, 878
- row-level triggers
  - glossary definition, 1112
- RowsCopied property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 422
- RowUpdated event [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 308
- RowUpdating event [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 309
- RPC option
  - Linked Server, 456
- RPC Out option
  - Linked Server, 456
- Ruby
  - about, 810
  - installing ActiveRecord adapter, 810
  - installing native Ruby driver, 810
  - installing Ruby/DBI support, 810
- Ruby API
  - about, 818
  - sqlany\_affected\_rows function, 819
  - sqlany\_bind\_param function, 819
  - sqlany\_clear\_error function, 820
  - sqlany\_client\_version function, 820
  - sqlany\_commit function, 820
  - sqlany\_connect function, 821
  - sqlany\_describe\_bind\_param function, 822
  - sqlany\_disconnect function, 822
  - sqlany\_error function, 823
  - sqlany\_execute function, 823
  - sqlany\_execute\_direct function, 824
  - sqlany\_execute\_immediate function, 825
  - sqlany\_fetch\_absolute function, 825
  - sqlany\_fetch\_next function, 826
  - sqlany\_fini function, 827
  - sqlany\_free\_connection function, 827
  - sqlany\_free\_stmt function, 828
  - sqlany\_get\_bind\_param\_info function, 828
  - sqlany\_get\_column function, 829
  - sqlany\_get\_column\_info function, 830
  - sqlany\_get\_next\_result function, 831
  - sqlany\_init function, 831

- sqlany\_new\_connection function, 832
- sqlany\_num\_cols function, 832
- sqlany\_num\_params function, 833
- sqlany\_num\_rows function, 833
- sqlany\_prepare function, 834
- sqlany\_rollback function, 835
- sqlany\_sqlstate function, 835
- Ruby APIs
  - introduction to programming, 13
- Ruby DBI
  - about, 814
  - connection examples, 814
  - installing dbd-sqlanywhere, 810
- Ruby on Rails
  - about, 812
  - installing ActiveRecord adapter, 810
  - tutorial, 813
- RubyGems
  - installing, 810
- runtime classes
  - Java in the database, 85
- S**
- sa\_config.csh file
  - deployment, 1021
- sa\_config.sh file
  - deployment, 1021
- sa\_external\_library\_unload
  - using, 688
- SA\_GET\_MESSAGE\_CALLBACK\_PARM
  - SQLSetConnectAttr, 479
- SA\_REGISTER\_MESSAGE\_CALLBACK
  - SQLSetConnectAttr, 479
- SA\_REGISTER\_VALIDATE\_FILE\_TRANSFER\_CALLBACK
  - SQLSetConnectAttr, 479
- SA\_SQL\_ATTR\_TXN\_ISOLATION
  - SQLSetConnectAttr, 479
- SA\_SQL\_TXN\_READONLY\_STATEMENT\_SNAPSHOT
  - isolation level, 491
- SA\_SQL\_TXN\_SNAPSHOT
  - isolation level, 491
- SA\_SQL\_TXN\_STATEMENT\_SNAPSHOT
  - isolation level, 491
- SABulkCopy class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 178
- SABulkCopy constructors [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 179
- SABulkCopy members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 178
- SABulkCopy(SAConnection) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 179
- SABulkCopy(SAConnection, SABulkCopyOptions, SATransaction) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 181
- SABulkCopy(String) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 180
- SABulkCopy(String, SABulkCopyOptions) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 181
- SABulkCopyColumnMapping class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 189
- SABulkCopyColumnMapping constructors [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 190
- SABulkCopyColumnMapping members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 190
- SABulkCopyColumnMapping() constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 190
- SABulkCopyColumnMapping(Int32, Int32) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 191
- SABulkCopyColumnMapping(Int32, String) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 192
- SABulkCopyColumnMapping(String, Int32) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 192
- SABulkCopyColumnMapping(String, String) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 193
- SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 196
- SABulkCopyColumnMappingCollection members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 197
- SABulkCopyOptions enumeration [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 205
- sacapi.h
  - C API, 621
- sacapi\_error\_size constant



---

SQL Anywhere C API, 651  
 sacapidll.h  
   C API, 619  
   interface library, 618  
 SACCommand class  
   about, 117  
   deleting data, 120  
   inserting data, 120  
   retrieving data, 117  
   updating data, 120  
   using, 27, 117  
   using in a Visual Studio project, 149, 153  
 SACCommand class [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 206  
 SACCommand constructors [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 208  
 SACCommand members [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 207  
 SACCommand() constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 208  
 SACCommand(String) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 209  
 SACCommand(String, SACConnection) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 209  
 SACCommand(String, SACConnection, SATransaction) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 210  
 SACCommandBuilder class [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 229  
 SACCommandBuilder constructors [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 231  
 SACCommandBuilder members [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 230  
 SACCommandBuilder() constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 231  
 SACCommandBuilder(SADataAdapter) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 231  
 SACCommLinksOptionsBuilder class [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 240  
 SACCommLinksOptionsBuilder constructors [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 241  
 SACCommLinksOptionsBuilder members [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 240  
 SACCommLinksOptionsBuilder() constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 241  
 SACCommLinksOptionsBuilder(String) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 242  
 SACConnection class  
   connecting to a database, 114  
   using in a Visual Studio project, 148, 152  
 SACConnection class [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 246  
 SACConnection constructors [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 248  
 SACConnection function  
   using in a Visual Studio project, 152  
 SACConnection members [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 247  
 SACConnection() constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 249  
 SACConnection(String) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 249  
 SACConnectionStringBuilder class [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 269  
 SACConnectionStringBuilder constructors [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 273  
 SACConnectionStringBuilder members [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 269  
 SACConnectionStringBuilder() constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 273  
 SACConnectionStringBuilder(String) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 274  
 SACConnectionStringBuilderBase class [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 291  
 SACConnectionStringBuilderBase members [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQAnywhere namespace, 292  
 SADataAdapter  
   obtaining primary key values, 129  
 SADataAdapter class  
   about, 117  
   deleting data, 124  
   inserting data, 124  
   obtaining result set schema information, 128  
   retrieving data, 123  
   updating data, 124

- using, 123
- SADDataAdapter class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 299
- SADDataAdapter constructors [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 301
- SADDataAdapter members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 299
- SADDataAdapter() constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 301
- SADDataAdapter(SACommand) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 302
- SADDataAdapter(String, SAConnection) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 303
- SADDataAdapter(String, String) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 303
- SADDataReader class
  - using, 117
  - using in a Visual Studio project, 149, 153
- SADDataReader class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 310
- SADDataReader members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 311
- SADDataSourceEnumerator class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 341
- SADDataSourceEnumerator members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 342
- SADbType enumeration [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 343
- SADbType property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 391
- SADefault class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 348
- SADefault members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 348
- SAError class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 349
- SAError members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 350
- SAErrorCollection class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 352
- SAErrorCollection members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 353
- SAException class
  - using in a Visual Studio project, 149, 153
- SAException class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 355
- SAException members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 356
- SAFactory class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 359
- SAFactory members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 360
- SAInfoMessageEventArgs class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 366
- SAInfoMessageEventArgs members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 366
- SAInfoMessageEventHandler delegate [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 369
- saip11.jar
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- SAIsolationLevel enumeration [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 370
- SAIsolationLevel property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 442
- sajvm.jar
  - deploying database servers, 1074
- salib.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- SAMessageType enumeration [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 371
- SAMetaDataCollectionNames class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 372
- SAMetaDataCollectionNames members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 372
- samples
  - .NET Data Provider, 145
  - building embedded SQL applications, 538
  - DBTools program, 954
  - embedded SQL, 539
  - embedded SQL applications, 538
  - ODBC, 471
  - SimpleViewer, 167
  - static cursors in embedded SQL, 540
- samples-dir
  - documentation usage, xiv
- SAOLEDB
  - OLE DB provider, 448
- SAParameter class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 382
- SAParameter constructors [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 384

---

SAParameter members [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 382

SAParameter() constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 384

SAParameter(String, Object) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 384

SAParameter(String, SADBType) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 385

SAParameter(String, SADBType, Int32) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 385

SAParameter(String, SADBType, Int32, ParameterDirection, Boolean, Byte, Byte, String, DataRowVersion, Object) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 387

SAParameter(String, SADBType, Int32, String) constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 386

SAParameterCollection class [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 396

SAParameterCollection members [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 396

SAPermission class [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 414

SAPermission constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 416

SAPermission members [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 415

SAPermissionAttribute class [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 417

SAPermissionAttribute constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 419

SAPermissionAttribute members [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 417

saplugin.jar  
  deploying on Mac OS X, 1063  
  deploying on Unix, 1060  
  deploying on Windows, 1051

SARowsCopied event [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 189

SARowsCopiedEventArgs class [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 420

SARowsCopiedEventArgs constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 421

SARowsCopiedEventArgs members [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 420

SARowsCopiedEventHandler delegate [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 422

SARowUpdatedEventArgs class [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 423

SARowUpdatedEventArgs constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 424

SARowUpdatedEventArgs members [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 423

SARowUpdatedEventHandler delegate [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 426

SARowUpdatingEventArgs class [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 426

SARowUpdatingEventArgs constructor [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 427

SARowUpdatingEventArgs members [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 427

SARowUpdatingEventHandler delegate [SA .NET 2.0]  
  iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 428

mysql\_affected\_rows function (PHP)  
  syntax, 755

mysql\_close function (PHP)  
  syntax, 756

mysql\_commit function (PHP)  
  syntax, 756

mysql\_connect function (PHP)  
  syntax, 756

mysql\_data\_seek function (PHP)  
  syntax, 757

mysql\_disconnect function (PHP)  
  syntax, 758

mysql\_error function (PHP)  
  syntax, 758

mysql\_errorcode function (PHP)  
  syntax, 759

mysql\_escape\_string function (PHP)  
  syntax, 759

mysql\_fetch\_array function (PHP)  
  syntax, 760

mysql\_fetch\_assoc function (PHP)  
  syntax, 760

mysql\_fetch\_field function (PHP)  
  syntax, 761

mysql\_fetch\_object function (PHP)  
  syntax, 762

mysql\_fetch\_row function (PHP)  
  syntax, 762

mysql\_field\_count function (PHP)  
  syntax, 763

- `sasql_field_seek` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 763
- `sasql_free_result` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 764
- `sasql_get_client_info` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 764
- `sasql_insert_id` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 764
- `sasql_message` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 765
- `sasql_multi_query` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 765
- `sasql_next_result` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 766
- `sasql_num_fields` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 766
- `sasql_num_rows` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 767
- `sasql_pconnect` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 767
- `sasql_prepare` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 768
- `sasql_query` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 769
- `sasql_real_escape_string` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 770
- `sasql_real_query` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 770
- `sasql_result_all` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 771
- `sasql_rollback` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 772
- `sasql_set_option` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 772
- `sasql_sqlstate` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 783
- `sasql_stmt_affected_rows` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 773
- `sasql_stmt_bind_param` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 773
- `sasql_stmt_bind_param_ex` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 774
- `sasql_stmt_bind_result` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 775
- `sasql_stmt_close` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 775
- `sasql_stmt_data_seek` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 776
- `sasql_stmt_errno` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 776
- `sasql_stmt_error` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 777
- `sasql_stmt_execute` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 777
- `sasql_stmt_fetch` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 778
- `sasql_stmt_field_count` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 778
- `sasql_stmt_free_result` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 779
- `sasql_stmt_insert_id` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 779
- `sasql_stmt_next_result` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 780
- `sasql_stmt_num_rows` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 780
- `sasql_stmt_param_count` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 781
- `sasql_stmt_reset` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 781
- `sasql_stmt_result_metadata` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 781
- `sasql_stmt_send_long_data` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 782
- `sasql_stmt_store_result` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 782
- `sasql_store_result` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 783
- `sasql_use_result` function (PHP)
  - syntax, 784
- `SATcpOptionsBuilder` class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - `iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere` namespace, 429
- `SATcpOptionsBuilder` constructors [SA .NET 2.0]
  - `iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere` namespace, 432
- `SATcpOptionsBuilder` members [SA .NET 2.0]
  - `iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere` namespace, 429
- `SATcpOptionsBuilder()` constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - `iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere` namespace, 432
- `SATcpOptionsBuilder(String)` constructor [SA .NET 2.0]
  - `iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere` namespace, 433
- `SATransaction` class
  - using, 136
- `SATransaction` class [SA .NET 2.0]
  - `iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere` namespace, 439
- `SATransaction` members [SA .NET 2.0]

---

- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 440
- Save method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 444
- savepoints
  - cursors, 63
- sbgse2.dll
  - FIPS-approved RSA encryption, 1081
- Scale property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 391
- SCEditor600.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- schema
  - adding the SQL Anywhere ASP.NET provider, 157
  - Health Monitoring provider, 165
  - Membership provider, 161
  - Profile provider, 163
  - Roles provider, 162
  - Web Part Personalization provider, 164
- schemas
  - glossary definition, 1112
- scjview
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
- scjview.exe
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- scjview.ini
  - deploying administration tools, 1048
- scRepository (*see* .scRepository600)
- script versions
  - glossary definition, 1112
- script-based uploads
  - glossary definition, 1112
- scripts
  - glossary definition, 1112
- SCROLL cursors
  - about, 39, 49
  - embedded SQL, 56
- scrollable cursors
  - about, 35
  - JDBC support, 502
- scvwen600.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- secured features
  - glossary definition, 1112
- security
  - Java in the database, 105
- security manager
  - about, 105
- SELECT statement
  - dynamic, 563
  - single row, 574
- SelectCommand property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 305
- self-registering DLLs
  - deploying SQL Anywhere, 1077
- SendBufferSize property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 437
- sensitive cursors
  - about, 46
  - delete example, 42
  - embedded SQL, 56
  - introduction, 42
  - update example, 44
- sensitivity
  - cursors, 41, 42
  - delete example, 42
  - isolation levels , 54
  - update example, 44
- serialization
  - objects in tables, 100
- server address
  - embedded SQL function, 600
- Server Explorer
  - Visual Studio, 168
- server management requests
  - glossary definition, 1112
- server message stores
  - glossary definition, 1113
- server side autocommit
  - about, 62
- server-initiated synchronization
  - glossary definition, 1112
- ServerName property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 290
- ServerPort property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 437
- servers
  - locating, 611
  - web services, 849
  - web services quick start, 851
- ServerVersion property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 253

- service name
  - default, 861, 878
  - example, 851
  - interpreting URLs, 861
  - rules, 856
- services
  - character sets, 941
  - creating web, 856
  - data types, 880
  - default, 878
  - errors, 942
  - glossary definition, 1113
  - HTTP headers, 919
  - HTTP session, 935
  - interpreting URLs, 861
  - listening for SOAP HTTP requests, 859
  - MIME types, 932
  - request handlers, 877
  - SOAP headers, 925
  - variables, 917
  - web, 849
  - web quick start, 851
- session key
  - HTTP session, 935
- session-based synchronization
  - glossary definition, 1113
- SessionCreateTime
  - connection property, 936
- SessionID
  - connection property, 936
- SessionID property
  - HTTP session, 935
- SessionLastTime
  - connection property, 936
- set\_cancel
  - about, 683
- set\_value function
  - about, 682
  - using, 686
- setAutocommit method
  - about, 516
- setMaxFieldSize
  - JDBC Statement method, 518
- setting
  - values using the SQLDA, 570
- SetupVSPackage
  - deploying .NET clients, 1029
- SetUseLongNameAsKeyword method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 245, 297
- shared objects
  - calling from stored procedures, 670
  - external procedure calls, 672
- SharedMemory property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 244
- ShouldSerialize method [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 297
- showMultipleResultSets
  - configurable option , 1071
- showResultsForAllStatements
  - configurable option , 1071
- signatures
  - Java methods, 707
- silent installs
  - about, 1027
- SimpleCE
  - .NET Data Provider sample project, 111
- SimpleViewer
  - .NET project, 167
- SimpleWin32
  - .NET Data Provider sample project, 111
- SimpleXML
  - .NET Data Provider sample project, 111
- single-threaded applications
  - Unix, 468
- Size property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 392
- snapshot isolation
  - glossary definition, 1113
  - lost updates, 53
  - SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider, 136
- SOAP faults
  - about, 942
- SOAP headers
  - in web services handlers, 925
- SOAP server
  - SOAP headers, 925
- SOAP services
  - about, 849
  - creating, 856, 865, 922
  - errors, 942
  - JAX-WS tutorial, 871, 892
  - Microsoft .NET tutorial, 868, 887
- SOAP\_HEADER function
  - web services, 925
- software

---

- return codes, 1014
- Source property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLOnly namespace, 351, 358, 368
- SourceColumn property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLOnly namespace, 195, 393
- SourceColumnNullMapping property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLOnly namespace, 393
- SourceOrdinal property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLOnly namespace, 196
- SourceVersion property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLOnly namespace, 394
- sp\_tsqL\_environment system procedure
  - setting options for jConnect, 510
- SQL
  - ADO applications, 24
  - applications, 24
  - embedded SQL applications, 24
  - glossary definition, 1113
  - JDBC applications, 24
  - ODBC applications, 24
  - Open Client applications, 24
- SQL Anywhere
  - C API, 617
  - documentation, xii
  - glossary definition, 1113
- SQL Anywhere .NET API
  - about, 4
- SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider
  - about, 109
  - tutorial, 145
- SQL Anywhere 11 Demo.dsn
  - Windows Mobile ODBC, 467
- SQL Anywhere ASP.NET data providers
  - about, 155
- SQL Anywhere C API
  - a\_sqlany\_bind\_param struct, 639
  - a\_sqlany\_bind\_param\_info struct, 640
  - a\_sqlany\_column\_info struct, 641
  - a\_sqlany\_data\_direction enumeration, 647
  - a\_sqlany\_data\_info struct, 642
  - a\_sqlany\_data\_type enumeration, 648
  - a\_sqlany\_data\_value struct, 643
  - a\_sqlany\_native\_type enumeration, 650
  - C API, 618
  - connecting.cpp, 653
  - dbcapi\_isql.cpp, 654
  - examples, 653
  - fetching\_a\_result\_set.cpp, 657
  - fetching\_multiple\_from\_sp.cpp, 659
  - interface library, 618
  - preparing\_statements.cpp, 661
  - sacapi.h, 621
  - sacapi\_error\_size constant, 651
  - sacapidll.h file, 619
  - send\_retrieve\_full\_blob.cpp, 663, 665
  - sqlany\_affected\_rows function, 621
  - sqlany\_bind\_param function, 621
  - sqlany\_clear\_error function, 622
  - sqlany\_client\_version function, 622
  - sqlany\_commit function, 622
  - sqlany\_connect function, 623
  - sqlany\_current\_api\_version constant, 652
  - sqlany\_describe\_bind\_param function, 624
  - sqlany\_disconnect function, 624
  - sqlany\_error function, 625
  - sqlany\_execute function, 625
  - sqlany\_execute\_direct function, 626
  - sqlany\_execute\_immediate function, 627
  - sqlany\_fetch\_absolute function, 627
  - sqlany\_fetch\_next function, 628
  - sqlany\_finalize\_interface function, 620
  - sqlany\_fini function, 628
  - sqlany\_free\_connection function, 628
  - sqlany\_free\_stmt function, 629
  - sqlany\_get\_bind\_param\_info function, 629
  - sqlany\_get\_column function, 629
  - sqlany\_get\_column\_info function, 630
  - sqlany\_get\_data function, 631
  - sqlany\_get\_data\_info function, 631
  - sqlany\_get\_next\_result function, 632
  - sqlany\_init function, 633
  - sqlany\_initialize\_interface function, 619
  - sqlany\_make\_connection function, 633
  - sqlany\_new\_connection function, 634
  - sqlany\_num\_cols function, 634
  - sqlany\_num\_params function, 635
  - sqlany\_num\_rows function, 635
  - sqlany\_prepare function, 635
  - sqlany\_reset function, 636
  - sqlany\_rollback function, 637
  - sqlany\_send\_param\_data function, 637
  - sqlany\_sqlstate function, 638
  - SQLAnywhereInterface, 644
- SQL Anywhere Explorer

- about, 17
- adding database objects, 20
- configuring, 20
- connection, 19
- supported programming languages, 19
- Visual Studio integration, 19
- working with procedures and functions, 21
- working with tables, 21
- SQL Anywhere External Function API
  - about, 689
- SQL Anywhere JDBC driver
  - about, 501
- SQL Anywhere ODBC driver
  - linking on Windows, 466
- SQL Anywhere OLE DB and ADO development
  - about, 447
- SQL Anywhere Perl DBD::SQLAnywhere DBI module
  - about, 721
- SQL Anywhere PHP API
  - about, 739
- SQL Anywhere PHP module
  - about, 739
  - API reference, 754
  - choosing which to use, 741
  - configuring, 744
  - installing, 741
  - versions, 741
- SQL Anywhere plug-in
  - deployment considerations, 1049
- SQL Anywhere Python Database support
  - about, 731
- SQL Anywhere Ruby API
  - functions, 818
- SQL Anywhere web services
  - about, 849
- SQL applications
  - executing SQL statements, 24
- SQL Communications Area
  - about, 555
- SQL preprocessor
  - about, 590
  - running, 533
  - syntax, 590
- SQL Remote
  - deploying, 1084
  - glossary definition, 1113
- SQL statements
  - executing, 844
  - glossary definition, 1113
- SQL-based synchronization
  - glossary definition, 1113
- SQL/1992
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- SQL/1999
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- SQL/2003
  - SQL preprocessor, 590
- SQL\_ATTR\_CONCURRENCY attribute
  - about, 492
- SQL\_ATTR\_CONNECTION\_DEAD
  - SQLGetConnectAttr, 478
- SQL\_ATTR\_CURSOR\_SCROLLABLE attribute
  - about, 492
- SQL\_ATTR\_KEYSET\_SIZE
  - ODBC attribute, 55
- SQL\_ATTR\_MAX\_LENGTH attribute
  - about, 493
- SQL\_ATTR\_ROW\_ARRAY\_SIZE
  - ODBC attribute, 35, 55
- SQL\_CALLBACK type declaration
  - about, 604
- SQL\_CALLBACK\_PARM type declaration
  - about, 604
- SQL\_CONCUR\_LOCK
  - concurrency value, 492
- SQL\_CONCUR\_READ\_ONLY
  - concurrency value, 492
- SQL\_CONCUR\_ROWVER
  - concurrency value, 492
- SQL\_CONCUR\_VALUES
  - concurrency value, 492
- SQL\_CURSOR\_KEYSET\_DRIVEN
  - ODBC cursor attribute, 55
- SQL\_ERROR
  - ODBC return code, 498
- SQL\_INVALID\_HANDLE
  - ODBC return code, 498
- SQL\_NEED\_DATA
  - ODBC return code, 498
- sql\_needs\_quotes function
  - about, 613
- SQL\_NO\_DATA\_FOUND
  - ODBC return code, 498
- SQL\_ROWSET\_SIZE
  - ODBC attribute, 35
- SQL\_SUCCESS



---

ODBC return code, 498  
 SQL\_SUCCESS\_WITH\_INFO  
     ODBC return code, 498  
 SQL\_TXN\_READ\_COMMITTED  
     isolation level, 491  
 SQL\_TXN\_READ\_UNCOMMITTED  
     isolation level, 491  
 SQL\_TXN\_REPEATABLE\_READ  
     isolation level, 491  
 SQL\_TXN\_SERIALIZABLE  
     isolation level, 491  
 SQLAllocHandle ODBC function  
     about, 473  
     binding parameters, 482  
     executing statements, 481  
     using, 473  
 sqlany.cvf  
     deploying database servers, 1074  
 SQLANY11  
     deployment, 1021  
 sqlany\_affected\_rows function  
     C API, 621  
     Ruby API, 819  
 sqlany\_bind\_param function  
     C API, 621  
     Ruby API, 819  
 sqlany\_clear\_error function  
     C API, 622  
     Ruby API, 820  
 sqlany\_client\_version function  
     C API, 622  
     Ruby API, 820  
 sqlany\_commit function  
     C API, 622  
     Ruby API, 820  
 sqlany\_connect function  
     C API, 623  
     Ruby API, 821  
 sqlany\_current\_api\_version constant  
     SQL Anywhere C API, 652  
 sqlany\_describe\_bind\_param function  
     C API, 624  
     Ruby API, 822  
 sqlany\_disconnect function  
     C API, 624  
     Ruby API, 822  
 sqlany\_error function  
     C API, 625  
     Ruby API, 823  
 sqlany\_execute function  
     C API, 625  
     Ruby API, 823  
 sqlany\_execute\_direct function  
     C API, 626  
     Ruby API, 824  
 sqlany\_execute\_immediate function  
     C API, 627  
     Ruby API, 825  
 sqlany\_fetch\_absolute function  
     C API, 627  
     Ruby API, 825  
 sqlany\_fetch\_next function  
     about, 826  
     C API, 628  
 sqlany\_finalize\_interface function  
     C API, 620  
 sqlany\_fini function  
     C API, 628  
     Ruby API, 827  
 sqlany\_free\_connection function  
     C API, 628  
     Ruby API, 827  
 sqlany\_free\_stmt function  
     C API, 629  
     Ruby API, 828  
 sqlany\_get\_bind\_param\_info function  
     C API, 629  
     Ruby API, 828  
 sqlany\_get\_column function  
     C API, 629  
     Ruby API, 829  
 sqlany\_get\_column\_info function  
     C API, 630  
     Ruby API, 830  
 sqlany\_get\_data function  
     C API, 631  
 sqlany\_get\_data\_info function  
     C API, 631  
 sqlany\_get\_next\_result function  
     C API, 632  
     Ruby API, 831  
 sqlany\_init function  
     C API, 633  
     Ruby API, 831  
 sqlany\_initialize\_interface function  
     C API, 619

- sqlany\_make\_connection function
  - C API, 633
- sqlany\_new\_connection function
  - C API, 634
  - Ruby API, 832
- sqlany\_num\_cols function
  - C API, 634
  - Ruby API, 832
- sqlany\_num\_params function
  - C API, 635
  - Ruby API, 833
- sqlany\_num\_rows function
  - C API, 635
  - Ruby API, 833
- sqlany\_prepare function
  - C API, 635
  - Ruby API, 834
- sqlany\_reset function
  - C API, 636
- sqlany\_rollback function
  - C API, 637
  - Ruby API, 835
- sqlany\_send\_param\_data function
  - C API, 637
- sqlany\_sqlstate function
  - C API, 638
  - Ruby API, 835
- sqlanydb
  - about, 731
  - installing on Unix and Mac OS X, 734
  - installing on Windows, 733
  - Python Database API, 11
  - writing Python scripts, 735
- sqlanywhere.jpr
  - deploying administration tools on Linux/Unix/Mac OS X, 1065, 1068
  - deploying administration tools on Windows, 1054, 1056
- sqlanywhere\_commit function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 785
- sqlanywhere\_connect function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 785
- sqlanywhere\_data\_seek function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 786
- sqlanywhere\_disconnect function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 787
- sqlanywhere\_en11.chm
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- sqlanywhere\_en11.map
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- sqlanywhere\_error function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 788
- sqlanywhere\_errorcode function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 788
- sqlanywhere\_execute function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 789
- sqlanywhere\_fetch\_array function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 790
- sqlanywhere\_fetch\_field function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 791
- sqlanywhere\_fetch\_object function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 792
- sqlanywhere\_fetch\_row function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 793
- sqlanywhere\_free\_result function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 794
- sqlanywhere\_identity function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 795
- sqlanywhere\_insert\_id function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 795
- sqlanywhere\_num\_fields function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 795
- sqlanywhere\_num\_rows function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 796
- sqlanywhere\_pconnect function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 797
- sqlanywhere\_query function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 798
- sqlanywhere\_result\_all function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 799
- sqlanywhere\_rollback function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 800
- sqlanywhere\_set\_option function (deprecated)
  - syntax, 800
- SQLAnywhereInterface
  - SQL Anywhere C API, 644
- SQLBindCol ODBC function
  - about, 493
  - parameter size, 485
  - storage alignment, 489
- SQLBindParam ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- SQLBindParameter function
  - ODBC prepared statements, 27
  - prepared statements, 483
- SQLBindParameter ODBC function

---

- about, 482
- parameter size, 485
- storage alignment, 489
- stored procedures, 496
- SQLBrowseConnect ODBC function
  - about, 476
- SQLBulkOperations
  - ODBC function, 36
- SQLCA
  - about, 555
  - changing, 557
  - fields, 555
  - length of, 555
  - multiple, 559
  - threads, 557
- sqlcabc SQLCA field
  - about, 555
- sqlcaid SQLCA field
  - about, 555
- sqlcode SQLCA field
  - about, 555
- SQLColAttribute ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- SQLColAttributes ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- SQLConnect ODBC function
  - about, 476
- SQLCOUNT
  - sqlerror SQLCA field element, 556
- sqld SQLDA field
  - about, 566
- SQLDA
  - about, 561, 565
  - allocating, 593
  - descriptors, 58
  - fields, 566
  - filling, 612
  - freeing, 612
  - host variables, 566
  - sqlen field, 568
  - strings, 612
- sqlda\_storage function
  - about, 614
- sqlda\_string\_length function
  - about, 614
- sqldabc SQLDA field
  - about, 566
- sqldaif SQLDA field
  - about, 566
- sqldata SQLDA field
  - about, 566
- SQLDATETIME data type
  - embedded SQL, 547
- sqldef.h
  - data types, 542
- sqldef.h file
  - software exit codes location, 1014
- SQLDescribeCol ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- SQLDescribeParam ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- SQLDriverConnect ODBC function
  - about, 476
- sqlerrd SQLCA field
  - about, 555
- sqlerrmc SQLCA field
  - about, 555
- sqlerrml SQLCA field
  - about, 555
- SQLERROR ODBC function
  - about, 498
- sqlerror SQLCA field
  - elements, 556
  - SQLCOUNT, 556
  - SQLIOCOUNT, 556
  - SQLIOESTIMATE, 557
- sqlerror\_message function
  - about, 614
- sqlerrp SQLCA field
  - about, 555
- SQLExecDirect ODBC function
  - about, 481
  - bound parameters, 482
- SQLExecute function
  - ODBC prepared statements, 27
- SQLExtendedFetch
  - ODBC function, 34, 35
- SQLExtendedFetch ODBC function
  - about, 493
  - parameter size, 485
  - stored procedures, 496
- SQLFetch
  - ODBC function, 34
- SQLFetch ODBC function
  - about, 493
  - stored procedures, 496

- SQLFetchScroll
  - ODBC function, 34, 35
- SQLFetchScroll ODBC function
  - about, 493
  - parameter size, 485
- SQLFreeHandle ODBC function
  - using, 473
- SQLFreeStmt function
  - ODBC prepared statements, 27
- SQLGetConnectAttr ODBC function
  - about, 478
- SQLGetData ODBC function
  - about, 493
  - parameter size, 485
  - storage alignment, 489
- SQLGetDescRec ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- sqlind SQLDA field
  - about, 566
- SQLIOCOUNT
  - sqlerror SQLCA field element, 556
- SQLIOESTIMATE
  - sqlerror SQLCA field element, 557
- SQLJ standard
  - about, 78
- sqlen SQLDA field
  - about, 566, 568
  - DESCRIBE statement, 568
  - describing values, 568
  - retrieving values, 571
  - sending values, 570
- SQLLEN versus SQLINTEGER
  - ODBC, 485
- sqlname SQLDA field
  - about, 566
- SQLNumResultCols ODBC function
  - stored procedures, 496
- SQLParamOptions ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- sqlpp utility
  - about, 532
  - running, 533
  - syntax, 590
- SQLPrepare function
  - about, 483
  - ODBC prepared statements, 27
- SQLPutData ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- SQLRETURN
  - ODBC return code type, 498
- SQLRowCount ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- SQLSetConnectAttr
  - ODBC applications, 479
- SQLSetConnectAttr ODBC function
  - about, 477
  - transaction isolation levels, 491
- SQLSetConnectOption ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- SQLSetDescRec ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- SQLSetParam ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- SQLSetPos ODBC function
  - about, 494
  - parameter size, 485
- SQLSetScrollOptions ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- SQLSetStmtAttr ODBC function
  - cursor characteristics, 492
- SQLSetStmtOption ODBC function
  - parameter size, 485
- SqlState property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 351
- sqlstate SQLCA field
  - about, 556
- SQLTransact ODBC function
  - about, 474
- sqltype SQLDA field
  - about, 566
  - DESCRIBE statement, 568
- SQLULEN versus SQLUINTEGER
  - ODBC, 485
- sqlvar SQLDA field
  - about, 566
  - contents, 566
- sqlwarn SQLCA field
  - about, 555
- standard output
  - Java in the database, 86
- standards
  - SQLJ, 78
- starting
  - databases using jConnect, 509
- StartLine property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 290

---

- State property
  - .NET Data Provider, 115
- State property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 254
- StateChange event [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 268
- statement handles
  - ODBC, 473
- statement-level triggers
  - glossary definition, 1114
- statements
  - insert, 26
- static cursors
  - about, 46
  - ODBC, 55
- static SQL
  - about, 561
- stax-api-1.0.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- steps for using cursors
  - about, 32
- stored functions
  - calling external functions, 670
  - parameters to web service clients, 908
- stored procedures
  - .NET Data Provider, 134
  - calling external functions, 670
  - creating in embedded SQL, 586
  - executing in embedded SQL, 586
  - glossary definition, 1114
  - INOUT parameters and Java, 104
  - Java in the database, 103
  - OUT parameters and Java, 104
  - parameters to web service clients, 908
  - result sets, 586
- string
  - data type, 614
- string literal
  - glossary definition, 1114
- strings
  - blank padding of DT\_NSTRING, 542
  - blank padding of DT\_STRING, 542
  - Java in the database, 86
- structure packing
  - header files, 534
- subqueries
  - glossary definition, 1114
- subscriptions
  - glossary definition, 1114
- support
  - newsgroups, xvii
- supported platforms
  - OLE DB, 448
- Sybase Central
  - adding JAR files, 99
  - adding Java classes, 98
  - adding ZIP files, 99
  - configuring for deployment, 1071
  - deploying, 1048
  - deploying on Linux and Unix, 1059
  - deploying on Windows without InstallShield, 1049
  - deployment considerations, 1049
  - glossary definition, 1114
  - installing jConnect metadata support, 507
  - opening from Visual Studio, 19
- Sybase EAServer (*see* EAServer)
- Sybase Enterprise Application Studio
  - executing SQL statements, 25
- Sybase Open Client API
  - about, 839
- sybasecentral600.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- symlink
  - deployment on Unix, 1020
- synchronization
  - glossary definition, 1115
- SyncRoot property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 401
- SYS
  - glossary definition, 1115
- system objects
  - glossary definition, 1115
- system requirements
  - .NET Data Provider, 139
- system tables
  - glossary definition, 1115
- system views
  - glossary definition, 1115
- System.Transactions
  - using, 137

**T**

## table adapter

- Visual Studio, 172

## TableMappings property [SA .NET 2.0]

- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 306

## Tables field [SA .NET 2.0]

- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 379

## TableViewer

- .NET Data Provider sample project, 111

## TcpOptionsBuilder property [SA .NET 2.0]

- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 244

## TcpOptionsString property [SA .NET 2.0]

- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 244

## TDS property [SA .NET 2.0]

- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 438

## technical support

- newsgroups, xvii

## temporary tables

- glossary definition, 1115

## threaded applications

- Unix, 1020

## threads

- Java in the database, 102

- multiple SQLCAs, 559

- multiple thread management in embedded SQL, 557

- ODBC, 464

- ODBC applications, 478

- Unix development, 468

## three-tier computing

- about, 66

- architecture, 67

- Distributed Transaction Coordinator, 68

- distributed transactions, 67

- EAServer, 68

- Microsoft Transaction Server, 68

- resource dispensers, 68

- resource managers, 68

## Time structure

- time values in .NET Data Provider, 132

## Timeout property [SA .NET 2.0]

- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 438

## times

- obtaining with .NET Data Provider, 132

## TimeSpan

- .NET Data Provider, 132

## TIMESTAMP data type

- conversion, 842

## topics

- graphic icons, xvi

## ToString method [SA .NET 2.0]

- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 246, 352, 369, 395, 439

## tracing

- .NET support, 141

## transaction attribute

- component, 72

## transaction coordinator

- EAServer, 72

## transaction log

- glossary definition, 1115

## transaction log mirror

- glossary definition, 1116

## transaction processing

- using the .NET Data Provider, 136

## Transaction property [SA .NET 2.0]

- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 214

## transactional integrity

- glossary definition, 1116

## transactions

- ADO, 454

- application development, 60

- autocommit mode, 60

- choosing ODBC transaction isolation level, 491

- controlling autocommit behavior, 60

- cursors, 62

- distributed, 66, 70

- glossary definition, 1115

- isolation level, 62

- ODBC, 474

- OLE DB, 454

## TransactionScope class

- using, 137

## transmission rules

- glossary definition, 1116

## triggers

- glossary definition, 1116

## troubleshooting

- cursor positioning, 34

- Java in the database methods, 102

- newsgroups, xvii

## truncation

- FETCH statement, 553

- indicator variables, 553

- on FETCH, 553

---

TryGetValue method [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 298

tutorials  
 accessing web services from JAX-WS, 871  
 developing a .NET database application, 167  
 SQL Anywhere .NET Data Provider, 145  
 using data types with JAX-WS, 892  
 using the .NET Data Provider Simple code sample, 147  
 using the .NET Data Provider Table Viewer code sample, 150

two-phase commit  
 and Open Client, 847  
 three-tier computing, 67, 68

## U

ulplugin.jar  
 deploying on Windows, 1051

UltraLite  
 glossary definition, 1116

UltraLite runtime  
 glossary definition, 1116

ultralite.jpr  
 deploying administration tools on Windows, 1054, 1057

unchained mode  
 controlling, 60  
 implementation, 62  
 transactions, 60

Unconditional property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 290

Unicode  
 linking ODBC applications for Windows Mobile, 468

unique constraints  
 glossary definition, 1116

unique cursors  
 about, 39

Unix  
 deployment issues, 1020  
 directory structure, 1020  
 multi-threaded applications, 1020  
 ODBC, 468  
 ODBC driver managers, 469

unixodbc.h  
 about, 466  
 compilation platform, 485

unload  
 glossary definition, 1117

unload database utility [dbunload] (*see* unload utility [dbunload] )

unload utility [dbunload]  
 deployment considerations, 1083  
 deployment for pre 10.0.0 databases, 1083

UnquoteIdentifier method [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 239

UNSIGNED BIGINT data type  
 embedded SQL, 547

UPDATE statement  
 positioned, 36

UpdateBatch ADO method  
 ADO programming, 454  
 updating data, 454

UpdateBatchSize property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 306

UpdateCommand property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 307

UpdatedRowSource property [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 215

updates  
 cursor, 453

upgrade database wizard  
 installing jConnect metadata support, 507

upgrade utility [dbupgrad]  
 installing jConnect metadata support, 507

uploads  
 glossary definition, 1117

URL path  
 about, 862

URL searchpart  
 about, 863

URL session ID  
 HTTP session, 935

URLs  
 database, 509  
 default services, 878  
 handling, 877  
 iAnywhere JDBC driver, 505  
 interpreting, 861  
 jConnect, 509

user-defined data types  
 glossary definition, 1117

UserDefinedTypes field [SA .NET 2.0]  
 iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 380

UserID property [SA .NET 2.0]

- iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 291
- Users field [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 380
- utilities
  - deploying database utilities, 1082
  - return codes, 1014
  - SQL preprocessor, 590

## V

- validate
  - glossary definition, 1117
- Value field [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 349
- Value property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 394
- value-sensitive cursors
  - about, 49
  - delete example, 42
  - introduction, 42
  - update example, 44
- VARCHAR data type
  - embedded SQL, 547
- variables
  - in web services handlers, 917
  - persistence for Java in the database, 87
- velocity-dep.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- velocity.jar
  - deploying on Mac OS X, 1063
  - deploying on Unix, 1060
  - deploying on Windows, 1051
- verbosity enumeration
  - syntax, 1011
- VerifyServerName property [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 439
- version number
  - file names, 1021
- ViewColumns field [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 381
- views
  - glossary definition, 1117
- Views field [SA .NET 2.0]
  - iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 381
- visible changes
  - cursors, 41

- Visual Basic
  - support in .NET Data Provider, 4
  - tutorial, 168
- Visual C#
  - tutorial, 168
- Visual C++
  - embedded SQL support, 533
- Visual Studio
  - accessing SQL Anywhere databases, 19
  - SQL Anywhere database connections, 19
  - SQL Anywhere Explorer integration, 19
- VM
  - Java Virtual Machine, 80
  - starting Java, 106
  - stopping Java, 106

## W

- Watcom C/C++
  - embedded SQL support, 533
- web pages
  - adding PHP scripts to, 746
  - running PHP scripts in, 747
- web servers
  - licensing, 938
  - PHP API, 739
- web service client log file
  - about, 903
- web service clients
  - parameters to functions and procedures, 908
  - procedure and function names, 901
- web services
  - about, 849
  - character sets, 941
  - client result sets, 905
  - creating, 856
  - creating SOAP and DISH, 865
  - creating SOAP services, 922
  - data types, 880
  - default services, 878
  - errors, 942
  - HTTP headers, 919
  - HTTP session, 935
  - HTTP\_HEADER function, 919
  - HTTP\_VARIABLE function, 917
  - interpreting URLs, 861
  - introduction, 14
  - listening for SOAP and HTTP requests, 859



---

MIME types, 932  
 NEXT\_HTTP\_HEADER function, 919  
 NEXT\_HTTP\_VARIABLE function, 917  
 NEXT\_SOAP\_HEADER function, 925  
 quick start, 851  
 request handlers, 877  
 SOAP headers, 925  
 SOAP\_HEADER function, 925  
 variables, 917  
 wide fetches  
   about, 35  
   ESQL, 577  
 wide inserts  
   ESQL, 577  
   JDBC, 521  
 wide puts  
   ESQL, 577  
 window (OLAP)  
   glossary definition, 1117  
 Windows  
   deploying administration tools without InstallShield, 1049  
   glossary definition, 1117  
   OLE DB support, 448  
 Windows Mobile  
   dbtool11.dll, 948  
   glossary definition, 1117  
   Java in the database unsupported, 81  
   ODBC, 467  
   OLE DB support, 448  
 WITH HOLD clause  
   cursors, 34  
 work tables  
   cursor performance, 50  
   glossary definition, 1117  
 working with procedures and functions using the SQL  
 Anywhere Explorer  
   about, 21  
 WriteToServer methods [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 186  
 WriteToServer(DataRow[]) method [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 186  
 WriteToServer(DataTable) method [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 187  
 WriteToServer(DataTable, DataRowState) method [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 188  
 WriteToServer(IDataReader) method [SA .NET 2.0]  
   iAnywhere.Data.SQLAnywhere namespace, 187  
 WSDL compiler  
   about, 898  
 WSDLC  
   about, 898  
 wsimport  
   JAX-WS and web services, 872, 894  
 wstx-asl-3.2.6.jar  
   deploying on Mac OS X, 1063  
   deploying on Unix, 1060  
   deploying on Windows, 1051

**X**

XML server  
   about, 849  
   creating web services, 856  
 XML services  
   listening for SOAP HTTP requests, 859  
 XML web server  
   quick start, 851

---